

Manual for FOMA® N903i '06.11



- Quick Search/
Contents/ Safety Precautions
- Getting Started
- Voice/
Videophone Calls
- PushTalk
- Using the Phonebook
- Tone/Display/
Lighting Settings
- Security Settings
- Camera
- i-mode/i-motion/
i-channel
- Mail
- i-appli
- Osaifu-Keitai/
ToruCa
- GPS Function
- Full Browser
- Display/Edit/
Organization
- Music Playback
- Other Useful Functions
- Network Services
- Data Communication
- Entering Text
- Traveling with N903i
- Appendix/
External Devices/
Troubleshooting
- Index/
Quick Manual**



DoCoMo W-CDMA System

Thank you very much for choosing the FOMA N903i.

Please read this manual and users guides that came with the battery pack and other devices carefully before or during use so that you can use your FOMA terminal correctly. If you have any inquiries regarding this manual, contact the number listed in "For inquiries" on the back cover. FOMA N903i is your efficient partner. Please use it carefully and habitually.

Before using your FOMA terminal

- The FOMA network operates using radio waves. In a place where the reception is very poor, such as in a tunnel, in a building and under the ground, or out of range, you cannot make a phone call. You may also have difficulty making a phone call from upper floors of tall buildings, even if there is no obvious physical obstruction. And even if the reception is good (i.e. the signal strength indicator shows 3 bars) and you do not move during a call, you may still find that your call is cut off.
- When you use your FOMA terminal in public places, particularly where it is crowded or quiet, take care not to disturb people around you.
- Since the FOMA terminal uses radio waves to communicate, there is always a risk that your call is wiretapped by a third party. However, the W-CDMA system automatically supports the tapping prevention for all calls. Even if a third party succeeds in intercepting your call, only incomprehensible noise will be heard.
- The FOMA terminal communicates via radio waves by converting voices into digital signals. If you move into an area where the reception is poor, the digital signals may not be accurately decoded and what you hear may differ slightly from what it actually is.
- It is your responsibility to back up all data stored on your FOMA terminal. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to data stored on your FOMA terminal.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of use of TLS/SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation or warranty as for security in the use of TLS/SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of TLS/SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifier shall be responsible for any damage or loss. Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Betrustrust Japan Co., Ltd., GeoTrust Japan Co., Ltd., RSA Security Japan Ltd., SECOM Trust.net Co., Ltd.
- The FOMA terminal is available in FOMA Plus-Area.
The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo and DoCoMo's roaming area.

For the first-time users of the FOMA terminal

If you have never used the FOMA terminal, read this manual in the following steps. Doing so will help you understand the preparation and basic operations for using the FOMA terminal.

1. Insert and charge the battery pack (p.42)
2. Turn on the FOMA terminal, make the initial settings, and check your own number (p.46)
3. Check the functions of the phone keys (p.26)
4. Check the meanings of icons displayed on the screen (p.30)
5. Check how to use the menus (pp.33, 34)
6. Check how to make/receive a call (p.51)

The latest information about this manual can be downloaded from the DoCoMo website.

- To download "Manual for FOMA N903i (PDF file)", access the following:
(<http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/manual/index.html>)

* The URL and the contents of the site are subject to change without notice.

How to Use This Manual

● To look up a function in this manual

This manual offers you the following methods to find a page describing the function or service you want to know.



See the next page for more details.

Looking up in the Index ●●●●●●●●●● p.498

If you know the name of the function or service or if it is displayed on the screen, refer to the Index.

Looking up in the Quick Search ●●●●●●●● p.4

The Quick Search offers plain descriptions of often-used or useful functions.

Looking up in the Cover Index ●●●●●●●●●● Cover

Use the Cover Index to flip over the page.

Looking up in the Table of Contents ●●●●●●●● p.6

Refer to the Table of Contents categorizing the functions.

Looking up in the Functions ●●●●●●●●●● p.8

Refer to the Functions to find new or useful functions.

Looking up in the Menu Function List ●●●●●●●● p.454

The pages list the menu functions displayed in the menus of the FOMA terminal.

Looking up in the Quick Manual ●●●●●●●●●● p.506

The Quick Manual offers brief descriptions of the basic functions. You can tear it out and take it with you.

- In this manual the FOMA N903i is described as the FOMA terminal.
- This manual describes functions that use a microSD memory card. To use these functions, the microSD memory card is required. microSD memory card → p.352
- It is prohibited to reprint the whole or part of the contents of this manual without permission.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without notice.

How to Use This Manual (continued from the previous page)

This page takes for example how to look up the “Display setting” function.

Looking up in the Index

If you know the name of the function or service or if it is displayed on the screen, refer to the Index.

→ Find “Display setting”

Mode 2 (2-touch) .....442	Sent/rec'd DataList .....122	Display setting .....88, 133
Mode 3 (T9 input) .....442	DC adapter .....44	Disp. phonebook image .....136
Prediction .....435	deactivate i-rppli standby screen .....295	DoCoMo keitai datalink .....430
T9 change mode .....444	Decoration .....88	Document viewer .....376
Character stamp .....339	Deco-mail .....243	delete .....364
Chara-den .....85, 345	Delete .....216	Operation .....377
action .....345	Bookmark .....364	Scroll .....377
control .....345	Chara-den .....364	text search .....378
delete .....364	desktop icon .....149	view .....376
display .....345	Dialed calls .....63	Download dictionary .....442
download .....221	document .....364	download (acquire)
guide to the Chara-den list .....345	Draft mail .....249	
Memory info .....346	i-rppli .....295	

Looking up in the Quick Search

The Quick Search offers plain descriptions of often-used or useful functions.

→ Find “Change standby screen”

Change display or ring melody

- Set clock **p.49** Set time
- Set ring tone to specific party **p.118** Discern connect/Discern group
- Change ring melody **p.124** Select ring tone
- Mute keypad tone **p.127** Keypad sound
- Set silent mode **p.130** Manner mode
- Change standby screen **p.133** Display setting
- Display calendar on standby screen **p.135**



Looking up in the Cover Index

Find the page describing the function in the order “Cover” → “Chapter page (first page of the chapter)” → “Description page”. The chapter page describes the detailed table of contents.

Voice/Videophone Calls	Setting the Ring Time for Incoming Mails Mail/Msg. ring time	130
PushTalk	Enabling Tones to Ring through the Earphone and Speaker	Earphone 130
Using the Phonebook	Muting the FOMA Terminal's Tone.....	Manner mode 130
Tone/Display/Lighting	Customizing Manner Mode.....	Manner mode set 131
Security Settings	Display/lighting settings	
Camera	Changing the Display Settings.....	Display setting 133
i-mode/rotation/channel	Displaying Phonebook Images When You Receive Calls	Disp. phonebook image 136

● Key description

Key operations are illustrated in this manual. The illustrations are simplified as follows:

Actual key	Described in this manual
	

This manual uses illustrations or marks to explain how to operate the function so that you can use the FOMA terminal correctly.

Describes the settings at the time of purchase or contract, subscription requirement, etc. of the function or service.

Function name
This name is described in the index.

Indicates that the menu can be displayed by pressing **MENU** then **5** **6**.
Menu No. → p.454

Describes the operation on each step.

Changing the Display Settings

Default setting
Stand-by display: Reflection (Phone color: Jet black, Blue fragrance (Phone color: Surf blue), Disney (Phone color: Sparkle white), Dramatic City (Phone color: Vermillion orange)
Wake-up display: Wakeup (Phone color: Jet black, Surf blue, Vermillion orange), Disney (Phone color: Sparkle white)
Dialing, Calling, Vphone Dialing, Vphone Calling, Mail sending, Mail receiving, Check new messages: Black (Phone color: Jet black, Vermillion orange), White (Phone color: Surf blue), Disney (Phone color: Sparkle white)

Use this procedure to **change your favorite images** such as the photographed or downloaded on a screen (e.g. standby, dialing or receiving).
● If you set i-motion programs including video and voice for a ring tone and the receiving screen respectively, the FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set for the ring tone.
● If you set a file other than i-motion including video and voice for a ring tone and set an i-motion including video and voice for the receiving screen, the FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set for the receiving screen.
● An i-motion with voice only (e.g. singer's voice) cannot be set for the receiving screen.
● Some i-motion programs cannot be selected, e.g. if the size is VGA.

1. Press **Settings** → **Display** → **Display setting**
The "Display setting" screen appears.
If a file other than i-motion is set for the receiving screen, set a ring tone as required.

2. Select any item



Shows the screen at the time of the operation. Compare it with the screen when you operate.

Shows each chapter.

Describes the options displayed on the screen (some options may not appear in some cases).

Stand-by display	"Changing the standby screen image" → p.135
Wake-up display	Sets a message or image shown when a FOMA terminal is turned on.
OFF	Does not show an image, etc.
Message	Enter a message A message can contain up to 50 double-byte or 100 single-byte characters.
My picture	Sets an image. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.
Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
Camera	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
Original animation	Sets an original animation.
Dialing	Sets the image shown when you make a voice call. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.
Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
Camera	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
Original animation	Sets an original animation.
Calling	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming voice calls.
Select ring tone	"Changing Ring Tones" → p.124
Select calling disp.	"Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls or mails" → p.134

Describes each option and its operation.

Describes the useful information or advice about the operations.

NOTE
◆ Flash movies can be set in "Select calling disp." or "Select receiving disp.", but the tone set in "Select ring sounds as the ring tone."
◆ When the receiving image settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned. → p.136
◆ You cannot set images for the dialing and receiving screens for PushTalk calls.

Indicates that the descriptions go on to the next page.

Page number

* The contents and page numbers above may differ from the actual ones in this manual.

- The screens shown as examples in this manual are displayed when "English" is set for "バイリンガル" (Select language). Set "English" for "バイリンガル" (Select language) beforehand. → p.47
- In this manual, "OFF" is set to the "Stand-by display" in order to make the screens clear. Also, the parts of the operating instruction screens that need an explanation are shown close up.
- The color pattern of the main menu and screens is described in the phone's color Surf Blue set at the time of purchase.
- FOMA terminal appearances illustrated in this manual are those of Surf blue (Phone color).
- This manual mainly explains the operations with the default settings. If you change the settings, the contents displayed on your FOMA terminal may differ from those on this manual.
- The screens inserted in this manual are only the images, which may look different from the actual screens.
- This manual describes "Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli supporting IC Card function" as "Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli".

Quick Search

- Go to the page when you want to learn how to operate the function.

Useful functions for talking

- Do/do not notify your party of your caller ID **p.50** Caller ID Notification
- Switch voice call to videophone call **p.57**
- Adjust the volume during a call **p.75** Volume
- Hold the current call **p.77** Holding



When you cannot answer incoming call

- Hold incoming call **p.76** Answer hold
- Have your party record voice message **p.81** Record message
- Set voice mail **p.418**



Change display or ring melody

- Set clock **p.49** Set time
- Set ring tone to specific party **p.118** Discern connect/Discern group
- Change ring melody **p.124** Select ring tone
- Mute keypad tone **p.127** Keypad sound
- Set silent mode **p.130** Manner mode
- Change standby screen **p.133** Display setting
- Display calendar on standby screen **p.135**
- Change color or pattern of incoming call lamp **p.145** Illumination
- Change font type, size or thickness **p.146** Font*



* : You can also set font size by using the function menu of "Phonebook" or "My Profile" (pp.113, 115, 404), "i-mode settings" (p.223), "Mail settings" (p.270) or "Character input set" (p.433).

Master mail

- Send Deco-mail **p.243** Deco-mail
- Send image or melody **p.248** Attach file
- Learn emotion-expressing mail **p.251**



Master camera

- Change the size of image to shoot **p.183**
- Change shutter sound **pp.186, 193**
- Use zoom or light **pp.197, 198**
- Display the shot **p.330** My picture
- Save image to microSD memory card **p.363**
- Print the shot **p.379** PictBridge print



Use your phone without worries

- Lock your FOMA terminal that is not in your hand **p.157** Omakase Lock
- Prevent others from viewing the phonebook data **p.158** Secret mode/Secret data only mode
- Lock key operation when folded **p.169** External keys guard
- Reject unidentified call **p.173** Call setting w/o ID
- Reject call if the party is not stored in phonebook **p.174** Reject unknown
- Save data such as phonebook in case of loss of the data **p.175** Data Security Service*



*: Data Security Service is a pay service you need to subscribe to. (To subscribe to this service, you need to subscribe to i-mode beforehand.)

Miscellaneous

- Easily access the functions you often use **p.37** Original menu
- Save battery life **p.138** Backlight (Power saver mode)
- Read QR code or bar code **p.199** Bar code reader
- Use microSD memory card **p.352**
- Communicate with PC or another FOMA terminal **p.365** Infrared data exchange/
iC communication/OBEX
- Use as alarm clock **p.398** Alarm clock
- Use as calculator **p.409** Calculator
- Use your FOMA terminal overseas **p.446**
- Update software **p.487** Software Update
- Update security **p.492** Scanning function



For more information about other operation guides, see "How to Use This Manual". →p.1
Also, "Quick Manual" instructs you how to operate often-used functions. →p.506

Contents

How to Use This Manual	1
Quick Search	4
Contents	6
Features of the FOMA N903i	8
Mastering the FOMA N903i!.....	10
Safety Precautions	12
Handling with Care.....	19
Intellectual Property Right.....	22
Main Components and Optional Equipment.....	24

Getting Started  p.25	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Component names and functions • Icons on the display and image display • Using menus and other basic operations • FOMA card (UIM) • Inserting/Removing the battery pack • Charging • Turning a FOMA terminal on • Initial setting • Set time • Caller ID Notification, etc.
Voice/Videophone Calls  p.51	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Making a voice/videophone call • Changing between voice and videophone calls • Hands-free • Redial/Received calls • Chaku-moji • WORLD CALL • Receiving a voice/videophone call • Volume • Ring volume • On hold tone • Public mode (Driving mode/Power OFF) • Record message • Videophone settings, etc.
PushTalk  p.93	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • What is PushTalk? • Making/Receiving a PushTalk call • PushTalk phonebook • PushTalk setting, etc.
Using the Phonebook  p.105	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adding phonebook entries • Group setting • Search phonebook • Editing/deleting phonebook entries • Copying phonebook entries • Discern connect/Discern group, etc.
Tone/Display/Lighting Settings  p.123	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ring tone • Vibrator • Manner mode • Display setting • Image display • Backlight • Display design • Kisekai Tool • Neuropointer • 3D display setting, etc.
Security Settings  p.153	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Security code • PIN code • Dial lock • Omakase Lock • Secret mode/Secret folder • Original lock • Keypad lock • IC card authentication • Face authentication • Data Security Service, etc.
Camera  p.177	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Photo mode • Movie mode • Settings for shooting • Bar code reader • Access reader, etc.
i-mode/i-motion/ i-channel  p.207	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • What is i-mode? • Viewing sites • i-mode password • Internet access • Bookmark • Message service • Downloading i-motion • Using i-channel, etc.
Mail  p.235	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • What is i-mode mail? • Creating and sending i-mode mail • Deco-mail/Auto Deco-mail • Attaching files • Receiving mails • Check new messages • Replying/Forwarding mails • i-motion mail • Using mail boxes • Mail settings • Chat mail • SMS (Short Message), etc.

i-αppli  p.283	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • What is an i-αppli? • Downloading an i-αppli • Launching an i-αppli • Pre-installed software • i-αppli standby screen • Upgrading an i-αppli, etc.
Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa  p.297	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • What is Osaifu-Keitai? • What is iC transfer service? • Using Osaifu-Keitai • What is ToruCa? • Acquiring ToruCa • Viewing ToruCa • IC card lock, etc.
GPS Function  p.305	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • What is GPS? • Checking the current location • Using GPS i-αppli • Providing location information • Notifying the current location • Location information history, etc.
Full Browser  p.319	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Displaying website designed for PC • Full Browser settings, etc.
Display/Edit/ Organization  p.327	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Data box • Image • Movie/i-motion • Chara-den • Melody • Kisekae Tool • microSD memory card • Infrared data exchange/iC communication • Displaying PDF data • Displaying documents • Printing images, etc.
Music Playback  p.381	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Downloading Chaku-Uta-Full® • Playing music, etc. * “Chaku-Uta-Full” is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.
Other Useful Functions  p.391	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Multi access • Multitask • Alarm clock • Schedule • To Do list • My Profile • Checking Call data • Calculator • Text memo • Dictionary • Reset settings • Initialize, etc.
Network Services  p.417	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Voice Mail service • Call Waiting • Call Forwarding service • Nuisance Call Blocking service • Caller ID Request service • Dual Network service • Multi Number, etc.
Data Communication  p.427	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Data communication available for a FOMA terminal, etc. * For details, see “Manual for Data Communication” (PDF) in the bundled CD-ROM.
Entering Text  p.431	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Selecting character entry method • 5-touch • Common phrases • Copying, cutting and pasting text • Own dictionary • Download dictionary • 2-touch • T9 input, etc.
Traveling with N903i  p.445	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • WORLD WING • Available overseas service • Checking before using overseas • Making/Receiving a call abroad • NW search mode, etc.
Appendix/External Devices/Troubleshooting  p.453	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Menu function list • Data stored at the time of purchase • Key assignment • Symbols, pictographs, smiley face symbols and common phrases • Multi access/Multitask combination patterns • Options/Accessories • Troubleshooting • Error message • Software Update • Main specifications, etc.
Index/Quick Manual  p.497	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Index • Quick Manual • Quick Manual (Overseas)

Features of the FOMA N903i

FOMA is the name of DoCoMo's service based on the W-CDMA system approved as one of the global standards for third-generation mobile telecommunication systems (IMT-2000).

i-mode

i-mode is an online service that allows you to use i-mode menu sites (programs) or i-mode compatible sites or to send and receive mails by using an i-mode terminal display.

* i-mode is a pay service you need to subscribe to.

Features of N903i

■ GPS function

→ p.305

Enables you to acquire the location information of your FOMA terminal using radio waves transmitted from the GPS satellite. With the acquired location information, you can search for the map or for information about your present location, attach the present location information to a mail to send or have your FOMA terminal to guide you to the destination (a navigation i- α pli is stored on your FOMA terminal at the time of purchase). Your FOMA terminal also supports the address link function that launch a GPS i- α pli using address information on a site. Furthermore, the GPS function helps you acquire more accurate location information when you are using "imadoco-search" by which a third party can check the location information of the FOMA terminal user via i-mode or a PC, or "Keitai search service" that allows you to check the location information of the FOMA terminal you lost.

* If "Permit to send loc." under "Request menu" is set to "ON", location information may be sent and notified to the searcher even if you do not operate the FOMA terminal.

■ i-mode mail, Deco-mail, Decorate PI → pp.236, 243

In addition to the text body, you can attach up to 10 files such as JPEG, ToruCa and PDF within a total of 2M bytes. Deco-mail and Decorate PI are also supported, enabling you to change the font color, font size or background color of message text to create richly expressive mails.

■ Chaku-Uta-Full®

→ p.382

You can download a whole music from an online music distribution website. You can play the downloaded music and set it as a ring tone.

■ ToruCa

→ p.299

ToruCa is an electronic card that can be acquired via Osaifu-Keitai, which can be used as an ad, restaurant card, coupon, etc. ToruCa can be acquired via a reader unit, from a QR code or downloaded from a site, and can be easily exchanged via a mail. Infrared data exchange or the microSD memory card. When using iC communication, you can exchange ToruCa by putting your Osaifu-Keitai close to another.

The acquired ToruCa is easily available by displaying it on a screen or holding it over a reader unit.

■ Osaifu-Keitai (i-mode FeliCa supported) → p.298

By downloading an Osaifu-Keitai i- α pli, you can transmit electric money from the site into the iC card in your FOMA terminal or check the accountant balance or transaction history. The i- α pli of the DoCoMo credit service "DCMX" is pre-installed in your FOMA terminal. Using the application enables you to use your FOMA terminal as more efficient tool, "Osaifu-Keitai". "iC transfer service" is also supported so that you can easily move your iC card data to a new terminal when replacing your FOMA terminal.

Wide variety of network services (p.417)

- Voice Mail (charged)*
- Call Waiting (charged)*
- Call Forwarding (free)

- Nuisance Call Blocking (free)*
- Caller ID Request (free)
- Dual Network (charged)

- English Guidance (free)
- Multi Number (charged)*

* You need to subscribe to this service.

■ PushTalk

→ p.93

Just select the parties from the PushTalk phonebook and then press the PushTalk key. You can talk with one party or more (up to five people including yourself) at the same time.

■ i-channel

→ p.232

You can receive graphical information such as news or weather reports. Selecting a channel from the list provides you with rich, detailed information that consists of Flash (p.213) movies.

* This is a pay service you need to subscribe to.

■ Chaku-moji

→ p.65

When calling someone, you can show a message on the screen of the other party's phone. The other party can see your business or feeling from the message before answering the call.

■ Videophone/Chara-den

→ p.51

You can talk to the other party seeing his/her face. Your FOMA terminal is set to emit other party's voice through the speaker at default so that you can start talking immediately when making or answering a call. Furthermore, you can change the call mode from voice to videophone without having to end the call.

■ Mega i- α pli/i- α pli DX

→ p.283

Downloading an i- α pli from a site enables you to enjoy a game or automatically update information such as share prices or weather report. Your FOMA terminal supports large-sized mega i- α pli programs that allow you to enjoy high-resolution 3D games and full-length roll playing games. i- α pli DX can be linked to the information such as phonebook entries or mails stored in an i-mode terminal.

■ Omakase Lock

→ p.157

If you lost your FOMA terminal, you can lock it or release the lock condition on your request. For inquiries, contact the number listed in "For inquiries" on the back cover of this manual.

* Omakase Lock is a service where a FOMA terminal is locked by a request from the subscriber. Even if someone else uses the terminal, it is locked at the subscriber's request.

■ Data Security Service

→ p.175

This is a data backup service that you can store your data such as phonebook entries, images and messages on the Data Security Center and if your FOMA terminal happens to be lost, the Center will help you retrieve the stored data to a mobile phone. Moreover you can edit or manage those stored data using a PC and reflect the edited data to your mobile phone. For details of the "Data Security Service", see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]". For inquiries, contact the number listed in "For inquiries" on the back cover of this manual.

* This is a pay service you need to subscribe to.

2.5 inch VGA LCD

Incorporates a high-resolution LCD of 480 dots wide × 690 dots high that displays files such as PDF, Microsoft® Word or Microsoft® Excel clearly.

Camera → p.177

- Incorporates the digital shake correction function that allows you to shoot images under low light condition or to shoot movies where your hand jiggles easily.
- The CMOS (rear camera) featuring the auto focus function of effective 3.2 million pixels enables you to shoot large images of 2,048 dots wide × 1,536 dots high.

Music player → p.382

- Since "Chaku-Uta-Full®" is supported, you can download the entire track from an online music distribution site to play it.
- You can also add music on a CD to the microSD memory card via a PC and play the music with your FOMA terminal.

IC card authentication → p.168

Instead of entering a security code, putting your FOMA terminal close to a contactless IC card supporting FeliCa performs user authentication to release Dial lock or Keypad lock.

Face authentication → p.169

Face authentication is available to identify the user when releasing Keypad lock or IC card lock.

Original lock/Keypad lock → pp.162, 167

- You can lock functions such as phonebook or mail that handle personal data or restrict making/receiving of calls or sending/receiving of mails (Original lock).
- You can automatically lock keys when folding your FOMA terminal or a certain period of time has passed without using any keys on the FOMA terminal (Keypad lock).

PDF viewer/Document viewer → pp.371, 376

- With the PDF viewer, you can easily see useful information such as a map, catalogue or time table on your i-mode terminal.
- The document viewer that allows you to view document files of Microsoft® Word, Microsoft® Excel and Microsoft® PowerPoint is incorporated.

Full Browser → p.319

Full Browser displays websites for PC, which provide you with more information than only i-mode sites do.

International roaming → p.446

The FOMA terminal, phone number and mail address you use in Japan are also available overseas (only in 3G areas). You can use voice call, videophone call, i-mode, i-mode mail, SMS and network services.

Kisekae Tool → pp.142, 351

Enables you to change ring tones, the standby screen and menu icons, etc. at one time.

Wide variety of attachments (mail) → p.248

Wide variety of attachments such as image, movie, melody, PDF data and phonebook are supported so that you can exchange them using i-mode mail.

Auto Deco-mail → p.245

Your FOMA terminal recognizes emotion expressed on the message you enter, and chooses the best suited decoration to your message in self-decorating.

Emotion-expressing mail → p.251

An icon pops up and shows an emotion matching the contents of a received mail.

PictBridge print → p.379

Connecting your FOMA terminal to a printer supporting PictBridge enables you to directly print photos shot with the front camera, etc.

iC communication → p.365

Putting FeliCa marks () of sending and receiving FOMA terminals close to each other enables you to exchange data.

Infrared data exchange/Infrared remote control → pp.365, 371

You can exchange data with other FOMA terminals using Infrared data exchange. You can also use your FOMA terminal as a remote control.

microSD memory card available → p.352

- You can back up data such as phonebook entries, bookmarks, mails and images onto the microSD memory card.
- Data such as downloaded i-motion programs can be copied to the microSD memory card (Cannot be copied if not permitted by the provider).

Multi access/Multitask → pp.392, 393

Multi access function allows you to use a voice call, packet communication and SMS at the same time. Multitask function allows you to use multiple functions at the same time by switching them.

Text entry → p.431

Displays candidates for texts you will enter (including pictographs and face symbols). You can select one of four font sizes for the message edit screen, etc.

Dictionary → p.410

Equips Japanese, English-Japanese and Japanese-English dictionaries.

Bar code reader → p.199

You can scan bar codes or QR codes with your FOMA terminal and use the information to store it into the phonebook or compose i-mode mails, etc.

Ring tone → p.124

The ring tone function supports 67-harmony ADPCM based on FM + WaveTable and sound effects such as voice.

Mastering the FOMA N903i!

Use your current location info “GPS function”

●GPS function → p.305

Get your current location information, and let the other party know the information or use the navigation function.



Shake correction evolves “Camera”

●Shake correction function → p.195

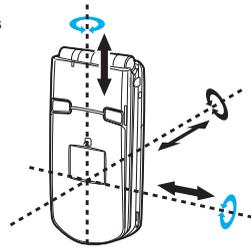
The shake correction function evolves furthermore and prevents from being shaken in six directions while shooting images or in four directions while shooting movies.

●Shoot folded → p.188

While the FOMA terminal is folded, only pressing and holding  for 1 second or longer displays the video shot viewing on the rear camera on the image display. You do not miss the shutter chance to take a quick shot.

●Image correction “PictMagic II”

PictMagic is upgraded. The “Correct backlight” and “Refresh skin tone” effect is added as well as the original auto-correction function. For person, “Exposure adjust” and “favor fresh color” are available for adjustment.

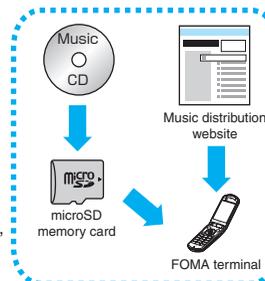


* Shooting in the directions shown by blue arrows is only available for images.

Chaku-Uta-Full[®] compatible “Music player”

●Music player → p.382

This terminal is compatible with “Chaku-Uta-Full[®]”, which allows you to download the entire track from an online music distribution website and to play it on the FOMA terminal. You can also copy songs on music CDs to the microSD memory card using a PC and play music on the FOMA terminal. Other functions include BGM playback, which allows you to listen to music while you use other functions, display of album cover images and lyric sheets, and creation of the playlist on the FOMA terminal.



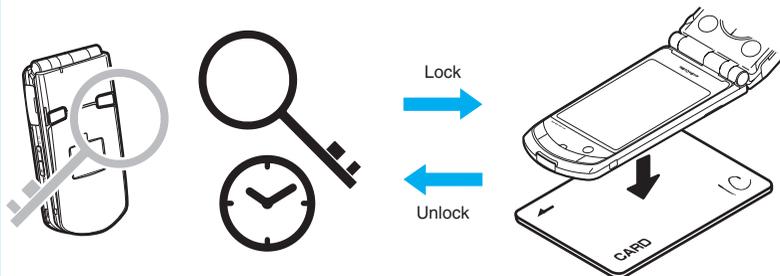
Connect the flat-plug stereo earphone (optional). You can use the FOMA terminal as a portable audio player.

Quick security

“Keypad lock”/“IC card authentication”

- Keypad lock → p.167
- IC card authentication → p.168

Use both “Keypad lock”, which locks keypads quickly, and “IC card authentication”, which unlocks quickly. Security is quickly established.



When you fold the FOMA terminal or do not operate it for a given time, the keypads are locked.

Instead of entering your security code, put your FOMA terminal close to the contactless IC card registered beforehand no matter if it is opened or folded. You will be authenticated as the user and the keypad lock will be released.

VGA LCD

“VGA LCD”

- Document viewer → p.376

The LCD clearly displays Microsoft® Word, Microsoft® Excel or Microsoft® PowerPoint files or PDF files attached to large-sized i-mode messages.

- ゼンリン⁺地図+ナビN → p.308

Use GPS-compatible ゼンリン⁺地図+ナビN (ZENRIN Maps + Navi N) to clearly show you even small paths.



Safety Precautions

ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS

- To ensure that you use your FOMA terminal correctly, read “Safety Precautions” carefully before use. Keep this manual in a safe place for future reference.
- The safety precautions must be observed at all times since they contain information intended to prevent bodily injuries or damage to the property.
- The following symbols indicate the different degrees of injuries and damage that may occur if the information provided is not observed and the FOMA terminal is used incorrectly.

 DANGER	Indicates that improper use may directly and immediately result in death or serious bodily injury.
 WARNING	Indicates that improper use may result in death or serious bodily injury.
 CAUTION	Indicates that improper use may result in bodily injury and/or damage to the property.

- The following symbols indicate specific directions:

 Don't	Indicates that it is prohibited.
 No disassembly	Indicates that it must not be disassembled.
 No wet hands	Indicates that you must not touch it with wet hands.
 No liquids	Indicates that it must not be used near water, which means that you must not get it wet.
 Do	Indicates that you must do it following the instructions.
 Unplug	Indicates that you must unplug the power cord from the outlet.

- “Safety Precautions” are categorized into the following:

1. Handling the FOMA terminal, Battery Pack, Adapter (including the Charger) and FOMA card (UIM) (Common) 13
2. Handling the FOMA terminal 14
3. Handling the Battery Pack 16
4. Handling the Adapters (including the Charger) 17
5. Handling the FOMA card (UIM) 18
6. Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment 18

1. Handling the FOMA terminal, Battery Pack, Adapter (including the Charger) and FOMA card (UIM) (Common)

DANGER



Use the battery pack and adapter (including the charger) specified by NTT DoCoMo for the FOMA terminal.

Using the devices other than those specified by NTT DoCoMo may cause the FOMA terminal, battery pack and other devices to leak, overheat, explode, ignite or malfunction.

- Battery Pack N14
- Desktop Holder N12
- FOMA AC Adapter 01
- FOMA DC Adapter 01
- Data Communications Adapter N01
- FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use 01
- FOMA Battery Adapter 01

* For information on other compatible products, contact the DoCoMo service counter.



Do not get the devices wet.

Exposure of the FOMA terminal and other devices to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction, injury, etc. Be careful where and how you use the devices.



No disassembly

Do not attempt to disassemble or remodel the FOMA terminal or other devices, and do not solder them.

Doing so may cause fire, injury or electric shock.

Also, doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



Don't

Do not use or leave the FOMA terminal or other devices in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near fire, near a heater, in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, cause the devices to be deformed or malfunction, lower the performance or shorten the life. Also, doing so may cause part of the case to become hot and possibly cause burns.

WARNING



Don't

Do not place the FOMA terminal, battery pack, charger or adapters or FOMA card (UIM) in a cooking appliance such as a microwave oven or in a pressure cooker.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, cause the FOMA terminal or adapter (including the charger) to overheat, smoke or ignite, or damage the IC.



Don't

FOMA terminal or other devices to strong impacts or throw them.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, or cause the devices to malfunction or ignite.



Do

Be sure to turn off the mobile phone before entering a place where flammable gas could generate such as gas station. Also, do not charge the phone. Gas could ignite.

Turn off the mobile phone when using Osaifu-Keitai in a certain area including the gas station. (If setting the IC card lock, unlock it before turning the power off.)



Don't

Keep conductive foreign objects (metal, pencil lead, etc.) away from the charge terminal or external connector. Do not insert such objects inside.

Failure to observe these precautions may result in short-circuits causing the FOMA terminal to ignite or malfunction.



Do

If you notice something unusual about the FOMA terminal or other devices, such as an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration or deformation during use, charging or storage, immediately:

1. Unplug the power cord from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
2. Turn off the FOMA terminal.
3. Remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal.

Continuing to use the devices may cause overheat, explosion or ignition, or cause the battery pack to leak.

CAUTION



Do

If your child uses the FOMA terminal, instruct him/her how to use it. Make sure that he/she always uses the FOMA terminal correctly as you instruct.

Improper usage may cause injury.



Do not keep the devices in a humid, dusty or hot place.

Don't

Doing so may cause malfunction.



Do

Using repeatedly or for a long time by charging, shooting/playing a movie, talking on a videophone call or using i-mode/i-αppli may increase the temperature of the FOMA terminal, battery pack or adapter (including the charger).

Exposure of your skin directly to the high-temperature part for a long time may cause skin irritations such as itch, rashes or eczema.

Take great care especially when using the FOMA terminal connected to the adapter (including the charger) continuously for a long time.



Don't

Do not leave the devices on a slope or unstable surface.

The devices may fall to cause injury or malfunction.



Do

Keep the devices out of young children's reach.

A young child may mistakenly swallow a device or suffer from the injury.



Do

When you attach the earphone/microphone to the FOMA terminal to play games or music, do not make the volume too loud.

Excessive high volume may damage your hearing. Also it may prevent you from hearing the ambient sounds and cause an accident.

2. Handling the FOMA terminal

WARNING



Don't

Do not use the FOMA terminal while driving a vehicle.

Since November 1st, 2004, using a mobile phone while driving is a legal offense. Even if you are using a hands-free kit, pull off the road and park in a safe place before using your phone. While driving, set Public mode (Driving mode) or use the Voice Mail service.



Do

Turn off the FOMA terminal in a place where you are not allowed to use a mobile phone, such as in an airplane or in a hospital.

Using the FOMA terminal in such a place may affect electronic or medical

equipment. If your FOMA terminal is equipped with the Auto power function, make sure to set the function to OFF before turning off the FOMA terminal.

Follow the instructions of individual hospitals or health care facilities that prohibit carrying or using mobile phones. If you use a phone in an airplane, which is prohibited, you may be punished by law.



Do

If you have a weak heart, be careful with the call vibration/speaker volume settings.

Your heart may be adversely affected.



Don't

Do not aim or direct the infrared data port towards your or another person's eyes when using infrared data exchange.

Doing so may cause eye injury. Do not aim or direct the infrared data port towards another infrared device as doing so may cause the device to malfunction.



Do

Keep the FOMA terminal turned off near electronic equipment using high-precision control or weak signals.

Radio waves may interfere with the operation of sensitive electronic equipment.

* Take great care on the following electronic devices:

Hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted cardioverter-defibrillators, and other electronic medical equipment, fire alarms, automatic doors and other equipment controlled by electronic signals.

If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker, implanted cardioverter-defibrillator or other electronic medical equipment, contact the respective manufacturers or distributors for information about the effects of radio waves on the equipment.



Don't

If you are wearing a medical electronic device, do not place the FOMA terminal in a breast pocket or inner pocket.

Using the FOMA terminal near medical electronic devices may cause them to malfunction.



Do

Hold the FOMA terminal away from your ear and keep it at a reasonable distance when you talk in hands-free mode with the speaker.

Failure to do so may adversely affect your hearing.



If you hear thunder while using your FOMA terminal outdoors, turn it off and move to a safe place immediately.

Failure to do so may expose you to lightning or electric shock.



Do not shine the light at anyone driving a car or other vehicle.

Doing so may prevent a driver from driving safely and cause a traffic accident.



Keep the display light away from a person's eyes.

The light may affect eyesight. Also, this may dazzle or surprise him/her and cause an injury.



Do not put the FOMA terminal on the dashboard, etc. as doing so may cause problems in the event of air bag inflation.

Air bag inflation may cause the FOMA terminal to hit you or another person, which may lead to injury, malfunction, breakage, etc.

CAUTION



In some types of vehicle, using the FOMA terminal in the vehicle may interfere with the operation of the vehicle's electronic equipment.

Do not use the FOMA terminal if the terminal may impair safe driving.



Do not swing the FOMA terminal by the hand strap or another part.

Doing so may cause bodily injury and malfunction or breakage.



Do not put fluids such as water or objects such as pieces of metal or flammable materials into the microSD memory card slot.

Doing so may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



Take care when attaching or removing the microSD memory card.

This may injure your hands or fingers.



Do not put fluids such as water or objects such as pieces of metal or flammable materials into the FOMA card slot on the FOMA terminal.

Doing so may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



Do not place magnetic cards near the FOMA terminal or clamp them in the fold of the FOMA terminal.

Magnetic data on cash cards (ATM cards, bank cards), credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be erased.



If the display or camera lens is broken, be careful of the broken glass.

The surface of the display or camera lens is covered by a plastic panel so as to minimize the possibility of glass scattering. However, touching the broken display or camera lens may cause injury.



Do not leave the built-in camera lens exposed to direct sunlight for a long time.

The condensing action of the lens may cause fire or malfunction.



Do not turn the light on when the FOMA terminal is close to a person's eyes. Take care not to bring the light close to a person's eyes or look directly into the light while it is lit.

Doing so may cause impaired vision or otherwise adversely affect his/her eyes. Also, doing so may dazzle or surprise him/her and cause an injury.



Do not use the light for use other than shooting with the built-in cameras.

The light will be turned off if you do not operate at all for approximately 30 seconds. If you use it for purposes other than shooting with the built-in camera (e.g. using it as an electronic torch), the light is suddenly turned off, which may cause an accident.



Using the FOMA terminal may cause skin irritations such as itch, rashes or eczema. If this occurs, immediately stop using the FOMA terminal and see a doctor.

The metal is used in the following locations:

Location	Material	Surface treatment
Multi-function keys	Aluminum alloy	Alumite treatment
Neuropointer key		
Sides of the hinge ¹	Vacuum evaporated tin	UV coating
Rear camera		
Rear side of the FOMA terminal ²		
Design plate	Nickel	Chrome plating ³

- *1: Used only when the phone color is "Jet black" or "Sparkle white".
- *2: Used only when the phone color is "Jet black".
- *3: When the phone color is "Vermilion orange", "ruthenium plating" is used.



Take care not to pinch your finger or the strap when opening or folding the FOMA terminal.

Doing so may cause injury or damage.



If the display is broken and the liquid crystal then leaks, do not lick or inhale the liquid or get the liquid on your skin.

If the liquid comes into contact with your eyes or mouth, immediately rinse your eyes or mouth with clean water and see a doctor.

If the liquid comes into contact with your skin or clothes, immediately wipe it off with alcohol, and wash with water and soap.

The liquid may cause loss of eyesight or skin problems.



Use the FeliCa reader/writer function in Japan.

The FeliCa reader/writer function of a FOMA terminal complies with radio standard in Japan and is certified. You may be punished if you use it overseas.



Use the IC card authentication function in Japan.

The IC card authentication function of a FOMA terminal complies with radio standard in Japan and is certified. You may be punished if you use it overseas.

3. Handling the Battery Pack

- Refer to the information shown on the battery pack label to check the type of battery pack.

Label description	Battery type
Li-ion	Lithium-ion

DANGER



Do not throw the battery pack into fire.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



Do not let wire or other metals come close to the terminal. Also, do not carry or store the battery with metallic items such as a necklace.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



If you are having difficulty in fitting the battery pack to the FOMA terminal, do not apply excessive force. Check the battery's orientation before inserting it.

Failure to observe these precautions may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



If battery fluid gets into your eyes, do not rub them. Rinse them immediately with clean water and consult a doctor as soon as possible.

Battery fluid is harmful to your eyes and may result in loss of eyesight.



Do not puncture the battery pack, hammer it or step on it.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.

WARNING



If charging the battery is not completed within the appropriate charging time, stop charging.

Failure to observe this precaution may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



If battery fluid gets on your skin or clothing, rinse immediately with clean water.

Do

Failure to do so may cause skin problems.



If the battery is leaking or smells strange, immediately move it away from any heat sources.

Do

Leaking fluid may ignite and cause fire or explosion.

CAUTION



Do not dispose of exhausted batteries with ordinary refuse.

Don't

Doing so may cause fire or environmental destruction. Tape over the charger terminals and take the battery to a DoCoMo Shop or follow local regulations regarding battery disposal.

4. Handling the Adapters (including the Charger)

WARNING



Use the specified socket and voltage.

Do

Using a charging device with a non-specified socket or voltage may cause fire or malfunction. If you use the FOMA terminal overseas, take the FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use 01 with you.

AC Adapter: AC 100V

FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use:

AC 100V to 240V (Plug only into home AC outlet)

DC Adapter:

DC 12/24V (only for cars with negative ground)



The DC Adapter is only for cars with negative ground. Do not use it in cars with positive ground.

Don't

Doing so may cause fire.



Use only the specified fuse to replace the fuse of the DC Adapter.

Do

Using it with non-specified fuses may cause fire or malfunction.

Refer to the respective manuals for information on the correct fuse specifications.



If the power cord becomes damaged, stop using it.

Don't

Continuing to use it may cause electric shock, overheating or fire.



Do not touch a charging device, power cord, or AC socket with wet hands.

No wet hands

Doing so may cause electric shock.



Do not short-circuit the charging terminals or connector terminals while a charging device is connected to an electric socket or cigarette lighter socket. Also, do not touch the charger or connector terminals with any part of your body.

Don't

Doing so may cause fire, malfunction, electric shock or bodily injury.



Do not use the AC Adapter or Desktop Holder in a very humid place.

Don't

Doing so may cause electric shock.



Wipe any dust off the plug.

Do

Failure to do so may cause fire.



If you hear thunder, do not touch the devices.

Don't

Doing so may expose you to lightning strikes or electric shock.



Always unplug the adapter or charger from the power outlet if it will be left unused for a long period.

Unplug

Failure to observe this precaution may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



If fluids such as water seep into the device, immediately unplug it from the electric socket or cigarette lighter socket.

Unplug

Failure to do so may cause electric shock, smoke or fire.



Do not apply excessive force when the cord cannot be unplugged.

Don't

Doing so may damage the cord and cause electric shock or malfunction.



Do not plug too many devices at the same time as doing so may cause the limit of the outlet or wire socket to be exceeded.

Don't

Tangling electric cords may cause overheating or fire.



Do not place a charging device in an unstable place while charging. Do not cover or wrap the charging device with cloth or a futon.

Don't

Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal to fall off, overheat, catch fire or malfunction.



When plugging the AC Adapter into an electric socket, do not allow it to touch metal, and be sure to plug the charger securely.

Failure to observe this precaution may cause electric shock, short-circuit or fire.

CAUTION



Before cleaning the device, always unplug it from the electric socket or cigarette lighter socket.

Failure to do so may cause electric shock.



Do not place heavy objects on the power cord.

Doing so may cause electric shock or fire.



When unplugging a charger from an electric socket or cigarette lighter socket, do not pull the power cord itself but grasp the plug.

Pulling the cord itself may damage the cord and cause fire or electric shock.

5. Handling the FOMA card (UIM)

CAUTION



Be careful when dismantling the FOMA card (IC part).

This may injure your hands or fingers.



Do not throw the FOMA card into fire.

Doing so may cause melting, overheating, smoke emission, data loss or malfunction.

6. Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment

- The following safety precautions conform to the guidelines drawn up during the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, Japan, regarding how to protect electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phones:

WARNING



If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted cardioverter-defibrillator, keep the FOMA terminal at least 22 cm away.

Radio waves may affect the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.



Turn off the FOMA terminal in crowded places such as rush-hour trains in case somebody nearby is using an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted cardioverter-defibrillator.

Radio waves may affect the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.



Observe the following inside hospitals and health care facilities.

- Do not take the FOMA terminal into operating rooms, intensive care units (ICU), or coronary care units (CCU).
- Keep the FOMA terminal turned off in hospital wards.
- Keep the FOMA terminal turned off in hospital waiting rooms or wards, as there may be electronic medical devices in your vicinity.
- Follow the rules of individual hospitals or health care facilities that prohibit carrying or using mobile phones.
- If your FOMA terminal is equipped with the Auto power function, make sure to set the function to OFF before turning off the FOMA terminal.



Patients receiving medical treatment away from a hospital or medical facility (e.g. home treatment) who are using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted cardioverter-defibrillators should consult the respective manufacturers or distributors for information about the effects of radio waves on the equipment.

Radio waves may affect the operation of electronic medical equipment.

Handling with Care

General Notes

- **Do not allow the devices to become wet.**
The FOMA terminal, battery, adapters (including the charger) and the FOMA card (UIM) are not water-proof. Do not use them in very humid places or in the rain. When carrying the FOMA terminal in your shirt pocket, moisture from sweat may corrode internal parts and cause malfunction. Failure caused by the equipment becoming wet is not covered by the warranty and the equipment may not be repairable. Even if repair is possible, you will be charged for the repair.
- **Wipe with a soft dry cloth (of the type used for eyeglasses).**
 - The special coating may be applied on the FOMA display in order to clear the color LCD. Rubbing the LCD of the FOMA terminal with a dry cloth to clean it may scratch the LCD surface. Handle the FOMA terminal carefully and wipe it using a soft dry cloth (of the type used for eyeglasses). Leaving the surface exposed to moisture or soil for a long period may peel off or stain the LCD coating.
 - Wiping with alcohol, thinner, benzene or liquid soap may cause decals to fade or other discoloration.
- **Clean connectors with a dry cloth or cotton swab occasionally.**
Dirty connectors may cause poor contact and the FOMA terminal may switch off. Also as dirty connectors may prevent proper charging, clean the connectors with a dry cloth or cotton swab when they are soiled.
- **Do not place the FOMA terminal near the airflow of an air-conditioner.**
Sudden temperature changes may cause condensation and corrode internal parts.
- **Do not keep the FOMA terminal in a place where extreme force may be applied to it.**
Placing the FOMA terminal in a bag with many other items, or sitting down with the handset in your pocket may damage the display or internal circuit boards and cause malfunction. Such damage is not covered by the warranty.
- **Read the separate manuals supplied with the battery pack, adapter and charger carefully.**

Handling the FOMA Terminal

- **Do not use the FOMA terminal in extremely high or low temperatures.**
The operating temperature range is from 5°C to 35°C and the humidity range is from 45 to 85%.
- **The FOMA terminal may become warm while being used or charged. This is normal, and you can continue to use it.**
- **If you use the FOMA terminal near a landline, TV or radio, the FOMA terminal may affect the operation of these devices. Use the FOMA terminal as far as possible from these devices.**
- **It is your responsibility to back up all data stored on your FOMA terminal.**
Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to data stored on your FOMA terminal.
- **Do not sit down with the FOMA terminal in your back pocket. Also, do not put the FOMA terminal at the bottom of a bag where it may be subject to excessive pressure or weight.**
Doing so may cause malfunction.
- **Do not fold the FOMA terminal with an object such as the hand strap inserted between the keypad and display.**
Doing so may cause malfunction or breakage.
- **Usually keep the Earphone/Microphone terminal cover and external connector cover closed.**
Failure to do so may cause dust or water to seep in and cause malfunction.
- **Do not leave the camera under direct sunlight.**
Doing so may discolor or burn the element.
- **Do not put a sticker, etc. on the display or keypads.**
Doing so may cause you to wrongly press a key when the FOMA terminal is folded, or may damage the FOMA terminal.
- **Slip your hand through the strap to hold the FOMA terminal.**
Failure to do so may cause you to drop the FOMA terminal and cause malfunction.
- **Do not rub or scratch the display with metal, etc.**
Doing so may damage the display.

Handling the Battery Pack

- **The battery pack is a consumable item.**
The operating time of the fully charged battery pack depends on the conditions under which you use it, but if it decreases significantly, it is time to exchange it. Exchange it for a new battery pack with the same specifications.
- **Charge the battery pack within the proper ambient temperature range (5°C to 35°C).**
- **Make sure to charge the battery the first time you use the FOMA terminal or if you have not used it for a long period.**
- **The operating time of the battery pack depends on the conditions under which you use it and the deterioration level of the battery pack.**
- **Depending on the conditions under which it is used, the battery pack may swell as the life comes close to the end, but this causes no problem.**
- **Leaving the metallic part (connector) soiled may cause poor contact and the FOMA terminal may switch off. Wipe off the dirt with a dry cloth or cotton swab before use.**
- **Do not store or leave the battery pack with no battery left.**
Failure to observe this instruction may lower the performance or shorten the life of the battery pack.
If you leave it for a long period, remove it from the FOMA terminal, and store it in a cool, dry place. Also, charge the battery at least once in half a year.
- **Keep the battery pack in a cool and dry place away from direct sunlight.**
If you do not use the battery pack for a long period, use up the battery, remove the pack from the FOMA terminal, and keep it in a plastic bag.

Handling the Adapters and Charger

- **Charge the battery pack within the proper ambient temperature range (5°C to 35°C).**
- **Do not charge the battery:**
 - In a humid, dusty or shaky place
 - Near your landline, TV or radio
- **The adapter or charger may become warm while the FOMA terminal is charged. This is normal, and you can continue to use it.**
- **Do not use the DC Adapter while the engine is not running.**
Doing so may drain the car battery.
- **If you use an outlet that provides pull-out prevention, follow the instructions of the outlet manual.**
- **Do not subject the adapter or charger to strong impacts. Do not deform the charging terminal or terminal guide.**
Doing so may cause malfunction.

Handling the FOMA card (UIM)

- When inserting the FOMA card into the FOMA terminal, do not apply unnecessary force.
- The FOMA card may become warm while being used or while the FOMA terminal is charged. This is normal, and you can continue to use it.
- The warranty does not cover damage caused by inserting the FOMA card into some other type of IC Card reader/writer. It is your responsibility.
- Always keep the IC part clean.
- Wipe with a soft dry cloth (of the type used for eyeglasses).
- It is your responsibility to back up all data stored on the FOMA card.
Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to data stored on your FOMA terminal.
- To preserve the environment, take the used FOMA card to a DoCoMo shop.
- Do not use the FOMA terminal in extremely high or low temperatures.
The operating temperature range is from 5°C to 35°C and the humidity range is from 45 to 85%.
- Do not scratch, touch or short-circuit the IC carelessly.
Doing so may cause data loss or malfunction.
- Do not drop the FOMA card or subject it to strong impacts.
Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Do not bend the FOMA card or put something heavy on it.
Doing so may cause malfunction.
- When removing the FOMA card, do not apply unnecessary force.

Handling the microSD Memory Card

Do not remove the microSD memory card or turn off the FOMA terminal while using the microSD memory card.

Doing so may cause data loss or malfunction.

Handling the In-Car Holder

Be sure to attach the in-car holder to the arm rest, etc. Firmly place the FOMA terminal into the in-car holder.

Handling the Camera

If you break the law while using the FOMA terminal, you may be liable to prosecution under applicable laws and regulations (such as the Public Nuisance Laws).



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Half Mirror

Since the jet black colored FOMA terminal is covered by a half mirror panel, the image display may not be visible in a bright place such as outdoors or under fluorescent light. This is normal, and you can continue to use it.

Handling the FeliCa Reader/Writer

- The FeliCa reader/writer function of a FOMA terminal uses very weak radio waves that require no licensing of radio stations.
- The 13.56MHz frequency band is used. If there is another reader/writer around, keep enough distance between the FOMA terminal and that reader/writer. Also, make sure that there is no other radio equipment using the same frequency band nearby.

Intellectual Property Right

Copyright and Portrait Right

It is prohibited to duplicate, modify or publicly transmit contents such as text, images, music or software that were photographed using the FOMA terminal or downloaded from an Internet website, which are under third-party copyright, without the permission of the copyright holder, although it is permitted under copyright law to duplicate or quote the contents for personal use.

It may be prohibited to shoot or record a stage performance, entertainment or exhibition even if you only want to enjoy it.

Shooting a photo of someone with the FOMA terminal without his or her permission, or displaying a photo of someone shot with the FOMA terminal on a web page without his or her permission may be a breach of portrait right.

Trademarks and registered trademarks

All company names and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

- "FOMA", "mova", "i-mode", "i-channel", "i-appli", "i-appli DX", "WORLD CALL", "WORLD WING", "Public mode", "i-melody", "i-area", "i-motion", "mopera", "mopera U", "i-motion mail", "Chaku-motion", "Deco-mail", "Chara-den", "i-shot", "sigmarion", "musea", "DoPa", "Short mail", "Dual network", "FirstPass", "V-live", "visualnet", "Security Scan", "ToruCa", "PushTalk", "PushTalkPlus", "My DoCoMo", "iD", "DCMX", "FOMA" logo, "i-mode" logo, "i-appli" logo, "ToruCa" logo, "iD" logo, "DCMX" logo and "WORLD WING" logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
- microSD logo is a trademark. 
- F e l i c a is a contactless technology developed by Sony Corporation. F e l i c a is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
-  is a trademark of F e l i c a Networks, Inc.
- Java and all Java-related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of US Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- LC フォント/LC FONT®, エルシーフォント® and LC logo are registered trademark of Sharp Corporation. 
- T9® and T9 logo are registered trademarks of Tegic Communications, Inc. in the United States and other countries. 
- T9 Text Input is patented or under patent application worldwide.
- Dialog Clarity, WOW, SRS and the symbol  are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.

- Dialog Clarity and WOW technologies are industrialized based on the license from SRS Labs, Inc. 
- キャッチホン (Call Waiting) is registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- QR コード is registered trademark of Denso Wave, Inc.
- Handset 3D, Game 3D and their logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sonaptic LTD. in the UK. 
- This product is equipped with Flash® Lite™ technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated. Flash, Flash Lite and Macromedia are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.
- Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of the Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.
- NetFront and IrFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.

Copyright ©1996-2006 ACCESS CO., LTD.

- This product is equipped with NetFront for the Internet by ACCESS CO., LTD. NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and/or other countries.

Copyright ©1996-2006 ACCESS CO., LTD.

- ©Disney
- Gガイド, G-GUIDE, Gガイドモバイル, G-GUIDE MOBILE and G-GUIDE-related logo are registered trademarks of Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. in the United States and its affiliates in Japan. 
- McAfee® and VirusScan are registered trademarks or trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
All other registered and unregistered trademarks herein are the sole property of their respective owners.
©2006 Networks Associates Technology, Inc. All Rights Reserved.
- Apple, Apple logo and QuickTime are registered trademarks of Apple Computer Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- QuickTime logo is a trademark of Apple Computer Inc.
- “スーパー CCDハニカム” is a registered trademark of Fuji Photo Film Co., Ltd.
- The service name and logo mark for FreeDial is a trademark of NTT Communications Corporation.
- ©2006 ARMOR PROJECT / BIRD STUDIO / SQUARE ENIX All Rights Reserved.
- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002-2006 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved.
JBlend and all JBlend-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and/or other countries.
Powered by JBlend™ Technology.
JBlend and JBlend logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation.
- “カメラでケンサク! ERサーチ” and its logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of BANDAI NETWORKS CO., LTD.
- The other company names and product names described in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

Others

- This product is licensed complying with MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License, and it is permitted to use for personal purpose and for nonprofit purpose only when you:
 - Record a movie based on the standard of MPEG-4 Visual (hereinafter referred to as MPEG-4 Video)
 - Play MPEG-4 Video recorded by consumers engaged in personal and nonprofit activities
 - Play MPEG-4 Video provided by a provider licensed by MPEG-LA

When you use it for other purposes, such as promotion, in-house information and profit activity, contact the U.S. corporation MPEG LA, LLC.

- This product is equipped with Adobe Reader by Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Copyright 2006 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved. Patents pending.

Adobe, the Adobe logo and Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Adobe and Adobe Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773

5,101,501 5,506,865 5,109,390 5,511,073

5,228,054 5,535,239 5,267,261 5,544,196

5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338 5,600,754

5,414,796 5,657,420 5,416,797 5,659,569

5,710,784 5,778,338

- This product contains a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.

- This product is equipped with IrFront® for OBEX and infrared data exchange.

IrFront® is a product of ACCESS CO., LTD.

- This product contains software licensed complying with GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc. For more details, see "readme.txt" in the "GPL・LGPL等について" folder on the bundled CD-ROM. ("readme.txt" is only available in Japanese version.)
- This product is antibacterial.

The SIAA logo indicates that this product conforms to the JIS Z 2801 standard and that the quality control and information disclosure for this product follows the guidelines of the Society of Industrial Technology for Antimicrobial Articles (SIAA).



Antibacterial: Phone body (excluding the display, keys/buttons and terminals)

- Facestamps use the Virtual Accessory engine of N-Vision (Neven Vision, Inc.).



- ©2006 ZENRIN DataCom CO., LTD.

©2006 ZENRIN CO., LTD

- ©HUDSON SOFT

Description of Windows

- Windows® 2000 Professional stands for Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
- Windows® XP stands for Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
- This manual describes Windows® 2000 Professional as Windows 2000.
- This manual describes Windows® XP Professional and Windows® XP Home Edition as Windows XP.

Main Components and Optional Equipment

<Main Components>

FOMA N903i

(Including the warranty and Back Cover N15)



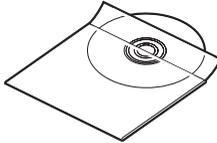
Manual for FOMA N903i

(This manual)



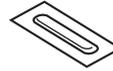
* The Quick Manual starts on p.506.

FOMA N903i CD-ROM



* This CD-ROM contains "Manual for Data Communication" (PDF) and "Kuten Code List" (PDF).

Protective Sticker

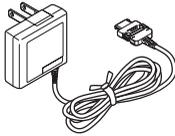


* Used to protect the rear side. See p.26 for where to put the sticker.

<Optional Equipment>

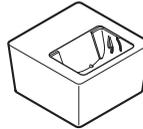
FOMA AC Adapter 01

(Including warranty and manual)



Desktop Holder N12

(Including manual)



Battery Pack N14

(Including manual)



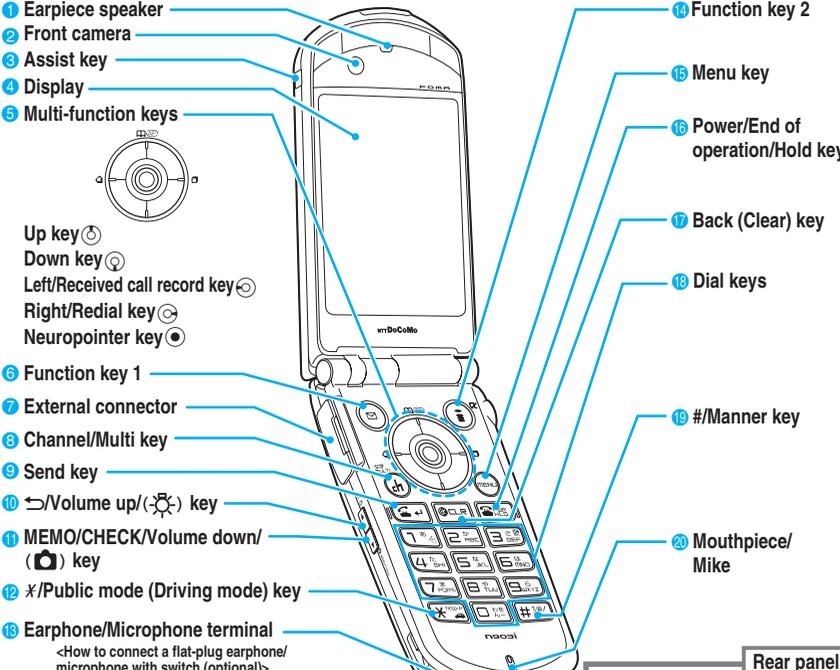
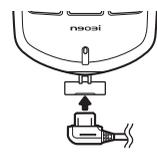
Other options and accessories → p.473

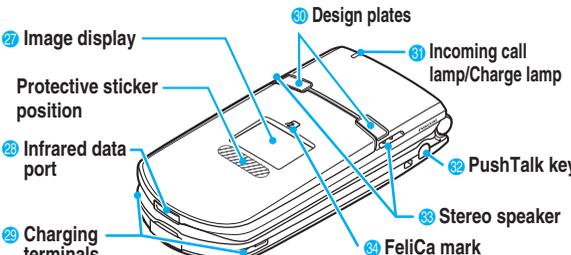
● Getting Started

Component Names and Functions	26
Icons on the Display and Image Display.....	30
Guide to Image Display (Rear Panel Display).....	32
Main Menu.....	33
Using Menus.....	34
Using the FOMA Card (UIM)	39
Inserting/Removing the Battery Pack	42
Charging a FOMA Terminal	44
Checking the Battery Level	46
Turning a FOMA Terminal on/off.....	46
Switching Language Mode	Select language 47
Performing Initial Settings.....	Initial setting 48
Setting Date and Time.....	Set time 49
Setting the World Clock	World watch 49
Showing Your Phone Number to the Other Party	Caller ID Notification 50
Checking Your Phone Number.....	My Profile 50

Component Names and Functions

The following are the names and functions of the keys on the N903i FOMA terminal:

- 
- 1 Earpiece speaker
 - 2 Front camera
 - 3 Assist key
 - 4 Display
 - 5 Multi-function keys
 - Up key 
 - Down key 
 - Left/Received call record key 
 - Right/Redial key 
 - Neuropointer key 
 - 6 Function key 1
 - 7 External connector
 - 8 Channel/Multi key
 - 9 Send key
 - 10 /Volume up/ key
 - 11 MEMO/CHECK/Volume down/ key
 - 12 /Public mode (Driving mode) key
 - 13 Earphone/Microphone terminal
 <How to connect a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional)>
 
 - 14 Function key 2
 - 15 Menu key
 - 16 Power/End of operation/Hold key
 - 17 Back (Clear) key
 - 18 Dial keys
 - 19 /Manner key
 - 20 Mouthpiece/Mike

- 
- 21 Image display
 - 22 Light
 - 23 Rear camera
 - 24 Shooting Indicator lamp
 - 25 microSD memory card slot²
 - 26 Back cover
 - 27 Protective sticker position
 - 28 Infrared data port
 - 29 Charging terminals
 - 30 Design plates
 - 31 Incoming call lamp/Charge lamp
 - 32 Push Talk key
 - 33 Stereo speaker
 - 34 FeliCa mark

*1 : This model is equipped with an internal antenna. Do not cover the antenna with your hand while using the terminal for better radio-wave reception.

*2 : To insert the microSD memory card, remove the back cover.

■ Functions

1 Earpiece speaker

- Allows you to hear the other party's voice.

2 Front camera

- Shoots pictures (still images) or movies or sends your image to the other party during videophone calls.

3 Assist key

- Checks for missed calls, new mails, etc. with a FOMA terminal folded. → p.81
- Reads out received mails or the alarm information of "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "To Do list". → p.394
- Performs the music player operations. → p.390

() and Assist key are collectively called external keys in this manual.)

4 Display

5 Multi-function keys

Up key

- Moves the cursor or highlight upward.
- Scrolls up a screen. Hold the key down to continue scrolling.
- Opens the phonebook list screen.
- Converts the entered characters into kanji, katakana and numbers.

Down key

- Moves the cursor or highlight downward.
- Scrolls down a screen. Hold the key down to continue scrolling.
- Opens the search phonebook screen.
- Moves the cursor into the operation guidance area when the predictive candidates of the entered characters are listed.

Left/Received call record key

- Moves the cursor to the left.
- Scrolls back to the previous screens by page.
- Shows the Received calls record. → p.64

Right/Redial key

- Moves the cursor to the right.
- Scrolls to the next screens by page.
- Shows the Redial record. → p.62

Neuropointer key

- Neuropointer → p.29

6 Function key 1

- Performs the operation indicated on the software key at the bottom-left of a screen. → p.28

7 External connector

- Used to connect an optional external device to a FOMA terminal.

8 Channel/Multi-key

- Shows the channel list on the standby screen. → p.234
- Opens the task change screen. → p.394
- Switches the input mode on the text entry screen. → p.435

9 Send key

- Makes voice calls. → p.53
- Answers voice/videophone calls. → p.71
- Switches the entered characters into upper or lower case. → p.436

10 /Volume up/() key

- Checks for missed calls or new mails with a FOMA terminal folded. → p.32
- Connects to the site set in "Home URL" (p.223) easily using i-mode.
- Lights the display light of the image display when pressed with a FOMA terminal folded.
- Turns up the earpiece volume during a call. → p.75
- Returns to the previous character assigned to the same key during text entry. → p.432
- Turns the light on when using the camera.
- Hides the i-channel ticker on the image display.
- Scrolls back to the previous screens by page.

11 MEMO/CHECK/Volume down/() key

- Activates "Record message" when pressed while a FOMA terminal is ringing. → p.83
- Plays recorded messages. → p.83
- Turns down the earpiece volume during a call. → p.75
- Lights the display light of the image display and reads out the current time when pressed with a FOMA terminal folded. → p.81
- Shoots still images with a FOMA terminal folded. → p.188

- Hides the i-channel ticker on the image display.
- Scrolls to the next screens by page.

12 /Public mode (Driving mode) key

- Enters "X", "http://" or other character strings. → p.465
- Sets/releases Public mode (Driving mode).

13 Earphone/Microphone terminal

- Connects a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional), etc.

14 Function key 2

- Performs the operation indicated on the software key at the bottom-right of a screen. → p.28

15 Menu key

- Displays the main menu. → p.33

16 Power/End of operation/Hold key

- Turns on the power when pressed for 1 second or longer. → p.46
- Turns off the power when pressed for 2 seconds or longer. → p.47
- Ends a call. → p.53
- Puts an incoming call on hold. → p.76

17 Back (Clear) key

- Goes back to one step before.
- Puts a call on hold. → p.77
- Deletes the entered phone numbers or characters. → pp.56, 438
- Runs the software set for the i-appli standby screen. → p.295

18 Dial keys to

- Used to enter phone numbers or text, perform menu items, etc.

19 #/Manner key

- Enters "#/" or symbols. → p.465
- Sets "Manner mode" and activates "Record message" when pressed while a FOMA terminal is ringing. → p.83

20 Mouthpiece/Mike

- Conveys your voice from here. Do not cover the mouthpiece while you are talking. Doing so may prevent the other party from hearing your voice.
- Works as the microphone when you shoot movies using the camera or record voice using "Picture voice".

21 Through-hole for strap

22 Light

- Provides light when pictures are taken with the camera.

23 Rear camera

- Shoots pictures (still images) or movies or sends images such as a landscape to the other party during videophone calls.

24 Shooting indicator lamp

- Lights up while shooting with a FOMA terminal folded. → p.188

25 microSD memory card slot

- Slot for inserting a microSD memory card. → p.353

26 Back cover

27 Image display

- Shows the FOMA terminal condition using messages, icons and animations.

28 Infrared data port

- Window used for sending or receiving infrared rays. → p.365

29 Charging terminals

30 Design plates

31 Incoming call lamp/Charge lamp

- Flashes when you receive a voice call, videophone call, mail, etc. Lights in red while charging.

32 PushTalk key

- Used for a PushTalk call. → p.95
- Shows the PushTalk phonebook on the standby screen.

33 Stereo speaker

- Emits sounds such as a ring tone or voice of the other party in hands-free mode.

34 FeliCa mark

- The IC card is built-in. Pass the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer unit to use the IC card function. This IC card cannot be removed.
- Used to transfer data via iC communication

Operations performed by a long press of a key

The operations performed by pressing a key for 1 second or longer are as follows:

Key	Operation	Refer to	Key	Operation	Refer to
	Opens the received address list.	p.268		Adjusts the earpiece volume. (while on the standby screen or during a call)	p.75
	Opens the sent address list.	p.268			
	Displays current location using the GPS function. (while on the standby screen)	p.307		Records voice memos. (during a call)	p.406
	Sets IC card lock. (while on the standby screen)	p.303			
	Turns the display light on/off.	p.138		Mutes the microphone. (during a videophone call)	p.52
	Enters "+". (while on the standby screen or phone number entry screen)	p.59		Uses the IC card authentication. (while in Dial lock/Keypad lock)	p.168
	Sets Manner mode. (while on the standby screen or during a call)	p.130		Checks new messages. (while on the standby screen)	p.226 p.252
	Opens the switching task screen. (while tasks are activated)	p.394		Opens the i-appli software list screen. (while on the standby screen)	p.287
	Opens the standby screen. (during Multitask)	p.393			
	Sets the external keys. (while on the main menu)	p.169	Assist key	Activates/quits the music player. (while on the standby screen, etc.)	p.390
	Sets Public mode (Driving mode). (while on the standby screen)	p.78			
	Enters p (pause). (while editing pause dial data)	p.68			

Software key

On a screen, operational icons (software keys) corresponding to the function keys (, ,) and directional icons corresponding to the Multi-function keys () appear.

■ To run a command corresponding to the software key ①

Press to run the command indicated on the software key ①.

① includes (Edit), (Store), (Finish), (Play), (), etc.

■ To run a command corresponding to the software key ②

Press to run the command indicated on the software key ②.

② includes (Select), (Set), (Play), (Change), etc.

■ To run a command corresponding to the software key ③

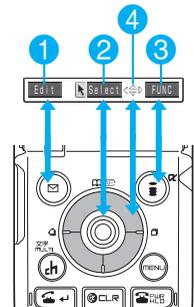
Press to run the command indicated on the software key ③.

③ includes (FUNC), (Exit), etc. Press while (FUNC) appears to open the function menu. → p.37

■ To move/scroll in the directions shown in ④

Use to move or scroll in the directions shown in ④.

The icons show in which directions you can move or scroll.



Neuropointer

Sliding the Neuropointer to move the pointer enables you to quickly select icons or items. When a list or function menu consists of multiple pages, you can switch the pages with the Neuropointer.

- When  appears at the bottom of the standby or another screen, slide the Neuropointer to show the pointer ().
- The design of the pointer can be changed. → p.144

Using the Neuropointer to switching pages

1 Slide to show ▶ Move the pointer to the bottom of its operating range

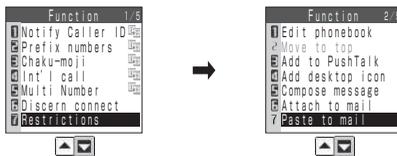
The pointer changes to .

■ When moving the pointer to the top

The pointer changes to .

2 Press

The next page appears.



■ To show the previous page

▶ Slide  leftward to change  to  ▶ Press 

Using the Neuropointer to scroll

You can scroll using the Neuropointer on the My picture, PDF data or document view screen or site screen in i-mode or full browser. When Scroll mode is set on a site screen in i-mode or full browser,  changes to  and an icon such as  appears, which allow you to scroll.

Scrolling in i-mode → p.211

Scrolling in full browser → p.322

Scrolling on the My picture screen → p.330

Scrolling on the PDF data screen → p.373

Scrolling on the document view screen → p.377

NOTE

- ◆ Neuropointer may be unavailable for selecting the menu screens of some Flash movies.

Icons on the Display and Image Display

The symbols (🔋, 📧, 📶, etc.) shown on the display and image display are referred to as icons.

● A calendar, etc. can be set on the display. → p.135

Display

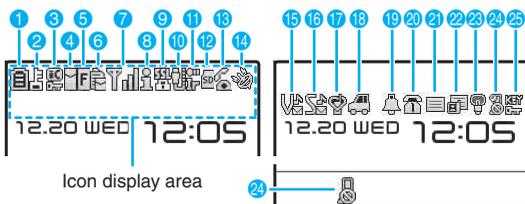
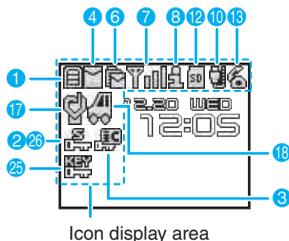


Image display

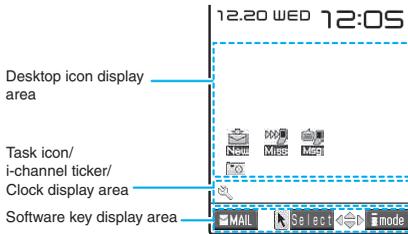


Icon display area

● The following table shows the icon images for the display. Some icons on the image display may differ from them.

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
1	Battery level → p.46	Mail kept at the i-mode Center when "Receive option setting" is set to "ON" → p.252	
2	Dial lock set → p.157	MessageR kept at the i-mode Center → p.227	
	Secret mode or Secret data only mode set → p.158	Memory for your MessageR kept at the i-mode Center is full → p.227	
	Original lock set → p.162	MessageF kept at the i-mode Center → p.227	
	"Dial/sending mail" and "Incoming/Mail disp." original lock temporarily released → p.162	Memory for your MessageF at the i-mode Center is full → p.227	
	Original lock and Secret mode or Secret data only mode set → pp.158, 162	7	Signal strength → p.47
	"Dial/sending mail" and "Incoming/Mail disp." original lock temporarily released and Secret mode or Secret data only mode activated → pp.158, 162	Out of service area or a radio wave does not reach → p.47	
3	IC card lock set → p.303	Self mode set → p.175	
4	Unread mail → p.250	8	i-mode in progress → p.208
	Inbox is full → p.250	i-mode communication in progress → p.208	
	FOMA card (UIM) memory for SMS is full → p.282	Packet communication in progress → p.428	
	Unread mail/FOMA card memory for SMS is full → p.282	Packet communication in progress (outgoing) → p.428	
	Inbox is full/FOMA card (UIM) memory for SMS is full → pp.250, 282	Packet communication in progress (incoming) → p.428	
5	Unread MessageR → p.225	Packet communication in progress (sending data) → p.428	
	Memory for MessageR is full → p.225	Packet communication in progress (receiving data) → p.428	
	Unread MessageF → p.225	PushTalk call in progress → p.95	
	Memory for MessageF is full → p.225	9	SSL-compatible page shown → p.211
	Unread MessageR/Unread MessageF → p.224	10	Communication mode set, USB cable unconnected and hands-free compatible device unconnected → p.361
	Memory for MessageR is full/Memory for MessageF is full → p.225	Communication mode set, USB cable connected and hands-free compatible device unconnected → p.361	
	Memory for MessageR is full/Unread MessageF → p.225	Communication mode set, USB cable connected and hands-free compatible device connected → pp.71, 361	
	Unread MessageR/Memory for MessageF is full → p.225	microSD mode set, USB cable unconnected and hands-free compatible device unconnected → p.361	
6	Mail kept at the i-mode Center → p.253	microSD mode set, USB cable connected and hands-free compatible device unconnected → p.361	
	Memory for mail at the i-mode Center is full → p.253	microSD mode set, USB cable connected and hands-free compatible device connected → pp.71, 361	

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	microSD mode set, USB cable unconnected and hands-free compatible device connected → pp.71, 361		Ring volume set to "Silent" → p.76 Mail/Msg. ring time set to "OFF" → p.130
	Print mode set, printer unrecognized and hands-free compatible device unconnected → p.361		Manner mode set → p.130
	Print mode set, printer recognized and hands-free compatible device unconnected → p.361		Remote monitoring set → p.91
	Print mode set, printer recognized and hands-free compatible device connected → pp.71, 361		Public mode (Driving mode) set → p.78
	Print mode set, printer unrecognized and hands-free compatible device connected → pp.71, 361		Alarm set → p.396
	Print mode set, printer unrecognized and hands-free compatible device connected → pp.71, 361		Voice Mail message → p.419
	Infrared data exchange in progress → p.365		Record message set → p.81
	Infrared remote control operated → p.371		Record message (Record VP message) set → p.81
	IC card being authenticated → p.168		Backlight set to "OFF" → p.138
	IC communication in progress (sending/receiving data) → p.365		Keypad lock set/waiting → p.167
	microSD memory card inserted → p.353		Keypad lock activated → p.167
	Disabled microSD memory card inserted → p.353		External keys guard set to "ON" → p.169
	microSD reader/writer operated → p.360		Keypad lock activated → p.167
	microSD being accessed → p.376		Both Original lock and Keypad lock activated → p.167
	During a voice call → p.53		"Dial/sending mail" and "Incoming/Mail disp." original lock temporarily released and Keypad lock activated → p.167
	64K data communication in progress → p.428		Keypad lock activated in Secret mode or Secret data only mode → p.167
	Communication speed during a videophone call → p.54		Keypad lock activated both in Original lock and in Secret mode or Secret data only mode → p.167
	Switching between voice call and videophone call → p.57		"Dial/sending mail" and "Incoming/Mail disp." original lock temporarily released and both Keypad lock and Secret mode or Secret data only mode activated → p.167
	GPS location being positioned → p.307		
	Permit to send loc. in the GPS function set to ON → p.312		
	Vibrator set → p.127		



Desktop icon display area

Icon	Description
etc.	Desktop icons that give notice → p.149
etc.	Added desktop icons → p.147

Task icon/i-channel ticker/clock display area

Icon	Description
etc.	Task icons → p.393
i-channel ticker	Ticker running on the standby screen → p.233
Clock	Date and time shown on the standby screen → p.146 (Time appears on other screens regardless of the Clock display setting)

NOTE

- ◆ The FOMA terminal's display adopts state-of-the-art technology; due to its characteristics, some dots (points) may not light up while others may always light up. This is not a failure.
- ◆ Press [3] [6] to check the name of the icon shown on the screen.

Guide to Image Display (Rear Panel Display)

The image display indicates an incoming call/mail or alarm in various forms such as messages, images and animations so that you can immediately check the information without opening a FOMA terminal.

- “Setting the Image Display Mode” → p.137
- You can view the i-channel information on the image display if “i-Channel setting” (p.234) is set.

Sample images



Clock (Digital 1)



Alarm clock ringing



Chaku-moji



Receiving call



GPS running



Emotion-expressing mail



Reading IC card



Switching voice/videophone calls



Ticker of the i-channel (twice)

Checking a caller or sender

Press (↵) to check a caller or sender.

- When performing the tool group operation (p.33), you cannot check missed calls on the image display.

Missed call

You can only check the latest missed call.



The clock reappears.

New mail

When receiving several mails at the same time, you can only check the latest one.



The clock reappears.

When “Mail” is set to “ON” in “Image display”, the sender, send date and time and subject appear.

NOTE

- ◆ Press (↵) with a FOMA terminal folded to light up the display light. It is useful e.g. to check the time in a dark place.
- ◆ In power saver mode, the image display is blank. Press (↵) to reactivate the image display.

Main Menu

To set or check various functions with a FOMA terminal, access the main item of each function from the main menu. Press **(MENU)** to open the main menu. The main menu consists of the following groups:

* The main menu is described in the phone's color surf blue.



- Mail group
- i-mode group
- i-appli group
- Tools group
- Settings group

<Mail group>

● Mail

Read sent/received mails, compose and send new mail.

<i-mode group>

● i-mode

Use i-mode service to access website, etc.

<i-appli group>

● i-appli

Find useful applications.

<Tools group>

● Data box

Enjoy picture, music, etc.

● Phonebook

Add data to phonebook, search data in phonebook, or change the settings.

● LifeKit

Find useful functions such as camera, alarm and data exchange.

● Own data

Manage and check your personal data and history.

<Settings group>

● Settings

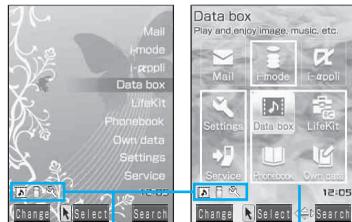
Change the settings to customize your FOMA terminal.

● Service

Specify and confirm the settings of network services.

"Multitask" → p.393

The FOMA terminal supports "Multitask" that enables you to use multiple functions at the same time, up to three functions from each main menu group. While in a Multitask operation, the active menu groups are enclosed with a box.



The icon of the in-use task appears.

In-use groups are enclosed with a box.

NOTE

- ◆ In case of the main menu of the phone's color Jet black (Mirror), the menu "LAST 5" appears other than the above. Up to 5 previously-selected items appear under this menu.

Using Menus

Open a screen from the main menu or original menu to set or check functions.

- You have two ways of accessing functions after pressing **(MENU)**: accessing a function from the main menu and accessing a function by entering the menu number (p.454). This “Manual for FOMA N903i” describes focusing on the procedures to access functions from the main menu.
- To cancel a menu operation, press **(END)**. It will cancel the operation in the middle of the setting to return to the standby screen or previous screen. However, a message asking whether to discard the entered or selected items may appear depending on the menu. In this case, press **(CLR)** to go back to the operation screen shown before the message appears.
- The frequently used menu such as Mail (p.238) or i-mode (p.208) can be accessed easily from the standby screen. On the standby screen, press **(MAIL)** (**[MAIL]**) to access the Mail menu or **(i-mode)** (**[i-mode]**) to access the i-mode menu.
- If **(Change)** appears, you can change the menu design. If **(Search)** appears, you can search for an item by entering text.

Selecting functions from the main menu

<Example: To set the flashing color for “Illumination in talk”>

- 1** **(MENU)** ▶ Use **(Neuropointer)** to select “Settings”, and press **(Neuropointer)** ▶ Use **(Neuropointer)** to highlight “Talk”, and press **(Neuropointer)**



■ To scroll continuously

▶ Keep holding **(Neuropointer)**

■ To use the Neuropointer

“Neuropointer” → p.29

■ If you do not press any keys for 15 seconds while the main menu appears

The main menu is closed and the previous screen reappears.

- 2** Use **(Neuropointer)** to highlight “Illumination in talk”, and press **(Neuropointer)**



NOTE

- ◆ The icon you selected the last time is highlighted when the main menu is opened (Last one function). This function is only available when “Memory focus” under “Menu display set” is set to “ON”.

● If items span multiple pages

1 Use to switch pages

Press  (or ) to scroll to the previous page or  (or  (MEMO/CHECK)) to the next page.



2 Press

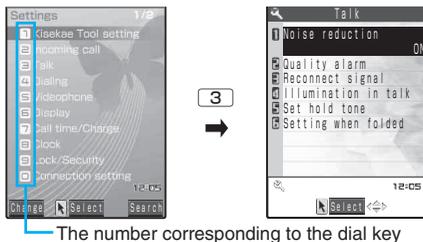
The selected item is set.

3 Press after the operation

The menu operation ends and the standby screen reappears. While Multitask is being performed, another active screen appears.

● Using the dial keys to select items

1 Press to corresponding to the item No.



The number corresponding to the dial key

● Selecting “YES/NO” or “ON/OFF”

1 Use to select “YES” (or “ON”) or “NO” (or “OFF”), and press

The selected item is set.



● Entering the security code

Some functions may open the security code entry screen before the detail screen appears. To open the detail screen, enter your security code. → p.154

1 Enter your 4- to 8-digit security code and press

The entered security code appears as “.”.

The detail screen of a function appears after the correct security code is entered.

■ If the entered security code is incorrect

A message appears notifying that the security code is incorrect. Re-enter the security code.



● Entering numbers

1 Press to to enter numbers

To enter a 1-digit number or 2-digit number on a 3-digit number entry screen, press  twice or once before entering the number.

■ To enter “3”

▶ , , 

■ To enter “12”

▶ , , 

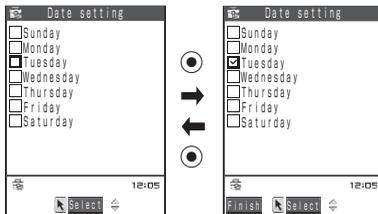


● Marking checkboxes (selecting multiple items)

1 Use to highlight a checkbox () and press

The checkbox changes from to . This indicates that the checkbox is selected. Press  to toggle and . If “Finish” appears as a software key, press  (Finish) to set the selected item.

If “FUNC” appears as a software key, you can press  (FUNC) to use functions such as “Select all” or “Release all”.



Changing the main menu display mode

1 (Change) Select any item

Main menu theme → p.140

■ To create an original menu

▶ “Original theme”

“Changing the main menu screen design” → p.141

■ To change the menu display mode

“Setting the menu display mode” → p.139



Changing to Light menu

The display mode can be changed to “Light menu” that displays only often-used menu items.

1 (Change) “Light Menu”



■ To change to the normal main menu

To display all menu items, change to the normal main menu.

▶ Select “Normal menu” on the Light menu screen



Searching for menu items

1 (MENU) (Search) Enter a keyword (OK)

The search result appears with the searched item selected.
Press (OFF) to end searching.

■ **If multiple search results come out**

Press (Next) to show the next search result.



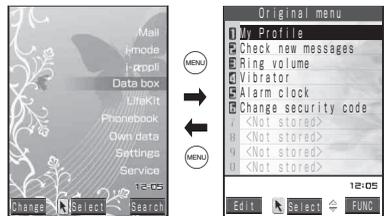
Searched "RING"

Selecting a function from your original menu

- Highlight "<Not stored>" and press (Edit) to edit the original menu.
- The original menu appears in "List".
- Adding items to the original menu → p.142

1 (MENU) (MENU)

Press (MENU) to switch between the main menu and original menu.

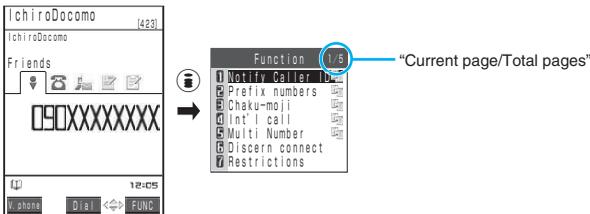


NOTE

- ◆ When you return to the standby screen or access a function from the original menu and press (MENU), the main menu appears.
- ◆ If no function is stored in the original menu, a message appears asking whether to add functions to the original menu.

Function menu

When you are using a function that enables you to store, edit or delete data, "FUNC" appears as a software key. Press (FUNC) to open the function menu. Use (Up/Down) to highlight an item to perform, and press (OK) to select it.



- When items span multiple pages, "Current page/Total pages" appears in the upper right corner of the function menu screen. When the top item is highlighted, press (Up) to show the previous page. When the bottom item is highlighted, press (Down) to show the next page. Press (Left) (or (Right)) to scroll to the previous page or (Right) (or (Left)) (MEMO/CHECK) to the next page.
- "MEMO/CHECK" appears on the right of an option if there are further menus under the option.
- The shown function menu differs depending on the active operation or setting.
- You may not be able to select some items in a function menu due to settings or other conditions. Unavailable items in a function menu are grayed out.

Notation for menu operations

In this manual, procedures for menu operations are described as shown below. The procedure (extract) for selecting “Remote monitoring” from “Videophone” under “Settings” is taken as an example.

Notation for this manual:

- 1  ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Videophone” ▶ “Remote monitoring” ▶ Enter your security code ▶ “Other ID”
- 2 Select “<Not recorded>” :

Actual operations:

- 1 Press  on the standby screen
- 2 Use  on the main menu to highlight “Settings”, and press 
- 3 Use  on the “Settings” menu to highlight “Videophone”, and press 
- 4 Use  on the “Videophone” menu to highlight “Remote monitoring”, and press 
- 5 Enter your security code and press 
- 6 Highlight “Other ID” on the “Remote monitoring” menu and press 
- 7 Use  on the “Other ID” menu to highlight “<Not recorded>”, and press  :

① Operation

② Operation

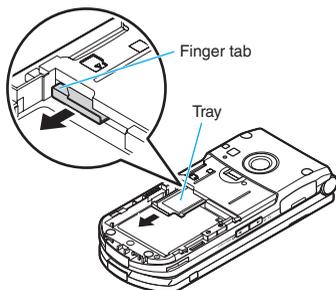
Using the FOMA Card (UIM)

The FOMA card (UIM) is an IC card that contains your private information such as the phone number. Before inserting or removing the FOMA card (UIM), turn off the FOMA terminal and remove the battery. Hold the FOMA terminal in your hand with the terminal folded while inserting or removing the FOMA card (UIM).

● Inserting/Removing the FOMA card (UIM)

Insert the FOMA card (UIM) as illustrated below.

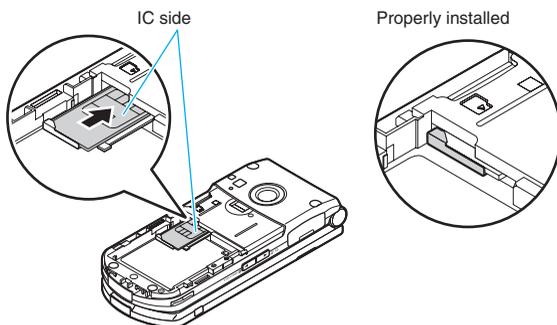
1 Pull the tray tab to pull out the tray



2 Put the FOMA card (UIM) on the tray with the IC face up

To remove the FOMA card (UIM), remove it from the tray.

3 Fully insert the tray



NOTE

- ◆ Using excessive force to insert or remove the FOMA card (UIM) may damage the card.
- ◆ Take care not to lose the FOMA card (UIM) after removing it from a FOMA terminal.
- ◆ Take care not to touch or scratch on the IC part of the FOMA card (UIM).
- ◆ If you insert the FOMA card (UIM) incorrectly or the card has a problem, an error message (p.479) appears.

PIN codes for the FOMA card (UIM)

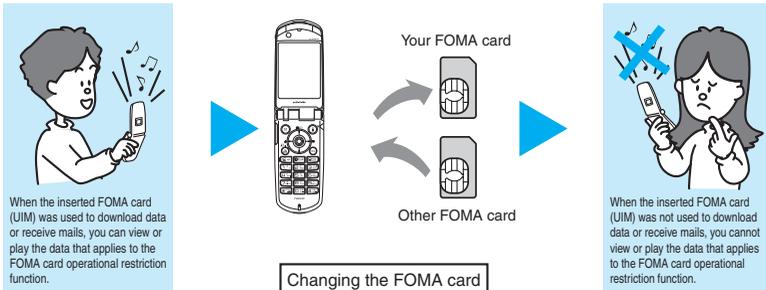
Two PIN numbers, PIN1 code and PIN2 code, can be set to a FOMA card (UIM). → p.154

FOMA card operational restriction function

Your FOMA terminal incorporates the FOMA card operational restriction function to protect your data and files.

- When you download files or data from sites or receive files attached to i-mode mails, the FOMA card operational restriction function is automatically set for the files or data.
- Data and files with this function set are accessible only when the FOMA card (UIM) used for downloading such data or file is inserted.
- The data and files subject to the FOMA card operational restriction function are as follows:
 - i-appli programs, melodies, images, i-motion programs, Chaku-Uta-Full®, Chara-den characters, PDF data, Download dictionaries, templates containing images, Kisekae Tool packages, which are downloaded from i-mode sites or websites
 - Screen memos containing melodies, images, i-motion programs, Chaku-Uta-Full®, Chara-den characters, Download dictionaries, templates, Kisekae Tool packages
 - Images that were downloaded from the Data Security Center
 - Files (melodies, images, i-motion programs, PDF data, documents, phonebook entries, My Profile data, schedule entries, To Do list entries, Bookmark entries) attached to or melodies pasted into i-mode messages in Inbox
 - Files* (melodies, images, i-motion programs, PDF data, documents, phonebook entries, My Profile data, schedule entries, To Do list entries, Bookmark entries) attached to i-mode messages in Outbox/Draft
 - * : Only files downloaded from the network
 - MessageR/MessageF with files (melodies, images) attached or pasted
 - Images inserted into Deco-mail messages
 - Record VP messages
 - Images for ToruCa (detail)

The FOMA card (UIM) that was inserted when you downloaded or received data or files is referred to as “your FOMA card (UIM)” and other FOMA cards as “another FOMA card (UIM)” hereinafter.



NOTE

- ◆ If you replace your FOMA card (UIM) with another one, “” is attached to data and files for which this function is set. You can no longer set them in “Display setting” or “Select ring tone”.
- ◆ If data or a file with this function set is selected for “Display setting” or “Select ring tone” and your FOMA card (UIM) is removed or replaced with another one, these settings are reset to default. To restore the settings performed by you, insert your FOMA card (UIM) again.
- ◆ You can move or delete data or files with this function set even when another FOMA card (UIM) is inserted.
- ◆ Replacing your FOMA card (UIM) with another one deletes the contents such as a news received through the i-channel service.
- ◆ Data stored via the Infrared data exchange function, iC communication function, data transmission (OBEX) function, a microSD memory card or Bar code reader, edited images and pictures (still images)/movies shot with the built-in camera are not subject to this function.
- ◆ Pre-installed i-appli programs are subject to this function if they were upgraded or re-downloaded from sites after they had been deleted.
- ◆ If the FOMA card operational restriction function is set, you cannot select items such as highlighted text on the i-mode mail detail screen to launch an i-appli program.
- ◆ If you insert your FOMA card (UIM) to another i-channel-compatible terminal, ticker does not appear on the terminal. In addition, the contents may not be automatically updated. To receive the latest information, press  to display the channel list. Ticker will automatically appear in this case.

When exchanging the FOMA cards (UIM)

When the FOMA card (UIM) inserted into a FOMA terminal is replaced with another one, the following settings are changed:

Setting	When another FOMA card (UIM) is inserted
"Select language" (p.47)	The settings stored on the newly inserted FOMA card (UIM) are applied.
"SMS center selection" (p.281)	
"SMS validity period" (p.270)	
"PIN setting" (p.155)	
"Host selection" under "Connection setting" (p.224)	
"Caller ID setting" for PushTalk (p.103)	"OFF" is set regardless of the previous settings.
"Ticker display setting" for i-channel (p.234)	"ON" is set regardless of the previous settings.
"Access setting" for Full Browser (p.325)	"OFF" is set regardless of the previous settings.
"Cookie settings" for Full Browser (p.326)	"Invalid" is set regardless of the previous settings (Cookie information remains undeleted).

FOMA card (UIM) functional differences

There are 2 types of the FOMA card (UIM). There are the following functional differences between those FOMA cards (UIM) when they are used on this FOMA terminal.

Function	FOMA card (blue)	FOMA card (green)
Max number of digits for a phone number to be stored in the FOMA card (UIM) phonebook	20 digits max.	26 digits max.
User certificate operation to use FirstPass	Unavailable	Available
WORLD WING	Unavailable	Available
Service Numbers	Unavailable	Available

WORLD WING

WORLD WING is the FOMA international roaming service that allows you to use the same mobile phone number in overseas countries to make and receive calls with the FOMA card (green) inserted into a compatible terminal. N903i is only available in DoCoMo 3G roaming service areas. In GSM service areas, use a GSM-compatible terminal.

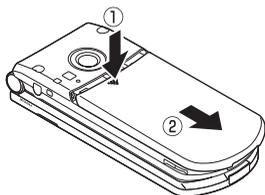
You do not need to subscribe to WORLD WING to use it.

- * If you subscribed to the FOMA service before August 31, 2005 but have not subscribed to WORLD WING, you need to subscribe to WORLD WING to use it.
- * This service cannot be used with some billing plans.
- * In case your FOMA card (green) is lost or stolen overseas, promptly contact DoCoMo to take procedures to stop the use of it. For contact information, see "For inquiries" on the back cover of this manual. Note that communication fee that have been made after the terminal is lost or stolen will be charged to you.

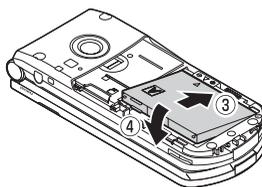
Inserting/Removing the Battery Pack

- Turn a FOMA terminal off before inserting or removing the battery pack. Hold the FOMA terminal in your hand with the terminal folded while inserting or removing the FOMA card (UIM).

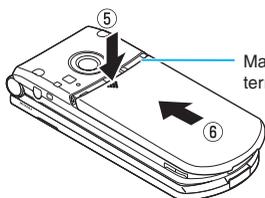
Inserting



Press the catch on the back cover in direction ① and slide the back cover in direction ② to remove it.



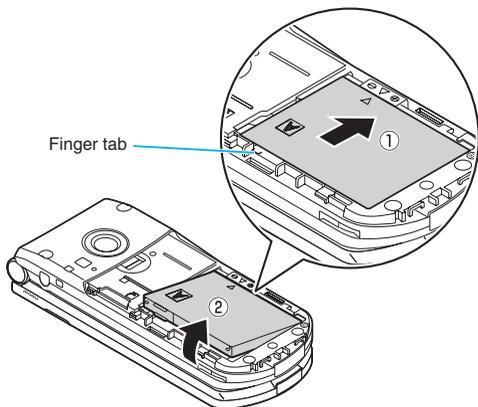
With the “A” side of the battery pack facing up, insert the pack in direction ③ so that the “△” mark of the pack fits that of the FOMA terminal (Phone), then press the pack down in direction ④.



Make sure the back cover and the FOMA terminal (Phone) are securely inserted.

Lift the back cover about 2 mm and align it to the groove in the FOMA terminal (Phone). Press the catch on the back cover in direction ⑤ and slide the back cover in direction ⑥. Then press the cover until the catch clicks shut.

Removing



Remove the back cover.
Press the tab of the battery pack in direction ① and then lift upwards in direction ②.

NOTE

- ◆ Using excessive force to insert the battery pack may damage the charging terminals on a FOMA terminal that connect to the battery pack.
- ◆ For details, refer to the Battery Pack N14 instructions.

Getting the best out of your battery pack

Use the approved Battery Pack N14 for a FOMA terminal.

If you use a FOMA terminal overseas, take the FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use 01 with you. Before using the FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use 01, check the voltage available in a country or area you will stay. → p.448

■ Battery life

- Batteries have a limited service life. Like all rechargeable batteries, the amount of usable time decreases every time the battery is recharged.
- When a fully charged battery pack only lasts half as long as when it was new, it is time to replace it with a new one.
- In general, the service life of a battery pack is about one year. It may be shortened depending on the frequency of use.



To protect the environment, take used battery packs to NTT DoCoMo, the agency, the recycle shop, etc.

■ Charging

- For details, refer to the manuals for FOMA AC Adapter 01 (optional) and FOMA DC Adapter 01 (optional).
- Attach the battery pack to a FOMA terminal to charge the battery.
- You can receive calls while charging if a FOMA terminal is turned on. However, the battery level will fall during calls and the time required for charging will increase. Charging time will also increase if "Charging" in "Backlight" is set to "All time ON".
- When plugging in or out the connector, do it slowly and securely not to apply excessive force.
- When you make a call or perform packet communication in a high-temperature environment, the FOMA terminal's temperature may rise and the charging may be stopped. In this case, stop a running function and wait for the temperature to fall before you retry charging.

■ Do not charge the battery pack for a long period of time (several days) with a FOMA terminal turned on

- If you charge the battery pack for a long period of time with a FOMA terminal turned on, power to the FOMA terminal will be supplied from the battery pack once charging ends. As a result, you will only be able to use the FOMA terminal for a short period of time and the low voltage alarm may sound immediately. In this case, recharge the battery pack correctly. Disconnect a FOMA terminal from the AC adapter (or desktop holder) or DC adapter and then attach it again for recharging.

■ Battery duration (The battery duration varies depending on the charging time or deterioration of the battery)

Continuous talk time	Continuous standby time
Voice communications: Approx. 190 min. Video phone: Approx. 100 min.	Stationary: Approx. 680 hours In transit: Approx. 500 hours

- Continuous talk time is an estimate of the talk time at maximum power when radio reception is normal.
- Continuous standby time is an estimate of the standby time when the FOMA terminal is folded and remains within an area where radio reception is normal. In certain circumstances, talk (or communications) and standby times may drop to as low as half the times shown due to the battery charge, function settings, temperature, or radio reception in the area (weak or no reception). Talk (or communications) and standby times will be less when you use i-mode. These times will also be less when you compose an i-mode message, run downloaded i-appli, launch the i-appli display or play music even without making calls or using i-mode.
- Continuous standby time for stationary is an average estimate of the standby time when the FOMA terminal is folded and remains within an area where radio reception is normal.
- Continuous standby time in transit is an average estimate of the standby time in "stationary", "in transit" and "out of range" states when the FOMA terminal is folded and remains within an area where radio reception is normal.
- Talk (or communications) and standby times will also be less when you insert a microSD memory card, run data communication or multi access, or use the camera or light.

NOTE

- ◆ If the battery runs out or the battery pack is removed, you cannot save images or movies.

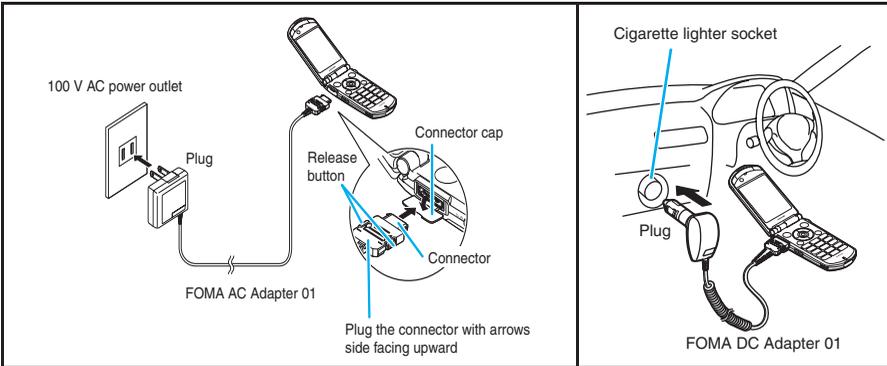
Charging a FOMA Terminal

- You can charge a FOMA terminal using the AC adapter (optional) or DC adapter (optional). You can also charge the terminal by connecting the AC adapter and desktop holder (optional). For more information on charging, refer to the user's manual provided with the AC adapter or DC adapter.

Charging with the AC adapter or DC adapter

AC adapter

DC adapter



- 1 Open the external connector cap on a FOMA terminal
- 2 Plug the AC or DC adapter connector horizontally into the external connector on the FOMA terminal
- 3 Plug the AC adapter into a power outlet
Plug the DC adapter into a cigarette lighter socket in a car

Charging starts.

Standard charging time

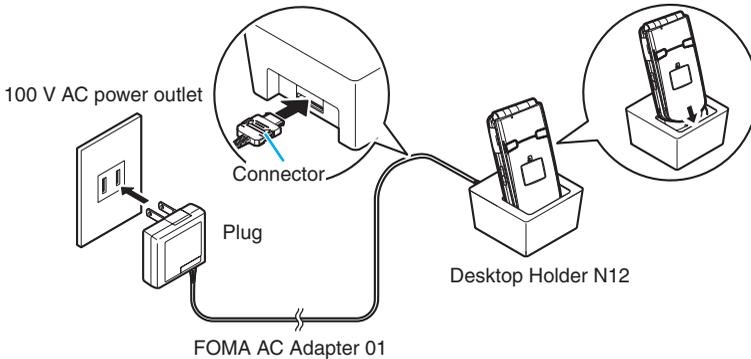
Approx. 120 min.

- 4 After charging is completed, remove the AC or DC adapter connector horizontally from the FOMA terminal while pressing the release button
- 5 Unplug the AC adapter from the outlet
Unplug the DC adapter from the cigarette lighter socket in a car
- 6 Close the external connector cap on the FOMA terminal

NOTE

- ◆ When the charge lamp of the FOMA terminal (Phone) is turned off, “” disappears from the screen and the message “Charge unusual Stop charge” appears, remove the AC adaptor or DC adaptor and battery pack from the FOMA terminal then set them again to recharge. If the same error occurs again, there may be a problem or fault on the AC adaptor or DC adaptor. Contact a NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter.
- ◆ Keep pressing the release button of the AC adapter connector when pulling it out of the external connector on a FOMA terminal. Using excessive force to pull the cord may cause malfunction.

Charging with the desktop holder

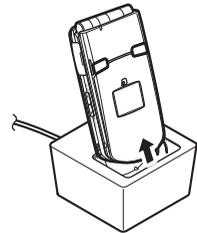


- 1 Plug the AC adapter connector horizontally into the terminal on the rear of the desktop holder in the direction as shown above**
- 2 Plug the AC adapter into a power outlet**
- 3 Place a FOMA terminal securely in the desktop holder as shown above**

Standard charging time

Approx. 120 min.

- 4 After charging is completed, hold down the desktop holder and lift the FOMA terminal up in the direction of the arrow**



NOTE

- ◆ Set a FOMA terminal securely in the desktop holder. Take care not to trap the strap.
- ◆ The charge lamp lights red during charging. When the charge lamp turns off, the FOMA terminal is fully charged. If the FOMA terminal is turned on, “” flashes during charging and “” lights when charging ends.
- ◆ If the FOMA terminal is turned on, the terminal emits the “Charge sound” when charging starts or ends. However, while “Manner mode” or “Public mode (Driving mode)” is set or when “Charge sound” is set to “OFF”, the “Charge sound” does not sound.
- ◆ The AC adapter 01 is only suitable for use with 100 V AC power supplies.
- ◆ The battery pack cannot be charged separately. Always charge the battery pack while it is inserted in a FOMA terminal.
- ◆ If the battery runs out or the FOMA terminal is turned off with full data in the phonebook, etc., the battery charge lamp may not light right away, but charging has already started.
- ◆ The DC adapter must be used only for vehicles with a negative ground DC 12V or 24V. Never use it in positive-grounded vehicles.
- ◆ The DC adapter uses a 2A fuse. If the fuse (2A) blows and you need to replace it, always use a fuse with the same specifications. Fuses (2A) are consumable items and replacement fuses can be purchased at your local car accessory shop, etc.

Checking the Battery Level

The indicated battery level is reference only.

Checking with a battery level icon

When a FOMA terminal is turned on, an icon indicating the battery level automatically appears.

-  (white): Full charge
-  (white): Partial charge
-  (red): Almost empty. Recharge battery.



Checking with sound and animation

MENU71

The current battery level is informed by sound and animation.

1 “Settings” “Other settings” “Battery level”

The check screen appears and beeps sound in accordance with the level. The battery level animation disappears in about three seconds.

- “3 short beeps” : Full charge
- “2 short beeps” : Partial charge
- “1 short beep” : Almost empty. Recharge battery.

NOTE

- ◆ The beeps do not sound when “Keypad sound” is set to “OFF” or in Manner mode.

When the battery runs out

The screen as shown on the right flashes and the low voltage alarm sounds. The alarm sounds for about 10 seconds and the power is turned off in about one minute. To stop the alarm, press any key other than , , , assist key or .



NOTE

- ◆ During a call, the Recharge battery screen above appears and 3 short beeps sound. The call will be disconnected in about 20 seconds and the power will turn off in about one minute.
- ◆ While “Manner mode” is set and “Manner mode” or “Super silent” is selected for the performance in Manner mode, while “Public mode (Driving mode)” is set or while “LVA tone” is set to “OFF” in “Original”, the low voltage alarm does not sound.

Turning a FOMA Terminal on/off

- Before using a FOMA terminal for the first time (or if it has been left unused for a long period of time), charge the battery. Be sure to use the approved AC adapter (optional) or DC adapter (optional) for charging.

Turning a FOMA terminal on

- Before turning a FOMA terminal on, make sure that the FOMA card is inserted correctly.
- When you turn on the power for the first time after purchase,  appears on the upper right of a screen.

1 (1 second or longer)

The standby screen or initial settings screen appears. If you have just inserted the battery pack or turn a FOMA terminal back on immediately after turning it off, the “Wait a minute” message may appear for a short period of time.

■ When “” appears

You are out of service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach. Move until the signal strength indicator e.g. “” appears. The reception levels appear as follows:



■ When PIN1 code entry set is set to “ON”

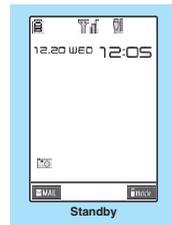
The PIN1 code entry screen appears. → p.156

■ When Auto reset total cost is set to “ON”

The PIN2 code entry screen appears.

■ If the initial settings screen appears

Perform the initial settings. → p.48



NOTE

- ◆ When the FOMA card (UIM) is exchanged, enter your 4- to 8-digit security code after turning the power on. The standby screen appears after the correct security code is entered. If an incorrect security code is entered five times in a row, the power will be turned off. (However, it can still be turned on again.)

Turning a FOMA terminal off

1 (2 seconds or longer)

The shutdown screen appears and the power is turned off.

NOTE

- ◆ Signal strength is not stable when you talk on your FOMA terminal while moving. Due to the nature of digital transmissions, calls may end suddenly. Wherever possible, you should always ensure that “” is shown when using the FOMA terminal.
- ◆ After turning a FOMA terminal off, wait a few minutes before turning the FOMA terminal back on.

<Select language>

MENU 5

Switching Language Mode

Default setting
Japanese

You can switch language mode between Japanese and English that is used for showing function names or messages on the display or image display.

1 “各種設定”▶“ディスプレイ”▶“バイリンガル”▶“English”

■ To change from Japanese to English

▶“English”



Japanese

■ To change from English to Japanese

▶“日本語”



English

NOTE

- ◆ When the FOMA card (UIM) is inserted, the Select language setting saved in the FOMA card (UIM) is applied.
- ◆ Selecting “English” for “Select language” gives you two options “ON” and “OFF” for “Display” under “Clock display” and for “Info notice setting”.

For some guidance messages played for callers, you can switch the language mode between Japanese and English. → p.423

Performing Initial Settings

After turning a FOMA terminal on, set “Set time”, “Change security code”, “Character size”, “Permit to send loc.”, “Keypad sound”, “Neuropointer” (“Simple” only) and “PushTalk Caller ID” as initial settings.

- If you have set any of the functions, the function's setting screen does not appear.
- After Steps 1 to 8 are performed, the initial setting screen no longer appears. Even if you perform “Reset settings” after those initial settings are completed, the initial setting screens do not appear.
- When “PIN1 code entry set” is set to “ON”, the PIN1 code entry screen appears after you turn a FOMA terminal on. Enter the correct PIN1 code to show the initial setting screens. → p.156

1 Initial setting screen ▶ “YES”

2 Set time

Date and time are not set by default. Setting time → p.49

3 Change the security code

The default setting is “0000”. “Changing Your Security Code” → p.155

4 Set the font size

Setting the font size → p.146

5 Set whether to send location information via the GPS function

If Permit to send loc. is set to “ON”, enter your security code. Setting location request → p.312

6 Set the keypad sound

Keypad sound → p.127

7 Set the Neuropointer speed

Only the “Simple” settings under “Neuropointer” can be performed. Neuropointer → p.144

8 Set whether to show your PushTalk caller ID

PushTalk Caller ID → p.103

9 Update software

A message appears asking whether to update software. Software Update → p.487



NOTE

- ◆ Even if the operation of initial settings is interrupted because a call arrives or you press  or **[CLR]**, the functions for which settings have been completed remain valid.
- ◆ You can also perform initial settings separately for each function.
- ◆ The confirmation screen to prompt software update appears even when initial settings are canceled.
- ◆ If you set PushTalk Caller ID to “ON” and then make a PushTalk call, all participants’ phone numbers are shown to all participants. Since phone numbers are important information, be careful when showing them.

Setting Date and Time

Default setting
Auto time set ON

Set the date and time on your FOMA terminal. The date and time can be set to be automatically corrected (to Japan Standard Time).

- The set date and time appear on the standby screen or image display, which allows you to use functions managing the date and time (e.g. "Alarm clock" and "Schedule").
- You can set the date and time between 00:00 on January 1, 2004 and 23:59 on December 31, 2037. The date and time will not be updated after 23:59 on December 31, 2037.

1 (MENU) ▶ "Settings" ▶ "Clock" ▶ "Set time" ▶ Select any item

Auto time set ON	Sets the date and time automatically. Selecting "Auto time set ON" receives the time information and sets the date and time automatically.
Auto time set OFF	Sets the date and time manually. Selecting this option allows you to set time different from the actual time.

■ When "Auto time set OFF" is selected

Enter the year, month, date and time (24-hour format).

<Example: To set December 20, 2006, 12:05>

Use to move the highlight, and press dial keys to enter numbers.

In this example, press , , , , , , , , , , and .



NOTE

- ◆ Enter the date and time in the correct format when you manually set them.
- ◆ The built-in backup battery retains the date and time you set, which means that they are not reset even when the battery pack is exchanged. However, they may be erased if the battery pack is removed for about two weeks or longer. If you want to set "Auto time set OFF" with the battery pack which has been removed for a long period of time, charge it first and then set the date and time. Charging the battery pack also charges the backup battery.

<Auto time set>

- ◆ Although the time may not be automatically corrected depending on the radio reception, it is corrected based on the time information received from the DoCoMo network when:
 - The FOMA terminal is turned on
 - " " turns to " ", etc. on the standby screen indicating that radio waves can be received, and another function is not running
 - Charging starts when the standby screen appears and another function is not running
 - "Auto time set ON" is set
- ◆ The time is not corrected if the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted or when " " appears.
- ◆ If "i-αpli display" is set, the time may not be corrected depending on the set i-αpli.
- ◆ A several-second difference may occur.

<World watch>

Setting the World Clock

Default setting

Time zone: GMT+00 (City: London) Summer time: OFF

You can show the time of a city in the world instead of the Japan date and time set in "Set time". You can also set summer time, if necessary.

- Setting the world clock on the standby screen → p.146

1 (MENU) ▶ "Settings" ▶ "Clock" ▶ "World watch" ▶ Select any item

Time zone	▶ Select a time zone Press (Change) to change the city shown in the time zone. (You cannot change the city name in some time zones.)
Summer time	▶ "ON" or "OFF" If "ON" is set, the time which is one hour ahead of "World watch" time appears.

Showing Your Phone Number to the Other Party

Default setting: OFF

Subscription: Unnecessary

Monthly charge: Free

You can show your phone number to the other party when making a call. Since your phone number is important information, be careful when showing it to others.

- You cannot perform the Caller ID Notification setting when “” appears.
- This function is only available when the other party’s phone is capable of displaying caller IDs.
- If you hear a message requesting your caller ID, hang up the phone. Then set this function to “ON” and make a call again.

1 (MENU) ▶ “Service” ▶ “Caller ID Notification” ▶ Select any item

Activate/Deactivate	Network security code → p.154	
	ON	▶ Enter your network security code
	OFF	▶ Enter your network security code
Check setting	▶ Check the Caller ID Notification setting and press	

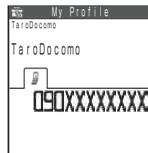
NOTE

- ◆ You can also set whether to show your caller ID when dialing a phone number or selecting a phone number from “Phonebook”, “Redial” or “Received calls”. → p.67
- ◆ To make a PushTalk call, this function is not available. “Caller ID setting” under PushTalk setting will apply. → p.103

Checking Your Phone Number

You can check your phone number (own number) stored in the FOMA card (UIM).

1 (MENU) ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “My Profile”



NOTE

- ◆ By default, only your own number is shown.
- ◆ Your personal information (name, home phone number, home address, mail address, etc.) can also be stored. Storing and showing your personal data → p.404
- ◆ You can check your i-mode mail address by the following operation: i-mode menu ▶ “ Menu” ▶ “ENGLISH” ▶ “Options” ▶ “Mail Settings” ▶ “Confirm Mail Address”
- ◆ Quote information from “My Profile” to easily enter owner information (name, e-mail address, etc.) on a website. → p.405

Voice/Videophone Calls

Making voice/videophone calls

What is Videophone?.....	52
Making a Voice/Videophone Call.....	53
Changing a Call Between Voice and Videophone.....	57
Making International Calls.....	WORLD CALL 58
Switching to Hands-free Operation.....	Hands-free 61
Using the Redial/Received Calls Record.....	62
Using Chaku-moji.....	Chaku-moji 65
Showing/Hiding Your Caller ID for Individual Calls.....	186/184 67
Sending Push Signals Quickly.....	Pause dial 68
Setting Prefix Numbers.....	Prefix setting 69
Setting Sub-addresses When Making Calls ...	Sub-address setting 70
Setting the Alarm Used for Reconnection.....	Reconnect signal 70
Blocking Out Ambient Noise.....	Noise reduction 70
Making Hands-free Calls in a Car.....	In-car hands-free 71

Receiving voice/videophone calls

Receiving a Voice/Videophone Call.....	71
Changing a Call Between Voice and Videophone (the Other Party).....	73
Using a Dial Key to Receive Calls.....	Answer setting 74
Folding a FOMA Terminal to End/Hold Calls ...	Setting when folded 75
Adjusting the Earpiece Volume.....	Volume 75
Adjusting the Ring Volume.....	Ring volume 76

Settings for when you cannot take calls

Putting Calls on Hold When You Cannot Answer Immediately ...	Answer hold 76
Putting Ongoing Calls on Hold.....	Holding 77
Setting the Hold Tone.....	Set hold tone 77
Using Public Mode (Driving Mode).....	Public mode (Driving mode) 78
Using Public Mode (Power off).....	Public mode (power off) 79
Checking Missed Calls.....	Info notice setting 80
Having the Caller Leave a Message and Video... Recording the Caller's Message and Video	Record message 81
Instead of Answering an Incoming Call.....	Quick message 83
Playing/Erasing Record Messages and Voice Memos.....	83
Playing/Erasing Videophone Messages.....	VP message 84

Videophone settings

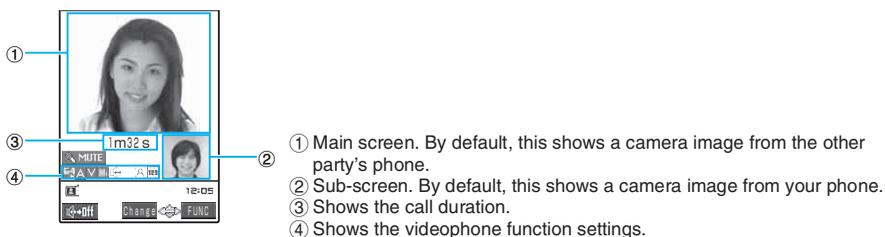
Using Chara-den.....	85
Selecting the Image Sent to the Other Party.....	86
Setting Hands-free for Videophone Calls.....	Hands-free switch 88
Setting the Image Displayed During a Videophone Call.....	88
Setting for Switching Between Voice Call and Videophone Call.....	Ntfy switch-mode 89
Handling Videophone Calls Received in i-mode ...	V-phone while packet 89
Connecting to an External Device to Make/Receive Videophone Calls.....	90
Viewing Distant Locations Using a FOMA Terminal.....	Remote monitoring 91

What is Videophone?

You can use the videophone call function between terminals that support the DoCoMo videophone system.

- DoCoMo videophone conforms to the 3G-324M^{*2} standard set down in the international 3GPP^{*1} standards. Your FOMA terminal cannot connect to a videophone terminal that uses a different system from the DoCoMo videophone.
 - *1 : 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)
A regional standardization body established to develop commonly applied technical specifications for 3rd-generation mobile communications systems (IMT-2000).
 - *2 : 3G-324M
An international standard for 3rd-generation mobile videophones.
- Videophone calls are conducted at connection speeds of 64K or 32K.
 - 64K: Data is communicated at a rate of 64kbps.
 - 32K: Data is communicated at a rate of 32kbps.

Videophone screen



- : 64K videophone call in progress
- : 32K videophone call in progress
- : Sending/receiving voice
- : Voice transmission error
- : Sending/receiving video
- : Video transmission error
- : Sending camera image
- : Sending the substitute image selected in "Select image"
- : Hands-free OFF
- : Hands-free ON
- : Microphone mute in progress

- : Photo mode (Portrait)
- : Photo mode (Scenery)
- : Photo mode (Close-up)
- : Key operation/DTMF mode
- : Key operation/Whole action mode^{*1}
- : Key operation/Parts action mode^{*1}
- ^{*1}: Action mode → p.85
- : Sending Chara-den
- : State where the motion of a face can be followed^{*2}
- : State where the motion of a face cannot be followed^{*2}
- ^{*2}: Face stamp → p.88
- : Visual check in progress

Control key	Videophone operation
	Switches between the front and rear cameras
(1 second or longer)	Switches the main screen → p.55
(↑), (↓) (MEMO/CHECK)	Adjusts volume
	Adjusts zoom ratio
	Switches on/off hands-free
	Displays a function menu
(1 second or longer)	Records other party's voice during a call
	Puts a call on hold
(1 second or longer)	Microphone mute

Making a Voice/Videophone Call

● Making a voice call

1 Dial the other party's number, starting with the area code

The "Phone number entry" screen appears.
Always start with the area code, even for calls within the same area.

Area code — Local code — Phone number

A number of up to 80 digits can be entered for making a call although the numbers disappear from the display one by one from the beginning after the number exceeds 26 digits.

■ To call a mobile phone

090 - x x x x - x x x x

or

080 - x x x x - x x x x

■ To call a PHS phone

070 - x x x x - x x x x



Phone number entry

Function menu → p.53

2

The phone number disappears briefly and then reappears from the right as it is dialed. The "☎" icon flashes during dialing and remains lit during a call. The "In-call" screen appears.

■ To switch to a videophone call during a voice call

"Changing a call from voice to videophone" → p.57

■ If you hear the busy tone

The line is busy. Press , and call again after a while.

■ If you hear the message saying that the other party cannot be reached

The other party's mobile phone or PHS phone is not switched on or is out of signal range. Press , and call again after a while.

■ If you hear the message requesting your caller ID

The other party has set the Caller ID Request service to "Activate". Call again with your caller ID shown.



In-call

Function menu → p.54

3 To end the call, press

NOTE

- ◆ You can make calls while in i-mode or sending or receiving mails.
- ◆ A Chaku-moji message up to 10 characters (including pictographs, symbols, double-byte and single-byte characters) can be attached to a call to be made. The Chaku-moji message appears on the screen of the other party's phone when it rings. → p.65
- ◆ You cannot make calls during 64K data communication, videophone calls or PushTalk calls. However, if the other party's FOMA terminal can change the call mode, you can change a call from videophone to voice by selecting "Change to voice" from the function menu. (This function is available between terminals that support change between voice call and videophone call.) → p.58
- ◆ You can also send photographs taken with the built-in camera to the other party during a call (Speed photo mail). → p.242
- ◆ While you are dialing to a person of which name and phone number are stored in the phonebook, the name and icon selected for the phonebook entry appear. However, an image does not appear even if it is stored in a phonebook entry.
- ◆ You can talk in hands-free mode during a call. → p.61
- ◆ You can make calls using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional). → p.412

Function menu (Phone number entry screen)

Notify Caller ID	"Showing Your Phone Number to the Other Party" → p.68
Prefix numbers	▶ Select a prefix name to add "Setting Prefix Numbers" → p.69
Chaku-moji	"Making a call with a Chaku-moji message" → p.66
Int'l call	"Making an international call with international call codes added" → p.59
Multi Number	"Multi Number" → p.424
Add to phonebook	"Adding Phonebook Entries" → p.107
Compose message	"Creating and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.239
Connection speed	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from "64K" or "32K".
Select image	"Setting an image to send during a videophone call" → p.86 Selecting "Release settings" cancels the setting of "Me" or "Chara-den".

NOTE

- ◆ The speed set in “Connection speed” is only applied to one call made after the setting. The speed is logged in neither Redial record nor Dialed calls record. Furthermore, if you make a voice call after setting “Connection speed”, the setting is ignored.

Function menu (In-call screen)

Speed photo mail	“Sending an image you shot during a call” → p.242
Disp photo mail	Shows a received speed photo mail.
Check new messages	Checks for new i-mode messages. → p.226, 252

1 Making a videophone call**1 Phone number entry screen (p.53) ▶**

The “Videophone in-call” screen appears.

You can talk hearing the other party’s voice through the speaker. “Switching to Hands-free Operation” → p.61

■ **To switch to a voice call during a videophone call**

▶ “Changing a call from videophone to voice” → p.58

■ **To switch between camera image and substitute image during a videophone call**

▶ Select “Substitute image” or “My side” from the function menu.

■ **To send video from the rear camera during a videophone call**



Each time you press during a videophone call, you can switch between the front camera and the rear camera (CHG camera-mode).

■ **To put an ongoing videophone call on hold**



The hold tone sounds and the “保留 Holding” image appears on the other party’s videophone screen.

Press or to answer a videophone call on hold using a camera image, or to answer the call using a substitute image. Press to answer the call in the condition before holding.

■ **To mute voice to send during a videophone call (microphone mute)**



“ MUTE” appears while in mute. Video is transmitted as it is.

To cancel mute, press again for 1 second or longer.

■ **If using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional)**

You can hear the other party’s voice through the earphone.

■ **If a videophone call is not connected → p.56**



You are charged for the digital communication from this screen.



Function menu ▶ p.55

2 To end the call, press **NOTE**

- ◆ The icon flashes during dialing and remains lit during a videophone call. If a call is connected at the “32K” dialing speed, flashes and remains lit during a call.
- ◆ The “32K” connection speed allows you to use videophone with other devices (PHS mobiles, etc.) that cannot communicate at “64K” due to network conditions. If you make a videophone call at “64K” and the called party is in a “32K” area or similar situation, the call is automatically redialed at 32kbps. However, note that “32K” videophone calls attract the same digital communication charges as “64K” videophone calls.
- ◆ A Chaku-moji message up to 10 characters (including pictographs, symbols, double-byte and single-byte characters) can be attached to a videophone call to be made. The Chaku-moji animation appears on the ringing screen of the other party. → p.65
- ◆ International videophone calls can also be made using the DoCoMo “WORLD CALL” international dialing service. → p.58
- ◆ A FOMA terminal sends a camera image when making a call unless Chara-den is set in “Select image” in the function menu of the Phone number entry screen. → p.53
- ◆ It may take a few seconds to switch from a camera image to substitute image (Chara-den) depending on the Chara-den.
- ◆ When you are talking on a videophone call using the rear camera while charging, the message notifying that the camera will be turned off might appear and the camera might be automatically turned off, depending on the temperature of the FOMA terminal.

Function menu (Videophone in-call screen)

Petit message	"Sending a message during a videophone call (with a camera image displayed)" → p.89	
Decoration	"Decorating the videophone screen" → p.88	
Off decoration	Erases the displayed message or stamp.	
Substitute image, My side	Switches between a camera image and a substitute image.	
Rear camera, Front camera	Switches between the front camera and the rear camera. This setting is only retained during a call.	
Change main disp.	Changes the image displayed on the main screen. The screen changes in the order of "Displaying the image from the other party's camera on your main screen" → "Displaying the image from your own camera on your main screen" → "Displaying only the image from the other party's camera" → "Displaying only the image from your own camera".	
Visual check, Visual check off	"Checking your appearance during a videophone call" → p.87	
V.phone settings	Sets the screen for videophone call.	
Visual prefer.	Sets the image sent to and received from the other party. This setting is only retained during a call.	
	Normal (default)	Standard setting for both quality and movement.
	Prefer img qual	Sends more finely detailed video images. Best for motionless subjects.
	Prefer motion spd	Sends video images with smooth movement. Best for fast-moving subjects.
Brightness	▶ Use  to adjust the brightness ▶  Chooses the brightness among 5 levels from -2 to 0 to +2.	
White balance	Sets image color tones. The settings are also applied to the equivalent camera functions. → p.194	
	Auto (default)	Select this option for automatic color tone adjustment.
	Fine	Select this option when outdoors in sunny weather.
	Cloudy	Select this option when outdoors in cloudy weather or in shade.
	Light bulb	Suitable for shooting under incandescent light.
	Fluorescent lamp	Suitable for shooting under fluorescent light.
Color mode set	Sets image effects. This setting is only retained during a call.	
	Normal (default)	Sets a normal image.
	Sepia	Sets a sepia-tone image.
	Monochrome	Sets a monochrome (black & white) image.
Photo mode	Sets a mode suited to the scene being shot. Cannot be changed when using the front camera.	
	Portrait (default)	Suitable for shooting people.
	Scenery	Suitable for shooting scenery
	Close-up	Suitable for close-up shooting.
Chara-den set.	Chara-den → p.85 Cannot be changed when a camera image is sent.	
	Switch Chara-den	▶ Select a character Select a character to display.
	Action List	▶ Check the actions and keys Shows the available actions and corresponding keys. Pressing  shows the action list.
	Change Action	Changes the action mode.
	Switch image	Displays your original image on the other party's display. → p.86
Display light	Sets lighting of the display light.	
	All time ON (default)	Turns the display light on.
	15 seconds ON	Turns the display light on for 15 seconds only.

FrontCamera Rev.	Sets the type of camera image to display on your FOMA terminal during a call.	
	ON (default)	Displayed in mirror image.
	OFF	Displayed in normal image.
Call time disp. (default: ON)	Sets whether to display the call time during a call.	
Own number	Displays your phone number during a videophone call.	
Send DTMF tone, DTMF tone OFF	Sets/cancels push signal transmission mode while using Chara-den. Except for Chara-den, videophone calls are always in push signal transmission mode.	
Change to voice	"Changing a call from videophone to voice" → p.58	
Loc. notification	"Selecting a party to notify of location information" → p.316	

● If you entered a wrong phone number

■ To insert a number

Press \leftarrow to move the cursor to the number on the left of the insert position and enter the number.

■ To delete a number

Press \rightarrow to move the cursor to the number to delete and press \square CLR.

Pressing \square CLR for 1 second or longer deletes the highlighted number and all numbers on the left side of the highlighted number.

■ To reenter a number

Move the cursor to the beginning or end of the number and press \square CLR for 1 second or longer to return to the standby screen.

● If a videophone call is not connected

If a videophone call is not connected, a message giving the reason for the connection failure appears. However, in some circumstances, an explanatory message may not be displayed. Also, depending on the type of phone used by the callee and the possible lack of a network service subscription, the reason given may not accurately reflect the callee's actual status.

Message	Reason
Check number then redial	The dialed phone number is currently not used.
Busy*	The line is busy.
Busy with packet transmission	Packet communication is in progress on the callee.
Out of service area/power off	The callee's phone is out of service or the power is turned off.
Set caller ID to ON	The call is connected without showing your caller ID (when dialing visualnet).
Your call is being forwarded	The call is being forwarded (into a videophone call if the forwarding party has a videophone that complies with 3G-324M).
Redial using voice call	The forwarded party is non-videophone-terminal.
Please activate caller ID before dialing again	The Caller ID Request service is set on the callee.
At the user's request, your call can not be connected	The Nuisance Call Blocking service is set on the callee.
Upper limit has been exceeded Connection failed	The upper limit set for a Limit billing plan (Type Limit and Family Wide Limit) is exceeded.
Connection failed	Set "Caller ID Notification" to "ON" and then try again. • This message may also be displayed in other situations.
Please make your call from the i-mode web page	You attempted to make a videophone call to watch V-live without browsing the i-mode official site.

* : This message may also appear during packet communication depending on the type of other party's terminal.

NOTE

- ◆ If you make a videophone call to an emergency number (110, 119 or 118) from a FOMA terminal, the call is automatically changed to a voice call.
- ◆ If you make a videophone call to a phone that does not support videophone call, or if the callee's phone supports videophone call but is out of signal range or switched off, no connection can be established. If you called a phone that does not support videophone call and "Auto redial as voice" (p.86) is set to "ON", the call is cut off by the called party before the videophone connection is established and is then automatically redialed as a voice call. However, this operation may not be carried out if you dial a wrong number or if you call an ISDN synchronous 64K, PIAFS access point or an ISDN videophone that does not conform to the 3G-324M standard (as of November 2006). Note that the call charge may apply in some cases.

- ◆ The “32K” connection speed allows you to use videophone with other devices (PHS mobiles, etc.) that cannot communicate at “64K” due to network conditions. If you make a videophone call at “64K” and the called party is in a “32K” area or similar situation, the call is automatically redialed at 32kbps. However, note that “32K” videophone calls attract the same digital communication charges as “64K” videophone calls.
- ◆ If “Auto redial as voice” (p.86) is set to “ON” and a videophone call is not connected, the call is automatically changed to a voice call. The relations between the set connection speed and “Auto redial as voice” setting are listed below.

	Dialing speed set to “64K”	Dialing speed set to “32K”
“Auto redial as voice” set to ON	The connection speed automatically changes to “32K”. If the videophone call still fails to connect, it switches to voice-call mode.	Switches to voice call mode.
“Auto redial as voice” set to OFF	The connection speed automatically changes to “32K”. If the videophone call still fails to connect, the videophone call ends.	Ends the videophone call.

- ◆ You cannot receive i-mode mails, MessageR or MessageF during a videophone call. Mails you cannot receive are held at the i-mode Center. Receive them using “Check new messages” after the videophone call ends.
- ◆ You can receive SMS during a videophone call.
- ◆ If the “Recharge battery” low voltage alarm appears on the display during a videophone call, the other party sees the “カメラオフ Camera Off” message and the call is disconnected roughly 20 seconds later. If you start charging a battery before a videophone call is terminated, the call continues with the image that had been displayed before the low voltage alarm was given.
- ◆ Digital call charges still apply when a substitute image appears during a videophone call.

Changing a Call Between Voice and Videophone

- You can only change the call mode when you are the caller. When you are a callee, you cannot change the call mode.
- To change the call mode, the other party must set his or her terminal to show you “Ntfy switch-mode” beforehand. → p.89
- You can repeatedly change the call mode between voice and videophone.

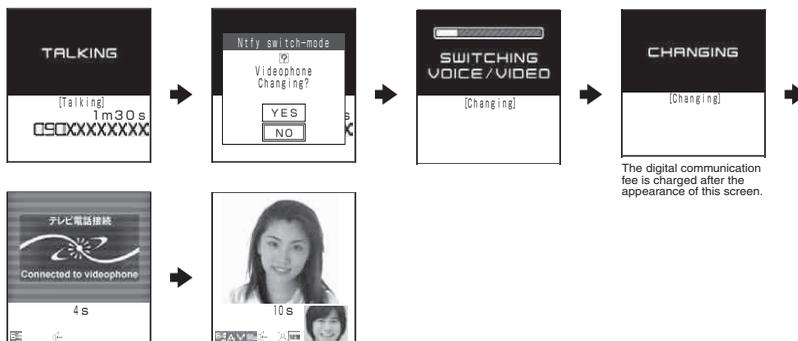
● Changing a call from voice to videophone

You can change the call mode during a voice call you dialed.

- If the other party uses a FOMA terminal that can change the call mode, “” appears during a voice call and you can change the call mode between voice and videophone. (This function is available between terminals that support change between voice call and videophone call.)

1 In-call screen “YES”

While a voice call is being changed to a videophone call, the screen showing that the call mode is being changed appears and the voice guidance is given. Select “NO” on the “Ntfy switch-mode” message screen to return to the in-call screen.



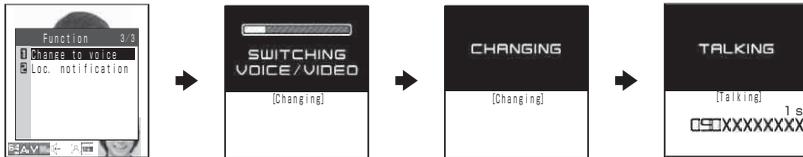
● Changing a call from videophone to voice

The caller can change the call mode to voice during a videophone call (communication speed 64K).

- If the handset of other party is a FOMA terminal supporting the call change, "Change to voice" can be selected from the function menu during a videophone call and you can change the call mode. (This function is available between terminals that support change between voice call and videophone call.)

1 Videophone in-call screen (p.54) (FUNC) "Change to voice"

While a videophone call is being changed to a voice call, the screen showing that the call mode is being changed appears and the voice guidance is given.



NOTE

- ◆ It takes about 5 seconds to change the call mode. Note that signal quality may affect how long it takes.
- ◆ You cannot change the call mode in the following cases:
 - The other party is holding a call.
 - The other party has activated Record message.
- ◆ The call time shown is reset to 0 second each time the call mode is changed. However, if a videophone call ends after the call mode is changed, the call time shown indicates the total of the voice call and videophone call. The time used for changing the call mode is excluded from the shown time.
- ◆ Depending on the other party's communication conditions such as manipulation or the signal quality, you may not be able to change the call mode and the call may be canceled.
- ◆ If the call mode is changed, the first dialed number is registered to the Redial/Dialed calls record. The first received number is registered to the Received calls record.
- ◆ You are not charged while "SWITCHING VOICE/VIDEO" appears.
- ◆ If you have changed the call mode, the call charge shown in "Call data" may differ from the one you will pay.

<Change from voice to videophone>

- ◆ If you try to change the call mode, the message appears on the other party's videophone screen asking to select an image to send, camera image or substitute image. → p.73
- ◆ If the caller is using packet communication (including i-mode), the packet communication is canceled to change to a videophone call.
- ◆ If the other party is using packet communication (including i-mode), you receive the message "No switch" meaning you cannot change the call mode. The voice call continues.
- ◆ The hands-free operation is activated or deactivated according to the "Hands-free switch" setting when the call mode is changed, regardless of the hands-free status before the change. → p.88
- ◆ You cannot change the call mode when "Call Waiting" is activated.

<Change from videophone to voice>

- ◆ Changing the call mode sets hands-free to OFF.

<WORLD CALL>

Making International Calls

Subscription: Not required
Monthly charge: Free

WORLD CALL is an international dialing service available for DoCoMo mobile phones.

FOMA service subscribers have also subscribed to "WORLD CALL" (excluding those who indicated that they did not require the service).

* This service is unavailable with some billing plans.

- WORLD CALL is available for calls to around 240 countries and regions worldwide.
- The WORLD CALL is included in the bill for your monthly call charges.
- In addition to dialing a phone number, you can make an international call by adding "+" or selecting "Int'l call" or "Prefix numbers" from the function menu on the phone number entry, Redial/Dialed calls, Received calls or phonebook detail screen.

Changes to the international dialing procedure

Because communication from mobile devices such as mobile phones is not covered by the "MYLINE" service, this service cannot be used to access WORLD CALL. However, with the introduction of the "MYLINE" service, the procedure used to make international calls from a mobile phone has changed. Note that the conventional dialing procedure (the one described below with "010" removed) can no longer be used.

For additional information regarding WORLD CALL, refer to the contact information provided on the back cover of this manual.

"International videophone calls" can be made to users of some specific overseas 3G mobile terminals by pressing  () to make a call after following the dialing procedure below.

- See the DoCoMo website for information about accessible countries and carriers.
- Depending on the type of phone used by the other party, the other party's image shown on your FOMA terminal may be distorted during an international videophone call or the connection may fail.

Dialing to make an international call

1 Dial a number in the following order: 009130 → 010 → (country code) → (area code (long distance code)) → (the other party's phone number)

If an area code begins with a zero (0), omit the zero. However, when you call some countries or regions such as Italy, "0" may be required.

2



An international call is made.

3

To end the call, press 

Using "+" to make an international call

Using the "+" prefix allows you to make international calls without having to dial an IDD prefix code (e.g. 009130-010).

- "Auto convert setting" in "Int'l dial assistance" is set to "ON" (automatically added) at the time of purchase so that a FOMA terminal automatically dials the IDD prefix code.

1

On the standby screen, dial the following: + () (1 second or longer) → (country code) → (area code (long distance code)) → (other party's phone number)

If an area code begins with a zero (0), omit the zero. However, when you call some countries or regions such as Italy, "0" may be required.

2

 ▶ "Dial"

An international call is made.

■ To make a call without converting "+" into the IDD prefix code

▶ "Original phone No."

*: This function is unavailable for your FOMA terminal.

■ To cancel a call

▶ "Cancel"

Making an international call with international call codes added <Int'l call>

Add a country code or IDD prefix code to a phone number to make an international call.

- Set a country code or IDD prefix code in "Int'l dial assistance". → p.60
- This function is available on the phone number entry screen and the detail screens of phonebook, Received calls, Dialed calls and Redial.

<Example: To use the "Int'l call" function on the phone number entry screen>

1

Enter the other party's phone number

2

 (FUNC) ▶ "Int'l call" ▶ Select a country code ▶ Select an international access name (IDD prefix code)

The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If an area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted. If "イタリア" (Italy) is selected for the country code, the zero is not deleted.

3



NOTE

- ◆ Depending on the setting in “Auto convert setting” in “Int'l dial assistance” (p.60), “+” added to a phone number or phonebook entry is replaced as follows:
 - When “ON” (automatically added) is set, “+” is replaced with the IDD prefix code set in “Auto convert setting”.
 - When “OFF” (not added) is set, select “Int'l call” from the function menu and select an IDD prefix code. “+” is replaced with the selected IDD prefix code.

Making an international call with an easy operation <Int'l dial assistance>

Default setting	Auto convert setting: ON (auto conversion) Country Code setting: 日本 (Country code: 81) IDD Prefix setting: WORLD CALL (009130010)
------------------------	--

You can change the settings for dialing international calls or edit country codes. You can set the following:

Auto convert setting	When you make an international call from Japan, the entered “+” is automatically replaced with the IDD prefix code set in this function.
Country Code setting	Edits country names and country codes used when you make international calls. 22 names and codes are stored at the time of purchase.
IDD Prefix setting	Stores international access names and IDD prefix codes used when you make international calls.

● Converting “+” automatically

Set this function to convert “+” automatically when making international calls.

- 1** (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Dialing” ▶ “Int'l dial assistance” ▶ “Auto convert setting” ▶ “ON”
 - To not convert automatically
 - ▶ “OFF”

- 2** Select a country code ▶ Select an IDD prefix code

● Editing a country code

See the DoCoMo website for more information about country codes.

- 1** (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Dialing” ▶ “Int'l dial assistance” ▶ “Country Code setting”

The “Country Code set” screen appears.
- 2** Highlight an item and press (Edit)
- 3** Enter a country name ▶ Enter a country code



Country Code set
Function menu ▶ p.60

Function menu (Country Code set screen)

Edit	Edits a country code.	
Delete	Delete this	Deletes the highlighted country code setting.
	Delete selected	▶ Use (↓) to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple country code settings.
	Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all the stored country code settings.

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot delete the country code set in “Auto convert setting”. When “ON” (automatically added) is set in “Auto convert setting”, you cannot perform “Delete selected” or “Delete all”.

● Storing an IDD prefix code

You can store up to 3 IDD prefix codes, each of 10 digits max.

1 ► “Settings” ► “Dialing” ► “Int’l dial assistance” ► “IDD Prefix setting”

The “IDD Prefix setting” screen appears.

2 Highlight “<Not recorded>” and press (Edit)

■ To edit a stored item

► Highlight an item to edit and press (Edit)

3 Enter an international access name ► Enter the IDD prefix code



Function menu ► p.61

Function menu (IDD Prefix setting screen)

Edit	Edits the IDD prefix code.
Delete	Deletes the highlighted IDD prefix code.
Delete all	► Enter your security code ► “YES” Deletes all the stored IDD prefix codes.

NOTE

◆ You cannot delete the IDD prefix code set in “Auto convert setting”. When “ON” (automatically added) is set in “Auto convert setting”, you cannot perform “Delete all”.

<Hands-free>

Switching to Hands-free Operation

Switching to the hands-free operation during a call

Switching to the hands-free operation during a call enables you to hear the other party’s voice through a speaker.

1 In-call screen (p.53) ► ()

Pressing () while a FOMA terminal is ringing also allows you to switch to hands-free.

“ ” appears and you can hear other party’s voice through a speaker during a hands-free call.

■ To cancel the hands-free operation

► Press () during a hands-free call

The hands-free operation ends, and “ ” disappears during a voice or PushTalk call or “ ” changes to “ ” during a videophone call.



Example: Voice call

● Notes on using the hands-free operation

It is recommended to keep a distance of about 30 cm from a FOMA terminal during a hands-free call. If the distance is longer or shorter than 30 cm, the other party may find it difficult to listen to you or voices may sound differently.

NOTE

- ◆ The other party’s voice may be heard by those around you during a hands-free call. Move to an area where your call will not disturb other people before switching to a hands-free call.
- ◆ Ending a call cancels the hands-free setting.

Using the Redial/Received Calls Record

● Dialing a previously dialed number <Redial/Dialed calls>

Information such as a phone number, date and time you called is recorded as the Redial/Dialed calls record.

- The Redial record can hold up to 30 phone numbers for voice call, videophone call and PushTalk call entries. The Dialed calls record can hold up to 30 voice call, videophone call and PushTalk call entries and up to 30 packet communication and 64K data communication entries.
- If you have dialed to the same phone number twice or more, only the latest call is logged in the Redial record while all the calls are logged in the Dialed calls record.
- When the number of Redial/Dialed calls record entries exceeds the maximum, existing entries are overwritten starting with the oldest one.
- You cannot view the Redial/Dialed calls record during a videophone call.
- Redial/Dialed/Received calls records of PushTalk calls → p.96

1 On the standby screen

The “Redial (list)” screen appears.

■ To view the Dialed calls record

▶ On the standby screen  ▶ “Own data” ▶ “Dialed calls”

The “Dialed calls (list)” screen appears.



Example: Redial (list)

Function menu → p.63

2 Select a Redial/Dialed calls record entry to check

The “Redial (detail)” or “Dialed calls (detail)” screen appears.

In the top right corner of the screen, the “Current entry/Total entries” is shown. The lower the number, the more recently the phone number was called.

■ To check the earlier or later Redial/Dialed call record entries

Use  to move to the previous (more recent) number or  to move to the next (older) number.

■ For a phone number stored in the phonebook

The name stored in the phonebook also appears.



Example: Redial (detail)

Function menu → p.63

3 or

■ To make a videophone call

▶  (V. phone)

■ To make a PushTalk call

▶ 

4 To end the call, press

NOTE

- ◆ Turning a FOMA terminal off does not delete the Redial or Dialed calls record. To prevent others from seeing the phone numbers you have called, delete the respective entries of the Redial or Dialed calls record, or lock “Dialed calls” in “Original lock”.
- ◆ Press  and  on the standby screen to make a voice call to the most recent Redial record entry.
- ◆ If you have selected “Multi Number” from the function menu to make a call, the items selected when making the call (“Basic Number” or the registered name of Additional Number1 or Additional Number2) are shown on the Redial (detail) or Dialed calls (detail) screen.
- ◆ Setting “Restrict dialing” erases all the Redial or Dialed calls record entries. The calls made subsequently are logged in the Redial or Dialed calls record.
- ◆ The phone numbers you have called are also logged in the “Dialed calls” record. Even when two or more calls are made to the same number, history is recorded as a separate entry in the “Dialed calls” record.
- ◆ The Redial record of PushTalk calls (group) is updated only if you have selected the same members from the Redial/Dialed calls record to make a call. If at least one member is different, the call is logged as another record entry.

Function menu (Redial/Dialed/Received calls screen)

- Available functions vary depending on the record.
- The function menus of Redial/Dialed/Received calls screen are the same between the list and the detail.

Notify Caller ID ^{*1}	"Showing Your Phone Number to the Other Party" → p.68	
Prefix numbers ^{*1*2}	▶ Select a prefix name to add "Setting Prefix Numbers" → p.69	
Chaku-moji ^{*1*2}	"Making a call with a Chaku-moji message" → p.66	
Int'l call ^{*1*2}	"Making an international call with international call codes added" → p.59	
Multi Number ^{*1*2}	"Multi Number" → p.424	
Select PushTalk ^{*3}	"Using the records of Redial, Dialed calls and Received calls" → p.96	
Ring time	Shows the Missed calls record entries with the ring times. This setting is available only when the Received calls (list) screen appears.	
Add to phonebook	Add to phonebook	"Adding Phonebook Entries From the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records" → p.109
	Add to PushTalk	
	Add to PushTalk Gr	
Look-up phonebook ^{*2}	"Accessing a phonebook entry from the Redial or Dialed calls record" → p.113	
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.147	
Compose message ^{*2}	"Creating and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.239	
Compose SMS ^{*2}	"Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)" → p.278	
Sent address	Shows the Sent address list only on the Redial/Dialed calls screen.	
Received address	Shows the Received address list only on the Received calls screen.	
Connection speed ^{*1*2}	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from "64K" or "32K".	
Select image ^{*2}	"Setting an image to send during a videophone call" → p.86 Selecting "Release settings" cancels the setting of "My side" or "Chara-den".	
Delete	Deletes the calls record entries.	
	Delete this	Deletes the highlighted entry.
	Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox <input type="checkbox"/> ▶  (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes multiple entries.
	Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all the entries.

*1: Only available for the detail screen

*2: Unavailable for the PushTalk (group) record screen

*3: Only available for the PushTalk (group) record screen

NOTE

- ◆ Selecting "Compose message" enables you to compose a mail with the mail address stored in a phonebook entry with the phone number. When multiple mail addresses are stored in the phonebook entry, the first address is specified as the address.
- ◆ Performing "Delete all" on the Redial or Dialed calls screen deletes all the entries logged in the both Redial and Dialed calls records. Note that performing "Delete this" or "Delete selected" for Redial record entries does not any entry of the Dialed calls record, or vice versa. Use the function menu on the Dialed calls record screen to delete the Dialed calls record, or the function menu on the Redial screen to delete the Redial record.
- ◆ Dialed calls/Received calls through packet or 64K data communication cannot be added to the phonebook or used to compose a new mail.

Redial/Dialed calls icons

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Voice call		International videophone call
	International call		Packet communication call
	Videophone call		64K data communication call
	PushTalk (one-to-one) call		PushTalk (group) call

Information on received calls, including the caller's phone numbers and the dates and times are logged in the Received calls record.

- The Received calls record stores up to 30 voice call, videophone call and PushTalk call entries and up to 30 packet communication and 64K data communication call entries.
- If the maximum number of logs is exceeded, logs are overwritten starting with the oldest one.
- You cannot view the Received calls record during a videophone call.
- If you have changed the call mode between voice and videophone, the first received number is logged in the Received calls record.
- Redial/Dialed/Received calls records of PushTalk calls → p.96

1 MENU ▶ “Own data” ▶ “Received calls” ▶ Select any item

All calls (number)	Shows all the Received calls record entries.
Missed calls (number)	Shows only the missed calls record entries.

Unknown calls: Shows the number of missed calls that you have not checked.

2 Check the Received calls record list

The “Received calls (list)” screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.63

3 Select an entry to check in detail

The “Received calls (detail)” screen appears. In the top right corner of the screen, “Current entry/Total entries” is shown. The lower the number, the more recent the call from that phone number.

■ To check the earlier or later Received call record entries

Use ⏪ to move to the previous (more recent) entry or ⏩ to move to the next (older) entry.

■ For a phone number stored in the phonebook

The name stored in the phonebook also appears.



Function menu ▶ p.63

4 or

■ To make a videophone call

▶ (V.phone)

■ To make a PushTalk call

▶

5 To end the call, press

NOTE

- ◆ Turning a FOMA terminal off does not delete the Received calls record. If you want to prevent others from seeing the received phone numbers, delete the Received calls record entries or lock “Received calls” in “Original lock”.
- ◆ When you have set “Missed calls display” in the “Ring time(sec.)” to “Not display” and receive a call whose ring time is shorter than the one set in “Set mute seconds”, the call does not appear in the Received calls record. → p.174
- ◆ Pressing ⏪ on the standby screen also accesses the Received calls record.
- ◆ Press and ⏪ on the standby screen to make a voice call to the most recent Received calls record entry.
- ◆ Receiving a call with Multi Number (Additional Number1 or Additional Number2) will display the registered name of Additional Number1 or Additional Number2 on the Received calls record (detail) screen.
- ◆ If a caller uses “Dial-in”, a number other than the “Dial-in” may be displayed.
- ◆ If a phone number shown by a caller is stored in the phonebook, the caller's name and phone number are logged in the Received calls record. If the phone number has not been shown, the reason for hiding the number (p.173) is shown in the Received calls record. Even if the shown phone number is stored in the phonebook, while “Restrict dialing” is set, the name and phone number appear only if the phone number is specified in “Restrict dialing”. Only the phone number appears for the phone number not specified in “Restrict dialing”.

- ◆ If multiple phonebook entries with different names contain the same phone number and you receive a call from the number, the name retrieved by the phonebook search in the order of readings appears in the Received calls record. →p.112

Received calls/Missed calls icons

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed voice calls		Received remote monitoring calls
	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed international voice calls		Received/missed/unconfirmed missed international videophone calls
	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed videophone calls		Received/missed/unconfirmed missed packet communication calls
	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed PushTalk (one-to-one) calls		Received/missed/unconfirmed missed 64K data communication calls
	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed PushTalk (group) calls		Packet communication or 64K data communication calls that have been received without an external unit connected
	Voice record message/ videophone message recorded		Calls with Chaku-moji messages

<Chaku-moji>

Using Chaku-moji

Default setting

MSG display settings: Calls with Caller ID 3D message display: ON

When making a voice or videophone call, you can send a message (Chaku-moji) that will be shown on the other party's phone while it is ringing, enabling you to show the other party the summary of the call, etc. beforehand.

- A Chaku-moji message can contain up to 10 characters including pictographs, face symbols, symbols, double-byte and single-byte characters.
- Charges apply to sending of Chaku-moji messages. They are not applied to the receiver.
- This function is supported by the 902iS series, N902iX HIGH-SPEED, 903i series, SH902iSL, D702iF, P702iD and SH702iS.
- The Chaku-moji function is incompatible with PushTalk calls.

Editing or setting Chaku-moji messages

1



“Service” ▶ “Chaku-moji” ▶ Select any item

Create message	“Adding Chaku-moji messages to use frequently” → p.66	
MSG display settings	Sets the type of Chaku-moji message to be displayed.	
	Display all messages	Displays all Chaku-moji messages.
	Only number in PH-book	Displays only the Chaku-moji messages from senders stored in the phonebook.
	Calls with Caller ID	Displays only the Chaku-moji messages from senders showing the caller ID.
	Hide all messages	Hides all Chaku-moji messages.
3D message display	Sets whether to use 3D animations to show Chaku-moji messages.	

NOTE

- ◆ The “MSG display settings” setting affects displays on the image display. However, setting “OFF” for “Called” in “Image display” does not show Chaku-moji messages on the image display.
- ◆ 3D animations are not used for the image display even if “3D message display” is set to “ON”.

● Adding Chaku-moji messages to use frequently

Adding Chaku-moji messages to use frequently enables you to easily attach them to calls to make.

- 5 messages are pre-installed and you can edit them.
- Up to 30 messages (including 5 pre-installed) can be added.

1 "Service" ▶ "Chaku-moji" ▶ "Create message"

The "Create message" screen appears.

2 Highlight "<Not recorded>" and press (Edit) or

■ To edit a stored Chaku-moji message

▶ Highlight an item to edit and press  (Edit)

3 Enter a Chaku-moji message



Function menu ▶ p.66

Function menu (Create message screen)

Edit	Edits a Chaku-moji message.	
Delete	Delete this	Deletes the highlighted Chaku-moji message.
	Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (<input type="checkbox"/>) ▶  (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes multiple Chaku-moji messages.
	Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all Chaku-moji messages.

NOTE

- ◆ If  (Set) is pressed without any changes on the screen for editing a pre-installed message, the pre-installed one will remain.
- ◆ You cannot delete pre-installed Chaku-moji messages. If a pre-installed message is edited and the edited message is deleted, the pre-installed one will be restored.

Making a call with a Chaku-moji message

Chaku-moji messages can be added to voice calls or videophone calls that are made by dialing or using "Phonebook" entries, "Received calls", "Dialed calls" or "Redial" record.

<Example: To add a Chaku-moji message on the phone number entry screen to make a call>

1 Phone number entry screen (p.53) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Chaku-moji" ▶ Select any item

Create message	Enters a Chaku-moji message. A message can contain up to 10 characters including pictographs, symbols, double-byte and single-byte characters.
Select message	Selects a stored Chaku-moji message. To edit the message, press  (Edit) on the Select message screen.
Sent messages	Selects a sent Chaku-moji message. To edit the message, press  (Edit) on the Sent messages screen.

2

When the other party's terminal receives a Chaku-moji message, "Transmission completed" appears on your terminal, resulting in charges to the sending.



■ To make a videophone call with a Chaku-moji message

▶  (V. phone)

■ To delete the entered Chaku-moji message (to make a call without the message)

▶  (FUNC) ▶ "Chaku-moji" ▶ "Create message" ▶ Delete all the entered Chaku-moji characters and press 

NOTE

- ◆ Up to 30 sent messages can be stored in the Sent messages record. If the same message has been sent twice or more, the latest one is stored. When the number of sent messages exceeds the maximum, they are overwritten starting with the oldest one.
- ◆ If the callee's phone is under conditions such as following, Chaku-moji messages cannot be sent, the sending result message "Transmission failed" appears and no charges apply to the sending.
 - The phone does not support Chaku-moji.
 - "MSG display settings" that hides received Chaku-moji messages is set on the phone.
- ◆ If the callee's phone is under conditions such as following, Chaku-moji messages cannot be sent, no sending result appears and no charges apply to the sending. (The messages cannot be logged in the Received calls record on the callee's phone.)
 - Public mode (Driving mode) is set.
 - 0 seconds is set as the ring time for Record message.
 - The phone is out of service area or turned off.
- ◆ Depending on the signal status, no sending result appears even if a Chaku-moji message reaches the callee's phone. If this is the case, charges apply to the sending.
- ◆ If "Auto redial as voice" (p.86) is set to "ON" and you cannot make a videophone call with a Chaku-moji message, the phone automatically redials the call with the message after switching the call mode to voice.
- ◆ If you edit a Chaku-moji message by using "Select message", the edited message is available only once. The message is not listed on the "Create message" screen.
- ◆ Chaku-moji messages cannot be sent to phones overseas.

● If a voice or videophone call with a Chaku-moji message arrives

The ringing screen shows the Chaku-moji message. When you answer the call, the message disappears.

- 3D animations are used to display Chaku-moji messages.
- Chaku-moji messages are shown on the image display when a FOMA terminal is folded.



Example: Voice call

NOTE

- ◆ 3D animations may be unavailable for some pictographs.
- ◆ Even if a call with a Chaku-moji message arrives, the message may not appear depending on the status of the caller's or callee's phone. When this happens, the message is not logged in the Received calls record.
- ◆ If you received a call whose ring time is shorter than the time set in "Set mute seconds" in "Ring time(sec.)", the Chaku-moji message attached to the call appears. The message logged in the Received calls record and the charges apply to the caller.

● Displaying Chaku-moji messages in the Received calls record

Chaku-moji messages are stored in the Received calls record.

- 1 **Received calls screen (list) (p.64)** ▶ Select an entry with "✎"

The "Received calls (detail)" screen appears, allowing you to check the Chaku-moji message.

NOTE

- ◆ If you use the Received calls record to make a call, the Chaku-moji message stored in the record is not sent.

<186/184>

Showing/Hiding Your Caller ID for Individual Calls

If the other party's phone supports caller ID display, you can show your phone number (caller ID) on the other party's phone (display) when making a voice or videophone call. Since your caller ID is important information, be careful when disclosing it.

- "PushTalk setting" is available for setting whether to show your caller ID when making PushTalk calls. → p.103

Function	Description	Refer to
Caller ID Notification	Sets whether to show your caller ID when making a call.	p.50
184/186	Uses the 184 and 186 prefixes to specify whether to show your caller ID every time you make a call.	p.68
Notify Caller ID	Accesses the function menu to specify whether to show your caller ID every time you make a call.	p.68

Adding the 186/184 prefix to the other party's phone number

To show your caller ID each time you make a call, add the "186" prefix to the phone number to dial. To hide your caller ID, use the "184" prefix.

- Dialing with the "186" or "184" prefix is disabled for international calls. To make them, select "Notify Caller ID" from the function menu. → p.68

■ To show your phone number

Voice call: 186 - (the other party's phone number) - 

Videophone call: 186 - (the other party's phone number) -  (V.phone)

■ To hide your phone number

Voice call: 184 - (the other party's phone number) - 

Videophone call: 184 - (the other party's phone number) -  (V.phone)

NOTE

- ◆ If you hear the message requesting your caller ID, dial the number again adding the "186" prefix.
- ◆ If you make a call with "186" or "184", the phone number including this prefix is logged in the Redial or Dialed calls record.

Showing your phone number to the other party <Notify Caller ID>

Select whether to show the other party your caller ID, from "OFF" or "ON".

- This function is available on the phone number entry screen and the detail screens of phonebook, Received calls, Dialed calls and Redial.

<Example: To make a call on the phone number entry screen>

1 Enter the other party's phone number

2 (FUNC) ▶ "Notify Caller ID" ▶ "OFF" or "ON"

- To cancel "ON" or "OFF" in the "Notify Caller ID" setting

▶ "Cancel prefix"

When "Cancel prefix" is set, the "Caller ID Notification" (p.50) setting is applied.

3

<Pause dial>

MENU84

Sending Push Signals Quickly

Sending push signals from your FOMA terminal enables you to send messages to a pager or to use services such as ticket ordering and bank balance requests.

Storing dialing data in Pause dial

You can store dialing data to send as push signals beforehand into Pause dial. Inserting p (pause) into the dialing data allows you to send data with a separation where a pause lies.

- You can store one dialing data entry that consists of up to 128 characters.
- Dialing data can contain numbers from 0 to 9, #, * and p (pause).
- You cannot enter p (pause) in succession or at the beginning of dialing data.

1 ▶ "Settings" ▶ "Dialing" ▶ "Pause dial"

The "Pause dial" screen appears.

- If there is dialing data already stored

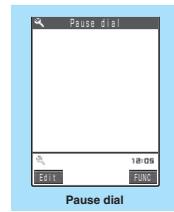
The stored dialing data appears.

2 (Edit) ▶ Enter the dialing data

Press  to ,  or  to enter dialing data.

- To enter p (pause)

▶  (1 second or longer)



Function menu → p.69

Function menu (Pause dial screen)

Edit	▶ Edit the dialing data
Send pause dial	▶ Enter the destination phone number ▶ or Each time you press or , the dialing data up to p (pause) is transmitted.
Delete	Deletes the stored dialing data.

Transmitting dialing data as Pause dial

1 ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Dialing” ▶ “Pause dial”

2 ▶ Dial the destination phone number

- To enter a phone number by searching the phonebook using part of the number
 - ▶ Dial a part of a phone number ▶ Press to search the phonebook
- To enter a phone number by searching the phonebook using a search mode other than the phone number
 - ▶ Select a search mode on the search phonebook screen
- To enter a phone number by searching the Received calls/Redial record
 - ▶ Search the number from the Received calls record or press to search from the Redial record

3 or

The FOMA terminal calls the entered phone number and shows the dialing data up to the first p (pause) while the dialed phone is ringing. The p (pause) is not shown.



4 or

Each time you press or , the dialing data up to p (pause) is transmitted. Once the FOMA terminal has finished sending the last number, the in-call screen reappears.

- To transmit all the dialing data at once
 - ▶ (1 second or longer) ▶ “Send at one time”
 - It may not be possible to send all data at once to some recipients.

NOTE

- ◆ Some phones may be unable to receive push signals.
- ◆ Open the Pause dial screen during a voice call to transmit the dialing data to the other party.
- ◆ You cannot send push signals during a videophone call.

<Prefix setting>

Setting Prefix Numbers

Default setting

WORLD CALL (009130010)

Set prefixes to use frequently in advance. You can then add a preset prefix to the beginning of a phone number when making a call by dialing or using the phonebook, “Received calls”, “Dialed calls” or “Redial” record. For example, it is useful to set the “186” or “184” prefix.

- You can store up to 7 prefix numbers.
- Preset prefixes can include numbers from 0 to 9, #, * and +.

1 ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Dialing” ▶ “Prefix setting”

The “Prefix setting” screen appears.

2 Highlight “<Not recorded>” and press (Edit)

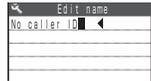
- To edit a stored prefix
 - ▶ Highlight an item to edit and press (Edit)
- To check a stored prefix
 - ▶ Select an item to check



Prefix setting
Function menu ▶ p.70

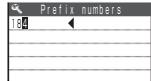
3 Enter a name

A name can consist of up to 8 double-byte or 16 single-byte characters.



4 Enter the numbers (prefix)

Numbers can consist of up to 10 digits.



Function menu (Prefix setting screen)

Edit	Edits a prefix.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted prefix.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all prefixes.

<Sub-address setting>

Setting Sub-addresses When Making Calls

Default setting
ON

This function enables you to set “X” contained in a phone number as a separator so that numbers following “X” are recognized as a sub-address. Sub-addresses are available in ISDN to identify calls made from specific communication devices or to select contents in “V-live”.

1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Dialing” ▶ “Sub-address setting” ▶ “ON”

- To cancel the sub-address setting
▶ “OFF”

NOTE

- ◆ In the following cases, “X” does not function as a sub-address separator. A number including “X” is recognized as an ordinary phone number.
 - “X” is at the beginning of a phone number.
 - “186/184” is followed by “X” at the beginning of a phone number.
 - “X” follows the number entered in “Prefix numbers”.
 - “X590#/X591#/X592#” is included in a phone number.

<Reconnect signal>

MENU77

Setting the Alarm Used for Reconnection

Default setting
High tone

When the signal quality deteriorates during a voice, videophone or PushTalk call to the extent that the call drops out, a FOMA terminal will automatically reconnect the call if the signal quality quickly improves. This function allows you to set the type of alarm given when a call is being reconnected.

- The time needed for reconnection varies depending on communication conditions such as manipulation or signal quality. It may roughly take about 10 seconds.

1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Talk” ▶ “Reconnect signal” ▶ “No tone”, “High tone” or “Low tone”

NOTE

- ◆ A call may drop out without the warning tone if signal quality worsens very quickly.
- ◆ Call charges apply in the interval (up to roughly 10 seconds) prior to reconnection.
- ◆ The other party hears no sound while the signal is lost.

<Noise reduction>

MENU76

Blocking Out Ambient Noise

Default setting
ON

Noise reduction is a function that suppresses ambient noise. This makes it easier for the other party in a voice, videophone or PushTalk call to hear you when you are in a noisy location.

1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Talk” ▶ “Noise reduction” ▶ “ON”

- To not use the noise reduction
▶ “OFF”

Making Hands-free Calls in a Car

By connecting your FOMA terminal to a hands-free device such as “In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01” (optional) or a car navigation system, you can make or receive voice calls, etc. with the hands-free device. For information about how to use a hands-free device, refer to the instructions provided with the device. Note that FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 (optional) must be used with In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional).

NOTE

- ◆ To operate from a hands-free device, set USB mode setting to “Communication mode”. → p.361
- ◆ The display and ring tones for incoming calls and mails work according to the FOMA terminal settings.
- ◆ If a FOMA terminal is connected to a hands-free device and set up so that the sound is emitted from the hands-free device, the ring tone still sounds through the hands-free device for incoming mails or voice, videophone and PushTalk calls even when Manner mode is set or the ring volume is set to “Silent”.
- ◆ When Public mode (Driving mode) is set, a FOMA terminal works for incoming calls and mails as specified in the “Public mode” settings.
- ◆ When Record message is set, a FOMA terminal works for incoming calls and mails as specified in the “Record message” settings.
- ◆ If you make a videophone call from a hands-free device using the phonebook or Redial record, the connection speed set in the hands-free device is applied. If no connection speed is set, “64K” is used.
- ◆ While a FOMA terminal is connected to a hands-free device and set up so that sound is emitted from the FOMA terminal, “Setting when folded” is applied to the operation performed when the FOMA terminal is folded. If the hands-free device is set to emit sound and the FOMA terminal is folded, the call condition does not change regardless of “Setting when folded”.

Receiving a Voice/Videophone Call

● Receiving a voice call

1 When a call arrives, press or

When a call arrives, a FOMA terminal rings, the incoming call lamp flashes and the “Ringing” screen appears. Unless “Phone” under “Vibrator” is set to “OFF”, the FOMA terminal also vibrates to notify you of the call. The image display also notifies you of the call by displaying the caller’s name. → p.32

■ If a call with a Chaku-moji message arrives

A Chaku-moji animation appears on the screen. You may know the contents beforehand. → p.65



Ringing
Function menu → p.71



Ringing (with Chaku-moji)

2 To end the call, press

Function menu (voice/videophone ringing screen)

Call Rejection	Ends the call without answering it.
Call Forwarding	Forwards the call. The call is forwarded regardless of whether the “Call Forwarding” setting is “Activate” or “Deactivate”.
Voice Mail	Connects the caller to the Voice Mail service center. The caller is connected to the service center regardless of whether the “Voice Mail” setting is “Activate” or “Deactivate”.
Change Display	Changes the display from Additional Number 1 or 2 to the number from which the call is forwarded. This setting is available when Multi Number (Additional Number 1 or 2) and Call Forwarding are activated for receiving calls.

NOTE

- ◆ Besides  and , you can set up your FOMA terminal to enable you to answer calls also by pressing any of , , , , ,  or the assist key (Any key answer). However, pressing  or the assist key when a FOMA terminal is folded puts a call on hold. A hold tone sounds when “Setting when folded” is set to “Tone on” and does not sound when it is set to “No tone” or “End the call”. You can also set a FOMA terminal to stop only the ring tone when a key is pressed (Quick silent).

- ◆ Pressing **[#]** or **[V]** (MEMO/CHECK) while a FOMA terminal is ringing activates Record message to record the other party's message. (Pressing **[#]** also sets Manner mode.) → p.83
- ◆ When a call with the caller ID shown arrives from a caller stored in the phonebook, a FOMA terminal shows the caller's phone number and name. If there is an image stored in the phonebook entry, the image also appears. However, if the caller's entry is stored as secret data, the name and image are hidden and only the phone number is shown. If a caller does not show the caller ID, the reason for hiding the ID is displayed (caller ID hidden).
- ◆ If multiple phonebook entries with different names contain the same phone number and you receive a call from the number, the name retrieved by the phonebook search in the order of readings appears. → p.112
- ◆ Up to 30 received calls can be logged in the "Received calls" record. If a caller shows the caller ID, the caller's phone number appears. If a caller who shows the caller ID is stored in the phonebook, the caller's name and phone number appear.
- ◆ Enabling "Set in-call arrival" and setting "Incoming Call Mng" to "Answer" allow a FOMA terminal to make a short double-beep ("bibip") when a call arrives while you are on another call. When this happens, you can then do one of the following:
 - If you have subscribed to the "Voice Mail" service, you can forward the new call to the Voice Mail service center.
 - If you have subscribed to the "Call Forwarding" service, you can forward the new call to the call forwarding number.
 Furthermore, if you have subscribed to the "Call Waiting", set "Incoming Call Mng" to "Answer" and then activate "Call Waiting", you can put the ongoing call on hold and answer the new call. For more information, see p.420.
- ◆ When "PushTalk arrival act" (p.103) is set to "Answer", you can receive calls while talking on a PushTalk call.
- ◆ A FOMA terminal does not ring and the incoming call lamp does not flash when "Public mode (Driving mode)" is set. Received calls are logged in the Received calls record as missed calls.
- ◆ You can reject calls from numbers not stored in your phonebook. → p.174
- ◆ You can specify the mute time until a FOMA terminal starts ringing for calls from numbers not stored in the phonebook. → p.174
- ◆ You cannot receive calls from phone numbers for which "Call rejection" is set in the phonebook. When setting "Call acceptance" for a phone number in the phonebook, you can only receive calls from the number. → p.171
- ◆ You can talk in hands-free mode during a call. → p.61

● Receiving a videophone call

Use this procedure to receive an incoming videophone call. If you cannot answer a videophone call with your camera image, you can receive the call showing the caller a substitute image instead of your camera image.

1 When a videophone call arrives, press



The "videophone in-call" screen (p.54) appears.

You can talk hearing the other party's voice through the speaker. "Switching to Hands-free Operation" → p.61

■ If a call with a Chaku-moji message arrives

A Chaku-moji animation appears on the videophone ringing screen. You may know the contents beforehand. → p.65

■ To answer using a substitute image

▶ A substitute image appears on the caller's display. After sending a substitute image, you can still change it to a camera image by selecting "My side" from the function menu.

■ If using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional)

▶ Press the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch. You can answer using your own image. If "Automatic answer" is set to "ON", a FOMA terminal automatically answers a call using a substitute image once the specified ring time has elapsed. You can hear the other party's voice through the earphone.

■ To put an incoming videophone call on answer hold

▶ The "応答保留中 On hold" image appears on the caller's videophone display and the message is given. Press or to answer a videophone call on answer hold using a camera image, or to answer the call using a substitute image.

■ To switch between a camera image and a substitute image during a videophone call

▶ Select "Substitute image" or "My side" from the function menu.

■ To send an image from the rear camera during a videophone call

▶ Each time you press during a videophone call, you can switch between the front camera and the rear camera (CHG camera-mode).



Function menu → p.71

■ To put an ongoing videophone call on hold

▶ 

The hold tone sounds and the “保留 Holding” image appears on the other party’s videophone screen.

Press  () or  to answer a videophone call on hold using a camera image, or  to answer the call using a substitute image. Press  to answer the call in the condition before holding.

■ To mute voice to send during a videophone call (microphone mute)

▶  () (1 second or longer)

“ MUTE” appears while in mute. Video is transmitted as it is.

To cancel mute, press  () again for 1 second or longer.

2 To end the call, press

NOTE

- ◆ Digital call charges still apply to a caller when a substitute image appears during a videophone call.
- ◆ Even if “Call Forwarding” is set to “Activate”, a received videophone call can only be forwarded if the forwarding number is a 3G-324M-compatible (p.52) videophone. Check the forwarding destination phone before setting up call forwarding.
- ◆ If you receive a videophone call from a caller who is barred in the Nuisance Call Blocking service, the caller sees the movie announcement showing that the call has been rejected and then the call ends.
- ◆ Pressing  or  (MEMO/CHECK) while a FOMA terminal is ringing activates Record message to record the other party’s message. (Pressing  also sets Manner mode.) → p.83
- ◆ Incoming call operations for a videophone call during i-mode communication follows “V-phone while packet”. → p.89
- ◆ You cannot receive i-mode mails, MessageR or MessageF during a videophone call. Mails you cannot receive are held at the i-mode Center. Receive them using “Check new messages” after the videophone call ends.
- ◆ You can receive SMS during a videophone call.
- ◆ When you have subscribed to the “Call Waiting”, “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service and a videophone call arrives while you are talking on another videophone call, end the ongoing call to answer the new call.
- ◆ If the “Recharge battery” low voltage alarm appears on the display during a videophone call, the other party sees the “カメラオフ Camera Off” message and the call is disconnected roughly 20 seconds later. If you start charging a battery before a videophone call is terminated, the call continues with the image that had been displayed before the low voltage alarm was given.
- ◆ A FOMA terminal does not ring and the incoming call lamp does not flash when “Public mode (Driving mode)” is set. Received calls are logged in the Received calls record as missed calls.
- ◆ Depending on the settings on a caller’s phone, you may receive a substitute image instead of a camera image.

Changing a Call Between Voice and Videophone (the Other Party)

The mode of an ongoing call you have received can be changed by the caller (the other party).

- You can only change the call mode when you are a caller. When you have received a call, you cannot change the call mode. (This function is available between terminals that support change between voice call and videophone call.)
- To enable a caller to change the call mode, “Ntfy switch-mode” must be set to “Indication ON” on the caller’s phone beforehand. → p.89

● Changing a call from voice to videophone (the other party)

1 In-call screen (p.53)▶ The other party changes the call mode▶ “YES”

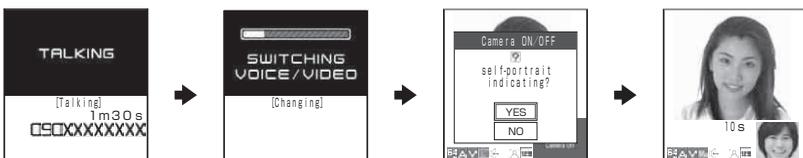
While the call mode is being changed from voice to videophone, the screen showing that the call mode is being changed appears and the voice guidance is given.

The call mode is changed to videophone and a camera image is sent to the caller.

■ To send a substitute image to the caller

▶ “NO”

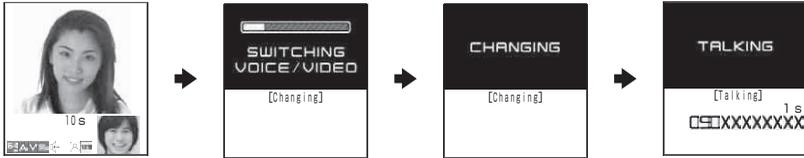
The specified substitute image is sent to the caller.



● Changing a call from videophone to voice (the other party)

1 Videophone in-call screen (p.54) ▶ The other party changes the call mode

While the call mode is being changed from videophone to voice, the screen showing that the call mode is being changed appears and the voice guidance is given.



NOTE

- ◆ When the call mode is changed from voice to videophone, the hands-free operation is activated or deactivated according to the “Hands-free switch” setting, regardless of the hands-free status before the mode change. → p.88
- ◆ Changing the call mode from videophone to voice deactivates the hands-free operation.

<Answer setting>

MENU58

Using a Dial Key to Receive Calls

Default setting
Any key answer

This setting enables you to quickly turn off a ring tone or answer the call when you receive a voice, videophone or PushTalk call. This is useful when you receive a call in a place where a ring tone may disturb people around you.

- Pressing **[M]** (MEMO/CHECK) or **[#]** while a FOMA terminal is ringing activates Record message to record the caller's message. → p.83

1 **[MENU]** ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “Answer setting” ▶ Select any item

Any key answer	Press one of the following keys to answer a call: Voice call: [CALL] , [END] , [0] to [9] , [*] , [CLR] , [CALL] , [M] (↔) or assist key Videophone call: [CALL] , [END] , [Subst] or [V.phone] PushTalk call: [V] , [CALL] , [END] , [0] to [9] , [*] , [CLR] , [CALL] , [M] (↔) or assist key
Quick silent	Press one of the following keys or open a FOMA terminal to stop a ring tone or vibrator. When you stop a ring tone or vibrator in this way, the caller continues to hear the ring tone. Voice call*, PushTalk call*: [0] to [9] , [*] , [CLR] , [CALL] , [M] (↔), assist key or [M] Videophone call*: [0] to [9] , [*] , [CLR] , [CALL] , [M] (↔) or assist key *: To answer a call, press [CALL] , [END] or [V.phone] (only for videophone) or [V] (only for PushTalk). When answering a videophone call, press [CALL] or [V.phone] to send a camera image or [END] to send a substitute image.
OFF	Press one of the following keys to answer a call: Voice call: [CALL] or [END] Videophone call*: [CALL] , [END] , [V.phone] PushTalk call: [V] , [CALL] or [END] *: Press [END] to answer with a substitute image.

NOTE

- ◆ Even when “Quick silent” is set, it works as “Any key answer” while in “Manner mode”.
- ◆ Even when “Any key answer” or “Quick silent” is set, pressing **[5]** for 1 second or longer turns on or off the display light and “Any key answer” or “Quick silent” does not work.
- ◆ When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to a FOMA terminal, you can answer voice calls, videophone calls (with a camera image) or PushTalk calls by pressing the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch regardless of the “Answer setting” setting.
- ◆ When “Any key answer” is set and a FOMA terminal is folded, press **[M]** (↔) or the assist key to put a voice call on hold. If you do so, a hold tone sounds when “Setting when folded” is set to “Tone on” and does not sound when it is set to “No tone” or “End the call”.
- ◆ When “External keys guard” is set to “ON” or a FOMA terminal is folded, pressing **[M]** (↔) or the assist key does not work “Any key answer” or “Quick silent”.

Folding a FOMA Terminal to End/Hold Calls

Default setting
End the call

You can set how your FOMA terminal works when it is folded during a voice or videophone call.

- 1 ► “Settings” ► “Talk” ► “Setting when folded” ► Select any item

No tone	Mutes sound for voice calls. For videophone calls, sound is muted and a “substitute image” is sent to the caller. No hold tone is given. When the FOMA terminal is opened, the status reverts to before it was folded.*
Tone on	Puts a call on hold (Holding). You can also select whether to play the hold tone through the speaker on your FOMA terminal. If a FOMA terminal is folded during a voice call, the other party hears the hold tone selected in “Set hold tone”. While in a videophone call, the other party hears the hold tone selected in “Set hold tone” and sees a hold image. → pp.77, 86 When the FOMA terminal is opened, the status reverts to before it was folded.*
Speaker ON	The hold tone is sent to the other party and played through the speaker.
Speaker OFF	The hold tone is only heard by the other party.
End the call	Ends a call. It is the same operation as pressing .

* : If you fold a FOMA terminal holding a voice call and re-open the terminal, the call resumes. If the held call is a videophone call, it remains on hold.

NOTE

- ◆ While Manner mode is set, no sound is played through the speaker even if “Speaker ON” is set.
- ◆ If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, this function is disabled and folding a FOMA terminal does not change call condition. However, during a videophone call using a camera image, folding the FOMA terminal switches the image to a substitute.
- ◆ Even if “Tone on” is set, folding a FOMA terminal leads to the “No tone” operation while “Call Waiting” is activated.
- ◆ This setting is disabled for PushTalk calls. The “Setting when folded” under “PushTalk setting” will apply. → p.103

<Volume>

Adjusting the Earpiece Volume

Default setting
Level 4

Use this procedure to adjust the earpiece volume to between “Level 1” (quietest) and “Level 6” (loudest) during a call.

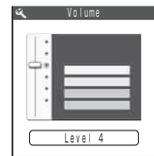
- If you adjust the volume during a call or while a FOMA terminal is in standby, the adjusted setting will be retained after you end the call.

Adjusting the earpiece volume during a call

<Example: During a voice call>

- 1 **During a call** ► Press (↵) or (MEMO/CHECK) to adjust the volume

You can also adjust the volume by pressing or for 1 second or longer. To adjust the volume in succession, press (↵) or (MEMO/CHECK) for 1 second or longer during the earpiece volume adjustment. If no operation is conducted for 2 seconds or longer on the earpiece adjustment screen, the screen ends to return to the in-call screen.



■ To switch to hands-free



Hands-free → p.61

NOTE

- ◆ You can also adjust the earpiece volume when talking on a videophone, PushTalk or hands-free call.
- ◆ Pressing or also allows you to adjust the volume during a videophone call. However, you cannot adjust the volume in succession even if pressing (↵) or (MEMO/CHECK) for 1 second or longer during the earpiece volume adjustment.

Adjusting the earpiece volume in standby mode

- 1 On the standby screen ▶ or (1 second or longer) ▶ Press or to adjust the volume

Press or for 1 second or longer to adjust the volume in succession.

If no operation is conducted for 2 seconds or longer on the earpiece adjustment screen, the screen ends to return to the standby screen.

<Ring volume>

MENU50

Adjusting the Ring Volume

Default setting
Level 4

Use this procedure to adjust the volume of a ring tone given when you receive a voice call, videophone call, PushTalk call, mail, chat mail, MessageR or MessageF. There are six volume settings for each type of call and mail. You can also set a silent ring tone or set it to gradually get louder (step).

- 1 ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “Ring volume” ▶ Select any item

Phone	Adjusts the ring tone volume for voice calls and 64K data communication.
Videophone	Adjusts the ring tone volume for videophone calls.
PushTalk	Adjusts the ring tone volume for PushTalk calls.
Mail	Adjusts the ring tone volume for i-mode mails, SMS and packet communication.
Chat mail	Adjusts the ring tone volume for chat mails.
MessageR	Adjusts the ring tone volume for MessageR.
MessageF	Adjusts the ring tone volume for MessageF.

- 2 or ▶

■ To set step tones (getting a ring tone louder gradually)

▶ In “Level 6”, press ▶

When you receive a call with “Step” set, there is no ring tone for 3 seconds, then the ring tone becomes gradually louder, starting at “Level 1” and increasing to “Level 6”.

■ To set a silent ring tone

▶ In “Level 1”, press ▶

When the silent ring tone is set, a FOMA terminal emits no ring tone.

See icons on the standby screen to check for which the “Silent” ring tone is set.

: Appears when “Silent” is set for one or more of “Phone”, “Videophone” and “PushTalk” calls.

: Appears when “Silent” is set for one or more of “Mail”, “Chat mail”, “MessageR” and “MessageF”.

: Appears when both “” and “” are set.

NOTE

- ◆ The ring volume set in “Phone” in this function is also applied to “Select ring tone” for voice calls and the alarm tones for “Schedule” and “To Do list”.

<Answer hold>

Putting Calls on Hold When You Cannot Answer Immediately

When a FOMA terminal rings for a voice or videophone call and you cannot answer it right away, use this procedure to put the call on hold and have the caller wait briefly.

- 1 When a call arrives ▶

The FOMA terminal makes three rapid beeps and puts the call on hold.

The caller hears the message saying that you cannot answer at the moment and holds the call without hanging up.

You can set the message played while a call is held in “Set hold tone”.

■ To hang up while a call is on hold

▶

■ If a caller hangs up while on hold

The call ends.



2 Press or to resume the call

When "Answer setting" is set to "Any key answer", you can also answer the call by pressing  to , , , , , , or the assist key. Furthermore, pressing ,  or  also enables you to answer the call.

For videophone calls → p.72

NOTE

- ◆ Call charges apply to a caller while he or she is waiting for you to answer.
- ◆ If "Phone" or "Videophone" in "Ring volume" is set to "Silent" or a FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, the FOMA terminal does not make the three short beeps when you activate answer hold. However, the beeps do sound when "Manner mode set" is set to "Original" in which "Phone vol." is not "Silent".
- ◆ If you have subscribed to the "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service, selecting "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" from the function menu when a call arrives either forwards the call to the Voice Mail service center or forwarding number.
- ◆ If you fold a FOMA terminal while a call is on answer hold, the image display shows the call is held.

<Holding>

Putting Ongoing Calls on Hold

1 During a call

The other party hears the on-hold tone.

■ To end the held call



■ If the held party hangs up

The call ends.



2 Press , or to resume the call

NOTE

- ◆ Call charges still apply while a call is on hold.
- ◆ Use "Set hold tone" to select the tone that sounds while a call is on hold.
- ◆ A hold tone also sounds on your FOMA terminal while a call is on hold. However, the hold tone does not sound when "Phone" in "Ring volume" is set to "Silent" or Manner mode is set. (The tone sounds if you have selected "Original" in "Manner mode set" in which the "Phone vol." setting is not "Silent".)

<Set hold tone>

Setting the Hold Tone

Default setting

On hold tone: Tone 1 Holding tone: Melody 1

Set the message given to the other party when you put a voice or videophone call on answer hold or put an ongoing call on hold.

1 ▶ "Settings" ▶ "Talk" ▶ "Set hold tone" ▶ Select any item

On hold tone	Sets the message given when an incoming call is put on hold.	
	Tone 1	The following message is given in Japanese: "I can't answer the phone just now. Please wait for a few minutes or call again later."
	Tone 2	The following message is given in Japanese: "I can't answer the phone just now. Please call again later."
	Voice announce 1*	Plays the message recorded using "Voice announce".
	Voice announce 2*	"Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" → p.406
Holding tone	Sets the hold tone given during a call.	
	Melody 1	"Fur Elise" is played.
	Melody 2	"Mary Had A Little Lamb" is played.
	Melody 3	"Symphony No.25 in G minor" is played.
	Voice announce 1*	Plays the message recorded using "Voice announce".
	Voice announce 2*	"Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" → p.406

* : Not displayed if no Voice Announce message has been recorded.

NOTE

- ◆ Pressing (Play) on the message selection screen allows you to check the selected message.
- ◆ Even if you set "English" in "Select language", the messages of "Tone 1" and "Tone 2" are given in Japanese.

<Public mode (Driving mode)>

Using Public Mode (Driving Mode)

Public mode is an automatic answering service that allows you to keep good manners in a public place. When a FOMA terminal is set to Public mode, it sends callers the message saying that you cannot answer the call because you are driving or in a place (train, bus, theater, etc.) where you should refrain from talking on a phone, and then ends the call.

- Public mode can only be set or canceled from the standby screen. (It can also be set or canceled when " " appears.)
- You can still make calls when Public mode is set.
- This function is unavailable during data communication.
- While Caller ID Request is set to "Activate", receiving a call from an unidentified number gives the caller the Caller ID Request announcement (not the Public mode announcement).

1 On the standby screen (1 second or longer)

Public mode is set and " " appears.

When a call arrives, the message (in Japanese) saying "I can't answer the call because I'm driving or in a place where I should refrain from using a mobile phone. Please call back later." is sent to the caller.



To cancel Public mode (Driving mode)

While Public mode is set, press (X) for 1 second or longer on the standby screen.

Public mode is canceled and " " disappears from the screen.

NOTE

- ◆ Even if "Record message" is set to "ON", Public mode (Driving mode) takes priority and the "Record message" setting is ignored.
- ◆ When Manner mode is set, received calls are handled according to the Public mode setting.
- ◆ If you make a voice call to an emergency number (110, 119 or 118) while Public mode is set, the Public mode is canceled.
- ◆ The following tones do not sound in Public mode:
 - Ring tone for voice/videophone/PushTalk calls
 - Ring tone for MessageR/F
 - Alarm clock tone
 - To Do list alarm tone
 - Low-voltage alarm tone
 - Sound of i-appli programs
 - Search request alarm tone for GPS function
 - Mail ring tone
 - Chat mail ring tone
 - Schedule alarm tone
 - Alarm tone for Notice designate calls
 - Charge sound
 - Packet communication/64K data communication ring tone

● If Public mode (Driving mode) is set

In Public mode (Driving mode), your FOMA terminal does not ring when a voice, videophone or PushTalk call arrives. Calls are logged in the Received calls record as "Missed calls" and the "Missed calls" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

- A voice caller hears the announcement that you cannot answer the call because you are driving or in a place where you should refrain from using a mobile phone, and the call then ends.
- A videophone caller sees the Public mode movie announcement and the call then ends.
- When a PushTalk call arrives, no answer is given and "Connection failed" appears on the screen. If the number of call members is 3 or more, the message showing you are driving appears on the members' phones.

NOTE

- ◆ Even while Public mode is set, when the power is turned off or when " " appears on the screen, the announcement to be played is not the one for Public mode but for " ". To PushTalk call members, a "Disconnected" response will be made.
- ◆ When a mail arrives, the "New mail" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

● Handling of received calls when network services and Public mode (Driving mode) are set

When Public mode is set while network services are activated, voice and videophone calls you receive are handled as shown below.

Service	When a voice call arrives	When a videophone call arrives
Voice Mail	Connects the caller to the service center after playing the Public mode announcement. ^{*1}	Connects the caller to the service center without playing the Public mode movie announcement.
Call Forwarding	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Forwards the call after playing the Public mode announcement.^{*2} Whether to play the Public mode announcement for callers depends on the Call Forwarding setting. 	Forwards the videophone call without playing the Public mode movie announcement. ^{*3}
Call Waiting	Ends the call after playing the Public mode announcement.	Ends the call after playing the Public mode movie announcement.
Nuisance Call Blocking	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the call is from a barred phone number, the caller hears the announcement saying that the call could not be connected and the call then ends. If the call is from another phone number, the caller hears the Public mode announcement and the call then ends. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the call is from a barred phone number, the caller sees the movie announcement saying that the call could not be connected and the call then ends. If the call is from another phone number, the caller sees the Public mode movie announcement and the call then ends.
Caller ID Request	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the caller hides the caller ID, the caller hears the announcement requesting the caller ID and the call then ends. If the caller shows the caller ID, the caller hears the Public mode announcement and the call then ends. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the caller hides the caller ID, the caller sees the movie announcement requesting the caller ID and the call then ends. If the caller shows the caller ID, the caller sees the Public mode movie announcement and the call then ends.

*1: If the ring time for Voice Mail is set to 0 seconds, no Public mode announcement is given. Furthermore, the call is not logged in the "Received calls" record and no "Missed call" desktop icon appears.

*2: If the ring time for Call Forwarding is set to 0 seconds, no Public mode announcement is given. Furthermore, the call is not logged in the "Received calls" record and no "Missed call" desktop icon appears.

*3: Videophone calls will not be connected unless the forwarding phone complies with 3G-324M.

<Public mode (power off)>

Using Public Mode (Power off)

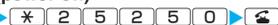
Public mode (power off) is an automatic answering service that allows you to keep good manners in a public place. If you set Public mode (power off) and then receive a call with the terminal turned off, the caller hears the announcement that you are in a place where the power needs to be turned off (hospital, airplane, near a priority seat, etc.) and cannot answer the call, and then the call ends.

1 On the standby screen

Public mode (power off) is set (no change is made on the standby screen).

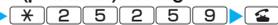
If Public mode (power off) is set, the power is turned off and a call arrives, the caller hears an announcement that "I am now in a place where I need to turn off my phone, and cannot answer your call. Please call again later on."

■ To cancel Public mode (power off)

▶ On the standby screen 

Public mode (power off) is canceled.

■ To check the Public mode (power off) setting

▶ On the standby screen 

You can check the Public mode (power off) setting.

● If Public mode (power off) is set

The setting remains unchanged until you dial "✖25250" to cancel Public mode (power off). Turning a FOMA terminal on does not cancel the setting.

The caller hears the Public mode (power off) announcement when you are out of service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach.

- The voice caller hears an announcement that you cannot answer the call because you are in a place where you need to turn off the power, and the call then ends.
- The videophone caller sees the Public mode (power off) movie announcement and the call then ends.
- When a PushTalk call arrives, no answer is given and "Connection failed" appears on the screen. If the number of call members is 3 or more, the message showing you are absent appears on the members' phones.

● Handling of received calls when network services and Public mode (power off) are set

If Public mode (power off) is set while network services are activated, voice and videophone calls you receive are handled as shown below.

Service	When a voice call arrives	When a videophone call arrives
Voice Mail	Connects the caller to the service center after playing the Public mode (power off) announcement. ^{*1}	Connects the caller to the service center without playing the Public mode (power off) movie announcement.
Call Forwarding	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Forwards the call after playing the Public mode (power off) announcement.^{*2} Whether to play the Public mode (power off) announcement for callers depends on the Call Forwarding setting. 	Forwards the videophone call without playing the Public mode (power off) movie announcement. ^{*3}
Nuisance Call Blocking	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the call is from a barred phone number, the caller hears the announcement saying that the call could not be connected and the call then ends. If the call is from another phone number, the caller hears the Public mode (power off) announcement and the call then ends. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the call is from a barred phone number, the caller sees the movie announcement saying that the call could not be connected and the call then ends. If the call is from another phone number, the caller sees the Public mode (power off) movie announcement and the call then ends.
Caller ID Request	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the caller hides the caller ID, the caller hears the announcement requesting the caller ID and the call then ends. If the caller shows the caller ID, the caller hears the Public mode (power off) announcement and the call then ends. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the caller hides the caller ID, the caller sees the movie announcement requesting the caller ID and the call then ends. If the caller shows the caller ID, the caller sees the Public mode (power off) movie announcement and the call then ends.

*1: If the ring time for Voice Mail is set to 0 seconds, no Public mode announcement is given. Furthermore, the call is not logged in the "Received calls" record and no "Missed call" desktop icon appears.

*2: If the ring time for Call Forwarding is set to 0 seconds, no Public mode announcement is given. Furthermore, the call is not logged in the "Received calls" record and no "Missed call" desktop icon appears.

*3: Videophone calls will not be connected unless the forwarding phone complies with 3G-324M.

<Info notice setting>

MENU65

Checking Missed Calls

Default setting
ON

Pressing the assist key with a FOMA terminal folded enables you to check missed calls, new mails, new chat mails, Record messages or Voice Mail messages with tones, vibration or the incoming call lamp.

● This function informs you of those calls, mails or messages when the "Missed calls", "New mail", "Chat mail", "Record message" or "Voice Mail" desktop icon appears. → p.149

Setting the notification method for the Info notice function

1 (MENU) ▶ "Settings" ▶ "Incoming call" ▶ "Info notice setting" ▶ Select any item

ON	Uses "Bibip, bibip" electronic tone for notification.
OFF	Makes no notification.

NOTE

◆ If the reading of caller or sender's name is not stored in the phonebook or the name stored in the phonebook is not displayed, the FOMA terminal does not read out the name even if "ON" is set under "ボイス" (voice).

Checking for missed calls, new mails or new chat mails

Checking operates as shown below.

Info notice setting	When you have missed calls, new mails or new chat mails		When you have no missed call, new mail or new chat mail	
	Sound and vibration	Incoming call lamp color	Sound and vibration	Incoming call lamp color
ON	"Bibip, bibip" tone and 1-second vibration *1	Lights for approx. 5 seconds in the respective colors set in "Phone", "Mail" and "Chat mail" in "Illumination". When you have a missed call, new mail or new chat mail, the lamp flashes for 1 second in the respective color.*2	"Bibibip" tone and 0.2-second vibration *1	The incoming call lamp flashes for about 5 seconds in "Color 12".

*1: A FOMA terminal vibrates when "Phone" in "Vibrator" is set to other than "OFF".

*2: If the flashing color is set to "Gradation" in "Illumination", the incoming call lamp flashes in "Color 5" for missed calls, "Color 1" for new mails and "Color 3" for new chat mails.

NOTE

- ◆ When External keys guard is set to "ON", you cannot check missed calls or new mails with a FOMA terminal folded even by pressing the assist key.
- ◆ To activate the assist key to have a FOMA terminal read out mails, set "確認機能設定" (Info notice setting) in Japanese mode. When "電子音" (electronic tone) or "ボイス" (voice) is set, press the assist key again during or after the notification of new mails or chat mails to have the terminal read out the mails. When "OFF" is set, pressing the assist key once enables the terminal to read out mails. The voice notification "This mail is from ***" is given in Japanese before reading out mail even when "OFF" is set in "ボイス" (voice) under "確認機能設定" (Info notice setting). Reading out mail messages → p.394
- ◆ This function is unavailable to check missed calls or mails while music is played with the music player.
- ◆ The "電子音" (electronic tone) or "ボイス" (voice) volume is determined in the "Phone" under "Ring volume". When "Silent" or "Step" is set, "Level 2" is applied.
- ◆ In Manner mode, a FOMA terminal uses vibration instead of tones to notify you of calls, mails or messages. However, the FOMA terminal does emit tones if you have selected "Original" in "Manner mode set" in which "Phone vol." is not set to "Silent". If "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", the FOMA terminal does not vibrate.
- ◆ This function is unavailable to check new mails kept at the i-mode Center.
- ◆ Opening a FOMA terminal during notification stops the notification.

Having a FOMA terminal read out the current time <Voice clock>

- When "確認機能設定" (Info notice setting) is set to "ボイス" (voice) and  (MEMO/CHECK) is pressed with a FOMA terminal folded, the FOMA terminal reads out the current time in Japanese.

<Record message>

MENU55

Having the Caller Leave a Message and Video

Default setting Record message: OFF Answer message: Japanese 1 Ring time: 13 sec.

When you cannot answer a voice or videophone call, this function allows you to record a message from the caller on your FOMA terminal. For videophone messages, the camera image of the other party's phone is also recorded.

- You can record up to 5 voice messages lasting roughly 20 seconds each.
- You can record up to 2 videophone messages lasting roughly 20 seconds each.
- The differences between Record message and Voice Mail are as follows:

Item	Record message	Voice Mail service
Recording time and No. of messages	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Voice call: up to 20 seconds each, 5 messages • Videophone call: up to 20 seconds each, 2 messages 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Voice call: up to 3 minutes each, 20 messages • Videophone call: up to 3 minutes each, 20 messages
Retention period	No limit	Up to 72 hours
Where to store	FOMA terminal	Voice Mail service center
Condition for playback	Anywhere	Only inside the service area

Item	Record message	Voice Mail service
Condition for recording	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Messages can be recorded if the receiving phone is turned on inside the service area. • Setting "Record message" to "ON" 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Messages can be recorded even if the receiving phone is turned off inside/outside the service area. • Activating the Voice Mail service (p.418)

Setting Record message

- 1** (MENU) ▶ "Settings" ▶ "Incoming call" ▶ "Record message" ▶ Select any item

ON	Selects the type of answer message.
Japanese 1	"I can't answer the phone just now. Please leave your message within 20 seconds after the beep." is played in Japanese.
Japanese 2	"Thank you for your call, but I can't take your call right now. Leave me a message after the beep." is played in Japanese.
English	"I can't take your call now. Please leave the message. Thank you." is played.
Voice announce 1*	Plays the message recorded using "Voice announce".
Voice announce 2*	"Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" → p.406
OFF	Cancels the "Record message" setting.

* : Not displayed if no Voice Announce message has been recorded.

2 Enter a number between 000 and 120 seconds as the ring time

Entering a 3-digit time automatically sets Record message and "☎" and "☎" appear on the standby screen.

■ To set the displayed time

- ▶ Without entering a time, press 

NOTE

- ◆ If the numbers of recorded voice messages and videophone messages have already reached the maximum respectively, Record message cannot be set to "ON".
- ◆ Pressing  (Play) on the answer message selection screen allows you to check the selected answer message.
- ◆ If "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" is set for the answer message of Record message and the corresponding Voice announce is deleted in "Voice announce" setting, "Japanese 1" is set for the answer message.
- ◆ To give priority to "Record message" when "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" is set at the same time, set a shorter ring time than the one set for Voice Mail or Call Forwarding.
- ◆ If the mute time set in "Ring time(sec.)" is longer than the ring time set for Record message, a FOMA terminal switches directly to Record message without ringing. To have the ring tone sound before Record message starts, set a longer ring time for Record message than the mute time.
- ◆ You can use "Discern connect" to set an answer message for each phone number or "Discern group" for each group. → p.118

If a call arrives when "Record message" is set to "ON"

Reaching the specified time activates Record message.

- When a voice call arrives, the answer message is given and recording starts.
- When a videophone call arrives, the "Preparing" image is sent, the answer message is given, "Recording" image is sent and recording starts.

■ When message recording begins

- The recording screen appears. The caller's voice can be heard through the FOMA terminal earpiece during message recording.
- Regardless of the duration, a started recording is counted in the number of recordings.



Example: Voice Call

■ To answer a voice call during recording

- ▶  or 

■ To answer a videophone call during recording

- ▶ Press  or  (V. phone) to answer with a camera image or  to answer with a substitute image

■ When message recording ends



- The original screen reappears and the “Missed calls” and “Record message” desktop icons appear on the standby screen. Select the icons to check the details. → p.149
- When one voice message is recorded, “☎” changes to “☎”. “☎” appears for two messages, “☎” for three messages, and corresponding icons for the subsequent numbers of messages. When one videophone message is recorded, “☎” changes to “☎”. “☎” appears for two video messages.

NOTE

- ◆ When “☎” appears, Record message is unavailable.
- ◆ Once the number of recorded messages has reached the maximum, a FOMA terminal cannot use Record message to record the next message.
- ◆ If Manner mode is set, you cannot hear the caller’s voice during recording.
- ◆ You cannot receive other calls while a message is being recorded. The other callers hear a busy tone.

Important

- It is recommended to take notes of the contents of recorded messages.
- Faults, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal could erase any recorded messages or memos. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages and memos as a precautionary measure.

<Quick message>

Recording the Caller’s Message and Video Instead of Answering an Incoming Call

Even when “Record message” is not set to “ON”, this function allows you to begin message recording during an incoming voice or videophone call simply by pressing one key.

1 When a call arrives ▶ (MEMO/CHECK)

The Record message recording starts.

Pressing [#] instead of (MEMO/CHECK) sets Manner mode simultaneously with the activation of Record message.

NOTE

- ◆ You can only record a message of the caller for which you started recording. You cannot set “Record message” to “ON” using this function.
- ◆ This function is enabled even when “Manner mode set” is set to “Original” in which “Record message” is set to “OFF”.
- ◆ If a voice or videophone call arrives when there are already 5 voice messages (2 messages for videophone message) recorded, Record message is not activated and a FOMA terminal keeps ringing. (Pressing [#] allows the FOMA terminal to keep ringing under the condition set in “Manner mode set”.

Playing/Erasing Record Messages and Voice Memos

- “★” appears on the “Play/Erase msg.” screen if a voice Record message or voice memo is recorded.

1 (MENU) ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “Play/Erase msg.”

The “Play/Erase msg.” screen appears.

2 Select an item to play

A FOMA terminal beeps and playback begins. When the playback ends, the FOMA terminal gives 2 short beeps and the playback display disappears.

■ To play the next message

▶ (MEMO/CHECK)

Each time you press (MEMO/CHECK), the next most recent message is played. Voice memos are played last.

■ To stop playback

▶ () or [CLR]



Play/Erase msg.
Function menu ▶ p.84

■ **To make a voice, videophone or PushTalk call to the phone number displayed during playback**

▶ , or

Pressing makes a voice call, makes a videophone call or makes a PushTalk call. Available PushTalk call type is one-to-one.

■ **To erase a message being played**

▶ (FUNC)▶“Erase”▶“YES”

NOTE

- ◆ When a Record message is from a caller who showed the caller ID, the caller’s phone number appears during the message playback. If the caller is stored in the phonebook, his or her name also appears.
- ◆ Pressing (MEMO/CHECK) on the standby screen also plays memos.

Function menu (Play/Erase msg. screen)

Play	Plays the highlighted message.
Delete this	Erases the highlighted message.
Delete rec. msg.	Erases all the Record messages.
Delete all	Erases all the Record messages and voice memos.

Important

- It is recommended to take notes of the contents of the voice messages and voice memos.
- Faults, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal could erase any recorded messages or memos. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages and memos as a precautionary measure.

<VP message>

Playing/Erasing Videophone Messages

- “★” appears on the “Play/Erase VP msg.” screen if a videophone message is recorded.

1

▶“LifeKit”▶“Play/Erase VP msg.”

The “Play/Erase VP msg.” screen appears.



Play/Erase VP msg.

Function menu▶p.85

2

Select an item to play

The “VP msg. playback” screen appears.

■ **To play the previous or next message**

▶ or

Each time you press or , the previous or next message is played.

■ **To stop playback**

▶

■ **To make a voice, videophone or PushTalk call to the phone number displayed during playback**

▶ , or

Pressing makes a voice call, makes a videophone call or makes a PushTalk call. Available PushTalk call type is one-to-one.

■ **To erase a message being played**

▶ (FUNC)▶“Erase”▶“YES”

■ **To turn on/off the speaker during playback**

▶ (FUNC)▶“Speaker ON” or “Speaker OFF”



NOTE

- ◆ When a videophone message is from a caller who showed the caller ID, the caller's phone number appears during the message playback. If the caller is stored in the phonebook, his or her name also appears.
- ◆ Press () or () (MEMO/CHECK)) to adjust the volume during playback.

Function menu (Play/Erase VP msg. screen)

Play	Plays the highlighted videophone message.
Delete this	Erases the highlighted videophone message.
Delete all	Erases all the videophone messages.

Important

- It is recommended to take notes of the contents of videophone messages.
- Faults, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal could erase any recorded messages or memos. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages and memos as a precautionary measure.

Using Chara-den

This function enables you to send a cartoon character instead of your camera image during a videophone call.

- You can pre-check the actions available for Chara-den or shoot Chara-den as a image or video to enjoy it. → p.345
- To use Chara-den, set the following functions first. Specifying Chara-den in the phonebook or "Discern connect" also allows you to use Chara-den.
 - Setting "Chara-den" in "Substitute image" in "Select image" → p.86

<Example: If you receive a videophone call from a caller not stored in the phonebook>

1 When a videophone call arrives, press

2 Control your character by pressing dial keys

Pressing a dial key makes the character perform the action assigned to that key.

To change the action mode

You can switch between "Whole" and "Parts" using "Chara-den set." from the function menu. → p.55

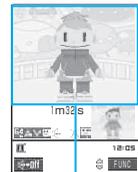
"Whole" action mode gives you full control over the character's movements and expressions of emotion, etc. Press to or to to control Chara-den.

"Parts" action mode gives you partial control over the character's movements (face, hands and feet, etc.). Press to to control Chara-den.

To check an action

Pressing shows the action list.

Use to select an action to run.



Chara-den

The image shows a screen titled 'Action List 1/2'. It lists various actions and their corresponding dial keys:

笑う	:1
ハンザイ	:2
泣き	:3
怒る	:4
驚く	:5
悩む	:6
首を傾げる	:7
寝る	:8
照れる	:9
YES	:#1

Selecting the Image Sent to the Other Party

1 “Settings” ▶ “Videophone”

The “Videophone settings” screen appears.

2 Select any item



Visual preference	Sets the image quality for videophone call.	
	Normal (default)	Standard setting for both quality and movement.
	Prefer img qual	Sends more finely detailed video images. Best for motionless subjects.
	Prefer motion spd	Sends video images with smooth movement. Best for fast-moving subjects.
Select image	“Setting an image to send during a videophone call” → p.86	
Auto redial as voice	Sets the operation performed when a videophone call cannot be connected.	
	ON	If a videophone call cannot be connected, it is automatically switched to a voice call.
	OFF (default)	The message notifying that the videophone call could not be connected appears and the standby screen reappears.
Remote monitoring	“Viewing Distant Locations Using a FOMA Terminal” → p.91	
Display setting	“Setting the Image Displayed During a Videophone Call” → p.88	
Ntly switch-mode	“Setting for Switching Between Voice Call and Videophone Call” → p.89	
Hands-free switch	“Setting Hands-free for Videophone Calls” → p.88	
V-phone while packet	“Handling Videophone Calls Received in i-mode” → p.89	

● Setting an image to send during a videophone call

Default setting	On hold, Holding: Pre-installed Substitute image: Chara-den (Dimo) Record message, Preparing, Voice memo: Pre-installed
-----------------	--

Use this procedure to select an image to send in place of a camera image.

- This function allows you to set a JPEG image of 690 dots wide × 690 dots high or smaller or GIF image of 690 dots wide × 480 dots high or smaller, whose file size is 100K bytes or smaller.
- The setting of this function is still retained after a videophone call ends.

1 Videophone settings screen (p.86) ▶ “Select image” ▶ Select any item

On hold	Sets an image to send when a call is on answer hold.
Holding	Sets an image to send when a call is on hold.
Substitute image	Sets an image to send as a substitute image.
Record message	Sets an image to send while recording a videophone message.
Preparing	Sets an image to send while preparing a videophone message.
Voice memo	Sets an image to send while recording a voice memo.

2 Select an image to send

Pre-installed	Sends only a message.
Original	Sends an image and message. ■ To change the setting ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Change setting” ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image
Chara-den	This option appears only when “Substitute image” is selected. Sends the Chara-den character set in “Substitute image”. “Function menu (Chara-den list screen)” → p.346 Priority sequence for Chara-den setting → p.109 ■ To change the setting ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Change setting” ▶ Select an image

■ Messages to be sent

The messages to be sent are as follows:

- For answer hold : “応答保留中 On Hold”
- For holding : “保留 Holding”
- For sending the substitute image : “カメラオフ Camera Off”
- For recording videophone message : “伝言メモ録画中 Recording”
- For preparing videophone message : “伝言メモ準備中 Preparing”
- For recording voice memo : “音声メモ録音中 Recording Voice only”

NOTE

<Visual preference>

- ◆ You can change this setting using the function menu during a videophone call. However, the setting reverts to the original value when the videophone call ends.
- ◆ If signal quality deteriorates during a videophone call, an image may become grainy or patchy regardless of the “Visual preference” setting.

<Select image>

- ◆ Images with file restrictions cannot be set for “Original”. → p.331
- ◆ Some GIF images may not be set in “Original”.
- ◆ You can switch between a camera image and a substitute image during a videophone call.
- ◆ To check an image, select an item you want to check and press (Play).
- ◆ Changing the setting from “Original” to “Pre-installed” or “Chara-den” does not delete the stored image.
- ◆ The set image is displayed both on your FOMA terminal and the other party’s terminal. However, the answer message for Recorded message is only sent to the other party’s terminal.
- ◆ You cannot delete the “Original” setting. Setting “Set as display” (p.332) in My picture also allows you to change the “Original” setting. If the original image of the pasted is deleted, the “Pre-installed” image is displayed on (sent to) the other party’s terminal.
- ◆ When the Chara-den character set as a substitute image is deleted and the “Chara-den” substitute image cannot be displayed, the “Dimo” stored at the time of purchase is sent. If you have already deleted “Dimo”, a “Pre-installed” image is sent as a substitute image.

<Auto redial as voice>

- ◆ When a videophone call is switched and redialed as a voice call, the call is charged as a voice call and digital communication charges do not apply.
- ◆ When a call is redialed, only the voice call is logged in the “Redial” or “Dialed calls” record.
- ◆ Even if “Auto redial as voice” is set to “ON”, it may not be possible to redial due to the circumstances of the network or the other party, such as busy.

Checking your appearance during a videophone call <Visual check>

1 Videophone in-call screen (p.54) (FUNC) “Visual check”

You can use the image from the built-in camera to check your appearance.

“” appears during visual check.

A substitute image is sent to the other party.

2 (FUNC) “Visual check off”

Visual check ends. The screen returns to the state before the visual check.

Enlarging an image to send

During a videophone call, you can enlarge your camera image that will be sent to the other party.

- You can enlarge an image from the rear camera up to 9 times (in 16 steps), and an image from the front camera up to twice (in 2 steps).
- If you switch between the front and rear cameras during a videophone call, the respective zoom settings are retained. When the call ends, the image reverts to normal scale.
- You cannot enlarge an image while sending a substitute image.

1 During a videophone call Zoom in or out



Setting Hands-free for Videophone Calls

Default setting
ON

You can set a FOMA terminal to automatically switch to the hands-free mode when a videophone call starts.

1 Videophone settings screen (p.86) ▶ “Hands-free switch” ▶ “ON” or “OFF”

NOTE

- ◆ Even if Hands-free switch is set to “ON”, you can cancel the hands-free operation by pressing () during a call.
- ◆ Even if Hands-free switch is set to “ON”, the FOMA terminal does not automatically switch to the hands-free mode in the following situations:
 - Manner mode is set.
 - A flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected. (However, the microphone works according to the “Select microphone” setting.)
 - The Answer hold or Record message function is activated when a call arrives.

Setting the Image Displayed During a Videophone Call

Setting an image to display on the main screen and how to display a camera image <Display setting>

Default setting Main display: Other side Front camera Reverse: ON

1 Videophone settings screen (p.86) ▶ “Display setting” ▶ Select any item

Main display	Sets the main image for videophone calls.	
	Other side	Displays an image from the other party's camera on your main screen.
	My side	Displays an image from your own camera on your main screen.
Front camera Reverse	Sets the type of camera image to display on your FOMA terminal during a call.	
	ON	Displays in mirror image.
	OFF	Displays in normal image.

Decorating the videophone screen <Decoration>

You can decorate the videophone screen (image from your own camera) by adding frames or stamps. You can even paste in stamps that follow facial movements.

- The FOMA terminal comes with stamps stored at default that trace facial movements, but you can also download additional stamps from the “[みんなNらんど](#)” site. “[みんなNらんど](#)” → p.209

1 Videophone in-call screen (p.54) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Decoration” ▶ Select any item

Frame	▶ Select a frame Places a frame around the videophone screen.
Stamp	▶ Select a stamp ▶ Use to decide the location ▶ Places a stamp on the videophone screen.
Facestamp	▶ Select a face stamp Places a stamp that follows facial movements on the videophone screen. If a stamp can follow facial movements, “” appears. If not, “” appears.

■ To remove a frame or stamp

“Off decoration” in the “Videophone in-call function menu” → p.55

NOTE

- ◆ Pressing (Play) on each selection screen allows you to check the selected frame, stamp or face stamp.
- ◆ When “FrontCamera Rev.” (p.56) is set to “OFF”, an image from your camera is displayed in normal image, enabling you to read stamps such as characters correctly.

Sending a message during a videophone call (with a camera image displayed) <Petit message>

1 Videophone in-call screen (p.54) (FUNC) ▶ “Petit message” ▶ Enter a message

A message can contain up to 16 full-pitch characters.

■ To cancel message entry

▶ Erase the entire message ▶ 

2

The message appears. The message automatically disappears after 15 seconds.

■ To erase a message manually

▶  (1 second or longer)

You can also erase a message by selecting “Off decoration” from the function menu.

NOTE

- ◆ When “FrontCamera Rev.” (p.56) is set to “OFF”, an image from your camera is displayed in normal image, enabling you to read characters correctly.

<Ntfy switch-mode>

Setting for Switching Between Voice Call and Videophone Call

Default setting
Indication ON

You can notify the other party that your FOMA terminal can change the call mode between voice and videophone.

- When you receive a call with this function set to “Indication ON”, your FOMA terminal notifies the other party that your terminal supports the change function so that the other party can change the call mode.
- You cannot set this function during a call or while “” appears.

1 Videophone settings screen (p.86) ▶ “Ntfy switch-mode” ▶ Select any item

Indication ON	Notifies the other party that your FOMA terminal can change the call mode between voice and videophone.
Indication OFF	Does not notify the other party that your FOMA terminal can change the call mode between voice and videophone.
Check Indication	Shows the status of the “Ntfy switch-mode” setting.

<V-phone while packet>

Handling Videophone Calls Received in i-mode

Default setting

V-phone priority

- The multi access function is unavailable for videophone so that incoming videophone calls are handled according to the “V-phone while packet” setting during i-mode communication or mail transmission.
→ p.471

1 Videophone settings screen (p.86) ▶ “V-phone while packet” ▶ Select any item

V-phone priority	Moves to the videophone ringing screen. Answering the videophone call disconnects i-mode communication.
Packet downld priority	Rejects incoming videophone calls.
V-phone answerphone	Connects an incoming videophone call to the Voice Mail service center if you have subscribed to the service. The caller is connected to the service center regardless of whether the “Voice Mail” setting is “Activate” or “Deactivate”.
Call forwarding	Forwards an incoming videophone call to the forwarding number set for the Call Forwarding service if you have subscribed to the service. The call is forwarded regardless of whether the “Call Forwarding” setting is “Activate” or “Deactivate”.

NOTE

- ◆ Even if having set “V-phone priority”, you cannot answer an incoming videophone call when using the multi access function such as i-mode communication during a voice call.
- ◆ If you have set “Packet downld priority”, “V-phone answerphone” or “Call forwarding”, an incoming videophone call is logged as “Missed calls” in the “Received calls” record.
- ◆ Even if you have set “V-phone answerphone” or “Call forwarding”, the “Packet downld priority” is performed when you have not subscribed to the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service or the forwarding number is not set.
- ◆ Even if you have set “V-phone priority” or “Packet downld priority”, the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is enabled when the ring time for “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” is set to 0 (zero) seconds.

Receiving a videophone call during i-mode communication

Setting “V-phone while packet” to “V-phone priority” beforehand allows you to receive a videophone call during i-mode communication or mail transmission.

1 When a videophone call arrives during i-mode communication, press



■ To answer using a substitute image



i-mode communication is disconnected and the Connected videophone screen appears.

2 To end the call, press



■ To continue i-mode communication

Even when “V-phone while packet” is set to “V-phone priority”, you can continue i-mode communication by selecting “Call Rejection”, “Call Forwarding” or “Voice Mail” from the function menu of the videophone ringing screen.

Function menu (videophone ringing screen) → p.71

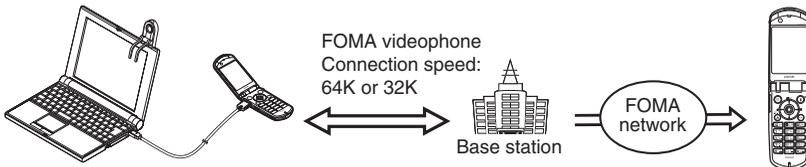
Connecting to an External Device to Make/Receive Videophone Calls

You can make and receive videophone calls using an external device such as a PC by connecting it to your FOMA terminal with the FOMA USB Cable (optional).

To enable this function, install a videophone application in a PC or other exclusive device and prepare equipment such as an earphone/microphone and USB-compatible Web camera (marketed) that will be connected to the PC.

- Set USB mode setting to “Communication mode”. No setting is required for connecting to an external device.
- For information about the operating environment, setting and operation of a videophone application, see the instructions provided with an external device.
- “ドコモテレビ電話ソフト 2005” (DoCoMo Videophone Software 2005) is available as an application for this function. This application can be downloaded on the following site: (for details about use in PC, check the support page on the website.)

<http://videophonesoft.nttdocomo.co.jp/> (Only in Japanese)



NOTE

- ◆ You cannot make a videophone call using an external device during a voice call.
- ◆ If you have subscribed to the Call Waiting service and a videophone call arrives from an external device during a voice call, end the voice call to answer the videophone call. For a voice call, videophone call or 64K data communication call that arrives from an external device during a videophone call, a FOMA terminal acts in the same way.

Viewing Distant Locations Using a FOMA Terminal

Default setting

Other ID: Not recorded Ringing time: 5 sec. Set: OFF

Remote monitoring is only available between FOMA terminals or between a FOMA terminal and a phone equipped with the 3G-324M-compatible videophone function. Your FOMA terminal can be used as either of a dialing or receiving phone for remote monitoring.

- Remote monitoring can only be carried out when the phone number of the monitoring phone is stored beforehand in the phone receiving the remote monitoring and Remote monitoring is set to "ON".

Preparing the receiving phone

Set the phone number of the dialing phone (Other ID) and delay until the remote monitoring begins (Ringing time) on the phone receiving remote monitoring.

- Up to 5 IDs can be stored.

1 Videophone settings screen (p.86) ▶ "Remote monitoring" ▶ Enter your security code ▶ "Other ID"

The "Other ID" screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.91

2 Select "<Not recorded>"

■ To change a recorded ID

- ▶ Select an ID to change

3 Enter the phone number of the other phone ▶ ▶ CLR

The remote monitoring screen reappears.

4 "Ringing time" ▶ Enter a ring time (003-120 seconds)

Enter the time as a 3-digit number. Entering a 3-digit number sets the ring time.

■ To set the displayed time

- ▶ Without entering a time, press

5 "Set" ▶ "ON"

Remote monitoring is set and appears on the standby screen.



■ To turn remote monitoring off

- ▶ "OFF"

6 Position a FOMA terminal

In remote monitoring, an image from the front camera is sent to the dialing phone.

Put the receiving FOMA terminal in the monitoring position, ensuring that it is switched on and unfolded.

If the FOMA terminal is left folded, voice and a substitute image overlapped with "カメラオフ Camera off" are sent instead of camera images.



NOTE

- ◆ The ring time set for remote monitoring cannot be the same as that set for "Record message" or "Automatic answer".
- ◆ If the ring time set for "Call Forwarding" on the receiving phone is shorter than the one set for remote monitoring, "Call Forwarding" takes priority. To give priority to remote monitoring, set a shorter ring time than the "Call Forwarding" setting.

Function menu (Other ID screen)

Look-up address	Sets the number of the other party.	
	Phonebook	Stores a number stored in the phonebook.
	Dialed calls	Stores a number stored in the Dialed calls record.
	Received calls	Stores a number stored in the Received calls record.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted ID.	

Delete all	Deletes all IDs. Deleting all IDs sets "Set" to "OFF".
-------------------	---

Starting/Ending remote monitoring

- To perform remote monitoring, always make a videophone call with the phone number (caller ID) shown from the FOMA terminal registered as the other ID on the receiving phone.
- When your FOMA terminal is used to receive remote monitoring calls, images and sound from the dialing phone are both played.

1 Make a videophone call to the receiving phone

After the ring time set on the receiving phone has elapsed, remote monitoring begins. Video images from the receiving phone are displayed on the dialing phone and sound is played through the speaker. By using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional), you can listen to the sound from the receiving phone through the earphone.



■ To answer a videophone call (with a camera image) on the receiving phone without triggering remote monitoring

- ▶ Press () or before the ring time elapses
- Press to answer with a substitute image.

2 To end remote monitoring, press

The call duration appears and remote monitoring ends.
Pressing on the receiving phone also ends remote monitoring.

NOTE

- ◆ You can receive a remote-monitoring call from the phone number stored in the Remote monitoring setting even when "Dial lock" or "Omakase Lock" is set.
- ◆ A call with the caller ID hidden is received as a normal videophone call instead of a remote monitoring call.
- ◆ Remote monitoring cannot be performed if any of the following functions is set at the same time:
 - Public mode (Driving mode) • Manner mode • Call rejection/acceptation* • Reject unknown*
 - * When "Call acceptance" is set for a phone number other than the Other ID number, "Call rejection" is set for the Other ID phone number or the Other ID number is not stored in the phonebook and "Reject unknown" is set
- ◆ Even if Remote monitoring and Record message or Automatic answer are set at the same time and the ring time set for Record message or Automatic answer is shorter than the one set for Remote monitoring, Remote monitoring starts when a call arrives from the phone number set for Remote monitoring.
- ◆ If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to a FOMA terminal, sound is played through the earphone and speaker regardless of the "Earphone" setting.
- ◆ The ring tone specifically set for remote monitoring is used and it cannot be changed.
- ◆ The ring tone sounds at the volume set in "Videophone" in "Ring volume". However, if the volume is set to "Silent", "Level 1" or "Step", the ring tone for remote monitoring sounds at "Level 2".
- ◆ When a remote monitoring call arrives, the incoming call lamp flashes in "Gradation" color and "Standard" pattern, regardless of the "Illumination" setting.
- ◆ You cannot set Answer hold when a remote monitoring call arrives. Press to end the call.
- ◆ If Remote monitoring is set to "ON" on the receiving phone, a videophone call received from the phone number registered in Other ID is logged in the Received calls record as a remote monitoring call. If remote monitoring was not triggered by the call, it is logged as a missed videophone call in the Received calls record.
- ◆ The receiving phone cannot receive voice or videophone calls during remote monitoring. Voice or videophone calls made to the receiving phone during remote monitoring are logged as missed calls in the Received calls record, and the "Missed calls" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- ◆ When a FOMA terminal is folded during remote monitoring, the terminal operates as specified in "Setting when folded". However, if a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, the "Setting when folded" setting is ignored and a substitute image is sent to the other party when the FOMA terminal is folded.
- ◆ The cameras cannot be switched on the receiving phone during remote monitoring.



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones. If you inconvenience others when using the FOMA terminal, you may be punished by respective laws or bylaws (such as Public Nuisance Laws).

● PushTalk

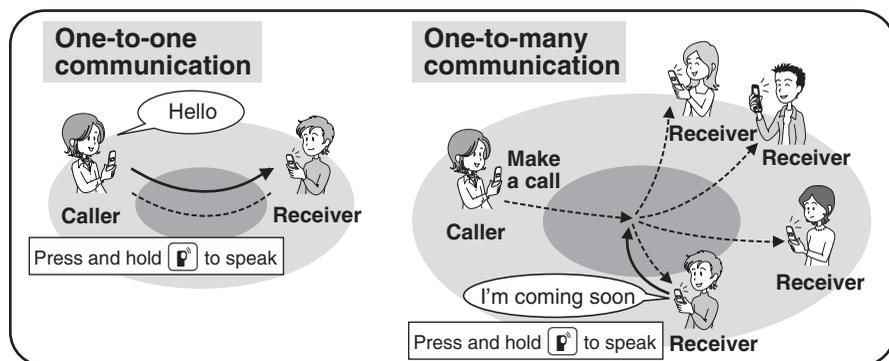
What is PushTalk?		94
Making a PushTalk Call	Make PushTalk	95
Adding a Member during a PushTalk Call.....		96
Receiving a PushTalk Call	Receive PushTalk	97
Ending a PushTalk Call.....	End PushTalk	98
Adding an Entry to the PushTalk Phonebook ...	Add to PushTalk	98
Using the PushTalk Phonebook to Make a PushTalk Call		101
Deleting an Entry from the PushTalk Phonebook		
	Delete PushTalk	102
Making the PushTalk Settings.....	PushTalk setting	103

What is PushTalk?

Press the PushTalk key (P) to open the PushTalk phonebook. You can talk with one or more parties (up to five people including yourself) simply by selecting the parties and then pressing (P). The PushTalk charge will apply each time you press (P). The speaker can keep speaking while pressing and holding (P), and other members only listen while he/she is speaking. You can add a member during a PushTalk call or call a disconnected member again on 903i series.

The screen displays the status of the members, e.g. who is speaking now.

- This feature is useful when you want to contact group members or relay a short message.
- The compatible models are 902i series, 902iS series, 903i series, SO902iWP+, SH902iSL, N902iX HIGH-SPEED, P702i, P702iD, and SH702iS.

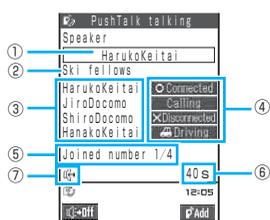


● PushTalkPlus

PushTalkPlus allows a call among up to 20 people including yourself, using the pre-registered network phonebook. This service makes the PushTalk more useful, e.g. you can check the status of members. The PushTalkPlus requires a separate subscription.

- For more details about how to use the PushTalkPlus, etc., see the guide you receive at the time of subscription.

● Guide to the PushTalk talking screen



- ① Current speaker's name*¹
("Myself" appears when you are speaking, or "?" when the speaker is unknown.)
- ② Group name specified at the time of dialing
(It is left blank if a group is not specified.)
- ③ Participants' names (excluding yourself)*¹
- ④ Status of members*²
Calling: Calling the party.
Connected: The party is participating.
Disconnected: There is no response from the party, or the party hung up. Otherwise, the party's terminal is out of range or turned off.
Driving: The party's terminal is in Public mode (Driving mode).
- ⑤ Number of participants (excluding yourself)
- ⑥ Time elapsed after starting the PushTalk call
- ⑦ Hands-free ON

*1 : If the caller sets "Caller ID setting" (p.103) or "Set Caller ID" (p.102) to "ON", the name stored in the phonebook appears. If the participant is not stored in the phonebook, the phone number appears. If the caller sets "Caller ID setting" or "Set Caller ID" to "OFF", "User unset" appears on the receivers.

*2 : "Calling", "Driving" and "Disconnected" appear only if three or more people are talking.

NOTE

- ◆ If the caller sets "Caller ID setting" (p.103) or "Set Caller ID" (p.102) to "ON" and then makes a PushTalk call, the participants' phone numbers are notified to all the other participants (including participants added during a PushTalk call). Since phone numbers are important information, be careful when disclosing them.

Making a PushTalk Call

- Dialing makes a one-to-one call between you and the other party. To make a group call, use the PushTalk phonebook and dial. → p.101

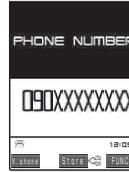
1 Enter the other party's phone number ▶

When the other party answers the call, the participation tone sounds and the "PushTalk talking" screen appears, then his/her voice comes out of the speaker.

■ To release hands-free



Hands-free → p.61



2 To end the call, press

Ending a PushTalk call → p.98

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot make a PushTalk call during a voice call, videophone call or data communication.
- ◆ Making a PushTalk call during i-mode communication disconnects the i-mode communication. Making a PushTalk call while running an i-appli causes the i-appli to be exited.
- ◆ When a voice call is received during a PushTalk call, the operation follows the "PushTalk arrival act" settings. → p.103
- ◆ When receiving a videophone call, PushTalk call or 64K data communication during a PushTalk call, the missed record will be registered and the current PushTalk call will continue.
- ◆ The PushTalk call is unavailable for an emergency call (110, 118, 119).

● Speaking during a PushTalk call

1 During a PushTalk call ▶ Keep holding

The start tone sounds indicating that you have the right to speak now.

An error tone sounds if you cannot get the right to speak, e.g. while another member is speaking.

2 Keep holding to speak

Keep holding  after you start holding  in Step 1 until you finish speaking.

Releasing  ends your speech, which means that another participant can speak now.

NOTE

- ◆ The other participants hear your voice only while you press and hold  to have the right to speak. Releasing  releases the right to speak, and the release tone sounds.
- ◆ The speaker's name appears on the screen during the speech.
- ◆ The time is limited for speaking each time you have the right. When the time has elapsed, a confirmation tone sounds and then the right expires.
- ◆ If nobody gets the right to speak for a given time, the PushTalk call ends.
- ◆ You can adjust the volume during a PushTalk call. → p.75
- ◆ Even if a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, press and hold  to speak.
- ◆ When a participant presses  and a confirmation tone sounds, the speaker is charged for the PushTalk charge (each time he/she has the right to speak).

● Other ways to make a call

The followings are also available for making a PushTalk call:

Use the PushTalk phonebook	If members are registered to the PushTalk phonebook, you can select and dial up to four members. → p.101
Select a group	Selecting a group stored in the PushTalk phonebook allows you to make a call to all the members of the group. → p.101

Use the phonebook*	Select a phone number stored in the phonebook of the FOMA terminal (Phone) or of the FOMA card (UIM). ▶Phonebook list screen (p.111)/Phonebook detail screen (p.111)▶Select a phone number then press
Use Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls	"Using the records of Redial, Dialed calls and Received calls"→p.96
Use the Phone To function*	"Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions"→p.222

* : Only one-to-one calls can be made to other parties.

Using the records of Redial, Dialed calls and Received calls

- The PushTalk records of Redial, Dialed calls and Received calls are registered separately for one-to-one calls and for group calls.
- A group call is saved as one record to the Redial, Dialed calls or Received calls.
- The following are the functions that can be launched from each record: (A: Available, U: Unavailable)

Item	One-to-one call record (, , etc.)	Group call record (, , etc.)
Make a one-to-one PushTalk call	A	A ³
Make a group PushTalk call ^{1,2}	U	A
Make a voice call/videophone call	A	U
Add to the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook	A	A

¹: You can make a call to the same members, or select members in the group.

²: Even if you make a "Disconnected" response to an incoming call, you can use the Received calls to join the call if other members keep talking. →p.98

³: Selecting "Select PushTalk" from the Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls function menu and then selecting only one member will result in a one-to-one call.

Adding a Member during a PushTalk Call

If the caller is a user of 903i series, the caller can call other members during a PushTalk call to join the conversation when he/she forgot to select the members, wants to call the members to stimulate the conversation, etc.

- Participants other than the caller cannot add a member during a PushTalk call.

1 During a PushTalk call () ▶Select any item

Phonebook	▶Phonebook list screen (p.111)/Phonebook detail screen (p.111)▶Select a phone number Selects a phone number from the phonebook of the FOMA terminal or of the FOMA card (UIM).
PushTalk phonebook	■ To select a member from the PushTalk phonebook ▶Use to select a checkbox (<input type="checkbox"/>) ■ To select a member from a group on the PushTalk phonebook ▶Display a group list▶Use to select a group▶Use to select a check box (<input type="checkbox"/>)
Redial	▶Display a record list▶Select a record
Received calls	■ To select a member from the group PushTalk record ▶Display a record list▶Select the group PushTalk record▶ (Select)▶Use to select a checkbox (<input type="checkbox"/>)▶ (Finish)
Direct input	▶Enter a phone number

2 ()

A PushTalk call is made to the selected members.

When the selected members answer, their names appear on the "PushTalk talking" screen.



NOTE

- ◆ When other members are added, whether to show the phone numbers to the other members (including added members) depends on the settings. Whether to show or hide only the added members cannot be set.

- ◆ Up to 3 members can be added. Up to 5 participants including the caller can join the PushTalk call simultaneously. Members can be added repeatedly until the number of participants reaches 5.
- ◆ A member cannot be added when 5 participants are already talking on a PushTalk call, even if one of the participants leaves the call.
- ◆ The added members are not recorded to the caller's Redial/Dialed calls record or the other participants' Received calls record.
- ◆ A user of a PushTalk-compatible model other than 903i series can be added. However, the added members do not appear on the screen of a phone on which members cannot be added and a tone does not sound when the user joins or leaves a PushTalk call.

<Receive PushTalk>

Receiving a PushTalk Call

Answer and join an incoming PushTalk call.

- Receiving a PushTalk call rings a tone, flashes the incoming call lamp and displays the "PushTalk call" screen.
- The "PushTalk call" screen displays the names of the caller and other members (in case of group call).

1 A PushTalk call incoming

 and  are available to answer the call.

Answering the call sounds the participation tone.

Speaking during a PushTalk call → p.95

■ To reject the call (To make a "Disconnected" response)

▶ Press  while receiving a call

Even if you make a "Disconnected" response to an incoming call, you can join the call later on if other members keep talking. → p.98

■ To release hands-free

▶ Press  ( + )

Hands-free → p.61



2 To end the call, press

Ending a PushTalk call → p.98

NOTE

- ◆ While "Any key answer" is set, the following keys are also available to answer the call: ,  to , , ,  and Assist key.
- ◆ Pressing  (MEMO/CHECK) or  disconnects an incoming call ("quick message" is unavailable). Pressing  sets the manner mode.
- ◆ A "Disconnected" response can also be made by launching the function menu while receiving a PushTalk call and then selecting "Call rejection".
- ◆ The FOMA terminal does not ring and the incoming call lamp does not flash when the Public mode (Driving mode) is set. If the call is one-to-many, "Driving" appears on the other members' screens indicating that you are driving.
- ◆ When the FOMA terminal is folded, you can press ,  or Assist key to answer an incoming call in hands-free mode.
- ◆ If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is attached, pressing the switch also allows you to answer a call.
- ◆ When receiving a PushTalk call, pressing  does not allow "On hold". Doing so causes a "Disconnected" response.
- ◆ A "Disconnected" response will be made to a call from a phone number specified in "Call rejection" or "Reject unknown".
- ◆ Members added during a PushTalk call appear on the "PushTalk talking" screen, but are not recorded to the "Group calls" () on Received calls.
- ◆ You cannot answer a PushTalk call incoming during a voice call, videophone call, PushTalk call or data communication. If the current call is a voice call or PushTalk call, the missed call record is registered.
- ◆ If a PushTalk call is received during i-mode communication, the operation follows the "Set i-mode arrival act" settings. → p.223

● Automatically answering an incoming PushTalk call <Auto answer setting>

Default setting
OFF

You can set to automatically answer an incoming PushTalk call in hands-free mode.

- Setting the Auto answer setting to "ON" sets the hands-free ON when answering automatically no matter whether the FOMA terminal is folded, causing the voices to come out of the speaker.

1 PushTalk phonebook screen (p.101) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “PushTalk setting” ▶ “Auto answer setting”

Select “ON” or “OFF”.

NOTE

- ◆ The “ON” setting is unavailable in manner mode.
- ◆ While the Public mode (Driving mode) is set, you cannot answer an incoming call regardless of the “Auto answer setting”, but the participants will know that you are driving.
- ◆ The “Auto answer setting” set to “ON” has priority over the settings of “Automatic answer” or “Ring time setting” (p.103) under the PushTalk setting.

● Joining a PushTalk call in progress

Follow the step below to join a PushTalk call in progress later on if you make a “Disconnected” response while receiving the PushTalk call or if you miss the call while the Public mode (Driving mode) is set:

1 Received calls screen (p.64) ▶ Use to select a PushTalk call, then press

The “PushTalk talking” screen (p.94) appears.

NOTE

- ◆ If other members continue a PushTalk call after you leave the call, follow the step above to join (rejoin) the call in progress.
- ◆ You cannot join a call in progress if it is one-to-one or if it is already finished. In this case, you make a PushTalk call (p.95) to parties selected in the step above.

<End PushTalk>

Ending a PushTalk Call

1 During a PushTalk call ▶

■ If you made a call

Pressing  ends the PushTalk call and disconnects all the participants. However if other members remain to be added, a confirmation message appears. Selecting “YES” disconnects all the participants.

■ If you received a call

If it is a group call, pressing  does not end the call and the call continues, but the participants will know that you left the call.

If other members continue a PushTalk call after you leave the call, you can join (rejoin) the call in progress.
→ p.98

When the caller presses , the PushTalk call ends and all the participants are disconnected.

NOTE

- ◆ A confirmation tone sounds when one of the participants leaves the call.
- ◆ When all the participants other than the caller leave the call, the PushTalk call ends.
- ◆ If “Setting when folded” (p.103) is set to “End the call”, a PushTalk call ends when the FOMA terminal is folded. When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is attached, however, communication continues.
- ◆ When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is attached, holding down the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone for 1 second or longer causes PushTalk call ending.

<Add to PushTalk>

Adding an Entry to the PushTalk Phonebook

- Copy members (phone numbers, etc.) stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook to the PushTalk phonebook.
- Up to 700 members can be added.

1 On the standby screen ▶

The PushTalk phonebook screen (p.101) appears.

2 (New) ▶ “View phonebook” ▶ Search for an entry to add

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.112

■ To enter directly

- ▶ (New) ▶ “Direct input” ▶ Add an entry



3 Display the Phonebook detail screen ▶ Use to select a phone number to add

A screen appears asking whether to add to the PushTalk phonebook.

■ To add from the phonebook list screen

- ▶ Highlight a phone number and press  (Finish)

If two or more phone numbers are stored in the phonebook entry, the first phone number is added to the PushTalk phonebook.

4 “YES”

A new member is added to the member list.

■ If a phone number is already stored in the selected memory number

A message appears asking whether to overwrite the existing one. Select “YES” to overwrite.

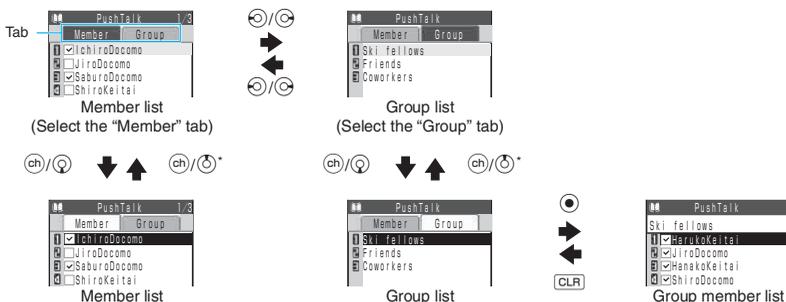
NOTE

- ◆ The PushTalk phonebook can be displayed by selecting  ▶ “Phonebook” ▶ “PushTalk”.
- ◆ Members in the member list appear as follows:
 - When a member is registered to the member list or added to the group, the registered/added member appears on the top.
 - When you display the PushTalk phonebook screen, the members appear in last-used order.
- ◆ You can also add a member by selecting “Add to PushTalk” from the “Phonebook detail” function menu. → p.114

Adding a member to a group

A “group” created with members in the PushTalk phonebook is useful when you want to make a group call.

- You can change the PushTalk phonebook display as follows:



* : The display mode is available only when you highlight the first item on the first page of the tab.

NOTE

- ◆ The Neuropointer is also available to select or change tabs.
- ◆ Use  to change pages on the same tab. Use  and  (MEMO/CHECK) to select a tab.

● Creating a group

- Up to 10 groups can be created. A group name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 21 single-byte characters.

1 PushTalk phonebook screen (p.101) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Group setting” ▶ “Compose group”

2 Enter a group name and press

A new group name is added to the group list.

● Adding a member to the group

- Add a member to the member list beforehand. → p.98
- A group can contain up to 19 members, but a call can be made to only up to four members of the group.

<Example: To add from the group list>

1 On the group list ▶ Use to highlight a group, then press (FUNC) ▶ “Group setting” ▶ “Add member”

The “Select group member” screen appears.

2 Use to select a member ▶ (Finish)

The selected member is added to the group.

NOTE

- ◆ Group members appear as follows:
 - When a member is added to the group, the added member appears on the top.
 - When you display the PushTalk phonebook screen then the group member list, the members appear in last-used order.
- ◆ A member cannot be added to the group if the phone number is the same as that of an existing member.
- ◆ A member can be added separately to different groups.

Adding to the PushTalk phonebook from the Redial, Dialed calls and other records

You can add a member and group from “Received calls”, “Dialed calls” and “Redial”.

<Example: To add newly to a PushTalk group from “Received calls” of voice calls>

1 Received calls screen (detail) (p.64) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Add to phonebook”

- To use the records of Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls of PushTalk (group calls)
 - ▶ “Add to phonebook” ▶ “Add to PushTalk” ▶ Use  to select a member (phone number)

2 “Add to PushTalk Gr”

- To add a PushTalk member
 - ▶ “Add to PushTalk”
- To add to the FOMA terminal (Phone) or the FOMA card (UIM)
 - ▶ “Add to phonebook”
 - “Adding Phonebook Entries from the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records” → p.109

3 “New” ▶ Press (Finish) to finish adding

- To add to an existing phonebook entry
 - ▶ “Add” ▶ Search for a phonebook entry to add ▶ Display the phonebook detail screen ▶  (Select)
 - ▶ Press  (Finish) to finish adding ▶ “YES”

4 Select a group

- To add a new group
 - ▶ <New> ▶ Enter a group name

NOTE

- ◆ A new phone number is also added to the phonebook on the FOMA terminal (Phone) at the same time.
- ◆ If the record cannot be added to the PushTalk phonebook from the Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls of PushTalk (group calls), “” appears.

Using the PushTalk Phonebook to Make a PushTalk Call

Select members from the PushTalk phonebook and make a PushTalk call.

- You can make a call to a maximum of four members.

1 On the standby screen ▶

The "PushTalk phonebook" screen appears.



PushTalk phonebook
Function menu▶p.102

2 Use to select a checkbox ()▶

 to  are available to select the corresponding checkboxes. A PushTalk call will be made to the members selected.

When one of the other parties answers the call, the participation tone sounds and the "PushTalk talking" screen appears. You can check the status of the members on this screen. → p.94

Speaking during a PushTalk call → p.95

■ To check the selected members

- ▶ Before pressing  to make a call, press  (FUNC)▶ "Members to call"

■ To release hands-free

- ▶   Off

Hands-free → p.61



NOTE

- ◆ If no checkboxes are selected, a call will be made to the highlighted member.
- ◆ When you select two or more parties to make a call, those parties will be saved as one record to the Redial/Dialed calls. You can use the record to make another PushTalk call. → p.96
- ◆ If all the other members receiving the call are "Disconnected", the PushTalk call will end.

Making a PushTalk call from a PushTalk group

1 On the group list▶ Use to highlight a group, then press

A call is made to all the members of the highlighted group.

■ To select members from the group

- ▶ Select a group▶ Use  to deselect members you do not want to dial from the group member list▶ 

NOTE

- ◆ If five or more members are registered to the selected group, a call cannot be made. In this case, select up to four members in the group, so that you can make a call.
- ◆ If a group is selected, a call is not made to the members stored as secret data. To make a call also to the members stored as secret data, set "Secret mode". To make a call only to the members stored as secret data, set "Secret data only mode".
- ◆ In Secret mode or Secret data only mode, the names of members stored as secret data in the phonebook do not appear on the dialing screen.

Function menu (PushTalk phonebook screen)

- The options are available depend on the member list, group list, group member list or selected tab.

New	Adds an entry to the PushTalk phonebook.	
	View phonebook	Searches for a phone number from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook then adds it to the PushTalk phonebook.
	Direct input	Adds a new entry to the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook. The phone number is automatically added to the PushTalk phonebook.
Set Caller ID	Select "ON" or "OFF" for whether to notify calling members of all members' (including added members) phone numbers. ■ To release "ON" or "OFF" of "Set Caller ID" ▶ "Cancel prefix" If "Cancel prefix" is selected, the "Caller ID setting" under "PushTalk setting" applies.	
Members to call	Displays a list of members.	
PushTalk setting	Makes the PushTalk settings. → p.103	
Network connection	Connects to the network to use the "PushTalkPlus". → p.94 Only a PushTalkPlus subscriber can use this function.	
Sort	Uses the method to sort the lists.*1	
Group setting	Creates a new group, adds a member to the group, or edits a group name. → p.99	
Release all	Deselects all members in the member list/group member list.	
No. of PushTalk	Checks the number of members, the number of groups and the number of members stored in each group.*2	
Delete	"Deletes an entry from the PushTalk Phonebook." → p.102	

*1: Sorting in Reading order is unavailable in the group list.

*2: To change displays, use ,  and  (MEMO/CHECK).

NOTE

<No. of PushTalk>

- ◆ In "Secret mode" or "Secret data only mode", the number of secret members also can be checked.

<Delete PushTalk>

Deleting an Entry from the PushTalk Phonebook

Delete an entry from the PushTalk phonebook.

- If "Original phonebook" under "Delete this" is selected, the entry is deleted from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook.

1 On the member list (FUNC) ▶ "Delete" ▶ Select any item

Delete this	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ To delete only from the PushTalk phonebook ▶ Select an entry to delete ▶ "PushTalk phonebook" ▶ "YES" ■ To delete also from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook ▶ Select an entry to delete ▶ "Original phonebook" ▶ "YES" Deletes the highlighted member.
Delete selected	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Use  to select a checkbox (□) ▶  (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes multiple members.
Delete all	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all the members.

NOTE

- ◆ If a member to be deleted is registered to some groups, the member will be deleted from all the groups containing the member.

● Deleting a PushTalk group

1 On the group list (FUNC) ▶ "Delete" ▶ Select any item

Delete this	Deletes the highlighted group.
Delete selected	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Use  to select a checkbox (□) ▶  (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes multiple groups.

Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all the groups.
-------------------	--

NOTE

◆ All the members stored in the group are also to be deleted. The members are not deleted from the member list.

Deleting a group member

1 On the group member list ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Delete” ▶ **Select any item**

Delete this	Deletes the highlighted group member.
Delete selected	▶ Use to select a checkbox (<input type="checkbox"/>) ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple members.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all the group members in the group.

NOTE

◆ The members are deleted only from the current group. They are not deleted from another group or the member list.

<PushTalk setting>
Making the PushTalk Settings

Make the PushTalk settings.

● After making the settings, press to return to the “PushTalk phonebook” screen.

1 PushTalk phonebook screen (p.101) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “PushTalk setting” ▶ **Select any item**

Auto answer setting (default: OFF)	“Automatically answering an incoming PushTalk call” → p.97	
Ring time setting (default: 30 seconds)	▶ Enter the ring time (01-60 seconds) The ring tone keeps ringing for the specified time. When the specified time has elapsed, a “Disconnected” response is automatically made and the ring tone stops.	
Setting when folded	Selects an operation to be performed when the FOMA terminal is folded during a PushTalk call.	
	Speaker talk (default)	Continues a call in hands-free mode. When the FOMA terminal is opened, the status reverts to before it was folded.
	End the call	Ends a call. It is the same operation as pressing . Ending a PushTalk call → p.98
Caller ID setting (default: OFF)	Sets whether to notify calling members of all members’ (including added members) phone numbers each time you make a PushTalk call.	
PushTalk arrival act	Sets how to deal with an incoming voice call while making/receiving a PushTalk call or during a PushTalk call.	
	Answer (default)	Moves to the incoming voice call screen. The incoming voice call screen does not appear while making/receiving a PushTalk call. “Receiving a voice call during a PushTalk call” → p.104
	Call Rejection	Rejects an incoming voice call.
	Voice Mail	Connects an incoming voice call to the Voice Mail service if you have subscribed to the service. The caller is connected to the service center regardless of whether the “Voice Mail” setting is “Activate” or “Deactivate”.
	Call Forwarding	Forwards an incoming voice call to the designated forwarding number if you have subscribed to the Call Forwarding service. The call is forwarded regardless of whether the “Call Forwarding” setting is “Activate” or “Deactivate”.
Hands-free setting (default: ON)	Sets whether to automatically set hands-free on each time you make a PushTalk call.	

NOTE

<Ring time setting>

- ◆ If “Set mute seconds” under “Ring time(sec.)” is set to “ON”, the ring tone sounds for the ring time specified in “Ring time setting” after the specified mute time has elapsed.
- ◆ When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is attached, priority is given to the shorter time setting, “Ring time setting” or “Automatic answer”.

<Setting when folded>

- ◆ This setting is available only for PushTalk and does not follow “Setting when folded” (p.75) of a voice call and videophone call.
- ◆ If “Speaker talk” is set, folding the FOMA terminal sets hands-free on regardless of the manner mode setting.
- ◆ If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, this function is disabled and even folding the FOMA terminal does not change the call status.

<Caller ID setting>

- ◆ This setting is available only for making a PushTalk call and does not follow “Caller ID Notification” (p.50) or “186/184” setting (p.67) of the Network services.
- ◆ If “Notify Caller ID” (p.53) or “Set Caller ID” (p.102) is selected from the function menu or if Notify/Not notify appears on the Redial/Dialed calls detail screen, each setting will apply.

<Hands-free setting>

- ◆ If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, this function is disabled and does not automatically set hands-free on.

Receiving a voice call during a PushTalk call

Setting “PushTalk arrival act” to “Answer” beforehand allows you to receive a voice call during a PushTalk call.

1 When receiving a voice call during a PushTalk call, press or

The PushTalk call ends, and the “Voice in-call” screen appears.

2 To end the call, press

■ To continue a PushTalk call

Even when “PushTalk arrival act” is set to “Answer”, you can continue a PushTalk call by selecting “Call Rejection”, “Call Forwarding” or “Voice Mail” from the function menu of the ringing screen.

Ringing function menu → p.71

NOTE

- ◆ Pressing  on the voice call ringing screen (the PushTalk call ends) and then pressing  or  also switches the screen to the voice in-call.

● Using the Phonebook

Phonebooks Available with a FOMA Terminal	106
Adding Information to the Phonebook	Add to phonebook 107
Adding Phonebook Entries from the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records	109
Renaming Groups.....	Group setting 110
Making a Call from the Phonebook.....	Search phonebook 111
Editing a Phonebook Entry	Edit phonebook 115
Deleting a Phonebook Entry.....	Delete data 116
Copying a Phonebook Entry to the FOMA Card	UIM operation 116
Checking the Phonebook Storage Status.....	No. of phonebook 118
Setting Different FOMA Terminal Actions for Each Phone Number and Mail Address	Discern connect/Discern group 118
Using Dialing Shortcuts	Two-touch dialing 120
Using One-touch Dialing to Call Favorites.....	Automatic display 120
Saving (Restoring/Updating) Phonebook Data at the Data Security Center	Data Security Service 121

Phonebooks Available with a FOMA Terminal

Your FOMA terminal contains two phonebooks. One is the phonebook in the FOMA terminal (Phone) itself, for which you can set a range of functions, and the other is the UIM (FOMA card) phonebook, which can also be used in other FOMA terminals. The two phonebooks can each be used differently, as needed.

- Besides phonebooks described above, you can create the “PushTalk” phonebook available for PushTalk calls. Use the entries of FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook to create the PushTalk phonebook. → p.98

Differences between the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook and UIM phonebook

■ Stored data

The table below shows the different data storage capabilities of the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook and UIM phonebook.

Stored data	FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook	UIM phonebook
Number of entries	Holds up to 700 entries.	Holds up to 50 entries.
Groups ^{*1}	Data can be sorted into groups 00 to 19.	Data can be sorted into groups 00 to 10.
Phone number storage ^{*2}	The phonebook will hold up to 2,800 phone numbers in total with up to 4 numbers per entry. This allows information such as the contact's mobile phone number and work number to be included in the same entry. One number selected from an entry can also be stored in the PushTalk phonebook.	Only one address can be stored per entry.
	You can choose from 24 icons, “  ”, “  ”, etc. for stored entries, allowing quick identification of the contact's mobile phone number or office phone number.	Icons cannot be selected. The “  ” icon is automatically assigned.
E-mail address storage	The phonebook will hold up to 2,100 e-mail addresses in total with up to 3 addresses per entry. This allows the contact's home and work addresses to be included in one entry.	Only one address can be stored per entry.
	You can choose from 5 icons, “  ”, “  ”, etc. for stored entries, allowing quick identification of the contact's home or office e-mail address.	Icons cannot be selected. The “  ” icon is automatically assigned.
Image storage	One still image and one Chara-den character can be stored per entry, up to a total of 100 of each for the whole phonebook.	—
Other data storage	Each phonebook entry can include one contact's name, reading, ZIP code, street address, location information, birthday and memo. This information, together with the contact's phone numbers and e-mail addresses are stored as a single phonebook entry.	The contact's name and reading can be stored.

*1: You can rename “Group 01” to “Group 19” (“Group 01” to “Group 10” in the UIM phonebook). Renaming them as you prefer beforehand enables you to categorize entries more efficiently. → p.110

*2: You can enter 0 to 9, #, *, p (pause) and + for a phone number. To use a sub-address (p.70), enter ✕.

■ Features of the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook

The following useful functions can be used with entries stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook:

- Specify memory numbers (001 to 009) enables you to use two-touch dialing to make phone calls by pressing just 2 keys. → p.120
- You can use the “Discern connect” and “Discern group” functions to specify the settings of dialing and receiving calls for each group, phone number or e-mail address. → p.118
- You can use “Restrictions” to place restrictions on incoming and outgoing calls for individual phone numbers. → p.171
- You can use “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode” to store phonebook entries that you want to keep private as secret data. → p.158
- “Setting your secret code in the phonebook” → p.115
- You can add a member to the PushTalk phonebook. → p.98
- You can store location information using GPS. → p.306

■ Features of the UIM phonebook

Since the UIM phonebook data is stored on the FOMA card (UIM), you can use your phonebook with other FOMA terminals by inserting the FOMA card (UIM). It is convenient when you use more than one FOMA terminal.

Displaying names

Voice and videophone calls



When you receive a call from a caller who notifies the caller ID stored in the phonebook, the caller's name and phone number appear.



If there is a still image stored in the phonebook entry and "Disp. phonebook image" is set to "ON", the FOMA terminal also displays the image. However, it may take time to display the image depending on the data size.

The caller's name is also displayed in the "Received calls", "Dialed calls" and "Redial" records.

i-mode mail and SMS

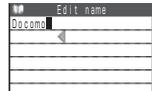
When you receive an i-mode mail from someone whose e-mail address is stored in the phonebook or receive an SMS from someone whose phone number is stored in the phonebook, a FOMA terminal displays the sender's name on the Received mail list and detail screens. When you send an i-mode mail or SMS to that person, his or her name is shown on the Sent mail list and detail screens. The person's name also appears on the "Sent address" or "Received address" list.

<Add to phonebook>

Adding Information to the Phonebook

- You can choose the phonebook from FOMA terminal (Phone), FOMA terminal (Phone) + PushTalk phonebook and FOMA card (UIM). The entry information you can store will be different according to each phonebook.
- Always enter a name in the "Name" field. An entry without a name cannot be stored in the phonebook.

1 On the standby screen ▶ ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Add to phonebook" ▶ Select a phonebook ▶ Enter a name



If the entry is to be saved to the "Phone" or "All Phonebook"

A name can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, symbols and pictographs. A name can contain up to 16 double-byte or 32 single-byte characters.

If the entry is to be saved to the "UIM"

A name can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols. A name consisting of up to 10 double-byte or 21 single-byte characters (including some single-byte symbols) can be stored.

2 Check the reading

If the reading is incorrect ("Phone" or "All Phonebook")

Correct the reading using katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers or symbols. A reading can contain up to 32 single-byte characters. "Search reading" in "Search phonebook" uses the reading stored here.

If the reading is incorrect ("UIM")

Correct the reading using double-byte katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers or symbols. Up to 12 double-byte or 25 single-byte characters (including some single-byte symbols) can be used. "Search reading" in "Search phonebook" uses the reading stored here.

3 Set the respective parameters

 Group	▶ Select a group If no group is selected, the entry is automatically assigned to "group 00".
---	---

 Phone number	<p>■ If the entry is to be saved to the “Phone” or “All Phonebook”</p> <p>▶Enter a phone number▶Select an icon</p> <p>A phone number can be up to 26 digits.</p> <p>Once you have stored the first phone number, the “ <Not stored>” option appears on the phonebook edit screen. Select this option to store an additional phone number.</p> <p>When storing a number for an ordinary phone, always begin by entering the area code, even when the contact is in the same area.</p> <p>■ If the entry is to be saved to the “UIM”</p> <p>▶Enter a phone number</p> <p>Phone number up to 20 digits can be stored on a blue UIM and up to 26 digits on a green UIM.</p> <p>When storing a number for an ordinary phone, always begin by entering the area code, even when the contact is in the same area.</p>
 Mail address	<p>■ If the entry is to be saved to the “Phone” or “All Phonebook”</p> <p>▶Enter an e-mail address▶Select an icon</p> <p>An e-mail address can contain up to 50 single-byte alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols.</p> <p>Once you have stored the first e-mail address, the “ <Not stored>” option appears on the phonebook edit screen. Select this option to store an additional e-mail address.</p> <p>■ If the entry is to be saved to the “UIM”</p> <p>▶Enter an e-mail address</p> <p>An e-mail address can contain up to 50 single-byte alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols.</p>
 Address*1	<p>▶Enter a ZIP code▶Enter a street address</p> <p>A ZIP code can be stored up to 7 single-byte digits. A street address can contain up to 50 double-byte or 100 single-byte characters, consisting of kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and pictographs.</p>
 Location information*1	<p>Stores location information. Select “From position loc.” to get the present location information. Select “From location history” to store location information from location history list. Select “From image” to store the location information in an image. Select “Location Info detail” to check the latitude, longitude, geodetic system (Datum) and accuracy on the location info detail screen stored. Select “Delete location Info” to delete the location information.</p>
 Birthday*1	<p>▶Enter a birthday</p> <p>Any year from 1800 to 2099 can be set.</p>
 Memorandums*1	<p>▶Enter a memo</p> <p>A memo can contain up to 100 double-byte or 200 single-byte characters long and can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, and pictographs.</p>
 Image*1	<p>Selects an image displayed when you receive a call from the contact. Selecting “Photo mode” activates the “Photo mode” screen on which you can shoot a still image. → p.185</p>
 Chara-den*1	<p>Selects a Chara-den character sent as a substitute image during a videophone call.</p>
 Memory No. *1	<p>▶Enter a memory number</p> <p>A memory number is automatically*2 assigned when an entry is stored in the phonebook, but can be changed to any number between 000 and 699, as desired. Press  ,  or  to automatically*2 assign an available number.</p>

*1: It does not appear when selecting the phonebook on the “UIM”.

*2: The least of available numbers between 010 and 699 is assigned. If there are no numbers available between 010 and 699, the available one between 000 and 009 is assigned.

4 (Finish)

■ To store in the “All Phonebook”

When a phone number is added to the FOMA terminal (Phone), it is also stored in the PushTalk phonebook. If multiple phone numbers are added, select one to store in the PushTalk phonebook. Adding PushTalk phone number or group can be done on the PushTalk phonebook. “Adding an Entry to the PushTalk Phonebook” → p.98

NOTE

- ◆ If you enter “わ,ワ” (double-byte, lower case) in a name in the phonebook on “Phone” or “All Phonebook”, the reading will be displayed as “ワ” (single-byte, upper case). Only when you press  or  in Alphabetic input mode or Numeric input mode to enter a symbol in a name, the symbol appears in the reading. Pictographs do not appear in readings.
- ◆ If you enter “わ,ワ” (double-byte, lower case) in a name in the phonebook on the FOMA card (UIM), the reading will be displayed as “ワ” (double-byte, upper case). However, “わ” (double-byte, lower case) can be entered in a reading. Only when you press  or  in Alphabetic input mode or Numeric input mode to enter a symbol in a name, the symbol appears in the reading.
- ◆ Phonebook entries stored using symbols or pictographs may not be displayed correctly e.g. when data are transferred.
- ◆ Include the correct domain name when storing an e-mail address. Domain name is a part of e-mail address that follows “@” symbol.
(E.g.) docomo.taro.@docomo.ne.jp

- ◆ To store an e-mail address in the “phonenumber@docomo.ne.jp” format, enter only the phone number as the e-mail address.
- ◆ If you modify or delete the original data of an image or Chara-den that is stored in the phonebook, the data stored in the phonebook is also modified or deleted.
- ◆ To have a stored image displayed when you receive a call, set “Disp. phonebook image” to “ON”. → p.136
- ◆ When you receive a call from the phone number for which an image is stored in the phonebook and the image size is larger than the display area set in “Calling” in “Display setting”, the width and length of the image is reduced at the same ratio. When an image is smaller than the set display area, it is centered on the screen.
- ◆ When you select “Move to top” from the function menu while viewing multiple phone numbers/mail addresses stored in a phonebook entry, the highlighted phone number/mail address is stored as the first.
- ◆ You can transfer the phonebook data attached to received i-mode mail to the FOMA terminal (Phone), FOMA terminal (Phone) + PushTalk phonebook, UIM and microSD memory card. → p.256

<Priority sequence for Chara-den setting>

◆ The priority order for Chara-den settings is as follows:

- ① Chara-den setup in Discern connect → p.118
- ② Chara-den setup in Discern group → p.118
- ③ Chara-den stored in the phonebook entry
- ④ “Substitute image” in “Select image” → p.86

When phonebook editing is interrupted

1 On the standby screen ▶ ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Add to phonebook” ▶ Select a phonebook ▶ “Recall”

If a low voltage alarm sounds during editing or you started up a new Tools group task using Multitask, the interrupted phonebook editing can be restarted.

If you cancel the re-editing without storing the edited data, the data is deleted.



■ To store a new phonebook entry

▶ “New”

NOTE

- ◆ Only the latest edited data can be saved temporarily.
- ◆ If you receive a voice call, videophone call or PushTalk call while editing the phonebook, you can leave the edited phonebook data to answer the call.
During a voice call or PushTalk call, you can return to the phonebook edit screen by pressing (MULTI) to display the task change screen (p.394) and selecting “Add to phonebook”. After a voice call, videophone call or PushTalk call ends, the original edit screen reappears.

■ Important

- It is recommended to back up the information stored in the phonebook onto a microSD memory card or note the information down separately.
- Stored information can also be lost as a result of faults, repairs, modification or other handling of the FOMA terminal. If you wish to copy the data for each phonebook entry onto a new model at an authorized NTT DoCoMo facility such as a DoCoMo shop, it may not be possible to copy the data stored on the FOMA terminal depending on the specifications of the new model.
Note that NTT DoCoMo accepts no liability whatsoever for the loss of data such as stored phonebook entries. It is recommended to use DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.430) to back up phonebook data onto a PC.

Adding Phonebook Entries from the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records

You can add information to the phonebook from the “Received calls”, “Dialed calls”, “Redial”, “Received address”, “Sent address”, “Access reader” or the site screen. You can also add a dialed phone number to the phonebook.

<Example: To add information from the “Received calls” record to the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook>

1 Received calls screen (list) (p.64) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Add to phonebook”

2 “Add to phonebook”

■ To use the Redial/Dialed/Received calls records of PushTalk calls (group calls)

▶ Use to select a party (phone number)

■ To add to the PushTalk phonebook

▶ “Add to PushTalk” or “Add to PushTalk Gr”

“Adding to the PushTalk phonebook from the Redial, Dialed calls and other records” → p.100

3 “Phone”

- To add to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) + PushTalk phonebook
 - ▶ “All Phonebook”
- To add to the FOMA card (UIM)
 - ▶ “UIM”

4 “Add” ▶ Search for an entry to add the information to

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.112

- To store a new phonebook entry
 - ▶ “New”
- To add to the FOMA card (UIM)
 - ▶ “New” or “Overwrite”

5 Display the phonebook detail screen ▶ (Select)

The phone number is automatically entered and the “Phonebook edit” screen appears. Editing the phonebook → p.115

6 Press (Envelope icon) (Finish) when you finish editing

- If a message appears asking whether to overwrite existing data
 - ▶ “YES”

NOTE

- ◆ The “Notify Caller ID” setting (ON or OFF) displayed in the “Dialed calls” and “Redial” records is not stored in the phonebook.
- ◆ You cannot add received addresses to which replies cannot be sent to the phonebook.
- ◆ The predetermined number of characters are stored on a phonebook entry and remains are deleted. Characters that cannot be stored may be replaced by spaces.

<Group setting>

MENU26

Renaming Groups

Default setting

FOMA terminal (Phone): Groups 01-19 FOMA card (UIM) : Groups 01-10

You can assign the stored phonebook entries to groups according to the contact’s role (“Work”, “Friends”, etc.) or by hobby (“Baseball”, “Football”, etc.). This allows you to use the phonebook as if it were divided into different volumes according to purpose.

The table below shows the groups that can be renamed and the number of characters that can be stored.

	Renamable groups	Max. no. of characters
FOMA terminal (Phone)	Groups 01-19	10 double-byte or 21 single-byte
FOMA card (UIM)	Groups 01-10	10 double-byte or 21 single-byte

- Group 00 cannot be renamed.

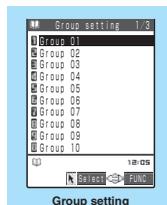
1 On the standby screen ▶ (Phone icon) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Group setting”

The “Group setting” screen appears.

2 Select a group ▶ Enter a group name

The “” icon indicates UIM group.

If the same name is assigned for groups on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM), they appear as separate groups.



Function menu ▶ p.110

Function menu (Group setting screen)

Edit group name	Edits a group name.
Discern group	“Setting Different FOMA Terminal Actions for Each Phone Number and Mail Address” → p.118
Reset group name	Resets the changed group name to the default.

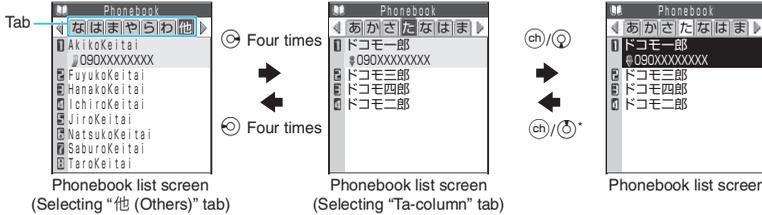
NOTE

- ◆ Resetting a group name does not cancel the “Discern group” settings specified for the group.
- ◆ If there are no characters entered in the group name to be changed, it returns to the default group name.

Making a Call from the Phonebook

You can make a call quickly by selecting the other party's entry from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook or UIM phonebook.

- When tabs appear on Phonebook list screen, you can switch the display as follows.
 <Example: To switch tabs from “他 (Others)” to “Ta-column” in Alphabet tab display>



* : The display mode is available only when you highlight the first phonebook entry on the first page of the tab.

NOTE

- ◆ The Neuropointer is also available to select or change tabs.
- ◆ Use to change pages on the same tab. Use and (MEMO/CHECK) to select a tab.
- ◆ When a tab is selected in alphabet tab display, you can press the corresponding key to a column to switch to that tab. For keys corresponding to columns, see “Search column” (p.113) in the search method list.
- ◆ When a tab is selected in the Memory No. display, you can key in the Memory No. directly to display the phonebook entry.
- ◆ When a tab is selected in the Group tab display, you can key in the Group No. directly to select the Group tab (to specify a group registered in FOMA card (UIM), add “*” before the Group No.).

Opening the other party's entry to make a call

1 On the standby screen

The “Phonebook list” screen appears.

■ To make a call on the list screen

▶ Highlight an entry you want to make a call and press or (V.phone)

Press to make a voice call and (V.phone) to make a videophone call.

If the selected phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, the call is made to the first number.

■ To switch tabs

▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Change Display”

You can select either of “Alphabet”, “Memory No.” or “Group”.



Alphabet



Memory No.



Group



Phonebook list
Function menu▶p.113

2 Select a desired phonebook entry

The “Phonebook detail” screen appears.

3 or (V.phone)

Press to make a voice call and (V.phone) to make a videophone call to the currently displayed number.

■ If multiple phone numbers are stored in the same entry

Use to display other stored phone numbers.



Phonebook detail
Function menu▶p.114

NOTE

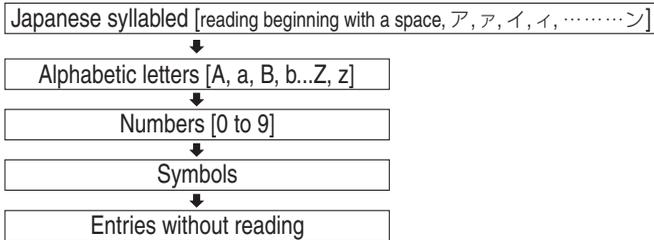
- ◆ You can switch the first phone number of a phonebook entry that contains multiple phone numbers. → p.114
- ◆ Press during a call to display the Search group screen, and to display the Search column screen.

Specifying a method to search for an entry

To search for a desired entry, you can select one of 8 search criteria: reading, name, phone number, e-mail address, memory number, group, column in Japanese phonetics (a, ka, sa, ta, na, etc.) and all.

■ Viewing the search results

Except for memory number search, search results are displayed in the sequence shown below based on the readings entered when entries were stored. If Search all is performed with no search criterion, "A-column" is shown in Alphabet tab display.



1 On the standby screen Select the search method

You can also perform "Search all" by pressing on the standby screen. You can also perform "Search phone No." by displaying the phone number entry screen (p.53) Enter a part of the phone number or .



■ To display your preferred search

Highlight a search method you want to display preferentially

(Prefer)

A star (★) appears next to the preferred search method.

Next time you search the phonebook, pressing on the standby screen will display your preferred search method screen.

■ To cancel your preferred search method setting

On the standby screen [CLR] Highlight a search method with a star (★) (OFF)

2 Search the phonebook

When a search ends, the "Phonebook list" screen that meets the search criterion appears. appears for the UIM phonebook entries on the search result list screen.

If no phonebook entry that meets the search criterion is stored, a message notifying you that there is no data is displayed.

Search method	Procedure and description
Search reading	Enter part of a reading or Enter a reading from the beginning in the order of family and first name. You do not need to enter the entire reading.
Search name	Enter part of a name or Start with the surname followed by the given name. You do not need to enter the entire reading.
Search phone No.	Enter part of a phone number or You can search by entering either the first digits or any part of a phone number.
Search e-mail	Enter part of an e-mail address or
Search memory No.	Enter a 3-digit memory number You cannot search the UIM phonebook by memory number.
Search group	Select a desired group The UIM phonebook uses different groups from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook.

Search method	Procedure and description
Search column	<p>▶ Press the key for the “column” you want to search</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 1 : “a” column tab</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 2 : “ka” column tab</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 3 : “sa” column tab</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 4 : “ta” column tab</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 5 : “na” column tab</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 6 : “ha” column tab</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 7 : “ma” column tab</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 8 : “ya” column tab</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 9 : “ra” column tab</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 0 : “wa” column tab</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> * : “others” tab</p>
Search all	Displays the alphabet of all the entries stored in the phonebook.

NOTE

- ◆ If you have not set a preferred search method, pressing  displays the Search phonebook screen with the last selected search method highlighted.

Searching phonebook entries from the Redial, Dialed calls and other records

To easily make a call and send an e-mail, you can search for a desired entry from each detail screen of “Received calls”, “Dialed calls”, “Redial”, “Received address” and “Sent address”.

<Example: To refer to an entry from “Received calls” of voice calls>

1 Received calls screen (detail) (p.64) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Look-up phonebook”

The “Phonebook detail” screen appears.

Function menu (Phonebook list screen)

- Available functions vary depending on search method or how the search is activated (e.g. activated on the standby screen), or the selection condition of tabs.

Add to phonebook	“Adding Information to the Phonebook” → p.107	
Connect to DSC	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” ▶  (Finish) Keeps the phonebook data at the DoCoMo Data Security Center. Data Security Service → pp.122, 175	
Sort ¹	Sorts phonebook entries according to the specified criterion.	
Change Display	Switches tabs. You can select either of “Alphabet”, “Memory No.” or “Group”.	
Discern connect	“Checking the Discern connect settings” → p.120	
Restrictions	“Checking the restriction settings” → p.173	
Group setting	“Renaming Groups” → p.110	
Copy to microSD ³	Copies the phonebook data to the microSD memory card.	
	Copy this ²	Copies the highlighted phonebook entry.
	Copy selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (<input type="checkbox"/>) ▶  (Finish) ▶ “YES” You can copy the multiple phonebook entries.
	Copy all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” ▶ “YES” Copies all the phonebook entries and My Profile.
Touch to send data ^{2,3}	“Transferring One Data at a Time” → p.368	
Touch to send all ³	“Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time” → p.369	
Send 1r data ^{2,3}	“Transferring One Data at a Time” → p.368	
Send all 1r data ³	“Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time” → p.369	
No. of phonebook	“Checking the Phonebook Storage Status” → p.118	
Attach to mail ³	Displays a New mail screen with phonebook data attached.	
Big font, Standard font	Changes the font size displayed in Phonebook list screen and Phonebook detail screen.	

microSD phonebook, Original phonebook	Refers to the phonebook on microSD memory card and FOMA terminal (Phone).	
Delete data	Deletes phonebook entries.	
	Delete this ^{*2}	Deletes the highlighted phonebook entry.
	Delete selected	▶ Use to select a checkbox (<input type="checkbox"/>)▶ (Finish)▶ “YES” You can delete multiple phonebook entries.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code▶ “YES”▶ “YES” Deletes all the phonebook entries.	

*1: Not available when tabs are displayed.

*2: Not available when tabs are displayed or selected.

*3: Not available when the phonebook is stored on the FOMA card (UIM).

NOTE

- ◆ If you delete a phonebook entry that is also stored in the PushTalk phonebook, the entry is deleted from the member list or group member list in the PushTalk phonebook.
- ◆ If “Delete all” is performed, the UIM phonebook and PushTalk phonebook entries are also deleted.
- ◆ Selecting “Copy all” or “Copy selected” in “Copy to microSD” also copies the storage information of PushTalk phonebook.

Function menu (Phonebook detail screen)

Notify Caller ID	“Notifying/not notifying the other party of your caller ID” → p.68	
Prefix numbers	▶ Select the prefix name to add “Setting Prefix Numbers” → p.69	
Chaku-moji	“Making a call with a Chaku-moji message” → p.66	
Int'l call	“Making an international call with international call codes added” → p.59	
Multi Number	“Multi Number” → p.424	
Discern connect ^{*1}	“Setting Different FOMA Terminal Actions for Each Phone Number and Mail Address” → p.118	
Restrictions ^{*1}	“Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers” → p.171	
Edit phonebook	“Editing a Phonebook Entry” → p.115	
Move to top ^{*1}	Specifies the selected phone number/e-mail address as the first number/address when multiple phone number/e-mail addresses are stored in an entry.	
Add to PushTalk ^{*1}	“Adding an Entry to the PushTalk Phonebook” → p.98	
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons” → p.147	
Compose message	“Creating and Sending i-mode Mail” → p.239	
Attach to mail ^{*1}	Displays a New mail screen with phonebook data attached.	
Paste to mail ^{*1}	Displays a New mail screen with a location information URL stored in the phonebook inserted.	
Compose SMS	“Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)” → p.278	
Touch to send data ^{*1}	“Transferring One Data at a Time” → p.368	
Touch to send all ^{*1}	“Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time” → p.369	
Send 1r data ^{*1}	“Transferring One Data at a Time” → p.368	
Send all 1r data ^{*1}	“Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time” → p.369	
Automatic display ^{*1}	“Specifying phone number to display automatically” → p.121	
Copy to microSD ^{*1}	Copies the selected phonebook entry to the microSD memory card.	
Copy name	Copies a name stored in the phonebook. The copied name can be pasted into the entry screen, etc.	
Copy phone number ^{*2}	Copies a phone number stored in the phonebook. The copied phone number can be pasted into the entry screen, etc.	
Secret code ^{*1}	▶ Enter your security code▶ Select any item “Setting your secret code in the phonebook” → p.115	
	Set code	▶ Enter a 4-digit number▶ “YES” Sets your secret code.
	Check code	Displays the set secret code.
	Release settings	Cancels the set secret code.
Set secret ^{*1*3}	“Preventing Others from Viewing Stored Data of Your Phonebook or Schedule” → p.158	

Copy to UIM^{*4}	Copies phonebook data.
Connection speed	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from "64K" or "32K".
Select image	"Setting an image to send during a videophone call" → p.86 Selecting "Release settings" cancels the setting of My side or Chara-den.
Read a map^{*1}	Displays a map around from the location information with connecting to the i-mode site (location site).
Run i-appli^{*1}	Displays a list of GPS-compatible i-appli programs.
Big font, Standard font	Changes the font size displayed in Phonebook list screen and Phonebook detail screen.
Delete data	"Deleting a Phonebook Entry" → p.116

*1: Not available for entries stored in the UIM phonebook.

*2: Depending upon what you have selected, one of the following is applicable.

- If you have selected a mail address, "Copy mail add." appears.
- If you have selected an address, "Copy address" appears.
- If you have selected location information, "Copy loc. Info" appears.
- If you have selected a birthday, "Copy birthday" appears.
- If you have selected a memo, "Copy memorandums" appears.

*3: If you have selected a secret phonebook entry, "Release secret" appears.

*4: If you have selected a UIM phonebook entry, "Copy from UIM" appears.

NOTE

<Add to PushTalk>

- ◆ When an entry is added to the PushTalk phonebook, " " appears on the phonebook detail screen and "★" appears on the function menu.

<Big font, Standard font>

- ◆ When "Big font" is selected, only the name appears large on the phonebook detail screen.

● Setting your secret code in the phonebook

For an e-mail address which is "phone number@docomo.ne.jp" with a secret code registered by the owner, you need to specify "phone number + secret code@docomo.ne.jp" as the e-mail address.

If you set the secret code when adding the phonebook entry, the secret code will be added automatically when you search the phonebook and compose an i-mode message.

NOTE

- ◆ You can only set a secret code to e-mail address "phone number@docomo.ne.jp" or a phone number.
- ◆ You cannot set secret codes to UIM phonebook entries.
- ◆ Always set the correct secret code set by the owner.
- ◆ Do not set a secret code using this function if you already registered "phone number+secret code" or "phone number+secret code@docomo.ne.jp" as the e-mail address in a phonebook entry.

<Edit phonebook>

Editing a Phonebook Entry

- Readings cannot be corrected automatically when you edit the names.

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.111) (FUNC) "Edit phonebook"

Edit each item

Edit the desired items using the same procedure as "Add to phonebook".

Adding information to the phonebook → p.107

■ To assign a new memory number

 Enter a memory number (000 to 699) that has not already been stored

The original phonebook entry is left in its pre-edited state and the edited entry is stored as a new entry with a different memory number.

2 Press (Finish) when you finish editing "YES"

■ To add information to the FOMA card (UIM)

 (Finish)  "Overwrite" or "Add"

Selecting "Overwrite" stores the edited information.

Selecting "Add" leaves the original phonebook entry unchanged and stores the edited entry as a new one.

NOTE

- ◆ If you edit a phonebook entry that is also stored in the PushTalk phonebook, the entry is automatically edited in the PushTalk phonebook.
- ◆ If you edit the memory number of an entry which is stored in the member list or group list in the PushTalk phonebook, the edited entry does not take over the storage information for the PushTalk phonebook.

<Delete data>

Deleting a Phonebook Entry

- 1 Phonebook detail screen (p.111) ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Delete data” ▶ Select any item

Delete phone No.*	Deletes the selected phone number, e-mail address, street address, location information, birthday, memo, image or Chara-den character.
Delete this	Deletes the phonebook entry displayed in detail.

- * : Depending upon what you have selected, one of the following is applicable.
- If you have selected a mail address, “Delete mail add.” appears.
 - If you have selected an address, “Delete address” appears.
 - If you have selected loc. Info, “Delete loc. Info” appears.
 - If you have selected a birthday, “Delete birthday” appears.
 - If you have selected a memo, “Delete memorandums” appears.
 - If you have selected an image, “Delete image” appears.
 - If you have selected a Chara-den character, “Delete Chara-den” appears.

NOTE

- ◆ You can delete a phonebook entry on the phonebook list screen. However, you cannot delete respective items stored in an entry.
- ◆ If multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are stored in a phonebook entry and the first phone number or mail address is deleted, the next phone number or mail address appears.
- ◆ If you select “Delete phone No.” or “Delete this” for a phone number or entry that is stored in the PushTalk phonebook, the phone number or entry is also deleted from the member list or group member list in the PushTalk phonebook.

<UIM operation>

Copying a Phonebook Entry to the FOMA Card

You can transfer phonebook and SMS data back and forth between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM). You can also delete the SMS and phonebook data stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) or FOMA card (UIM).

- You cannot make/receive voice calls, videophone calls or PushTalk calls, or send/receive mails while copying or deleting data. In addition, you cannot activate other functions.
- You cannot copy items that cannot be stored in the UIM phonebook.
Items and number of entries that can be copied → p.106

Copying data between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM)

- 1  ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “UIM operation” ▶ Enter your security code

Once you enter your security code,  appears and you can no longer perform communication (e.g. receiving calls). If you receive a call or similar communication before entering your security code, the UIM operation ends.

- 2 “Copy” ▶ “Phone → UIM” or “UIM → Phone” ▶ Select any item

Phonebook	▶ Search the phonebook Displays the phonebook screen. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.112	
SMS	Selects SMS data.	
	Inbox	Shows the Inbox list screen.
	Outbox	Shows the Outbox list screen.

- 3 Use  to select a checkbox () ▶  (Finish) ▶ “YES”

If you select “Phonebook” in step 2 and tabs are displayed on the Phonebook list screen, you can switch tabs and select a checkbox.



Function menu ▶ p.117

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot exchange data with a failed FOMA card (UIM).
- ◆ Copying a phonebook entry from the FOMA terminal (Phone) to FOMA card (UIM) converts “katakana” included in name and reading to double-byte. Copied are up to 10 double-byte or up to 21 single-byte characters for name and up to 12 double-byte or up to 25 single-byte characters for reading.
- ◆ Because the number of phone numbers and e-mail addresses that can be stored in a single phonebook entry is different between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and UIM, the second and subsequent phone numbers/e-mail addresses stored in a FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook entry cannot be copied to the FOMA card (UIM).
- ◆ Because the types of available characters are different between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM), some characters may be converted to spaces or other characters.
- ◆ Phonebook entries cannot be copied by group.
- ◆ Phonebook entries stored as secret data cannot be copied using this function even when a FOMA terminal is set to “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”.
- ◆ If the same group names are set on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM), the phonebook group settings are retained. If no same group name is set on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM), the copied entries are stored in group 00.
- ◆ You cannot copy the SMS report only. However, if you receive an SMS report for a sent SMS, copying the sent SMS will also copy the SMS report saved for the sent SMS.
- ◆ You cannot copy SMS data by box or folder.
- ◆ You cannot protect SMS copied to a FOMA card (UIM). If you copy protected SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the protection is removed from the SMS on the FOMA card (UIM). “Replied to” or “Transferred” icons are also changed to “Read”.
- ◆ If you copy SMS in added folders, i-appli mail folders, “Chat” folder or “Trash box” folder from the FOMA terminal (Phone) to FOMA card (UIM), you can view those SMS in the “Inbox” or “Outbox” folder.
- ◆ Entries copied from a FOMA card (UIM) to FOMA terminal (Phone) are placed in the “Inbox” or “Outbox” folder.

Function menu (UIM operation (copy) screen)

- Available functions vary depending on the selection condition of tabs.

Start copy	Starts copy operation.
Select this	Selects the highlighted data.
Select all	Selects all data.
Release this	Deselects the highlighted data.
Release all	Deselects all data.
Detail	Displays the highlighted data details.

Deleting phonebook entries or SMS data

- 1  “LifeKit” ▶ “UIM operation” ▶ Enter your security code
- 2 “Delete” ▶ “Phone” or “UIM” ▶ Select any item

Phonebook	▶ Search the phonebook Displays the phonebook screen. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.112	
SMS	Selects SMS data.	
	Inbox	Shows the Inbox list screen.
	Outbox	Shows the Outbox list screen.

- 3 Use  to select a checkbox () ▶  (Finish) ▶ “YES”

If you select “Phonebook” in step 2 and tabs are displayed on the Phonebook list screen, you can switch tabs and select a checkbox.



Function menu ▶ p.118

Function menu (UIM operation (delete) screen)

- Available functions vary depending on the selection condition of tabs.

Start deletion	Starts deletion operation.
Select this	Selects the highlighted data.
Select all	Selects all data.
Release this	Deselects the highlighted data.
Release all	Deselects all data.
Detail	Displays the highlighted data details.

<No. of phonebook>

MENU22

Checking the Phonebook Storage Status

1 Phonebook list screen (p.111) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “No. of phonebook”

Phone (phonebook stored on a FOMA terminal)

- Phonebook : Shows the number of entries stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored entries/700 (storage limit)
- Secret : Shows the number of entries stored as secret data. This can only be displayed in “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”.
- Image : Shows the number of images stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored entries/100 (storage limit)
- Chara-den : Shows the number of Chara-den characters stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored entries/100 (storage limit)

UIM (phonebook stored on a FOMA card (UIM))

- Phonebook : Shows the number of entries stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored entries/50 (storage limit)

<Discern connect/Discern group>

Setting Different FOMA Terminal Actions for Each Phone Number and Mail Address

Default setting
All OFF

The functions enable you to specify settings such as which answer message is used in the Record message function and which ring tones are used for each group, phone number or e-mail address in the phonebook. This function is useful if you want to have ring tone or illumination inform you of the caller, etc.

- These functions cannot be set to “Group 00” on the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook and entries and groups on the UIM phonebook.
- These functions cannot be set to the phonebook entries stored as secret data.
- The “Discern connect” and “Discern group” functions will only work if a caller provides the caller ID (phone number). It is recommended to use the “Caller ID Request” service. → p.422

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.111) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Discern connect”

The “Discern connect” screen appears.
“★” appears next to the selected function.

Available functions vary depending on the item selected on the Phonebook detail screen.

■ Setting this function for each group

- ▶ Group setting screen (p.110) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Discern group”



2 Select any item

Voice call (recv.)	Sets how to notify you of voice calls from the specified phone number or group.
V.phone (dial/recv.)	Sets how to notify you of videophone calls from the specified phone number or group.
Mail (recv.)	Sets how to notify you of SMS from the specified phone number or group, or i-mode mail from the specified e-mail address or group.

3 Select any item

“★” appears next to the selected function.

■ To deselect a selected function

▶ Highlight a function with “★” and press  (Reset)

The function is deselected and the star “★” disappears.



Example : Voice call (recv.)

Ring tone¹	Sets ring tones to distinguish callers or senders. “Changing Ring Tones” → p.124
Image²	Sets images to distinguish callers. “Changing the Display Settings” → p.133
Chara-den setup³	Sets a Chara-den character (available for videophone calls) for each phone number. “Chara-den set.” → p.55
Illumination¹	Sets illumination patterns to distinguish callers or senders. “Specifying How the Incoming Call Lamp Flashes for Incoming Calls and Mails” → p.145
Vibrator	Sets vibration patterns to distinguish callers or senders. “Vibrating a FOMA Terminal When a Call or Mail Arrives” → p.127
Answer message²	Sets an answer message played when Record message ⁴ and Quick record message starts for each caller. “Having the Caller Leave a Message and Video” → p.81
Connection speed³	Sets the connection speed used for videophone calls for each phone number. Select “64K” or “32K”.

*1: Available for 64K data communication calls.

*2: Displayed when “Voice call (recv.)” or “V.phone (dial/recv.)” is selected.

*3: Displayed when “V.phone (dial/recv.)” is selected.

*4: To use this function, set “Record message” to “ON” beforehand.

■ When you set “Discern connect”

The following icons appear on the phonebook detail screen indicating the selected functions have been set:



: “Ring tone” for voice/videophone calls



: “Ring tone” for mails



: “Illumination” for voice/videophone calls



: “Illumination” for mails



: “Vibrator” for voice/videophone calls



: “Vibrator” for mails



: “Image” for voice/videophone calls



: “Answer message” for voice/videophone calls



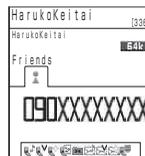
: “Chara-den setup” for videophone calls



: “64K” set in “Connection speed” for videophone calls



: “32K” set in “Connection speed” for videophone calls



Example: Videophone setting

NOTE

- ◆ The “Ring tone”, “Illumination” or “Vibrator” in “Mail (recv.)” that is set for a phone number takes effect when you receive an SMS from the phone number or mail from the e-mail address in “[phone-number]@docomo.ne.jp” format. When you receive a mail from other address, the FOMA terminal operates according to the setting for the mail address in phonebook.
- ◆ These functions can also be set for groups that contain only phonebook entries stored as secret data and for groups that contain both entries stored as secret data and ordinary data. However, these settings are disabled for mails or calls received from contacts stored as secret data.
- ◆ When Discern connect/Discern group settings duplicate the ones specified for other functions, or mail and MessageR/MessageF with differing settings are received at the same time, they are handled as outlined below.
- ◆ When multiple e-mails or MessageR/MessageF are received simultaneously, the ring tone and illumination perform as shown below.

	Ring tone, Illumination
Mail only	Follows the settings set to the last received mail. If chat mail is included, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set to the chat mail.
MessageR/F	Follows the settings set to the MessageR.
Mail, MessageR/F	Follows the settings set to the last received mail. If chat mail is included, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set to the chat mail.

<Incoming call lamp priority sequence>

- ◆ Priority sequence for incoming call lamp when incoming settings are duplicated → p.145

<Vibrator priority sequence>

- ◆ Priority sequence for vibrator when incoming settings are duplicated → p.127

<Ring tone priority sequence>

- ◆ Priority sequence for ring tone when incoming settings are duplicated → p.126
- ◆ Priority sequence for ring tone when mail settings are duplicated → pp.251, 280

<Priority sequence for the image displayed when a call or mail is received>

- ◆ Priority sequence for image displayed when voice call/videophone call settings are duplicated → p.136

<Connection speed priority sequence>

- ◆ Priority is assigned as follows when connection speed settings are duplicated:
 - ① Connection speed → pp.53, 115
 - ② Connection speed for Discern connect
 - ③ Connection speed for Discern group

Checking the Discern connect settings

MENU 62

You can check the phonebook entries or groups set in “Discern connect” by function or item.

1 Phonebook list screen (p.111) (FUNC) “Discern connect”

The “Discern connect checking” screen appears.
A star “★” appears next to the item for which the function is set.

2 Select a function or item for which “★” appears on the “Discern connect” screen Highlight the function or item with “★” and press (FUNC) Select any item

*: The number of times this step is repeated varies depending on the function or setting specified.

Check settings	Shows phonebook entries and groups with the selected function or item set.
Release settings	Releases the settings of the selected function or item.

<Two-touch dialing>

Using Dialing Shortcuts

By assigning memory numbers “000” to “009” to phone numbers, you can quickly call those phone numbers simply by pressing one of the number keys  to  and then pressing .

1 to

■ To make a videophone call

 ()

■ To make a PushTalk call



This operation is available only for one-to-one call.

NOTE

- ◆ If a phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, a call is made to the first phone number stored for that entry.
- ◆ When the FOMA terminal is in Secret or Secret data only mode, you can use two-touch dialing to make a call to a phonebook entry stored as secret data with one of “000” to “009” assigned.
- ◆ When “Restrict dialing” is set, and the first phone number in a phonebook entry with a memory number between 000 and 009 is not nominated in the “Restrict dialing”, two-touch dialing cannot be used.

<Automatic display>

MENU 47

Using One-touch Dialing to Call Favorites

Default setting
OFF

This function enables you to automatically display a preset phone number by opening the FOMA terminal that was folded on the standby screen. You can make a voice, videophone or PushTalk call to that number simply by pressing ,  () or .

- You can only set automatic display for one phone number. You cannot set this function for mail address.
- You cannot set automatic display for entries in the UIM phonebook or PushTalk phonebook.

Enabling the automatic display function

- 1  ► “Settings” ► “Display” ► “Automatic display” ► “ON”
 - To deactivate the automatic display function
 - “OFF”

Specifying phone number to display automatically

- 1 **Phonebook detail screen (p.111)**  (FUNC) ► “Automatic display”

A star (★) appears next to “Automatic display”.

 - **If multiple phone numbers are stored in the same entry**
 - Use  to highlight phone number to display automatically
 - **To cancel the automatic display setting**
 - Repeat Step 1
 - The setting is cancelled and a star “★” disappears.

NOTE

- ◆ Press , ,  or  while the automatic display phone number is shown to return to the standby screen.
- ◆ The setting for this function is disabled in the following situations:
 - Secret data only mode is set
 - You fold the FOMA terminal during character entry or operation and reopen the terminal
 - Restrict dialing is not set for a phone number with automatic display set, but set for another phone number
- ◆ You cannot make a call to multiple members at one time, when you make a PushTalk call while the phone number set in automatic display appears.

<Data Security Service>

Saving (Restoring/Updating) Phonebook Data at the Data Security Center

This service enables you to keep the data stored in your FOMA terminal (e.g. phonebook entries, images, mails) at the DoCoMo Data Security Center.

- To use this service, you need to subscribe to “Data Security Service”.
- If you have not subscribed to Data Security Service, a message appears indicating that you have not subscribed to the service. You can access the Data Security Service site from the message screen to subscribe to the service.
Data Security Service → p.175
- When  appears, the Data Security Service operations are not available.
- The packet communication charges apply to data update performed during Data Security Service operations. The charges vary depending on the amount of updated data.
- If a videophone or PushTalk call arrives during a Data Security Service operation, the operation is interrupted. After the call ends, the data backup resumes from where it was interrupted.
- If the memory allotted to your FOMA terminal becomes full at the Data Security Center, data backup is interrupted. If this is the case, the data already backed up are saved.

● Data types supported by Data Security Service

Data		Item to be saved	Refer to
Phonebook	FOMA terminal phonebook	Name, Reading, Phone number, Mail address, Memo, Street address, Location information, Birthday, Image, Secret store, Group number, Group name, PushTalk phone number, PushTalk group name	p.122
Mail	i-mode mails, chat mails and SMS in Outbox/Inbox/Draft	Unread/Read, Message type, Sender, Receiver, Title, Receive/Send date, Message	p.267
Image	Images in Inbox, Camera, Decomail-picture, Decorate PI, Auto Decomail and user-created folders	Images in JPEG format (including progressive JPEG) or GIF format, title	p.334

* Phonebook entries or SMS that are stored in the FOMA card (UIM) cannot be saved at the Data Security Center. Also, the Data Security Center cannot keep the data stored in Secret folders or the microSD memory card.

● Saving phonebook entries at the Data Security Center

You can save entries stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook at the Data Security Center.

- If you already saved your phonebook to the Data Security Center and perform this procedure, it will be updated to the current FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook contents.

1 ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “Data Sec. Service” ▶ “Connect to DSC”

■ To specify whether to send images stored in phonebook entries

▶ “PH-book img. Sending” ▶ “ON” or “OFF”

The default setting is “OFF”. Select “ON” to save images stored in phonebook entries to the Data Security Center.

2 Enter your security code ▶ “YES”

The FOMA terminal connects to the Data Security Center to start updating phonebook data.

3 (Finish)

NOTE

- ◆ Note that a phonebook entry with an image whose size is more than 100K bytes cannot be saved or updated.

■ Restoring/Updating phonebook data

The phonebook data kept at the Data Security Center can be restored to a FOMA terminal via i-mode.

Furthermore, you can edit the phonebook data kept at the center from a PC and automatically update the edited data to the FOMA terminal.

For details on how to use this function, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

NOTE

- ◆ Phonebook data may not be updated if another function is activated during the update operation. In this case,  desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- ◆ When the phonebook data kept at the Data Security Center are restored to a FOMA terminal, the icons registered in a phone number or mail address may change to  or  depending on their types.

● Checking logs of communication with the Data Security Center

- Up to 30 communication logs can be recorded. If the maximum number of logs is exceeded, logs are overwritten starting with the oldest one.
- On the communication log detail screen, transmission results, dates, transmission details, data sizes, results of sending to the Data Security Center, reception results of the mobile phone and number of data files left in the Data Security Center appear.

1 ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “Data Sec. Service” ▶ “Sent/rec’d DataList”

The “Sent/rec’d DataList” screen appears.

2 Select a log item



Function menu ▶ p.122

NOTE

- ◆ The data size shown on the Sent/rec’d DataList detail screen is only a guide.

Function menu (Sent/rec’d DataList screen)

Delete this	Deletes the highlighted communication log.
Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox <input type="checkbox"/> ▶  (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple communication logs.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all communication logs.

● Tone/Display/Lighting Settings

■ Tone settings

Changing Ring Tones	Select ring tone	124
Setting Sound Effects for Ring Tones and Melodies.....	Sound effect	126
Vibrating a FOMA Terminal When a Call or Mail Arrives	Vibrator	127
Setting the Keypad Tone	Keypad sound	127
Setting the Notification Tone and Illumination for GPS Function		128
Setting the Confirmation Tone for Charging.....	Charge sound	129
Setting the Clock Alarm Tone	Clock Alarm Tone set	129
Having a FOMA Terminal Warn You Before a Call Drops Out	Quality alarm	129
Setting the Ring Time for Incoming Mails	Mail/Msg. ring time	130
Enabling Tones to Ring through the Earphone and Speaker	Earphone	130
Muting the FOMA Terminal's Tone.....	Manner mode	130
Customizing Manner Mode.....	Manner mode set	131

■ Display/Lighting settings

Changing the Display Settings.....	Display setting	133
Displaying Phonebook Images When You Receive Calls	Disp. phonebook image	136
Setting the Image Display Mode.....	Image display	137
Setting the Display and Keypad Lighting	Backlight	138
Changing the Display Color	Display design	139
Changing the Menu Display.....		139
Setting Kisekai Tool Package	Kisekai Tool setting	142
Setting the Neuropointer.....	Neuropointer	144
Specifying How the Incoming Call Lamp Flashes for Incoming Calls and Mails.....	Illumination	145
Specifying How the Incoming Call Lamp Flashes During a Call.....	Illumination in talk	145
Lighting Lamps When Using IC Card Function	IC card Illumination	145
Displaying the Call Time During a Call	Call time display	146
Changing the Font	Font	146
Setting the Clock Display.....	Clock display	146
Using Desktop Icons.....	Desktop icon	147
Using 3D Animation for the New Mail Desktop Icon Message	3D display setting	150
Selecting Icons to Show on the Standby Screen	Icons setting	151

Changing Ring Tones

Default setting	Phone: Pattern1 (Phone color: Jet black, Surf blue, Vermilion orange), Pattern2 (Phone color: Sparkle white) Videophone: Pattern3 (Phone color: Jet black, Surf blue, Vermilion orange), Pattern2 (Phone color: Sparkle white) PushTalk: Pattern4 (Phone color: Jet black, Surf blue, Vermilion orange), Pattern2 (Phone color: Sparkle white) Mail, Chat mail: Alarm 1 (Phone color: Jet black, Vermilion orange), Alarm 2 (Phone color: Surf blue), Pattern2 (Phone color: Sparkle white) MessageR, MessageF: Alarm 2 (Phone color: Jet black, Vermilion orange), Alarm 1 (Phone color: Surf blue), Pattern2 (Phone color: Sparkle white)
------------------------	--

Ring tones can be set for voice calls, videophone calls, PushTalk calls, mails, chat mails and MessageR/MessageF respectively. You can also set ring tones for particular phone numbers, mail addresses and phonebook groups respectively. → p.118

- In addition to the pre-installed ring tones and melodies, i-motion programs, melodies and Chaku-Uta-Full® downloaded from i-mode sites or websites can be set as ring tones.
- If you set i-motion programs including video and voice for a ring tone and the receiving screen respectively, the FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set for the ring tone.
- If you set a file other than i-motion including video and voice for a ring tone and set an i-motion including video and voice for the receiving screen, the FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set for the receiving screen.
- Some i-motion programs cannot be selected, e.g. if the size is VGA.
- Melody list → p.349

1 “Settings” ▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “Select ring tone” ▶ Select any item

Phone	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming voice calls and 64K data communication. (“Changing the Display Settings” → p.133)
Videophone	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming videophone calls. (“Changing the Display Settings” → p.133)
PushTalk	Sets a ring tone for incoming PushTalk calls.
Mail	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming i-mode mails, SMS and packet communication. (“Changing the Display Settings” → p.133)
Chat mail	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming chat mails. (“Changing the Display Settings” → p.133)
MessageR	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming MessageR. (“Changing the Display Settings” → p.133)
MessageF	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming MessageF. (“Changing the Display Settings” → p.133)

2 “Select ring tone” ▶ Select any item

Melody	Selects a pre-installed ring tone or melody from the “Pre-installed” folder, or a melody downloaded from an i-mode site or website from “Inbox” or a folder you have created.
i-motion	Selects an i-motion downloaded from a site or a movie (i-motion) shot using the built-in camera from “Inbox”, “Camera”, “Movable contents” or a folder you have created. Selects a pre-installed i-motion from the “Pre-installed” folder. Some i-motion programs have a FOMA terminal play video and voice when a call or mail arrives (Chaku-motion).
Music	Selects a Chaku-Uta-Full® downloaded to the FOMA terminal from “Inbox”, “Movable contents” or a folder you have created. Selects a pre-installed Chaku-Uta-Full® from the “Pre-installed” folder. If the Chaku-Uta-Full® has part settings that the provider offers for a ring tone, the following settings are available:
Fullsong ring tone	Sets the entire song as a ring tone.
Point ring tone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ If a folder that is not “Movable contents” is selected ▶ Use  to select a part to set as a ring tone and press  ■ If the “Movable contents” folder is selected ▶ Use  to select a part to set as a ring tone and press  ▶ “YES” ▶ Select a folder <p>The selected part is saved as an i-motion and set as a ring tone.</p>
Voice announce	Selects “Voice announce 1” or “Voice announce 2”.
Random melody	Selects a folder containing melodies. When a call or mail arrives, the FOMA terminal selects one of the melodies stored in the folder at random and plays it as a ring tone.
OFF	Plays no ring tone.

3 Select a ring tone or i-motion

A FOMA terminal plays the selected melody. Press , , , ,  or  to stop playing the melody. After setting a ring tone, set the receiving screen if necessary.

■ To check settings

▶  (Play)

Pre-installed ring tones and melodies

Display	3D sound compatible
Pattern1 - 4	-
Melody 1	C
Melody 2	C
Melody 3	C
Melody 4	C
Melody 5	C
Melody 6	C
Melody 7	C
Melody 8	C
Melody 9	C
Melody 10	C
Alarm 1	C
Alarm 2	C
Alarm 3	C
Alarm 4	C
Alarm 5	C
Alarm 6	C
Alarm 7	C
Alarm 8	C

Recording patent No.: T-0690053 

Pre-installed Chaku-motion

“エレクトロカルスピーカー” is stored in the “Pre-installed” folder in “i-motion”.

Pre-installed Chaku-Uta-Full®

“Blue Paradise” is stored in the “Pre-installed” folder in “Music”.

NOTE

- ◆ An i-motion with video only or with ticker cannot be set as a ring tone.
- ◆ A voice-only i-motion (without video, e.g. a singer's voice) can be set as a ring tone for PushTalk.
- ◆ Some i-motion programs cannot be set.
- ◆ If you copy a melody available for a ring tone to the microSD memory card, the copied melody can no longer be set as a ring tone (except as copied it back to a FOMA terminal).
- ◆ Videos or i-motion programs available for Chaku-motion or a receiving image cannot be set if:
 - They are transferred to a PC or another FOMA terminal via Infrared data exchange, iC communication or the DoCoMo keitai datalink and then returned to your FOMA terminal.
 - They are copied from the microSD memory card to a FOMA terminal (including round operation: a FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card first, then getting back to the terminal).
- ◆ When an i-motion in the “Movable contents” folder is selected, the i-motion is moved to the “Inbox” folder in “i-motion” and set as a ring tone.
- ◆ When an Chaku-Uta-Full® in the “Movable contents” folder is selected and “Fullsong ring tone” is selected, the Chaku-Uta-Full® is moved to the “Inbox” folder in “Music” and set as a ring tone. If “Point ring tone” is selected, the selected part is saved as an i-motion, saved in the “i-motion” folder and then set as a ring tone.
- ◆ If “Point ring tone” is used to set a Chaku-Uta-Full® stored on a FOMA terminal (Phone) as a ring tone, the selected part is set as a ring tone instead of being clipped as an i-motion.
- ◆ The volume level applied to the playback during ring tone selection is the one set in “Ring volume”. If “Silent” is set to “Ring volume”, tones are not played.
- ◆ A melody may be restricted so that only a designated part of the melody will be played when it is set as a ring tone, etc. → p.349
- ◆ The “Ring tone” settings in “Melody” under Data box affect the settings of this function. → p.350
- ◆ The “Select ring tone” settings in “i-motion” under Data box affect the settings of this function. → p.340
- ◆ The “Select ring tone” settings in “Music” under Data box affect the settings of this function. → pp.384, 386

- ◆ Depending on the precedence setting or combination of a ring tone and receiving screen, either the ring tone or the receiving screen may revert to the one set at the time of purchase.
- ◆ The ring tone for voice calls with the caller ID hidden can be set in the “Call setting w/o ID” menu. The ring tone for videophone calls with the caller ID hidden is set according to the “Videophone” setting in this function.
- ◆ When an i-motion is set as the mail ring tone, the packet communication ring tone is set to the default in “Mail”. The special receiving screen appears during packet communication regardless of the receiving screen settings.
- ◆ Even if you have set a Chaku-Uta-Full® including the jacket image, the image does not appear when a call or mail arrives.

<Ring tone priority sequence>

- ◆ Priority is assigned as follows for the ring tone operation when voice call/videophone call settings are duplicated:

- ① Ring tone for Multi Number (Additional Number 1 and 2) → p.424
 - ② Ring tone for Discern connect → p.118
 - ③ Ring tone for Discern group → p.118
 - ④ Ring tone for Select ring tone/Kisekae Tool setting (videophone call) → pp.124, 142
 - ⑤ Ring tone for Call setting w/o ID → p.173
 - ⑥ Ring tone for Select ring tone/Kisekae Tool setting (except videophone call) → pp.124, 142
- Discern connect or Discern group priority sequence is as follows:

- ① i-motion for Ring tone
- ② i-motion for Image
- ③ i-motion (without video, such as singer's voice) or melody for Ring tone

Priority sequence for ring tone when mail settings are duplicated → pp.251, 280

What is 3D sound?

The 3D sound function uses the stereo speaker (or stereo earphone set) to produce 3 dimensional and resonating sounds. This function allows you to enjoy i-appli-based games and melody playback with richer and more realistic sounds.

How to enjoy 3D sound

- To enjoy 3D sound to the fullest, positioning a FOMA terminal in front of you and holding it approximately 20 to 30 cm away from you will produce the best results.
- If you listen at an off-center position or you are too close or too far away from a FOMA terminal, the effect may be diminished.
- The 3D effect differs depending upon the individual. If 3D sound bothers you, set “Surround”, “3Dsound” and “SRS_WOW” (p.126) all to “OFF”.



<Sound effect>

MENU64

Setting Sound Effects for Ring Tones and Melodies

Default setting

Surround: OFF 3Dsound: ON SRS_WOW: OFF

Use this function to get a richer fuller sound when a FOMA terminal plays melodies, ring tones for voice, videophone and PushTalk calls, sound effects and i-motion sound.

- 1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “Sound effect” ▶ Set “ON” or “OFF” for the following

Surround	Sets natural 3-dimensional sound. The sound you are playing sounds like it is further away from the actual position of 2 speakers.
3Dsound	Plays 3 dimensional stereophonic sound from the stereo speakers.
SRS_WOW	“Adding sound effects to i-motion playback sound” → p.126

Adding sound effects to i-motion playback sound

When you play an i-motion with sound effects, the effects simultaneously enhance the sound played through the speaker and earphones. Sound played through the speaker is enhanced by effects that provide clearly defined voice and music audio, and stereo sound played through earphones is enhanced by effects that provide a natural-sounding 3D sound field and rich low tones as well as clearly defined voice and music audio.

- i-motion programs with sound effects can be identified by the icon shown on the movie list screen. → p.331

Vibrating a FOMA Terminal When a Call or Mail Arrives

Default setting
All OFF

You can set a FOMA terminal to use different vibration patterns for voice calls, videophone calls, PushTalk calls, mails, chat mails and MessageR/MessageF respectively.

- 1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “Vibrator” ▶ Select any item

Phone	Sets vibration for voice calls or 64K data communication.
Videophone	Sets vibration for videophone calls.
PushTalk	Sets vibration for PushTalk calls.
Mail	Sets vibration for i-mode mails, SMS and packet communication.
Chat mail	Sets vibration for chat mails.
MessageR	Sets vibration for MessageR.
MessageF	Sets vibration for MessageF.

2 Select a vibration pattern

Pattern 1	Vibrates in Pattern 1.
Pattern 2	Vibrates in Pattern 2.
Pattern 3	Vibrates in Pattern 3.
Melody linkage	Vibrates in the pattern specified for the melody set as the ring tone. However, if no vibration pattern is specified for the melody or an i-motion is set as the ring tone, Pattern 2 is used.
OFF	Does not vibrate.

A FOMA terminal vibrates in the highlighted pattern.

The following icons shown on the standby screen indicate for which function the FOMA terminal vibrates:

: Shows that vibration starts when a voice call, videophone call or PushTalk call arrives.

: Shows that vibration starts when a mail, chat mail, MessageR or MessageF arrives.

: Shows that both and are set.

NOTE

- ◆ To enable “Mail”, “Chat mail”, “MessageR” and “MessageF” in “Vibrator”, set the respective items in “Mail/Msg. ring time” to “ON”.
- ◆ When “Vibrator” is set to other than “OFF”, take care not to let the vibrating FOMA terminal get close to fire (e.g. space heater) or fall off a table, etc.
- ◆ When “Ring volume” is set to other than “Silent” and the vibrator is set, the FOMA terminal uses a ring tone and vibration to notify you of incoming calls or mails. When “Ring volume” is set to “Silent”, the FOMA terminal uses vibration only.
- ◆ The vibration level is always fixed regardless of the ring volume setting.
- ◆ When “Melody linkage” is set, the vibration pattern may not match the main theme.

<Vibrator priority sequence>

- ◆ Priority is assigned as follows for the vibrator when the incoming settings are duplicated:
 - ① Vibrator for Discern connect → p.118
 - ② Vibrator for Discern group → p.118
 - ③ Vibrator setting

Setting the Keypad Tone

Default setting
ON

- Setting this function to “OFF” also disables the following tones:
 - Warning tone
 - Tone emitted when you start adjusting the earpiece volume
 - Battery low warning tone
 - Alarm clock snooze release tone
- The keypad tone sounds at the level set in “Volume” during a call, and fixed at the same level while not on a call.
- The confirmation tone sounds regardless of this setting when:
 - You press the assist key or (MEMO/CHECK) with a FOMA terminal folded
 - You shoot a picture (shutter sound, Auto focus lock sound)
 - You start/finish memo playback (the sound emanates from the receiver)
 - You start/finish standby voice memo and voice announce recording (the sound emanates from the receiver)
- When setting the keypad tone in “Initial setting” (p.48), select “ON” or “OFF”.

1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Keypad sound” ▶ “ON”

- To mute the keypad sound
 - ▶ “OFF”

Setting the Notification Tone and Illumination for GPS Function

Set the notification tone for Position location, Location notification and request.

- If “Permit to send loc.” under “Request menu” (p.312) is set to ON and the Public mode (Driving mode) is set, location information is sent, while the notification tone, vibrator and illumination do not work.

● Setting the volume

Default setting
Level 4

1 (MENU) ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “GPS” ▶ “GPS settings”

The “GPS settings” screen appears.

2 “Tone/Vibrator” ▶ “Ring volume” ▶ Select an item to set ▶ Use  to adjust the volume ▶  (Set)



Default setting
Alarm 8

● Selecting the tone

1 GPS settings screen (p.128) ▶ “Tone/Vibrator” ▶ “Select ring tone” ▶ Select an item to set ▶ Select any item

Melody	▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a melody
OFF	Does not play a tone.

● Setting the vibrator

Default setting
Pattern 1

Select the vibration pattern.

1 GPS settings screen (p.128) ▶ “Tone/Vibrator” ▶ “Vibrator” ▶ Select an item to set ▶ Select any item

Pattern 1 to 3	Vibrates the FOMA terminal in the selected pattern.
Melody linkage	Vibrates the FOMA terminal in the pattern of the melody set as a ring tone.
OFF	Does not vibrate the FOMA terminal.

● Setting the ring time

Default setting	Position location: OFF Loc. notification: ON (5 seconds) Loc. request/permit: ON (5 seconds) Loc. request/check: ON (5 seconds)
-----------------	--

Set the ring time and whether to ring the tone.

1 GPS settings screen (p.128) ▶ “Tone/Vibrator” ▶ “Ring time” ▶ Select an item to set ▶ Select any item

ON	▶ Enter the ring time
OFF	Does not perform the notification operation (does not operate the tone or vibrator). Illumination works in the set color.

● Setting the illumination

Default setting
Color 5

Select the flash pattern of the incoming call lamp.

1 GPS settings screen (p.128) ▶ “Illumination” ▶ Select an item to set ▶ Select any item

Color 1 to 12	Flashes the lamp in the selected color.
Gradation	Lights the lamp in order from Color 1 to 12.
OFF	Does not flash the lamp.

NOTE

◆ “OFF” cannot be set for “Loc. request/permit” or “Loc. request/check”.

<Charge sound>

Setting the Confirmation Tone for Charging

Default setting
ON

This function allows you to set a FOMA terminal to emit a short double-beep (“bibip”) when charging starts and ends so that you do not leave the FOMA terminal charging indefinitely.

- The confirmation tone does not sound regardless of this setting when:
 - You are dialing
 - You are on a voice or PushTalk call
 - Public mode (Driving mode) is set
 - Voice announcement is being recorded
 - The FOMA terminal is turned off
 - A call arrives
 - Manner mode is set
 - Standby voice memo is being recorded
 - Data is sent or received
 - The screen is not standby

1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Charge sound” ▶ “ON” ■ To mute the charge sound ▶ “OFF”

<Clock Alarm Tone set>

Setting the Clock Alarm Tone

Default setting
Alarm Tone

This setting enables you to change the clock alarm tone set for Alarm clock, Schedule or To do list.

1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Clock” ▶ “Clock Alarm Tone set” ▶ Select any item

Melody	▶ Select a folder Selects a ring tone or melody. → p.124
i-motion	▶ Select a folder Selects an i-motion. → p.124
Music	▶ Select a folder Selects a music file. → p.124
Voice announce	Selects “Voice announce 1” or “Voice announce 2”. “Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones” → p.406
OFF	Does not sound the clock alarm.

<Quality alarm>

MENU75

Having a FOMA Terminal Warn You Before a Call Drops Out

Default setting
High tone

A FOMA terminal uses this function to sound an alarm tone during a voice or videophone call warning you that the signal quality is deteriorating and the call is likely to drop out.

- A call may drop out without an alarm if signal quality worsens very quickly.

1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Talk” ▶ “Quality alarm” ▶ “No tone”, “High tone” or “Low tone”

Setting the Ring Time for Incoming Mails

Default setting
All ON (ring time: 5 seconds)

Use this function to specify whether a FOMA terminal sounds a ring tone when you receive a mail, chat mail or a MessageR/MessageF. And if so, set the duration of the ring tone.

- 1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “Mail/Msg. ring time” ▶ Select any item

Mail	Sets the ring time for i-mode mails and SMS.
Chat mail	Sets the ring time for chat mails.
MessageR	Sets the ring time for MessageR.
MessageF	Sets the ring time for MessageF.

2 Specify whether to ring the tone

ON	▶ Enter the ring time (01-30 seconds) A FOMA terminal rings for the specified time.
OFF	A FOMA terminal does not ring.

NOTE

- ◆ When “OFF” is selected for “Mail”, “Chat mail”, “MessageR” or “MessageF”, “” appears on the standby screen.

Enabling Tones to Ring through the Earphone and Speaker

Default setting
Earphone(only)

Use this procedure to give a ring tone or alarm through the earphone and speaker when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected.

- 1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “External connection” ▶ “Earphone” ▶ “Earphone +Speaker”, “Earp.(Speaker in 20s)” or “Earphone(only)”

NOTE

- ◆ Even if “Earp.(Speaker in 20s)” or “Earphone(only)” is set for this function, tones still sound through the FOMA terminal’s speaker when no earphone/microphone is connected. Even when a earphone/microphone is connected, the shutter tone of the camera sounds through the speaker.
- ◆ When “Earp.(Speaker in 20s)” is set, you can hear sound through both the earphone and speaker in about 20 seconds after a ring tone or alarm is emitted. However, when the music player is running, the ring tone does not sound through the speaker even in 20 seconds and only sounds through the earphone.
- ◆ Do not wrap the cord of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch around a FOMA terminal. Doing so may lower the signal strength. Furthermore, bringing the cord of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch close to a FOMA terminal may generate noise.

Muting the FOMA Terminal’s Tone

When you want to avoid disturbing people around you, set this function with a single touch to stop your FOMA terminal emitting ring tones and keypad tones through the speaker.

- When Manner mode is set, the following tones are replaced by vibration:
 - Ring tone¹
 - Alarm clock, Schedule, To Do list and Notice designate calls alarm tones²
 - Missed call/new mail confirmation tones when a FOMA terminal is folded
- *1: A FOMA terminal vibrates in the pattern set in “Vibrator”. If “Vibrator” is set to “OFF”, a FOMA terminal vibrates in “Pattern 2”.
- *2: A FOMA terminal vibrates in the pattern set in “Phone” in “Vibrator”. If “Phone” in “Vibrator” is set to “OFF”, a FOMA terminal vibrates in “Pattern 2”.
- For the FOMA terminal operation mode when Manner mode is set, select “Manner mode”, “Super silent” or “Original” in “Manner mode set”. → p.131

1 On the standby screen or you are talking ▶

(1 second or longer)



Manner mode is set and “” appears.

During a call, a FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep (“bibip”) and a message notifying you that Manner mode is now set appears.

While in Manner mode, the icon indicating the specified “Manner mode set” setting appears together with “”.

: “Vibrator” works when a call arrives, etc.

: “Ring volume” is set to “Silent”.

: “Record message” is set to record messages. The number indicates how many messages are recorded.

: “Record VP message” is set to record videophone messages. The number indicates how many videophone messages are recorded.

■ To cancel Manner mode

Press **#** for 1 second or longer on the standby screen or while you are talking.

Manner mode is canceled and “” disappears from the screen.

During a call, a FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep (“bibip”) and a message notifying you that Manner mode is canceled appears.

NOTE

- ◆ Even while in Manner mode, a FOMA terminal emits the shutter sound or Auto focus lock sound when you take a picture with the built-in camera.

<Manner mode set> MENU20

Default setting
Manner mode

Customizing Manner Mode

This feature allows you to select FOMA terminal operations performed in Manner mode.

- The default settings of “Original” manner mode are:
 - Record msg.: OFF
 - Mail vol.: Silent
 - VM tone: ON
 - LVA tone: OFF
 - Vibrator: ON
 - Alarm vol.: Silent
 - Keypad sound: OFF
 - Phone vol.: Silent
 - i-coppli vol.: Silent
 - Mic sensitiv.: Up

1 ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “Manner mode set”

The “Manner mode set” screen appears.

2 Select any item



Manner mode	Mutes all tones emitted through the speaker and uses vibration to notify you of incoming calls, etc. However, the confirmation tone emitted through the earpiece speaker (tone emitted when (MEMO/CHECK) is pressed to play/erase a memo or voice memo) is not muted.
Super silent	Mutes all tones emitted through the speaker and confirmation tones emitted through the earpiece speaker and uses vibration to notify you of incoming calls, etc.
Original	Customizes the Manner mode settings. You can specify in advance which volume is set for alarm clock tones or how a FOMA terminal deals with incoming calls when Manner mode is set.

Original manner

1 Manner mode set screen (p.131) ▶ “Original” ▶ Select any item ▶ To finish the setting, press (Finish)

Record msg.	Sets whether to activate Record message.
Vibrator	Specifies whether to activate the vibrator.
Phone vol.	▶ Use to adjust the volume Sets the ring tone volume for voice/videophone calls, PushTalk calls and 64K data communication.
Mail vol.	▶ Use to adjust the volume Sets the ring tone volume for mails, chat mails, packet communication and MessageR/MessageF.
Alarm vol.	▶ Use to adjust the volume Sets the alarm tone volume for Alarm clock.

i-αppli vol.	▶ Use  to adjust the volume Sets the i-αppli volume. "Step" is not available.
VM tone	Sets whether to activate confirmation tones for "Record message" and "Voice memo".
Keypad sound	Sets whether to activate the keypad tone.
Mic sensitiv.	Selects "Normal" or "Up" for the microphone sensitivity during a call.
LVA tone	Sets whether to activate the low-voltage alarm.

● When Manner mode is set

The table below lists the settings for each type of Manner mode:

Item	Manner mode	Super silent	Original (the Original manner mode settings are shown)
Record Message activation	OFF		"Record msg." setting
Vibrator	ON		"Vibrator" setting
Ring tone volume for voice/videophone calls, PushTalk calls and 64K data communication	Silent		"Phone vol." setting
Ring tone volume for mails, chat mails, packet communication and MessageR/MessageF	Silent		"Mail vol." setting
Alarm volume for Alarm clock (including the snooze function)	Silent		"Alarm vol." setting
i-αppli volume	Silent		"i-αppli vol." setting
Alarm volume for Schedule/To Do list/Notice designate calls	Silent		"Phone vol." setting
Confirmation, activation and completion tones for Record message, Voice memos, etc.	ON	OFF	"VM tone" setting
Keypad sound	OFF		"Keypad sound" setting
Microphone sensitivity during a call ¹	Up		"Mic sensitiv." setting
Holding tone	Silent		"Phone vol." setting Off when "Silent" is set. Sounds at "Level 1" when an option other than "Silent" is set.
On hold tone	Silent		"Phone vol." setting ²
Low-voltage alarm	OFF		"LVA tone" setting Even when "ON" is set, the low-voltage alarm sounds at "Level 1" if "Phone vol." is set to "Silent" for this function.
Reading out received mails	"Phone" setting under "Ring volume" (p.76) ³		
Missed call/new mail confirmation tones when a FOMA terminal is folded	Silent		"Phone vol." setting ²
ToruCa acquisition tone	Silent		"Phone vol." setting ⁴
Confirmation tone/alarm tone for GPS function	Silent		All off regardless of the "Original" setting

*1 : If the microphone sensitivity during a call is set to "Up", the volume of voice heard by the other party is increased even when you speak quietly during a call. However, the "Normal" microphone sensitivity is used for shooting movies in "Camera" mode.

*2 : Sounds at the "Level 2" volume when "Step" is set.

*3 : Reads out at the "Level 2" volume when "Silent" or "Step" is set. However, even if "Read out received mail" in "Read out setting" is set to "ON", mails are not read. Select "Read out message" from the function menu on the received mail detail screen to perform reading of mails.

*4 : Sounds at the "Level 4" volume when "Step" is set.

● When an earphone is connected

The table below lists the settings applied when an earphone is connected.

Item	Manner mode	Super silent	Original (the Original manner mode settings are shown)
Reading out received mails and contents of To Do list/Schedule	"Phone" setting under "Ring volume" (p.76) [*]		
Voice clock (during standby or snooze) and missed call/new mail confirmation tones when a FOMA terminal is folded	"Phone" setting under "Ring volume" (p.76) [*]		"Phone vol." setting Sounds at the "Level 2" volume when "Step" is set.
Volume of the music player	Music player volume setting (p.385)		

* : Reads out at the "Level 2" volume when "Silent" or "Step" is set.

NOTE

- ◆ Regardless of the “Record message” (p.81) setting, Record message is activated when “Record msg.” in “Original” is set to “ON” and Manner mode is set.
- ◆ If the Record message set in “Original” starts while in Manner mode, message recording starts after the ring time set in “ON” in “Record message” (p.81) elapses. (When “OFF” is set, recording starts in 13 seconds.)
- ◆ If a FOMA terminal is set to vibrate to notify you of calls or alarms when Manner mode is set, take care not to let the vibrating FOMA terminal get close to fire (e.g. space heater) or fall off a table, etc.

<Display setting>

MENU56

Changing the Display Settings

Default setting	Stand-by display: Reflection (Phone color: Jet black), Blue fragrance (Phone color: Surf blue), Disney (Phone color: Sparkle white), Dramatic City (Phone color: Vermilion orange) Wake-up display: Wavelet (Phone color: Jet black, Surf blue, Vermilion orange), Disney (Phone color: Sparkle white) Dialing, Calling, V.phone Dialing, V.phone Calling, Mail sending, Mail receiving, Check new messages: Black (Phone color: Jet black, Vermilion orange), White (Phone color: Surf blue), Disney (Phone color: Sparkle white)
------------------------	--

Use this procedure to show your favorite images such as the photographed or downloaded on a screen (e.g. standby, dialing or receiving).

- If you set i-motion programs including video and voice for a ring tone and the receiving screen respectively, the FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set for the ring tone.
- If you set a file other than i-motion including video and voice for a ring tone and set an i-motion including video and voice for the receiving screen, the FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set for the receiving screen.
- An i-motion with voice only (e.g. singer’s voice) cannot be set for the receiving screen.
- Some i-motion programs cannot be selected, e.g. if the size is VGA.

1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Display” ▶ “Display setting”

The “Display setting” screen appears.

If a file other than i-motion is set for the receiving screen, set a ring tone as required.



2 Select any item

Stand-by display	“Changing the standby screen image” → p.135		
Wake-up display	Sets a message or image shown when a FOMA terminal is turned on.		
	OFF	Does not show an image, etc.	
	Message	▶ Enter a message A message can contain up to 50 double-byte or 100 single-byte characters.	
	My picture	Sets an image. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option.	
		Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
Camera		Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.	
Pre-installed		Sets a pre-installed image.	
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.	
Dialing	Sets the image shown when you make a voice call. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option.		
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.	
	Camera	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.	
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.	
Calling	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming voice calls.		
	Select ring tone	“Changing Ring Tones” → p.124	
	Select calling disp.	“Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls or mails” → p.134	

V.phone Dialing	Sets a screen shown when you make a videophone call. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.
V.phone Calling	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming videophone calls.	
	Select ring tone	"Changing Ring Tones" → p.124
	Select calling disp.	"Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls or mails" → p.134
Mail sending	Sets the image shown when you send an i-mode mail or SMS. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.
Mail receiving	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming i-mode mails and SMS.	
	Select ring tone	"Changing Ring Tones" → p.124
	Select receiving disp.	"Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls or mails" → p.134
Check new messages	Sets the image shown when you check new messages. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.

● Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls or mails

<Example: To set the receiving screen for incoming calls>

1 Display setting screen (p.133) ▶ "Calling" ▶ "Select calling disp." ▶ Select any item

My picture	Sets an image. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.
i-motion*	Sets an i-motion. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option. Some i-motion programs cannot be set.	
	Inbox	Sets an i-motion downloaded from an i-mode site or website or a movie recorded using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed i-motion.
	Movable contents	Sets an i-motion saved as movable contents. When a file in the "Movable contents" folder is selected, the selected contents are moved to Inbox in a FOMA terminal and set.

* : "i-motion" does not appear on the mail receiving screen.

■ To check settings

▶ (Play)

NOTE

◆ Flash movies can be set in "Select calling disp." or "Select receiving disp.", but the tone set in "Select ring tone" sounds as the ring tone.

- ◆ Movies or i-motion programs available for Chaku-motion or a receiving image cannot be set if:
 - They are transferred to a PC or another FOMA terminal via Infrared data exchange, iC communication or the DoCoMo keitai datalink and then returned to your FOMA terminal.
 - They are copied from the microSD memory card to a FOMA terminal (including round operation: a FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card first, then getting back to the terminal).
- ◆ When the receiving image settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned. → p.136
- ◆ You cannot set images for the dialing and receiving screens for PushTalk calls.

<Priority sequence for screen>

- ◆ Priority is assigned as follows when screen settings are duplicated:
 - ① Automatic display
 - ② i-αappli stand-by display
 - ③ Display setting/Kisekae Tool setting

Changing the standby screen image

- The "Pre-installed" folder contains pre-installed standby screens and screens for Wake-up display. Pre-installed standby screens and screens for Wake-up display → p.461

1 Display setting screen (p.133) ▶ "Stand-by display" ▶ Select any item

OFF	Does not show an image, etc.		
Calendar	Sets a calendar.		
	Background	Sets a background image for the calendar. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.	
		Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
		Camera	Also sets how to display the image.
		Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image. Also sets how to display the image.
No background	Shows a calendar only.		
My picture	Sets an image. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.		
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera. Also sets how to display the image.	
	Camera		
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image. Also sets how to display the image.	
	Original animation	Sets an original animation. Also sets how to display the image.	
i-motion	Sets an i-motion. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option. Some i-motion programs cannot be set.		
	Inbox	Sets an i-motion downloaded from an i-mode site or website or a movie recorded using the built-in camera.	
	Camera		
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed i-motion.	
	Movable contents	Sets an i-motion saved as movable contents. When a file in the "Movable contents" folder is selected, the selected contents are moved to Inbox in a FOMA terminal and set.	
i-αappli display	Sets the i-αappli standby screen. When the i-αappli standby screen is set, a star (★) appears. "Setting the i-αappli Standby Screen" → p.294		
Random display	Specify a folder. Opening the FOMA terminal shows an image in the folder at random. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option. Some images cannot be displayed.		
	Inbox	Shows an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.	
	Camera	Also sets how to display the image.	
	Pre-installed	Shows a pre-installed image. Also sets how to display the image.	

■ To be displayed a screen to set how to display

You can select Centering disp. (centering an image on the screen), Fit in disp. (enlarging or reducing an image to fit the height or width into the screen size), Arrange disp. (arranging images from the upper left) or Full-screen disp. (enlarging, reducing or clipping an image to fit it into the screen size).

■ When the calendar is set for the standby screen

The calendar appears on the standby screen. You can quickly and easily check the schedule of the previous or following month or edit schedule events.

Saturdays are colored in blue, holidays are in red and anniversaries are in pink.

■ To check adjacent months on the calendar

Pressing  on the standby screen or sliding your finger over  to place the pointer over calendar selects the calendar. (If pressing  selects a desktop icon other than calendar, use  to select the calendar.) Press  again. Pressing  opens the previous month or  to opens the next month.

■ To activate the schedule function

Press  or  to show the previous month or next month and press  to store the schedule events for the month shown by the schedule function.

NOTE

- ◆ If a movie or i-motion is set for the standby screen, opening a FOMA terminal plays the movie or i-motion. Press , , , , , , the assist key or  to stop the playback. While in Manner mode, only the image appears (without sound). When playback ends, the first frame of the movie or i-motion appears on the standby screen.
- ◆ If a Flash movie or animation GIF image is set for the standby screen, perform any of the following to play the movie or image (without the melody):
 - Open the FOMA terminal. • Press  on the standby screen. • Return to the standby screen.
- ◆ When the playback of the Flash movie set as the standby screen ends, the last frame appears on the standby screen. Pressing  or  during the Flash movie playback ends the playback, and the image shown at the point where the playback ends appears on the standby screen.
- ◆ When a playback of an animation GIF image ends, the first frame appears on the standby screen. Pressing  or  during the animation playback ends the playback, and the first frame of the animation appears on the standby screen.
- ◆ If the specified folder is deleted after setting "Random display" or all the images in a folder are deleted or moved, the settings are released and the image on the standby screen is restored the default setting. If there is no image to be set for the standby screen even though there are some images in the folder, it is also restored the default setting.
- ◆ Deleting the image, movie or i-motion that is set for the standby screen restores the default standby screen.

<Disp. phonebook image>

Displaying Phonebook Images When You Receive Calls

Default setting
ON

Use this procedure to specify whether to show the image when you receive a voice or videophone call from a phone number stored in the phonebook with an image.

1  ▶ "Settings" ▶ "Incoming call" ▶ "Disp. PH-book image" ▶ "ON"

■ To hide images stored in the phonebook

▶ "OFF"

NOTE

- ◆ Depending on the precedence setting or combination of a ring tone and receiving screen, either the ring tone or the receiving screen may revert to the one set at the time of purchase.
- ◆ If a caller does not show the caller ID, the image does not appear.
- ◆ Regardless of this setting, images stored in the phonebook as secret data do not appear.

<Priority sequence for the image displayed when a call or mail is received>

- ◆ Priority is assigned as follows for the image display when voice call/videophone call settings are duplicated:

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| ① Image for Discern connect → p.118 | ② Image for Discern group → p.118 |
| ③ Image for Add to phonebook → p.106 | ④ i-motion for Select ring tone → p.124 |

- ⑤ Display setting/Kisekae Tool setting → pp.133, 142

Discern connect or Discern group priority sequence is as follows:

- | | |
|--------------------------|--|
| ① i-motion for Ring tone | ② i-motion (including ones only with video), image for Image |
|--------------------------|--|

Setting the Image Display Mode

Default setting	Setting: ON Stand-by: OFF Clock type: Digital2 (Phone color: Jet black), Digital1 (Phone color: Surf blue), Digital4 (Phone color: Sparkle white), Digital3 (Phone color: Vermillion orange), Pict: ON Image set: Pre-installed (Black (Phone color: Jet black, Vermillion orange), Blue (Phone color: Surf blue), Disney (Phone color: Sparkle white)) Called: ON (Image+Missed call) Mail: OFF Connection: OFF Background i-appli: OFF
------------------------	---

You can set the message display mode, background, clock, etc. for the image display.

● "Guide to Image Display (Rear Panel Display)" → p.32

- 1** (MENU) ▶ "Settings" ▶ "Display" ▶ "Image display" ▶ "ON"
■ To deactivate the image display
▶ "OFF"

- 2** Select any item ▶ (Finish)

Stand-by	Specifies whether to fix the image display mode. Setting "ON" does not flash the display light for the image display. A message for incoming calls or mails or an animation such as an alarm does not appear.	
Clock type	Selects the clock type from "Digital1 to 4" or "OFF" and turns on/off the Pict (icon → p.30).	
Image set	Sets whether to show the background image. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	OFF	Does not show an image, etc.
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
	Camera	Sets a pre-installed image.
Called	Sets whether to show the phone number of an incoming call.	
	ON	Selects the display mode from "Image + Missed call", "Image" and "Missed call".
	OFF	Does not show the phone number or image.
Mail	Sets whether to show the contents of a mail. When "ON" is set, the sender, date and time, and subject are shown when you receive a mail.	
Connection	Sets whether to show conditions such as dialing a voice, videophone or PushTalk call, talking, Infrared data exchange/iC communication in progress or IC card authentication in progress using an image or animation.	
	ON	Shows conditions and turns the display light on.
	OFF	Does not show conditions and turn the display light on.
Background i-appli	Sets background i-appli to ON or OFF.	

NOTE

- ◆ When "OFF" is set for the image display, nothing appears on the image display except when you shoot with the built-in camera or use some functions.
- ◆ When "Digital1 to 3" is set for "Clock type", a digital clock that fits the display size is shown on the image display. Even if Pict is set to ON, a signal strength level and icons (e.g. manner mode) do not appear except when you have a missed call or new mail or the i-channel information ticker appears.
- ◆ When you receive a voice or videophone call with a Chaku-moji message, the message appears on the image display following the receiving indication (such as caller's phone number and image). (The Chaku-moji message and receiving indication appear alternately.) If "Called" is set to "OFF", a Chaku-moji message does not appear on the image display regardless of the "Chaku-moji" settings.
- ◆ Even if Mail is set to "ON", the image display does not show the sender names, dates and times and subjects of received mails that are automatically filtered to the folders with mail security set.
- ◆ When an i-mode mail, chat mail or SMS is received, an icon expressing the emotion that matches the contents of the received mail appears. Even if "3D display setting" is set to "ON", 3D animation is not used for the emotion-expressing mail icon shown on the image display. → p.251
You can also set your FOMA terminal to pop up an icon when receiving a mail including the specified keyword. → p.274
- ◆ When a FOMA terminal receives multiple mails at the same time, the mail address, sender name, date and time and subject of the latest mail appear. → p.32

Setting the Display and Keypad Lighting

Default setting

Lighting: ON (lighting)+Saver (Light time: 3 minutes) Charging: Standard Area: LCD+Keys
Brightness: Level 2

1 ► “Settings” ► “Display” ► “Backlight” ► Select any item

Lighting	Specifies the normal display light operation. If “OFF” is set, “” appears on the standby screen.		
	ON	Specifies whether to set power saver mode.	
		ON	► Enter the waiting time (01 to 20 minutes) Once the specified waiting time has elapsed, the standby screen and image display turn off (power saver mode). Sets the waiting time before a FOMA terminal switches to power saver mode.
		OFF	Disables power saver mode.
	OFF	Specifies whether to set power saver mode.	
		ON	► Enter the waiting time (01 to 20 minutes) Once the specified waiting time has elapsed, the standby screen and image display turn off (power saver mode). Sets the waiting time before a FOMA terminal switches to power saver mode.
OFF		Disables power saver mode.	
Charging	Specifies the display light operations during charging.		
	Standard	The display light lights according to the “ON” setting in “Lighting”.	
	All time ON	The display light stays on while charging.	
Area	Selects the display light area.		
	LCD+Keys	Sets the LCD panel and keypad for the area.	
	LCD	Sets only the LCD panel for the area.	
Brightness	Selects the brightness from “Level 3 to 1”.		

NOTE

- ◆ Pressing **[5]** for 1 second or longer also turns the display light on or off.
- ◆ When “Lighting” is set to “ON”, the display light stays on while a call is being received, and lights for roughly 15 seconds when a FOMA terminal is turned on, one of the keys is pressed or the FOMA terminal is opened. The display light also stays on while you are using the camera or playing a movie or i-motion. If you select “OFF”, the display light does not turn on. However, the display light stays on during movie shooting regardless of the “Lighting” setting.
- ◆ If “Charging” is set to “All time ON”, the displays and dial keys are lit all the time following the “Area” setting (“LCD+Keys” or “LCD”). If “Charging” is set to “Standard”, the display light operates following the “Lighting” setting.
- ◆ Even if “Charging” is set to “All time ON” while charging, the brightness of the display light is set to “Level 1” in order to increase the charging efficiency unless any keys are pressed for roughly 15 seconds.
- ◆ The display light of the image display lights for about 15 seconds regardless of the “Charging” setting when charging starts, and then stays on at “Level 1”.
- ◆ The time for lighting the message of a mail or MessageR/MessageF varies depending on the length of the message.
- ◆ If a FOMA terminal switches to power saver mode while opened, and flash at roughly 5 seconds intervals. Pressing any keys releases power saver mode.
- ◆ During a voice call, the display light works according to the power saver mode setting in “Lighting”. Pressing any keys releases power saver mode.
- ◆ Even if “Lighting” is set to “OFF”, the display light of the image display lights up while it shows communication such as voice/videophone call, PushTalk, mail, message, Infrared data exchange or iC communication.

Changing the Display Color

Default setting	Color pattern: Pattern 5 (Phone color: Jet black, Vermilion orange), Pattern 1 (Phone color: Surf blue, Sparkle white) Background: OFF Battery icon and antenna icon in Icon pattern: Standard (Phone color: Jet black, Surf blue, Vermilion orange), Disney (Phone color: Sparkle white) Soft key: Pattern 1
------------------------	--

Use this procedure to change the designs of the text, background, upper and lower sections of the display and software keys.

- 1** (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Display” ▶ “Display design” ▶ Select any item

Color pattern	Selects a color pattern from “Pattern 1” to “Pattern 5”. The highlighted pattern image appears on the display.
Background	Selects a background pattern (a 25-dot background pattern for the upper and lower sections of the display) among “OFF” (not displayed) and “Pattern 1 to 8”. The highlighted pattern image appears on the display.
Icon pattern	Selects the types of the battery level icon and signal strength level icon that are shown on the icon display area respectively from “Standard”, “DRAGON QUEST” and “Disney”.
Soft key	Selects a background pattern for the software keys from “Pattern 1 to 3”. The highlighted pattern image appears on the display.

NOTE

- ◆ The change of this function does not affect the colors of icons (except for the battery level and signal strength) and images. Furthermore, there are some screens or functions that are not affected by the change of this function, such as i-mode sites.

Changing the Menu Display

Setting the menu display mode <Menu display set>

Default setting	Menu display: List Theme: Mirror (Phone color: Jet black), Blue fragrance (Phone color: Surf blue), Disney (Phone color: Sparkle white), Dramatic City (Phone color: Vermilion orange) Memory focus: ON
------------------------	---

This function enables you to set the display mode of the branch menus (functions) under “Settings”, change the main menu design and set the Last one function for the main menu.

- Original menus are shown as a list, regardless of the settings of this function.

■ Menu display



“List”



“Detail”

Theme



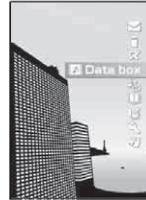
"Mirror"



"Blue fragrance"



"Airport"



"Dramatic City"



"Light Menu"



"Disney"



"Wavelet"

- *1 : Selecting  shows up to 5 last-selected items.
 *2 : The background image changes as time elapses.

- 1  "Settings" ▶ "Display" ▶ "Menu display set"
 The "Menu display set" screen appears.
- 2 Select any item



Menu display	Selects the display mode for branch menus from "List" and "Detail".	
Theme	Sets the background and icons used on the main menu screen.	
	Mirror	Sets Mirror.
	Blue fragrance	Sets Blue fragrance.
	Airport	Sets Airport.
	Dramatic City	Sets Dramatic City.
	Light Menu	Sets Light Menu.
	Disney	Sets Disney.
	Wavelet	Sets Wavelet.
	Original theme	"Changing the main menu screen design" → p.141
Memory focus	Sets whether to highlight the icon you selected the last time when opening the main menu (Last one function).	

Changing the main menu screen design

Use this procedure to change the icons and background image on the main menu screen.

1 Menu display set screen (p.140) ▶ “Theme” ▶ “Original theme”

The “Original theme” screen appears.

Select an image from Inbox, Camera, Pre-installed or a folder you created in My picture.

2 Select any item



Original theme
Function menu ▶ p.141

Mail	Sets a Mail icon image.
i-mode	Sets an i-mode icon image.
i-appli	Sets an i-appli icon image.
Settings	Sets a Settings icon image.
Data box	Sets a Data box icon image.
LifeKit	Sets a LifeKit icon image.
Network service	Sets a Network service icon image.
Phonebook	Sets a Phonebook icon image.
Own data	Sets an Own data icon image.
Background image	Sets a background image or color of the “Multitask” group frame.

■ To set the Multitask group frame

▶ Highlight “Background image” ▶ (Play) ▶ (Frame) ▶ Use (Color) to select a color from the color palette

While selecting colors, press (Change) to switch the color palette between 16 colors and 256 colors.

NOTE

- ◆ Pressing (Play) on the selection screen allows you to check the image of the selected item.
- ◆ If at least one image subject to FOMA card operational restriction function (p.40) is set as a menu icon or background image and the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced or removed, the original theme reverts to default.
- ◆ You can set a JPEG image whose size is up to 100K bytes with 690 dots wide × 690 dots high, GIF image that is up to 690 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 690 dots high or animation GIF image. If an image is larger than the display area (icon: 64 dots wide × 63 dots high, background: 240 dots wide × 345 dots high), the size is reduced without changing the aspect ratio. If an image is smaller than the display area, it is centered.
- ◆ An animation GIF image set as a menu icon will run only once, regardless of the specified number of repetitions. Also, an animation GIF image set as the background image will not run as an animation.

Function menu (Original theme screen)

Reset	Restores the selected icon or background image to the default setting.
All reset	Restores all the main menu icons and background images to the default settings.

Default setting | My Profile, Check new messages, Ring volume, Vibrator, Alarm clock, Change security code

Adding often-used functions to the original menu allows you to easily access those functions.

- You can add up to 10 original menu entries.
- The functions that can be added to the original menu are the main settings for “Mail”, “i-mode” and “i-αppli”, and the medium and branch settings (functions) for “Settings”, “Data box”, “LifeKit”, “Network service”, “Phonebook” and “Own data”.
- You cannot add the same function twice.

1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Display” ▶ “Original menu”

The “Original menu” screen appears.

2 Highlight “<Not recorded>” and press (Edit) ▶ Use (F5) to select a menu item to add

You can only select main menu items from “Mail/i-mode/i-αppli”.

- To change an already stored function
 - ▶ Highlight a stored item



Original menu
Function menu▶p.142

NOTE

- ◆ Pressing (MENU) (MENU) also opens the original menu and you can add or sort items.

Function menu (Original menu screen)

Add to org. menu	Adds an item to the original menu.
Sort	▶ Use (F5) to select a position and press (F6) Rearrange the Original menu items.
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons” → p.147
Reset org. menu	Restores the original menu to default.
Release	Removes the selected function from the original menu.
Release all	Removes all functions from the original menu.

<Kisekai Tool setting>

Setting Kisekai Tool Package

Setting a package downloaded from a site enables you to change settings such as ring tones, the standby screen and main menu of a FOMA terminal at a time.

- Downloading from sites → p.221
- The following settings can be performed at a time:
 - “Display setting” (p.133)
 - “Select ring tone” (p.124)
 - “Select ring tone*” in “Tone/Vibrator” in “GPS settings” (p.128)
 - “Clock Alarm Tone set” (p.129)
 - “Theme” in “Menu display set” (p.139)
 - “Clock display” (p.146)
 - “Clock type” and “Image set*” in “Image display” (p.137)
 - “Display design” (p.139)
 - “Pointer icon setting” in “Neuropointer” (p.144)

* : Only available for data with “”.

Setting a package

- The data that matches the phone color and “ドラゴンクエスト” (DRAGON QUEST) are stored at the time of purchase. “ドラゴンクエスト” (DRAGON QUEST) is stored in the “Kisekai Tool” folder in Data box. Guide to the package list → p.351
- If storing the current settings in “お気に入り” (My favorite) before setting a package, you can restore the stored settings later. → p.143

1 ▶“Settings”▶“Kisekai Tool setting”

The “Kisekai Tool set list” screen appears.

2 Select an item▶“YES”

No item is set in “お気に入り” at the time of purchase.

■ To check settings

- ▶ Highlight an item  (Detail)▶ Highlight an item  (Play)

Data that matches the phone color

Package data in the “Kisekai Tool” folder



Function menu▶p.143

NOTE

- ◆ Items to be changed vary depending on the package.
- ◆ The following items are automatically shown on screens if highlighted while settings are checked:
 - “Sub clock type” appears on the image display.
 - “Color pattern”, “Background” and “Soft key” appear as the background on the shown screen.
- ◆ When “i-appli display” is set, the i-appli standby screen have precedence in the standby screen settings.
- ◆ When “Discern connect” or “Discern group” is set or an image is set in a phonebook entry, those settings have precedence over this function.
- ◆ If a package is set and then the items set in the package are respectively set using other functions, the latter settings have precedence.
- ◆ Depending on the Flash movie, you may not be able to check the settings even in the items set.

Function menu (Kisekai Tool set list screen)

Edit title	Edits a title.
Reset Setting info	Deletes the “お気に入り” settings.

Bookmarking the current settings

1 Kisekai Tool set list screen (p.143)▶ Highlight “お気に入り”▶ (Detail)

The items that are currently registered in “お気に入り” appear. “No data” appears for unregistered items.

2 (FUNC)▶ “Take Setting info”▶ “YES”



Function menu▶p.144

● Changing “お気に入り” settings

You can change the items registered in “お気に入り” on the contents checking screen.

1 Contents checking screen (p.143)▶ Select an item▶ Change the setting

NOTE

- ◆ The settings of “ドラゴンクエスト” (DRAGON QUEST) or of a downloaded Kisekai Tool package cannot be registered in “お気に入り”.
- ◆ Images, i-motion programs or melodies that have been downloaded from sites or attached to mails may not be registered in “お気に入り” or not be set at a time.
- ◆ “Stand-by display” in which “i-appli display” is set is not registered in “Stand-by image” in “お気に入り”.
- ◆ If an image, i-motion or melody that is registered in “お気に入り” is deleted, it is also deleted from “お気に入り” and “No data” appears.
- ◆ You cannot change settings on the contents checking screen of other than “お気に入り”.

Function menu (Contents checking screen)

Set all ^{*1}	Sets the registered items at a time.
Finish ^{*2}	
Take Setting info ^{*2}	Registers the current settings in “お気に入り”.
Reset Setting info ^{*2}	Deletes the items registered in “お気に入り”.

*1 : Appears on the Contents checking screen for data with “”.

*2 : Appears on the Contents checking screen for data with “”.

<Neuropointer>

Setting the Neuropointer

Default setting	Pointer: ON Simple: Normal Pointer icon setting: Simple Shape (Phone color: Jet black, Surf blue, Vermilion orange), Disney (Phone color: Sparkle white)
-----------------	--

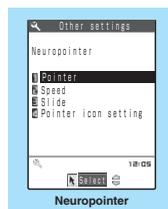
For easier use of the pointer controlled by the Neuropointer key () , specify whether to turn the pointer on/off, the speed and design.

- To set the Neuropointer speed from “Initial setting” (p.48), select “Normal” or “High” in “Simple” (p.144).
- The pointer is available when “” appears on the screen.
- The pointer icon has two colors, which are decided by whether it is followed by the cursor or not. When “Simple Shape” is set for “Pointer icon setting”, moving the blue pointer () automatically selects the cursor. When the pointer is white () , moving it does not select the cursor.

1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Neuropointer”

The “Neuropointer” screen appears.

2 Select any item



Pointer	Sets whether to show the pointer (whether to use the Neuropointer).	
Speed	“Changing the pointer speed” → p.144	
Slide	Adjust	▶ “YES” ▶ Slide your finger over the Neuropointer key following the instructions Sets the limit of the Neuropointer key sliding to move the pointer effectively.
	Reset	Restores the slide adjustment to default.
Pointer icon setting	Changes the pointer icon design. Selecting an item changes the selected icon design. To check an icon design before selecting it, press  (Play). Use the function menu to change the list format (Title name or Picture) for the selection screen.	

Changing the pointer speed

1 Neuropointer screen (p.144) ▶ “Speed” ▶ Select any item

Simple	▶ “Normal” or “High” ▶ “YES” Chooses between two speeds.	
Detail	Sets a speed for each screen.	
	Standard ^{*1}	▶ Use  to select “I”, “L” or “H” ▶ Use  to adjust the speed ▶ “OK”
	MainMenu	Speed can be controlled in the range of level 0 (leftmost) to level 11 (rightmost). The more you move the slide to the right, the faster the speed becomes. The more to the left, the slower it does.
	T9/Prediction	
	Software ^{*2}	
Reset	Restores the pointer speed to default.	

*1 : Adjusts the pointer speed for typical screens such as the list or icon selection.

*2 : The settings may not be applicable depending on the i-appli.

Specifying How the Incoming Call Lamp Flashes for Incoming Calls and Mails

Default setting

Phone: Color 5 Videophone: Color 5 PushTalk: Color 5 Mail: Color 1 Chat mail: Color 3
MessageR: Color 1 MessageF: Color 1 Pattern: Standard Color setting: Color 1 to 12

Use this procedure to set the color and pattern (flash pattern) in which the incoming call lamp flashes when you receive voice calls, videophone calls, PushTalk calls, mails, chat mails or MessageR/MessageF.

- You can set different flash colors respectively for incoming calls and messages from particular phone numbers, e-mail addresses or groups. → p.118
- The flash pattern for ☺ and ☹ is the same as for the incoming call lamp.

1 MENU ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “Illumination” ▶ Select any item

Set color	Selects the flash color of the incoming call lamp for “Phone”, “Videophone”, “PushTalk”, “Mail”, “Chat mail”, “MessageR” and “MessageF”. The incoming call lamp flashes in the highlighted color.	
	Color 1 to 12: The lamp flashes in the selected color. Gradation: The lamp flashes in the colors 1 to 12 in numeric order.	
Set pattern	Selects the flash pattern of the incoming call lamp.	
	Standard	Sets the flash pattern to Standard (flashing at 0.5 sec interval).
	Melody linkage	Sets the flash pattern to Melody linkage.
Adjust color	Sets the color.	
	Edit color name	▶ Select a color ▶ Enter the color name A color name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
	Adjust color tone	▶ Select a color ▶ Use 🔄 to adjust the color tone

NOTE

- ◆ If “Pattern 1 to 4” is selected for a ring tone, the incoming call lamp flashes according to the ring tone regardless of the settings of this function.
- ◆ If no flash pattern corresponding to the melody is set for a ring tone or Chaku-motion or Chaku-Uta-Full® is set, the “Standard” pattern is used regardless of the “Melody linkage” setting.
- ◆ While you are operating data on a microSD memory card from a PC in “microSD mode” (p.361), the incoming call lamp flashes in “Color 5” (green) regardless of the settings of this function.

<Incoming call lamp priority sequence>

- ◆ Priority is assigned as follows for the incoming call lamp operation when the incoming settings are duplicated:
 - ① Illumination for Discern connect → p.118
 - ② Illumination for Discern group → p.118
 - ③ Illumination

<Illumination in talk>

Specifying How the Incoming Call Lamp Flashes During a Call

Default setting
OFF

This function allows you to set the color in which the incoming call lamp flashes during a voice, videophone or PushTalk call.

1 MENU ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Talk” ▶ “Illumination in talk” ▶ Select a color

- OFF : The incoming call lamp does not flash.
- Color 1 to 7 : The lamp flashes in the selected color.
- Gradation 1 : The lamp flashes changing the color.
- Gradation 2 : The lamp lights up changing the color.
- Gradation 3 : The lamp color quickly changes.

NOTE

- ◆ While a message is recorded, a recorded message is played, the answer message is played or an incoming call is held, the incoming call lamp flashes in the same pattern as while you are talking.

<IC card Illumination>

Lighting Lamps When Using IC Card Function

Default setting
ON

Set this function to light up the incoming call lamp and shooting indicator lamp when using the IC card function.

1 MENU ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “IC card Illumination” ▶ “ON” or “OFF”

Displaying the Call Time During a Call

Default setting
ON

Use this function to set whether to display the call time during a voice, videophone, PushTalk call.

- If the call time exceeds “19 hours, 59 minutes, 59 seconds”, the count restarts from “0 seconds”.
- The shown call time is intended solely as a guide and should not be used as an accurate figure.
- The call time is not counted during i-mode or packet communication.

1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Call time/Charge” ▶ “Call time display” ▶ “ON”

- To hide the call time
 - ▶ “OFF”

NOTE

- ◆ The call time is reset to 0 second every time you switch the call mode between voice and videophone. However, if you switch the call mode and end a videophone call, the call time shown indicates the total time of the voice and videophone calls.

Changing the Font

Default setting Type: Font 1 Thickness: Bold Character size: Standard

Use this procedure to customize the font (typeface) of the text shown on the display or image display.

1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Display” ▶ “Font” ▶ Select any item

Type	Selects the font type between “Font 1” and “Font 2”. A sample of the highlighted font appears on the bottom of the screen.	
Thickness	Selects the thickness between “Thin” and “Bold”. A text sample using the highlighted thickness appears on the bottom of the screen.	
Character size	Sets the font size for the following screens: Text entry (edit), mail detail, webpage, screen memo, MessageR/MessageF detail, full browser, phonebook list, phonebook detail and My Profile	
	Standard	Sets the standard font size.
	Large	Sets the large font size.
	Separate setting	Sets the font size for character entry, mail, i-mode, full browser and phonebook respectively.

NOTE

- ◆ This function is not available to set the font for clock display and phone number entry screen.
- ◆ “Font 2” is only available for alphabetic letters (double-byte or single-byte), numbers (double-byte or single-byte), hiragana and katakana (double-byte or single-byte), some symbols, Greek letters and Russian letters. All other characters such as kanji are shown using “Font 1”.
- ◆ Changing this function does not affect the thickness and font size of text on the image display.
- ◆ Setting “Standard” or “Large” in “Character size” changes the font sizes for all functions subject to “Character size” at a time.
- ◆ The font size set in “Full brw.” in “Separate setting” in “Character size” is only applied to the font in Mobile layout mode. You cannot change the font size in the Original layout mode. → p.321
- ◆ The font size set in “Phonebook” in “Separate setting” in “Character size” is also applied to the My Profile screen.

Setting the Clock Display

Default setting Display: ON Size: Big Color: White (Phone color: Jet black, Vermilion orange), Black (Phone color: Surf blue, Sparkle white)
Display type: World watch OFF

You can set the language mode (Japanese or English) of days shown on the standby screen, the clock display size or color or whether to show the world clock. You can also hide the date and clock.

- If a screen is not standby, the small clock appears at the bottom of the screen regardless of the settings of this function. → p.31

Display	Selects “ON” or “OFF”.	
Size	Big	Shows the date and large clock.
	Small	Shows the date and small clock.
	Down Small	Shows the small clock at the bottom of the screen.
Color	Selects “Black” or “White”.	
Display type	Selects “World watch OFF” or “World watch ON”.	

NOTE

- ◆ The world clock is only available when “Size” is set to “Small”.
- ◆ When “Size” is set to “Down Small” and “Ticker display setting” for i-channel is set to “ON” or “Receiving”, the clock is hidden while the ticker appears.
- ◆ Even if the clock display on the image display is set to “Digital4”, the clock is displayed in English regardless of the “Display” setting of this function.

<Desktop icon>

Using Desktop Icons

Default setting
Photo mode

Adding frequently called phone numbers or frequently used functions to the standby screen as desktop icons enables you to quickly access those numbers or functions with simple operations.

Adding desktop icons

Select “Add desktop icon” from the function menu on the screen, list screen or detail screen of the function you want to add.

- The following can be added to the standby screen as desktop icons.
- Up to 15 icons can be added to Theme 1 to 3 respectively. → p.148

Category	Icon (Type)	Icon title ^{*1}
Access data	(Phone number)	Name stored in the phonebook (phone number if the icon has no title)
	(Mail address)	Name stored in the phonebook (mail address if the icon has no title)
	(SMS address)	Name stored in the phonebook (phone number if the icon has no title)
	(i-mode)	i-mode page title (URL excluding “http://” or “https://” if the icon has no title)
	(Full browser)	Full browser page title (URL excluding “http://” or “https://” if the icon has no title)
	(Melody) ^{*2}	Melody title (“Melody” if the icon has no title)
	(Image) ^{*2}	Image title (“Image” if the icon has no title)
	(Movie or i-motion) ^{*2}	Movie or i-motion title (“i-motion” if the icon has no title)
	(Chara-den)	Chara-den title (“Chara-den” if the icon has no title)
	(PDF document)	PDF document title (“Document” if the icon has no title)
	(i-appli program)	Program name
Access function ^{*3}	(Photo mode)/ (Movie mode)/	Respective function name (“Type” on the left)
	(Voice mode)/ (To Do list)/	
	(Schedule)/ (Text memo)/	
	(Access reader)/ (Bar code reader)/	
	(i-channel)/ (Receive Ir data)/	
	(Dictionary)/ (Original menu)	

Category	Icon (Type)	Icon title ^{*1}
Open folder	 (Inbox folder)	Folder title ("Folder" if the icon has no title)

*1 : When a desktop icon is selected, the first 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters of the title appear.

*2 : Pre-installed melodies or images, i-motion programs or original animations cannot be added as desktop icons.

*3 : The same desktop icon cannot be added twice or more times.

<Example: To add a phone number from the phonebook>

- 1 Phonebook detail screen (p.111) ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Add desktop icon” ▶ “YES”



Using desktop icons to access data or functions

- 1 On the standby screen ▶ 

The title of the icon in the current cursor position appears.

- 2 Move the cursor to the desktop icon you want to access and select the icon

■ If there are 6 or more desktop icons added

“◀▶” appears on the left and right of the screen. Use  to scroll through icons.



Desktop icon
Function menu ▶ p.148

Changing the theme of desktop icons on the standby screen MENU 63

- 1  ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Display” ▶ “Desktop icon”

The “Theme selection” screen appears. “ SET” appears for the theme that has been set.

- 2 Select a theme ▶ “YES”

If adding desktop icons (p.147) after this procedure, you can paste icons for the selected theme.

■ To check details of the theme

▶ Highlight a theme ▶  (Detail)

The “Desktop icon” screen appears.

Function menu (Desktop icon screen) → p.148



Theme selection
Function menu ▶ p.148

■ Example for utilizing desktop icons



NOTE

◆ On the information screen of a URL desktop icon, use  to scroll the screen to view all the URL information.

Function menu (Desktop icon/Theme selection screen)

The functions listed are different between the Desktop icon and theme selection screens since the available functions vary depending on the screen.

Change desktop	Changes the theme of desktop icons.	
Display setting	Display at all	Always displays desktop icons.
	Display at use	Displays desktop icons only when pressing  , sliding the Neuropointer or setting the calendar.

Edit title	▶ Enter a title A title can contain up to 16 double-byte or 32 single-byte characters.*	
Sort	▶ “YES” ▶ Use to move an icon ◉ Moves the highlighted desktop icon.	
Icon info setting	Shows the title, type and details of the desktop icon.	
Reset desktop	Restores the default setting (“Photo mode” only).	
Copy	Copies desktop icons to the selected theme.	
	Copy this	▶ Select a theme Copies the highlighted desktop icon to the selected theme.
	Copy selected	▶ Select a theme ▶ Use to select a checkbox <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Copies desktop icons to the selected theme.
	Copy all	▶ Select a theme ▶ “YES” Copies all desktop icons to the selected theme.
Move	Moves desktop icons to the selected theme.	
	Move this	▶ Select a theme ▶ “YES” Moves the highlighted desktop icon to the selected theme.
	Move selected	▶ Select a theme ▶ Use to select a checkbox <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Moves desktop icons to the selected theme.
	Move all	▶ Select a theme ▶ “YES” Moves all desktop icons to the selected theme.
Delete	Delete this	Deletes the highlighted desktop icon.
	Delete selected	▶ Use to select a checkbox <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple desktop icons.
	Delete all	Deletes all desktop icons.

* : You can enter up to 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters on the theme selection screen.

Desktop icons that give notice

Icon	Details of notice	When selected
	Notifies you that you received a new mail. Highlighting this icon shows the emotion-expressing mail icon that suits the contents of the mail and a pictograph included in the mail title using 3D animation. The mail subject is also shown. → pp.150, 251	Opens the detail screen of the latest mail.
	Notifies you that you received a new chat mail. Highlighting this icon shows the emotion-expressing mail icon that suits the contents of the chat mail using 3D animation and shows “Chat mail”. → pp.150, 251	Opens the Chat screen.
	Notifies you of new ToruCa.	Opens the ToruCa list screen on which the latest ToruCa is shown.
	Notifies you of missed calls. Highlighting the icon shows the number of missed calls.	Shows the “Missed calls” record.
	Notifies you of recorded messages of voice calls.	Launches “Play/Eraser msg.”.
	Notifies you of recorded messages of videophone calls.	Launches “Play/Eraser VP msg.”.
	Notifies you that Voice Mail service center keeps a recorded message.	Launches “Voice Mail”.
	Notifies you that a FOMA terminal was unable to post an alarm of Alarm clock, Schedule or To Do list.	Shows the information about the most recent alarm that could not be posted.
	Notifies you that an i-appli could not be launched automatically.	Opens the “Auto start info” screen.
	Notifies you that the i-appli standby screen shut down due to an error.	Shows the security error history.
	Notifies you that software updating has been completed.	Opens the update results screen following the security code entry.

Icon	Details of notice	When selected
	Notifies you that the cumulative charge exceeds the specified limit.	Opens the alarm screen for "Notice designate calls" following the security code entry.
	Shows the auto-update of the pattern data of the scan function has been completed. Alternatively, shows new pattern data of the scan function have been released.	Shows the auto-update results for the pattern data of the scan function. If update has not been normally terminated or a new pattern has been released, the screen prompting you to update the pattern data of the scan function appears.
	Notifies you that the Data Security Service information has not been updated.	Opens the screen that allows you to connect to the Data Security Center following the security code entry.
	Notifies you that you have received a request for providing the location information of the GPS function.	Opens the Location history screen.

NOTE

- ◆ If you access a function from a desktop icon that gives notice or from the function menu, the desktop icon will disappear. However, the desktop icon of "RECORD" remains until you play or delete the Record message.
- ◆ To delete a desktop icon that gives notice, press [CLR] for 1 second or longer (deleting the icon does not delete their contents). However, "RECORD", "SMS" and "CHAT" will remain.
- ◆ When you set "Missed calls display" in the "Ring time(sec.)" to "Not display" and receive a call whose ring time is shorter than the one set in "Set mute seconds", the desktop icon "MISS" does not appear. However, calls from phone numbers stored in the phonebook are notified with the icon. → p.174
- ◆ If you receive a new mail or chat mail of which the destination Inbox or folder is protected for security, selecting the desktop icon does not show the emotion-expressing mail icon, a pictograph using 3D animation or the mail subject. Instead, "New mail" or "Chat mail" appears.

<3D display setting>

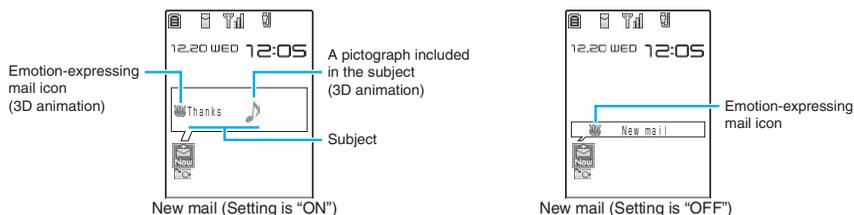
Using 3D Animation for the New Mail Desktop Icon Message

Default setting

ON

Use this procedure to use 3D animation for the new mail or new chat mail desktop icon when it is selected.

- For new mails, the mail subject up to 15 double-byte or 30 single-byte characters appears.
- Details of notice given when the new mail or new chat mail desktop icon is highlighted → p.149
- Emotion-expressing mail icon → p.251



1



▶ "Settings" ▶ "Display" ▶ "3D display setting" ▶ "ON"

■ To disable 3D animation

▶ "OFF"

NOTE

- ◆ When the subject of a new mail is "No title" or SMS is received, selecting the desktop icon shows "New mail" and pops up the emotion-expressing mail icon that suits the contents of the mail using 3D animation.
- ◆ Even if this function is set to "ON", only "New mail" or "Chat mail" appears instead of an emotion-expressing mail icon when "OFF" is set for "Emotion/Keyword notice" in "Mail settings".
- ◆ A 3D animation icon may not appear depending on the pictograph. If many pictographs are included in a mail subject, 3D animation may not be used for all the pictographs.

Selecting Icons to Show on the Standby Screen

Default setting
ON

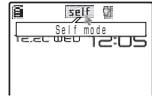
You can select and set the icons, date or time to show on the standby screen using the Neuropointer.

- 
 ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Display” ▶ “Icons setting” ▶ “ON”
 -  To disable selection
 - ▶ “OFF”

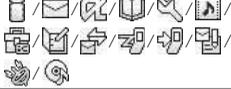
Selecting icons with the Neuropointer

- On the standby screen ▶ Slide  to show the pointer ▶ Point the icon to check 

The icon title appears. You can also select date or time.
After selecting an icon using the Neuropointer, you can use  to select icons.



Icon/display	After selected
	Shows “Display design”.
	Opens the screen for releasing “Original lock”.
	Opens the screen for releasing “IC card lock”.
	Shows “Inbox”.
 (white) /  (red)	Shows the list of unread mails.
 (white) /  (red)	Shows “MessageR”.
 (white) /  (red)	Shows “MessageF”.
 (R, F: white) /  (R, F: red) /  (R: red, F: white) /  (R: white, F: red)	Opens the screen for selecting “MessageR” and “MessageF”.
 (white) /  (red) /  (white) /  (red) /  (white) /  (red)	Performs “Check new messages”.
	Shows “Display design”.
	Opens the screen for releasing “Self mode”.
	Shows “Permit to send loc.”.
	Opens the screen for selecting “Vibrator” or “Mail/Msg. ring time”.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Normal mode (when not in Manner mode) Opens the screen for selecting “Ring volume” or “Mail/Msg. ring time”. • Manner mode, Super silent mode Shows a message notifying that it cannot be set. • Original manner mode Opens the screen for selecting “Original” or “Mail/Msg. ring time”.
	Shows “Manner mode set”.
	Shows “Remote monitoring”.
	Shows “Alarm”.
 /  /  /  /  / 	Shows “Voice Mail”. Even if there are already 11 or more recorded voice mail messages, “10 Voice mail” appears.
	Shows a message notifying that nothing is recorded.
 /  /  /  / 	Shows “Play/Erase msg.”.
	Shows a message notifying that nothing is recorded.

Icon/display	After selected
	Shows "Play/Erase VP msg".
	Shows "Backlight".
	Opens the screen for releasing "Keypad lock".
	Shows "External keys guard".
Date	Shows "Schedule". When the time is not set, "Set time" appears.
Clock	Shows "Alarm clock". When the time is not set, "Set time" appears.
World clock	Shows "World watch". This appears only when the world clock is set to be shown.
	Switches active tasks.
	Shows "USB mode setting".

● Security Settings

■ Security codes

Security Codes Used on a FOMA Terminal.....	154
Changing Your Security Code.....	Change security code 155
Setting Your PIN Codes.....	PIN setting 155
Releasing PIN Lock.....	156

■ Restricting terminal operations and functions

Lock Functions.....	156
Preventing Others from Using Your Terminal	Dial lock/Omakase Lock 157
Preventing Others from Viewing Stored Data of Your Phonebook or Schedule	Secret mode/Secret data only mode 158
Hiding Various Data.....	Secret folder 160
Hiding Your Personal Information or Disabling Call/Mail Functions	Original lock 162
Locking Key Operation Automatically	Keypad lock 167
Using IC Card Authentication	IC card authentic. 168
Disabling the External Keys.....	External keys guard 169
Using Face Authentication.....	Face authentication 169

■ Restricting incoming and outgoing calls and transmissions

Setting Security for Mail Folders.....	Mail security 171
Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers	Restrictions 171
Rejecting Calls from Unidentified Callers	Call setting w/o ID 173
Muting Ring Tones for Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook.....	Ring time(sec.) 174
Blocking Calls from Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook.....	Reject unknown 174
Disabling Communication Functions	Self mode 175

■ Other security settings

Saving FOMA Terminal Data Online.....	Data Security Service 175
Other Security Settings.....	176

Security Codes Used on a FOMA Terminal

To make a FOMA terminal more convenient and secure, some functions require a security code entry. The security codes include the one for terminal operations, network security code for network services, i-mode password, etc. Take care to use an appropriate security code when using your FOMA terminal.

■ Notes on security codes

- Avoid using easy-to-guess numbers (e.g. your birth date, a part of your phone number or your address, "1111", "1234") for security codes. Take care to make a note of the security codes you have set in case you forget them.
- Take particular care not to disclose your security codes to others. DoCoMo shall not take any responsibility for any damage or loss caused by disclosure of the security codes.
- DoCoMo never ask you about your security codes.
- In case you forget your security code, you need to bring your FOMA terminal, FOMA card (UIM) and a form of identification (e.g. driver's license) proving you are the subscriber to a NTT DoCoMo shop.
For more information, contact Inquiries described on the back cover of this manual.

● Security code

At the time of purchase, your security code is set to "0000" (4 zeros). You can change your security code at any time. → p.155

When the security code entry screen appears, enter your 4- to 8-digit security code and press .

- The entered security code appears as "_" instead of the numbers.
- If an incorrect security code is entered or no key is pressed roughly for 15 seconds, an alarm tone sounds and the alarm message appears.



● Network security code

Network security code is a 4-digit number you specified at time of contract. This code is required for using DoCoMo e-site or network services. You can change your network security code at any time. If you have DoCoMo ID or a password for "My DoCoMo" (general support site for PC), you can change your network security code on your PC.

To change your network security code from i-mode, access "各種手続き" (applications and settings) in DoCoMo e-site (available only in Japanese).

* See the back cover of this manual for more information about My DoCoMo and DoCoMo e-site.

● i-mode password

You need a 4-digit "i-mode password" to register or unregister sites in My Menu and to subscribe to or unsubscribe from message services or paid i-mode sites. (Some other passwords may be set independently by your information service providers.)

i-mode password is set to "0000" (4 zeros) when you subscribe to the i-mode service. You can change your password at any time.

To change your i-mode password from i-mode, access ▶"i-mode"▶"iMenu"▶"ENGLISH"▶"Options"▶"Change i-mode Password".

● PIN1 code and PIN2 code

Two PIN numbers, PIN1 code and PIN2 code, can be set to a FOMA card (UIM).

PIN1 and PIN2 codes are set to "0000" (4 zeros) at time of contract. You can change your codes at any time. → p.155

PIN1 code is a 4- to 8-digit number (code) you enter when inserting a FOMA card (UIM) into your FOMA terminal or turning the FOMA terminal on. This code identifies you as the user to prevent improper use of your FOMA card (UIM) by others. Entering PIN1 code enables you to perform terminal operations such as making and receiving calls.

PIN2 code is a 4- to 8-digit security code you enter when performing Reset total cost, or using or requesting Client certificates.

When purchasing a new FOMA terminal and inserting the FOMA card (UIM) you have used into the terminal, you can use the PIN1 and PIN2 codes you have set.

When the PIN1 or PIN2 code entry screen appears, enter your 4- to 8-digit PIN1 or PIN2 code and press .

- The entered PIN1 or PIN2 code appears as “_” instead of the numbers.
 - If you enter your PIN1 or PIN2 code incorrectly three times in a row, your PIN1 or PIN2 code is locked. (The remained number of entries appears on the screen.)
- Entering the correct PIN1 or PIN2 code returns the remained number to three.

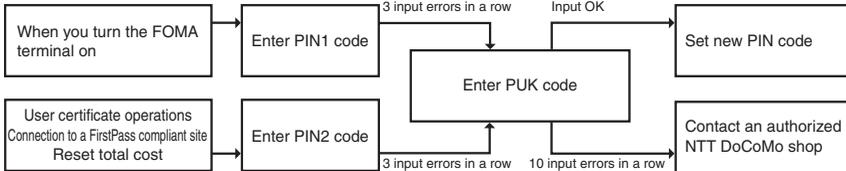


Example: PIN1 code

● PUK code

PUK code is an 8-digit number that will unlock the locked PIN1 or PIN2 code. You cannot change this code.

- If you enter your PUK code incorrectly 10 times in a row, your FOMA card (UIM) is locked.



<Change security code>

MENU29

Changing Your Security Code

Default setting
0000 (4 zeros)

- 1  “Settings” ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “Change security code” ▶ Enter your security code ▶ Enter a new 4- to 8-digit security code ▶ Select “YES”

■ To change your security code from “Initial setting”

- ▶ Enter your security code ▶ Enter a new 4- to 8-digit security code ▶ “YES”

<PIN setting>

Setting Your PIN Codes

Default setting	PIN1 code: 0000 (4 zeros) PIN2 code: 0000 (4 zeros) PIN1 code entry set: OFF
-----------------	---

- PIN1 code, PIN2 code and PIN1code entry set are stored in a FOMA card (UIM). When purchasing a new FOMA terminal and inserting the FOMA card (UIM) you have used into the terminal, you can still use the PIN1 and PIN2 codes you have used for the FOMA card (UIM).
- If you enter your PIN1 or PIN2 code incorrectly 3 times in a row, your PIN is automatically locked and you can no longer use the PIN code. Make a note of your codes just in case you forget them.
- PUK code is an 8-digit number that will unlock the locked PIN1 or PIN2 code.
- If you enter your PUK code incorrectly 10 times in a row, your FOMA card (UIM) is completely locked.
- If you forget your PUK code and your FOMA terminal is completely locked, you need to take your FOMA terminal, current FOMA card (UIM) and a form of identification proving that you are the registered service subscriber (such as a driver’s license) to an NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter to have it unlocked.

Changing your PIN1 or PIN2 code

- To change your PIN1 code, select “ON” in “PIN1 code entry set”.

- 1  “Settings” ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “PIN setting” ▶ Enter your security code

The “PIN setting” screen appears.



2 Select any item

Change PIN1 code	▶Enter the 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code currently used ▶Enter a new 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code▶ Enter the new 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code again Changes the PIN1 code.
Change PIN2 code	▶Enter the 4- to 8-digit PIN2 code currently used ▶Enter a new 4- to 8-digit PIN2 code▶ Enter the new 4- to 8-digit PIN2 code again Changes the PIN2 code.
PIN1 code entry set	Sets PIN1 code to be entered when you turn a FOMA terminal on.

Entering your PIN1 code when a FOMA terminal is turned on

When “PIN1 code entry set” is set to “ON”, the PIN1 code entry screen appears when you turn a FOMA terminal on. Enter your PIN1 code to proceed.

1 Turn a FOMA terminal on, and enter the 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code

If the entered PIN1 code is correct, the standby screen appears.



Releasing PIN Lock

If you enter your PIN1 or PIN2 code incorrectly three times in a row, unlock the PIN1 or PIN2 code and set a new PIN1 or PIN2 code.

<Example: To unlock your PIN1 code>

- 1 Enter the 8-digit PUK code
- 2 Enter a new 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code
- 3 Enter the new 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code again



Lock Functions

Purpose	Function	Refer to
To prevent others from using your FOMA terminal	Dial lock/Omakase Lock	p.157
To hide your “Phonebook” or “Schedule” data to prevent others from viewing them	Secret mode/Secret data only mode	p.158
To hide data such as images or mails to prevent others from viewing them	Secret folder	p.160
To prevent other people from viewing or altering your personal information. To restrict making or receiving phone or PushTalk calls or sending or receiving mails.	Original lock	p.162
To lock key operations automatically	Keypad lock	p.167
To unlock using a contactless IC card	IC card authentic.	p.168
To prevent inadvertent use of the external keys	External keys guard	p.169
To unlock using face authentication	Face authentication	p.169
To set security for mail folders to prevent other people from viewing your mails	Mail security	p.171
To restrict calls to/from specific phone numbers stored in the phonebook to prevent users from making private calls or receiving nuisance calls	Restrictions	p.171
To prevent calls from unidentified callers	Call setting w/o ID	p.173

Purpose	Function	Refer to
To prevent accidentally making a call using the Received calls record to a number such as a nuisance caller that is not stored in the phonebook and only rings for a short period of time	Ring time(sec.)	p.174
To prevent calls from callers not listed in the phonebook	Reject unknown	p.174
To use a FOMA terminal without having to worry about incoming voice, videophone or PushTalk calls	Self mode	p.175

<Dial lock/Omakase Lock>

Preventing Others from Using Your Terminal

To lock your FOMA terminal to prevent others from using it, use “Dial lock” that is set on your FOMA terminal or “Omakase Lock” that is set remotely.

- Dial lock or Omakase Lock is not released even when a FOMA terminal is turned off.

● Available operations and functions when Dial lock or Omakase Lock is set

Operation	Dial lock	Omakase Lock
Turning a FOMA terminal on/off	○	○
Calling emergency numbers (110, 119 or 118)	○	×
Setting/releasing Dial lock	○	×
Setting/releasing Omakase Lock	○	○
Receiving voice calls or videophone calls*	○	○
Receiving remote monitoring calls	○	○
Updating the Data Security Service data	○	×
Providing location information using the GPS function (providing location information to a third party set for location request services such as DoCoMo's imadoco-search)	○	○
Using functions other than the above	×	×

○: Available ×: Unavailable

*: You cannot make voice calls, videophone calls or PushTalk calls. Even if receiving PushTalk calls, the FOMA terminal does not perform incoming call operations and records them as “Missed calls”. When a call with a Chaku-moji message is received, the message appears on the incoming call screen. You cannot receive calls when Public mode (Driving mode) is set.

- If Dial lock or Omakase Lock is set, no alarm notification is given when a time set in “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “To Do list” is reached. Once you release Dial lock or Omakase Lock, the “Missed alarm” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- If Dial lock or Omakase Lock is set, the icons pasted into the desktop disappear. The icons reappear after Dial lock or Omakase Lock is released.
- Only phone numbers appear even for calls from callers stored on the phonebook when Dial lock or Omakase Lock is set.
- Calls that arrive when Dial lock or Omakase Lock is set are recorded in “Received calls”.

Using a FOMA terminal to set Dial lock

Default setting
Release

- 1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “Lock” ▶ Enter your security code ▶ “Dial lock”

● Operations during Dial lock

- “Dial lock” and “” appear on the display. Also, the message “Setting Dial lock” appears on the image display.
- “” appears on the display at the same time and sets IC card lock to “ON”, and IC card functions become unavailable. You cannot release IC card lock when Dial lock is set. However, you can release Dial lock using IC card authentication.
- Although a FOMA terminal automatically receives MessageR, MessageF, i-mode mails, SMS or chat mails when Dial lock is set, the receiving and reception results screens do not appear. After Dial lock is released, the icon for received mails or messages appears on the standby screen.

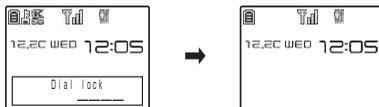


Releasing Dial lock

- If you fail to release Dial lock 5 times in a row, a FOMA terminal is turned off. However, it can still be turned on again.

1 Enter your security code on a screen when Dial lock is set

Dial lock is released and “ ” disappears from the screen.



■ To use IC card authentication to release Dial lock

“Using IC Card Authentication” → p.168

NOTE

- ◆ Even if Dial lock is released, “” still appears while IC card lock is set.
- ◆ Even if an incorrect security code is entered for releasing Dial lock, no error message appears. Press  and enter a correct security code again.

Using Omakase Lock

Default setting
Release

If you have lost your FOMA terminal, contact DoCoMo or operate from My DoCoMo to lock the FOMA terminal remotely. This protects your important privacy and Osaifu-Keitai. To unlock the FOMA terminal, call our Call Center.

Call Center (for setting/releasing Omakase Lock)

 **0120-524-360** (Operating time: 24 hours a day) (in Japanese only)

* My DoCoMo is also available to set/release Omakase Lock via a PC, etc.

* For details about Omakase Lock, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [Services and Procedures]” or contact the number listed in “For inquiries” on the back cover.

Operations during Omakase Lock

- The message “おまかせロック中です” appears on the display and image display.
- Omakase Lock is a service where you can lock the FOMA terminal with the FOMA card (UIM) you subscribe to inserted.
- While in Omakase Lock, all key operations are locked except receiving voice calls/videophone calls and turning the power on/off. Other functions (including IC card) are unavailable.
- Mails you receive when Omakase Lock is set are kept at the mail center.
- The FOMA card (UIM) and microSD memory card remain unlocked.



NOTE

- ◆ Other active functions are terminated before Omakase Lock is set. (Edited data may be canceled before the function is terminated.)
- ◆ You can set Omakase Lock even when other lock functions are set. If Omakase Lock is released, the lock functions that had been set before Omakase Lock are reactivated (except for Secret mode and Secret data only mode).
- ◆ Omakase Lock cannot be set when:
 - The FOMA terminal is turned off or out of the service area.
 - “” appears on a FOMA terminal because Self mode is set or data transmission via Infrared data exchange or cable connection is in progress, etc.
- ◆ Omakase Lock cannot be set if you subscribe to the “Dual Network” service and are using the mova service.
- ◆ Omakase Lock is a service where a FOMA terminal is locked by the request from the subscriber to the FOMA card (UIM) inserted in the terminal. Even if someone else uses the terminal, it is locked at the subscriber’s request.
- ◆ Omakase Lock can only be released when the same FOMA card (UIM) as used when the lock was set is inserted. For more information on this service, contact “For inquiries” described on the back cover of this manual.
- ◆ If you try to release Omakase Lock set in a FOMA terminal that is on a voice call or videophone call, the lock is released after the call ends.

<Secret mode/Secret data only mode>

Preventing Others from Viewing Stored Data of Your Phonebook or Schedule

Default setting | Secret mode: OFF Secret data only mode: OFF

This function enables you to prevent others from accessing “Phonebook” and “Schedule” entries by storing them as secret data that can only be accessed by entering your security code. To store information as secret data, store it in your “Phonebook” or “Schedule” when a FOMA terminal is in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.

In Secret mode, you can access all the data stored in your “Phonebook” or “Schedule”, including secret data. In Secret data only mode, you can access only “Phonebook” or “Schedule” entries that are stored as secret data.

- You can move and store data in “My picture”, “i-motion”, “Inbox”, “Outbox” or “Bookmark” into the “Secret” folder. → p.160
- If you make or receive a voice, videophone or PushTalk call in Secret mode or Secret data only mode, the mode set is canceled even without answering the call. If a file in a Secret folder is shown, it returns to the list screen of each folder.
- You cannot store entries as secret data in the UIM phonebook.
- Turning a FOMA terminal off cancels Secret mode or Secret data only mode.

Storing phonebook or schedule entries as secret data

MENU 40

- The operations for using the “Phonebook” and “Schedule” entries in Secret mode or Secret data only mode are the same as when the secret modes are not set.

<Example: To store an entry in Secret mode>

1 “Settings” ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “Secret mode” ▶ Enter your security code

Secret mode is set and “” appears on the screen.
Icons shown when other lock functions are set at the same time → p.30

■ To cancel Secret mode



Secret mode is canceled and “” disappears from the screen.



2 Store a “Phonebook” or “Schedule” entry

The entry is stored as secret data.
Adding information to the phonebook → p.107
Adding information to your schedule → p.400

Viewing only secret data <Secret data only mode>

MENU 41

1 “Settings” ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “Secret data only mode” ▶ Enter your security code

Secret data only mode is set and “” flashes. The standby screen reappears in approximately 2 seconds.

Icons shown when other lock functions are set at the same time → p.30

■ To cancel Secret data only mode



Secret mode is canceled and “” disappears from the screen.



2 Search the phonebook or check your schedule

Searching the phonebook → p.111
Checking your schedule → p.401

NOTE

- ◆ Selecting “Set secret” from the phonebook detail function menu also enables you to store a phonebook entry as secret data.
- ◆ In Secret mode, “” flashes when you select or show secret data or show a Secret folder or data stored in a Secret folder.
- ◆ “Phonebook” or “Schedule” entries stored as secret data can only be accessed, edited, deleted or referred in Secret mode or Secret data only mode. When a FOMA terminal is in normal mode, you will be notified of scheduled events stored as secret data by an alarm, while no alarm message appears.
- ◆ If a “Phonebook” entry stored as secret data is assigned to a memory number between “000” and “009”, “Two-touch dialing” can only be used to call that number when Secret mode or Secret data only mode is set.
- ◆ Phonebook entries stored as secret data are also secret data in the PushTalk phonebook.
- ◆ If the caller of an incoming call is stored as secret data and shows the caller ID, not the name but the phone number appears. Only the phone number appears also on “Received calls”. However, setting Secret mode or Secret data only mode shows the name stored in the “Received calls” record.

- ◆ If Secret mode or Secret data only mode is released and you receive a mail from a sender stored as secret data, not the name but the mail address appears. The mail address is not stored in the “Received address” record.
- ◆ The following functions cannot be set for “Phonebook” entries stored as secret data:
 - Automatic display → p.120
 - Restrictions → p.171
 - Discern connect → p.118
- ◆ If you edit a “Phonebook” or “Schedule” entry in Secret mode, the edited entry is stored as secret data. If you edit a phonebook entry, all the data stored in the memory number of the edited entry are stored as secret data.
- ◆ You can also cancel Secret mode or Secret data only mode by pressing ▶“Settings”▶“Lock/Security” and then selecting “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode” in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.
- ◆ If “Dial lock/Omakase Lock” is set at the same time as “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”, releasing “Dial lock/Omakase Lock” also cancels “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”.
- ◆ If you receive a call while editing the phonebook or schedule, viewing the schedule or viewing the results of a phonebook search in Secret mode or Secret data only mode, the Secret mode or Secret data only mode is canceled and the security code entry screen appears. When you enter your security code on the screen, Secret mode or Secret data only mode is set again and you can then continue the operation.
- ◆ When you make a call or send a mail by accessing a phonebook entry stored as Secret data, “Redial”, “Dialed calls” or “Sent address” is not updated.

Changing secret data back to normal

Set Secret mode or Secret data only mode and access a phonebook entry or scheduled event for which you want to cancel the mode.

<Example: To remove secrecy from a phonebook entry>

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.111)▶ (FUNC)▶“Release secret”

The secrecy is removed. In Secret mode, the  icon stops flashing and remains on screen.

■ For scheduled events

▶Schedule list screen▶ (FUNC)▶“Release secret”▶“YES”

In Secret mode, the  icon stops flashing and remains on screen.

“Schedule list function menu”→p.402

<Secret folder>

Hiding Various Data

You can use “Secret” folders to store bookmarks, received mails, sent mails, images and movies that you want to hide from others.

- “Secret” folders appear in the folders of Bookmark, Inbox, Outbox and Data box only when Secret mode or Secret data only mode is set.
- If you make or receive a voice, videophone or PushTalk call in Secret mode or Secret data only mode, the mode set is canceled even without answering the call. Also, If a file in a Secret folder is shown, it returns to the folder list screen.
- The maximum numbers of files that can be stored in “Secret” folders are listed below.

Bookmark (i-mode)	Bookmark (Full Browser)	Inbox	Outbox	My picture	i-motion
10 (3K bytes)	10 (6K bytes)	100 (1.2M bytes)	100 (1.2M bytes)	100 (2M bytes)	10 (2M bytes)

* : Maximum number of files that can be stored may vary by the size of each file.

<Example: To move an image in My picture to Secret folder>

1 Set “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”

“Preventing Others from Viewing Stored Data of Your Phonebook or Schedule”→p.158

2 Image list screen (p.330)▶Select an image and press (FUNC)▶“Keep in secret”

NOTE

- ◆ Secret folders are pre-installed in a FOMA terminal. You cannot delete them, change their names or add another Secret folder.
- ◆ You cannot use Secret folders to store the images or i-motion programs in “Pre-installed” folders, unread mails or SMS and SMS reports stored in the FOMA card (UIM).

- ◆ You can also cancel Secret mode or Secret data only mode by pressing ▶“Settings”▶“Lock/Security”▶“Secret mode” or ▶“Settings”▶“Lock/Security”▶“Secret data only mode” in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.

<Bookmark (i-mode and Full Browser)>

- ◆ When you use a bookmark in the Secret folder of i-mode or Full Browser to access the site, the URL of the site is not stored by the Last URL function.

<Inbox/Outbox>

- ◆ When mails are sent or received with mail folders full, mails stored in Secret folders are not deleted.
- ◆ For files attached to mails stored in Secret folders, only images or melodies can be viewed or played. To view or play other kinds of attached files, move the mails out of Secret folders.
- ◆ You cannot use the Phone To/AV Phone To function, Mail To function, Web To function or i-appli To function from mails stored in Secret folders. “” indicating i-appli to be activated from a mail message changes to “”.
- ◆ Since mails in Secret folders return to normal if they are moved out of Secret folders, chronologically-older mails may be deleted when other mails are received or sent, depending on the status of the folders. We recommend you to protect mails before moving them out of Secret folders.
- ◆ Even in Secret mode or Secret data only mode, chat mails stored in Secret folders do not appear on the chat screen.
- ◆ When receiving the SMS report of a SMS stored in a Secret folder, you cannot select “Disp. SMS report” from the SMS detail function menu even if “” appears on the list or SMS detail screen. To check the SMS report by selecting “Disp. SMS report” from the function menu, move the SMS from the Secret folder into another one.

<My picture/i-motion>

- ◆ If a file set for the standby screen, a phonebook entry or image on the chat screen is moved to a Secret folder, the setting is reset to default.
- ◆ You cannot use the Phone To/AV Phone To function, Mail To function or Web To function from i-motion.

<Desktop icon>

- ◆ If an image, movie or i-motion pasted as a desktop icon is stored in a Secret folder, you cannot access the data from the desktop icon.
- ◆ Even if a bookmark, received mail or sent mail pasted as a desktop icon is stored in a Secret folder, you can access the data from the desktop icon.

● Secret folder function menu

The functions available with Secret folders and files in the folders are restricted. The functions available with Secret folders are:

■ Secret folder function menu

Folder list screen▶Highlight the “Secret” folder▶ (FUNC)

Bookmark (i-mode and Full Browser) (p.216)	Inbox/Outbox (p.262)	My picture (p.362)	i-motion (p.362)
Add folder No. of bookmarks*1 Touch to send all*1 Send all Ir data*1 CopyAll to microSD*1 Delete all*1	Add folder No. of messages*1 Open folder Touch to send all*1 Send all Ir data*1 CopyAll to microSD*1 Delete read*1*2 Delete all*1	Add folder Delete all image*1	Add folder Delete all*1

*1: Not subject to the data in the “Secret” folder.

*2: Only shown on the Inbox folder screen.

■ Data list function menu

Bookmark (i-mode and Full Browser) (p.216)	Inbox (p.264)	Outbox (p.266)	My picture (p.332)	i-motion (p.340)
No. of bookmarks Delete Put out	Color coding List setting Protect Unprotect Mail info No. of messages Delete Put out	Color coding List setting Protect ON/OFF Unprotect all No. of messages Delete Put out	Display image Image info Memory Info Title name, Picture Delete Put out	i-motion info Memory info List setting Delete Put out

■ Data detail function menu

Inbox/Outbox (pp.267, 268)	My picture (p.333)	i-motion (p.342)
Protect ON/OFF Scroll Font size Delete Put out	Image info Set image disp. Retry Delete this	Normal play Slow Fast Stop i-motion info Set image disp.

Changing data in Secret folder back to normal

To change the data in a Secret folder to normal, move the data into another folder.

<Example: To restore an image stored in the Secret folder under My picture to normal>

- 1 Set “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”
“Preventing Others from Viewing Stored Data of Your Phonebook or Schedule”→p.158
- 2 Folder list screen (p.330)▶“Secret”▶Select an image and press
ⓘ (FUNC)▶“Put out”
- 3 Select a folder to save the image

NOTE

- ◆ Since a mail moved from a Secret folder is a normal mail, it may be deleted when other mails are received or sent. We recommend you to protect mails before moving them out of Secret folders.

<Original lock>

Hiding Your Personal Information or Disabling Call/Mail Functions

Default setting
(Original lock 1 to 3)

OFF
(Detail Data disp. Edit del.: All selected Dial/sending mail: All OFF
Incoming/Mail disp.: All OFF GPS: All selected)

Locking the functions that use your personal information such as mails and phonebook entries allows you to prevent other people from viewing or improperly altering the personal information. You can also restrict making or receiving voice, videophone or PushTalk calls, or restrict sending or receiving i-mode mails or SMS.

- You can assign particular functions and data that are subject to lock to Original lock 1 to 3 according to the intended purposes.
- Turning a FOMA terminal off does not release the lock.

Activating Original lock

- 1 ▶“Settings”▶“Lock/Security”▶“Lock”▶Enter
your security code

The “Lock selection” screen appears.

- 2 Select Original lock 1 to 3

Lock is enabled, and functions and data that are subject to lock are locked.

“” appears on the screen.

Icons shown when other lock functions are set at the same time→p.30

- To change the functions and data that are subject to lock
“Customizing the functions and data that are subject to lock”→p.166

- To edit the title

▶Highlight one of Original lock 1 to 3▶ⓘ (FUNC)▶“Edit title”▶Enter a title▶● (Set)

- To release Original lock

▶“OFF”



● Operations during Original lock

To use the functions and data that are subject to Original lock when Original lock is set, the security code entry is required.

- Entering your security code correctly deactivates Original lock temporarily so that the functions and data that are subject to Original lock become available. Exiting all active functions and returning to the standby screen reactivate Original lock.

<Example: To view an i-mode mail while Original lock is set>

1 On the standby screen

The security code entry screen as shown on the right appears.



2 Enter your security code

Original lock is released temporarily and the mail menu appears.

3 Read an i-mode mail → p.257

4 Close the mail menu to return to the standby screen

Original lock is reactivated and "" appears on the screen.

NOTE

- ◆ When multiple tasks are activated with the Multitask function (p.393), Original lock is not reactivated even if the standby screen reappears after an operation. Ending all tasks reactivates Original lock.
- ◆ The following functions are not available when Original lock is set (release Original lock to use them):
 - Reset settings
 - Initialize
 - Software Update
 - "Update" and "Set auto-update" for the scanning function
- ◆ For functions other than "Dial/sending mail" and "Incoming/Mail disp." that are subject to Original lock, you can temporarily deactivate Original lock to use them. (The "Dial/sending mail" and "Incoming/Mail disp." functions are not available when Original lock is set.)
- ◆ If you temporarily release Original lock when "Dial/sending mail", "Incoming/Mail disp." and other lock functions are set at the same time, "" appears on the screen.

● Functions and data that are subject to Original lock

- The functions and data that are subject to Original lock are listed below. You can specify (customize) whether to set Original lock for each group and item. → p.166

Category	Group	Function	When locked/Notes
Data disp. Edit del.	Mail	Mail	Locks the mail function. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mail boxes cannot be displayed. • Mails cannot be composed or sent. • Even if you press the assist key with a FOMA terminal folded, you cannot have the terminal read out messages.
		Mail member Chat group	Locks the activation of each function.
	i-mode	i-mode	Locks the i-mode function. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • i-mode, Full Browser and i-channel are not available. • The ticker of i-channel does not appear.
		Bookmark	Locks the i-mode and Full Browser bookmark list displays.
	i-appli	i-appli	Locks the i-appli menu and IC card list displays. All i-appli programs (including pre-installed programs) cannot be performed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Original lock does not lock the IC card function. • If the i-appli standby screen is set, it is deactivated while in Original lock. If a shot or downloaded image had been set before the i-appli standby screen, the image reappears. However, if an image that had been set before the i-appli standby screen is subject to Original lock, the default image appears. If a pre-installed image had been set before the i-appli standby screen, the image reappears.
ToruCa	ToruCa	Locks the ToruCa list screen display. ToruCa can be acquired using a reader/writer unit even if Original lock is set. Releasing the lock shows the "New ToruCa" desktop icon.	

Category	Group	Function	When locked/Notes
Data disp. Edit del.	Multi media	My picture	<p>Locks the activation of each function. It cannot be accessed from another function.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the data subject to Original lock are set for a ring tone, the receiving screen or standby screen, a FOMA terminal works according to the default settings while in Original lock. If "My picture" or "Chara-den" is subject to Original lock and Original lock is set, the "Pre-installed" substitute image is sent during a videophone call. Even if "My picture" is subject to Original lock, you can use Auto Deco-mail or enter Decorate PI from the compose message screen.
		i-motion	
		Melody	
		Chara-den	
		My document	
		Music	
		Kisekae Tool	
		Document viewer	
		Voice announce	
	Bar code reader	Locks the activation of each function.	
	Camera		
	Access reader		
	Schedule	Schedule	<p>Locks the activation of each function. No alarm is given when the specified time is reached.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> No alarm is given and the "Missed alarm" desktop icon appears while in Original lock. If "Schedule" is subject to Original lock and the calendar is set for the standby screen, Schedule cannot be activated from the calendar on the standby screen while in Original lock.
		Alarm clock	
		To Do list	
	Memo	Play/Erase msg.	Locks the activation of each function.
		Play/Erase VP msg.	
		Voice memo	Locks the activation of each function.
		Voice memo (in-call)	
Phonebook	Phonebook	<p>Locks the phonebook and PushTalk phonebook activation. Phonebook entries cannot be accessed. (This affects many other functions that use the phonebook.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Even for a person who is stored in the phonebook, only the phone number appears on the dialing or receiving screen of a voice or videophone call. When a new i-mode mail or chat mail is received, the mail address appears instead of the name stored in the phonebook. If "Only number in PH-book" is set for "MSG display settings" in "Chaku-moji", a Chaku-moji message does not appear on the receiving screen. Even for a person who is stored in the phonebook, only the phone number appears in the "Received calls", "Dialed calls" or "Redial" record. On the mail list and detail screens, the mail addresses appear instead of the names stored in the phonebook. Original lock for "Phonebook" and "Reject unknown" cannot be set at the same time. The "Call rejection", "Call acceptance", "Call Forwarding" and "Voice Mail" settings are deactivated. Even if you press the assist key with a FOMA terminal folded, you cannot have the terminal read out the caller or sender of "Missed call", "New mail", "Chat mail" or "Record message". 	
	My profile		Locks the "My Profile" activation.
	Dialed calls		Locks the "Dialed calls", "Redial" or "Sent address" activation.
	Received calls		Locks the "Received calls" or "Received address" activation.
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Even if you press the assist key with a FOMA terminal folded, you cannot check "Missed calls".

Category	Group	Function	When locked/Notes
Data disp. Edit del.	Other settings	Text memo	Locks the "Text memo" activation.
		Notice designate calls	No alarm is given when the specified cost limit is exceeded. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Releasing the Original lock displays the "Notice designate calls" desktop icon on the standby screen. Original lock does not lock the "Notice designate calls" setting operations. You can change the "Notice designate calls" settings.
		Chaku-moji	Locks "Chaku-moji". <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Original lock does not lock the operations performed when Chaku-moji mails arrive. (They are performed according to "MSG display settings" in "Chaku-moji".) Select "Create message" from the function menu to make a call with a Chaku-moji message.
Dial/sending mail	Keypad dial	Keypad dial	Prohibits you from making voice, videophone or PushTalk calls by dialing a phone number or using the Received calls record. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> You cannot add or edit a phonebook entry or copy it from microSD memory card or using UIM operation. You cannot make a call using a desktop icon. You can make calls using the phonebook, Redial or Dialed calls record. You can directly dial and make voice calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118).
		Input add by keypad	Prohibits you from sending i-mode mails or SMS by entering an address. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> You cannot add or edit a phonebook entry or copy it from microSD memory card or using UIM operation. "Received calls", "Mail member", "Received address" or "Chat group" cannot be used as a mail address when composing a mail. You cannot compose a mail using a desktop icon. You can compose a mail using the phonebook, Redial, Dialed calls or Sent address list. All chat members except Myself are deleted. All the mail addresses in Draft are deleted. All the mails in Draft with only addresses entered are also deleted.
	Sending mail	Prohibits you from sending i-mode mails or SMS. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Chat mails are not available. 	
Incoming/Mail disp.	Incoming call		Rejects incoming voice calls, videophone calls or PushTalk calls or packet communication. A FOMA terminal does not work for incoming calls, and they are logged as Missed calls. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Releasing the Original lock displays the "Missed call" desktop icon on the standby screen.
	Disp. recv. mail/msg.		Automatically receives MessageR, MessageF, i-mode mails, chat mails or SMS, but neither works for receiving mails nor displays the receiving and reception results screens. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Releasing the Original lock displays the "New mail" or "Chat mail" desktop icon on the standby screen. Chat mails are not available.
GPS	GPS		Locks the GPS activation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Location can be provided to a third party set for location request services such as DoCoMo's imadoco-search.

NOTE

- ◆ If data that are subject to Original lock is pasted as a "desktop icon" into the standby screen, that desktop icon does not appear while in Original lock.

Customizing the functions and data that are subject to lock

- You can assign particular functions that are subject to lock to Original lock 1 to 3 depending on the intended purposes, such as locking only phonebook entries or restricting only outgoing calls/mails.
- Specify Original lock settings for each category, group, and function. → p.163
- The customized settings are retained even when Original lock is set or released.

1 Lock selection screen (p.162) ▶ Highlight Original lock 1 to 3 ▶ (Detail)

The "Category list" screen appears.
 "ALL" appears if any item in the category is subject to Original lock, and "ALL" appears if all items are subject to Original lock.



Function menu ▶ p.166

2 Select a category you want to change

The "Group list" screen appears.
 "ALL" appears if any item in the group is subject to Original lock, and "ALL" appears if all items are subject to Original lock.



Function menu ▶ p.166

3 Select a group you want to change

The "Function list" screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.166

4 Use to select a checkbox () ▶ (Finish)

The checked () items are subject to Original lock.
 Deselect items you do not want to lock with Original lock.

5 (Finish) ▶ (Finish) ▶ (Set)

Function menu (Category list/Group list screens)

Select	Selects all items in the highlighted item.
Release	Deselects all the selected items in the highlighted item.
Select all	Selects all items in the displayed items.
Release all	Deselects all the selected items in the displayed items.

Function menu (Function list screen)

Select all	Selects all items.
Release all	Deselects all the selected items.

Locking Key Operation Automatically

Default setting

After folded: OFF Timer: OFF

You can automatically lock keys when folding your FOMA terminal or a certain period of time has passed without using any keys on the FOMA terminal.

- Turning a FOMA terminal off does not release Keypad lock.

Setting Keypad lock

- 1 ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “Keypad lock” ▶ Enter your security code
- 2 Select any item (Finish)

After folded	ON	Locks automatically when a FOMA terminal is folded.
	OFF	Does not lock when a FOMA terminal is folded.
Timer	▶ Select from “OFF”, “ON after 1 minute”, “ON after 5 minutes”, “ON after 15 minutes” or “ON after 30 minutes” For example, setting “ON after 5 minutes” automatically locks keys in 5 minutes without any operation on the FOMA terminal. Selecting “OFF” deactivates the timer and does not lock keys.	

NOTE

- ◆ The timer count is reset if you use any key or open a FOMA terminal before Keypad lock is activated.

Operations during Keypad lock

- “Keypad lock”, “” and “” appear on the display while in Keypad lock. Icons shown when other lock functions are set at the same time → p.30
- While in Keypad lock, you cannot perform any key operation except receiving voice, videophone, and PushTalk calls, turning a FOMA terminal on/off and using (⏻).
- While in Keypad lock, a FOMA terminal receives MessageR, MessageF, i-mode mails, SMS and Chat mails, but you cannot view the reception results screen or have the FOMA terminal read out messages.
- Alarm notification for “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” and “To Do list” is given even while in Keypad lock.



NOTE

- ◆ You can still directly dial and make voice calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) while in Keypad lock.
- ◆ Keypad lock is not activated even after folding a FOMA terminal or at the time set by the timer while you are on a call, exchanging data (such as i-mode), playing melody/i-motion/music (including pause) or using the camera.

Releasing Keypad lock temporarily

- 1 Enter your security code on a screen when Keypad lock is set ●
 - To use Face authentication to release temporarily
“Using Face authentication to temporarily release Keypad lock” → p.170
 - To use IC card authentication to release temporarily
“Using IC card authentication to release Dial lock/Keypad lock” → p.168

NOTE

- ◆ Releasing Keypad lock temporarily does not cancel the Keypad lock settings. Set both “After folded” and “Timer” settings to “OFF” to cancel the Keypad lock settings completely.
- ◆ Pressing during a voice call displays the Keypad lock temporary release screen. You can display the main menu by releasing Keypad lock temporarily. A FOMA terminal returns to the Keypad lock waiting status when the call ends.

Using IC Card Authentication

Default setting

IC card authentic.: OFF IC card: Not registered

You can release Dial lock or Keypad lock or you can be authenticated as the user without entering your security code on the security code entry screen, by simply putting a FOMA terminal close to a FeliCa-compatible contactless IC card (external IC card).

- You can use the following contactless IC cards:
 - “Edy”, “eLIO”, “Suica”, “ICOCA”, etc.
- IC card authentication function is available even when the IC card is locked.
- You can register up to two contactless IC cards.

Setting IC card authentication

- Register a contactless IC card to enable user authentication.

1 “Settings” ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “IC card authentic.”

▶ Enter your security code

The “IC card authentic.” screen appears.

2 “ON” ▶ (Select)

■ To set the registered contactless IC card
▶ “ON”

■ To cancel the IC card authentication function
▶ “OFF” ▶ “YES” or “NO”



Function menu ▶ p.168

3 Put the FeliCa mark “” of the FOMA terminal close to the contactless IC card

Once the card is registered, “” disappears.

Function menu (IC card authentic. screen)

New ext. IC card	Registers up to two sets of contactless IC card data. If two sets of card data are already registered, old card data is deleted to register the new card data.
Del. ext. IC card	Deletes all contactless IC card data.

Using IC card authentication to release Dial lock/Keypad lock

- “” appears after performing the following operations. You will be authenticated as the user simply by putting the FeliCa mark of the FOMA terminal close to the contactless IC card registered with this function, and Dial lock/Keypad lock will be released.

1 Open the FOMA terminal while in Dial lock or Keypad lock

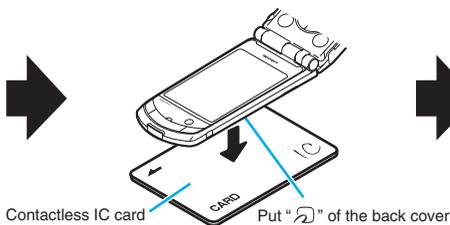
You can be authenticated as the user for 10 seconds after “” appears on the display. Pressing (Auth.) on the standby screen also allows you to be authenticated as the user.

■ To release the lock with the FOMA terminal folded

▶ Pressing () (1 second or longer) allows you to be authenticated as the user for 10 seconds.

2 Put the FeliCa mark “” of the FOMA terminal close to the contactless IC card

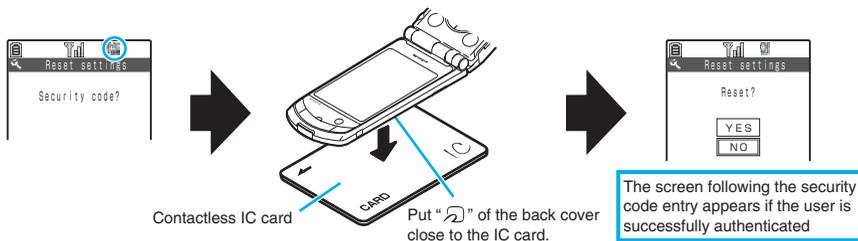
Lock is released if you are authenticated as the user.



The lock is released if the user is successfully authenticated

● Using IC card authentication when entering your security code

- “” automatically appears on the security code entry screen, and you can be authenticated as the user for 10 seconds. By putting the FeliCa mark of the FOMA terminal close to the contactless IC card registered with this function during this period, you will be authenticated as the user and able to perform the intended operation.



NOTE

- ◆ This function may be unavailable for some contactless IC cards even if they are compatible with FeliCa.
- ◆ If “Function to reset” under “Face authentication” is set to “Keypad lock”, Face authentication is activated before IC card authentication. After Face authentication is completed, user authentication with IC card authentication (security code entry) is activated.
- ◆ If you use a contactless IC card not registered by this function for user authentication, the message indicating that the lock cannot be released appears, and user authentication fails. If it fails 5 times in a row, IC card authentication becomes unavailable and only your security code will be available for authentication. However, if authentication using your security code is successful afterwards, IC card authentication will be available again.
- ◆ You cannot use the IC card authentication function with entering your security code using IC communication.

<External keys guard>

MENU X (1 second or longer)

Disabling the External Keys

Default setting
OFF

You can disable the external keys (assist key, ) and  (MEMO/CHECK)) by folding a FOMA terminal. You cannot disable  using this function.

- In the situations listed below, the external keys are enabled regardless of this setting. However, you cannot activate the camera by pressing  for 1 second or longer with a FOMA terminal folded.
 - A FOMA terminal is open.
 - An equipment such as flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the earphone terminal.
 - An external connector is connected to a PC or other device and “” and “” appear on the screen.
 - An external connected is connected to a printer and “” appears on the screen.

1 (1 second or longer)

The external keys are disabled (when a FOMA terminal is folded) and “” appears on the screen.

■ To cancel this function

- ▶ Repeat Step 1

“” disappears.



<Face authentication>

Using Face Authentication

Default setting

OFF New image: Not stored Function to reset: Only IC card lock selected

Take a photo of your face to identify you when releasing Keypad lock and IC card lock. Register a name of the image as a keyword used in case that the authentication fails.

- If the front camera lens is dirty, malfunction may occur. Wipe off the dirt with a soft cloth before use.
- Whether you are properly identified depends on the face status. The following measures may be available:

Condition	Measures
There is a big contrast between bright and dark, e.g. because the light is too strong or you are under incandescent light in a dark place	Move to a place where the face is evenly lighted.
The light shines on your face and the whole face looks white	
Hair, glasses, mask, etc. hides the characteristics of your face (eyes, nose, mouth, eyebrows, etc.)	Do up your hair or take off your glasses or mask so that your eyes, nose, mouth and eyebrows can be seen clearly.

- The face authentication technology does not guarantee complete identification. NTT DoCoMo shall not be liable for any losses or damages to you arising from use by a third party or misauthentication.

1  ▶ **“Settings” ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “Face authentication” ▶ Enter your security code**

2 **“ON” ▶ “OK”**

The “New image” screen appears. Read the cautions carefully.

- **To cancel Face authentication**
 - ▶ “OFF” ▶ “YES” or “NO”



Function menu ▶ p.170

3 **Adjust your eyes to the guide frame** 

The shot is repeated three times. Each shot is saved.

If the save or shot is not completed, the already saved shot is deleted, so that no image is stored.

When three shots are completely saved, the “Edit image name” screen appears.

- **To stop shooting halfway**
 - ▶  ▶ “YES”



New image

4 **Enter an image name** ▶ **“YES”**

The entered image name is used as a keyword in case that the authentication fails. An image name can contain 2 to 8 double-byte or 4 to 16 single-byte characters.

- **To edit an image name**
 - ▶ Select “NO” or the image name

5 **Use**  **to select a checkbox** () ▶  **(Finish)**

The checked () items are subject to Face authentication. Deselect items for which you do not want to use Face authentication.

Function menu (Face authentication screen)

New image	Stores images.
Edit image name	▶ Enter an image name ▶ “YES”
Delete image	Deletes images.
Function to reset	Selects the function to release using Face authentication. ▶ Use  to select a checkbox (<input type="checkbox"/>) ▶  (Finish)

NOTE

- ◆ Keep a separate note of the stored image name, which is required in case authentication fails. To prevent others from knowing it, use a character combination that cannot be easily guessed.
- ◆ If the same image is used for a long period of time, the authentication may fail because your face changes due to age, sunburns or scars. To maintain high successful authentication rate, you are recommended to update your image occasionally.
- ◆ If IC card lock or Keypad lock is set to “Function to reset” and IC card authentication is also set to on at the same time, Face authentication is activated before IC card authentication.

● Using Face authentication to temporarily release Keypad lock

If you have stored an image for Face authentication and selected Keypad lock for Function to reset, Face authentication is performed to identify that you are the owner of the FOMA terminal when releasing the lock.

- If Face authentication fails, enter the image name registered as a keyword for “Face authentication” to release the lock.
- To use Face authentication to release IC card lock → p.303

1 **Press**  () **on the standby screen**

The “Face scanning” screen appears.

2 Position your face so that the entire face appears on the display

■ If the face authentication fails

- ▶ Enter the image name▶“OK”



3 Enter your security code

Keypad lock is released temporarily and “” disappears from the screen.

<Mail security>

Setting Security for Mail Folders

Default setting
No security

This function enables you to apply security to your Inbox, Outbox, Draft or other folders so that their contents cannot be viewed by other people without your permission. Secured mailboxes or folders cannot be opened unless the security code is entered.

- The entered security code is valid until you exit the Inbox folder list screen or Outbox folder list screen to end a mail task. While it is valid, you do not need to enter the security code to open an secured Inbox or Outbox folder.
- The “” icon appears for the secured mailboxes.
- For a secured folder, an icon such as “”, “”, “” or “” appears before the folder name on the folder list screen.
- If you set security for Inbox or Outbox, e-mail addresses are not recorded in the Sent address or Received address list.

Setting security for individual mailboxes

1 ▶“Mail”▶“Mail settings”▶“Mail security”▶Enter your security code▶Use to select a checkbox ()

The selected mailbox is checked.

To deselect the checked mailbox, select it again.



2 When you finish the settings, press (Finish)

Setting security for individual folders

1 Inbox folder list screen (p.258)/Outbox folder list screen (p.258)▶ (FUNC)▶“Mail security”▶Enter your security code▶“YES”

■ To cancel mail security

- ▶ Repeat Step 1

<Restrictions>

Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers

Default setting
All OFF

To prevent users from making private calls or receiving nuisance calls, you can restrict calls to/from the specific phone numbers stored in the phonebook.

- The functions listed below can be set:

Item	Description
Restrict dialing	Disables calls to phone numbers other than the specified ones. Use the phonebook to call the numbers specified in this function.
Call rejection	Rejects calls from the specified phone numbers.
Call acceptance	Accepts calls only from the specified phone numbers.
Call Forwarding	Forwards calls from the specified phone numbers regardless of whether Call Forwarding is activated or deactivated.
Voice Mail	Automatically connects calls from the specified phone numbers to the Voice Mail service center regardless of whether Voice Mail is activated or deactivated.

- You can specify up to 20 phone numbers in each item.
- You cannot set this function for UIM phonebook entries.
- This function is only valid when a caller shows the caller ID. “Caller ID Request” and “Call setting w/o ID” should be set in conjunction with this function.

- You cannot concurrently set Call rejection and Call acceptance, or Call Forwarding and Voice Mail for the same number.
- This function cannot be set for phonebook entries added in “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”.
- If you edit or delete a phone number specified in this function, the restrictions are canceled. However, setting “Restrict dialing” restricts the phonebook editing or deleting, which prevents you from changing or deleting a phone number to cancel Restrict dialing.
- The “Restrict dialing”, “Call rejection” and “Call acceptance” settings are also applied to the PushTalk phonebook entries.

● When Restrict dialing is set

- You cannot make any calls using keypad and Received calls record including the specified phone numbers. Also, you cannot retrieve phone numbers other than the specified ones, add to, edit or delete phonebook entries, exchange data between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and the FOMA card (UIM), or operate the phonebook using “UIM operation”.
- The Redial/Dialed calls records and Sent address list that had been stored before the Restrict dialing setting are deleted. However, you can dial or send mails using the records of Redial/Dialed calls or Sent address list that have been stored after the Restrict dialing setting.

Setting dialing/receiving restrictions on phone numbers

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.111) (FUNC) “Restrictions” Enter your security code Select a function

A star “★” appears next to the selected function.

■ To deselect a selected function

- ▶ Select a function with a star “★”

The function is deselected and the star “★” disappears.

■ To set dialing/receiving restrictions on multiple phone numbers

- ▶ Press [CLR] twice to return to the phonebook list screen ▶ Use  to show the desired phone number ▶ Repeat step 1

Once you press  to return to the standby screen after setting Restrict dialing, you can no longer set further restrictions. To set more restrictions, cancel the restrictions that have already been set for a phone number and then set restrictions again for phone numbers including the canceled number.



NOTE

<Restrict dialing>

- ◆ You can still make calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) when Restrict dialing is set.
- ◆ To use “Automatic display” at the same time as Restrict dialing, set Restrict dialing for phonebook numbers for which “Automatic display” has been set.
- ◆ Only the phone numbers specified in Restrict dialing appear in the phonebook.

<Call rejection/Call acceptance>

- ◆ A FOMA terminal receives i-mode mails and SMS regardless of this function.
- ◆ If you receive a call from a phone number specified in Call rejection or from a number not specified in Call acceptance, the number is recorded as a “Missed call” in the “Received calls” record and the “Missed call” desk top icon appears on the standby screen.
- ◆ If you receive a call from a phone number specified in Call rejection or from a number not specified in Call acceptance, the call is rejected even when the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is set to “Activate”. However, if the ring time for the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is set to 0 (zero) seconds, or if a FOMA terminal is turned off or out of the service area, the call is handled by the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service. When this happens, the phone number of the received call is not logged in the “Received calls” record and the “Missed call” desktop icon does not appear on the standby screen.
- ◆ While Original lock is set for “Phonebook” items, this function is disabled and a FOMA terminal accepts calls from the phone numbers specified in Call rejection or the numbers not specified in Call acceptance.
- ◆ You can still make calls even when Call rejection or Call acceptance is set.

<Call Forwarding/Voice Mail>

- ◆ If you receive a call from a phone number specified in this function, a FOMA terminal rings for roughly 1 second and the call is then either forwarded to the forwarding number or connected to the Voice Mail service center.
- ◆ If no forwarding number is designated or you have not subscribed to “Call Forwarding” or “Voice Mail”, calls from the phone numbers specified in this function are handled as missed calls.
- ◆ While Original lock is set for “Phonebook” items, this function is disabled and a FOMA terminal acts normally when receiving a call from a specified phone number.

1 Phonebook list screen (p.111) ► (FUNC) ► “Restrictions” ► Enter your security code

The “Restrictions” screen appears.



Function menu ► p.173

Function menu (Restrictions screen)

1 Restrictions screen ► Highlight a function with a star “★” ► (FUNC) ► Select any item

Check settings	Shows a list of the phonebook entries for which the highlighted function is set.
Release settings	Cancels all the highlighted function settings.

<Call setting w/o ID>

Rejecting Calls from Unidentified Callers

Default setting | All Accept (Select ring tone: Same as ring tone | Select calling disp.: Same as display)

This function enables you to accept or reject voice calls, videophone calls and PushTalk calls from callers who hide the caller ID based on the reason given.

1 (MENU) ► “Settings” ► “Lock/Security” ► “Call setting w/o ID” ► Enter your security code ► Select any item

Unknown	Specifies whether to accept calls from callers who are unable to show the caller ID, such as calls from overseas or payphones or calls sent via a call forwarding service. Relaying phone companies may show caller IDs in some cases.
Payphone	Specifies whether to accept calls from payphones.
User unset	Specifies whether to accept calls that hide the caller ID due to the setting of the caller's phone.

2 Specify whether to accept or reject incoming calls for the selected item

Accept	Accepts calls.	
	Select ring tone	Selects a ring tone. → p.124 When “Same as ring tone” is selected, a FOMA terminal acts according to the “Phone” setting in “Select ring tone”.
	Select calling disp.	Selects the call receiving image. → p.134 When “Same as display” is selected, a FOMA terminal acts according to the “Calling” setting in “Display setting”.
Reject	Rejects calls.	

NOTE

- ◆ The ring tone and call receiving image selected in this function are for voice calls hiding the caller ID. For videophone calls hiding the caller ID, the “Videophone” setting in “Select ring tone” and “V.phone Calling” setting in “Display setting” are applied. If you receive PushTalk calls hiding the caller ID, the “PushTalk” setting in “Select ring tone” is applied.
- ◆ When “Reject” is set, the other party hears a busy tone.
- ◆ If you receive a call from a caller who is set to “Reject”, the call is rejected even when the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is set to “Activate”. However, if the ring time for the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is set to 0 (zero) seconds, or if a FOMA terminal is turned off or out of the service area, the call is handled by the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service.
- ◆ A FOMA terminal receives i-mode mails and SMS regardless of this function.
- ◆ Only Accept/Reject of “User unset” can be set for PushTalk calls.

Muting Ring Tones for Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook

Default setting

Set mute seconds: OFF Mute seconds: 1 second Missed calls display: Display

Use this function to set the mute time until a FOMA terminal starts ringing when receiving a voice, videophone or PushTalk call of which caller is not stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook or UIM phonebook (Set mute seconds). You can prevent accidentally making a call using the Received calls record to a number such as a nuisance caller that only rings for a short period of time.

- The specified mute seconds is also enabled when you receive a voice, videophone or PushTalk call hiding the caller ID, or receive a call during another voice, videophone or PushTalk call.
- If "Reject unknown" is set to "Reject", you cannot set "Set mute seconds".

1 (MENU) ▶ "Settings" ▶ "Incoming call" ▶ "Ring time(sec.)" ▶ Select any item

Set mute seconds	ON	▶ Enter a mute time (01 to 99 seconds) Sets the time for which a ring tone is muted before a FOMA terminal starts ringing.
	OFF	Sets 0 seconds to the time for which a ring tone is muted before a FOMA terminal starts ringing.
Missed calls display	Specifies whether to show received calls for which no ring tone sounded in the Missed calls record.	

NOTE

- ◆ While a FOMA terminal is ringing, a ring tone sounds, the terminal vibrates, the incoming call lamp lights up or flashes and an incoming call is indicated on the image window.
- ◆ When you receive a call from a caller stored in the phonebook as a secret entry, a FOMA terminal operates as specified in this function.
- ◆ If the time set in Set mute seconds is longer than the ring time for the Record message function, a FOMA terminal switches directly to Record message without ringing. To have a ring tone sound before a message is recorded, set a longer ring time for Record message than the time set in Set mute seconds. The same applies to the ring times for Voice Mail, Call Forwarding and Automatic answer.

Blocking Calls from Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook

Default setting
Accept

You can specify whether a FOMA terminal accepts or rejects calls from phone numbers that are not stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) or UIM phonebook.

- This function is only valid when a caller shows the caller ID. This function should be set in conjunction with "Caller ID Request" and "Call setting w/o ID".
- If "Set mute seconds" under "Ring time(sec.)" is set to "ON", you cannot set "Reject unknown".

1 (MENU) ▶ "Settings" ▶ "Lock/Security" ▶ "Reject unknown" ▶ Enter your security code ▶ "Reject"

- To receive calls from callers who are not stored in the phonebook
▶ "Accept"

NOTE

- ◆ When "Call setting w/o ID" accepts calls from payphones or calls hiding the caller ID, a FOMA terminal acts according to the "Call setting w/o ID" setting even if this function is set to "Reject".
- ◆ When you receive a call from a caller who is stored in the phonebook as a secret entry, the call is accepted even if this function is set to "Reject".
- ◆ When phone numbers are specified in "Call acceptance" in "Restrictions", you can only receive calls from the phone numbers even if this function is set to "Accept".
- ◆ When "Reject" is selected for this function and you receive a call from a phone number not stored in the phonebook, the call is logged as a missed call in the "Received calls" record and the "Missed call" desktop icon appears on the standby screen. Even if the "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service is set to "Activate", the caller hears a busy tone. However, if the ring time for the "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service is set to 0 (zero) seconds, or if a FOMA terminal is turned off or out of the service area, the caller does not hear a busy tone and the call is handled by the "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service. When this happens, the phone number of the received call is not logged in the "Received calls" record and the "Missed call" desktop icon does not appear on the standby screen.
- ◆ A FOMA terminal receives i-mode mails and SMS regardless of this function.

Disabling Communication Functions

Default setting
Release

You can set a FOMA terminal not to make or receive voice, videophone or PushTalk calls, use i-mode, or send or receive mails. This function is useful when you want to use a FOMA terminal without having to worry about interruptions such as incoming voice, videophone or PushTalk calls.

- You can still make voice calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) while in Self mode. Making a voice call to an emergency number cancels Self mode.

1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “Self mode” ▶ “YES”

Self mode is set and “self” appears on the screen.

■ To cancel Self mode

- ▶ Repeat Step 1

Self mode is canceled and “self” disappears from the screen.

● When Self mode is set

- Incoming voice or videophone calls are not logged in the Received calls record and the “Missed call” desktop icon does not appear on the standby screen.
- Callers of voice calls hear the message that your FOMA terminal is out of the service area or turned off. Callers of videophone calls see the message that your FOMA terminal is out of the service area or turned off. If the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is activated, calls are handled in the same way as when a FOMA terminal is turned off.
- If a PushTalk call arrives, a “Disconnected” response is sent to the members.
- MessageR/MessageF and i-mode mails sent to you while Self mode is set are kept at the i-mode Center, and SMS are kept at the SMS Center.
- Data exchange using Infrared data exchange, iC communication or OBEX, packet communication with a PC connected, 64K data communication and user authentication with IC card authentication are also unavailable. However, you can read and write data on the IC card by using the Osaifu-Keitai i-appli.

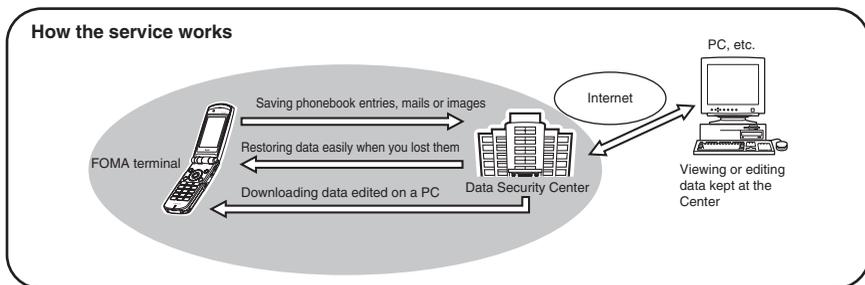
Saving FOMA Terminal Data Online

Subscription
Required

● Data Security Service

Data Security Service is a service where you can back up phonebook entries, images, mails stored in your FOMA terminal (hereinafter referred to as “stored data”) to the DoCoMo Data Security Center. Even if you lose your FOMA terminal or get it wet then the stored data is deleted, use i-mode to retrieve the data stored at the Data Security Center to your new FOMA terminal. In addition, you can easily edit the data stored at the Data Security Center on the My DoCoMo page on your PC, and save the edited data in the FOMA terminal.

* For details on how to use Data Security Service, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.



- Data Security Service is a pay service you need to subscribe to. (To subscribe to the Data Security Service, you need to subscribe to i-mode beforehand).
- See the following pages for saving operations of Data Security Service:
 - “Saving phonebook entries at the Data Security Center” → p.122
 - “Saving mails at the Data Security Center” → p.267
 - “Saving images to the Data Security Center” → p.334
 - “Checking logs of communication with the Data Security Center” → p.122

Other Security Settings

Apart from those explained in this chapter, there are functions/services related to security settings as shown below.

Purpose	Function/Service	Refer to
To prevent others from using IC card functions	IC card lock	p.303
To avoid "nuisance calls" such as prank calls or unsolicited sales calls	Nuisance Call Blocking	p.421
To ignore calls hiding the caller ID	Caller ID Request	p.422
To send data securely by using a digital authentication service *Only available on sites that support FirstPass	FirstPass	p.228
To update FOMA terminal software when necessary	Software Update	p.487
To protect a FOMA terminal against malicious data	Scanning function	p.492
To accept only necessary i-mode mails	Receive option	p.252
To leave/hear the information about the safety using i-mode at the time of disaster	"i-mode Disaster Message Board" service	See "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".
To change your mail address	Change Mail Address	
To check your mail address if you forget it	Confirm Mail Address	
To accept/reject mails from the specified domains	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject/Receive Mail Settings)	
To accept/reject mails only from i-mode terminals		
To accept/reject mails from the specified addresses		
To reject short messages (SMS)	Spam Mail Prevention"SMS Rejection Settings"	
To reject any further incoming i-mode mail sent from an i-mode mobile phone once you have received 200 messages a day from that phone	Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders	
To reject advertisements sent unilaterally	Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail	
To restrict the size of a received mail	Limit Mail Size	
To check the status of mail function settings	Confirm Settings	
To temporarily stop the mail function	Suspend Mail	

NOTE

◆ Be careful when making calls to unknown numbers logged as missed or received call. In particular showing your caller ID to other unknown parties may cause unnecessary problems.

<Nuisance Call Blocking priority sequence>

◆ Priority is assigned as follows when Nuisance Call Blocking functions are set at the same time.

- ① Nuisance Call Blocking
- ② Reject unknown or Ring time(sec.)/Call setting w/o ID/Call rejection

● Camera

Before Using the Camera		178
Shooting Still Images	Photo mode	185
Shooting Movies	Movie mode	192
Changing the Shooting Settings		197
Using the Bar Code Reader	Bar code reader	199
Scanning Text	Access reader	201

Before Using the Camera

You can shoot still images and movies using the built-in camera.

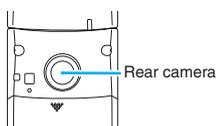
Using the camera

To switch between the front camera and rear camera, press  (FUNC) on the shooting screen and select "Front camera" or "Rear camera" from the function menu.

■ Rear camera

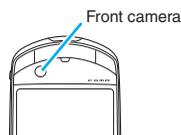
This camera is useful for taking photos of other people, animals or scenery. What you see is what you get on the screen (Normal display: photographed as it appears on the screen). This camera is available for close-up shooting. → p.178

You can also shoot still images by using auto focus. → p.185



■ Front camera

This camera is useful for taking photos of yourself. Images appear as if you were looking in the mirror (Mirror display) and shot images are reversed (Normal display) when saved in a FOMA terminal.



- The cameras are manufactured using extremely high-precision technology. However, the shots may include lines or spots that appear dark or bright. Random color points (statistical noise) may also appear on the photographed images particularly when you shoot in dim conditions.
- Before shooting, wipe the lens clean with a soft cloth. Fingerprints or grease spots on the lens may prevent the camera from focusing properly and cause blurred images.
- Take care not to press on the lens when folding a FOMA terminal. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Image quality may deteriorate if a FOMA terminal is left in a warm place for a long period of time.
- Do not leave the camera under direct sunlight for a long period of time or shoot directly at the sun or an extremely bright lamp. Doing so may lead to discoloration of photographed images or cause the camera to malfunction.

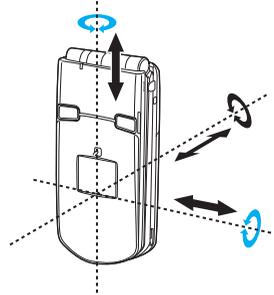
● Close-up

- To take close-up photos, select "Close-up" from "Photo mode" (p.194) under "Image quality". The camera is focused on an object approximately 10 cm away from the rear lens.

● Shake correction function

Your FOMA terminal incorporates the shake correction function. This function prevents camera shake in six axial directions while shooting still images and four axial directions while shooting movies using the rear camera.

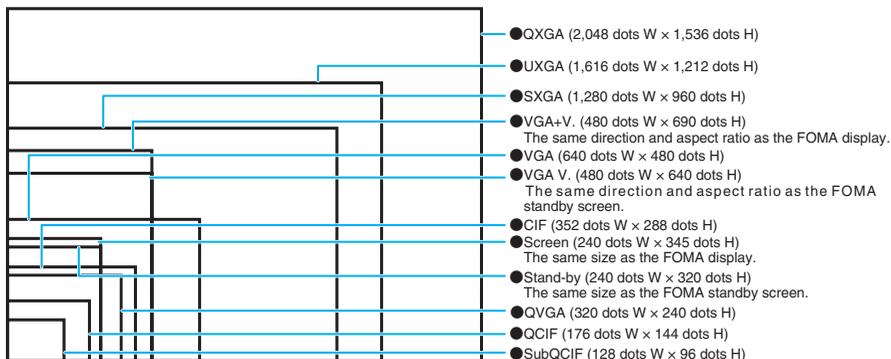
Shake correction function → p.195



* Blue arrows only applicable to still images

Image size

- The following shows the image sizes supported by FOMA N903i. Choose the size that suits your purpose:



* The image sizes framed above are intended as an approximate guide and not the actual sizes.

Image shooting specifications

- The displayed remaining storage count is an approximate value determined according to the settings activated when shooting. Depending on the situation, the count may not change or shot data may be saved even if 0 is displayed.
- The following table lists the sizes and approximate numbers of images that can be stored: (A: Available, U: Unavailable)

Image size	Camera		Quality setting	Maximum number of images	
	Rear camera	Front camera		N903i (Phone)	microSD memory card (64M bytes)
QXGA (2,048 dots wide × 1,536 dots high)	A	U	Super Fine	Approx. 6	Approx. 60
			Fine	Approx. 8	Approx. 80
			Normal	Approx. 14	Approx. 118
UXGA (1,616 dots wide × 1,212 dots high)	A	U	Super Fine	Approx. 12	Approx. 99
			Fine	Approx. 14	Approx. 118
			Normal	Approx. 22	Approx. 189
SXGA (1,280 dots wide × 960 dots high)	A	U	Super Fine	Approx. 12	Approx. 99
			Fine	Approx. 14	Approx. 118
			Normal	Approx. 22	Approx. 189
VGA+ V. (480 dots wide × 690 dots high)	A	U	Super Fine	Approx. 14	Approx. 118
			Fine	Approx. 72	Approx. 542
			Normal	Approx. 130	Approx. 948
VGA (640 dots wide × 480 dots high)	A	A	Super Fine	Approx. 14	Approx. 118
			Fine	Approx. 72	Approx. 542
			Normal	Approx. 130	Approx. 948
VGA V. (480 dots wide × 640 dots high)	A	U	Super Fine	Approx. 14	Approx. 118
			Fine	Approx. 72	Approx. 542
			Normal	Approx. 130	Approx. 948
CIF (352 dots wide × 288 dots high)	A	A	Super Fine	Approx. 34	Approx. 291
			Fine	Approx. 130	Approx. 948
			Normal	Approx. 180	Approx. 1,265
Screen (240 dots wide × 345 dots high)	A	A	Super Fine	Approx. 72	Approx. 542
			Fine	Approx. 130	Approx. 948
			Normal	Approx. 180	Approx. 1,265

Stand-by (240 dots wide × 320 dots high)	A	A	Super Fine	Approx. 72	Approx. 542
			Fine	Approx. 130	Approx. 948
			Normal	Approx. 180	Approx. 1,265
QCIF (176 dots wide × 144 dots high)	A	A	Super Fine	Approx. 130	Approx. 948
			Fine	Approx. 360	Approx. 1,897
			Normal	Approx. 480	Approx. 3,795
SubQCIF (128 dots wide × 96 dots high)	A	A	Super Fine	Approx. 240	Approx. 1,897
			Fine	Approx. 360	Approx. 1,897
			Normal	Approx. 480	Approx. 3,795

* The FOMA terminal defines UXGA as 1,616 dots wide × 1,212 dots high and SXGA as 1,280 dots wide × 960 dots high.

Movie shooting specifications

- Up to 100 movies can be saved in a FOMA terminal (Phone). This may vary depending on the image size settings or number of downloaded i-motion files.
- The default length of movie shooting is roughly 3 minutes and 38 seconds. However, the shooting time per movie varies depending on factors such as the type of object.
- The maximum number of movies that can be stored varies depending on shooting lengths.
- The following table lists the sizes and approximate numbers/time of movies that can be stored: (A: Available, U: Unavailable)

Image size	Camera		File size	Movie type set	Maximum number of movies				
	Rear camera	Front camera			N903i (Phone)	microSD memory card (64M bytes)			
QVGA (320 dots wide × 240 dots high)	A	U	2MB	Normal	Approx. 2	Approx. 32			
				Video	Approx. 2	Approx. 32			
				Voice	Approx. 2	Approx. 32			
			Long time	Normal	—	Approx. 11 min.			
				Video	—	Approx. 11 min.			
				Voice	—	Approx. 120 min.			
QCIF (176 dots wide × 144 dots high)	A	A	500KB	Normal	Approx. 8	Approx. 128			
				Video	Approx. 8	Approx. 128			
				Voice	Approx. 8	Approx. 128			
			2MB	Normal	Approx. 2	Approx. 32			
				Video	Approx. 2	Approx. 32			
				Voice	Approx. 2	Approx. 32			
			Long time	Normal	—	Approx. 73 min.			
				Video	—	Approx. 87 min.			
				Voice	—	Approx. 120 min.			
			SubQCIF (128 dots wide × 96 dots high)	A	A	500KB	Normal	Approx. 8	Approx. 128
							Video	Approx. 8	Approx. 128
							Voice	Approx. 8	Approx. 128
2MB	Normal	Approx. 2				Approx. 32			
	Video	Approx. 2				Approx. 32			
	Voice	Approx. 2				Approx. 32			
Long time	Normal	—				Approx. 90 min.			
	Video	—				Approx. 116 min.			
	Voice	—				Approx. 120 min.			

Notes on using the camera

■ Notes on shooting

- A sound heard when the rear camera is launched is no problem.
- The color and brightness in still images or movies shot with the built-in camera may differ from those of the actual objects.
- Do not leave the camera under direct sunlight for a long period of time or shoot directly at the sun or an extremely bright lamp. Doing so may lead to discoloration of photographed images or cause the camera to malfunction.
- Take care that your fingers, hair or the camera strap do not cover the lens when shooting.
- Shooting images or movies uses a large amount of battery. It is recommended that you turn off the camera immediately after you finish shooting. The screen may look dark or blurred if you shoot with low battery.
- If one of the following events occurs during continuous or movie shooting, the shooting is interrupted and then the respective screen appears. After finishing the screen, the camera screen reappears and the shots taken before receiving a call or alarm notification can be saved. If one of the following events occurs during brightness or other adjustment, the adjustment is determined and the camera menu reappears. If one of the following events occurs during self-timer operation, the operation is interrupted.
 - A voice call, videophone call, PushTalk call or 64K data communication data arrives.
 - The alarm of Alarm clock, Schedule or To Do list is given.
 - An operation of another function is performed.
- Shooting is not interrupted in the following cases:
 - If you receive a mail, MessageR or MessageF while using the camera (including while the shooting screen appears), the shooting continues without the reception results screen being displayed regardless of the "Receiving display" settings (p.270).
 - Selecting "Operation preferred" in "Alarm setting" enables you to continue shooting, perform the camera settings or operate the auto timer even when it is time to give an alarm.
- Even in "Manner mode" or "Public mode (Driving mode)", a FOMA terminal emits the shutter sound, auto timer tone and AF lock sound. Even if "Earphone" is set to "Earp. (Speaker in 20s)" or "Earphone(only)" and an earphone is attached to the terminal, these sounds come out of the speaker.
- If Shake correction is set to "OFF", moving a FOMA terminal while shooting may blur images. It is recommended to set Shake correction to "Auto" before shooting.
- When shooting a still image, keep a FOMA terminal steady until it emits the shutter sound and finishes loading the shot image (the shooting checking screen appears). Furthermore, keep the FOMA terminal steady while a message indicating the shot is being processed appears.
- After you display the shooting screen, switch the camera modes or change the camera settings, it may take long for the brightness or color tone to become its best.
- Setting "Auto save set" (p.186, 193) to "ON" allows you to automatically save the shots to the folder specified in "Select to save" without showing the shooting checking screen.
- The camera is automatically finished if you do not press any keys for three minutes or longer.

■ Copyright Information

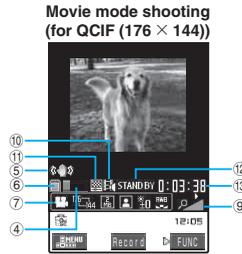
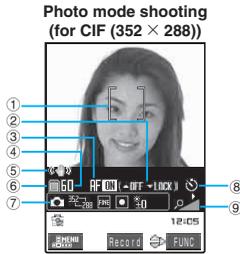
- Take care not to infringe copyrights when you duplicate or edit the images you shot or recorded with a FOMA terminal. Also take care not to infringe portrait rights by using or altering another person's portrait without his or her permission. It may be prohibited to shoot or record the stage performance, entertainment or exhibition even if you only want to enjoy it personally.



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Guide to the shooting screen

The shooting screens show the icons of the camera settings.



Function	Icon	Description	Refer to
① Focus frame		Setting AFchange to "ON" changes the auto focus frame as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • White: Before focusing • Dotted white: Focusing • Green: Focused • Dotted red: Focusing failed 	p.185
② AF operation guidance		Shows the guide to the AFchange and focus lock.	p.185
③ Auto focus change		"AFchange" is set to "ON".	p.185
		"AFchange" is set to "OFF".	
④ Remaining storage count/ Memory info* ¹		Shows the number of photos that can be saved in the FOMA terminal (Phone) or microSD memory card on the Photo mode screen. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • White: 11 or more • Yellow: 10 or fewer • Red: No memory available 	—
		Shows the amounts of total and available memories on the FOMA terminal (Phone) or microSD memory card using a bar and colors before shooting a movie. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Blue: 500K bytes or more remaining • Yellow: Less than 500K bytes remaining • Red: No memory available² 	—
⑤ Shake correction		Appears when Shake correction is set to "Auto".	p.195
⑥ Select to save		Shows the destination folder.	p.186 p.193
⑦ Shooting menu		Shows the shooting settings. You can access functions to perform the settings by pressing or to .	p.183
⑧ Auto timer		Shows that the auto timer is set.	p.198
⑨ Zoom		Shows the zoom settings. When a zoom arrow (or) appears, you can zoom in or out by pressing or .	p.197
⑩ Movie type set		Shoots movies with video and voice.	p.193
		Shoots movies with video only.	
		Shoots movies with voice only.	

⑪ Quality setting		Shoots movies with the image quality set to "Long dur. Mode".	p. 193
		Shoots movies with the image quality set to "Normal".	
		Shoots movies with the image quality set to "Fine mode".	
		Shoots movies with the image quality set to "Super Fine mode".	
⑫ Shooting status		Shows that a movie is being shot.	p. 192
		Shows that movie shooting is in standby.	
⑬ Remaining shooting time		Shows the time left (hours:minutes:seconds).	p. 192

*1 : The icon does not appear if microSD is selected for the destination and the microSD memory card is not inserted.

*2 : Still images or movies can be shot as long as the "File size" is not set to "Long time" to shoot movies. The shot is saved or overwritten in the FOMA terminal (Phone)/microSD memory card.

NOTE

◆The displayed remaining storage count is an approximate value determined according to the settings activated when shooting. Depending on the situation, the count may not change or shot data may be saved even if 0 is displayed.

● Guide to the shooting menu

- Pressing (MENU) or to shows the shooting menu.
- Press (FUNC) and select "Help" or press to show the keys assigned to the shooting menu or the shooting operations.
- The settings that can be performed from the shooting menu can also be accessed from the function menu.

1 Shooting screen (MENU) Use to select any of the following

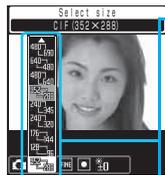
Neuropointer is also available for selecting items.

Items that can be selected from the shooting menu vary depending on the camera mode.



CHG camera-mode

- Movie mode Shoots a movie. → p.192
- Chance capture Shoots a movie retroactively from the point you end shooting. → p.196
- Picture voice Records voice to add to a still image you shot. → p.196
- Photo mode Shoots a still image. → p.185
- A-Continuous mode (Auto) Shoots still images continuously at a time. → p.189
- M-Continuous mode (Manual) Continuously shoots still images one by one. → p.189
- Voice mode Records voice only. → p.197



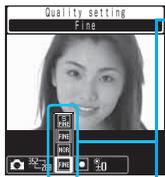
Select size
(Ex. "Photo mode")

- QXGA Shoots in QXGA (2,048 × 1,536).
 - UXGA Shoots in UXGA (1,616 × 1,212).
 - SXGA Shoots in SXGA (1,280 × 960).
 - VGA+ V Shoots in VGA+ V. (480 × 690).
 - VGA Shoots in VGA (640 × 480).
 - VGA V Shoots in VGA V. (480 × 640).
 - JAVA (VGA)* Shoots in JAVA (VGA) (480 × 480).
 - CIF Shoots in CIF (352 × 288).
 - Screen Shoots in Screen (240 × 345).
 - Stand-by Shoots in Stand-by (240 × 320).
 - QCIF Shoots in QCIF (176 × 144).
 - SubQCIF Shoots in SubQCIF (128 × 96).
 - JAVA* Shoots in JAVA (240 × 240).
- (Default: Screen for the front camera, VGA+ V. for the rear camera)

Select size
(Ex. "Movie mode")

- QVGA Shoots in QVGA (320 × 240).
 - QCIF Shoots in QCIF (176 × 144).
 - SubQCIF Shoots in SubQCIF (128 × 96).
- (Default: QCIF)

* : This option appears only when the camera is launched from an i-appli.



Quality setting
(Ex. "Photo mode")

- Super Fine Saves the shot as a large-sized file.
- Fine Saves the shot as a medium-sized file.
- Normal Saves the shot as a small-sized file.
(Default: Fine)

File size
(Ex. "Movie mode")

- 500KB Shoots up to 500K bytes as the file size.
- 2MB Shoots up to 2M bytes as the file size.
- Long time Shoots for a long time.
(default: 2MB)

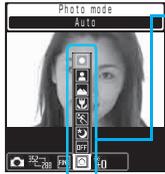
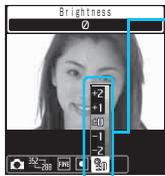


Photo mode
(Ex. "Photo mode")

- Auto Selects the shooting mode automatically.
- Portrait Suitable for shooting people.
- Scenery Suitable for shooting scenery
(including night views).
- Close-up Suitable for close-up shooting. → p.178
- Sports mode Suitable for shooting moving objects.
- Night mode Suitable for shooting people in dim
places.
- OFF Does not use any effects for shooting.
(Default: Auto (Photo mode, Continuous mode)/Portrait (Movie mode))



Brightness

- Sets the brightness of the shot
(When the camera launches: ±0) (-2/-1±0/+1/+2).



White balance

- Auto Automatically corrects the color.
- Fine Suitable for shooting outside on a sunny
day.
- Cloudy Suitable for shooting outside on a cloudy
day or in the shade.
- Light bulb Suitable for shooting under incandescent
light.
- Fluorescent lamp Suitable for shooting under fluorescent
light.
(Default: Auto)

NOTE

◆ You can create desktop icons of "Movie mode", "Photo mode" and "Voice mode" from the functions menu launched from **Menu** ▶ (LifeKit) ▶ "Camera". The "Photo mode" desktop icon is pasted at the time of purchase.
Desktop icons → p.147

Shooting Still Images

Use the built-in camera to shoot still images.

- You can shoot with a FOMA terminal folded.
→ p.188
- You can also save the shots directly in the microSD memory card.
- You can specify the folder to store images. You can also set a FOMA terminal to save shot images automatically in the specified folder after shooting.

How to shoot still images

The auto focus function is available for shooting still images with the rear camera.

- Press on the "Photo mode" screen (p.185) to turn on/off the auto focus.
- Switch between ON and OFF to select any of the following three shooting methods:

Method	Auto focus	Description
Auto focus	ON	When you release the shutter, the focus is automatically adjusted on the object in the center of the screen. The center of the screen is focused and then a still image is shot. When the object is focused, the focus frame turns green. When the object is not focused, the focus frame turns red.
AF lock		Locks the focus on an object before releasing the shutter. → p.185 E.g. when an object you want to shoot is off-centered on the screen, you can manually focus on the object and change the composition.
Focus fixed	OFF	Shoots without using the auto focus. You can quickly shoot a still image so that you do not miss the shutter chance.

NOTE

- ◆ The auto focus ON/OFF settings changed during shooting are retained while the camera runs. The auto focus is always set to "ON" when the camera launches.
- ◆ Keep a distance of at least 30 cm from an object when using the auto focus function.
- ◆ The object may not be properly focused when:
 - It is dark
 - The object is poorly contrasted (there is little difference between bright and dark)
 - There are close objects and remote objects seen through the lens
 - There is a light or something in the shooting area
 - The object is moving
 - You are moving a FOMA terminal

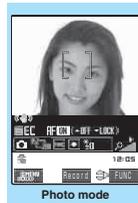
- ◆ Completing the focus lock fixes the camera brightness. If the camera is moved after completing the focus lock, the camera brightness may be inappropriate then. In this case, retry the focus lock, or cancel the AF lock to adjust the brightness.

Shooting with a FOMA terminal opened <Shoot open>

- 1 On the standby screen

The "Photo mode" screen appears.

Pressing for 1 second or longer on the standby screen also launches the "Photo mode" screen.



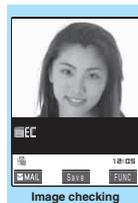
Function menu → p.186

- To turn on/off the auto focus

- To shoot with a FOMA terminal folded "Shoot folded" → p.188

- 2 Point the camera at an object or

The image is shot. The incoming call lamp lights in red for approx. 3 seconds. The "Image checking" screen appears.



Function menu → p.187

- To shoot with Focus fixed
 - ▶ Set the auto focus to "OFF" or

- To retake the shot "YES"

- 3 The shot image is stored in the folder specified in "Select to save" (p.187).

Shooting still images with AF lock

- 1 Photo mode screen (p.185) Press to set the auto focus to "ON"

Confirm that the auto focus icon is .
→ p.182

- 2 Point the camera at an object

Pressing again resets the focus lock. Completing the focus lock turns the focus frame into green and sounds the AF lock tone.

- 3 or The image is shot.

NOTE

- ◆ It may take some time to lock focus. If the focus lock fails, the AF lock tone does not sound and the focus frame turns into dotted red.

- ◆ Following the steps below also displays the Photo mode screen:
 - (MENU) ▶ (LifeKit) ▶ “Camera” ▶ “Photo mode”
- ◆ Some images may go grainy, depending on the sizes. When you set the “Display size” to “Fit in display” and shoot an image in QCIF (176 × 144) or in SubQCIF (128 × 96), the image appears enlarged and may look grainy on the image checking screen.
- ◆ Do not remove the microSD memory card while saving an image to the microSD memory card. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card to malfunction.
- ◆ If the battery is low, you may be unable to save the shots.
- ◆ Turning off a FOMA terminal or removing the battery pack during the file saving process may save incomplete files.
- ◆ “” flashes while data is being saved to the microSD memory card.
- ◆ You cannot use the auto focus function if “Photo mode” (p.184) is set to “Night mode”.

Function menu (Photo mode screen/Continuous mode screen)

Front camera, Rear camera	Switches between the front camera and the rear camera.
CHG camera-mode	Changes the camera mode.
Select size	Performs the same settings as the shooting menu (p.183).
Quality setting	
AFchange^{*1}	Turns on/off the auto focus on the rear camera.
Light^{*1}	Turns on/off the light.
Select finder^{*1*2}	Sets whether the preview of the image shot with a FOMA terminal open will be shown on the display or image display.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Front (when the camera launches) • Rear 	Shows the preview on the display. Shows the preview on the image display.
Interval/Number^{*3}	“Setting the shooting interval and number of shots” → p.190
Image quality	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Photo mode • Brightness • White balance • Color mode set 	“Selecting the mode suitable for shooting” → p.194 ▶ Use  to adjust the brightness  Selects the brightness among 5 levels from “-2 to ±0 to +2”. The brightness is automatically specified if you do not press any keys for two seconds. “±0” is the default setting when the camera launches. “Setting the white balance” → p.194 The white balance cannot be specified unless Photo mode is “OFF”. “Setting the effects on the photographed images” → p.194

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Image tuning^{*1} 	“Avoiding the flicker on the photographed images” → p.195
Shutter sound	Sets the shutter sound. “Sound 1” is selected at the time of purchase.
Auto timer	“Using the auto timer” → p.198
Select frame^{*2}	“Shooting framed images” → p.191
Auto save set	Turns on/off the auto save set.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ON • OFF (default) 	Does not display the image checking screen when you shoot an image. The image is automatically saved to the destination folder specified in “Select to save”. Displays the image checking screen when you shoot an image.
Select to save	Specifies the folder where the shot will be saved.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Phone (default) • microSD 	▶ Select a folder to save the image The Camera folder under My picture is selected at the time of purchase. ▶ Select a folder to save the image
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • File unrestricted (default) • File restricted 	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it. Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Display size	Specifies the display settings for an image smaller than Stand-by (240 × 320). The display size cannot be specified if the image size is neither QCIF (176 × 144) nor SubQCIF (128 × 96).
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Actual size (default) • Fit in display 	Displays an image in the actual size. Enlarges an image to the display size.
Memory info	Shows the data sizes of images, etc. stored and available spaces on the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card.
Help	Shows the shooting guide.
Shake correction^{*1*2}	“Setting the shake correction” → p.195
Attach location	Adds the location information to the shot image.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • From position loc. • From loc. history • Loc. Info detail • Delete loc. info 	Obtains your current location information and adds it to the image. Adds the location information retrieved from the location history to the image. Displays the detail screen for the added location information to see the date and time, latitude, longitude and geodetic system (Datum). Deletes the added location information.

*1 : The option cannot be selected or set for the front camera.

*2 : The option cannot be set in Continuous mode.

*3 : The option cannot be set in Photo mode.

NOTE

<Select finder>

- ◆ When a FOMA terminal is folded, the preview of a shot image is shown on the image display regardless of this setting.
- ◆ When the front camera is used, the preview of a shot image is shown on the display regardless of this setting.

<Shutter sound>

- ◆ A FOMA terminal does not emit the shutter sound in Manner mode. However, setting "Original" for "Manner mode set" and "ON" for "VM tone" emits the sound. You cannot set a downloaded melody as the shutter sound and cannot adjust the shutter sound volume.

<Select to save>

- ◆ Selecting microSD creates a folder automatically if there are no folders on the microSD memory card.
- ◆ You cannot select microSD if the number of files stored in the selected folder has already reached the maximum.

<File restriction>

- ◆ You can change the file restriction setting for a shot image after it is saved.

● Setting the image quality for still images

- 1 Photo mode screen (p.185)/
Continuous mode screen (p.189) ▶
ⓘ (FUNC) ▶ "Quality setting" ▶
Select "Super Fine", "Fine" or
"Normal"**

The mode can also be set from the shooting menu. → p.183
Data sizes caused by the combinations of "Quality setting" and "Select size" settings are listed below. Higher the image quality (in order of Super Fine, Fine and Normal), larger the data size becomes. For saved images, add up to 5K bytes to the sizes below.

Quality setting Select size	Super Fine	Fine (default)	Normal
QXGA (2,048 × 1,536)	995K bytes max.	745K bytes max.	495K bytes max.
UXGA (1,616 × 1,212) SXGA (1,280 × 960)	595K bytes max.	495K bytes max.	300K bytes max.
VGA+ V. (480 × 690) VGA (640 × 480) VGA V. (480 × 640)	495K bytes max.	95K bytes max.	50K bytes max.
CIF (352 × 288)	198K bytes max.	50K bytes max.	35K bytes max.
Screen (240 × 345) Stand-by (240 × 320)	95K bytes max.	50K bytes max.	35K bytes max.
QCIF (176 × 144)	49.5K bytes max.	15K bytes max.	9,000 bytes max.
SubQCIF (128 × 96)	24K bytes max.	15K bytes max.	9,000 bytes max.

Function menu (Image checking screen)

Save	Saves the image to the folder specified in "Select to save" (p.186).
Mirror save	Saves the mirrored image (inverted left-right) to the folder specified in "Select to save".
Compose message	"Composing an i-mode message with a still image attached/inserted" → p.192
Edit image	▶ ⓘ (FUNC) ▶ Select an item to edit "Editing Images" → p.336 The image cannot be edited if the size is SXGA (1,280 × 960) or larger.
Set as display	■ To set for the standby screen ▶ Select a screen ▶ Select how to display the image ■ To set for screens such as Dialing or Calling ▶ Select a screen ■ To set for videophone-related screens (except V.phone dialing and V.phone calling) ▶ Select a screen ▶ Check the image ▶ ⓘ ▶ "YES" Sets the image for the standby screen, etc. The image cannot be set if the size is SXGA (1,280 × 960) or larger. Also, if the image size exceeds 100K bytes, it cannot be set except for the Stand-by display and Wake-up display.
Change frame	"Changing the frame" → p.191
Mirror display, Normal display	Changes the display to the mirror display. If the mirror display is currently selected, "Normal display" appears.
Display size	Specifies the display settings for an image smaller than Stand-by (240 × 320). The display size cannot be specified if the image size is neither QCIF (176 × 144) nor SubQCIF (128 × 96). • Actual size (default) Displays an image in the actual size. • Fit in display Enlarges an image to the display size.
Select to save	Specifies the folder where the shot will be saved. • Phone (default) ▶ Select a folder to save the image The Camera folder under My picture is selected at the time of purchase. • microSD ▶ Select a folder to save the image

File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • File unrestricted (default) 	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • File restricted 	Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Attach location	Adds the location information to the shot image.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • From position loc. 	Obtains your current location information and adds it to the image.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • From loc. history 	Adds the location information retrieved from the location history to the image.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Loc. info detail 	Displays the detail screen for the added location information to see the date and time, latitude, longitude and geodetic system (Datum).
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delete loc. info 	Deletes the added location information.
Cancel	Deletes the photographed image and returns to the Photo mode screen.

NOTE

◆ Pressing () on the image checking screen also allows you to compose an i-mode message with a still image attached/inserted.

<Edit image>

◆ Selecting “Edit image” changes the display to the Normal display.
 ◆ “Compose message” and “Save” are available after you edit an image.

<Set as display>

◆ Selecting “microSD” in “Select to save” saves images to the Camera folder under My picture (you cannot save the images to the microSD memory card).

<Mirror display>

◆ An image shot with the front camera appears mirrored (inverted left-right). Selecting “Normal display” means what you see is what you get.

<Select to save>

◆ Selecting microSD creates a folder automatically if there are no folders on the microSD memory card.
 ◆ You cannot select microSD if the number of files stored in the selected folder has already reached the maximum.

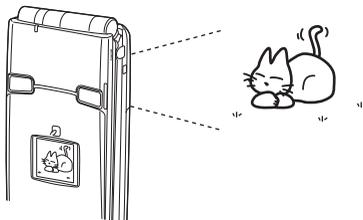
<File restriction>

◆ You can change the file restriction setting for a shot image after it is saved.

Shooting with a FOMA terminal folded <Shoot folded>

You can launch the camera to shoot still images with a FOMA terminal folded.

- You cannot shoot in AF lock.
- If “External keys guard” is set to “ON”, you cannot launch the camera by pressing (), use the light by pressing () or shoot a still image by pressing ().



See the picture above. Make sure not to turn the rear camera and the image display upside down but to place the rear camera upward. You can check the shot on the image display.

1 Press () for 1 second or longer with a FOMA terminal folded

The camera launches in Photo mode and the shooting indicator lamp lights up in red for approx. 3 seconds.

The image size is the one used at the last shooting. To change the image size, zoom or brightness, open the FOMA terminal.

■ To use the light



The light is turned on/off.

2 Point the camera at an object ()

The image is shot. The shooting indicator lamp lights in red for approx. 3 seconds.

3 Open the FOMA terminal, check and save the shot as you do in “Shooting with a FOMA terminal opened” (p.185)

NOTE

- ◆ You can also shoot an image with a FOMA terminal folded when the shooting screen appears. When a FOMA terminal is folded, the shooting indicator lamp lights in red for approx. 3 seconds.
- ◆ Setting “Auto save set” (p.186) to “ON” allows you to automatically save the still images shot with a FOMA terminal folded. Select the destination in “Select to save”.
- ◆ The image is scaled down to fit the image display and intended as an approximate guide.

Shooting continuously

<Continuous mode>

Default setting	Select size: Screen (240 × 345) Shot interval: 0.5 seconds (Auto continuous mode) Shot number: 5
-----------------	---

You can shoot a series of up to 20 continuous still images. The continuous mode is categorized into two types: Auto and Manual.

- Auto continuous mode allows you to specify the number of shots and the interval. Once you release the shutter, the FOMA terminal automatically shoots the remaining number of shots at the specified interval. The auto focus function is available only for the first shot. The second and subsequent shots are shot with the focus point placed for the first shot.
- Manual continuous mode allows you to shoot up to the specified number, one shot each time you release the shutter. You can change the auto focus settings for each shot ("Photo mode" → p.185).
- The following image sizes are available: CIF (352 × 288), Screen (240 × 345), Stand-by (240 × 320), QCIF (176 × 144), SubQCIF (128 × 96)
- You can enjoy the continuous image shots as an animation added to the original animation.
- Continuous shooting is unavailable when a FOMA terminal is folded. Folding the FOMA terminal terminates the continuous shooting.

1 Photo mode screen

(p.185) ▶ () or () or ()

The "Continuous mode" screen appears.

■ To turn on/off the auto focus



2 Point the camera at an object or



Locking the focus turns the focus frame into green. After shooting, the "Continuous shooting checking" screen appears with four shots at the same time.

■ To shoot with AF lock

"Shooting still images with AF lock" → p.185

■ To shoot with Focus fixed

▶ Press to set the auto focus to "OFF" ▶ or

Shot number/Max. shot count



Continuous mode (Ex. manual)
Function menu ▶ p.186



Continuous shooting checking
Function menu ▶ p.190

■ To stop the continuous shooting

Auto continuous mode: ▶ ▶ "NO"

Manual continuous mode: ▶ (or) ▶ "NO"

The shooting is finished and the continuous shooting checking screen appears.

3 (FUNC) ▶ Select the saving method (Store selection, Store all or Store all&anime)

"Function menu (Continuous shooting checking screen)" → p.190

The images are saved to the folder specified in "Select to save" (p.186).

If "Store selection" is selected, the "Continuous shooting checking screen" appears with the saved images removed after the image saving is complete.

■ To select the image to save

▶ Use to select an image

The icon (check mark) appears for the selected image.

Repeat the step to select images.

To cancel the selected image, select the image again.

■ To check the images in detail

▶ Use to select an image ▶ (Detail)

Use to change the image to check.

To return to the list, press .

To save the image displayed in detail, press .

The images are saved to the folder specified in "Select to save" (p.186).



Detail checking
Function menu ▶ p.191

NOTE

- ◆ If you receive a call during continuous shooting, the shooting terminates. After you finish talking, the Continuous shooting checking screen shows the images you shot until the interruption.
- ◆ Do not remove the microSD memory card while saving an image to the microSD memory card. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card to malfunction.
- ◆ If the battery is low, you may be unable to save the shots.
- ◆ Turning off a FOMA terminal or removing the battery pack during the file saving process may save incomplete files.
- ◆ In Manual continuous mode, the incoming call lamp lights in red each time you shoot. The lamp also lights in red in Auto continuous mode.
- ◆ flashes while data is being saved to the microSD memory card.
- ◆ When you automatically shoot a strong light or moving object, the interval may become longer than the specified one.
- ◆ Keep a FOMA terminal steady until the shooting checking screen appears or while a message indicating that the shot is being processed appears.

● Setting the shooting interval and number of shots

- “Shot interval 0.5 seconds and Shot number 5” are the default settings for Screen (240 × 345), Stand-by (240 × 320), QCIF (176 × 144) and SubQCIF (128 × 96) and “Shot interval 0.5 seconds and Shot number 4” for CIF (352 × 288).

1 Continuous mode screen (p.189) ▶

 (FUNC) ▶ “Interval/Number” ▶

Select any item

Shot interval	Selects the shooting interval from “0.5 seconds”, “1.0 seconds” and “2.0 seconds”. The interval cannot be set for Manual continuous mode.
Shot number	▶ Enter the number of shots (2-digit) Sets the number of shots between “05 and 20” (5 to 20 shots) Entering a 2-digit number automatically sets the number of shots.

* : “05 to 10” (5 to 10 shots) appears for Screen (240 × 345) or Stand-by (240 × 320)

2 After changing the settings, press

NOTE

<Shot number>

- ◆ When CIF (352×288) is set as the image size, the number of shots is always set to 4.
- ◆ Changing the image size from CIF (352 × 288) to another size changes the number of shots to 5.
- ◆ Changing the image size to Screen (240 × 345) or Stand-by (240 × 320) changes the number of shots set to 11 or more to 10.

Function menu (Continuous shooting checking screen)

Store selection	Saves the selected still images. ▶ “Save” or “Mirror save” The images are saved to the folder specified in “Select to save”.
Store all	Saves all the still images. ▶ “Save” or “Mirror save” The images are saved to the folder specified in “Select to save”.
Store all&anime	Saves all the still images as the original animation. ▶ “Save” or “Mirror save” ▶ Select No. for original animation The images are saved to the folder specified in “Select to save”.
Select this	Attaches <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> to the selected still image to show that it is selected.

Select all	Attaches <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> to all the still images to show that they are selected.
Release this	Deselects the selected still image. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> disappears.
Release all	Deselects all the still images. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> disappears.
Mirror display, Normal display	Changes the display to the mirror display. If the mirror display is currently selected, “Normal display” appears.
Select to save	Specifies the folder where the shot will be saved. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Phone (default) ▶ Select a folder to save the image The Camera folder under My picture is selected at the time of purchase. • microSD ▶ Select a folder to save the image
File restriction	Sets file restrictions on the selected still image. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • File unrestricted (default) Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it. • File restricted Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Restriction all	Sets file restrictions on all the still images. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • File unrestricted (default) Allows the images to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received them. • File restricted Does not allow the images to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received them.
Attach location	Adds the location information to the shot image. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • From position loc. Obtains your current location information and adds it to the image. • From loc. history Adds the location information retrieved from the location history to the image. • Loc. Info detail Displays the detail screen for the added location information to see the date and time, latitude, longitude and geodetic system (Datum). • Delete loc. Info Deletes the added location information.
Cancel	Deletes all the shot images and returns to the Continuous mode screen.

NOTE

<Store all&anime>

- ◆ “Store all&anime” cannot be selected if only one image has been shot or one or more photographed images have already been saved.
- ◆ Even if “microSD” is selected in “Select to save”, images will be saved to the Camera folder under My picture.

<Mirror display>

- ◆ An image shot with the front camera appears mirrored (inverted left-right). Selecting "Normal display" means what you see is what you get.

<Select to save>

- ◆ Selecting microSD creates a folder automatically if there are no folders on the microSD memory card.
- ◆ You cannot select microSD if the number of files stored in the selected folder has already reached the maximum.

<File restriction> <Restriction all>

- ◆ You can change the file restriction setting for a shot image after it is saved.

Function menu (Detail checking screen)

Save	Saves the displayed still image.
Mirror save	Inverts the left and right of the displayed image to save.
Compose message	"Composing an i-mode message with a still image attached/inserted" → p.192
Mirror display, Normal display	Changes the display to the mirror display. If the mirror display is currently selected, "Normal display" appears.
Display size	Specifies the display settings for an image smaller than Stand-by (240 × 320). The display size cannot be specified if the image size is neither QCIF (176 × 144) nor SubQCIF (128 × 96). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Actual size (default) Displays an image in the actual size. • Fit in display Enlarges an image to the display size.
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • File unrestricted (default) Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it. • File restricted Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.

NOTE

- ◆ Pressing  () on the Detail checking screen also allows you to compose an i-mode message with a still image attached/inserted.

<Mirror display>

- ◆ An image shot with the front camera appears mirrored (inverted left-right). Selecting "Normal display" means what you see is what you get.

Shooting framed images

<Framed photography>

Images of VGA+ V. (480 × 690), VGA V. (480 × 640), CIF (352 × 288), Screen (240 × 345), Stand-by (240 × 320), QCIF (176 × 144) or SubQCIF (128 × 96) can be framed.

- Pre-installed frames → p.461
- You can download frames from sites.

1 Photo mode screen (p.185) (FUNC) ▶ "Select frame" ▶ Select a frame

- To cancel framed photography
▶ "OFF"

2 Point the camera at an object or

The "Frame shooting check" screen appears.

3 Check and save the shot as you do in "Shooting with a FOMA terminal opened" (p.185)

You can change the frame before saving the still image. → p.191

NOTE

- ◆ Pressing  (Play) on the Select frame screen allows you to check the selected frame.
- ◆ You can shoot a framed image with a FOMA terminal folded. The selected frame appears on the image display.
- ◆ Framed images shot with the front camera appear mirrored (inverted left-right). They are automatically saved in the normal display. When the images are converted from mirrored to normal, the frames are also inverted left-right.
- ◆ If the sizes of the image and frame are the same, the image can be framed regardless of portrait or landscape.
 - If a portrait frame is selected for a landscape image, the frame is rotated 90° counterclockwise.
 - If a landscape frame is selected for a portrait image, the frame is rotated 90° clockwise.
- ◆ Exiting the camera releases the frame.

● Changing the frame

You can change the frame before saving the still image.

- You cannot remove the frame.

1 Frame shooting check screen (FUNC) ▶ "Change frame" ▶

Select a frame

Use  to change the frame.



Frame shooting check

2 Check the framed image

The screen returns to the frame shooting check.

- To rotate a frame 180°

▶ (Rotate)

- To cancel the selected frame

▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Cancel"

● Composing an i-mode message with a still image attached/inserted

If a still image cannot be attached/inserted, the image size or file size is reduced so that the image can be attached/inserted.

<Example: To select "Compose message" on the image checking screen>

1 Image checking screen (p.185) ▶

(FUNC) ▶ "Compose message" ▶

Select any item

Attach image^{*1} (i-mode mail)	
• Attach mail	Reduces only the file size to attach the image.
• QVGA scale down	Reduces the image size and file size without changing the aspect ratio to attach the resized image.
Insert image^{*2} (Deco-mail)	
• Insert mail^{*3}	Reduces only the file size to insert the image.
• SubQCIF scale down	Reduces the image size and file size without changing the aspect ratio to insert the resized image.

*1 : Shooting an image of Stand-by (240×320) or smaller does not display the screen for selecting "Attach mail" or "QVGA scale down".

*2 : Shooting an image of SubQCIF (128×96) does not display the screen for selecting "Insert mail" or "SubQCIF scale down".

*3 : This option cannot be selected for the image size other than QCIF (176×144).

2 Compose an i-mode/Deco-mail message

Creating and Sending i-mode Mail → p.239

Composing and sending a Deco-mail message → p.243

NOTE

◆ Pressing (MAIL) on the image checking screen also allows you to attach or insert the image to an i-mode mail or Deco-mail.

◆ You cannot compose an i-mode message when there are already 20 draft messages stored or there is no space available in the Draft mailbox.

<Movie mode>

Shooting Movies

Use the built-in camera to shoot movies with voice.

- Movie shooting is unavailable when a FOMA terminal is folded. Folding the FOMA terminal terminates the movie shooting.
- If you set "File size" to "Long time" and shoot a movie, the movie checking screen does not appear, but the movie is saved directly to the microSD memory card and then the shooting is finished.
- The shooting time depends on the conditions such as the object.
- You cannot shoot movies while talking on the phone.

1 Photo mode screen

(p.185) ▶ (MENU) or



The shooting icon is also available for launching the "Movie mode" screen. → p.147



Function menu ▶ p.193

2 Point the camera at an object ▶ (CAM) or



The shooting starts. During shooting, the incoming call lamp flashes in red.

You can zoom in/out during shooting.

The screen indicates the approximate time left to shoot.

- If the file size reaches the limit specified in File size



The Movie checking screen appears.

3 (CAM) or (CAM)

The shooting terminates and the "Movie checking" screen appears.

- To play the movie you shot

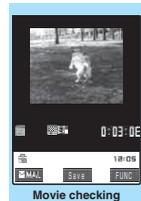
▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Play"

- To retake the shot

▶ (CLR) ▶ "YES"



Function menu ▶ p.193



Function menu ▶ p.193

4 (CAM)

The movie is saved to the folder specified in "Select to save" (p.193).

NOTE

- ◆ Following the steps below also displays the Movie mode screen:
 -  ► “LifeKit” ► “Camera” ► “Movie mode”
- ◆ Do not remove the microSD memory card while saving a movie to the microSD memory card. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card to malfunction.
- ◆ If you receive a call during movie shooting, the shooting terminates. After you finish talking, the “Movie checking” screen shows the movie you shot until the interruption.
- ◆ If the battery is low, you may be unable to save the movies.
- ◆ Turning off a FOMA terminal or removing the battery pack during the file saving process may save incomplete files.
- ◆ “” flashes while data is being saved to the microSD memory card.
- ◆ If you press any key to perform a function such as zoom in/out during shooting, the sound may be recorded.

Function menu (Movie mode screen)

Front camera, Rear camera	Switches between the front camera and the rear camera.
CHG camera-mode	Changes the camera mode.
Select size	Performs the settings as you do with the shooting menu (p.183).
File size	
Quality setting	Sets the image quality and duration for movie shooting.
• Long dur. mode	Shoots a long movie. The quality is not as high as for Normal.
• Normal (default)	Shoots a movie with the standard quality and duration.
• Fine mode	Shoots a movie with higher quality. The available shooting time is shorter than for Normal.
• Super Fine mode	Shoots a movie with the highest quality. The available shooting time is shorter than for Fine mode.
Light*	Turns on/off the light.

Image quality	
• Photo mode*	“Selecting the mode suitable for shooting” → p.194
• Brightness	►   ► to adjust the brightness ►  Selects the brightness among 5 levels from “-2 to ±0 to +2”. The brightness is automatically specified if you do not press any keys for two seconds. “±0” is the default setting when the camera launches.
• White balance	“Setting the white balance” → p.194
• Color mode set	“Setting the effects on the photographed images” → p.194
• Image tuning*	“Avoiding the flicker on the photographed images” → p.195
Shutter sound	Sets the shutter sound. “Sound 1” is selected at the time of purchase.
Auto timer	“Using the auto timer” → p.198
Movie type set	
• Normal (when the camera launches)	Records video and voice.
• Video	Shoots a movie without voice.
• Voice	Records a voice without movies.
Auto save set	
• ON	Does not display the Movie checking screen when shooting a movie. The movie is automatically saved to the folder specified in “Select to save”.
• OFF (default)	Displays the Movie checking screen when shooting a movie.
Select to save	
	Specifies the folder where the movie will be saved.
• Normal or Video	Specifies the folder where movies with video will be saved.
• Phone (default)	► Select a folder to save the movie The Camera folder under i-motion is selected at the time of purchase.
• microSD	► Select a folder to save the movie Saves the movie to the SD Video folder in the microSD memory card.
• Voice	Specifies the folder where movies with voice only will be saved.
• Phone (default)	► Select a folder to save the movie The Camera folder under i-motion is selected at the time of purchase.
• microSD	► Select a folder to save the movie Saves the movie to the Multimedia folder in the microSD memory card.

File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • File unrestricted (default) 	Allows the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • File restricted 	Does not allow the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Display size	Sets the display mode for movies.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Actual size (default) • Fit in display 	Displays a movie in the actual size. Enlarges a movie to the display size.
Memory info	Shows the data size of movies, etc. stored on the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card and available spaces.
Help	Shows the shooting guide.
Face stamp	▶ Select a face stamp Places a stamp that follows facial movements on the Movie mode screen. Face stamps cannot be selected if the image size is not QCIF (176 × 144).
Shake correction*	"Setting the shake correction" → p.195

* : The option cannot be selected or set for the front camera.

NOTE

<Shutter sound>

◆ A FOMA terminal does not emit the shutter sound in Manner mode. However, setting "Original" for "Manner mode set" and "ON" for "VM tone" emits the sound. You cannot set a downloaded melody as the shutter sound and cannot adjust the shutter sound volume.

<Movie type set>

◆ The movie type cannot be set in Voice mode.

<Auto save set> <File restriction>

◆ The auto save or file restriction cannot be set if the File size is set to "Long time".

<Select to save>

- ◆ Selecting "microSD" creates a folder automatically if there are no folders on the microSD memory card.
- ◆ You cannot set "microSD" if:
 - The number of files in the specified folder reaches the maximum (for "Normal or Video").
 - The number of files in the specified folder other than the SD Multimedia folder reaches the maximum (for "Voice").

<File restriction>

◆ You can change the file restriction setting for a shot movie after it is saved.

● Setting the white balance

- 1 Photo mode screen (p.185)/
Continuous mode screen (p.189)/
Movie mode screen (p.192) ▶
 (FUNC) ▶ "Image quality" ▶
 "White balance" ▶ Select any item

The white balance can also be set from the shooting menu. → p.183

Auto (default)	Automatically corrects the color balance in the entire image under the typical shooting conditions. The color intensity may be slightly reduced if the colors in the image are distorted.
Fine	Suitable for shooting outside on a sunny day.
Cloudy	Suitable for shooting outside on a cloudy day or in the shade.
Light bulb	Suitable for shooting under incandescent light.
Fluorescent lamp	Suitable for shooting under fluorescent light.

NOTE

- ◆ Selecting "Fine", "Cloudy", "Light bulb" or "Fluorescent" may make the image more vivid than Auto under the specified conditions.
- ◆ The settings are retained after you exit the camera, and applied to the videophone shooting. → p.55

● Setting the effects on the photographed images

- 1 Photo mode screen (p.185)/
Continuous mode screen (p.189)/
Movie mode screen (p.192) ▶
 (FUNC) ▶ "Image quality" ▶
 "Color mode set" ▶ Select any item

Normal (when the camera launches)	Shoots with the typical color settings.
Sepia	Shoots a sepia-tone image.
Monochrome	Shoots a black-and-white (monochrome) image.

● Selecting the mode suitable for shooting

- 1 Photo mode screen (p.185)/
Continuous mode screen (p.189)/
Movie mode screen (p.192) ▶
 (FUNC) ▶ "Image quality" ▶
 "Photo mode" ▶ Select any item

The mode can also be set from the shooting menu. → p.183

Auto ^{*1} (default: Photo mode/Continuous mode)	Selects the shooting mode automatically.
Portrait (default: Movie mode)	Suitable for shooting people.
Scenery	Suitable for shooting scenery (including night view).
Close-up	Suitable for close-up shooting. "Close-up" → p.178
Sports mode ^{*1}	Suitable for shooting moving objects.
Night mode ^{*1*2}	Suitable for shooting people in dark places.
OFF ^{*1}	Does not use any effects for shooting.

*1 : The options cannot be set in Movie mode.

*2 : The option cannot be set in Continuous mode.

NOTE

- ◆ Only Portrait, Night mode and OFF can be selected for the front camera in shooting a still image. Portrait is always selected for shooting in Continuous mode or Movie mode with the front camera.
- ◆ In Night mode or Scenery, the shake correction may not properly work even if Shake correction is set to "Auto".
- ◆ Auto, Scenery, Close-up or Sports mode is restored to Portrait when the camera is switched to the front.
- ◆ Auto, Sports mode, Night mode (in Photo mode only) or OFF is restored to Portrait when Photo mode or Continuous mode is switched to Movie mode or Chance capture.
- ◆ Night mode is restored to Auto when Photo mode is switched to Continuous mode.

● Avoiding the flicker on the photographed images

Setting this function according to the frequency of power supply in the area you use the FOMA terminal may decrease flicker on the screen that is caused by fluorescent light, etc.

- 1 **Photo mode screen (p.185)/ Continuous mode screen (p.189)/ Movie mode screen (p.192)** ▶  (FUNC) ▶ "Image quality" ▶ "Image tuning" ▶ Select any item

Auto (default)	Avoids flicker automatically.
Mode 1(50Hz)	Mode for shooting in 50Hz-frequency areas.
Mode 2(60Hz)	Mode for shooting in 60Hz-frequency areas.

NOTE

- ◆ The flicker may not be fully avoided if you shoot in dim conditions or extremely bright places or depending on the colors of objects.

● Setting the shake correction

The shake correction function is available for shooting with the rear camera.

- This function is available in Photo mode, Movie mode, Chance capture or Picture voice. It is unavailable in Continuous mode.

- 1 **Photo mode screen (p.185)/Movie mode screen (p.192)** ▶  (FUNC) ▶ "Shake correction" ▶ Select any item

Auto (default)	<p>■ Photo mode (Photo mode, Picture voice)</p> <p>Automatically corrects camera shake in a place where camera shake can easily occur or in a dark place.</p> <p>■ Movie mode (Movie mode, Chance capture)</p> <p>Always corrects camera shake regardless of the situation.</p>
OFF	Shoots without using the shake correction.

NOTE

- ◆ This function only reduces the camera shake, and the effect depends on the objects or situations.
- ◆ The shake correction may not properly work when:
 - The camera shake is large
 - The zoom is used
 - The object is moving
 - "Photo mode" is set to "Night mode" or "Scenery"
- ◆ The spectrum or noise may be seen if part of the object is moving. In this case, set this function to "OFF" to shoot.
- ◆ The shake correction uses the ambient pixels. The shooting area varies depending on the "Auto"/"OFF" setting.
- ◆ If this function is activated, the processing time after shooting may be longer (about two seconds) due to the shake correction process.

Function menu (Movie checking screen)

Play	Plays the movie you shot.
Save	Saves the movie to the folder specified in "Select to save".
Compose message	▶ Compose an i-mode message Composes an i-mode message with the movie attached.
Set as stand-by	Sets the movie as the standby screen.
Display size	Sets the display mode for movies. The display size cannot be specified if the image size is neither QCIF (176 × 144) nor SubQCIF (128 × 96). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Actual size (default) Displays a movie in the actual size. • Fit in display Enlarges a movie to the display size.

Edit title	Edits a movie title.
Select to save	Specifies the folder where the movie will be saved.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Normal or Video 	Specifies the folder where movies with video will be saved.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Phone (default) 	<p>▶ Select a folder to save the movie</p> <p>The Camera folder under i-motion is selected at the time of purchase.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • microSD 	<p>▶ Select a folder to save the movie</p> <p>Saves the movie to the SD Video folder in the microSD memory card.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Voice 	Specifies the folder where movies with voice only will be saved.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Phone (default) 	<p>▶ Select a folder to save the movie</p> <p>The Camera folder under i-motion is selected at the time of purchase.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • microSD 	<p>▶ Select a folder to save the movie</p> <p>Saves the movie to the Multimedia folder in the microSD memory card.</p>
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • File unrestricted (default) 	Allows the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • File restricted 	Does not allow the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Cancel	Deletes the movie to reshoot new one.

NOTE

<Compose message>

- ◆ Pressing (MAIL) on the Movie checking screen also allows you to compose an i-mode message with the movie attached.
- ◆ Set "File size" to "500KB" when sending a movie to a phone which does not support an i-motion mail that is larger than 500K bytes.

<Set as stand-by>

- ◆ The movie to be set for the standby screen is saved to the folder specified in "Select to save". Selecting "microSD" saves the movie to the Camera folder under i-motion (you cannot save it to the microSD memory card).
- ◆ A movie with only voice cannot be set.

<Select to save>

- ◆ Selecting "microSD" creates a folder automatically if there are no folders on the microSD memory card.
- ◆ You cannot set "microSD" if:
 - The number of files in the specified folder reaches the maximum (for "Normal or Video").
 - The number of files in the specified folder other than the Multimedia folder reaches the maximum (for "Voice").

Capturing important scenes

<Chance capture>

Use the chance capture function if you do not want to miss important moments in shooting a movie.

- A movie you shot for the specified shooting time (roughly 3 minutes and 38 seconds by default) before ending the shooting is saved. The part shot before the shooting time is not saved.

1 Photo mode screen (p.185)

(MENU) or 1 ▶ " " "

2 Point the camera at an object

The shooting starts. You can zoom in/out during shooting.

After the available shooting time runs out, the displayed remaining time turns to the flashing .

3 or

The shooting terminates.

4 Check and save the movie as you do in "Shooting Movies" (p.192)

NOTE

- ◆ You can also activate the Chance capture function by selecting (FUNC) ▶ "CHG camera-mode" ▶ "Chance capture" on the "Photo mode" screen.
- ◆ The shot finished before the available shooting time is saved from the beginning to the end as similar to the "Movie mode".

Adding voice to still images

<Picture voice>

Add the voice to a still image of QCIF (176 × 144) or SubQCIF (128 × 96) to make a movie.

<Example: To shoot a still image and add voice>

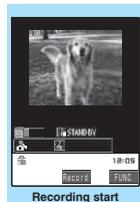
1 Photo mode screen (p.185)

(MENU) or 1 ▶ " " "

2 Point the camera at an object

A still image is shot. The "Recording start" screen appears.

You can set the file size by selecting "File size" from the function menu before recording the voice.



Function menu ▶ p.197

3 or ()

The recording starts.
The screen indicates the approximate seconds left to record.



4 or ()

The recording terminates.

5 Check and save the created picture voice as you do in “Shooting Movies” (p.192)

NOTE

- ◆ You can also create a picture voice by pressing (FUNC) ▶ “CHG camera-mode” ▶ “Picture voice” ▶ “Photo mode” on the Photo mode screen.
- ◆ If you want to create a picture voice using the saved still image, follow Step 3 and later after performing the steps below:
On the Photo mode screen, press (FUNC) ▶ “CHG camera-mode” ▶ “Picture voice” ▶ “My picture” ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image

Function menu (Recording start screen)

File size	Sets the file size for recording.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 500KB 	You can record up to 500K bytes. Select this option to attach the data to an i-mode message as a typical movie.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 2MB (when the camera launches) 	You can record up to 2M bytes. Select this option to attach the data to an i-mode message as a large-sized movie.
Shutter sound	Sets the shutter sound. “Sound 1” is selected at the time of purchase.

Using Voice mode

- A voice can be recorded without movies.

1 Photo mode screen (p.185) ▶

() or ▶ “ ”

The desktop icon is also available for launching the “Recording start” screen. → p.147

2 or ()

The recording starts.
The screen indicates the approximate seconds left to record.

3 or ()

After the recording is finished, the “Recording check” screen appears.

4

The movie is saved to the folder specified in “Select to save” (p.193).

NOTE

- ◆ Setting “File size” to “Long time” allows you to record up to about 120 minutes.
- ◆ You can also record a voice in Voice mode by selecting (FUNC) ▶ “Movie type set” ▶ “Voice” on the “Movie mode” screen.
- ◆ Voice that can be recorded in Voice mode is MP4 (Mobile MP4) format.

Changing the Shooting Settings

Perform the camera settings such as the zoom, auto timer or image quality.

Using the zoom

Using the zoom allows you to adjust an image so that it will be shot in your desired size.

- You cannot adjust the zoom if you are using the front, camera and the image size is VGA (640 × 480), JAVA (VGA) (480 × 480), Screen (240 × 345), Stand-by (240 × 320) or JAVA (240 × 240).
- You can zoom in/out while shooting a movie.
- The zoom is digital.

1 Photo mode screen (p.185)/ Continuous mode screen (p.189)/ Movie mode screen (p.192) ▶ Use to adjust the zoom

: Zooms in by one step each time you press the key.

: Zooms out by one step to 1× (default) each time you press the key.

Press and hold or to zoom in/out continuously.

Still image/ Movie	Rear/ Front	Size	Zoom	Maximum
Still image	Rear camera	QXGA (2,048 × 1,536)	16 steps	Approx. 4x
		UXGA (1,616 × 1,212)		
		SXGA (1,280 × 960)		
		VGA+ V. (480 × 690)		
		VGA (640 × 480)		
		VGA V. (480 × 640)		
		JAVA (VGA) (480 × 480) ¹		
		CIF (352 × 288)		
Screen (240 × 345)				

Still image/ Movie	Rear/ Front	Size	Zoom	Maximum
Still image	Rear camera	Stand-by (240 × 320)	16 steps	Approx. 4x
		JAVA (240 × 240) ^{*1}		
		QCIF (176 × 144)		Approx. 9x
		SubQCIF (128 × 96)		
Movie	Rear camera	QVGA (320 × 240)	3 steps (7 steps ^{*2})	Approx. 1.44x (Approx. 2.69x ^{*2})
		QCIF (176 × 144)	16 steps	Approx. 3.56x (Approx. 9x ^{*2})
		SubQCIF (128 × 96)		Approx. 9x
Still image/ Movie	Front camera	VGA (640 × 480)	—	—
		JAVA (VGA) (480 × 480) ^{*1}		
		CIF (352 × 288)			2 steps	Approx. 1.8x
		Screen (240 × 345)	—	—
		Stand-by (240 × 320)		
		JAVA (240 × 240) ^{*1}		
		QCIF (176 × 144)	2 steps	Approx. 2x
SubQCIF (128 × 96)				

*1 : This option appears only when the camera is launched from an i-oppli.

*2 : If "Shake correction" is set to "OFF"

NOTE

- ◆ "1x" is set when the camera launches. Changing the image size or camera mode also changes the zoom to "1x".
- ◆ Changing the zoom may slightly change the image quality.

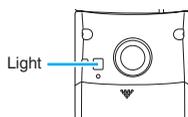
Turning on the light

When it is not so bright (e.g. in a room), turning on the light of a FOMA terminal brightens the object.

- If you do not shoot for 30 seconds or so after turning on the light, it is automatically turned off.

1 Photo mode screen (p.185)/ Continuous mode screen (p.189)/ Movie mode screen (p.192)

To turn off the light, press  ().



NOTE

- ◆ The continuous lighting time when shooting movies is approximately up to 5 minutes.
- ◆ You cannot turn on the light when recording a voice without movies or using the front camera.
- ◆ This function is only supplementary. You cannot always get enough light.

Using the auto timer

Setting the auto timer allows you to shoot images without holding a FOMA terminal (e.g. to shoot people including yourself or to avoid the camera shake).

- The auto timer is available for Photo mode, Auto Continuous mode and Movie mode. It is unavailable for Manual Continuous mode.
- The auto timer is reset to "OFF" each time you finish shooting.
- The auto focus is available for Photo mode. When shooting with AF lock, focus on the object before setting the auto timer.

1 Photo mode screen (p.185)/Continuous mode screen (p.189)/ Movie mode screen (p.192) (FUNC) "Auto timer" "ON" Enter a 2-digit number for the auto timer



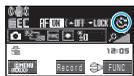
Enter a 2-digit number between "01" and "15" for the auto timer.

Entering a 2-digit number automatically sets the auto timer. To set the currently displayed time, press .

"10 seconds" is set at the time of purchase.

● If the auto timer is set

The “” icon appears on the screen to show that the auto timer is set.



- To cancel the auto timer settings, set “Auto timer” to “OFF” from the function menu.

NOTE

- ◆ Exiting the camera sets the auto timer to “OFF”.

● Shooting by using the auto timer

1 or

The auto timer tone sounds, and then the auto timer starts running. The incoming call lamp, ,  and “” flash.

The countdown tone sounds approximately 5 seconds before the shooting. The incoming call lamp, , and  flash rapidly.

■ To stop the timer while it is running

- ▶  (Quit) or 

■ To shoot manually during the auto timer countdown

- ▶  or 

<Bar code reader>

Using the Bar Code Reader

Using the rear camera allows a FOMA terminal to scan JAN codes and QR codes. The data scanned especially from QR codes can be used for displaying/copying the text, using the functions of Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, Web To, i-appli To, or adding to bookmark/phonebook. The FOMA terminal can also scan image or melody data to play or save.

- A FOMA terminal can save up to 5 scanned data.
- Hold a FOMA terminal firmly so that it does not shake during scanning.
- When scanning a bar code, keep about 7 to 9 cm between the rear camera and the code.

■ JAN codes and QR codes

- JAN code



JAN code is a series of vertical lines (bars) with various widths and spaces to represent numbers. A FOMA terminal can scan 8-digit (JAN8) and 13-digit (JAN13) bar codes.

- * Scanning the JAN code above displays “4942857113068”.

● QR code



QR code is a type of two-dimensional symbology expressing numbers, alphabets, kanji, kana or pictographs both horizontally and vertically. Some QR codes express images or melodies. Some data are divided into several QR codes.

- * Scanning the QR code above displays “株式会社NTTドコモ” (NTT DoCoMo, Inc.).

Scanning codes

1 ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “Bar code reader”

2 Position a JAN code or QR code inside the recognition field



Scanning automatically starts. The area surrounded by “, , , ” at the corners of the screen is the recognition field.

Focus the JAN code or QR code so that the entire code appears as large as possible inside the recognition field.

■ To cancel scanning

- ▶  

■ To adjust the zoom

- ⊖: Returns to default.
- ⊕: Zooms in.

■ To turn on/off the light

- ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Light” ▶ “ON” or “OFF”

Pressing  also turns on/off the light after scanning is canceled.

■ To use auto focus

- ▶  (AF)

The focus frame changes as follows during scanning:

- White: Before focusing
- Dotted white: Focusing
- Green: Focused
- Dotted red: Focusing failed

3 Check the scanned data

It may take long to scan some data.

■ To scan data divided into several QR codes

- ▶   ▶ Repeat Steps 2 to 3

A FOMA terminal can scan up to 16 QR codes expressing one data.

■ To discard scanned data

- ▶  ▶ “YES”

4 (FUNC) ▶ “Store” ▶ “YES” ▶

The scanned data is stored.

NOTE

- ◆ Codes other than JAN or QR cannot be scanned. Some bar codes may not be scanned, depending on the size.
- ◆ A FOMA terminal may fail to scan a code, depending on the scratch, stain, damage, print quality or the reflection of light.
- ◆ You can also launch the Bar code reader from the text editing screen. The scanned data is entered into the screen. However, you cannot display the already stored data or save the scanned data here. Image or melody data cannot be scanned correctly on the screen. Characters that cannot be entered on the text editing screen are replaced with space (blank) characters.
- ◆ A data cannot be stored if it is a JPEG image whose width or height exceeds 2,304 dots, a JPEG image whose total number of dots exceeds 2,304 × 1,728, a GIF image whose width or height exceeds 690 dots, a GIF image whose total number of dots exceeds 690 × 480, or the file size exceeds 100K bytes.
- ◆ You cannot store a progressive JPEG image whose width or height exceeds 690 dots or whose total number of dots exceeds 690 × 480. Progressive JPEG images → p.218
- ◆ The scanned data cannot be stored on the microSD memory card.
- ◆ While activating Bar code reader ▶  (FUNC) ▶ Select “Add desktop icon” to add the desktop icon for this function.

Using the scanned data

- 1 (MENU) ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “Bar code reader” ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Reading data list”

The “Reading data list” screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.200

- 2 Select the scanned data

The “Reading data detail” screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.200

3 Select any of the displayed items

- “Add to phonebook” : Adds the name, reading, phone number, mail address, birthday, postal code, address and memo to the phonebook → p.107
- “Compose message” : Composes an i-mode message with the recipient address, subject and message already entered → p.239
- “Add bookmark” : Bookmarks the URL and title → p.215
- “Activate i-appli” : Launches the specified i-appli → p.294
- Melody icon : Plays the melody → p.349
- Phone number : Calls the number using the Phone To (AV Phone To) function → p.222
- Mail address : Composes an i-mode message using the Mail To function → p.222
- URL : Accesses the site using the Web To function → p.223

NOTE

- ◆ The title of the scanned data will be:
 - Title: yyyyymmdd_hhmm_xxxx (Year/month/day_time_4-digit number)
 If two or more data are to be stored at the same time, the 4-digit number is incremented in the order of storage.

Function menu (Reading data list screen)

Edit title	▶ Edit a title Edits the title of the highlighted data. A title can contain up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters.
Result	Displays the Reading data detail screen.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted data.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all the data.

Function menu (Reading data detail screen)

Store	Saves the scanned data.
Display list	Displays the Reading data list screen. If the displayed data is not stored yet, a message asking whether to delete the data appears.
Internet	Accesses the site if the URL is highlighted. “Web To function” → p.223
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the recipient address, subject and message entered in the scanned data if “Compose message” is highlighted. Composes an i-mode message with the mail address entered if a mail address is highlighted.

Dialing	Calls the phone number if it is selected. "Phone To function" → p.222
Add to phonebook	Adds the name, reading, phone number, mail address, birthday, postal code, address and memo in the scanned data to the phonebook if "Add to phonebook" is highlighted. Adds the phone number to the phonebook if it is highlighted. Adds the mail address to the phonebook if it is highlighted.
Add bookmark	Adds the URL and title in the scanned data to bookmark if "Add bookmark" is highlighted. Adds the URL to bookmark if it is highlighted.
Save image	▶ Select a folder ▶ "YES" ▶ Select an item Saves the selected image to My picture under Data box. If you do not set the image for the standby screen, select "NO" after selecting the folder.
Save melody	▶ "YES" ▶ Select a folder ▶ "YES" ▶ Select an item Saves the selected melody to Melody under Data box. If you do not set the melody as the ring tone, select "NO" after selecting the folder.
Save ToruCa	▶ "YES" ▶ Select a folder Saves the selected ToruCa to the ToruCa folder.
Activate i-appli	Launches the i-appli specified in the scanned data if "Activate i-appli" is highlighted.
Copy	Copies text contained in the scanned data.

NOTE

◆ If the data you want to scan contains characters that cannot be scanned by the Bar code reader, those characters are converted to spaces (blanks).

<Internet> <Add bookmark>

◆ You cannot use the Web To function or add a bookmark if the URL contains illegal characters.

<Compose message>

◆ The address cannot be entered if it contains characters that cannot be entered.

<Dialing>

◆ Double-byte/single-byte numbers and symbols (#, *, and +) can be contained in the phone number. You cannot make a call if any other characters are contained.

◆ The image settings for videophone are not retained after the dialing or talking is finished. Set the image each time you make a call.

<Activate i-appli>

◆ You cannot launch an i-appli from the scanned data if "Bar code "i-appli To"" under "i-appli To setting" (p.293) is not selected.

◆ You cannot launch an i-appli if no application is specified.

<Access reader>

Scanning Text

Using the built-in camera allows a FOMA terminal to scan printed text then add the scanned text data as a phonebook entry or bookmark, or use the data to compose a message. You can also make a call or access website using the data.

- A FOMA terminal can save up to 8 scanned data.
- Hold a FOMA terminal firmly so that it does not shake during scanning.
- When scanning text, keep about 7 to 9 cm between the rear camera and the text.
- Vertically written Japanese text can also be scanned.

■ Scan mode

The following are the scan modes. Select the mode suitable for the data to scan:

Card read	Scans the name, phone number, mail address, postal code, address and memo printed on the business card to add to the phonebook.
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the scanned recipient address, subject and message entered.
URL	Scans URL, and accesses the site or adds the URL to bookmark.
Mail address	Scans the mail address and composes an i-mode message.
Phone number	Scans the phone number and makes a call.
Free memo	Scans Japanese or English text to save to Text memo.

■ The number of characters that can be scanned

The following table shows the maximum number of characters that can be scanned for each item:

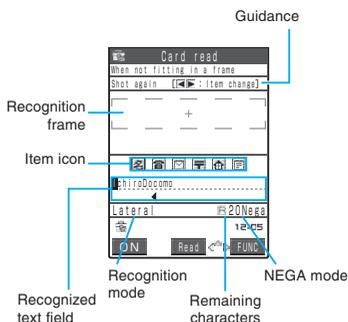
Item		Maximum number of characters that can be scanned
Card read	Name	16 in double-byte, 32 in single-byte
	Phone number	26 in single-byte numbers including #, *, +, p (pause), (,), -
	Mail address	50 in single-byte alphabets, numbers or symbols
	Postal code	7 in single-byte
	Address	50 in double-byte, 100 in single-byte
	Memo	100 in double-byte, 200 in single-byte
Compose message	Receiver	50 in single-byte alphabets, numbers or symbols
	Subject	15 in double-byte, 30 in single-byte
	Message	128 in double-byte, 256 in single-byte

Item		Maximum number of characters that can be scanned
URL		256 in single-byte alphabets, numbers or symbols
Mail address		256 in single-byte alphabets, numbers or symbols
Phone number		256 in single-byte numbers including (,), -
Free memo		128 in double-byte, 256 in single-byte
Dictionary*	Japanese	32 in double-byte, 64 in single-byte
	English	64 in single-byte

* : The option can be selected when the Access reader is launched from Dictionary.

■ Guide to the scanning screen

Taking Card read for example, the following describes the scanning screen:



Guidance : Shows the operation.

Recognition frame:

Shows the recognition field.

Item icon : Shows the item to scan.

Card read mode: "Name/phone number/mail address/postal code/address/memo"
Compose message mode: "Receiver/subject/message"

Recognized text field:

Shows the scanned text (The guidance appears on some screens).

Recognition mode:

Shows the recognition mode used for scanning "Kanji (lateral writing/vertical writing)/postal code/phone number/mail address/URL".

Remaining characters:

Shows the remaining number of single-byte characters that can be scanned.

NEGA mode : Appears if the NEGA/POSI mode is set to Negative fix.

Scanning text

<Example: To scan text in Card read mode>

- 1 **"Access reader"**
The "Access reader" screen appears.



- 2 **"New"**
The "Scanning mode selection" screen appears.
"Scan mode" → p.201



- 3 **"Card read"**
The "Access reader scanning" screen appears. The shooting mode is automatically set to "Close-up" for the rear camera. Use to select the icon for the item to save.



Function menu ▶ p.203

- 4 **Display the text in the recognition field**

Focus the text so that the entire text appears as large as possible inside the recognition field. If the recognition field cannot display the whole text, the text can be scanned several times.

■ To adjust the zoom

- : Changes from "Normal" to "Large".
- : Returns from "Large" to "Normal".

■ To turn on the light

- (ON) or (OFF)

To turn off the light, press (OFF) or (OFF).

- 5 **Focus the text**
A FOMA terminal scans the text, and the recognized text appears in red.

■ To rescan the text

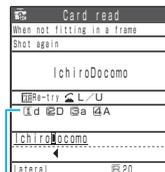
- "YES"

If the screen does not display the entire text, press , or (MEMO/CHECK) to check. Pressing (Store) stores the scanned text, and then the text data detail screen appears. The following are the two methods to edit the scanned text:

■ To select the string to edit

- Use to highlight the string to edit
- Press the candidate No.

Use to change the cases between upper and lower if it can be changed.



■ **To edit in the text editing**

- ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Edit”
- ▶ Edit the text

The text can be edited in the typical text editing.

To return to the candidate selection, press (FUNC) and select “Select recog. data”.

Go on to Step 6 when you finish editing.



6 (FUNC)

The entry is fixed as the text.

■ **To scan the remaining text**

- ▶ Repeat Steps 4 to 6

Ensure that the last two characters of the scanned text are included in the recognition field.

■ **To scan another item**

- ▶ Use (FUNC) to select the item to scan ▶ Repeat Steps 4 to 6

In Card read mode, you can scan up to 4 phone numbers and up to 3 mail addresses.

7 (FUNC)

The Reading data detail screen appears. Press (CLR) to return to the Reading data list screen.

NOTE

- ◆ Do not move the FOMA terminal while the “Processing” message appears on the screen.
- ◆ A FOMA terminal can scan kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabets (upper case and lower case), numbers and symbols. However, all katakana characters are scanned as double-byte, and all numbers and alphabets as single-byte. Some of the JIS level 2 kanji characters cannot be scanned.
- ◆ A FOMA terminal cannot recognize handwritten characters. If the text is faxed or copied, if the fonts are decorated, if the character spaces are not fixed, or if the fonts and background cannot be easily distinguished, the FOMA terminal may fail to recognize the text. Whether the FOMA terminal can recognize the text correctly may depend on the ambient lighting.
- ◆ You can also launch the Access reader from the text editing screen. The scanned data is entered into the screen.
- ◆ When launching the Access reader from Dictionary, choose the reading mode between “Dic. (Japanese)” and “Dic. (English)”.
- ◆ If you do not press any keys for three minutes or so before scanning the text, the Access reader scanning screen exits and the screen returns to the Access reader.
- ◆ Before saving the scanned text data, if you receive a voice call, if you are notified of an alarm clock or if you use another function, the scanned text is saved, and then the corresponding screen appears. Finishing the operation afterwards that occurred during the saving returns the screen to the Reading data detail.

- ◆ On the “Access Reader” screen, selecting (FUNC) ▶ “Add desktop icon” adds the desktop icon for this function.
- ◆ In URL mode, “http://” is added to the beginning of the scanned string if it does not include “://”. If the scanned string includes “://” or “s://” at its beginning, it is replaced with “http://” or “https://”.

Using the text data

1 (MENU) ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “Access Reader” ▶ “Reading data list”

The “Reading data list” screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.203

2 Select the scanned data

The “Reading data detail” screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.204

3 Select any of the displayed items

“Add to phonebook”:

Adds the name, phone number, mail address, postal code, address and memo to the phonebook → p.107

“Compose message”:

Composes an i-mode message with the recipient address, subject and message already entered → p.239

* Select any displayed item such as Phone number or Mail address to edit the data.

Function menu (Access reader scanning screen/Reading data list screen)

Edit ¹	Edits the scanned text.
Store ²	Saves the scanned data.
Internet	Accesses the site in URL mode. “Web To function” → p.223
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with all data entered in Compose message mode. Composes an i-mode message with the mail address entered in Mail address mode. Composes an i-mode message with the data entered in Free memo mode.

Dialing	Calls the phone number in Phone number mode. "Phone To function" → p.222
Add to phonebook	Adds the scanned data to the phonebook. Adds the data all at once to the phonebook in Card read mode.
Add bookmark	Bookmarks the URL in URL mode.
Search phonebook	Searches the phonebook using the scanned data. You cannot search on the Access reader scanning screen, in Card read mode or in Compose message mode.
Add to memo	Adds the scanned data to Text memo. You cannot add the scanned data in Card read mode or in Compose message mode.
Reading mode set²	Selects the scanning mode from "Card read", "Compose message", "URL", "Mail address", "Phone number" or "Free memo".
NEGA/POSI mode²	Sets the type of printing.
• Auto setting	Automatically sets the positive or negative.
• Positive fix	Suitable for printing the dark text on the light background.
• Negative fix	Suitable for printing the light text on the dark background.
Guidance OFF/ Guidance ON²	Shows or hides the guidance.
Vertical writing/ Lateral writing²	Selects the vertical writing or lateral writing for the Japanese text to scan.
Display detail³	Displays the Reading data detail screen.
Copy³	Copies text contained in the scanned data.
Delete this³	Deletes the highlighted data.
Delete all³	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all the data.

*1 : Only available on the Access reader scanning screen.
*2 : Only appears on the Access reader scanning screen.
*3 : Only appears on the Reading data list screen.

Function menu (Reading data detail screen)

Edit	Edits the text of the highlighted item. You cannot edit the text when you select "Add to phonebook" or "Compose message".
Internet	Accesses the site in URL mode. "Web To function" → p.223
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the mail address entered if the mail address is highlighted in Card read mode. Composes an i-mode message with all data entered if "Compose message" is highlighted in Compose message mode. Composes an i-mode message with the data entered if the recipient address, subject or message is highlighted in Compose message mode. Composes an i-mode message with the mail address entered in Mail address mode. Composes an i-mode message with the data entered in Free memo mode.
Dialing	Calls the phone number if it is highlighted in Card read mode. Calls the phone number in Phone number mode. "Phone To function" → p.222
Add to phonebook	Adds the data all at once to the phonebook if "Add to phonebook" is highlighted in Card read mode. Adds the data to the phonebook if the name, phone number, mail address, postal code, address, or memo is highlighted in Card read mode. Adds the mail address to the phonebook if it is highlighted in Compose message mode. Adds the mail address to the phonebook in Mail address mode. Adds the phone number to the phonebook in Phone number mode. Adds the data to the memo of the phonebook in Free memo mode.
Add bookmark	Bookmarks the URL in URL mode.
Search phonebook	Searches the phonebook using the highlighted data. You cannot search when you have selected "Add to phonebook" or "Compose message".
Add to memo	Adds the highlighted scanned data to Text memo. You cannot add the data when you have selected "Add to phonebook" or "Compose message".
Display list	Displays the Reading data list screen.
Copy	Copies data contained in the scanned data.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted data.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all the data.

NOTE

<Dialing>

- ◆ Single-byte numbers and symbols (#, * and +) can be contained in the phone number. You cannot make a call if any other characters are included.
- ◆ The image settings for videophone are not retained after the dialing or talking is finished. Set the image each time you make a call.

● i-mode/i-motion/ i-channel

What is i-mode?.....	208
Displaying i-mode Menu	i-mode menu 208
■ Viewing Sites	
Viewing Sites	209
Viewing and Using Sites	212
Registering My Menu Entries	My Menu 214
Changing Your i-mode Password.....	Change i-mode Password 214
Viewing Websites.....	Internet connection 214
Accessing Websites and i-mode Sites Quickly	Bookmark 215
Saving Site Content.....	Screen memo 217
■ Downloading images and melodies from sites	
Downloading Images from Sites and Messages....	Save image 218
Downloading Melodies from Sites	i-melody 219
Downloading PDF Data from Sites	219
Downloading Chara-den Characters from Sites	221
Downloading Kisekai Tool from Sites	221
Downloading Data Files from Sites.....	221
■ Useful i-mode functions	
Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To	
Functions	Phone To/Mail To/Web To functions 222
■ Making i-mode settings	
Making i-mode Settings	223
■ Using message services	
When You Receive a Message	Receive message 224
Checking for Messages	Check new messages 226
Viewing Messages in the Message Box	MessageR/MessageF 227
■ Using certificates	
Using SSL Certificate	228
Setting FirstPass.....	228
Changing the Certificate Host.....	230
■ Using i-motion	
What is i-motion?.....	230
Downloading i-motion	Download i-motion 230
Setting i-motion.....	231
■ Using i-channel	
What is i-channel?	232
Accessing a Site from the Channel List.....	234
Making the i-channel Settings.....	i-Channel setting 234

What is i-mode?

The i-mode service allows you to use an i-mode-compatible FOMA terminal (i-mode terminal) display to access online services such as i-mode mail and connection to the Internet and i-mode sites (programs).

- i-mode is a pay service you need to subscribe to. For information on subscription, see the back cover of the manual.
- For details of the i-mode service, refer to the latest "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

Notes on using i-mode

- Site (program) or Internet website (webpage) content is generally protected by copyright laws. Documents, pictures and other data downloaded from these sites or websites to your i-mode terminal are permitted only for personal use. It is prohibited to copy or modify the whole or part of data for resale or redistribution without the copyright holders' permission.
- All data stored (mails, MessageR/MessageF, screen memos, i-appli, i-motion, bookmarks, etc.) on your i-mode terminal may be lost when your i-mode terminal is damaged, repaired, or otherwise mishandled. It is recommended to back up the stored data or important data. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to the data stored on your i-mode terminal.
- When the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced or the mobile phone is turned on with no FOMA card (UIM) inserted, some types of mobile phone may be incapable of viewing or playing melodies, images and movies downloaded from sites, files (images, movies, melodies, etc.) attached to sent or received mails, screen memos and MessageR/MessageF.
- If a file for which viewing and playback are restricted by a FOMA card (UIM) is set as the standby screen or a ring tone, the FOMA terminal operates using the default settings when the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced or the FOMA terminal is turned on without the FOMA card (UIM) inserted.

Important

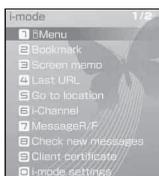
- It is recommended to back up bookmark contents onto a microSD memory card or note the contents down separately. You can also save the data to your PC by using the DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.430) and FOMA USB Cable (optional).

<i-mode menu>

Displaying i-mode Menu

Starting i-mode

1 MENU ▶ "i-mode"



The "i-mode menu" screen appears. The i-mode menu consists of 11 items.

Pressing  on the standby screen also displays the "i-mode menu" screen.

■ If appears

You are out of the service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach. Move until the signal strength indicator e.g.  appears.

■ If is flashing

The FOMA terminal is communicating with the i-mode Center. If you attempt to access an i-mode site (p.209) or website (p.214) or send an i-mode message (p.239) while you are in the service area but not using the i-mode service,  flashes and it may take time to start up i-mode.

■ If is flashing

When you are receiving i-mode service (during i-mode),  flashes.

Item	Description	Refer to
iMenu	This is the first page displayed when you access the i-mode Center. From this screen, access a variety of sites (programs) such as "What's New".	p.209
Bookmark	Store the addresses of your favorite websites on your i-mode terminal so that you can jump directly to them next time.	p.215
Screen memo	Shows the i-mode site screens stored on your i-mode terminal.	p.217
Last URL	Displays the i-mode site or website that was displayed last time.	p.211
Go to location	Directly enter an address to access the i-mode-compatible website.	p.214
i-Channel	Shows the channel list screen.	p.232
MessageR/F	Displays received MessageR/MessageF. The message service automatically delivers required information to your FOMA terminal.	p.227

Item	Description	Refer to
Check new messages	Connects your FOMA terminal to the i-mode Center to check for new messages or MessageR/MessageF.	pp.226, 252
Client certificate	Connects to the FirstPass Center to request or download user certificate.	p.228
i-mode settings	Makes the i-mode settings.	p.223
Internet (Full Browser)	Displays a website designed for a PC in full browser.	p.319

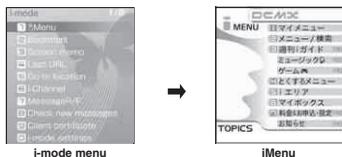
NOTE

- ◆ The i-mode service area is the same as the FOMA service area (the area in which calls can be made and received).
- ◆ The i-mode menu can be displayed even when you are out of the service area. However, you cannot send/receive information to/from sites or via the Internet.

Displaying the iMenu screen

1 MENU ▶ “i-mode” ▶ “iMenu”

The FOMA terminal connects to the i-mode Center and the “iMenu” screen (the first i-mode screen) appears.



- To cancel downloading pages
▶ [CLR] or (Quit)

iMenu in English

The iMenu can be displayed in English.

1 Display the i-mode menu and select iMenu and press (English)



“ENGLISH”

2 Select “ENGLISH” and then press (English)



Select “日本語” to return to the Japanese display.

NOTE

- ◆ とくするメニュー (tokusuru menu), i エリア (i-area), かんたん検索 (Simple search), マイボックス (My box), お知らせ (News) and TOPICS are not shown on the English iMenu.
- ◆ Generally, the What's New site is updated every other Monday.
- ◆ English sites in Menu List differ from Japanese version.

Exiting i-mode

1 During i-mode, press (Power) ▶ “YES”

“ ” flashes, then “ ” disappears.

NOTE

- ◆ Pressing and holding (Power) for 2 seconds or longer will turn the FOMA terminal off.

Viewing Sites

You can use various services provided by the IP (information service provider). (A separate subscription may be required.)

1 MENU ▶ “i-mode” ▶ “iMenu”

2 “ENGLISH” ▶ “Menu List” ▶ Select a site

The “Sites” screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.210

● “みんなNらんど” (Only in Japanese)

You can download and save i-αpli programs, dictionaries, face stamps and Deco-mail templates available on your FOMA terminal from the site “みんなNらんど” under iMenu, and use them for various purposes.

The following shows how to access “みんなNらんど”

Select “iMenu” → “メニュー/検索” → “ケータイ電話メーカー” → “みんなNらんど”.

The QR code on the right is also available to access “みんなNらんど”.



NOTE

- ◆ Some sites may charge you an information fee.
- ◆ You may be unable to view images on some sites.
- ◆ If an image cannot be downloaded, the “” icon appears. However, “” does not appear for a background image that cannot be downloaded.
- ◆ You can make and receive voice calls even while accessing a site (p.392). You can also send and receive messages.
- ◆ You can select any of the underlined items on the site screen to access the related pages (linked pages).
- ◆ The displayed site screen is not updated automatically. To see the latest information, select “Reload” from the function menu.
- ◆ The number of colors used on certain sites exceeds the maximum number of colors that the FOMA terminal can display. In this case, the site may not appear as intended.
- ◆ On some i-mode-compatible sites or websites, characters may be difficult or impossible to see depending on the set colors.

Function menu (Sites screen)

Add bookmark	“Adding bookmarks”→p.215
Bookmark	Displays the Bookmark folder list screen. →p.215
Add screen memo	“Saving a screen memo”→p.217
Screen memo list	“Displaying a screen memo”→p.217
Save image	“Downloading Images from Sites and Messages”→p.218
Scroll mode	Sets the scroll mode. “To use the scroll mode”→p.211
Compose message	Pastes the URL of the currently displayed page or insert/attach an image to compose an i-mode message or Deco-mail message.
• Attach URL	Pastes the URL of the displayed page to compose an i-mode message.
• Attach image	▶ Select an image Attaches an image on the displayed page to compose an i-mode message.
• Insert image	▶ Select an image Inserts an image on the displayed page to compose a Deco-mail message.
Enter URL	▶▶ Enter a URL ▶▶“OK”▶▶ Enter a URL Enters a URL to access the website.
Add to phonebook	“Adding phone number and e-mail address to the phonebook”→p.213
Add desktop icon	Pastes the URL of the displayed page as a desktop icon.
Save schedule	Saves a schedule while browsing the displayed page.
Refer dictionary	“Using dictionaries from other functions”→p.411
Home	
• Set as home URL	Registers the URL of the displayed page as the home URL. One URL can be stored.
• Display home	Displays the home URL.

Change CHR code	Changes the character code to redisplay a page that is not displayed correctly.
Reload	Refreshes the displayed page.
Retry	Plays a Flash movie or animation on the displayed page from the beginning.
iMenu	Displays the iMenu screen.
i-mode menu	Displays the i-mode menu.
Site info	
• Title	▶ Check the title ▶“OK” Displays the title of the displayed page.
• URL	▶ Check the URL ▶“OK” Displays the URL of the displayed page.
• Certificate	Displays the contents of the SSL certificate on an SSL-compatible page.
Site settings	Sets the image display mode, i-motion type and sound effects for the displayed page.
• Set image disp.	Sets the image display mode for a page. If “OFF” is selected, “  ” appears instead of an image on the page.
• i-motion type	“Setting the i-motion type to download”→p.232
• Sound effect	Sets sound effects for Flash movies.
Switch to FB	“Switching from i-mode to full browser”→p.324

NOTE

<Compose message>

- ◆ You can paste a URL up to 256 single-byte characters on a message. Longer URLs cannot be pasted.

<Set as home URL>

- ◆ Storing a URL in the “Set as home URL” option does not change the “Home URL” settings under “i-mode settings”.

<Display home>

- ◆ “Display home” is not available when “Home URL” in “i-mode settings” is set to “Invalid”.
- ◆ If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, pressing the switch on the standby screen will also display the page set as the home URL.

<Change CHR code>

- ◆ If text is not displayed correctly, repeat the procedure. If you perform the procedure 4 times in a row, the site is displayed in the original character code.
- ◆ Some sites may not be displayed correctly even when character codes are changed.
- ◆ If you change the character code on a site displayed correctly, the site may no longer be displayed correctly.
- ◆ “Change CHR code” only applies to the currently displayed site.

<Retry>

- ◆ Selecting this option during playback restarts the playback from the beginning.

<Title>

- ◆ Up to 64 double-byte or 128 single-byte characters are displayed.

<URL>

- ◆ If the entire URL does not appear, press to display the cursor. Use to move the cursor and check the URL. Press again to hide the cursor. Select "OK" to return to the page screen.

<Certificate>

- ◆ Up to 5 certificates are displayed. If there are two or more certificates, use to check the previous or next certificate.
- ◆ When certificates are displayed, the screen scrolls at a fixed speed regardless of the "Scroll" setting in "i-mode settings".

<Switch to FB>

- ◆ Some sites may not be displayed in full browser.

Viewing SSL pages

To view SSL pages, the following certificates are required:

- CA certificate: Issued by an certification organization and stored on your FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.
- DoCoMo CA certificate: Required to connect to the FirstPass center and stored on the FOMA card (green).
- User Certificate: Downloaded from the FirstPass center by selecting "Client certificate" (p.228) from the i-mode menu and stored on the FOMA card (green).

1 Open an SSL page

An SSL page and "" appear.

■ To cancel opening during authentication



■ To cancel loading an authenticated page



2 Move from the SSL page to a normal page ▶ "YES"

SSL communication ends and "" disappears.

NOTE

- ◆ The message "This site is not certified Do you connect?" may appear when you attempt to open an SSL page. This message appears when the SSL certificate for the page has expired or is not supported. In this case, you can continue to view the page by selecting "YES". However, you may not be able to safely send your personal information such as your credit card number or contacts.

Scroll function

When you are viewing a webpage, MessageR/MessageF, i-mode mail or SMS and the text or list cannot be fully displayed on a screen, scroll up and down to view the rest.

■ To scroll by line

Press to scroll down by line to view the next list item or text line.

Press to scroll up by line to view the previous list item or text line.

You can set the scroll speed when pressing or and whether to display linked pages. → p.223

■ To scroll by screen

Press (MEMO/CHECK) to scroll down by screen to view the next part of the list or text.

Press (↶) to scroll up by screen to view the previous part of the list or text.

■ To use the scroll mode

If selecting "Scroll mode" from the site function menu (p.210) or screen memo detail function menu (p.218), you can scroll in the direction (up or down) as you slide . Pressing on the sites screen also sets/releases the scroll mode.

Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers

If you select an item on an i-mode site or website, the message indicating that the mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers will be sent may appear.

- Before the manufacturer numbers are sent, the message indicating that they will be sent always appears. They will not be sent automatically.

NOTE

- ◆ Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are used by the IP (information service provider) to identify you and provide you with customized services and to confirm that you can use contents provided by the IP.
- ◆ Your Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are sent to the IP (information service provider) via the Internet and may be disclosed to a third party. However, your phone number, address, age and sex are not disclosed to the IP (information service provider), etc.

Reconnecting to the last viewed page <Last URL>

Each time you view a page, the URL of the displayed page is set to "Last URL". When you end an i-mode session, the URL of the last viewed page is saved to "Last URL". Use "Last URL" to reconnect to the last viewed page.

1 ▶ "i-mode" ▶ "Last URL" ▶ "YES"

NOTE

- ◆ The current URL is not saved to “Last URL” if:
 - You accessed the page from Bookmark under the Secret folder
 - You downloaded a PDF document that will cost you separately
- ◆ The URL of the data acquisition screen is not saved to “Last URL”. In this case, “Last URL” will save the URL of the page viewed before the data acquisition screen.

Viewing and Using Sites

This section describes operations available while viewing an i-mode site or website.

Displaying images

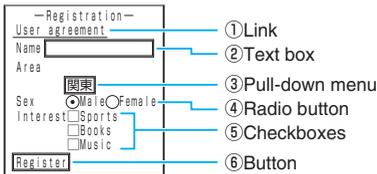
- The FOMA terminal displays GIF and JPEG images and Flash movies (p.213). Some images and movies may not be displayed even if the formats are supported.
- When a Flash movie is displayed, the display operations may differ from on a normal page.
- You can set whether to display images in “Set image disp.” (p.210) under “Site settings”.

Image icons

-  (color) : Appears during image loading or if “Set image disp.” is set to “OFF”.
-  : Appears if image loading failed.
-  (BW) : Appears if an image cannot be loaded.

Selecting a linked page or item

While connecting to i-mode, you may need to perform the following operations for some sites.



- 1 Link**
You can jump to the page linked to the selected item.
- 2 Text box**
You can enter text directly into a text box. When you select a text box, the text entry screen appears.
- 3 Pull-down menu**
You can select an item from a list of options. Only a part of options are shown and hidden options will appear as a list when you select an option.
- 4 Radio button**
You can select only one option. ● indicates a selected radio button.

- 5 Checkboxes**
You can select multiple options from a range of options. ☑ indicates a selected checkbox.
- 6 Button**
Selecting a key performs the function assigned to the key.

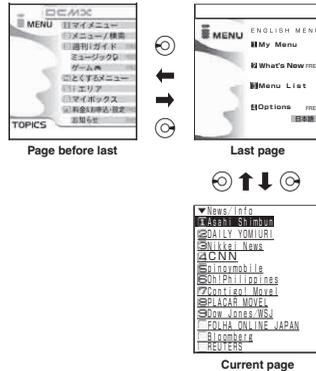
NOTE

- ◆ Depending on how the site is constructed, a pull-down menu may include which enables you to select multiple options. Use ⤴ to move and press ● to select or deselect the item in . When you have completed your selections, press ⏹ (Finish) or ⏪ to end the procedure.

Jumping forward/back to a page

You can jump forward or back to a page that has been retrieved and stored in the FOMA terminal’s cache (up to 30 pages are stored).

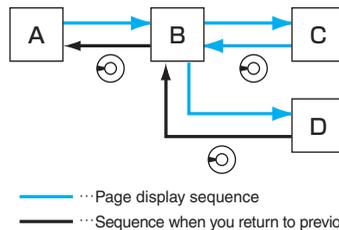
- 1 Press ⏪ to jump back to the previous page or ⏩ to jump forward to the next page**



NOTE

- ◆ You can review the pages you have visited in the current i-mode session by repeatedly pressing ⏪. However, when you have pressed ⏪ to return to an earlier page (from “C” to “B”) and then gone from that page to another page (from “B” to “D”), pressing ⏪ twice from page “D” will not display page “C”, but will take you back to “B” and then to page “A”.

■ When the page display sequence is “A”, “B”, “C”, “B” and “D”



— Page display sequence
— Sequence when you return to previous pages

■ To view pages stored in cache

- A cache temporarily stores websites you have visited in the FOMA terminal. Use  to move to another page while you are viewing an i-mode site or website. A FOMA terminal will display a page stored in cache without accessing the site. However, if the cache is full or if the page is set to always display the latest information, the FOMA terminal accesses the site even when you use . If the date and time information for a page has been updated, the FOMA terminal accesses the site and displays the latest information even when the page is stored in the cache.
- Even when site data are loaded from cache, the text and settings you entered previously do not appear.
- The cache is cleared when you exit i-mode.
- When you load an SSL-compatible page from the cache, the message indicating that an SSL page will be displayed appears.

Reloading data

Use this procedure to refresh the displayed page.

- 1 Sites screen (p.209)  (FUNC)  "Reload"

NOTE

- ◆ If you perform "Reload" on the final completion screen for pages such as questionnaires or other forms, a message asking whether to resend the data appears. Note that selecting "YES" will resend information that has already been sent once.

Adding phone number and e-mail address to the phonebook <Add to phonebook>

You can add a phone number or e-mail address displayed on a site page or screen memo to your phonebook.

<Example: To add a phone number displayed on a site page>

- 1 Sites screen (p.209)  (FUNC)  "Add to phonebook"  "YES"  Add a phone number to phonebook

"Adding Information to the Phonebook" → p.107
If the name, reading and mail address are attached to a phone number, they are also entered to the phonebook together with the phone number. Enter other necessary items and then save the entry to the phonebook.

Handling Flash movies

Flash is an animation technique supported by the FOMA terminal that uses both images and sound. Flash gives you access to a wide range of animations and visually exciting sites. You can also download a Flash movie to your FOMA terminal and set it in the standby screen.

- A Flash playing error prevents successful completion of the saving.
- Note that if you play a Flash movie to which vibration is set, your FOMA terminal vibrates regardless of the "Vibrator" setting.
- Some Flash movies may not run correctly.
- You may also be able to control a Flash movie even when "" does not appear at the bottom of screen.
- Flash movies are not displayed if you select "OFF" in "Set image disp."
- Selecting "YES" in "Use phone information" (p.224) enables you to use data stored on the FOMA terminal (time, date, signal strength, battery level, ring volume, language, model type and model info).

NOTE

- ◆ To replay a Flash movie, select "Retry" from the site function menu or other menus. → p.210
- ◆ Some Flash movies use sound effects. To run a Flash movie without the sound effects, select "Sound effect" in "Site settings" from the sites function menu and then select "OFF". Even if "Vibrator" is set to "Melody linkage", this does not apply to sound effects of Flash movie.
- ◆ When a Flash movie is set as a screen such as standby by using "Display setting", the sound effects or vibrator that are set in the Flash movie do not run. Furthermore, "Retry" is unavailable for repeating a Flash movie.
- ◆ Some Flash movies may appear differently from the way they do on a site (e.g. a part of movie is not saved) if they are saved or stored as screen memo.
- ◆ Display behavior may differ when a Flash movie appears.
- ◆ For some Flash movies, the vibrator function is activated. If such Flash movie is set in the ringing screen, videophone ringing screen or mail receiving screen, the FOMA terminal vibrates according to the "Vibrator" or "Manner mode set" setting. The terminal does not vibrate when a Flash movie is set in the standby screen, Wake-up display or check new messages.
- ◆ Depending on the Flash movie, you may not be able to use the Neuropointer to select menu screens.

<My Menu>

Registering My Menu Entries

My Menu provides you with a quick and convenient way to connect to frequently visited sites.

- You can register up to 45 sites in My Menu.
- Some sites cannot be registered to My Menu.
- To connect quickly to a website, use “Bookmark” (p.215).

- 1 **Sites screen (p.209) ▶ “My Menu Registration” ▶ Select the “Input password” box ▶ Enter your 4-digit i-mode password ▶ “Select”**

i-mode password → p.154

NOTE

- ◆ Charged sites in the Menu List under iMenu are automatically registered to My Menu upon subscription.

Viewing sites registered to My Menu

- 1 **(MENU) ▶ “i-mode” ▶ “iMenu” ▶ “ENGLISH” ▶ “My Menu” ▶ Select a site you want to view**

NOTE

- ◆ To connect to a site from My Menu, the site must first be registered to My Menu.
- ◆ Dual Network service users may find that My Menu entries registered on their mova-compatible i-mode terminal are not available on the FOMA terminal and similarly that entries registered on their FOMA terminal are not available on the mova-compatible i-mode terminal.

<Change i-mode Password>

Changing Your i-mode Password

You need a 4-digit “i-mode password” to register or unregister sites in My Menu, to subscribe to or unsubscribe from message services or charged i-mode sites, and to set your mail preferences.

- Until you change the i-mode password, it is set to “0000” (4 zeros) by default. You can change your i-mode password at any time from your FOMA terminal.
- Take particular care not to disclose your i-mode password to others.
- If you forget your i-mode password, the registered service subscriber need to take a form of identification (such as a driver’s license) to an NTT DoCoMo service counter. A service representative will reset your i-mode password to “0000”.

- 1 **(MENU) ▶ “i-mode” ▶ “iMenu” ▶ “ENGLISH” ▶ “Options” ▶ “Change i-mode Password”**

- 2 **Select the “Current Password” box ▶ Enter your current i-mode password**

The entered number appears as “*”.

- 3 **Select the “New Password” box ▶ Enter a new i-mode password**

Enter a 4-digit number as your i-mode password.

- 4 **Select the “New Password” box ▶ Enter the new i-mode password again**

Enter the number you entered in step 3.

- 5 **Select “Select”**

- **If you enter your “Current Password” incorrectly**

The message notifying that the entered i-mode password is incorrect appears.

- **If you enter different numbers in “New Password” and “New Password (Confirmation)”**

The message notifying that the entered i-mode passwords do not match appears.

<Internet connection>

Viewing Websites

This function enables you to view a website simply by entering its URL.

- i-mode-incompatible websites may not be displayed correctly.
- A website viewed on your terminal may look different from that on a PC.
- You can view websites designed for a PC in full browser. → p.319

- 1 **(MENU) ▶ “i-mode” ▶ “Go to location” ▶ “Enter URL” ▶ Select “<NEW>”**



- 2 **Enter a URL ▶ “OK”**

The message warning that it may not be possible to display the site for the entered URL appears. Press **(OK)** or **(CLR)** to connect to the website with the entered URL.

- **If you enter no URL or a URL that does not begin with “http://” or “https://”**

The message notifying that the URL is incorrect appears.

NOTE

- ◆ Some websites may not be displayed correctly on a FOMA terminal.
- ◆ If the received data exceeds the maximum size that can be loaded for a single page, data reception stops. You may be able to view the data loaded so far by pressing **⏏**.
- ◆ You can enter a URL up to 256 single-byte characters including "http://" or "https://".

Accessing sites from the URL history

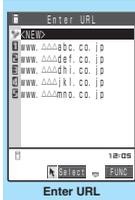
The FOMA terminal records the last 10 URLs you entered in the URL history.

- 1** **(MENU)** ▶ **"i-mode"** ▶ **"Go to location"** ▶ **"Enter URL"**

The "Enter URL" screen appears.

- 2** Select a URL number ▶ **"OK"** ▶ **"OK"**

- To edit the selected URL
 - ▶ Select the "Internet address" box ▶ Edit the URL



Function menu ▶ p.215

NOTE

- ◆ Once the URL history contains 10 entries, the oldest entry is automatically replaced as a new entry is added.
- ◆ Multiple visits to the same site by entering the URL are logged as separate entries.
- ◆ The URL history indicates URLs up to 22 single-byte characters, excluding the "http://" or "https://" prefix.

Function menu (Enter URL screen)

Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.147
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail with the selected URL pasted in the message.
Set as home URL	Stores the selected URL as home URL. One URL can be stored.
Delete	Deletes URLs.
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted URL.
• Delete selected	▶ Use ⏏ to select a checkbox <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes multiple URLs.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all the registered URLs.

<Bookmark>

Accessing Websites and i-mode Sites Quickly

Adding frequently visited sites to your Bookmark folders enables you to access those sites quickly and easily.

- You can change titles of your bookmarks and organize the bookmarks into categories by using folders.

Adding bookmarks

- You can bookmark up to 100 sites.
- The URL for each bookmark can contain up to 256 single-byte characters. Pages with longer URLs cannot be bookmarked.
- Up to 10 URLs can be stored in the Secret folder separately from normal bookmarks.
- Some sites cannot be bookmarked.

<Example: When displaying a site>

- 1** **Sites screen (p.209)** ▶ **(FUNC)** ▶ **"Add bookmark"** ▶ **"YES"** ▶ Select a folder number

NOTE

- ◆ A bookmark title can consist of up to 12 double-byte or 24 single-byte characters. Longer title is truncated when the bookmark is added. If no title is given, the URL is shown (excluding "http://" or "https://").

Using a bookmark to access an i-mode site or website

- 1** **(MENU)** ▶ **"i-mode"** ▶ **"Bookmark"**

The "Bookmark folder list" screen appears.



Bookmark folder list

Function menu ▶ p.216

- 2** Select a folder number
The "Bookmark" screen appears.
- 3** Select a bookmark number



Bookmark

Function menu ▶ p.216

NOTE

◆ Page titles in the bookmark list are shown in the order they were used.

Function menu (Bookmark folder list screen)

Add folder	▶ Enter a folder name You can add up to 9 folders. A folder name can consist of up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Edit folder name	▶ Enter a folder name You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Sort folder	▶ Select the destination Rearranges folders.
No. of bookmarks	Displays the total number of bookmarks in all the folders.
Touch to send all	"Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time" → p.369
Send all Ir data	
CopyAll to microSD	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Copies all the stored bookmarks to the microSD memory card.
Delete folder	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes the highlighted folder and bookmarks in the folder.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all the bookmarks.

NOTE

◆ You cannot apply security to bookmark folders.

<Add folder>

◆ A newly created folder appears above the microSD folder.

<Edit folder name>

◆ You cannot rename the Bookmark folder, microSD folder and Secret folder.

<Sort folder>

◆ You cannot rearrange the Bookmark, microSD and Secret folders.

<No. of bookmarks>

◆ The number of bookmarks in the microSD folder and Secret folder are not displayed.

<Touch to send all><Send all Ir data>

◆ Bookmarks in the microSD folder and Secret folder are not sent.

<CopyAll to microSD>

◆ Bookmarks in the Secret folder are not copied.

<Delete folder>

◆ You cannot delete the Bookmark, microSD and Secret folders.

<Delete all>

◆ Bookmarks in the microSD folder and Secret folder are not deleted.

Function menu (Bookmark screen)

Move	Moves bookmarks to another folder.
• Move this	▶ Select a folder ▶ "YES" Moves the highlighted bookmark.
• Move selected	▶ Select a folder number ▶ Use (☺) to select a checkbox (☐) of a bookmark ▶ (☺) (Finish) ▶ "YES" Moves the selected bookmark.
• Move all	▶ Select a folder number ▶ "YES" Moves all bookmarks in the folder.
Edit title	▶ Enter a title You can enter up to 12 double-byte or 24 single-byte characters.
Add desktop icon	Pastes a bookmarked URL as a desktop icon.
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail with a bookmarked URL pasted into the message.
Attach to mail ^{*1}	Composes an i-mode mail with a bookmark attached.
Touch to send data	"Transferring One Data at a Time" → p.368
Send Ir data	
Copy to microSD	Copies bookmarks to the microSD memory card.
• Copy this	Copies the highlighted bookmark.
• Copy selected	▶ Use (☺) to select a checkbox (☐) of a bookmark ▶ (☺) (Finish) ▶ "YES" Copies multiple bookmarks.
• Copy all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Copies all the bookmarks stored in the folder.
Set as home URL	Stores a bookmarked URL as home URL. One URL can be stored.
Copy URL	▶ Use (☺) to highlight the beginning of text to copy ▶ (☺) Use (☺) highlight the end of text to copy ▶ (☺) Copies a bookmarked URL.
No. of bookmarks	Shows the number of bookmarks in the folders.
Delete	Deletes bookmarks.
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted bookmark.
• Delete selected	▶ Use (☺) to select a checkbox (☐) (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes multiple bookmarks.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all bookmarks in the folder.
Keep in secret ^{*2}	"Hiding Various Data" → p.160
Bookmark info ^{*1}	Displays bookmark information.

*1 : Only "Attach to mail" and "Bookmark info" options appear for the bookmarks in the microSD folder. ("Bookmark info" option appears only for the bookmarks in the microSD folder.)

*2 : This option appears only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. For the Secret folder, "Put out" appears. → p.160

NOTE

<Move>

- ◆ You cannot move a bookmark to the microSD or Secret folder.

<Edit title>

- ◆ If you delete a title and press , the URL is stored without the "http://" or "https://" prefix.

<Add desktop icon>

- ◆ You can display the bookmark pasted as a desktop icon by selecting its icon even if the bookmark is stored in the Secret folder.

<Delete all>

- ◆ "Delete all" deletes all the bookmarks in the currently displayed folder. Bookmarks in other folders are not deleted.

<Screen memo>

Saving Site Content

When you have found some useful information (travel information, etc.), you can save the displayed page on your FOMA terminal as a screen memo for later reference.

- You can save up to 100 screen memos (the number of screen memos that can be saved may be less depending on the size of screen memo data saved, etc.).

Saving a screen memo

- 1 Sites screen (p.209)  (FUNC) 
"Add screen memo"  "YES"

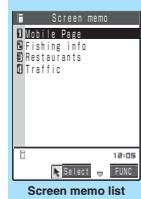
NOTE

- ◆ When you save an SSL page as a screen memo, the SSL certificate for the page is also saved.
- ◆ A title for a saved screen memo can be up to 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters long. Longer title is truncated.
- ◆ If you save the same page twice, they are saved separately as different screen memos.
- ◆ Even if an item is entered in a radio button, checkbox, text box, pull-down menu or selection box when you save a site page as screen memo, the item does not appear in the saved screen memo.
- ◆ When you save a screen such as the data acquisition, the data is saved along with the screen. However, the data acquisition screen for i-motion or Chaku-Uta-Full[®] with replay time limit cannot be saved as a screen memo.
- ◆ Except the data acquisition screen, the URL for a screen memo page (up to 256 single-byte characters) will be saved.

Displaying a screen memo

- 1   "i-mode" 
"Screen memo"

The "Screen memo list" screen appears.



Function menu  p.217

- 2 Select a screen memo number

The "Screen memo detail" screen appears.



Function menu  p.218

NOTE

- ◆ Information on a screen memo is the one stored and may differ from the latest one.
- ◆ If a saved page has no title, "No title" appears in the Screen memo list screen.

Function menu (Screen memo list screen)

Edit title	<p> Enter a title</p> <p>You can enter up to 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters.</p>
Protect ON/OFF	<p>Protects or unprotects a screen memo. Protected memo title is marked with . The  icon disappears when the protection is removed.</p>
No. of memos	<p>Displays the numbers of stored and protected screen memos respectively.</p>
Delete	<p>Deletes screen memos.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delete this • Delete selected 	<p>Deletes the highlighted screen memo.</p> <p> Use  to select a checkbox <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>  (Finish)  "YES"</p> <p>Deletes multiple screen memos.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delete all 	<p> Enter your security code  "YES"</p> <p>Deletes all the registered screen memos.</p>

NOTE

- ◆ **<Edit title>**
- ◆ If you delete a title, the screen memo is added as "No title".
- ◆ **<Protect ON/OFF>**
- ◆ Up to 50 screen memos can be protected. However, the number of screen memos that can be protected varies depending on the data size.
- ◆ **<Delete>**
- ◆ Protected screen memos cannot be deleted. Unprotect them for deletion.

Function menu (Screen memo detail screen)

Save image	"Downloading Images from Sites and Messages" → p.218
Add to phonebook	Add a phone number and e-mail address displayed on a screen memo to the phonebook. "Adding Information to the Phonebook" → p.107
Edit title	▶ Enter a title You can enter up to 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects a screen memo. Protected memo title is marked with "🔒". The "🔒" icon disappears when the protection is removed.
Scroll mode	Sets the scroll mode. "To use the scroll mode" → p.211
Compose message	Enables you to compose an i-mode mail or Deco-mail with the URL of a screen memo pasted into a message or with an image attached or inserted.
• Attach URL	Composes an i-mode mail with the URL of a screen memo pasted in a message.
• Attach image	▶ Select an image Composes an i-mode mail with an image displayed in a screen memo attached.
• Insert image	▶ Select an image Composes a Deco-mail with an image displayed in a screen memo inserted into the message.
Save schedule	Stores a schedule event by browsing a screen memo.
Refer dictionary	"Using dictionaries from other functions" → p.411
URL	Displays a screen memo URL.
Certificate	Displays the SSL certificate details when the screen memo is from an SSL page.
Sound effect	Sets sound effects for Flash movies.
Retry	Replays the Flash movie or animation in a screen memo from the beginning.
Delete	Deletes the displayed screen memo.

NOTE

<URL>

◆ You cannot edit the displayed URL.

<Retry>

◆ Selecting this option during playback restarts the playback from the beginning.

<Delete>

◆ Protected screen memos cannot be deleted. Unprotect them for deletion.

<Save image>

Downloading Images from Sites and Messages

If saving an image, background image or animation attached to or displayed in an i-mode mail, MessageR/MessageF, screen memo or site, you can set the saved image for a screen such as the standby or wake-up display.

<Example: To save an image displayed on a site page>

1 Sites screen (p.209)/"Message detail" screen (p.227) ▶ (FUNC)

▶ "Save image" ▶ "Normal image"

▶ "Select an image" ▶ "YES"

▶ **Select a folder number**

Position the frame over the image to save.

■ **To save a background image**

▶ "Save image" ▶ "Background image" ▶

"YES" ▶ Select a folder

2 "Yes" ▶ Select an item

■ **To not set the image for the standby screen, etc.**

▶ "NO"

NOTE

◆ You cannot save a JPEG image whose width or height exceeds 2,304 dots, JPEG image whose total number of dots exceeds 2,304 × 1,728, a GIF image whose width or height exceeds 690 dots or a GIF image whose total number of dots exceeds 690 × 480

◆ Also, a progressive JPEG image* larger than 690 dots wide × 480 dots high or whose width or height exceeds 690 dots cannot be copied.

* : Progressive JPEG is a format widely used for websites. The whole image is displayed as very low-quality and fuzzy, which becomes sharper as the lines fill in.

◆ You cannot save an image with a file size larger than 100K bytes.

◆ When saving an image for Decorate PI, the message asking whether to store the Decorate PI appears. Selecting "YES" saves the image to "Decorate PI" folder in "My picture".

◆ When saving an image for Auto Decomail picture, you can select the "Auto Decomail" folder to store.

◆ Up to 36 single-byte characters can be saved for the file name of the saved image. If no file name is specified, the text between the last slash (/) and the period (.) in the URL from which the file was downloaded is used as the file name. However, if there is nothing between "/" and "." or in other cases, the file name is saved as "imagexxx" (xxx are numerals).

◆ An image cannot be saved if "🔒" is displayed.

- ◆ A transparent GIF file that is not an animation GIF file and has the extension ".ifm" is saved as a frame or stamp in one of the following sizes:
 - Frame that has an image size of VGA+ (690 × 480), VGA+Vert. (480 × 690), VGA (640 × 480), VGA Vert. (480 × 690), CIF (352 × 288), CIF Vert. (288 × 352), QVGA (320 × 240), Screen (240 × 345, 345 × 240), Stand-by (240 × 320), QCIF (176 × 144), QCIF Vert. (144 × 176), SubQCIF (128 × 96), SubQCIF Vert. (96 × 128)
 - Stamp that is not a frame image and has a size of 240 dots wide × 240 dots high or smaller

Important

- It is recommended to copy the stored images to the microSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC by using the DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.430) and FOMA USB Cable (optional). (You cannot save images in the microSD memory card or transfer them to a PC if you are prohibited to attach them to mails or to output them from the FOMA terminal.)
- Stored data may be lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. Please note that NTT DoCoMo takes no responsibility for such loss.

<i-melody>

Downloading Melodies from Sites

You can set your favorite song, the latest hit song downloaded from a site or a stored melody attached to an i-mode mail as a ring tone, etc. on your FOMA terminal.

- Up to 400 melodies can be stored (the number of melodies that can be stored depends on the size of melody data stored).

<Example: To store a melody downloaded from a site>

1 Sites screen (p.209) ▶ Select a melody

2 "Save" ▶ "YES" ▶ Select a folder

■ To play a melody

▶ "Play"

■ To display melody information

▶ "Property"

3 "Yes" ▶ Select an item

■ To not set the melody as a ring tone, etc.

▶ "NO"



NOTE

- ◆ You may not be able to download a melody depending on the site or melody size.

- ◆ A downloaded melody may be restricted so that only a designated part of the melody will be played. While a melody of this type will be played in full when played back on a FOMA terminal, when it is set as a ring tone, only the designated section will be played.
- ◆ Some downloaded melodies may not be played correctly.
- ◆ When the file name of saved melody consists of only single-byte alphanumeric characters, the melody is saved using up to 36 single-byte characters of that file name. If no file name is specified, the text between the last slash (/) and the period (.) in the URL from which the file was downloaded is used as the file name. However, if there is nothing between " " and "." or in other cases, the file name is saved as "melodyxxx" (xxx are numerals).
- ◆ Downloaded melodies are played at the volume specified in "Phone" in "Ring volume".

Important

- It is recommended to copy the stored melodies to the microSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC by using the DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.430) and FOMA USB Cable (optional). (You cannot save melodies in the microSD memory card or transfer them to a PC if you are prohibited to attach them to mails or to output them from the FOMA terminal.)
- Stored data may be lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. Please note that NTT DoCoMo takes no responsibility for such loss.

Downloading PDF Data from Sites

Use this procedure to download a PDF-formatted data from a website and display it on your FOMA terminal.

- Up to 400 PDF files can be stored on the FOMA terminal (the number of files that can be stored depends on the size of PDF data stored, etc.).

1 Sites screen (p.209) ▶ Select a PDF data file

When a PDF file that requires download of all the data is selected, the "PDF data" screen (p.371) appears after all the data is downloaded.

When a PDF file that enables you to download the specified pages is selected, the first downloaded page appears. The subsequent pages are downloaded when you move to those pages.

Operation for viewing PDF data → p.372

■ To interrupt download

▶ (Quit) or (CLR)

When the message asking whether to save the partly downloaded data appears, select "YES" to save it. In this case, you can download the remaining data later. → p.220

■ If the password entry screen appears

Enter the password set to the PDF data.

■ **To save the PDF data**

▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Save” ▶ “YES” ▶ Select a folder

For a PDF data that requires download of all data, all the pages are saved. For a PDF data that enables you to download the specified pages, the data (pages) downloaded so far are saved. You can download the remaining pages later. → p.220

■ **To close the view of PDF data**

▶ [CLR]

When the PDF data is not saved, the message asking whether to close the PDF appears. To save the PDF data, select “NO”. See “To save the PDF data” above.

● **Downloading remaining PDF data after downloading partially**

When you have saved partly downloaded PDF data, you can download the remaining pages (data) later. The ways of downloading vary depending on the status of downloaded PDF data that can be checked with icons on the “PDF list” screen (p.371).

Icon	Description
(pale blue)/ (pale blue)	All pages are downloaded (no additional download is required).
(pale blue)	Only a part has been downloaded by page. You can download the remaining data at a time or by specifying pages.
(pale blue)/ (pale blue)	Only a part has been downloaded for some reason e.g. because the download was interrupted. To view the document, download all the remaining pages (some documents may not be viewable even if the download is finished successfully).

<For partially downloaded (by page) PDF data (“ (pale blue)”) >

1 **PDF list screen (p.371) ▶ Select a PDF data to view**

The message informing that the downloading will resume appears and then the “PDF data” screen (p.371) appears.

2 **(Tool) ▶ Press on toolbar to view pages not downloaded**

When you try to view pages not downloaded, you are connected to the site to download the pages. Operation for viewing a PDF document → p.372

■ **To specify the pages you want to download**

▶ Select a page number indicated on toolbar ▶ Enter a page number you want to view

■ **To download all the remaining data at a time**

▶ (FUNC) ▶ “DL remaining data” ▶ “YES”

■ **To save the PDF data**

▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Save” ▶ “YES”

The document including newly downloaded pages is saved.

<For PDF data downloaded only partially because the download was interrupted, etc.

(“ (pale blue)”, “ (pale blue)”) >

1 **PDF list screen (p.371) ▶ Select a PDF file to view**

Before the document is displayed, the message asking whether to download all the remaining data appears.

2 **“YES”**

You are connected to the site and downloading of all the remaining data starts. After the downloading is complete, the “PDF data” screen (p.371) appears (some documents may not be viewable even if the download is finished successfully).

You can also download all the remaining data by selecting “DL remaining data” → “YES” → “YES” from the function menu (PDF list screen).

■ **To save the PDF data**

▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Save” ▶ “YES”

After the save, the icon changes to “ (pale blue)” or “ (pale blue)”.

NOTE

- ◆ It may take long to display some PDF data.
- ◆ PDF data may not be properly displayed if it contains formats unsupported by PDF viewer or complicated designs.
- ◆ Note that the communication fee for downloading large amounts of data will be expensive.
- ◆ If you attempt to download a PDF file larger than 500K bytes, the confirmation message asking whether to download the file appears.
- ◆ You cannot download a PDF file whose size is unknown or larger than 2M bytes.
- ◆ Depending on sites, you may not be able to download PDF data.
- ◆ When PDF data that you try to download has the same definition file (information file for defining PDF) as the one stored in the FOMA terminal (not in microSD memory card), they are recognized as the same data. Consequently the PDF data will not be downloaded and the PDF data in the FOMA terminal will be displayed.
- ◆ When you try to download PDF data with unsupported format, the download may not run and the screen showing only “ (pale blue)” may appear. In this case, press to return to the previous screen.

- ◆ Up to 36 single-byte characters can be saved for a name of a PDF file saved in Inbox or a user-created folder. If no file name is specified, the text between the last slash (/) and the period (.) in the URL from which the file was downloaded is used as the file name. However, if there is nothing between “/” and “.” or in other cases, the file name is saved as “pdfXXX” (XXX are numerals). For file names of PDF data saved in the microSD card, “PDFDCXXX.PDF” (XXX are numerals) is always used.

Downloading Chara-den Characters from Sites

You can download your favorite Chara-den characters from i-mode sites and save them on your FOMA terminal.

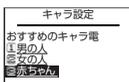
- You can save up to 10 Chara-den characters, including the pre-installed ones.
- If you have deleted a pre-installed Chara-den character on the FOMA terminal and you want to re-install it, download it from “みんなNらんど” (only in Japanese) in “ケータイ電話メーカー” site.

The QR code on the right is also available to access “みんなNらんど”.



Accessing “みんなNらんど” → p.209

1 Sites screen (p.209) ▶ Select a Chara-den character



2 “Save” ▶ “YES”

- To play the Chara-den character

▶ “Play”

Controlling a Chara-den character → p.345

- To view the Chara-den information

▶ “Property”



NOTE

- ◆ The maximum size of one Chara-den file you can download is 100K bytes.

Downloading Kisekai Tool from Sites

You can download Kisekai Tool packages from i-mode sites and save them on your FOMA terminal.

- You can save up to 100 Kisekai Tool packages, including the pre-installed ones (the number of packages that can be saved may be less depending on the size of Kisekai Tool data saved).
- If you have deleted a pre-installed Kisekai Tool on the FOMA terminal and you want to re-install it, download it from “みんなNらんど” in “ケータイ電話メーカー” site.

The QR code on the right is also available to access “みんなNらんど”.
Accessing “みんなNらんど” → p.209



1 Sites screen (p.209) ▶

Select a Kisekai Tool package

- To cancel the download

▶ (Quit) or (CLR)

You can resume downloading if the message asking whether to do it appears.

Selecting “NO” allows you to save the partly downloaded data.

2 “Save” ▶ “YES”

- To check the Kisekai Tool package

▶ “Preview”

- To display the Kisekai Tool package information

▶ “Property”

Downloading remaining Kisekai Tool data after downloading partially

If you select a partially downloaded Kisekai Tool in Data box, the message asking whether to download the remaining data appears.

Downloading and saving all the data deletes the partially saved data.

- Icons on the package list screen enables you to distinguish the conditions of downloaded data. → p.351
- If remaining data are invalid, you cannot download the data. Attempting to download such data deletes the partially saved data.

Downloading Data Files from Sites

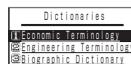
You can enormously expand the range of uses for your FOMA terminal by downloading data files such as dictionaries, face stamps, Deco-mail pictures, Auto Deco-mail pictures and Deco-mail template files from i-mode sites.

- Up to five dictionaries, up to 720 images including face stamps, Deco-mail pictures, Auto Deco-mail-pictures and shot images, and up to 45 Deco-mail templates including the pre-installed ones can be stored (the number of data that can be stored may be less depending on the size of data stored).

<Example: To download a dictionary file from a site>

1 Sites screen (p.209) ▶

Select a data file



2 “Save” ▶ “YES”

- To display dictionary information

▶“Property”

- When the memory for storing dictionaries is full

▶Select a dictionary to delete▶“YES”

New dictionary is stored by overwriting the selected dictionary.



NOTE

- ◆The title used for a template is “YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm” (where Y = year, M = month, D = day, h = hour, m = minute).
- ◆You may not be able to download a data file depending on the site or file size.

<Phone To/Mail To/Web To functions>

Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions

These functions provide quick and simple procedures for making voice, videophone or PushTalk calls, sending mails and viewing websites using information (phone numbers, e-mail addresses, URLs, etc.) displayed in a mail or on a site.

- You may not be able to use the Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To functions with a mail sent from a PC.

Phone To function

You can make a voice call, videophone call or PushTalk call to a phone number displayed on a site, in a mail or PDF data.

- When used for videophone calls, this function is called the AV Phone To function.
- Not all sites support this function.
- You can enter up to 26 single-byte characters as a phone number.

<Example: To make a voice call to a number displayed on a site>

- 1 Sites screen (p.209)▶ Select a phone number



- 2 “Voice phone”

- To make a videophone call
 - ▶“V. phone”
- To make a PushTalk call
 - ▶“PushTalk dial”

This operation is available only for one-to-one call.



3 “Dial”

- To hide your caller ID when “Caller ID Notification” is set to “ON”

▶“Notify Caller ID”▶ “Don't notify”

- To show your caller ID when “Caller ID Notification” is set to “OFF”

▶“Notify Caller ID”▶“Notify Caller”

- To follow the setting of “Caller ID Notification”

▶“Notify Caller ID”▶“Cancel prefix”



NOTE

- ◆You may be able to use the Phone To function with an item in which a phone number is not indicated but linked (e.g. “please contact here”).
- ◆You can use this function to make a call to the sender of a received mail or the receiver of a sent mail if the address is a phone number or in the “phone number@...” format.
- ◆You cannot use the Phone To function in the full browser screen.

Mail To function

You can send a mail to a mail address displayed on a site, in a mail, PDF data or the full browser screen.

- Not all sites support this function.
- You cannot use the Mail To function if there are already 20 draft mail messages or there is no enough space in the Draft mailbox.
- You may not be able to use the Mail To function when 2 or more e-mail addresses are displayed consecutively.
- Up to 50 single-byte characters can be entered for a mail address.

<Example: To send a mail from the received mail detail screen>

- 1 Received mail detail screen (p.259)▶ Select a mail address
- 2 Compose an i-mode mail and send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.239.

NOTE

- ◆If an entered e-mail address is incorrect, correct the address before sending the mail.
- ◆You may be able to use the Mail To function with an item in which a mail address is not indicated but linked (e.g. “please contact here”).



Web To function

You can view the website of a URL displayed on a site, in a mail, PDF data or the full browser screen.

- Not all sites support this function.
- You can enter up to 512 single-byte characters for a URL.
- When a location information URL (indicated by “

<Example: To display a webpage from the received mail detail screen>

- 1 Received mail detail screen (p.259) ▶ Select a URL ▶ “YES”



NOTE

- ◆ You may be able to use the Web To function with an item in which a URL is not indicated but linked (e.g. “for more information”).

Making i-mode Settings

- 1 (MENU) ▶ “i-mode” ▶ “i-mode settings”

The “i-mode settings” screen appears.



- 2 Select any item

Scroll	Sets the scroll speed and linked page display for a site page or the detail screen for screen memo or MessageR/MessageF.																																
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Speed (default: High speed) 	Selects the speed for scrolling pages from “High speed” and “Low speed”.																																
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • During scroll in focus (default: OFF) 	Set whether to highlight the pages (linked pages) when scrolling.																																
Font size (default: Standard)	Sets the font size on a site page or the detail screen for screen memo or MessageR/MessageF.																																
Set image disp. (default: ON)	Sets the image display setting for a site page or the detail screen for screen memo or MessageR/MessageF. When “OFF” is set, “  <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>i-motion setting</td> <td>Specifies the settings for i-motion.</td> </tr> <tr> <td> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Automatic replay </td> <td>“Specifying whether to automatically play an i-motion” → p.231</td> </tr> <tr> <td> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • i-motion type </td> <td>“Setting the i-motion type to download” → p.232</td> </tr> <tr> <td>i-Channel setting</td> <td>“Making the i-channel Settings” → p.234</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Message auto-display (default: MessageR preferred)</td> <td>Sets the automatic display mode for MessageR/MessageF.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Start attachment (auto) (default: ON)</td> <td>Sets whether the attached/pasted melody automatically plays when opening a MessageR/MessageF.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Use phone information (default: YES)</td> <td>“Specifying whether to use stored data in Flash movies” → p.224</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Message list display (default: 2 lines)</td> <td>Sets the number of lines on the message list screen.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Home URL</td> <td>Sets whether to enable the home URL display. Up to 256 single-byte characters can be entered for a URL.</td> </tr> <tr> <td> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Invalid (default) </td> <td>Disables the home URL display.</td> </tr> <tr> <td> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Valid </td> <td>Enables the home URL display. Select the Home URL field and enter a URL to store.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Sound effect (default: ON)</td> <td>Sets whether to play sound effects for Flash movies on a site or screen memo.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Set i-mode arrival act (default: PushTalk preferred)</td> <td>Sets whether to answer an incoming PushTalk call during i-mode communication. Select “PushTalk preferred” or “i-mode preferred”.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Check settings</td> <td>Enables you to check the settings specified in “i-mode settings”.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Reset last URL</td> <td>Clears the stored last URL. The last URL reverts to the iMenu URL once cleared.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Reset</td> <td>▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Resets the settings specified in “i-mode settings” to default.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	i-motion setting	Specifies the settings for i-motion.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Automatic replay 	“Specifying whether to automatically play an i-motion” → p.231	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • i-motion type 	“Setting the i-motion type to download” → p.232	i-Channel setting	“Making the i-channel Settings” → p.234	Message auto-display (default: MessageR preferred)	Sets the automatic display mode for MessageR/MessageF.	Start attachment (auto) (default: ON)	Sets whether the attached/pasted melody automatically plays when opening a MessageR/MessageF.	Use phone information (default: YES)	“Specifying whether to use stored data in Flash movies” → p.224	Message list display (default: 2 lines)	Sets the number of lines on the message list screen.	Home URL	Sets whether to enable the home URL display. Up to 256 single-byte characters can be entered for a URL.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Invalid (default) 	Disables the home URL display.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Valid 	Enables the home URL display. Select the Home URL field and enter a URL to store.	Sound effect (default: ON)	Sets whether to play sound effects for Flash movies on a site or screen memo.	Set i-mode arrival act (default: PushTalk preferred)	Sets whether to answer an incoming PushTalk call during i-mode communication. Select “PushTalk preferred” or “i-mode preferred”.	Check settings	Enables you to check the settings specified in “i-mode settings”.	Reset last URL	Clears the stored last URL. The last URL reverts to the iMenu URL once cleared.	Reset	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Resets the settings specified in “i-mode settings” to default.
i-motion setting	Specifies the settings for i-motion.																																
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Automatic replay 	“Specifying whether to automatically play an i-motion” → p.231																																
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • i-motion type 	“Setting the i-motion type to download” → p.232																																
i-Channel setting	“Making the i-channel Settings” → p.234																																
Message auto-display (default: MessageR preferred)	Sets the automatic display mode for MessageR/MessageF.																																
Start attachment (auto) (default: ON)	Sets whether the attached/pasted melody automatically plays when opening a MessageR/MessageF.																																
Use phone information (default: YES)	“Specifying whether to use stored data in Flash movies” → p.224																																
Message list display (default: 2 lines)	Sets the number of lines on the message list screen.																																
Home URL	Sets whether to enable the home URL display. Up to 256 single-byte characters can be entered for a URL.																																
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Invalid (default) 	Disables the home URL display.																																
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Valid 	Enables the home URL display. Select the Home URL field and enter a URL to store.																																
Sound effect (default: ON)	Sets whether to play sound effects for Flash movies on a site or screen memo.																																
Set i-mode arrival act (default: PushTalk preferred)	Sets whether to answer an incoming PushTalk call during i-mode communication. Select “PushTalk preferred” or “i-mode preferred”.																																
Check settings	Enables you to check the settings specified in “i-mode settings”.																																
Reset last URL	Clears the stored last URL. The last URL reverts to the iMenu URL once cleared.																																
Reset	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Resets the settings specified in “i-mode settings” to default.																																

NOTE

<Scroll>

- ◆ This function is not available when an SSL certificate is displayed.

<Set image disp.>

- ◆ Even if “ON” is selected, the “

<Sound effect>

- ◆ Even if “ON” is set, some Flash movies may not make any sound.

<Set i-mode arrival act>

- ◆ If “PushTalk preferred” is selected, receiving an incoming PushTalk call disconnects i-mode communication.
- ◆ Setting “i-mode preferred” does not register an incoming PushTalk call to the Received calls record.

<Reset last URL>

- ◆ Selecting “Last URL” displays the iMenu screen at the time of purchase or after you reset the i-mode settings or last URL.

Setting the connection timeout

<Set connection timeout>

Default setting
60 seconds

This option sets the delay after which a FOMA terminal automatically stops trying to connect when a site is busy and there is no response.

- 1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Connection setting” ▶ “Set connection timeout” ▶ Select an item

Select “60 seconds”, “90 seconds” or “Unlimited”.

NOTE

- ◆ Even when “Unlimited” is set, the connection may drop out due to poor signal reception.

Setting a host different from i-mode host (ISP connection)

<Host selection>

MENU 81

Default setting
i-mode

* There is normally no need to change this setting.

Use this procedure to select a different host for using a service other than i-mode. If you set a host other than i-mode, you can no longer use i-mode or i-mode mail.

- You can store up to 10 hosts besides “i-mode”.

- 1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Connection setting” ▶ “Host selection” ▶ Highlight “<Not recorded>” and press (Edit) ▶ Enter your security code

- 2 Select any item ▶ Press (Finish) after changing the settings

Host name	Sets a host name. You can enter up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters.
Host number	Sets a host number. You can enter up to 99 single-byte characters.
Host address	Sets a host address. You can enter up to 30 single-byte characters.
Host address2	Sets a host address 2. You can enter up to 30 single-byte characters.

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot change a host while using i-mode. End i-mode before changing the host.
- ◆ Note that costs of packet communication while you are connected to a host other than i-mode are not covered by the “Pake-Houdai” deal.

- ◆ To change a stored “User defined host”, use the procedure for storing the host.

- ◆ To delete a stored “User defined host”, select a host you want to delete, select “Delete” from the function menu, enter your security code and select “YES”. If the deleted host was set as the host to connect, it returns to “i-mode”.

- ◆ If you use a different FOMA card (UIM) from that used when the host was stored, the host may revert to “i-mode”.

- ◆ If you change a host to connect, the i-channel ticker is not displayed. When information is automatically updated or you receive the latest information by pressing (CH), the ticker appears automatically.

- ◆ If you change a host to connect, the i-channel information may not be updated. To receive the latest information, press (CH) to display the channel list.

Specifying whether to use the stored data in Flash movies

<Use phone information>

Use this function to specify whether to use the data stored on the FOMA terminal when running Flash movies.

- Some Flash movies use the data stored on a FOMA terminal. To enable Flash movies to use the stored data, set “YES” for “Use phone information” in “i-mode settings”. The default setting is “YES”. Such movies may use the following types of stored data:

- Battery level
- Ring volume setting
- Signal strength
- Bilingual setting
- Date and time
- Model data

- 1 i-mode settings screen (p.223) ▶

“Use phone information” ▶ Select an item

Select “YES” or “NO”.

<Receive message>

When You Receive a Message

When a FOMA terminal is in an i-mode service area, MessageR and MessageF are automatically sent to the FOMA terminal from the i-mode Center.

- Up to 100 MessageR and 100 MessageF can be saved on a FOMA terminal. The number that can actually be saved varies between 20 and 100 for MessageR and between 10 and 100 for MessageF depending on the size of data in each saved message.

Viewing newly received messages

- To prevent a FOMA terminal from automatically displaying new messages when they arrive, select "OFF" in "Message auto-display" (p.223).

The "R" (white) or "F" (white) icon flashes and the "MessageR Receiving..." or "MessageF Receiving..." message appears.



- Once reception is finished, the icon stops flashing and remains displayed.
- To stop the reception while receiving a message, press (Quit) or (CLR) for 1 second or longer. However, you may still receive a message depending on the timing of the cancellation.
- Once reception is finished, the numbers of mails and MessageR/MessageF received are displayed on the reception results screen for roughly 15 seconds. The display time for the reception results screen may vary depending on the "Mail/Msg. ring time" setting.
- To view the MessageR or MessageF list screen, select "MessageR" or "MessageF".



- If you receive a message while on the standby screen, the contents of the received MessageR or MessageF are displayed for roughly 15 seconds. However, if you display the standby screen while another function is being used, messages are not automatically displayed.
- While you perform an operation such as scrolling on the MessageR or MessageF screen, the message continues to be displayed.



When automatic display is disabled

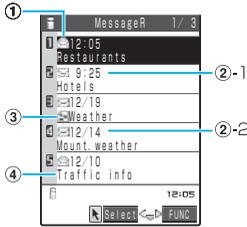
The reception results screen appears when you receive a MessageR or MessageF while using a FOMA terminal.

NOTE

- When a new MessageR/MessageF arrives, the FOMA terminal receives the message together with other MessageR/MessageF or i-mode mails held at the i-mode Center.
- Received MessageR/MessageF are not automatically displayed if the current screen is not the standby screen, an i-appli is running, the FOMA terminal is in Public mode (Driving mode), Dial lock is set or Original lock is set for "i-mode" or "Disp. recv. mail/msg.".
- If you have already stored the maximum allowable number of MessageR/MessageF when you receive a new MessageR/MessageF, the oldest MessageR/MessageF that is neither unread nor protected is deleted when the new message is received.
- When the "R" (red) or "F" (red) icon appears, the FOMA terminal can receive no more MessageR/MessageF. (The MessageR and MessageF status may be displayed simultaneously such as (R, F; red), (R: red, F: white) or (R: white, F: red).) To receive a new message, delete the unnecessary MessageR/MessageF or read the unread MessageR/MessageF until those icons no longer appear.
- When the "R" (white) or "F" (white) icon appears, there is a MessageR/MessageF held at the i-mode Center. Use "Check new messages" to receive the MessageR/MessageF.
- When the "R" (red) or "F" (red) icon appears, the space for your MessageR/MessageF at the i-mode Center is full. Delete the unnecessary MessageR/MessageF or read the unread MessageR/MessageF before checking for messages held at the center.
- After displayed automatically, messages are still marked as unread on the MessageR or MessageF list screen. However, if you perform an operation such as scrolling of screen while a message is being automatically displayed, the message is then marked as read on the MessageR or MessageF list screen.
- When you receive multiple items of i-mode mail, SMS, chat mail and MessageR/MessageF at the same time, the FOMA terminal uses the ring tone and incoming call lamp flashing pattern that are set for chat mail.
- You can download the ToruCa (detail) from ToruCa attached to a MessageR/MessageF.

Guide to the MessageR/ MessageF screen

- Some of the icons displayed on the MessageR and MessageF list screens are also shown on the MessageR and MessageF detail screens. Some icons are not displayed.



List screen (2-line display)



List screen (1-line display)



Detail screen

① MessageR/MessageF status

Icon	Description
	Unread MessageR/MessageF
	Read MessageR/MessageF
	Read and protected MessageR/MessageF

: Indicates MessageR/MessageF is protected.

② Message arrival time and date

- ②-1 Time is shown for MessageR/MessageF that arrived today
- ②-2 Date is shown for MessageR/MessageF that arrived yesterday or earlier

③ Attached or pasted files

<List screen>

Icon	Description
	MessageR/MessageF with a melody attached or pasted
	MessageR/MessageF with an image attached
	MessageR/MessageF with ToruCa attached
	MessageR/MessageF with multiple files attached or pasted

: Indicates a partially invalid data.

: Indicates an invalid data.

: Indicates the data has been deleted by the scan function.

<Detail screen>

Icon	Description
	Pasted melody

: Indicates an invalid data.

④ Subject

<Check new messages>

Checking for Messages

Default setting	Check for all (mail, MessageR and MessageF)
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

- MessageR and MessageF delivered to the i-mode Center are automatically sent to your FOMA terminal. However, in the following situations, your messages are held at the i-mode Center:

- The FOMA terminal is turned off.
 - "" appears
 - Message boxes are full
 - During a videophone call or remote observation
 - Self mode is set
 - During a PushTalk call
 - The FOMA terminal is connected to the FirstPass center
- Use "Set check new messages" (p.271) to specify which items will be checked for.

① (MENU) ▶ "i-mode" ▶ "Check new messages"

The check new messages screen appears. The following procedures are also available to check new messages.

- (i-mode) ▶ "Check new messages"
- (MAIL) (1 second or longer)
- (MAIL) ▶ "Check new messages"

The FOMA terminal checks for "Mail", "MessageR" and "MessageF" in that order.

The "" (white), "" (white) and "" (white) icons flash during checking, and the "Mail Checking..." message appears on the screen. The FOMA terminal then receives your i-mode mails and MessageR/MessageF.

The numbers of newly received i-mode mails, MessageR and MessageF are displayed.

■ To cancel the inquiry

- ▶ Hold down (Cancel) or (CLR) (for 1 second or longer) during the inquiry
- Even if you cancel an inquiry, you may still receive i-mode mails, MessageR or MessageF depending on when cancelled.

2 Check the numbers of the newly received i-mode mails, MessageR and MessageF messages

NOTE

- ◆ When the “” (white) or “” (white) icon appears, there is a MessageR or MessageF held at the i-mode Center. Once the space allotted at the i-mode Center for holding your MessageR or MessageF is full, the “” (red) or “” (red) icon appears.
- ◆ The table below shows the maximum number of MessageR/MessageF that can be held at the i-mode Center and the maximum storage period.

	Max. number of messages	Max. storage period
MessageR	300	72 hours
MessageF	300	72 hours

Once the maximum number of stored messages is reached, messages are deleted as a new message arrives, starting with the oldest one.

- ◆ Even if a MessageR or MessageF is held at the i-mode Center, “” (white) or “” (white) may not appear if the FOMA terminal is turned off or “” appears.

<MessageR/MessageF>

Viewing Messages in the Message Box

- When a FOMA terminal receives a MessageR/MessageF from the i-mode Center, “” (white) or “” (white) icon appears at the top of the screen.

- 1 (MENU) ▶ “i-mode” ▶ “MessageR/F” ▶ “MessageR” or “MessageF”

The “Message list” screen appears.



Message list
Function menu ▶ p.227

- 2 Select a message you want to view

The “Message detail” screen appears.

To display the next or previous message on the message detail screen, use .

Press (CLR) on the message detail screen to return to the message list screen.



Message detail
Function menu ▶ p.228

NOTE

- ◆ Keys such as “OK” and “Cancel” may appear in a MessageR/MessageF. The keys can be used in the same way as those on a site.

Function menu (Message list screen)

Display all	Reverts a sorted or filtered display to the original (all items shown in the reverse chronological order).
Sort	Sorts messages according to the specified criterion.
Filter	Displays only the messages that meet the specified criterion.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects MessageR/MessageF.
Unprotect all	Unprotects all the protected MessageR/MessageF.
No. of messages	Displays the number of stored MessageR/MessageF, unread messages and protected messages.
Delete	Deletes MessageR/MessageF.
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted MessageR/MessageF.
• Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple MessageR/MessageF.
• Delete read	Deletes the read MessageR/MessageF.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all the stored MessageR/MessageF.

NOTE

<Sort> <Filter>

- ◆ The Sort and Filter functions can be used together.
- ◆ To return to the original display, select “Display all”.
- ◆ Sort and Filter are released when you exit the MessageR/MessageF list screen.

<Delete this> <Delete selected>

- ◆ You can also delete the unread MessageR/MessageF.
- ◆ You cannot delete the protected MessageR/MessageF.

<Delete read>

- ◆ The protected and read MessageR/MessageF are not deleted.

<Delete all>

- ◆ The unread MessageR/MessageF are also deleted.
- ◆ The protected MessageR/MessageF are not deleted.
- ◆ When only filtered MessageR/MessageF are displayed, selecting “Delete all” deletes all the unprotected MessageR/MessageF shown on the current list screen.

Function menu (Message detail screen)

Add to phonebook	Adds a phone number and e-mail address displayed in MessageR/MessageF to the phonebook.
Save melody	Saves a melody attached to or pasted into MessageR/MessageF.
Save image	"Downloading Images from Sites and Messages" → p.218
Save ToruCa	Saves a ToruCa attached to MessageR/MessageF.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects MessageR/MessageF.
Delete	Deletes the MessageR/MessageF displayed on the message detail screen.

NOTE

<Save melody>

- ◆ Select an attached melody to play it.
- ◆ When you save a pasted melody, its title is saved instead of the file name. If a melody has no title, its file name is saved.
- ◆ Some saved melodies may not be played correctly.

<Save image>

- ◆ All attached images are displayed regardless of the "Set image disp." setting.

<Delete>

- ◆ You cannot delete the protected MessageR/MessageF.

Using SSL Certificate

Use this procedure to check the details of an SSL certificate or to set it to valid or invalid.

- 1 **Settings**
 - ▶ **Connection setting**
 - ▶ **Certificate**

- 2 **Select a certificate**
 - ▶ **Check the details**

- **To validate or invalidate an SSL certificate**
 - ▶ Highlight a certificate ▶ **(FUNC)** ▶ **"Valid/Invalid"**



NOTE

- ◆ The default settings for all certificates are "Valid".
- ◆ The "Valid" icon appears when a certificate is set to "Valid". The "Invalid" icon appears when a certificate is set to "Invalid".
- ◆ If an SSL certificate is set to "Invalid", you cannot view SSL pages with that SSL certificate.
- ◆ DoCoMo Cert 2 is always set to "Valid" and this setting cannot be changed.

Setting FirstPass

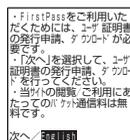
User certificates prove that the user is a bonafide FOMA service subscriber. Downloaded user certificates are saved on your FOMA card (UIM) and enable you to access FirstPass compliant sites.

Connecting to the FirstPass Center

Use this procedure to request and download the user certificate.

- You can request a user certificate or download it from the FirstPass Center.
- User certificates cannot be used with a FOMA card (blue).
- User certificates cannot be used overseas.
- Date and time must be set before connecting to the FirstPass Center. → p.49
- The screens and procedures shown at the FirstPass Center are subject to change.

- 1 **"i-mode"**
 - ▶ **"Client certificate"**
 - ▶ **Check the details**
 - ▶ **"English"**



- 2 **"Request your certificate"**

■ If you use FirstPass for the first time

Select "The usage regulation (Japanese only)" and carefully read the information provided.

■ To apply invalidation

Select "Other settings" then "Revoke your certificate". Enter your PIN2 code and then proceed as directed by the on-screen instructions.



- 3 **Check the details** ▶ **"Continue"**

- 4 **Enter the PIN2 code**

PIN2 code → p.154



- 5 **Check the message** ▶ **"Download"**
 - ▶ **Check the details** ▶ **"Continue"**
 - ▶ **"Menu"**

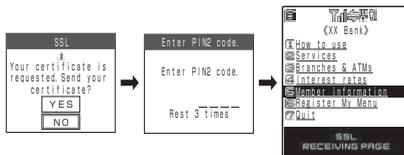
The confirmation message appears. The FirstPass menu screen reappears after the downloading is complete.

NOTE

- ◆ Packet communication charge for connection to the FirstPass Center is free.
- ◆ Before using the FirstPass Center, select “The usage regulation (Japanese only)” and read the information.
- ◆ You cannot use the following functions during connection to the FirstPass Center.
 - PushTalk
 - Sending or receiving i-mode mails (sending or receiving SMS is available)
 - Check new messages (Check new SMS is available)
 - Sending or receiving speed photo mails
 - Receiving MessageR/MessageF
 - Manually retrieving files attached to mails
 - Web To function
- ◆ Always send a certificate request before downloading a new or updated user certificate. You cannot download a certificate without first requesting the certificate.
- ◆ Once an application for user certificate invalidation has been completed, you can no longer access FirstPass-compliant sites that require that user certificate.
- ◆ To use FirstPass after completion of invalidation, request the user certificate again and download it.
- ◆ To check a downloaded user certificate, see “Using SSL Certificate” (p.228).

Using a user certificate to connect to a site

- 1 Sites screen (p.209) ▶ Confirm the user certificate transmission ▶ “YES” ▶ Enter your PIN2 code



NOTE

- ◆ Packet communication charge for connection to FirstPass-compliant sites is covered by “Pake-Houdai” deal.
- ◆ FirstPass is also available in full browser. However, the packet communication charge for connecting to FirstPass-compliant sites in full browser is not covered by the “Pake-Houdai” deal.

- ◆ If you connect to a FirstPass-compliant site without a user certificate, or if your user certificate has expired, the message informing you of that fact appears. You may still connect to the site and view subsequent pages by selecting “YES”, but note that it may not be safe to send your personal information (credit card number, contact details, etc.) on the site. To disconnect, select “NO”. When the “SSL session was terminated” message appears, press  to return to the original screen. Reconnect the site after downloading the user certificate from the FirstPass Center.

Notes on using FirstPass

- FirstPass is a DoCoMo’s digital authentication service. FirstPass enables client authentication, where a site authenticates a FOMA terminal.
- FirstPass can be used either when a FOMA terminal is directly connected to the Internet or when it is connected via a PC. When the FOMA terminal is connected to the Internet via a PC, the FirstPass PC software provided on the “FOMA N903iCD-ROM” (CD-ROM for FOMA N903i) bundled with the FOMA terminal must be installed on the PC. For more information, refer to the “FirstPassManual” (PDF) contained in the “FirstPassPCSoft” folder on the CD-ROM. (The “FirstPassManual” is available only in Japanese.)
- When requesting a user certificate, carefully read and agree to the “FirstPass usage regulations” shown on your screen before proceeding with your request.
- To use a user certificate, you need to enter your PIN2 code (p.154). Take great care to prevent unauthorized persons from using your FOMA card (UIM) or PIN2 code since all the actions performed subsequent to the PIN2 code entry will be assumed to have been performed by you.
- If your FOMA card (UIM) is lost or stolen, you can have your user certificates invalidated by calling “Inquiries” described on the back cover of this manual.
- NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for and accepts no liability whatsoever regarding the sites or the content provided by FirstPass-compliant sites. Any disputes are to be resolved between the customer and the FirstPass-compliant site.
- NTT DoCoMo and its authentication company provide no guarantee regarding security or secrecy in the use of FirstPass and SSL certificates. Such certificates are used entirely at the discretion of the user.

Changing the Certificate Host

Default setting
DoCoMo

* There is normally no need to change this setting.

Use this procedure to set the host for downloading the user certificate.

- 1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Connection setting” ▶ “Certificate host”
- 2 Highlight “<Not recorded>” and press (Edit) ▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select any item ▶ Press (Finish) after changing the settings

Default URL	Sets the URL of the initial screen for the host. You can enter up to 100 single-byte characters.
Host number	Sets a host number. You can enter up to 99 single-byte characters.

NOTE

- ◆ To change a stored “User defined host”, use the procedure for storing the host.
- ◆ To delete a stored “User defined host”, select “Delete” from the function menu.

What is i-motion?

i-motion is a file containing video, voice and music data and downloaded from an i-motion site to your FOMA terminal. You can also set an i-motion as a ring tone.
Chaku-motion → p.124

● i-motion types

i-motion can be broadly divided into two types. The type of i-motion downloaded depends on the site or file type.

Type		Description
Type	Replay type	
Standard type (Can be saved*)	Playable after downloading (Up to 500K bytes)	Can be played after the whole data is downloaded.
	Playable while downloading (Up to 500K bytes)	Can be downloaded and played at the same time.

Type		Description
Type	Replay type	
Streaming type (Cannot be saved)	Playable while downloading (Up to 2M bytes)	Can be downloaded and played at the same time. The data is deleted after played. Cannot be played repeatedly or stored on a FOMA terminal.

* : Some i-motion files cannot be saved.

NOTE

- ◆ A FOMA terminal can play i-motion in the MP4 format (Mobile MP4).
- ◆ The i-motion of ASF format cannot be downloaded.

<Download i-motion>

Downloading i-motion

Downloading i-motion from sites to play

- 1 (MENU) ▶ “i-mode” ▶ “iMenu” ▶ “ENGLISH” ▶ “Menu List” ▶ Select a site

2 Select i-motion

The “Data acquisition” screen appears when the data download is completed.

■ To cancel the download

▶ (Quit)

■ Standard-type i-motion

Use the “Automatic replay” setting in “i-motion setting” (p.231) to specify whether to play standard i-motion automatically while downloading. Some i-motion programs may be played after downloaded.

■ Streaming-type i-motion

You cannot download streaming i-motion if “Standard type” is selected in “i-motion type”. When you receive the message “Invalid content. Change i-motion type for replay”

- “i-motion type” in “i-motion setting” (p.232) is set to “Standard type”. Select “Site Settings” → “i-motion type” from the function menu, change the settings to “Std · Streaming”, and then download the i-motion again.

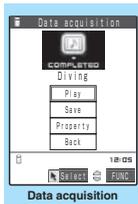
When you receive the message “Replay streaming?”

- Select “YES” to play the i-motion. Select “NO” to return to the site screen.
- To cancel playback in progress after selecting “YES”, press (Quit).

3 “Play”

Plays the downloaded i-motion.

“Operation during i-motion playback” → p.341



NOTE

- ◆ Untitled i-motion appears as “No title” on the data acquisition screen.
- ◆ Some sites and i-motion programs do not allow playback during download.
- ◆ Even if you stop playing a standard-type i-motion during download, the download continues.
- ◆ Even if “Automatic replay” is set to “ON”, the data played during download is not automatically played after download.
- ◆ Some i-motion programs are restricted to be played. “⌚” appears at the beginning of the title of an i-motion with restrictions on the playback count, playback period or time limit. i-motion programs with restrictions on the playback period cannot be played before or after the period. If the battery pack is removed from a FOMA terminal for a long period of time, the date and time settings stored on the FOMA terminal may be reset. In this case, i-motion programs with restrictions on the playback period or time limit cannot be played.
“i-motion information” → p.341
- ◆ Some downloaded i-motion programs may not be played correctly.
- ◆ When you download and play a standard-type i-motion at the same time (the first replay only), you cannot play fast, step or slow. When playing a streaming-type, you cannot pause the playback either. Press (Quit) to stop playback.
- ◆ If data download is interrupted due to problems with signal reception or downloaded data exceeds the maximum size, the message saying that the data could not be downloaded and the data acquisition screen appear, on the condition that “Play”, “Save” or “Property” can appear on the data acquisition screen.
- ◆ The reception status may affect the replay or motion during download. After the data download is completed, you can play a standard-type i-motion repeatedly, but not a streaming-type.
- ◆ You can “Add screen memo” from the function menu of the Data acquisition screen (p.231) to save an i-motion as a “screen memo” (p.217), then play the i-motion from the screen memo.
However, you cannot save the data acquisition screen of the following type of i-motion as screen memo:
 - i-motion with playback restrictions
 - Streaming-type i-motion
 - Incomplete i-motion
- ◆ i-motion programs saved in screen memos are not listed in the i-motion folder of Data box. Therefore, you cannot use the playlist or Stand-by display function with these i-motion programs.

Saving i-motion

When “Save” can be selected on the data acquisition screen, the i-motion can be saved to your FOMA terminal.

- Some i-motion programs may not be saved.
- Up to 100 i-motion programs can be saved, including movies shot by the camera. The maximum number of i-motion programs that can be saved varies between 2 and 100 depending on the size of i-motion data.
- i-motion folder → p.328

1 Data acquisition screen (p.231) ▶

“Save” ▶ “YES”

■ To cancel saving

▶ “NO”

Returns to the data acquisition screen without saving the i-motion.

2 Select the destination folder

You receive a message that the i-motion was saved.

NOTE

- ◆ An i-motion without the title is listed as “movieXXX” (XXX are numerals).
- ◆ You can set an i-motion downloaded from a site for the standby screen or ring tone. → pp.124, 135
Some i-motion programs cannot be set for the standby screen or ring tone.
- ◆ You cannot use the Phone To, Mail To or Web To function from an i-motion set for the standby screen.

Viewing i-motion details

You can check the i-motion details, including the title, file size and replay restrictions.

1 Data acquisition screen (p.231) ▶

“Property”

The “i-motion info” screen appears. Use (Up) to scroll the display up and down to check the details such as the remaining replay count, playback period and time limit.

After checking the information, press (CLR).

Setting i-motion

Specifying whether to automatically play an i-motion <Automatic replay>

Default setting
ON

You can specify whether to automatically play an i-motion when:

- Downloading the i-motion from a site
- Displaying a screen memo of the i-motion data acquisition screen
- The “Automatic replay” setting is available only for standard-type i-motion. Streaming-type i-motion is automatically played regardless of this setting. i-motion types → p.230

**1 i-mode settings screen (p.223) ▶
“i-motion setting”▶“Automatic
reply”▶Select any item**

ON	Automatically plays an i-motion after downloading. Some i-motion programs are played while downloading.
OFF	Opens the data acquisition screen without automatically playing an i-motion after downloading.

Setting the i-motion type to download

<i-motion type>

Default setting
Standard type

Use this procedure to set the type of i-motion you want to download from a site.

**1 i-mode settings screen (p.223) ▶
“i-motion setting”▶“i-motion type”
▶Select any item**

Standard type	Downloads only standard-type i-motion programs.
Std · Streaming type	Downloads standard-type and streaming-type i-motion programs.

NOTE

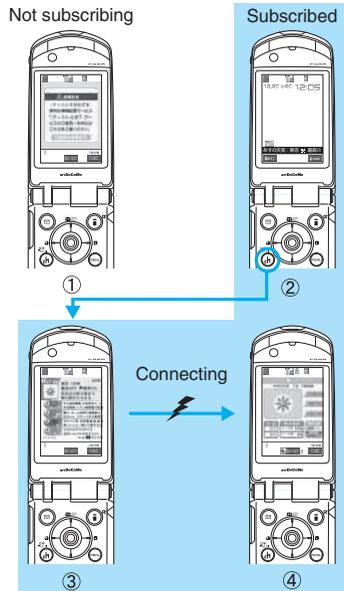
◆ To download a streaming-type i-motion, select “Std · Streaming type” in “i-motion type”. If it is not selected and you try to download a streaming-type i-motion, you receive the message saying that you need to change the i-motion type setting and cannot download the streaming-type i-motion.

What is i-channel?

i-channel is a service whereby news, weather and other information is sent as graphical information to i-channel compatible terminals from DoCoMo or IPs (information service providers). Your FOMA terminal periodically receives the latest information and displays it as ticker on the standby screen. Pressing the i-channel key (Ⓢ) displays the channel list (p.234). Selecting a channel from the list provides you with rich, detailed information.

This service provides only Japanese channels.

- For precautions or details on how to use i-channel, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.



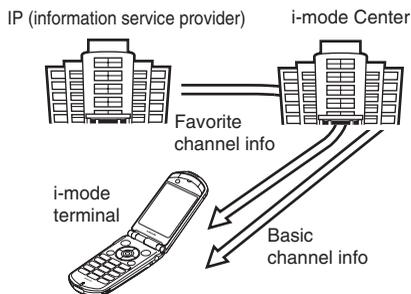
* The above is only an image. The actual screens will look different.

- ① You have not subscribed to i-channel.
- ② After you subscribe to i-channel, a ticker automatically appears on the standby screen when you receive information or open the channel list.
- ③ Pressing (Ⓢ) on the standby screen displays the channel list. The list displays information delivered on each channel.
- ④ Selecting a channel allows you to view detailed information on that channel.

Channel types

The channels are categorized into two types: “Basic channels” and “Favorite channels”. “Basic channels” are provided by NTT DoCoMo and registered by default, so that you can view the channels immediately after you start subscribing to i-channel. The packet communication charge for automatically updating the information sent for the “Basic channels” is included in the i-channel service charge. “Favorite channels” are provided by IPs (information service providers) other than NTT DoCoMo. You can select and register any channels of your liking. The packet communication charge for automatically updating the information sent for the “Favorite channels” is not included in the i-channel service charge.

Both “Basic channels” and “Favorite channels” information can be displayed as a ticker on the standby screen.



* i-channel is a pay service you need to subscribe to (To subscribe to the i-channel, you need to subscribe to i-mode beforehand).

- How to operate → p.234

NOTE

- ◆ Information charges may apply for viewing some “Favorite channels”.
- ◆ For some “Favorite channels”, you may need to apply to the IP (information service provider) that offers these channels in order to view them.
- ◆ A packet communication charge will apply for viewing detailed information from the channel list on both “Basic channels” and “Favorite channels” in addition to the i-channel service charge.
- ◆ The packet communication charge for automatically updating the information sent for the “Basic channels” is not included in the i-channel service charge during international roaming.

Trial service

If you have subscribed to i-mode and use an i-channel-compatible terminal but have never subscribed to i-channel, you can try the “Basic channels” free of charge for a given period. A packet communication charge will apply for viewing detailed information from the channel list.

- For cautions and details on how to use the trial service, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

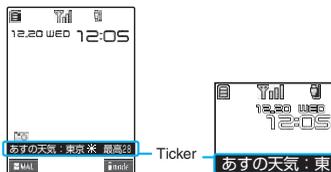
NOTE

- ◆ As a rule, the trial service will automatically start after a given time when the FOMA card (UIM) is inserted to start using the i-channel-compatible terminal. If it does not start automatically, press (Ⓜ) to start it.
- ◆ You can use the trial service only once per subscriber line.
- ◆ The trial service will end automatically after a given period. To quit the service before the expiration, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

Ticker display on the standby screen/image display

If you subscribe to i-channel, delivered information will automatically appear as a ticker on the standby screen or image display.

- flashes while i-channel information is being delivered.
- You can set the ticker display mode in “i-Channel setting”. → p.234



NOTE

- ◆ Ticker appears even if an i-motion or i-appli is set as the standby screen background.
- ◆ Ticker does not appear in Public mode (Driving mode), in Power saver mode, or if the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted.
- ◆ The standby screen can display ticker even in Self mode.

Accessing a Site from the Channel List

A channel list is available for accessing the i-channel information site. The channel screen can display up to 15 channels including official ones and general ones.

1 On the standby screen

The “Channel list” screen appears.

Selecting “i-Channel” from the i-mode menu also opens the i-channel list screen.



Function menu  p.234

2 Select a channel item

NOTE

- ◆ If you have not subscribed to i-channel, launching the i-channel displays the message indicating that you have not subscribed to i-channel. Selecting “ご説明とお申込” (Guide & Subscription) on the screen introduces you to i-channel and prompts you to subscribe to i-channel. Depending on the communication status, the message indicating that you have not subscribed to i-channel may appear, and the previous screen may reappear.
- ◆ In some cases, you may receive information when displaying the channel list.
- ◆ Receiving information does not sound a ring tone or vibrate the FOMA terminal. The incoming call lamp does not light or flash.
- ◆ You can change the i-channel host, though it usually does not need to change. → p.224
- ◆ The message indicating that channel information cannot be delivered may appear if:
 - A call or message is incoming
 - The FOMA terminal was initialized
 - The FOMA card (UIM) was replaced
 - The host was changed
 - The i-Channel setting was reset

Function menu (Channel list screen)

Add desktop icon	Pastes a desktop icon for opening the channel list screen onto the standby screen.
Retry	Shows the current channel list screen from the top.
Sound effect	Sets whether to sound a tone (ON/OFF) on the channel list screen.

NOTE

- ◆ “Sound effect” set for the channel list screen affects “Sound effect” under “i-mode settings” (p.223).

<i-Channel setting>

Making the i-channel Settings

Default setting

Ticker display setting: ON (Image display OFF)
 Ticker speed setting: Normal

Set whether to display a ticker on the standby screen or on the image display. Also set the scroll speed of ticker.

- Setting the Ticker display setting to “Receiving” displays a ticker twice when the latest information is delivered.
- Selecting “ON” for the image display displays a ticker as follows:
 - Setting the Ticker display setting to “ON” displays a ticker twice on the image display each time the latest information is delivered or the FOMA terminal is folded.
 - Setting the Ticker display setting to “Receiving” displays a ticker twice when the latest information is delivered.
 - The Power saver mode is not set while a ticker appears on the image display.

1 “i-mode” “i-mode settings” “i-Channel setting” Select any item

Ticker display setting	Sets whether to display channel information as a ticker on the standby screen (ON/Receiving/OFF). If you select “ON” or “Receiving”, additionally set whether to display on the image display when the FOMA terminal is folded (ON/OFF).
Ticker speed setting	Sets the ticker scroll speed (Normal/High/Low).
Reset i-Channel	 Enter your security code  “YES” Restores the i-Channel setting to default.

NOTE

- ◆ The i-Channel setting cannot be changed in Public mode (Driving mode) or if the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted.

<Ticker display setting>

- ◆ If you unsubscribe from i-channel, or after you unsubscribe from i-channel, the Ticker display setting remains unchanged but a ticker will not automatically appear.

<Reset i-Channel>

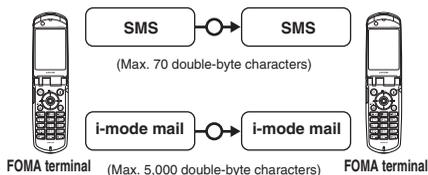
- ◆ The i-channel ticker does not appear. When information is automatically updated or you receive the latest information by pressing , the ticker appears automatically.

● Mail

Mail Exchange by Three Types of Functions		236
What is i-mode Mail?		236
Displaying Mail Menu.....	Mail menu	238
■ Creating i-mode mail/Deco-mail		
Creating and Sending i-mode Mail	Compose message/Send	239
Composing and Sending Deco-mail	Deco-mail	243
Self-Decorating to Messages.....	Auto Deco-mail	245
Using Templates to Create Deco-mail		246
Attaching Files	Attach file	248
Saving i-mode Mail to Send Later.....	Save i-mode mail	249
Adding Addresses in Mailing Lists		249
■ Receiving and manipulating i-mode mail		
When You Receive i-mode Mail.....	Auto receive mail	250
Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively	Receive option	252
Checking for i-mode Mail	Check new messages	252
Replying to i-mode Mail	Reply to mail	253
Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Destination	Forward mail	254
Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook.....		254
Retrieving the Selective Received Attached File		255
Checking and Saving Files Attached to i-mode Mail		255
■ Using mail boxes		
Displaying Mail in Inbox and Outbox.....	Inbox/Outbox	257
■ Using mail records		
Using Mail Records.....	Sent address/Received address	268
■ Setting mail options		
Setting up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions	Mail settings	270
■ Using a chat mail		
Composing and Sending Chat Mail	Compose chat/Send	274
Registering Members in Chat Group		277
■ Using SMS (Short Message)		
Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)		
.....	Compose SMS/Send	278
When You Receive SMS (Short Message)	Receive SMS	280
Checking for SMS (Short Message)	Check new SMS	281
Setting SMS (Short Message) Options.....	SMS settings	281
Saving SMS (Short Message) to Your FOMA Card (UIM)		
.....	UIM operation	281

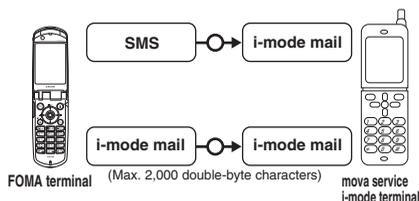
Mail Exchange by Three Types of Functions

FOMA terminal-to-FOMA terminal



FOMA terminal-to-mova service i-mode terminal

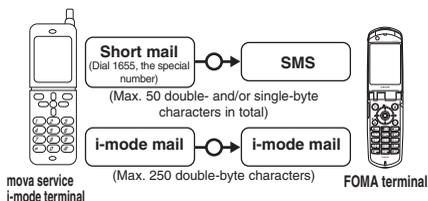
SMS sent from the FOMA terminal is received as an i-mode mail at the mova service i-mode terminal.



* If "SMS report req." (p.279) is set to "ON", you cannot send SMS to the mova terminal.

mova service i-mode terminal-to-FOMA terminal

Short Mail* sent from a mova service i-mode terminal can be received on a FOMA terminal as SMS.



* : Short Mail is a service that you can exchange text messages using the mova service mobile phone.

What is i-mode Mail?

Your FOMA terminal provides the mail function that is available for sending and receiving i-mode mail and SMS.

i-mode is required for subscribing to use i-mode mail.

How to send and receive i-mode mail

→ pp.239, 250

- You can send and receive SMS (text-basis message exchange) between other FOMA terminals without i-mode subscription. How to send and receive SMS → pp.278, 280

i-mode mail

Mail exchange is available between i-mode mail and a commonly used e-mail via the Internet as well as between the i-mode terminals (a mova terminal included) simply by subscribing to i-mode.

In addition to the message body, you can attach 10 files including JPEG images, ToruCa and PDF data within the total of 2M bytes. Deco-mail is also available and you can change the font color, size, and background color of the message body. Moreover, your FOMA terminal initially provides the variety of Decorate PI that can be inserted like pictographs and you can easily create a richly expressive mail to send it.

Your mail address is assigned as follows at the time of i-mode subscription:

■ New subscription to i-mode

The part of the address preceding @ (at mark) is combined with a random alphanumeric. Confirm your mail address after i-mode subscription.

Example: abc1234-789xyz@docomo.ne.jp

<To confirm your mail address>

Menu screen ▶ ENGLISH ▶ Options ▶ Mail Settings ▶ "Confirm Mail Address"

- Only the part of the address preceding @ (at mark) is available for exchanging between the i-mode terminals (a mova terminal included) to send a mail.
- Use the full address including "@docomo.ne.jp" when receiving an e-mail from PC.
- Sending i-mode mail → p.239
- Receiving i-mode mail → p.250
- For details of the i-mode service, refer to the latest "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

■ Receive option

You can check the subject of a mail stored on the i-mode Center and then select any mail to be received or delete a mail at the i-mode Center before receiving. → p.252

■ Specifying mail settings

You can customize your mail settings as follows:

<Setting procedure>
☰ Menu screen ▶ ENGLISH ▶ Options
▶ Mail Settings ▶ “Setting each option”

* For details, refer to the “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]” presented at the time your i-mode subscription.

■ Changing your mail address <Mail Address (Change Mail Address)>

For example, if your address is “docomo.taro_ab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp”, you can change the part of the address preceding @ (at mark) to your preferred address.

■ Changing your mail address <Mail Address (Confirm Mail Address)>

This allows you to check your current mail address.

■ Secret code registration <Mail Address (Other Settings)▶ Register a Secret Code>

When using your phone number as an address, the 4-digit secret code can be registered in addition to the mail address. Mail without specifying the secret code is rejected from receiving and you can avoid an unwelcome mail.

■ Resetting mail address <Mail Address (Other Settings)▶ Reset Mail Address>

Return your mail address to “[your-phone-number]@docomo.ne.jp”.

■ Spam Mail Prevention

You can restrict the mail you receive by using any of the following methods to specify your mail accept and/or mail reject settings:

- ① Receive/reject setting <Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention)▶ Reject/Receive Mail Settings>
 - Allows you to receive mails from the specified service providers of DoCoMo, au, SoftBank, TU-KA or WILLCOM. Also enables you to receive mails with domain or address specified from other providers than above. You can reject a mail spoofing domains of the mobile phone or PHS from the Internet.
- ② Setting SMS rejection <Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention)▶ SMS Rejection Settings>
 - You can restrict receiving SMS using one of the following four rejection settings: “Reject All SMS”, “Reject Anonymous SMS”, “Reject Intl. SMS” and “Reject Anonymous and Intl. SMS”. You can also check the setting status.

- ③ Restricting mail from large-volume i-mode mail senders <Receiving Mail (Other Settings)▶ Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders>

- Setting this option rejects 200th or later received i-mode mail sent from one i-mode terminal (including mova terminal) a day. “Reject” is set as default, so you do not have to reset this option for rejecting mails distributed to an unspecified number of addresses.

- ④ Unsolicited advertising* rejection mail <Receiving Mail (Other Settings)▶ Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail>

- Setting this option rejects received mails declaring “未承諾広告※” (unsolicited advertising) at the front of subject line, which are sent to you without your consent. Reject is set as default, so you do not have to reset this option for rejecting the (unsolicited advertising) mails. (Senders are legally required to include “未承諾広告※” (6 double-byte characters) at the beginning of the mail subject line.)

■ Restricting mail size <Receiving Mail (Limit Mail Size)>

Using this option enables restriction to an incoming i-mode mail by size specified in advance.

■ Confirming setting status <Receiving Mail (Confirm Settings)>

You can confirm the setting status about mail acceptance/rejection currently set.

■ Stopping the mail functions <Suspend Mail>

Use this option to stop the mail service at the i-mode Center if you do not use it.

■ To prevent nuisance mail

It is effective to prevent nuisance mails that you change your mail address or use the address-specific reception/rejection function.

● SMS (Short Message) address

Your SMS address is the mobile phone number you subscribe.

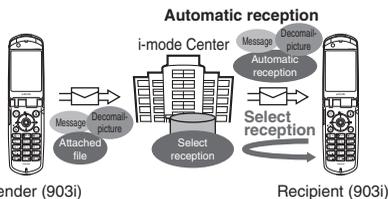
● Not available for receiving mail

As soon as a mail reaches at the i-mode Center, it is transferred to your i-mode terminal. However, if your FOMA terminal is turned off or you are outside the i-mode service area and cannot receive mail, mail is kept at the i-mode Center. When the i-mode Center keeps your mail, transfer is tried up to three times at certain intervals. Receive option setting enables you to select the i-mode mail at the i-mode Center for receiving.

● Other useful features

■ Send and receive the files

No restriction exists on the attach-enabled file type for the i-mode mail (2M bytes supported). You can send up to 10 files (the total of 2M bytes) with attachments. For attachments received as an i-mode mail (2M bytes supported), all files can be received. An attached file of up to 100K bytes is automatically received (Auto received attached file) and any of up to 2M bytes from 100K bytes can be selectively received (Selective received attached file). Prefer attachment enables you to selectively receive even an attached file of 100K bytes or less regardless of the file size. For receiving a file using the other terminal, only supported file types are received within the mail receive capacity of the terminal.



Sender (903i)

Recipient (903i)

■ Deco-mail

The FOMA terminal enables you to create and send your own distinctive personalized mail or attractively decorated mail by changing the font size or the background color, etc. when editing i-mode mail, or by attaching images to the text body. Moreover, your FOMA terminal initially provides the variety of Decorate PI that can be inserted like pictographs and you can easily create a richly expressive mail and send it. (If you receive Deco-mail from a PC, it may not run as it did on the PC because some decorative features are not supported on the i-mode terminals.)

When you send Deco-mail to the Deco-mail-unsupported terminal or the Deco-mail-supported terminal of 10,000 bytes max., it may be received as a mail containing URL. In this case, the recipient selects URL to view the Deco-mail.

- Composing and Sending Deco-mail → p.243
- Entering Decorate PI → p.437
- Support model: Deco-mail-supported model is available. For more details, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

NOTE

<File transmission>

- ◆ Even if "File restricted" is selected in "File restriction", you can send still images using the built-in camera.
- ◆ If you send i-mode mail to the mova service i-mode terminal, you can send only one JPEG-format image as an attachment.
- ◆ To play an i-motion on i-motion mail using a PC, you must have compatible software. Movie Playing Software → p.475

■ Important

- We recommend that you should take memos of the contents of your received, sent, and saved mails, or store them on the microSD memory card. If you have a PC, you can also save them on your PC by using DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.430) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- Faults, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal may erase any recorded messages or memos. We take no responsibility in such an event so please take memos of the contents of your mail.

<Mail menu>

Displaying Mail Menu

1 Mail

Pressing (MAIL) on the standby screen also displays Mail menu.

Item	Description	Refer to
Inbox	Shows the Inbox folder list screen. Mail can be organized into different folders. Open the respective folders to check the record and details of your received i-mode mail and SMS.	p.257
Outbox	Shows the Outbox folder screen. Mail can be organized into different folders.* Open the respective folders to check the record and details of your sent i-mode mail and SMS.	p.257
Draft	Shows the Draft mail list screen. Use this to check the details of temporarily saved i-mode mail and SMS.	p.249
Compose message	Shows the screen used for creating i-mode mail.	p.239
Chat mail	Shows the "chat screen".	p.275
Compose SMS	Shows the screen used for composing SMS.	p.278

Item	Description	Refer to
Check new messages	Confirms a new i-mode mail and receives any i-mode mail kept at the i-mode Center.	p.252
Receive option	When "Receive option setting" is set to "ON", this option enables you to check the subject of the i-mode mail kept at the i-mode Center and then to select the i-mode mail for receiving or to delete any i-mode mail before it is received.	p.252
Check new SMS	Confirms and receives a new SMS kept at the SMS Center.	p.281
Template	Shows the template screen.	p.247
Mail settings	Sets the FOMA terminal about the mail function.	p.270

* : Chat mail and a mail-connected i-appli mail are sorted into a dedicated folder.

<Compose message/Send>

Creating and Sending i-mode Mail

Use this function to create and send a new i-mode mail.

- You can decorate the message body by changing the color of the text or the font size, putting the message body in motion or inserting images and lines. Deco-mail → p.243

1 "Mail" ▶

"Compose message"

The "New mail" screen appears.

2 "To" ▶ Select the address entry method



Function menu ▶ p.240

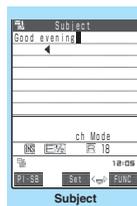
Phonebook	Enters an email address by searching the phonebook.
Sent address	Enters a mail address using the Sent address.
Received address	Enters a mail address using the Received address.
Mail member	"Entering an address from the mail member" → p.241
Enter address	Enters the mail address directly.

3 "Subject"

The "Subject" screen appears.

4 Enter a subject

You can enter the subject up to 15 double-byte characters or 30 single-byte characters.



Function menu ▶ p.241

5 "Message"

The "Message" screen appears.

6 Enter the message body

Up to 5,000 double-byte characters (10,000 bytes) can be entered in the message body regardless of the file size of the images inserted or the attachments.

You can also insert a line feed (hard return) while editing the message body. A line feed "↵" is counted as one double-byte character. Space is also counted as a character.

You can choose the font size of the message screen. → p.433

You can create and send the Deco-mail. → p.243

You can use templates to create and send the Deco-mail. → p.246



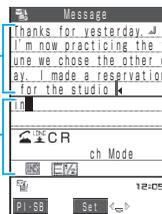
Function menu ▶ p.241

Message screen for i-mode mail

The following shows the Message screen while creating an i-mode mail.

1 Message body entry area

2 Text entry (edit) area



1 Message body entry area: Shows the confirmed message body.

2 Text entry (edit) area: Shows the areas for the text entry, operation guidance and detail information. You find the pre-confirmed texts here. You can use the Word Prediction function in the text entry (edit) area. → p.435

7 Confirm the message

▶ (Send)

The screen shows an animation expressing the mail in transit, then i-mode mail is sent. Press (Return) to return to the Mail menu screen.



■ **To interrupt transmission**

▶ (Quit) or **[CLR]** (1 second or longer)
However, i-mode mail may be transferred depending on when to cancel it.

■ **For retransmission request**

▶ “YES”

● Creating i-mode mail from the phonebook screen

Search and show the mail address stored on the phonebook and then press

(MAIL).

The displayed mail address is pasted into the address field in the new mail screen.



NOTE

- ◆ If sent mail (a total of both i-mode mail and SMS) stored on the FOMA terminal exceeds 400 messages or the maximum storage capacity, sent mail is automatically replaced with the one in chronological order. However, i-mode mail and SMS are not deleted in the “Secret” folder. You should protect the mail you want to keep.
- ◆ Using Decorate PI under Pictograph turns to Deco-mail when entering the message body.
- ◆ If you send the mail, using the pictographs in the subject or the message body, to the terminal for other service providers such as au, SoftBank and TU-KA, those pictographs are automatically converted to the similar ones used in the destination providers. However, they may not be properly displayed depending on the model or function of the destination terminal.
- ◆ When a phone number is entered as address and the prefix number of “184” or “186” is appended, a message appears on transmission confirming that mail will be sent without “184” or “186”.
- ◆ You cannot send a mail if a comma (,) or a space (blank) is entered in the address field.
- ◆ A message may not be properly displayed in the destination terminal depending on the signal quality. Even if sending operation is properly terminated, “Transmission failed” may appear.
- ◆ If you enter an address in the phonebook with “Secret code” (p.115) set, the secret code is automatically added when the message is sent. However, the secret code is not kept at the destination of sent mail.

Function menu (New mail screen)

Send	Sends an i-mode mail.
Preview	Enables confirmation for the destination address and message body before sending mail. Selecting “Save” from the function menu in Preview is available for saving a mail.
Save	“Saving i-mode mail” → p.249
Delete receiver	Deletes an added address. When other addresses are entered after the deleted address, the addresses close up to fill the space. If there is only one address entered, you cannot delete the address.

Change rcv. type	Changes the receiver type with an address highlighted.
• To	Used to enter the destination address. The mail address in this field can be seen by any one who receives mail.
• Cc	Used to enter the broadcast address. The mail address entered in this field can be seen by any one who receives mail. The Cc field should be selected when you send the mail as a carbon copy to other destination. This copy is same mail as the one sent to the address in the To field.
• Bcc	Used to enter the broadcast address. The mail address in this field cannot be seen by any one who receives mail.
Template	“Using Templates to Create Deco-mail” → p.246
Attach file	“Attaching files” → p.248
Activate camera	
• Photo mode	Used to shoot a still image. “Shooting Still Images” → p.185
• Movie mode	Used to shoot a movie. The file size can be set to either one; 500KB or less, or 2MB or less. “Shooting Movies” → p.192
Delete att. file	Deletes the attached file highlighted.
Del all att. files	Deletes all the attached files.
Add header	Pastes a header into the message body.
Add signature	Pastes your signature into the message body.
Erase message	Erases the message body in editing.
Delete	Deletes the mail in editing.

NOTE

<Change rcv. type>

- ◆ Using this option enables transmission specifying to To, Cc or Bcc for destination. However, “To” is a must to send the mail.
- ◆ The mail address in the “To” and “Cc” fields can be seen by any one who receives mail. However, it may not be displayed in certain terminals, devices or mailers on the destination.

<Add header> <Add signature>

- ◆ If you select the item in the “Insert setting” checkbox under “Header/Signature”, the header or signature is automatically attached when creating an i-mode mail. → p.271

Searching for an address in the phonebook

You can enter a mail address into the address field after searching a phonebook.

- 1 **New mail screen (p.239)** ▶ “**To**” ▶ “**Phonebook**” ▶ **Select the search method**

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.112

2 Select a mail address in the phonebook entry detail screen ▶ Edit the subject and message body to send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.239.

Adding addresses

If adding the different addresses, you can send mail to the multiple destinations at a time. (broadcast mail)

- You can enter up to 5 addresses.

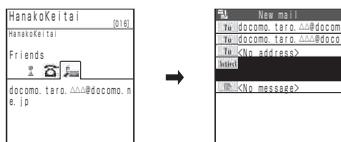
<Example: To look up and adding addresses from the phonebook>

1 New mail screen (p.239) ▶ “To” with a blank address ▶ “Phonebook” ▶ Select the search method

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.112

2 Select a mail address in the phonebook entry detail screen

To add more mail addresses, repeat steps 1 and 2.



■ To change the entered address

- ▶ Select the address you want to change ▶

Select the address entry method

If a message appears asking whether to overwrite existing data, select “YES”.

3 Edit the subject and message body and send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.239.

Entering an address from the mail member <Mail member>

Using Mail member allows you to add the multiple addresses at a time.

To use Mail member, you need to register the addresses of the mailing list members beforehand. → p.249

1 New mail screen (p.239) ▶ “To” ▶ “Mail member”

2 Select a mail member

Once a mail member is selected, it is entered to the address field.



3 Edit the subject and message body to send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.239.

NOTE

- ◆ If you specify any address using Mail member when the same one is already entered, a message appears to confirm whether to overwrite the address after selecting the search method. Select “YES” to overwrite the address.

Function menu (Address/Subject screen)

- The same function menu of the “Text entry (edit)” screen → p.438

Function menu (Message screen)

- See the function menu of the “Text entry (edit)” screen (p.438) for the other items than the following.

Decorate mail	“Decorating a messenger” → p.244
Select area	Decorating, cut or paste the area-selected characters is available. → p.245
Load template	“Using Templates to Create Deco-mail” → p.246
Activate camera	Activates camera.
Paste location	Pastes the location information URL into the message body. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • From position loc. Obtains your current location information to be pasted. • From loc. history Pastes the location information from the location history you confirmed. • From phonebook Searches the phonebook and pastes the location information recorded in the phonebook. • From My Profile ▶ Enter your security code ▶ (Set) ▶ “YES” Pastes the location information recorded in My profile. • From image ▶ Select an image ▶ “YES” Pastes the location information added to in the image
Property	Displays the file name and size of an image inserted into the message.
Undo	Reverts the entered text or the decoration of the message body to the previous one.
Preview	Displays the message preview.

NOTE

<Activate camera>

- ◆ The size of image that can be shot using the camera function is SubQCIF (128 × 96).

<Paste location>

- ◆ “▶” is displayed and followed by the location information URL when it is pasted into the message.
- ◆ The pasted location information URL is counted as a character in the message body.

<Undo>

- ◆ After you use the “Undo” option to revert the message to the previous one, you cannot cancel “Undo”.
- ◆ Once you press **(Set)** on the message screen and return to the new mail screen, you cannot use the “Undo” option even if the message screen is displayed again. (If you select “Preview” on the message screen and display it, the “Undo” option is available.)

<Preview>

◆ When the message body contains a link to the phone number, mail address, URL or i-appli on the preview screen, the underline is drawn on the linked item. However, you cannot use the “Phone To (AV Phone To)”, “Mail To” and “Web To” functions.

Sending a still image shot in talking <Speed photo mail>

You can send a still image taken on the scene or stored on the FOMA terminal to the destination during a voice call.

- To use Speed photo mail for the person you are talking with, you must be ready to store the phone number and the mail address on the same memory number of the phonebook.

<Example: To send a picture taken as you speak>

1 In-call screen (p.53) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Speed photo mail” ▶ “Photo mode”

■ To send an image saved on the FOMA terminal

▶ “Speed photo mail” ▶ “My picture”

You cannot select an still image to which transmission is restricted.

You can transfer only images of “QCIF” or “SubQCIF”.

2 or ()

A still image is shot. The FOMA terminal emits the shutter sound when you take a picture.

You can use the camera application functions to adjust the brightness or set the image size before taking the picture. → p.186

The “speed photo mail image” screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.242

■ To save and send the still image you shot

▶ Speed photo mail image function menu ▶

“Save & send”

If you send the image without selecting “Save & send”, it is not saved in My picture.

3 ▶

A send confirmation message appears.

■ When multiple mail addresses are stored

▶ Select the mail address to be sent



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

NOTE

- ◆ This function cannot be used in the following cases:
 - The phone number and mail address of the person in talk are not stored on the phonebook
 - The phone number and mail address of the person in talk are stored on the phonebook in “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”
 - When the destination for a voice call has not been provided with a caller ID (User unset or Unknown, etc.)
 - Packet communication is in progress on data communication
 - There are 20 Draft mails saved or Draft is full
 - Call waiting is in progress
 - The terminal is activated for a call when updating software
- ◆ A mail sent using this function is stored in Outbox while your phone number is put as the subject.
- ◆ Even if “Select size” is set to other than “QCIF (176 × 144)” or “SubQCIF (128 × 96)”, launching this function reverts the setting to “QCIF (176×144)”.
- ◆ If you change the “Select size” while this function is running, only the “QCIF (176 × 144)” and “SubQCIF (128 × 96)” formats can be selected.
- ◆ Some destination terminals may not display the large file size of the image if you send it.

<Priority order for addresses highlighted in the send confirmation screen>

- ◆ If there are several mail addresses for the person in talk stored on the phonebook, the addresses shown in the send confirmation screen are highlighted in the following priority order.
 - ① i-mode address (where @ (at mark) is followed by docomo.ne.jp)
 - ② Address or phone number not including the domain (which means the part of the address following @ (at mark))
 - ③ The first address stored on the phonebook

Function menu (Speed photo mail image screen)

Save & send	Saves the shot image in My picture and then sends the speed photo mail.
Compose message	Sends the shot image as a speed photo mail without saving it.
Set as display	Saves and pastes the shot image before sending it as a speed photo mail. This is the same procedure as “Set as display” in the function menu (image checking screen). → p.187
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • File unrestricted (default) Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the destination FOMA terminal. • File restricted Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded on the destination FOMA terminal.

Attach location	Adds the location information to the shot image.
• Position location	Obtains and adds the current location information.
• From loc. History	Added location information confirmed from the location history.
• Loc. Info detail	The detail screen for the added location information is displayed to see the date positioned, latitude, longitude and geodetic system (Datum).
• Delete loc. Info	Deletes the added location information.
Cancel	Deletes the shot image and returns to the Photo mode screen.

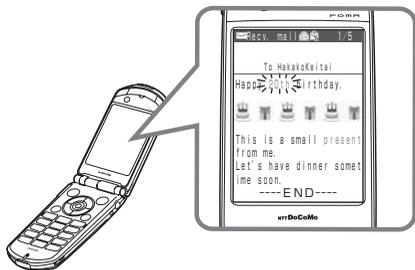
<Deco-mail>

Composing and Sending Deco-mail

The Deco-mail function allows you to decorate the message body of i-mode mail (text-basis) by changing the color of the text or the font size, putting the message body in motion or inserting images or lines, and to create a richly expressive mail.

- To create a Deco-mail, you can either select the decoration and then enter the message body, or you can enter the message body first and then decorate the mail.

Deco-mail display
(Displayed in the received mail detail screen after the reception)



NOTE

- ◆ If you forward received Deco-mail or quote Deco-mail in a reply, a message appears with the decorations and inserted images quoted.
- ◆ If you reply with quote or forward Deco-mail including images that cannot be sent as a mail, images are deleted.

Composing Deco-mail

- The Deco-mail pictures are saved in the "Decomail-picture" folder in "My picture". Deco-mail pictures preinstalled at default → p.461
- Entering Decorate PI under Pictograph also composes Deco-mail on the Message screen. → p.437
- If you decorate the message body in Deco-mail, the number of characters decreases for entering rather than the one in the text mail.
- The decoration affects the number of characters available for entering characters and decorating.
- You can preview the decoration by selecting "Preview" from the function menu on the message screen.

<Example: To change the font size>

- 1 Enter the address and subject on the "New mail screen" (p.239)▶

" [] "

The "Message" screen appears.

- 2 Enter Message▶ (FUNC)▶
"Decorate mail"

The decoration menu appears.

Pressing [] also displays the Decorate mail menu on the Message screen while in creating a new i-mode mail.

- 3 " [] "

■ To decorate the text already entered

▶ " [] Edit "▶ Use [] to select the start of the text to be decorated▶ Use [] to select the end of the text to be decorated▶ " []▶ Select size

The size of characters in the specified area is changed.



- 4 Select size



- 5 Enter text to be decorated

Press [] (Exit) or [CLR] to end the decoration menu.



Decorating a message

1 Message screen (p.239) (FUNC) ▶“Decorate mail”▶Select any item

	“Self-Decorating a Mail to Text”→p.245
	▶Use  to select a color▶Enter the message body Selects the color of the entered text or lines from the color palette. Pressing  (Change) switches the color palette between 25 and 256 colors.
	▶Select any item▶Enter the message body Selects the size of the entered text.
	Sets to the large font size.
	Sets to the standard-font size.
	Sets to the small font size.
	Selects an image (including Decorate PI) stored in My picture and insert it. →p.330
	▶  ▶Enter text to be flashed Makes the entered text flash.
	Sets the point at which flashing starts.
	Sets the point at which flashing ends.
	▶  ▶Enter text to be displayed as ticker Scrolls the entered text horizontally (displays as tickers).
	Sets the point at which the ticker starts.
	Sets the point at which the ticker ends.
	▶  ▶Enter text to be swung Swings the entered text horizontally (swinging text).
	Sets the point at which swinging starts.
	Sets the point at which swinging ends.

	▶Select any item▶Enter the message body Selects the position of the entered text. If the line length at the text entry position is too short to hold all the text, the setting is changed to however many lines are needed to accommodate the text.
	Sets left-justified text.
	Sets centered text.
	Sets right-justified text.
	Inserts a line.
	▶Use  to select a color Selects the background color from the color palette. Pressing  (Change) switches the color palette between 25 and 256 colors.
	Returns the entered text or message decoration to its status in the previous step. (You cannot use this operation after ending the message input screen.)
	“Changing the decorations”→p.245
	Deletes all the decorations.
	Confirms the decorated message body in the preview style.

NOTE

- ◆ The latest 5 colors selected by the 256-color pallet is displayed on the most bottom of the 25-color pallet.
- ◆ If you change the background color setting, the cursor color also changes in accordance with the selected colors.
- ◆ Pictographs are also displayed in the specified color. To return them to their original color, select “ Edit”, specify the extent to be changed and then select “ Reset”.
- ◆ You cannot change the size of Decorate PI.
- ◆ If you enter a character in the area you want to decorate, the character is decorated as well.
- ◆ Up to 20 (90K bytes) JPEG-/GIF-format images or Decorate PI can be inserted regardless of the bytes of the message body or the file size of the attachments. (The maximum counts are variable depending on the file size of the image.) Message appears indicating no more insertion when the count or capacity exceeds the maximum limit.
- ◆ If you insert the multiple copies of the same images, those are counted as one packed. However, each image is added on the file size.
- ◆ The file size of the inserted image is also included in the byte size of the message body shown in the New mail screen or Preview.
- ◆ If you insert an image containing the location information, a message confirms whether to paste the location information into a message when selecting the image. Selecting “YES” pastes the URL of the location information immediately after inserting an image.

- ◆ When inserting an animation, you can see its action during a preview until a certain time has elapsed to stop operation.
- ◆ If you make the text blink, set ticker or swing, those actions are shown during a preview until a certain time has elapsed to stop operation.
- ◆ If you paste the non-decorative text-only header or signature using "Add header" or "Add signature" from the compose message screen, a header and signature are pasted in succession to the decorative size and color attributes of the message text at the beginning and the end of the message body, respectively.
- ◆ Some background colors may overlap with the text color displayed in URL where an image or i-motion is downloaded and the URL text may be unreadable.
- ◆ Even if you delete the decorated text, only the decorating data is retained and reduces the number of characters that can be entered. You should remove the decorations first and then delete the text. If you delete all texts by pressing **[CLR]** for 1 second or longer, all data including the decoration is deleted.
- ◆ If you exchange the mail with Deco-mail incompatible i-mode terminal such as PC, decoration may not be properly displayed.
- ◆ If you send Deco-mail exceeding 10,000 bytes to the non-903i-Series terminals regardless of Deco-mail-capable, the destination terminal receives a mail describing the URL for browsing. Selecting the URL browses Deco-mail on the destination. However, some Deco-mail-incompatible terminal may receive the message-body-only mail contain no URL for browsing.

Changing the decorations

- 1 Message screen (p.239) ▶  (FUNC)**
 ▶ "Decorate mail" ▶  "Edit" ▶ Use 
 to select the start point ▶ Use 
 to select the end point ▶ Select any item

■ To change the decoration after specifying the area

- ▶ Message screen ▶  (FUNC) ▶ "Select area" ▶ Use  to select the start point ▶ Use  to select the end point ▶ "Decorate mail" ▶ Select any item

	▶ Use  to select a color Selects the color of the texts or lines to be changed from the color palette. Pressing  (Change) switches the color palette between 25 and 256 colors.
	Changes the font size in the specified range.
	Changes to the large font size.
	Changes to the standard font size.
	Changes to the small font size.

	Changes or cancels flashing for the text in the specified area.
	Changes the flash setting.
	Cancels flashing.
	Changes or cancels ticker for the text in the specified area.
	Changes the ticker setting.
	Cancels the ticker view.
	Changes or cancels swinging for the text in the specified area.
	Changes swinging.
	Cancels swinging.
	Changes the alignment of the text in the specified area.
	Changes to the left-aligned text.
	Changes to the centered text.
	Changes to the right-aligned text.
	Reverts the decoration for the text or message body to previous. (This option is not available after exiting the Message screen.)
	Cancels the decorations.
	Confirms the decorated message body in the preview style.

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot change the inserted images or lines. If you do, delete the images or lines in the message screen and try to insert them.
- ◆ To change the specified background color, select "Decorate mail" from the function menu of the message screen and choose  (Change background color).

<Auto Deco-mail>

Self-Decorating to Messages

Your FOMA terminal recognizes emotion from a tone in the message of a mail, and automatically converts to Deco-mail with the best-suited decoration. The entire message body is displayed in the background color standing for emotion, and decorated with the font color, font size and tickers to the sentences.

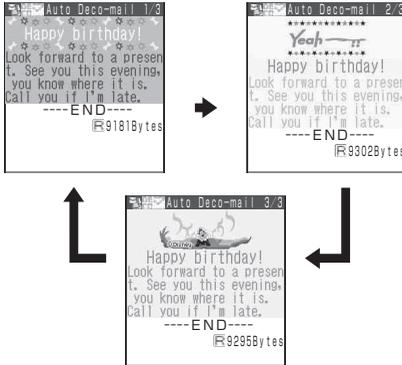
1 Message screen (p.239) (FUNC)
▶ “Decorate mail”

2 “Auto”



3 Press (Next) to select candidate for decoration

Three decoration patterns are available.



NOTE

- ◆ If the text-only message is 1,000 bytes or more, you cannot create Auto Deco-mail.
- ◆ If an invalid termination occurs during preview of the decoration patterns for auto Deco-mail, the mail data including the displayed decoration patterns are stored.
- ◆ Immediately after returning to the message screen from the Auto Deco-mail screen, selecting “Undo” is not available on the function menu.
- ◆ When running the Auto Deco-mail to the message body already decorated, a message appears to indicate that all the decorations will be canceled.
- ◆ The emotional recognition is listed below. The following priority is applied for recognizing emotion in the message.

Priority	Classification by emotion
1	Hurry
2	Like/Dislike/Happy/Angry/Sad/Fur/ Surprise
3	Question/Advice/Cheer/Join/Impression/ Request/Notice/OK
4	Other

- ◆ The Auto Deco-mail provides the following decoration pattern:
 - Background color
 - Font color /font size (large or small)
 - Word alignment (center)
 - Ticker/swing/flash
 - Insert image (animation GIF or still image)

- ◆ The best-suited image to the message body is automatically displayed choosing from the pre-installed pictures such as the auto Deco-mail pictures or the auto Deco-mail pictures stored in the Auto Deco-mail folder under My picture. Note that some message body may not display the image you are intended to.

Auto Deco-mail picture preinstalled at default → p.463

Using Templates to Create Deco-mail

You can create Deco-mail by using preinstalled templates at default. A template is a form for Deco-mail to which the layout and decoration have already been set. By using a template, Deco-mail can be created and transmitted easily.

- Preinstalled templates at default → p.464
- You can download the templates from sites. “Downloading Data Files from Sites” → p.221
- You can edit a template on the template preview screen. → p.247
- Templates include the decoration information in advance. Consequently, it decreases the number of characters to be entered in the message body.
- When you try to use a template in the following cases, a message confirms whether to discard the edited message:
 - There already enters the message body.
 - The header or signature is automatically inserted.
 - There attaches the file.

1 New mail screen (p.239) (FUNC) ▶ “Template” ▶ “Load template” ▶ Select a template

■ To display a preview of the template

- ▶ Highlight the template (Play)
 - The template is shown in the preview. → p.247
 - During preview, pressing switches to the other templates.
 - If the template will not fit into the screen, use to scroll the screen.
 - During preview, pressing selects the template.

■ To load the template from the message screen

- ▶ Message screen (p.239) (FUNC) ▶ “Load template” ▶ Select a template

2 ▶ Edit the message

After you have applied the template, you can still edit the message. You can use “Decorate mail” (p.243) to add arrangement of decorative features.



3 

This operation confirms the edited message and returns to the new mail screen.



4  (Send)

Saving a template

This function allows you to save the Deco-mail you are creating as a template.

- Up to 45 templates can be stored.
- If the message has any attachments other than inserted images, those attachments are deleted.
- Text mail cannot be saved as a template.
- Templates are saved in "Template" in the Mail menu.
- You can save a template from the menu function of the received mail detail screen (p.267) or sent mail detail screen (p.268).

- 1 **New mail screen (p.239)**
 (FUNC) ▶ "Template" ▶ "Save template" ▶ "YES"

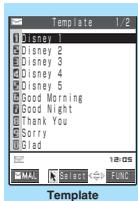
NOTE

- ◆ The subject of the message being created is used as a template title. If no subject is entered, YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm is used as the title (where Y = year, M = month, D = day, h = hour, m = minute).

Viewing the templates list

- 1  ▶ "Mail" ▶ "Template"

The "Template" screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.247

Function menu (Template screen)

Compose message	"Using Templates to Create Deco-mail" → p.246
Sort	Sorts the templates according to the specified criteria.
Edit title	▶ Enter a title You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Info	Displays the template size, saved date and image presence.
No. of messages	Shows the number of saved templates.

Delete	Edits the template.
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted template.
• Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes the multiple templates.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all the saved templates.

NOTE

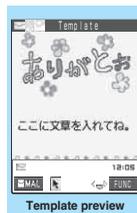
<Compose message>

- ◆ Even if you set to automatically paste the header or signature using "Header/Signature", the header or signature is not pasted.

Previewing a template

- 1 **Template screen (p.247)** ▶ **Select the template**

The "Template preview" screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.247

Function menu (Template preview screen)

Compose message	"Using Templates to Create Deco-mail" → p.246
Edit	Edits the template.
Save insert image	▶ Select an image ▶ "YES" ▶ Select a folder ■ For images available for setting as a standby screen ▶ "YES" ▶ Select an item Saves the images inserted in the template. If you do not set the image to the standby screen, select "NO" after selecting the folder.

NOTE

<Compose message>

- ◆ Even if you set to automatically paste the header or signature using "Header/Signature", the header or signature is not pasted.

<Edit>

- ◆ The title name of the template saved as the different file is YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm (where Y = year, M = month, D = day, h = hour, m = minute).
- ◆ If the template contains no decorations at all after editing, it cannot be saved.

Attaching Files

You can send the i-mode mail with the file attached.

- The following files can be attached:
 - Images (still image/image)
 - Movie, i-motion
 - Melody
 - PDF data
 - Document
 - ToruCa, ToruCa (detail)
 - Phonebook data
 - My Profile data
 - Schedule or To Do list stored data
 - Bookmark (i-mode or Full Browser)
 - Other files in the microSD memory card

1 New mail screen (p.239) (FUNC) “Attache file” Select any item

Image	 Select a folder  Select data to be attached
i-motion	
Melody	
PDF	
Document	
ToruCa	
Phonebook	 “Phone”  Search a phonebook to be attached  Select the phonebook
My Profile	 Enter your security code 
Schedule	 “Schedule” or “To Do list”  Select the stored data of Schedule or To Do list 
Bookmark	 “i-mode Browser” or “Full Browser”  Select a folder  Select a bookmark
Other	 Select a folder  Select a file Attaches other files (including files not available on the FOMA terminal) in the microSD memory card.

■ For attaching the phonebook or bookmark in the microSD memory card

 “Phonebook” or “Bookmark”  “microSD”
 Select a file  Select data 

“Previewing Data on the microSD Memory Card” → p.356

■ For sending an image to the mova service i-mode terminal as i-shot

You can send an image-attached mail as an i-shot mail to the mova service i-mode terminal. If you send an i-shot mail to the mova service i-mode terminal, you can attach only one JPEG image. If you attach a GIF-format image downloaded from an i-mode site or website, an attached file deleted and only the message body reaches the destination.

When sending mail to the mova service i-mode terminal, up to 184 double-byte characters (369 bytes) can be received for the message if the number of received characters is not set on the destination. If the number of received characters is set on the destination, up to 2,000 double-byte characters including URL for i-shot (where the image is stored) can be received on the destination.

2 Create an i-mode mail and send it

■ For checking the attached file

 Select an item to check

You cannot play melody whose file size exceeds 100K bytes.

■ For deleting the attached file

 Highlight an item to delete  (FUNC)

 “Delete att. file”  “YES”

If you delete all the attached files when the multiple files are attached, select “Del all att. files”.

For details of the subsequent procedure, see “Creating and Sending i-mode Mail” (p.239).

NOTE

- ◆ Up to 10 files (2M bytes) can be attached to i-mode mail regardless of the bytes of the message body or the file size of the image to be inserted. (The maximum count are variable depending on the file size.) ToruCa contains attachments up to 1K bytes and ToruCa (detail) up to 100K bytes.
- ◆ It may take a long time to send an i-mode mail depending on the attached file size.
- ◆ You cannot attach a file which is forbidden to send as a mail attachment or output it from the FOMA terminal.
- ◆ You can attach the still images or movies shot using the built-in camera even if “File restriction” is set to “File restricted”.
- ◆ If the attached file is sent to the destination terminal which does not support this type of the file, it may be automatically deleted at the i-mode Center. In this case, the “添付ファイル削除” (Attached file deleted) message is added to the message body.
- ◆ Attached melodies or GIF images cannot be received by the mova service i-mode terminal.
- ◆ If an image selected for “Image” is more than QVGA (320 dots wide × 240 dots high) or Stand-by (240 dots wide × 320 dots high), “Attach image” is displayed and you can select either one from “Attach mail”, “QVGA scale down”.
- ◆ If you insert an image containing the location information, a message confirms whether to paste the location information into a message when selecting the image. Selecting “YES” pastes the URL of the location information at the end of the message body. URL of the location information pasted into the message body is not deleted even when the attached file is deleted.
- ◆ The sent image may not be properly or completely displayed depending on the destination terminal. A grainy image may also be displayed. Displaying still images → p.330
- ◆ You can send still images shot on the built-in camera as attachments to an i-mode terminal, PC or third-party mobile phone. However, when attached images are sent to a mova service i-mode terminal, they are sent not as an attachment, but as an image browser URL with an automatically assigned storage period. The mova service user can then retrieve the image by selecting the URL.
- ◆ If i-motion mail (i-mode mail attaching i-motion) is sent to the i-motion-mail-incompatible terminal, mail with URL for i-motion browser is sent to the destination and selecting this URL browses i-motion.

- ◆ When you send an i-motion mail, it may not be properly received or displayed, and movies may be grainy or may be converted to continuous still images depending on the destination terminal. If you send the movie to the terminal other than FOMA N903i, you should set "File size" (p.184) to "500KB" from the function menu in movie mode.
Playing movies → p.338
- ◆ If the destination terminal is other than FOMA N903i, sending melody may not be properly played.

<Save i-mode mail>

Saving i-mode Mail to Send Later

If you have to break off while creating i-mode mail, you can temporarily save the message on your FOMA terminal. Draft mail can be edited to be sent.

Saving i-mode mail

The unfinished message is stored in Draft.

- Draft can store up to 20 i-mode mails together with SMS.
- If there are 20 Draft mails saved or Draft is full*, you cannot create any more new messages.
 - * : Draft may be full even when there are less than 20 mails saved, depending on the size of data saved (the minimum number of mails that can be saved is one).

1 New mail screen (p.239) ► (FUNC) ► "Save"

If there are no characters in the address, subject, and message body, the mail cannot be saved. Note that if there is an attached file, the mail can be saved even when no text is entered.

Sending saved i-mode mail

1 (MENU) ► "Mail" ► "Draft"

The "Draft mail list" screen appears.

2 Select mail ► Edit the address, subject or message body and then send it



Function menu ► p.249

Function menu (Draft mail list screen)

List setting	Selects the mail list format from Subject, Name or Address.
Touch to send data	"Transferring One Data at a Time"
Send Ir data	→ p.368
Touch to send all	"Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time" → p.369
Send all Ir data	

Copy to microSD	Copies a mail in Draft to the microSD memory card.
• Copy this	Copies the highlighted mail.
• Copy selected	► Use to select a checkbox (☐) ► (Finish) ► "YES" Copies multiple mails.
• Copy all	► Enter your security code ► "YES" Copies all mails in Draft.
No. of messages	Shows the number of mails in Draft.
Store at DSC	"Saving mails at the Data Security Center" → p.267
Delete	Deletes Draft mail.
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted mail.
• Delete selected	► Use to select a checkbox (☐) ► (Finish) ► "YES" Deletes multiple mails.
• Delete all	► Enter your security code ► "YES" Deletes all mails in Draft.

MENU97

Adding Addresses in Mailing Lists

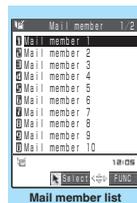
Default setting
Not stored

Add two or more addresses to a mail member in the FOMA terminal, and you can simply enter multiple addresses with the mail member specified.

- Up to 20 mail members (5 addresses for each) can be stored.

1 (MENU) ► "Own data" ► "Mail member"

The "Mail member list" screen is displayed.



Function menu ► p.250

2 Select a mail member

The "Mail member detail" screen is displayed.

3 Highlight "<Not stored>" ► Edit ► Enter a mail address

Up to 50 single-byte characters can be entered for the mail address.



Function menu ► p.250

To add another mail address, repeat step 3.

■ To look-up and enter the mail address

<Example: To look-up and enter the phonebook address>

► Select "<Not stored>" ► "Phonebook" ►

Select a look-up item

Searching the phonebook (search method specification) → p.112

Function menu (Mail member list screen)

Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail with the mail member pasted to the address field.
Edit member name	▶ Enter the member name Edits the mail member name. You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Reset member name	Reset the mail member name to default.

Function menu (Mail member detail screen)

Edit address	▶ Enter the mail address Edits the mail address. You can enter up to 50 single-byte characters.
Look-up address	<p>■ No addresses are recorded</p> <p>▶Select any item</p> <p>■ An address is recorded</p> <p>▶"YES" ▶Select any item</p> <p>Enters a mail address by looking-up the phonebook or history.</p>
• Phonebook	Enters mail addresses from a phonebook detail list screen.
• Sent address	Enters a mail address using the Sent address.
• Received address	Enters a mail address using the Received address.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted address.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all members in the selected mail member.

<Auto receive mail>

When You Receive i-mode Mail

If the FOMA terminal is in service area, i-mode mail is automatically sent from the i-mode Center.

- Inbox can contain up to 1,000* messages for the total of i-mode and SMS.
*: Secret folder in Inbox can contain up to 100 messages separately.
- i-mode mail sent from the mova service i-mode terminal can also be received on a FOMA terminal.

1 When you receive an i-mode mail, " " (white) icon flashes and "Mail Receiving..." is displayed

After a mail is completely received, the number of messages appears for the received mail, MessageR and MessageF on the reception results screen.

When "Mail" is selected, the received mail list screen appears.

No operation for about 15 seconds brings back to the previous screen. The time for displaying the reception result screen depends on the "Mail/Msg. ring time" setting.

The ring tone volume for the mail conforms to the setting of "Mail" under "Ring volume".



■ For receiving the i-shot service mail

When you receive the i-shot service mail sent from the mova service i-mode terminal, an image is received as an attachment.

■ For receiving a mail exceeding 100K bytes in a total size of the message body, inserted image and attached file

Retrieve a mail manually from the i-mode Center.

"Retrieving the Selective Received Attached File" → p.255

NOTE

- ◆ When the " " (white) icon flashes, the mail reception is in progress. When reception is completed, this icon lights up.
- ◆ When the icons such as " " (red) or " " (red) are displayed, the FOMA terminal cannot receive any further i-mode mail. To receive a new message, delete an unnecessary message, read an unread mail or release the protection until those icons no longer appear. A read message is overwritten in chronological order on receiving.
- ◆ If the FOMA terminal contains 1,000 received messages (the total of i-mode and SMS) or exceeds the storage capacity even less than 1,000 messages, messages are automatically deleted from the trash box and also from Inbox in chronological order on receiving. Note that the following mails are not deleted: unread mails, received mails in protected or i-mode mail and SMS in the Secret folders. You should protect any important mail. → p.264
- ◆ If setting "Receive option setting" to "ON", i-mode mail is not automatically received. In this case, the sent i-mode mail is kept at the i-mode Center. (The standby screen displays a message and the " " icon indicating that you receive a mail at the i-mode Center.
- ◆ Extremely large messages may not be accepted at the i-mode Center.
- ◆ Once the FOMA terminal receives i-mode mail, it is deleted from the i-mode Center.
- ◆ When a new i-mode mail is delivered, you also receive any other i-mode mail or MessageR/MessageF kept at the i-mode Center.
- ◆ If you receive the i-mode mail from a terminal in which the To, Cc and Bcc fields can be set, you can check through the mail detail screen which address type you receive among To, Cc and Bcc. → p.259
- ◆ You can preset an upper limit on the size of the i-mode mail you receive. → p.237
- ◆ When you receive multiple items of i-mode mail, SMS, chat mail and MessageR/MessageF at the same time, the FOMA terminal uses the ring tone and incoming call lamp flashing pattern that are set for chat mail.

<Priority order for ring tone and incoming call lamp operations>

- ◆ When receiving an i-mode mail, setting priority for the ring tone and illumination is as follows:
 - ① “Discern connect” specified for each mail address → p.118
 - ② “Discern group” specified for each group → p.118
 - ③ “Select ring tone” and “Kisekai Tool setting” → pp.124, 142, “Illumination” → p.145

Displaying a new i-mode mail

- Set “3D display setting” to “ON” to select the desktop icon of a new mail, and an icon expressing the emotion that matches the message body and pictographs included in the subject are displayed as a 3D animation.

1 On the standby

screen ▶ ● “New”

Selecting the “New” (white) icon displays the unread mail list. For the function menu on the unread mail list screen, see the function menu of the received mail list screen (p.264).



NOTE

- ◆ Characters that cannot be displayed appear as spaces.
- ◆ If the number of characters in the message body of the i-mode mail exceeds the maximum number of characters permitted, either “/” or “//” is inserted at the end of the message and the remaining portion is automatically deleted.
- ◆ If the message body of i-mode mail to be received exceeds the size set in “Limit Mail Size” in “Options”, data pasted in the mail is deleted in the i-mode Center so that you cannot download it again.
- ◆ Some image file attached to the i-mode mail may not be properly displayed. Images larger than 240 dots wide are shown reduced.
- ◆ Some background colors may overlap with the text color displayed in URL where an image or i-motion is downloaded, and the URL text may be unreadable.
- ◆ If you receive decorated mail (HTML mail) from a PC, the decorations may not be properly displayed.
- ◆ You may not be able to use the Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To functions included in a message body received from a PC.

● Emotion-expressing mail

When you receive a mail, an icon informs you showing an emotion to the tone of the mail. You can also find the icon in the received mails containing the keywords specified in advance.

- The following are the icons for the emotion-expressing mail:

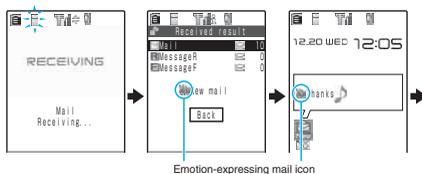
Icon	Meaning	Icon	Meaning	Icon	Meaning
	Hurry		Advice		OK
	Like		Cheer		Reply
	Dislike		Question		Information
	Happy		Join		Angry
	Impression		Sad		Request
	Fun		notice		Icon unsupported*
	Surprise				

* : “Icon unsupported” is displayed for the following mails:

- Mail forwarded by Infrared data exchange, IC communication or cable connection
- Mail retrieved from the Data Security Center
- Mail copied from the microSD memory card
- SMS copied or moved from the FOMA card (UIM)
- For SMS on the FOMA card (UIM)
- You can specify whether to display icons in “Emotion/Keyword notice”. → p.274
- The “Disp keyword” icons displayed are the following three:
You can specify the settings of “Disp keyword” in “Emotion/Keyword notice”. → p.274



- If the received mail includes the contents for the icons of emotion-expressing mails or keywords, the following priority will be applied.
 - ① Disp keyword 1
 - ② Disp keyword 2
 - ③ Disp keyword 3
 - ④ Disp emotion
- Using the filter function allows you to list only mails containing the emotion-expressing icons specified. → p.264
- For the received i-mode mails, chat mails or SMS, the icons are displayed as follows. They are also displayed on the image display. → p.32



NOTE

- ◆ Some received mail may indicate the emotion-expressing mail icon misunderstanding the contents.
- ◆ MessageR/MessageF does not indicate the emotion-expressing mail icon.

- ◆ An icon used in the emotion-expressing mail covers the received date and time, subject and 1,000 bytes (500 double-byte characters) from the head of the message to detect the tone of a mail. While an icon used in "Disp keyword" covers the subject and the entire message body to detect the keyword.
- ◆ When you receive two mails or more at the same time, only an icon for the latest mail is displayed on the reception results screen and as a popup on desktop.

<Receive option>

Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively

You can check information such as the subject lines of mail held at the i-mode Center and then select the mail you want to receive or delete items of mail at the i-mode Center before receiving your mail.

- To use this function, you must first set "Receive option setting" (p.270) to "ON". If setting to "ON", i-mode mail is not automatically received.

When mail arrives

When the i-mode Center notifies you of mail reception, your FOMA terminal shows the message saying mails at the i-mode Center and the  icon is displayed rather than  (white) or  (white).

Receiving mail selectively

- If you use this function to show the receive option screen, the  icon is turned off even when you do not receive or delete mail. The  icon is also turned off if you turn the FOMA terminal off or display the mail screen.

1 "Mail" ▶ "Receive option"

- If "Receive option setting" is set to "OFF"

A message appears asking whether you want to enable mail receive options. Select "Receive option setting" to specify the "Receive option" setting. When you set the receive option to "ON", the Mail menu screen reappears.

2 Select and set option for each item of i-mode mail

"受信" (Accept): Accepts the selected mail.

"削除" (Delete): Deletes the selected mail.

"保留" (Hold): Leaves the selected mail at the i-mode Center.

Use "Check new messages" (p.252) to receive the mail.



■ To delete all mails

- ▶ "削除" (Delete) at the bottom of the page
- ▶ "決定" (Set)

■ When there are multiple pages of mail

- ▶ "前ページ" (Previous page) or "次ページ" (Next page) ▶ Move to the previous or next page and receive the mail selectively

When you view the 2nd page, your selections on the 1st page remain valid.

The meanings of the icons displayed after "サイズ: XXXバイト" (Size: XXX bytes) are as follows:

	Image file attached.
	Melody file attached.
	Attaches an i-motion.
	Attaches the ToruCa.
	Attaches Other.

3 "受信 / 削除" (Receive/Delete) ▶ "決定" (Set)

The completion screen appears and mail reception begins.

■ To cancel selective reception

- ▶ "キャンセル" (Cancel)

■ When there are multiple pages of mail

Selecting "受信 / 削除" (Receive/Delete) mid-way through the pages applies your options (hold, accept or delete) to the mail up to the selected page and mail on the remaining pages remains held at the i-mode Center.

NOTE

- ◆ You can also access "Receive option" as follows (only Japanese mode available):

- ▶ "i-mode"▶ "iMenu"▶ "メニュー / 検索" (Menu/search)▶ "メール選択受信" (Receive option)

- ◆ If you manually check for a new message, all messages will be received even if the "Receive option setting" is set to "ON". Deselect "Mail" in "Set check new messages" (p.271) if you do not want to receive any mail.

<Check new messages>

Checking for i-mode Mail

Default setting	Check for all (Mail, MessageR and MessageF)
-----------------	---

- i-mode mail which reaches the i-mode Center is automatically transferred to your FOMA terminal. However it is kept at the i-mode Center in the following cases.

- The FOMA terminal is turned off
-  appears
- Inbox is full
- "Receive option setting" (p.270) is set to "ON"
- During a videophone call or remote monitoring
- While Self mode is set
- PushTalk talking
- While connecting to the FirstPass Center

- Use “Set check new messages” (p.271) to set the inquiry items.

1 (MENU) ▶ “Mail” ▶ “Check new messages”

The check new messages screen appears.

The following procedures are also available to check new messages.

- (Fmode) ▶ “Check new messages”
- (MAIL) (1 second or longer)
- (MAIL) ▶ “Check new messages”

The FOMA terminal checks for “Mail”, “MessageR” and “MessageF” in that order.

The “” (white), “” (white) and “” (white) icons flash during checking, and the “Mail Checking...” message appears on the screen. The FOMA terminal then receives your i-mode mail and MessageR/MessageF.

■ To cancel the inquiry

- ▶ Hold down (Quit) or (CLR) (for 1 second or longer) during the inquiry

Even if you cancel an inquiry, you may still receive the i-mode mail, MessageR or MessageF depending on when cancelled.

2 Check the numbers of the newly received i-mode mails, MessageR and MessageF messages

NOTE

- ◆ Depending on the signal status, you may not check new message or interrupt your checking.
- ◆ When the “” (white) icon is displayed, i-mode mail is kept at the i-mode Center. Once i-mode mail is full on storage at the i-mode Center, the icon is changed to “” (red).
- ◆ Even if an i-mode mail is kept at the i-mode Center, the “” (white) may not appear when a FOMA terminal is turned off or “” appears.
- ◆ This function is not available for receiving SMS. Use “Check new SMS” to receive SMS.

<Reply to mail>

Replying to i-mode Mail

You can reply to a sender of the i-mode mail. To return the mail, there are two manners: entering a new message or quoting a message of the received i-mode mail.

- “Re:” is added to the subject of the i-mode mail to be replied. If the number of characters used for the subject exceeds 15 double-byte characters (including “Re:”), the characters over this limit are deleted.



Replying by composing a new message

1 Received mail list screen (p.258) or Received mail detail screen (p.259) ▶

- (Reply) ▶ Edit the subject and message body to send it

■ To reply to the sender of mail with multiple addresses

- ▶ “Reply” ▶ “To sender”

■ To reply to the sender of mail with multiple addresses

- ▶ “Reply” ▶ “To all”

If replies cannot be sent to the sender, all the addresses, including other broadcast addresses, are deleted from the displayed mail reply screen. If the list of broadcast addresses includes some addresses to which replies cannot be sent, only those addresses to which replies cannot be sent are deleted from the displayed mail reply screen.

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.239.

After the mail has been sent, the received mail detail screen appears and the “” icon changes to “”.

NOTE

- ◆ The “” icon is displayed for senders to whom you cannot reply (e.g. senders with mail addresses longer than 50 single-byte characters).
- ◆ When you reply to i-mode mail that has “Re:” (all single-byte characters) already included in the subject line, “Re2:” is inserted into the reply’s i-mode mail subject line instead of “Re:”. Similarly, if “Re2:” is included, “Re3:” is inserted in the reply, and “Re4:” if “Re3:” is included and so on up to “Re99:”. If the “Re:” in the original mail includes double-byte characters or an upper case “E” (“RE:”), this is discarded and replaced by “Re:” in your reply.
- ◆ You cannot reply to an i-shot mail sent from the address “photo-server@docomo-camera.ne.jp”.

Replying by quoting the received message

You can reply to the received i-mode mail quoting its message body.

- The quoted attachment of the i-mode mail or Deco-mail are deleted.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.259)

- ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Reply with quote” ▶ Edit the subject and message body and send it

■ To reply to the sender of mail with multiple addresses

- ▶ “Reply with quote” ▶ “To sender”

■ To reply to the sender of mail with multiple addresses

▶“Reply with quote”▶“To all”

The message in the received i-mode mail is quoted in the body of the reply.

A quotation mark (set to “>” by default) is displayed at the start of the quoted message in the reply. Quotation marks are not placed at every beginning of lines.

To edit the quotation mark →p.271

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.239.

After the mail has been sent, the received mail detail screen appears and the  icon changes to .

NOTE

- ◆ If the following type of files are attached or pasted, those files or information are deleted: Attachment prohibited to i-mode mail or Deco-mail for replying with quote and output prohibited from the FOMA terminal.
- ◆ If a message body of the i-mode mail contains attached data such as melodies or i-appli start modules, you cannot reply message with the attached data quoted.
- ◆ If there contains the retrieve-incomplete attached file in the i-mode mail to be replied with quote, this file is not attached. →p.255

<Forward mail>

Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Destination

You can forward the received i-mode mail to other addresses.

- “Fw:” is added to the subject of the i-mode mail to be forwarded. If the number of characters used for the subject exceeds 15 double-byte characters (including “Fw:”), the characters over this limit are deleted.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.259) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Forward” ▶ “To” ▶ Select the address entry method

For detailed information on entering addresses →p.240

You can edit the subject and message body. You can forward i-mode mail consisting of up to 10,000 bytes (equivalent to 5,000 double-byte characters) including the received message body and any additional messages, headers, signatures and attached melodies or images. In addition, an attachment of the received mail can be forwarded.

2 (Send)

After the mail has been sent, the received mail detail screen appears and the  icon changes to .

NOTE

- ◆ If you forward the i-mode mail with “Fw:” (all single-byte characters) in the subject line, “Fw2:” is added into the forwarded i-mode mail subject line instead of “Fw:”. Similarly, if “Fw2:” is included, “Fw3:” is added in the forwarded mail, and “Fw4:” if “Fw3:” is included and so on up to “Fw99:”. If the “Fw:” in the original mail includes the double-byte characters or “FW:” (upper case “W”), this is discarded and replaced by “Fw:” in the forwarded mail.
- ◆ If the following type of files are attached or pasted, those files or information are deleted: Attachment prohibited to i-mode mail or Deco-mail for forwarding and output prohibited from the FOMA terminal.
- ◆ If there contains the retrieve-incomplete attached file in the i-mode mail to be forwarded, this file is not attached. →p.255
- ◆ If i-mode message contains the pasted data such as melodies or i-appli start modules, you cannot quote the pasted data even for forwarding.

Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook

You can store the sender’s mail address or a phone number to your phonebook.

<Example: To add the sender’s mail address to the phonebook>

1 Received mail detail screen (p.259)

▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Save address”

■ When there are multiple mail addresses to be stored

▶ On the mail address selection screen, select the mail address to be stored

■ To add the destination address or the phone number on the sent mail to the phonebook

▶ Received mail detail screen (p.259) ▶

 (FUNC) ▶ “Save address”

If the i-mode mail is sent to the multiple addresses, select the mail address to be added from the mail addressee list.

■ To add address or the phone number typed in the message body of the received or sent mail to the phonebook

▶ Sent mail detail screen or Received mail detail screen ▶ Highlight the mail address or the phone number to be added ▶

 (FUNC) ▶ “Add to phonebook”

2 “YES” ▶ “Phone” ▶ “New”

The entered information is displayed in the new Add to phonebook screen. Enter the required items and store the entry.

“Adding Phonebook Entries” →p.107



■ **To add information to the UIM phonebook**

▶“YES”▶“UIM”

When you add information to the UIM phonebook, “Overwrite” is displayed as the storage method instead of “Add”.

Retrieving the Selective Received Attached File

When the total capacity of the message body, inserted image and attached file exceeds 100K bytes, the attached file cannot be automatically received at the mail reception. In this case, you have to manually retrieve an attached file later.

- You should also retrieve the file manually to the file deselected on “Prefer attachment”.
- The “” icon and the “” icon are displayed on the Received mail detail screen if you retrieve no attached files and a part of the attached file, respectively.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.259)

▶Select the attached file showing the icon of “” or “”

Retrieving data starts.

Data has been retrieved and the screen is displayed showing the completion of retrieving data.

■ **To cancel retrieving**

▶ (Quit)

Save the partially-retrieved data. In this case, repeat step 1 and you can retrieve the partially-remaining data.

2 After retrieving data, the content of the file is displayed to the file type of the attachments

NOTE

- ◆ If there remains even one attachment that retrieving data is incomplete, “Received mail detail screen” (p.259) shows the retention period of the attachment. Retrieving all the attachments is completed, the display of the retention period disappears.
- ◆ It is considered that the file size displayed for the retrieve-incomplete attachment is the one for the retrieve-completed attachment on the “Received mail detail screen”.
- ◆ If receiving the attachment exceeds the storage capacity of Inbox, the received mail is automatically deleted according to the attached file size. (A large volume of the received mails may be deleted depending on the file size of the attachment.) Note that the following mails are not deleted: unread mails, received mails in protected or received mails in the Secret folders. You should protect the necessary mail. →p.264

Checking and Saving Files Attached to i-mode Mail

You can check and save the attached or pasted data to the received i-mode mail.

- Selecting the receive-incomplete attachment starts receiving operation.
- The receive-incomplete attachment cannot be saved. To save it, you should complete reception beforehand. →p.255

Playing/saving melodies

<Save melody>

You can save a melody ( or ) attached to or pasted into received i-mode mail on your FOMA terminal.

- You cannot play a melody during a call.
- If the destination terminal is other than FOMA N903i, sending melody may not be properly played.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.259)

▶Highlight a melody () (FUNC)▶

“Save data”▶“YES”▶Select a

folder

■ **To stop a melody**

▶, 0 to 9, *, #, F and the assist key

Pressing the assist key reads out the message body after stopping the melody.

2 “YES”▶Select an item

■ **To not set the melody as a ring tone, etc.**

▶“NO”

NOTE

- ◆ If there are multiple pasted files, you may not be able to view the pasted files themselves.
- ◆ To prevent a melody from playing automatically when you open a mail, set “Start attachment (auto)” to “OFF”.
- ◆ Melody over 100K bytes can only be saved in the microSD memory card.

Displaying and saving an image <Receive image mail>

You can save the image () attached or inserted to the received i-mode mail.

Saving inserted images →p.267

1 Received mail detail screen (p.259)

▶Select the image to be saved

■ **To change the display format from image to the file name**

▶Select an image and 

To return to the image display, select the file name and press .

2  (FUNC) ▶ “Save data” ▶ “YES” ▶
Select a folder

3 “YES” ▶ Select an item
■ To not set the image for the standby screen, etc.
▶ “NO”

NOTE

- ◆ Some images may not be displayed on the Received mail detail screen. In this case, select the file name to press , and you can check the image.
- ◆ Images in formats that are larger than the display are shown reduced. However, too large images may not be displayed.
- ◆ Images may be displayed differently between viewing through i-mode mail and My picture. To view an image correctly, you must display the image saved in the “Inbox” folder from My picture.
- ◆ When saving an image targeted for Decorate PI, a message appears asking whether to store the Decorate PI. Selecting “YES” saves automatically the image to the “Decorate PI” folder in “My picture”.

Playing and saving i-motion

<i-motion mail>

You can play and save the i-motion () attached to the i-mode mail received.

- You cannot play an i-motion during a call.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.259)
▶ Select an i-motion

i-motion plays.

■ To save an i-motion

▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Save data” ▶ “YES” ▶ Select a folder

Displaying/Saving ToruCa

<Save ToruCa>

You can display and save ToruCa or ToruCa (detail) () attached to the received i-mode mail.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.259)
▶ Select ToruCa

ToruCa appears.

■ To save ToruCa

▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Save data” ▶ “YES” ▶ Select a folder

Pressing  (Save) is also available for saving while ToruCa is displayed.

NOTE

- ◆ ToruCa over 1K byte or ToruCa (detail) over 100K byte cannot be displayed.

Displaying and saving the PDF data and document

You can display and save PDF data () or document () attached to the received i-mode mail.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.259)
▶ Select a file

The PDF data and document appear.

■ To save the PDF data and document

▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Save data” ▶ “YES” ▶ Select a folder

NOTE

- ◆ Document can only be saved into the microSD memory card.
- ◆ For the PDF data which is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal, you cannot save it in the microSD memory card.

Displaying and saving the tool data

You can display and save the tool data (phonebook, schedule or bookmark) () attached to the received i-mode mail.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.259)
▶ Select a file

Phonebook, schedule or bookmark information is displayed.

Selecting “Save data” from the function menu also runs the same operation.

2 Save data

■ Phonebook

▶  (Save) ▶ Select a phonebook

For details of the steps after selecting “phone”, “All Phonebook” and “UIM”, see “Add to phonebook” (p.107).

■ Schedule

▶  (Save)

■ Bookmarks

▶  (Save) ▶ Select a folder

For i-mode, “i-mode Browser” and “microSD” can be selected. For the full browser, “Full Browser” and “microSD” can be selected.

NOTE

- ◆ Schedule cannot be saved in the microSD memory card.
- ◆ If there contains multiple information in the file to be displayed, a message appears indicating that only the first data is displayed. If you save this file into the FOMA terminal, only the first data is saved. (If saving to the microSD memory card, all information is saved.)

Saving other files

You can save other files (including files not available on the FOMA terminal) attached to the received i-mode mail (?).

- Other files are automatically saved in the "Other" folder of the microSD memory card. The file name is changed after saving. → p.354

1 Received mail detail screen (p.259)

▶ Select other files (FUNC) ▶
"Save data" ▶ "YES"

<Inbox/Outbox>

Displaying Mail in Inbox and Outbox

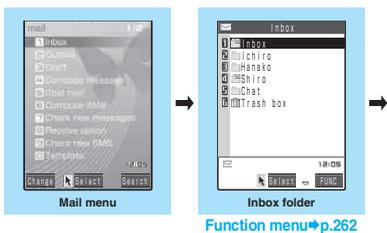
Inbox contains up to 1,000* messages (the total of i-mode mail and SMS), and Outbox contains up to 400* messages (the total of i-mode mail and SMS). Up to 1,000 messages for Inbox and 200 messages for Outbox can be protected. The number of messages that can be saved and protected varies depending on the amount of data in each message. When the large file size is saved, the number of messages that can be saved and protected decreases.

* : Up to 100 messages can be stored in the Secret folders of Inbox and Outbox, respectively.

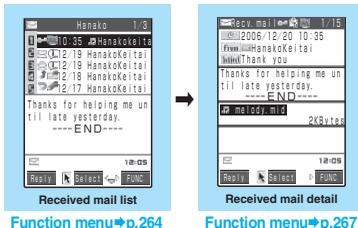
Reading i-mode mail

<Example: To read a message body in Inbox>

1 (MENU) ▶ "Mail" ▶ "Inbox" ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a mail



Function menu ▶ p.262



Function menu ▶ p.264

Function menu ▶ p.267

■ To view the previous or next mail

▶ Mail detail screen ▶

Press [CLR] to return to the Received mail list screen.

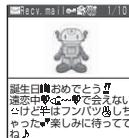
NOTE

- ◆ You can also place the received address for the sender or broadcast member, or the address to be sent (a phone number for SMS and a mail address for an i-mode mail) into your standby screen as a desktop icon. You can use the desktop icon to create a new i-mode mail with a mail address which the desktop icon contains as an address information. (SMS uses a phone number as an address to create a new SMS.) However, you cannot paste the mail addressee with the "Fn" icon, "To" icon or "Cc" icon as desktop icons. Also for broadcast mail, only one mail address can be pasted in each operation.
- ◆ You can also view the mails contained in other than the Secret folder even in the Secret data only mode.
- ◆ For the file attached to the mail in the Secret folder, only image display and melody play is possible. (No display or no play for the retrieve-incomplete file) For other types of the file, display or play is possible once moving the file from the Secret folder.

■ Mail-connected i-appli

- The sent i-mode mail using a mail-connected i-appli is sorted into the mail-connected i-appli dedicated folder.
 - Where the sender used a mail-connected i-appli to send i-mode mail and the recipient has created a dedicated mail folder for that mail-connected i-appli, the i-mode mail is sorted into that folder.
- If there is no dedicated folder but the "Auto-sort" function has been set, mail is sorted into the folder designated in the "Auto-sort" settings. If the "Auto-sort" function has not been set, mail is sorted into the Inbox.
- Selecting the dedicated folder for a mail-connected i-appli activates the software.
 - To view the mail list screen for a folder without activating the software, highlight the folder and select "Open folder" from the function menu.

■ Having the FOMA terminal read out mail (i-mode mail or SMS)

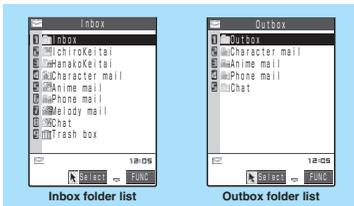


English messages are read out in spelling out.

- By selecting "Read out message" from the function menu in the received mail detail screen, you can have the FOMA terminal read out the body of the received message in the designated voice.
- To cancel read out, press (C). (After cancelling, press (M) to start read out from the first sentence. To end read out, Press (X) (Exit).

- You can set the voice used to read out received mail using “Read out setting” (p.272).
- A FOMA terminal reads out mails at the volume level set in “Phone” in “Ring volume”. If “Silent” or “Step” is set, messages are read out at the “Level 2” volume.
Volume in Manner mode → p.132
- While a message is being read out, an image appears in the top half of the screen, as shown in the figure above. If the source address and the image are stored in the phonebook, the stored image is displayed.
- You can read out the message body using the assist key. → p.394
- While reading out a mail, press (Ⓜ), (←), and (MEMO/CHECK) to scroll the message. Press (5) for 1 second or longer to turn the backlight on or off. Pressing any of other keys stops the reading.
- If you receive a call while a message is being read out, reading ends and the ringing screen appears.
- If you receive new mail or messages while a message is being read out, the setting in “Receiving display” takes effect. Also, if the specified alarm time is reached while a message is being read out, the setting in “Alarm setting” takes effect.
- The FOMA terminal may be unable to read out some message body in the received mail from PC, etc.

Guide to the folder list screens



Function menu → p.262

Function menu → p.262

Icon	Description
	Normal folder
	Mail-connected i-appli (p.285) folder
	Trash folder
	Secret folder

: This icon is displayed when you have an unread mail. (Not displayed in Outbox)

: This icon is displayed when the mail security (p.262) is set.

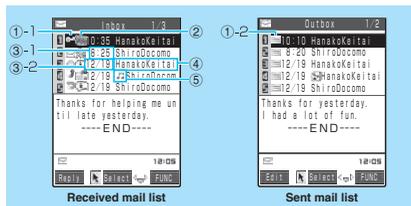
: This icon is displayed when Auto-sort is set (p.262).

NOTE

- ◆ You can add other folders to Inboxes or Outboxes using the function menu on the inboxes/outboxes folder list screen besides the pre-installed folders at default. → p.262

- ◆ No folders for the mail-connected i-appli is available at default. Downloading the mail-connected i-appli automatically creates the folder for i-appli mail.
- ◆ The Secret folders are only displayed in Secret mode or Secret data only mode. → p.160

Guide to the mail list screens



Function menu → p.264

Function menu → p.266

① Mail condition

①-1 Receive

Icon	Description
	Unread mail
	Read mail
	Protected read mail
	Forwarded mail
	Replied-to mail

: This icon is displayed when a mail is protected.

①-2 Send

Icon	Description
	Mail with one address
	Mail with multiple addresses (broadcast mail)

: This icon is displayed when a mail is protected.

: This icon is displayed when transmission partially failed.

: This icon is displayed when transmission failed.

② Message information

Icon	Description
	Emotion-expressing mail icons → p.251

③ Message arrival time and date

③-1 Time display for a mail sent and received on the day

③-2 Date display for a mail sent and received on the previous day

- ④ Source, destination or mail subject
You can switch the display mode by mail address, by phone number, by name or by subject. When i-mode mail has no subject, "No title" is displayed. For SMS, the message header is displayed. (For an SMS report, "SMS report" is displayed.) For Voice Mail notices, "Noticecall voicemail" is displayed.
- ⑤ Information of the mail types, attachments, pasted files

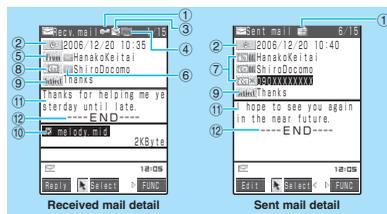
Icon	Description
	SMS
	SMS in the FOMA card (UIM)
	SMS with SMS report received
	Attached or pasted melodies
	Attached or pasted images
	Attached i-motion
	Attached ToruCa or ToruCa (detail)
	Attached PDF data (mail)
	Attached tool data (phonebook, schedule or bookmark)
	Attached document
	Attached other files (including files not available on the FOMA terminal)
	Launching i-appli available from the message body
	Launching i-appli unavailable from the message body (moving a mail to the secret folder)
	Mail sent or received by the mail-connected i-appli
	Attached file without retrieving "Retrieving the Selective Received Attached File" → p.255
	Attached incomplete file "Retrieving the Selective Received Attached File" → p.255
	Attached file retrieving not available
	Attached several files or combined with attached and pasted files
	Pasted multiple data (also pasted data together with the i-appli To function)
	FOMA card operational restriction function mail (using different FOMA card from the sending or receiving a mail)

- : This icon is displayed when the attachment is deleted. (For ToruCa, this is also displayed when the attachment is deleted by the scan function.)
- : This icon is displayed when a certain file is deleted in the multiple files.
- : This icon is displayed when all files (multiple files) are deleted.

NOTE

- ◆ i-mode mail with an image attached is displayed on the Received mail detail screen or Sent mail detail screen. To switch the image display with the file name display, select an image and press . However, some images may not be viewed in display. In this case, select the file name to press , and you can check the image.

Guide to the mail detail screens



Function menu → p.267

Function menu → p.268

- ① Mail state
Refer to description in "Guide to the mail list screens" (p.258).
- ② Time and date of sending or receiving messages (time and date of arrival at the Center).
- ③ Sending type of the received mail

Icon	Description
	Address type of the sender → p.240

- ④ Received message information

Icon	Description
	Emotion-expressing mail icons → p.251

- ⑤ The sender of the received mail

Icon	Description
	The name or mail address of the sender

- : This icon is displayed when the mail cannot be replied to the source address (such as the mail address exceeding 50 single-byte characters).

- ⑥ Icons stored in the phonebook
If the source address and phone number are stored in the phonebook, the icon stored in the phonebook is displayed.

- ⑦ Destination and type of the sent mail

Icon	Description
	The destination name, mail address, and type → p.240

- : This icon is displayed when transmission failed.

- ⑧ Destination and type specified in the received broadcast mail
Up to four items can be displayed.

Icon	Description
 /  /  / 	Destination name, mail address and type excluding the owner in the broadcast mail → p.240

: This icon is displayed when a mail is not available for replay.

⑨ Subject

When there is no subject, “No title” is displayed. The  icon is displayed for the received SMS (“” for SMS in the FOMA card (UIM)) and the title is “SMS” (“SMS report” for an SMS report). If the SMS report is already received,  is also displayed.

- ⑩ Information of attached or pasted files
The file name and size are also displayed.

Icon	Description
	Pasted melody (An invalid melody is displayed in the message body as a text.)
	Invalid inserted image

Other information icons for attached or pasted files → p.259

- ⑪ Message body
⑫ End mark for the end of the message body.

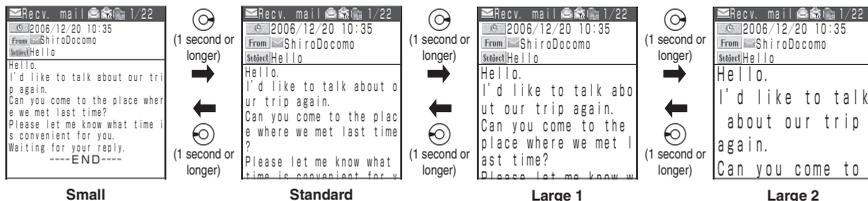
NOTE

- ◆ On the following situations, only mail address is displayed without the stored name, even when the phone number or mail address is stored in the phonebook.
 - “Restrict dialing” (p.171) is in set and the phone number is not designated in the “Restrict dialing” settings.
 - The phone number or mail address is stored in Secret data only mode, but not as secret data.
 - The phone number or mail address stored as secret data other than in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.

Changing the font size or list mode of the message

● Changing the font size in the message body

On the mail detail screen, you can change the font size in the message body.



NOTE

- ◆ Switching the font size by the operation shown above also changes the settings on “Mail” of “Character size” under “Font” (p.146) and “Font size” (p.270).
- ◆ The font size can be changed in the same way in the message reading out screen (p.257).

● Changing the display mode on the mail list screen (2 lines/1 line/1line+body)

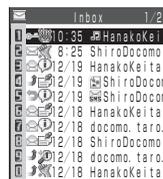
You can switch to any item of 1line+body, 1 line and 2 lines using the “Mail list disp.” setting in “Mail settings” in the Mail menu. → p.270



1line+body



2 lines

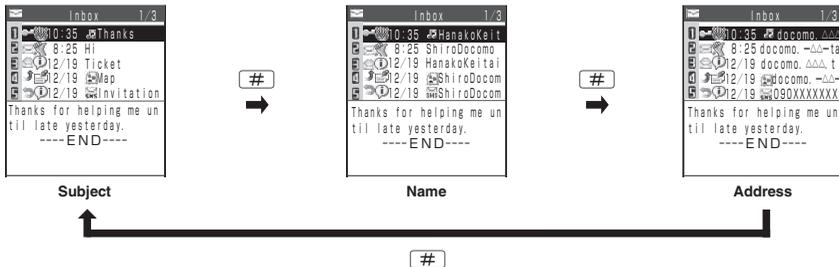


1 line

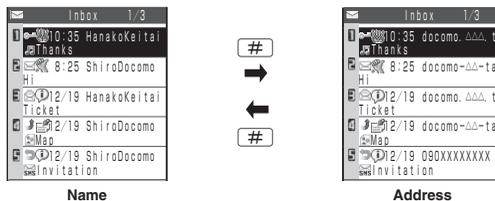
● Changing the display mode on the mail list screen (Name/Address/Subject)

On the mail list screen, you can switch to show the display mode by destination address or source name, by mail address or phone number, or by subject. If the name of the destination or the source is stored in the phonebook, it is used for display.

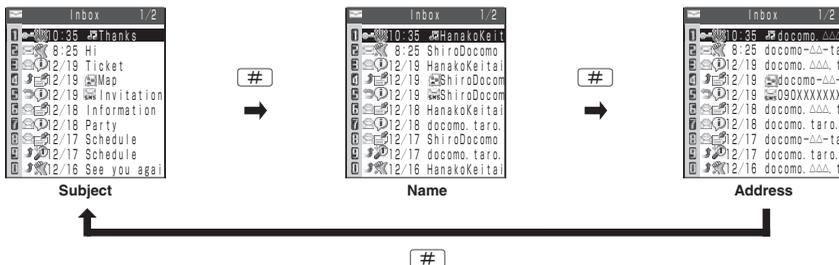
- Message list screen (1 line+body)



- Message list screen (2 line)



- Message list screen (1 line)



NOTE

- ◆ You can also change the display mode by selecting "List setting" from the function menu in the Inbox list screen, Outbox list screen or Draft list screen and then selecting any item of "Subject", "Name", or "Address".

● Checking the message count of Inbox or outbox

To check the total number of saved messages in all the folders, select "Memory info" from the function menu in the folder list screen.

To check the number of messages stored in each folder, display the list screen for mails in the folder you want to check and then select "No. of messages" from the function menu.

● Backlight function

When you open the FOMA terminal, press a key or send or receive an i-mode mail or SMS, the backlight turns on for about 15 seconds. (Lighting interval varies depending on the setting of "Mail/Msg. ring time".) However, when an i-mode mail or SMS is displayed, lighting time depends on the message size.

The backlight does not turn on if "Lighting" under "Backlight" is set to "OFF".

Function menu (Inbox/Outbox folder list screen)

- You can add up to 22 folders.

Add folder	▶ Enter a folder name ▶ Set the sort criteria Adds a new folder, and then sets the Auto-sort function to this folder. "Automatic sorting settings"→p.262
Auto-sort	"Automatic sorting settings"→p.262
Edit folder name	▶ Enter a folder name You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Mail security	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" "Setting security for individual folders"→p.171
Sort folder	▶ Select the folder to be moved Rearranges folders.
No. of messages	Displays the number of messages, unread messages and protected messages in all the folders.
Open folder	Displays the list screen of the mail in the highlighted folder.
Add desktop icon*	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.147
Touch to send all	Sends all messages in the mail box.
Send all lr data	"Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time"→p.369
CopyAll to microSD	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Copies all messages in the mail box. However, SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) and a message in the secret folder are not copied.
Delete folder	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES"
Delete read*	Deletes all the messages you have already read.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all messages.

* : Only displayed in the Inbox folder list screen.

NOTE

<Add folder>

- ◆ When you download a mail-connected i-appli, an i-appli mail folder is automatically created (5 folders max.) separately from a folder which you can add using "Add folder".

<Edit folder name>

- ◆ You cannot edit the folder name for the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Chat", a mail-connected i-appli, "Trash box" or "Secret" folders.
- ◆ You cannot edit the names of folders for which mail security is set.

<Mail security>

- ◆ You cannot set the mail security to the "Secret" folder.

<Sort folder>

- ◆ You cannot sort the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Chat", "Trash box" or "Secret" folders.
- ◆ You cannot sort the folder if an additional folder is only one.

<No. of messages>

- ◆ Mail messages stored in the Secret folder are not included.

<Touch to send all> <Send all lr data>

- ◆ SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) and messages in the "Secret" folder are not sent.

<Delete folder>

- ◆ You cannot delete a folder if a message in the folder is protected or set in mail security. Remove the protection or mail security and then delete the folder.
- ◆ You cannot delete an i-appli mail folder if there is a corresponding mail-connected i-appli. You can delete an i-appli mail folder if there is no corresponding software, but the folder created in the Inbox folder list screen or Outbox folder list screen is also deleted.
- ◆ If you delete a folder that is specified in the "Auto-sort" settings, the automatic sorting setting for that folder is also canceled.
- ◆ You cannot delete the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Chat", "Trash box" and "Secret" folders which are pre-installed at default.

<Delete read>

- ◆ This option does not delete the protected read i-mode mail and SMS.
- ◆ An i-mode mail and SMS in the "Secret" folder are not deleted.

<Delete all>

- ◆ Unread mails are also deleted. However, this option does not delete the protected i-mode mail and SMS.
- ◆ An i-mode mail and SMS in the Secret folder are not deleted.

● Automatic sorting settings

You can automatically sort i-mode mail (including broadcast mail) or SMS to the specified folders by making conditions in advance such as a mail addressee, phone number or subjects used in the source of the received mail or the destination of the sent mail.

- You can set the total of 700 mail addresses, phone numbers, phonebook groups or mailing lists for automatic sorting in all the folders of Inbox and Outbox. You can set multiple mail addresses, phone numbers, phonebook groups or mail member in the same folder. Only one subject can be set for each folder.
- When Original lock is in setting to the phonebook, the group name is displayed as "Group". When Original lock is in setting to the mail member, the member name is displayed as "Mail member".
- If received or sent mail meets multiple sort criteria, the Auto-sort settings are prioritized as shown below. Note that mail for mail-connected i-appli is sorted into the dedicated folder regardless of the Auto-sort settings. Unless "Sort all" is specified, chat mail is always sorted into the "Chat" folder regardless of the Auto-sort settings.
 - ① Address sort
 - ② Subject sort
 - ③ Reply/Send impossible
 - ④ Mail address/Phone number
 - ⑤ Mail member
 - ⑥ Phonebook group

- If you use Look-up group to store a mail address registered as secret data in a folder and receive a mail from the mail address, the mail is sorted into "Inbox" folder when Secret mode or Secret data only mode is not set. When Secret mode or Secret data only mode is set, the mail is sorted into the folder set in Auto-sort.
If you register a folder using Look-up address and receive a mail from the destination stored as secret data, a mail is sorted to the folder set in Auto-set regardless of setting in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.
- The message received or sent before setting in Auto-set remains in the folders stored before setting.

1 Select the destination folder for sorting

2 Inbox list screen (p.258)/Outbox list screen (p.258) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Auto-sort"

If even one message is set for sorting, additionally press (FUNC)

3 Set Auto-sort from the following item

Address sort	Sets a mail address or phone number to be used for automatic sorting.
• Look-up address	Sets a mail address or phone number referencing the phonebook and records.
• Phonebook	Sets a mail address or phone number by searching the phonebook.
• Received address	Sets a mail address or phone number from the Received address list.
• Sent address	Sets a mail address or phone number from the sent address list.
• Look-up group	▶ Select a group Sets the mail address or phone number of the selected group.
• Look-up member	▶ Select a mail member Sets a mail address or phone number of the selected mail member.
• Enter address	Sets a mail addresses or phone number entering a character one by one.
Subject sort	▶ Enter a subject Sets a mail subject as an auto-sort criterion.
Reply impossible*	Sets a mail address or phone number to which you cannot reply (or which failed to be sent).
Sort all	This can be set only for mail-connected i-appli folders. Sorts all mails into a mail-connected i-appli folder.

Edit addr/subj	Edits a previously specified mail address, phone number or mail subject.
List setting	Selects from "Name" or "Address" about how to view the list of mail addresses or phone number to be automatically sorted.
Release	Deselects all the auto-sort criteria.
• Release this	Deselects the selected auto-sort criterion.
• Release selected	▶ Use to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deselects the selected auto-sort criteria.
• Release all	Deselects all the auto-sort criteria.

* : If you have selected the Auto-sort settings in the Outbox folder, "Send impossible" is displayed.

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot set the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Chat", "Trash box" or "Secret" folders in automatic sorting.
- ◆ If even a single address on the broadcasted mail matches the auto-sort criteria, the message is sorted to the folder set in "Address sort" or "Send impossible". Sort condition is looked up to in sequence order of the input address.
- ◆ For the folder with mail security (p.262) set, you need to enter the security code after selecting "Auto-sort" from the Inbox/Outbox folder list function menu.

<Address sort (Look-up group)>

- ◆ You cannot set "Group 00" or groups in the FOMA card (UIM).

<Address sort (Enter address)>

- ◆ Ensure that the mail address should be entered until domain (the part of the address following @ (at mark)). However, If the address format is "[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp", simply enter the phone number.

<Subject sort>

- ◆ If the subject meets the sort criteria for multiple folders, the mail is sorted into the folder closest to the "Inbox" or "Outbox" folder.
- ◆ Only one subject can be set for each folder.
- ◆ You cannot sort i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is shown as "No title" even if setting "No title" as a sort criteria.
- ◆ You cannot use this option to sort SMS.

<Reply impossible>

- ◆ You cannot use this option to sort SMS reports.
- ◆ "Reply impossible" can only be set for one folder within Inbox.

<Send impossible>

- ◆ "Send impossible" can only be set for one folder within Outbox.

<Sort all>

- ◆ You cannot use this option to sort SMS reports or SMS received directly to the FOMA card (UIM).
- ◆ "Sort all" can only be set for one i-appli mail folder for received and sent i-appli mail respectively.

<List setting>

- ◆ You can also switch between "Name" and "Address" by pressing (#) on the Auto-sort setting screen.

Function menu (Received mail list screen)

- Since the available function is different between the received and unread mail list screens, the items displayed is different.

Reply	"Replying by composing a new message" → p.253
Move	▶ Select a folder ▶ Use  to select a checkbox (<input type="checkbox"/>) ▶  (Finish) ▶ "YES" Moves a mail to other folder.
Search mail	Searches for mail using a sender or subject specified.
• Search sender	Specifies the mail address by referencing the Phonebook or history, or by entering a character one by one.
• Phonebook	Specifies a mail address by searching the phonebook.
• Received address	Specifies a mail address from the Received address list.
• Sent address	Specifies a mail address from the Sent address list.
• Enter address	Specifies a mail addresses by entering a character one by one.
• Search subject	▶ Enter a subject
Display all	Reverts the search and sort display or the display by the filter function to the original display (all "Chronological").
Sort	Sorts mail according to the specified criteria.
Filter	Displays mail according to the specified criteria.
• Unread	Displays only unread i-mode mail and SMS.
• Read	Displays only read i-mode mail and SMS.
• Protected	Displays only protected i-mode mail and SMS.
• Attached file	Specifies the attached type and state.
• Unreceived	Displays only i-mode mail including the unreceived attachments.
• Receiving	Displays only i-mode mail including the partially-received attachments.
• Image	Displays only i-mode mail to which an image is attached or inserted.
• i-motion	Displays only i-mode mail to which i-motion is attached.
• Melody	Displays only i-mode mail to which a melody is attached or pasted.
• PDF	Displays only i-mode mail to which PDF data is attached.
• Document	Displays only i-mode mail to which the document is attached.
• ToruCa	Displays only i-mode mail to which ToruCa or ToruCa (detail) is attached.
• Tool	Displays only i-mode mail to which the phonebook, Schedule or Bookmark is attached.

• Other	Displays only i-mode mail to which other files (including files not available on the FOMA terminal) are attached.
• i-appli	Displays only i-mode mail including i-appli launcher.
• SMS	Displays only SMS
• keyword	▶ Select a "Disp keyword" (1 to 3) icon Displays only i-mode mail and SMS with the selected "Disp keyword" icon added. "Emotion/Keyword notice" → p.274
• Emotion	▶ Select a Disp emotion icon Displays only i-mode mail and SMS showing the Disp emotion icon.
Color coding	Selects the color coding of the received mail (time and date, mail address/name, subject) from "Default" (black), "Red" or "Blue".
List setting	Selects a mail-list format from "Subject", "Name" or "Address".
Read all	Marks all the unread mail in the folder as read.
Protect ON/OFF ¹⁾	Protects or unprotects mail.
Protect	Protects the message.
• Protect this	Protects the highlighted mail.
• Protect selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (<input type="checkbox"/>) ▶  (Finish) ▶ "YES" Protects the multiple messages.
• Protect all	Protects all the message.
Unprotect	Unprotects all protected mail.
• Unprotect this	Unprotects the highlighted protected mail.
• Unprotect selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (<input type="checkbox"/>) ▶  (Finish) ▶ "YES" Unprotects the multiple protected mail.
• Unprotect all	Unprotects all protected mail.
Touch to send data	"Transferring One Data at a Time" → p.368
Send Ir data	
Copy to microSD	Copies the received mail to the microSD memory card.
• Copy this	Copies the highlighted mail.
• Copy selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (<input type="checkbox"/>) ▶  (Finish) ▶ "YES" Copies multiple mails.
• Copy all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Copies all mails stored in the folder.
UIM operation	"Saving SMS (Short Message) to Your FOMA Card (UIM)" → p.281
Mail info	Displays information such as the sender without opening the i-mode mail.
No. of messages	Displays the number of messages, unread messages and protected messages in the folder.
Store at DSC	"Saving mails at the Data Security Center" → p.267

Move trash box	▶Use to select a checkbox (<input type="checkbox"/>) ▶ (Finish)▶“YES” Moves the selected mail to the trash box folder.
Delete this^{*1}	Deletes the highlighted mail.
Delete	Deletes the received mail.
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted mail.
• Delete selected	▶Use to select a checkbox (<input type="checkbox"/>) ▶ (Finish)▶“YES”
• Delete read	Deletes the read mail.
• Delete all SMS-R	▶Enter your security code▶“YES” Deletes all SMS report requests.
• Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶“YES” Deletes all the received mail.
Keep in secret^{*2}	“Hiding Various Data”→p.160
• Keep this	Stores the highlighted mail in the “Secret” folder.
• Keep selected	▶Use to select a checkbox (<input type="checkbox"/>) ▶ (Finish)▶“YES” Stores the multiple messages in the “Secret” folder.
• Keep all	Stores all the received mail in the “Secret” folder.

*1 : Only shown on the unread mail list screen.

*2 : The options appear only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. In the Secret folder, this turns to “Put out” and select from “Put out this”, “Put out selected” or “Put out all”.→p.160

NOTE

<Move>

- ◆ You cannot use this option to move mail to the “Trash box” or “Secret” folder.
- ◆ You cannot move SMS or SMS report in the FOMA card (UIM) to other folder.

<Search mail>

- ◆ You can further search from the Reference result screen.
- ◆ The Sort and Filter functions can be used together.
- ◆ To return to the original display, select “Display all”.
- ◆ You cannot sort i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is shown as “No title” even if setting “No title” as a sort criteria.

<Sort> <Filter>

- ◆ The Sort and Filter functions can be used together.
- ◆ To return to the original display, select “Display all”.
- ◆ Sort and Filter are released when you exit the MessageR/MessageF list screen.

<Color coding>

- ◆ On the received mail list screen, pressing is also available for changing colors.

<List setting>

- ◆ On the received mail list screen, pressing is also available for switching among “Subject”, “Name” and “Address”.

<Read all>

- ◆ If you view mail with the Filter function and then select “Read all”, only the currently displayed mail is marked as read.

<Protect> <Unprotect>

- ◆ If you exceed the limit on the number of received mail messages (the total of i-mode mail and SMS) that can be stored on the FOMA terminal (p.257), precedence is given to deleting mail in the “Trash box” folder when new mail arrives. If there is no messages in the “Trash box” folder, the unprotected-read received mail is deleted in chronological order. i-mode mail and SMS in the “Secret” folder are not deleted.
- ◆ You cannot protect SMS in the FOMA card (UIM).
- ◆ You cannot protect mail in the “Trash box” folder.
- ◆ If “Protect all” or “Unprotect all” is selected after displaying the mail by the filter function, only displayed mail is a target for protect or unprotect operation.

<UIM operation>

- ◆ When you move or copy the sent SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the relevant SMS appears in the Outbox folder regardless of the original folder type.

<Move trash box>

- ◆ This option moves mail to be deleted to the “Trash box” folder. Mail moved to the “Trash box” folder is not deleted immediately and can be retrieved and returned to another folder until it is deleted. Once the Inbox is full, mail moved to the “Trash box” folder is the first to be deleted as new mail arrives.
- ◆ You cannot move protected mail or SMS or SMS reports in the FOMA card (UIM) to the “Trash box” folder.
- ◆ If you move unread mail to the “Trash box” folder, it is marked as read.

<Delete this>

- ◆ You can delete the unread i-mode mail or SMS (including the FOMA card (UIM)).
- ◆ You cannot use this option to delete protected i-mode mail or SMS.

<Delete selected>

- ◆ You cannot delete this option to delete protected i-mode mail or SMS.

<Delete read>

- ◆ If you select “Delete read” after the mails are shown using the Filter function, those mails shown are deleted except i-mode mails or SMS which are protected and already read.

<Delete all SMS-R>

- ◆ The protected SMS report cannot be deleted.

<Delete all>

- ◆ Unread i-mode mail or SMS is deleted as well.
- ◆ If you select “Delete all” after the mails are shown using Filter, those mails shown are deleted except i-mode mails or SMS which are protected.

Function menu (Sent mail list screen)

Edit	▶ Edit the address, subject or message body ▶ (Send) Re-edits the message.
Move	▶ Select a folder ▶ Use to select a checkbox (☐)▶ (Finish)▶“YES” Moves the selected mail to other folder.
Search mail	Searches for mail specifying the destination address or subject.
• Search receiver	Specifies the mail address by referencing the Phonebook or history, or by entering a character one by one.
• Phonebook	Specifies a mail address by searching the phonebook.
• Sent address	Specifies a mail address from the Sent address list.
• Received address	Specifies a mail address from the Received address list.
• Enter address	Specifies a mail addresses by entering a character one by one.
• Search subject	▶ Enter a subject
Display all	Reverts the search and sort display or the display by the filter function to the original display (all Chronological).
Sort	Sorts mail according to the specified criteria.
Filter	Displays only the messages that meet the specified criterion.
Color coding	Selects the color coding of the received mail (time and date, mail address/name, subject) from “Default” (black), “Red” or “Blue”.
List setting	Selects a mail-list format from “Subject”, “Name” or “Address”.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.
Unprotect all	Unprotects all protected mail.
Touch to send data	“Transferring One Data at a Time” → p.368
Send Ir data	
Copy to microSD	Copies the received mail to the microSD memory card.
• Copy this	Copies the highlighted mail.
• Copy selected	▶ Use to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish)▶“YES” Copies multiple mails.
• Copy all	▶ Enter your security code ▶“YES” Copies all mails stored in the folder.
UIM operation	“Saving SMS (Short Message) to Your FOMA Card (UIM)” → p.281
No. of messages	Displays the number of messages, unread messages and protected messages in the folder.
Store at DSC	“Saving mails at the Data Security Center” → p.267

Delete	Deletes sent mail.
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted mail.
• Delete selected	▶ Use to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish)▶“YES” Deletes multiple mails.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶“YES” Deletes all the sent mails.
Keep in secret*	“Hiding Various Data” → p.160
• Keep this	Stores the highlighted mail in the “Secret” folder.
• Keep selected	▶ Use to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish)▶“YES” Stores the multiple messages in the “Secret” folder.
• Keep all	Stores all the received mail in the “Secret” folder.

* : The options appear only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. In the Secret folder, this turns to “Put out” and select from “Put out this”, “Put out selected” or “Put out all”. → p.160

NOTE

<Move>

- ◆ You cannot move a bookmark to the Secret folder.
- ◆ You cannot protect SMS in the FOMA card (UIM).

<Search mail>

- ◆ You can further search from the Reference result screen.
- ◆ The Sort and Filter functions can be used together.
- ◆ To return to the original display, select “Display all”.
- ◆ You cannot sort i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is shown as “No title” even if setting “No title” as a sort criteria.

<Sort> <Filter>

- ◆ The Sort and Filter functions can be used together.
- ◆ To return to the original display, select “Display all”.
- ◆ Sort and Filter are released when you exit the sent list screen.

<Color coding>

- ◆ On the received mail list screen, pressing is also available for changing colors.

<List setting>

- ◆ On the sent mail list screen, pressing is also available for switching among “Subject”, “Name” and “Address”.

<Protect ON/OFF>

- ◆ If sent mail (the total of i-mode mail and SMS) stored on the FOMA terminal exceeds the maximum storage capacity (p.257), the unprotected sent mail is deleted in chronological order. However, i-mode mail and SMS are not deleted in the Secret folder.
- ◆ You cannot protect SMS in the FOMA card (UIM).

<UIM operation>

- ◆ When you move or copy the sent SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the relevant SMS appears in the Outbox folder regardless of the original folder type.

<Delete>

- ◆ You cannot use this option to delete protected i-mode mail or SMS.
- ◆ If you select “Delete all” after the mails are shown using Filter, those mails shown are deleted except the protected i-mode mails or SMS.

● Saving mails at the Data Security Center <Data Security Service>

You can save i-mode and SMS into the DoCoMo Data Security Center.

- To use this service, you need to subscribe to "Data Security Service".
- If you have not subscribed to "Data Security Service", a message appears indicating that you have not subscribed to the service. Access the site from the screen to subscribe to the service. Data Security Service → p.121, 175

1 Received mail list screen (p.258)/ Sent mail list screen (p.258)/Draft mail list screen (p.249)▶ (FUNC)▶ "Store at DSC"

2 Use to select a checkbox (□)▶ (Finish)

Up to 10 messages can be selected.

- To store the message with attachments or inserted images which are not kept at the Data Security Center

▶Use  to select a checkbox (□)▶

 (Finish)▶"OK"

Messages are stored with attachments and inserted image deleted.

3 Enter your security code▶"YES"

A FOMA terminal connects to the Data Security Center to start saving the mails at the center.

4 (Finish)

NOTE

- ◆SMS on the FOMA card (UIM) cannot be stored at the Data Security Center.
- ◆Messages are stored in deletion of a file attached to a i-mode mail. Also, if the received mail contains the image for which output is prohibited from the FOMA terminal, messages are stored in deletion of the attachments.
- ◆You cannot save the "color coding" set on the Received mail list screen or Sent mail list screen.

■ Restore mail

Message put in the Data Security Center can be restored to the FOMA terminal. To restore message, connect to i-mode. For details on how to use this function, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

Function menu (Received mail detail screen)

Reply	"Replying by composing a new message"→p.253
Reply with quote	"Replying by quoting the received message"→p.253
Forward	"Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Destination"→p.254
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.

Move	▶Select a folder Moves a mail to another folder.
Copy	Copies the message body, subject or mail address.
Save address	"Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook"→p.254
Add to Phonebook	
Save data	"Checking and Saving Files Attached to i-mode Mail"→p.255
Save insert image	▶Select an image▶"YES"▶Select a folder▶"YES"▶Select any item Saves an image inserted into the message of Deco-mail. If you do not set the image to the standby screen, select "NO" after selecting the folder.
Add desktop icon	Pastes a sender address as a desktop icon.
Save template	"Saving a template"→p.247
Refer dictionary	"Using dictionaries from other functions"→p.411
Property	▶Select the image Displays the file name and size of an image inserted into the message in Deco-mail.
Read out message	"Having the FOMA terminal read out mail (i-mode mail or SMS)"→p.257
Chat	"Composing and Sending Chat Mail"→p.275
Touch to send data	"Transferring One Data at a Time"→p.368
Send Ir data	
Copy to microSD	"Data that can be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and the microSD memory card"→p.356
UIM operation	"Saving SMS (Short Message) to Your FOMA Card (UIM)"→p.281
Scroll	Selects "1 line", "3 lines" or "5 lines" for the number of scrolling lines on the screen.
Font size	Selects the size of displayed characters from "Standard", "Small", "Large 1" or "Large 2".
Delete att. file	Deletes the selected attachment.
Del all att. files	Deletes all the attachments.
Move trash box	Moves the mail to the "Trash box" folder.
Delete	Deletes the received mail displayed in the received mail detail screen.
Keep in secret*	"Hiding Various Data"→p.160

* : The options appear only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. If it is the Secret folder, "Put out" appears.→p.160

NOTE

<Move>

- ◆You cannot use this option to move mail to the "Trash box" or "Secret folder".
- ◆You cannot move SMS or SMS reports in the FOMA card (UIM) to other folder.

<Save insert image>

- ◆ When saving an image for Decorate PI, a message asking whether to store the Decorate PI appears. Selecting "YES" saves automatically the image to the "Decorate PI" folder in "My picture".

<UIM operation>

- ◆ When you move or copy the sent SMS to the FOMA folder (UIM), the relevant SMS appears in the Outbox folder regardless of the original folder type.

<Del att. file> <Del all att. files>

- ◆ You cannot delete data pasted into the message body and the file retrieving not available (📎),

<Move trash box>

- ◆ You cannot move protected mail or SMS or SMS reports in the FOMA card (UIM) to the "Trash box" folder.

Function menu (Sent mail detail screen)

Edit	▶ Edit the address, subject or message body (📧) (Send) Re-edits the message.
Resend	Resends the message.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.
Move	▶ Select a folder Moves a mail to another folder.
Copy	Copies the message body, subject or mail address. "Copying (or cutting) text" → p.440
Save address	"Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook" → p.254
Add to phonebook	
Save data	"Checking and Saving Files Attached to i-mode Mail" → p.255
Save insert image	▶ Select an image ▶ "YES" ▶ Select a folder ▶ "YES" ▶ Select any item Saves an image inserted into the message of Deco-mail. If you do not set the image to the standby screen, select "NO" after selecting the folder.
Add desktop icon	Pastes a destination address as a desktop icon.
Save template	"Saving a template" → p.247
Refer dictionary	"Using dictionaries from other functions" → p.411
Property	▶ Select the image Displays the file name and size of an image inserted into the message in Deco-mail.
Disp. SMS report	Displays the SMS report for an SMS. → p.279
Touch to send data	"Transferring One Data at a Time" → p.368
Send Ir data	
Copy to microSD	"Data that can be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and the microSD memory card" → p.356

UIM operation	"Saving SMS (Short Message) to Your FOMA Card (UIM)" → p.281
Scroll	Selects "1 line", "3 lines" or "5 lines" for the number of scrolling lines on the screen.
Font size	Selects the size of displayed characters from "Standard", "Small", "Large 1" or "Large 2".
Delete att. file	Deletes the selected attachment.
Del all att. files	Deletes all the attachments.
Delete	Deletes the sent mail displayed in the sent mail detail screen.
Keep in secret*	"Hiding Various Data" → p.160

* : The options appear only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. If it is the Secret folder, "Put out" appears. → p.160

NOTE

<Resend>

- ◆ Selecting "Resend" resends the message unedited. Use this option as a simple way to resend mail when the initial transmission has failed.
- ◆ When you resend a message for which a previous transmission failed, the message is saved as a sent mail. When you resend broadcast mail for which the previous transmission failed at all the addresses, the message is also saved as a sent mail.

<Disp. SMS report>

- ◆ If there is no SMS report for the selected SMS, this function cannot be used.
- ◆ When receiving the SMS report of a SMS stored in the Secret folder, you cannot select "Disp. SMS report" from the function menu even if (📧) appears on the SMS detail screen. To check the SMS report by selecting "Disp. SMS report" from the function menu, move the SMS from the Secret folder into another one.

<UIM operation>

- ◆ When you move or copy the sent SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the relevant SMS appears in the Outbox folder regardless of the original folder type.

<Sent address/Received address>

Using Mail Records

When you send or receive mail, destination addresses are recorded in the Sent address and sender addresses are recorded in the Received address. You can use this procedure to send mail by selecting an address from these address lists. Different icons are used for the i-mode mail and SMS address lists so that you can quickly distinguish the record types.

- Up to 30 i-mode mail addresses or SMS phone number entries can be stored in the respective Sent address and Received address.
- If you set security for Inbox or Outbox, e-mail addresses are not recorded in the Sent address or Received address.

Checking an address list

<Example: To display the received address list screen>

- 1 (MENU) ▶ “Own data” ▶
 “Received calls” ▶
 “All calls” ▶ (FUNC)

▶ “Received address”

▶ “Received address list” screen appears.

You can also display the “Received address list” screen by pressing and holding (C) for 1 second or longer on the standby screen.

Pressing (C) also displays this screen when selecting the address in editing mail.

■ To display the sent address list screen

- ▶ (MENU) ▶ “Own data” ▶ “Dialed calls” ▶
 (FUNC) ▶ “Sent address”

You can also display the “Sent address list” screen by pressing (C) for 1 second or longer on the standby screen.

Pressing (C) also displays this screen when selecting the address in editing mail.



Received address list
Function menu ▶ p.269

2 Select a source address

▶ “Received address detail” screen appears.

3 Check the details



NOTE

◆ The following icons are used in the sent address list and sent address detail screens:

- : i-mode transmission succeeded.
- : i-mode transmission failed.
- : SMS transmission succeeded.
- : SMS transmission failed.

◆ The following icons are used in the received address list and received address detail screens:

- : Received i-mode mail.
- : Received SMS.

◆ Turning the FOMA terminal off or deleted sent or received mail does not delete the entries in the address lists. You should delete the record entries themselves to prevent others from seeing them.

Function menu (Sent address/Received address list screen)

This explanation also applies to the function menus in the sent address and received address detail screens.

Add to phonebook	“Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook” → p.254
Look-up phonebook	Displays the detail screen of the phonebook in which the mail address is stored.
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons” → p.147
Compose message^{*1}	Create an i-mode mail with the mail address pasted to the destination address.
Dialing	Makes a voice call, a videophone call and a PushTalk call using the Phone To or AV Phone To function to the phone number in the phonebook in which the mail address is stored. → p.222
Received calls^{*2}	Switches to the received calls screen (or dialed calls screen) (list). → pp.62, 64
Delete	Deletes the mail address.
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted mail address.
• Delete selected	▶ Use (C) to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes the selected sent or received address.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all items in the Received address or Sent address.

*1 : If an SMS is highlighted, this option changes to “Compose SMS”, which composes an SMS with the phone number pasted in as the recipient.
“Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)”
→ p.278

*2 : “Redial” is for the Sent address screen from redials and “Dialed calls” is for the Sent address screen from dialed calls.

NOTE

<Received calls>

◆ The displayed received calls screen is “All calls” (shows the entire received calls record).

Setting up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions

1 (MENU) ▶ “Mail” ▶ “Mail settings”

The “Mail settings” screen appears.

2 Select any item



Scroll (default: 1 line)	Selects any of “1 line”, “3 lines” and “5 lines” to specify how many lines are scrolled on the screen when pressing on the mail detail screen.
Font size (default: Standard)	Selects any of “Standard”, “Small”, “Large 1” or “Large 2” for the font size displayed on the mail detail screen.
Mail list disp. (default: 1line+body)	Sets the number of lines and item to be displayed on the mail list screen. Select any option from “2 lines”, “1 line” and “1line+body”. ■ To switch the mail list display ▶ Select the display mode Switches to “Subject”, “Name” or “Address”.
Message display	Sets the position from where to start displaying the message body.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Standard (default) From message 	Displays the message from the header (received/sent date and time). Displays the mail from the message body.
Start attachment (auto) (default: ON)	Sets whether to automatically play the attached or pasted melody when opening an i-mode mail.
Header/Signature	“Editing headers, signatures and quotation marks” → p.271
Mail security	“Setting security for individual mailboxes” → p.171
Receiving display	Sets whether to display the receiving and reception results screens on a priority basis when you receive a mail, MessageR or MessageF while you are using the FOMA terminal.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alarm preferred (default) Operation preferred 	Shows the receiving and reception results screen. Gives priority to displaying the screen currently used rather than the receiving and reception results screens.
Receive option setting	Sets whether to receive mail selectively.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ON OFF (default) 	No auto-receiving mail Auto-receiving mail

Prefer attachment (default: selected all)	▶ Use to select a checkbox <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ (Finish) Sets the attached file type received together with a mail. Sets each of the following options: “Image”, “i-motion”, “Melody”, “PDF”, “ToruCa”, “Tool” and “Other”.
Speed photo auto disp. (default: ON)	Sets whether to automatically display a still image when receiving a speed photo mail. If you set Speed photo auto display to “OFF” and you receive a speed photo mail, the attached image is not automatically displayed. To display the image, display the received mail.
Read out setting	Sets Read out message.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select voice (default: Female 1) Read out received mail (default: ON) 	Select a voice for reading a received mail from “Female 1 or 2”, “Male 1 or 2” or “Robot”. Sets Read out message to “ON” or “OFF” when pressing the assist key.
Chat	“Specifying the chat mail settings” → p.278
Emotion/Keyword notice	“Setting Emotion/Keyword for emotion-expressing mail” → p.274
SMS settings	Sets the options for SMS.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> SMS report request (default: OFF) SMS validity period (default: 3 days) SMS input character (default: Japanese (70char.)) 	Sets whether to request an SMS report after sending an SMS. Select ON or OFF. Sets the period of time that the sent SMS is stored at the SMS Center by selecting “None”, “1 day”, “2 days” or “3 days”. Set “None” not to store SMS at the SMS Center. Sets the input method of the SMS message. Up to 70 characters of all the double bytes and single bytes can be entered in Japanese. Up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered in English.
Check settings	Allows you to check the settings specified in “Mail settings”.
Reset	“Return the mail function to the default setting” → p.274

NOTE

<Scroll>

◆ The number of lines scrolled can also be set on the mail detail screen by selecting “Scroll” from the function menu. Using that method also changes this setting.

- ◆ You can also change the font size on the mail details screen by pressing or for 1 second or longer. You can also change the font size using "Character size" under "Font" (p.146) as well as "Font size" from the function menu on the mail detail or read out screen. Using any of these methods also changes this setting.
- ◆ When you have moved to other screen than the mail detail screen, the font size even in Small or Large automatically turns to Standard. When you are back to the mail detail screen, the font size becomes in Small or Large again.

<Message display>

- ◆ If the entire message body can be displayed on a single page, all or part of the mail headers (sending/receiving date and time) may be displayed even when you select "From message".

<Start attachment (auto)>

- ◆ Even if you select "ON" in this option, you may not play melodies sent from devices other than the FOMA N903i correctly.

<Receiving display>

- ◆ When you receive a mail or MessageR/MessageF while receiving an incoming voice call, making a voice call, being on a call or using FOMA terminal functions such as an i-appli, i-motion, Chara-den or the camera, the receiving and reception results screens may not appear even if you have set "Alarm preferred".

<Receive option setting>

- ◆ This setting applies only to i-mode mail. SMS and MessageR/MessageF is automatically received regardless of this setting.

<Prefer attachment>

- ◆ You cannot receive the file type deselected in this setting together with a mail. If you check the file, you should manually retrieve it later. → p.255
- ◆ Even if deselecting "Image", you can receive the image inserted in the message of Deco-mail together with a mail.
- ◆ If deselecting "Tool", you cannot receive the phonebook, schedule and bookmark.
- ◆ If deselecting "Other", you cannot receive the document either.

<SMS report request>

- ◆ You can view received SMS reports in the "Inbox" folder. You can also check the report by selecting "Disp. SMS report" from the function menu in the detail screen of the sent SMS.

Editing headers, signatures and quotation marks

Default setting	Header/Signature (Not stored): Insert Quotation marks: >
-----------------	--

Storing text to be inserted at the beginning of an i-mode mail message body (a header) and your name or other information (signature) to be added at the end in advance allows you to quickly and easily paste that information into an i-mode mail (text mail) or Deco-mail message. This function also allows you to edit a symbol or comment (quotation mark) at the beginning of quoted text when you reply to received mail by quoting the original message.

1 Mail settings screen (p.270) ▶ Select "Header/Signature"

2 Select "Edit header" or "Edit signature" ▶

- To edit the quotation mark
▶ "Edit Quotation marks"

3 Enter the header or signature ▶ (Finish)

You can enter up to 5000 double-byte (10000 single-byte) characters for header or signature, and up to 10 double-byte (20 single-byte) characters for quotation marks

- To enter the quotation mark
▶ Enter the quotation marks
- To decorate header or signature
You can decorate header or signature.
"Composing a Deco-mail" → p.243

4 Select "Insert setting" ▶ Select the check box of "Header" and/or "Signature" ▶ (Finish)

- To compose mail without adding a header or signature automatically
▶ Deselect the checkbox under "Insert setting"

NOTE

- ◆ Even if you select the checkbox under "Insert setting", the header or signature is not pasted into speed photo mail, template, chat screen or i-mode mail composed from an i-mode mail-connected i-appli.
- ◆ You cannot set the background color to the decoration for header or signature. It changes to the background color of a mail to be pasted.
- ◆ If pasting the decorated header or signature to i-mode mail (text mail), it turns to Deco-mail.

Specifying which items are inquired to the i-mode Center

<Set check new messages>

Default setting
Selected all

Select items to check in "Set check new messages". Sets whether to check each of "Mail" (i-mode mail), "MessageR" and "MessageF".

- A deselected checkbox "" denotes that the FOMA terminal will not check for that item.

1 ▶ "Settings" ▶ "Connection setting" ▶ "Set check new messages"

2 Use to select a checkbox () ▶ (Finish)

Sets voice to read out mails

- The FOMA terminal cannot read out SMS report (p.279), mail without messages, mail only including attached melodies or URLs for an i-appli activation, or Deco-mail without messages.
- The FOMA terminal cannot read out mail during a voice call or PushTalk call, while running the music player or during 64K data communication.

1 Mail settings screen (p.270) ▶ “Read out setting” ▶ “Select voice” ▶ Select a voice to read out

Rules used for reading out mail

The read out mail function generally follows the rules given below when reading out received mail.

■ Symbols, special characters and pictographs

- Symbols, special characters and pictographs are not read out, except for certain symbols

*The FOMA terminal may not correctly read out sentences that include symbols, special characters or pictographs.

■ Numbers

- The FOMA terminal will read out numbers up to 16 digits long.

E.g.: 1234 “Sen niyaku sanju yon”

■ Monetary amounts

- If a currency symbol (e.g. “¥” (double- or single-byte character)) is placed at the beginning of a number up to 16 digits long, the FOMA terminal reads out the number as a monetary amount.

If commas (,) are used as a delimiting character in an input string, the FOMA will recognize the string as a monetary amount only if the commas are used every 3 digits.

E.g.: ¥ 12345]— “Ichiman nisen sanbyaku yonju go en”
 ¥ 12,345

■ Phone number

- If numbers are delimited by hyphens (-) or parentheses (()) in the patterns listed below, the FOMA terminal reads them out as phone numbers but not as sequences of digits. The FOMA terminal will also read numbers preceded by “Tel:” as phone numbers.

E.g. Tel: 0120-102-001 “Teru zeroichinizeru ichizeroni zerozeroichi”

land line			
XX-XXXX-XXXX	XXX-XXX-XXXX	XXXX-XX-XXXX	XXXXX-X-XXXX
(XX)XXXX-XXXX	(XXX)XXX-XXXX	(XXXX)XX-XXXX	(XXXXX)X-XXXX
XX(XXX)XXXX	XXX(XX)XXXX	XXXX(XX)XXXX	XXXXX(X)XXXX
XXXX-XXXX	XXX-XXXX	XX-XXXX	X-XXXX
Mobile phone			
XXX-XXXX-XXXX	XXXX-XXX-XXXX	(XXX)XXXX-XXXX	(XXXX)XXX-XXXX
XXX(XXX)XXXX	XXXX(XXX)XXXX		
Toll-free			
XXXX-XXX-XXX	XXXX-XXXXXX		

* “X” indicates a number.

■ Time

- Numbers separated by a colon (:) are read out as time.* If the hour component is a 1- or 2-digit number and the minute component is a 2-digit number, the number is read out as time. If “AM” or “PM” is added before or after the number, it is read out before the number.

“Hour”：“Minute”(“Hour” = 0 to 29; “Minute” = 00 to 59) Example: E.g. 23:15 “Nijusanji jugofun”
AM “Hour”：“Minute” or “Hour”：“Minute” AM (“Hour” = 0 to 12; “Minute” = 00 to 59) Example: E.g. AM 5:05 “Gozen goji gofun”
PM “Hour”：“Minute” or “Hour”：“Minute” PM (“Hour” = 0 to 12; “Minute” = 00 to 59) Example: E.g. PM 5:05 “Gogo goji gofun”

* : The time entered in the format of “Hour”：“Minute”：“Second” (e.g. 23:15:10) is not read out.

■ Date

- Numbers separated by a slash (/) or a period (.) are read out as time. If “M”, “T”, “S” or “H” (upper case) is inserted before a date, the corresponding (Japanese) era name is read out.

“Year”/“Month”/“Day” or “Year”.“Month”.“Day”(“Year” = 0 to 9999; “Month” = 1 to 12; “Day” = 1 to 31) E.g.: 2006/9/22 2006/09/22 2006.9.22 2006.09.22	—“Nisenrokunen juunigatsu itsuka”
“M” “Year”/“Month”/“Day” or “M” “Year”.“Month”.“Day” (“Year” = 0 to 99; “Month” = 1 to 12; “Day” = 1 to 31) E.g.: M10/04/20 “Meiji junen shigatsu hatsuka”	
“T” “Year”/“Month”/“Day” or “T” “Year”.“Month”.“Day” (“Year” = 0 to 99; “Month” = 1 to 12; “Day” = 1 to 31) E.g.: T8.10.15 “Taishou hachinen jugatsu jugonichi”	
“S” “Year”/“Month”/“Day” or “S” “Year”.“Month”.“Day” (“Year” = 0 to 99; “Month” = 1 to 12; “Day” = 1 to 31) E.g.: S50.3.6 “Shouwa gojunen sangatsu muika”	
“H” “Year”/“Month”/“Day” or “H” “Year”.“Month”.“Day” (“Year” = 0 to 99; “Month” = 1 to 12; “Day” = 1 to 31) E.g.: H17.10.3 “Heisei junanenanen jugatsu mikka”	

- The above formats for numbers, monetary amounts, phone numbers, time and date can also be used with double-byte characters.
- When monetary amounts, phone numbers, time or date are read out and the string read out is immediately preceded or followed by any of the characters shown below, the numbers will not be delimited correctly. When you want to have monetary amounts, phone numbers, time or date read out correctly, you should use a space as the delimiting character before and after the item.
0 to 9, A to Z (upper case), colon (:), ¥, slash (/), period (.), hyphen (-) (double-byte or single-byte)

■ Symbols

- The FOMA terminal can read out the symbols shown below. (These symbols are read out as shown when used with numbers.)

\$ (dollars) → doru	% (percent) → paasento	¥ (yen) → en	° (degrees) → do
℃ (degrees) → do	¥ (yen) → en	\$ (dollars) → doru	% (percent) → paasento
ミリ (mm) → miri	キロ (kilograms) → kiro	センチ (cm) → senchi	メートル (meters) → meetoru
グラム (grams) → guramu	トン (tons) → ton	アール (ares) → aaru	ヘクタール (hectares) → hekutaaru
リットル (liter) → rittoru	ワット (watts) → watto	カロリー (calories) → karorii	ドル (dollars) → doru
セント (cent) → sento	パーセント (percent) → paasento	ミリバール (millibars) → miribaaru	ページ (pages) → peeji
mm (millimeters) → mirimeetoru	cm (centimeters) → senchimeetoru	km (kilometers) → kiromeetoru	mg (milligrams) → miriguramu
kg (kilograms) → kiroguramu	cc (cc) → siisii	m ² (square meters) → heihoumeetoru	

■ Other settings

- Alphabetic letters are read out in alphabet reading, but may be read otherwise in certain combinations.
- Depending on the content of a sentence or description (particularly where place names or proper nouns are used), the FOMA terminal may not read out the sentence or may read it out incorrectly.
- Mail is not read out in a natural voice. In some cases the sounds or stress may be difficult to understand.
- Items such as punctuation marks (periods and commas), line feeds and spaces serve as separators for passages read out, except where a period (.) or comma (,) is preceded and/or followed by numbers. In text that has no delimiting punctuation, reading is paused automatically. Depending on the content being read out, there may be a pause before the FOMA terminal starts speaking. The FOMA terminal may also be unable to correctly read out passages where kanji characters are used. To ensure that the content of your received mail is read out correctly, you should recommend the following guidelines to people with whom you frequently correspond:
 - Create your mail using katakana for nouns, particularly proper nouns such as place names and personal names.
 - Use punctuation marks when creating a mail.

Setting Emotion/Keyword for emotion-expressing mail

<Emotion/Keyword notice>

Default setting	Disp emotion: ON Disp keyword: OFF
-----------------	---------------------------------------

You can specify whether to display the emotion-expressing mail icons when receiving i-mode mails, chat mails or SMS. You can also set to use icons for notifying you of the received mails containing the keywords specified.

- “Emotion-expressing mail” → p.251

1 Mail settings screen (p.270) ▶ “Emotion/Keyword notice”

The “Emotion/Keyword” screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.274

■ To use “Disp emotion”

- ▶ Select the checkbox of “Disp emotion”

The checkbox is checked , and an emotion-expressing mail icon is displayed when you receive a mail.

■ To use “Disp keyword”

- ▶ Select the check box of the “Disp keyword” ▶ Enter one keyword or more
- The checkbox is checked , and when you receive a mail containing the strings entered in “keyword”, the corresponding emotion-expressing mail icon is displayed. Enter at least one keyword (available for entering up to 3 keywords consisting of 15 double-byte or 30 single-byte characters).

2 (Finish)

Function menu (Emotion/Keyword screen)

Delete keyword	Deletes the selected keyword.
Delete all keyword	Deletes all the keywords specified.

NOTE

- ◆ Changing or deleting the keywords also deletes the keyword icons displayed corresponding to the keyword on received mail list screen, etc.

Return the mail function to the default setting <Reset>

1 Mail settings screen (p.270) ▶ “Reset” ▶ Enter the secret number ▶ “YES”

<Compose chat/Send>

Composing and Sending Chat Mail

This allows you to exchange mail with several people just as if you enjoy talking.

- You cannot launch Chat mail in the following situations:
 - Receive option is set to “ON”
 - Inbox is full of mail
- The communication fee for sending a chat mail to several people is the same as sending a broadcast mail.
- You can set a ring tone to a chat mail. When you receive multiple mails that include a chat mail, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set for a chat mail.

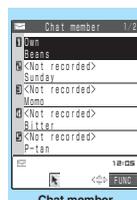
Selecting chat session members <Chat member>

Use this procedure to select the people you want to chat with.

1 (MENU) ▶ “Mail” ▶ “Chat mail” ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Chat member”

The “Chat member” screen appears.

For details of the subsequent procedure, see “Refer address” in the function menu list on the Chat member screen.



Function menu ▶ p.274

Function menu (Chat member screen)

You can register up to 6 chat session members (including yourself).

Edit	Enters and registers the e-mail addresses of chat session members other than yourself.
Refer address	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ No addresses are recorded ▶ Select any item ■ The address is recorded ▶ “YES” ▶ Select any item <p>Enter the chat member’s mail address from the phonebook or history.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Phonebook Enters a mail address from the phonebook. • Sent address Enters a mail address using the Sent address. • Received address Enters a mail address using the Received address.
Change member	“Changing chat session members” → p.275

Add chat group	Adds the current chat member to the chat group at a time.
Display setting	Displays the details of the chat session member settings.
Delete	Deletes one chat member highlighted.
Delete all	Deletes all the chat session members other than yourself.

NOTE

<Edit>

- ◆ If the added mail address is registered in a chat group, the member name is displayed. If the address is registered not in a chat group but in the phonebook, up to 4 double-byte or 8 single-byte characters of the name stored in the phonebook are displayed. If the address is not registered in the phonebook, up to 8 single-byte characters of the address are displayed.

<Refer address (Phonebook)>

- ◆ If you change a mail address of the registered chat member by looking-up the phonebook, the name of the member and an image file on the phonebook is used for the chat member screen. (If an image is not registered, a mail address is not changed.)

<Display setting>

- ◆ If you display your own details, your mail address is not shown.

<Delete><Delete all>

- ◆ You cannot delete yourself.

● Changing chat session members

1 Chat member screen (p.274) ▶

- ① (FUNC) ▶ “Change member”
- ▶ Select any item

Chat group	Select the member to be replaced from the group list or member list.
• Group list	▶ Select “Chat group”
• Member list	▶ Use to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish)
Mail member	▶ Select a mail member

NOTE

- ◆ If you receive chat mail from an ex-group member who has been deleted from the list of the chat group members, the chat mail does not appear on the chat screen. Even if you select “Quit” without deleting the chat mail, it is not displayed on the chat screen when starting the chat mail next time, but saved as an i-mode mail.

Composing and sending chat mail

Use this procedure to compose and send a new chat mail.

1 (MENU) ▶ “Mail” ▶ “Chat mail”

“Chat” screen appears.

2 ▶ Enter your message ▶ (Send)

You can send up to 250 double-byte characters from the chat screen.

When sending is completed, your message appears in the latest message area.

To send a message continuously, repeat step 2.

■ If message transmission fails

The latest message area turns gray and your message remains displayed in the text editing area, so you can simply resend the failed chat mail message.

■ To end a chat mail session

▶ The function menu of the Chat screen ▶ “Quit”



Function menu ▶ p.275

Latest message area

NOTE

- ◆ Attached and pasted files are not displayed.
- ◆ Sent and received chat mail is stored in the “Chat” folder. To resend chat mail, send it from the “Chat” folder.
- ◆ The subject used for chat mail you send is “チャットメール” (single-byte characters).
- ◆ Chat mail displayed in the chat screen is marked as read in the “Chat” folder.
- ◆ If you receive an i-mode mail while a chat mail is running, the reception results screen does not appear.
- ◆ Even in Secret mode or Secret data only mode, chat mails stored in Secret folders are not displayed on the chat screen.

Function menu (Chat screen)

Send	Sends chat mail.
Select receiver	▶ Use to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish)
Chat member	“Selecting chat session members” → p.274
Broadcast address	“Adding chat session members by referring to broadcast mail” → p.276
Refresh	Receives the chat mail held at the i-mode Center.
View first line	Displays the most recent message in the latest message area
View last line	Displays the oldest message in the latest message area.

Quit	Select whether deleting the chat mail and quit the chat mail
Delete read	Deletes the read and unprotected chat mail you have sent and received.

NOTE

<Quit>

◆ The unsent chat mails are deleted when quitting a chat mail.

◆ To quit a chat mail without deleting the chat mail, select “NO” after you select “Quit”.

◆ If you quit chat without deleting the chat mail, the sent and received chat mail is saved in the “Chat” folder in the Outbox list and Inbox list respectively.

◆ Chat mails failed to send are stored in the “Chat” folder under the Outbox list.

◆ If you quit the chat session without deleting the chat mails, those mails are displayed in reverse chronological order in the message record area on the chat screen at the next chat session.

◆ When closing the chat screen, you can delete all chat mails at once. In this case, chat mails are deleted from the chat folder as well. However, a protected chat mail is not deleted.

<Delete read>

◆ This option also deletes chat mail that could not be sent.

● Adding chat session members by referring to broadcast mail

● You can use this function only for the broadcast mail from the FOMA terminal supporting to the chat mail.

1 Chat screen (p.275) ▶ (FUNC) ▶

“Broadcast address” ▶ “YES” ▶ Use

to select the check box () ▶

(Finish)

■ When all the addresses are for chat session members

▶ “Broadcast address” ▶ “OK”

Receiving chat mail

<Chat mail rcv>

If a chat mail is not launched and you receive a chat mail, the “” icon appears on the standby screen. Selecting this icon launches a chat mail so that you can start it.

● The number of characters that allow display of the chat mail is up to 250 double-byte characters (500 single-byte characters).

● If a file is attached to a received chat mail, only the message body is displayed in the chat screen.

● If you select “” or else “Chat” from the function menu on the received mail detail screen, the chat session member or the destination is changed according to the following conditions:

● If the source mail address is set as a chat member, the members at the last chat session closed are set as is. However, if you launch a chat from the received mail detail screen, the non-source session members in the destination list are excluded from sending. If you select “”, a chat mail follows the “Select receiver” setting. If the source mail address is off the sending list, it is added to the destination.

● If the source mail address is not set as a chat member but is included in a chat group, all the members of the chat group in which the source member is included is set as a chat member. Note that the non-source members in the destination list are excluded from sending.

● If the source mail address is not set as a chat member and is not included even in a chat group, only the source mail address is set as a chat member.

● Set “3D display setting” to “ON” to select the desktop icon of a new mail, and an icon expressing the emotion that matches the message body and pictographs included in the subject are displayed as a 3D animation.

1 On the standby screen ▶ “”

■ When the sender is not included as a chat member

▶ “YES”

A message appears asking whether to delete the chat member and launch a chat mail. Select “YES” to change the current chat member setting and launch a chat mail.



Standby

■ To not change the current chat member setting

▶ “NO”

The current chat member setting is retained and the Mail menu screen appears.

2 Start the chat mail

Received chat mail is displayed in the latest statement area. If you have undeleted chat mail, it is displayed in the message record area in reverse chronological order.

NOTE

◆ The FOMA terminal recognizes a chat mail whether it meets the following criteria:

- The subject line includes “チャットメール” (chat mail) (all double-byte or all single-byte characters).
- A source or destination mail address is included in a chat member or a chat group.
- Not mail-connected i-chat
- Not a Deco-mail
- Not SMS

- ◆ The Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To and Web To functions are not available on the Chat screen. You can use the functions of Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To and Web To if they are displayed from Inbox.

Registering Members in Chat Group

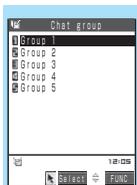
Registering the chat member in a chat group beforehand simplifies the operation of the chat member entry.

- You can add up to 5 members in one chat group. Including the owner is not necessary.
- You can add up to 5 chat groups.
- Multiple registration of one member to several chat groups is not allowed.
- When you register a member in a chat group, you can edit the member name or set an image.

1 (MENU) ▶ “Own data” ▶

“Chat group”

The “Chat group list” screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.277

2 Select a chat group

The “Group member list” screen appears.

3 Highlight “<Not stored>” and

(Edit) ▶ Enter a mail address ▶

Up to 50 single-byte characters can be entered for the mail address.

To add the mail addresses, repeat steps 2 and 3.

■ To enter a mail address by looking up the phonebook

▶ Select “<Not stored>” ▶ “Phonebook” ▶

Select a search method ▶ Select the mail address to be quoted

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.112



Function menu ▶ p.277

NOTE

- ◆ If an i-mode mail address is “[phone-number]@docomo.ne.jp”, only the phone number should be used for registration to the chat member. For an e-mail address, you can use either the part of the address preceding @ (at mark) or the entire address including “@docomo.ne.jp” for registration.

- ◆ Up to first eight characters of the registered mail address is used as a member name. If there exists the mail address registered as a chat member in the phonebook, the name in the phonebook is displayed in up to first four double-byte or eight single-byte characters. The registered image is also set if it is stored in the phonebook.

Function menu (Chat group list screen)

Active chat	Sets the member of the chat group as a chat member and launches a chat mail.
Edit group name	▶ Edit a group name Edits a group name. You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Reset group name	Resets the group name to the default.

Function menu (Group member list screen)

Edit	▶ Enter the mail address Edits the mail address. You can enter up to 50 single-byte characters.
Refer address	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ No addresses are recorded ▶ Select any item ■ The address is recorded ▶ “YES” ▶ Select any item Enter the mail address of the group member looking-up the phonebook or history.
• Phonebook	Enters mail addresses from a phonebook detail list screen. The registered name and image stored in the phonebook are registered.
• Sent address	Enters a mail address using the Sent address.
• Received address	Enters a mail address using the Received address.
Change member	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ If no member is registered ▶ “Mail member” ▶ Select a mail member ■ If a member is registered ▶ “Mail member” ▶ “YES” ▶ Select a mail member
Member setting	“Setting member details” → p.278
Delete this	Deletes the mail address of the highlighted group member.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all the members in the selected group.

● Setting member details

- 1 “Group member list” (p.277) ▶
 ⓘ (FUNC) ▶ “Member setting” ▶
 ⓘ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item

Edit member name	▶ Enter the member name Edits a member name. You can enter up to four double-byte or eight single-byte characters.
Set image	Selects the image shown for each member in the chat screen. If you have created folders, they appear next to the “Pre-installed” item.
• Inbox	Selects an image stored in the Inbox.
• Camera	Selects a still image shot using your FOMA terminal.
• Pre-installed	Selects an image pre-installed on the FOMA terminal. Choose from “Beans”, “Sunday”, “Momo”, “Bitter”, “P-tan” and “Tong·Tong”.
Set voice (default: Female 1)	Selects a voice to be used for reading chat mail in the chat screen, from “Female 1 or 2”, “Male 1 or 2” or “Robot”.

NOTE

<Edit member name>

- ◆ If you leave the member name blank, up to first 8 characters of the mail address are used as a member name.

<Set image>

- ◆ You cannot change the background color.

Specifying the chat mail settings

- 1 Mail setting screen (p.270) ▶ “Chat”

The “Chat setting” screen appears.

- 2 Select any item



Sound setting	Sets the tone sounded in the chat screen when new chat mail is received or chat mail is sent. If you have created folders, they appear next to the “Pre-installed” item.
• Inbox	Selects a melody downloaded from an i-mode site or website.
• Pre-installed	Select the chat sound from “Alarm 1” to “Alarm 3”.
• Voice announce	Selects the notification tone from the recorded melody or ring tone in “Voice announce”.
• OFF	No notification tone sounds.
Chat image (default: ON)	Sets whether to display an image in the latest statement area.

Read out chat (default: OFF)	Sets whether to read out new chat mail on the chat screen.
User setting	“Setting user details” → p.278

NOTE

<Sound setting>

- ◆ The notification sound does not emit when you receive a chat mail from the member not registered as a chat member.

● Setting user details

- 1 Chat setting screen (p.278) ▶ “User setting” ▶ Select any item

Name	▶ Enter a user name Enters a user name. You can enter up to four double-byte or eight single-byte characters.
Image	Selects the owner image to be displayed on the chat screen. If you have created folders, they appear next to the “Pre-installed” item.
• Inbox	Selects an image stored in the Inbox.
• Camera	Selects a still image shot using your FOMA terminal.
• Pre-installed	Selects an image pre-installed in the FOMA terminal. Choose from “Beans”, “Sunday”, “Momo”, “Bitter”, “P-tan” and “Tong·Tong”.
Voice (default: Female 1)	Selects a voice to be used for reading chat mail in the chat screen from “Female 1 or 2”, “Male 1 or 2” or “Robot”.

NOTE

<Name>

- ◆ If you leave the user name blank or enter only spaces, “Own” is used.

<Image>

- ◆ You cannot change the background color.

<Compose SMS/Send>

Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)

- This service allows you to exchange the messages with subscribers of the overseas carriers other than DoCoMo. For information on the supported country and overseas carriers, refer to the DoCoMo website.

1 [MENU] ▶ “Mail” ▶

“Compose SMS”

The “New SMS” screen appears.

2 [To] ▶ Select the address (or the destination phone number) entry method

Only one SMS address can be entered.



Function menu ▶ p.279

Phonebook	Enters the phone number by searching the phonebook.
Sent address ^{*1}	Enters the phone number from the Sent address list.
Received address ^{*2}	Enters the phone number from the received address list.
Enter address	Enters the phone number directly.

*1 : “Sent address” can be displayed by pressing [OK] on the “New SMS” screen as well.

*2 : “Received address” can be displayed by pressing [Back] on the “New SMS” screen as well.

■ For the destination using an overseas carrier other than DoCoMo

▶ Enter + (press [0] (for 1 second or longer)) - the country code - the destination mobile phone number

If the mobile phone number begins with a zero (0), omit the zero.

You can also send SMS by entering in order of “010” - “Country code” - “the destination mobile phone number” (To reply to SMS received from overseas, enter “010” to send overseas).

■ To change the entered address

▶ Select the destination address ▶ Select the destination address entry method

If a message appears asking whether to overwrite existing data, select “YES”.

In the following situations, SMS cannot be sent to the entered phone number:

- The destination address includes the characters other than numbers, “X” or “#”.
- There includes “+” on the destination address excluding the first digit.
- There includes a space on the destination address

3 [Message/SMS] ▶

The “Message/SMS” screen appears.

4 Enter the message body

The number and type of characters that can be entered in the edit message screen follow the “Message/SMS” setting (p.280). If “Japanese” is selected, you can enter up to 70 characters of all the double bytes or single bytes. If “English” is selected, you can enter up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.

Space is also counted as a character. You can use the function menu of the “Text entry (edit)” screen (p.438) while entering a message.



5 [Send] (Send)

The animation screen showing the mail in transit is displayed and SMS is sent. Select “OK” to return to the Mail menu screen.

To edit the sent or unsent SMS → p.268

● SMS (Short Message) reports <Disp. SMS report>

If “ON” is selected in “SMS report req.” (p.279), you receive an SMS report after you send an SMS. SMS reports are saved in the Inbox along with the sent SMS, enabling you to check whether the message successfully reached the destination.

To view an SMS with an SMS report ([SMS]), select “Disp. SMS report” from the function menu.

You can also view an SMS report by selecting the SMS report in the received mail list screen. SMS reports are indicated by “[SMS] SMS report” in the subject line.

NOTE

- ◆ If Outbox in the FOMA terminal contains over the maximum storage messages (the total of SMS and i-mode mail), the sent mail is automatically deleted in chronological order. However, the FOMA terminal does not delete the i-mode mail and SMS in the Secret folder as well as the sent mail in protection.
- ◆ A message may not be properly displayed in the destination terminal depending on the signal quality.
- ◆ Even though “Caller ID Notification” is set to “OFF”, your caller ID is provided to the destination during SMS transmission.
- ◆ If additional number of the multi number is set to the default dial number, SMS cannot be sent. Set the default dial number to Basic Number.
- ◆ You can insert a line feed while editing the message text. The line feed symbol is counted as two characters in “Japanese” and as one character in “English”.
- ◆ Some characters may not properly be displayed at the receiving side depending on the font type to be sent or terminal at the destination.

Function menu (New SMS screen)

Send	Sends SMS
Preview	Allows you to check the destination address and contents of SMS before sending a mail.
Save	Saves SMS in editing into Draft. SMS can be saved up to 20 messages together with the i-mode mail. You can send SMS in Draft later.
SMS report req. (default: OFF)	Sets whether to request an SMS report after sending an SMS. Select “ON” or “OFF”.
SMS valid per. (default: 3 days)	Sets the storage period at the SMS Center in the case where SMS is not carried to the destination because of the out-of-service and such. “None” to “3 days” can be selected.

SMS input char. (default: Japanese)	Sets the input method of the SMS message. Up to 70 characters of all the double bytes and single bytes can be entered in Japanese. Up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered in English.
Erase message	Deletes only the message body.
Delete	Deletes SMS in editing.

NOTE

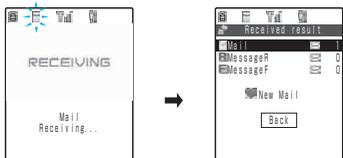
- ◆ If you set “SMS input char.,” “SMS report req.” or “SMS valid per.” in the Mail settings screen, the setting is retained even after the FOMA terminal is turned off. However, if you set the “SMS input char.,” “SMS report req.” or “SMS valid per.” using the function menu, only one SMS which is currently setting is available.
- ◆ If “None” is set in “SMS valid per.,” the message is deleted from the SMS Center after resending in a given period of time.

<Receive SMS>
When You Receive SMS (Short Message)

When the FOMA terminal is in a service area, SMS is automatically sent to the FOMA terminal from the SMS Center

- The received SMS can be stored in the FOMA terminal up to 1,000 messages together with i-mode mail.

1 When you receive SMS, the “” (white) icon flashes and “Mail Receiving...” is displayed



After receiving is completed, the number of messages count is displayed about the received SMS, i-mode mail, MessageR and MessageF on the reception results screen.

When “Mail” is selected, the received mail list screen appears.

No operation for about 15 seconds brings back to the previous screen. The time for displaying the reception result screen depends on the “Mail/Msg. ring time” setting.

The ring tone volume conforms to the setting of “Mail” under “Ring volume”.

NOTE

- ◆ If the FOMA terminal contains 1,000 received messages (the total of i-mode and SMS) or exceeds the storage capacity even less than 1,000 messages, messages are automatically deleted from the trash box and Inbox in chronological order on receiving. Note that the following mails are not deleted: unread mails, received mails in protection or i-mode mail and SMS in the Secret folders. You should protect any necessary received mail. → pp.264, 267
- ◆ When the “” (red) icon is displayed, the FOMA terminal cannot receive any further i-mode mail. To receive a new message, delete an unnecessary i-mode mail and SMS, or read an unread i-mode mail and SMS until those icons no longer appear. A read message is overwritten in chronological order on receiving.
- ◆ When you receive multiple mails (i-mode and SMS) at the same time, the FOMA terminal uses the ring tone and incoming call lamp pattern set to the last item of mail received.
- ◆ If you receive the short mail from the mova terminal, the source phone number is displayed. If the caller ID is not provided, the reason for no caller ID is displayed.
- ◆ If you receive SMS while playing an i-motion, the video and sound may be interrupted.

<Priority order for ring tone and incoming call lamp operations>

- ◆ When receiving SMS, setting priority for the ring tone and illumination is as follows:
 - ① “Discern connect” specified for each phone number → p.118
 - ② “Discern group” specified for each group → p.118
 - ③ “Select ring tone”/“Kisekai Tool setting” → pp.124, 142, “Illumination” → p.145

Viewing received SMS (Short Message)

- For received SMS, the beginning of the message is displayed as the subject in the received mail list screen.
- For received SMS reports, “SMS report” is displayed as the subject of the received mail list screen.
- For Voice Mail notices, “Noticecall voicemail” is displayed as the subject of the received mail list screen.
- Set “3D display setting” to “ON” to select the desktop icon of a new mail, and an icon expressing the emotion that matches the message body and pictographs included in the subject are displayed as a 3D animation.

1 On the standby screen  “”

Selecting the “” (white) icon displays the unread mail list. For the function menu on the unread mail list screen, see the function menu of the received mail list screen (p.264).



NOTE

- ◆ If a received SMS includes double-byte characters that are not listed in the kuten code table, those characters are shown as blanks (spaces).
- ◆ The source phone number of the displayed SMS is highlighted. Press  with the phone number highlighted and you can make a voice call, videophone call or a PushTalk call to a displayed phone number. (Phone To/AV Phone To function) If the source phone number is stored in the phonebook, the stored "Name" is highlighted. In that case, you can make a call in the same operation.

Replying to/forwarding received SMS (Short Message)

You can reply to the source SMS or forward SMS.

- You cannot enter a subject.
"Replying by composing a new message"→p.253

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot reply with quote to SMS.
- ◆ You cannot reply to SMS with User unset, Payphone and Unknown.
- ◆ You cannot reply to or forward an SMS report.
- ◆ You cannot reply to Voice Mail notices.
- ◆ If you reply to or forward SMS on the FOMA card (UIM), the  and  icons are not displayed on the received mail list screen or received mail detail screen and the  icon leaves as is.

<Check new SMS>

Checking for SMS (Short Message)

- SMS arriving at the SMS Center are automatically sent to your FOMA terminal, but are kept at the Center if the FOMA terminal is turned off, you are outside the service area, the FOMA terminal is in Self mode, or the memory on the FOMA terminal is full.

1 ▶ "Mail" ▶ "Check new SMS"

"SMS Checking..." is displayed while you check for new SMS. After completion of inquiry, a message appears indicating that the inquiry has done and press .

If there are any messages kept at the SMS Center, automatic receiving begins.

In some cases, automatic receiving may not begin immediately after the inquiry is sent.

NOTE

- ◆ Depending on the signal status, you may not check new message or interrupt your checking.
- ◆ You cannot receive i-mode mails, MessageR/MessageF using this function. To receive an i-mode mail or MessageR/MessageF, use "Check new messages".

<SMS settings>

Setting SMS (Short Message) Options

Setting the SMS (Short Message) Center

Default setting
DoCoMo

* No setting change is required usually.

You can set the option which SMS Center you use DoCoMo or other carriers.

<Example: To use SMS Center of other carriers>

- 1  ▶ "Settings" ▶ "Connection setting" ▶ "SMS center selection" ▶ Select any item

DoCoMo	Uses the DoCoMo SMS Center.
User setting	▶ Enter the address of the SMS Center ▶ "International" or "Unknown" Uses the SMS Center of other carriers.
Reset	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes the "User setting" data and sets to "DoCoMo".

NOTE

- ◆ If the entered SMS Center address includes "#" or "X", you cannot select "International".

<UIM operation>

Saving SMS (Short Message) to Your FOMA Card (UIM)

This function allows you to move or copy SMS stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) to your FOMA card (UIM). You can also use this function to move or copy SMS stored on your FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone).

- The FOMA card (UIM) contains up to 20 received and sent SMS.

Moving or copying SMS (Short Message) to the FOMA card (UIM)

<Example: To move SMS from Inbox to the FOMA card (UIM)>

- 1  ▶ “Mail” ▶ “Inbox” ▶ Select a folder ▶ Highlight SMS ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “UIM operation”
- Select any item

Move to UIM	Moves SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the ROMA card (UIM).
Copy to UIM	Copies SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the ROMA card (UIM).

NOTE

- ◆ Received or sent SMS that moved or copied to the FOMA card (UIM) is displayed in the Inbox or Outbox folder.
- ◆ If there appears an icon of “”, “” (white) or “” (red), you cannot move or copy SMS.
- ◆ You cannot protect SMS in the FOMA card (UIM). If you move or copy the protected SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the protection is removed from the SMS on the FOMA card (UIM).
- ◆ If you remove the battery pack, date and time for sent SMS stored on the FOMA card (UIM) are erased and they appear at the end of the list. However, for the sent SMS stored with the SMS report request, date and time are not deleted.

Moving or copying SMS (Short Message) on the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone)

<Example: To move SMS from the FOMA card (UIM) to Inbox>

- 1  ▶ “Mail” ▶ “Inbox” ▶ Select a folder ▶ Highlight SMS ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “UIM operation” ▶ Select any item

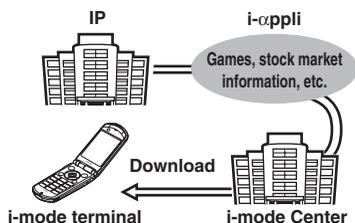
Move from UIM	Moves SMS stored in the FOMA card (UIM) to a FOMA terminal (Phone).
Copy from UIM	Copies SMS stored in the FOMA card (UIM) to a FOMA terminal (Phone).

i-appli

What is an i-appli?	284
Downloading an i-appli from a Site	285
Launching an i-appli	287
Launching an i-appli Automatically	292
Launching an i-appli from a Site or Mail	i-appli To function 293
Setting the i-appli Standby Screen	Set i-appli stand-by 294
Organizing an i-appli	295

What is an i-αppli?

By downloading i-αppli programs from sites, you can make it more useful and enjoyable to use your i-mode-compatible FOMA terminal (i-mode terminal). For example, you can download a range of games to an i-mode terminal and play them or download an i-αppli that provides stock market information and allows you to automatically check stock prices at set intervals. There is also a mapping i-αppli that allows you to download only the information you need so that scrolling is quick and smooth. There are other i-αppli programs of which you can store data from the i-αppli directly into the phonebook or schedule, or which is linked to Data box when saving or downloading images.



- To download an i-αppli → p.285
- To launch an i-αppli → p.287
- To launch an i-αppli automatically → p.292

NOTE

- ◆ Some software applications use the i-mode terminal mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers.
- ◆ Some software applications use a FOMA terminal to communicate when running, but can also be set to run without communicating.

Using stored data

Some i-αppli programs can browse, store or use data (such as phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedule entries, images and icon information) stored on your i-mode terminal. The stored data can be used for:

- Adding phonebook entries
- Using icon information
- Adding bookmarks
- Adding schedule events
- Retrieving images from Data box
- Saving images into Data box
- Saving i-motion programs
- Browsing i-motion programs
- Changing the alarm clock setting
- Newly adding, selecting or acquiring ToruCa
- Searching ToruCa
- Adding folders to My picture

● What is an i-αppli DX?

i-αppli DX programs link up with the information on your i-mode terminal (such as mails, the Dialed/Received calls record and phonebook data) to make i-αppli programs even more enjoyable and easier to use. This includes allowing you to compose mails on your favorite cartoon character screen, having a cartoon character tell you from who a call or message has come, and linking up with mail functions to provide real-time updates on the progress of games or essential information such as share prices.

Using stored data

Some i-αppli DX programs can browse, store and use not only the stored data used by ordinary i-αppli programs (phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedule entries, images and icon information), but also data such as mails, Dialed calls record, Received calls record and ring tones. The stored data can be used for:

- Adding phonebook entries
- Browsing phonebook entries
- Using icon information
- Adding bookmarks
- Adding schedule events
- Using the Mail menu
- Using the Compose message screen
- Browsing the latest Dialed calls record
- Browsing the latest Received calls record
- Browsing the latest unread mail
- Saving melodies
- Changing ring tones (Phone, Videophone, Mail, MessageR, MessageF and Chat mail)
- Retrieving images from Data box
- Saving images into Data box
- Saving Chara-den
- Browsing Chara-den
- Changing screen settings (standby screen, dialing/receiving phone call, receiving videophone call, receiving/sending mail, receiving MessageR/MessageF and menu icon)
- Changing the videophone substitute image setting
- Changing the alarm clock setting
- Newly adding, selecting or acquiring ToruCa
- Searching ToruCa
- Saving i-motion programs
- Browsing i-motion programs
- Browsing Inbox/Outbox
- Adding folders to My picture
- Selecting or acquiring location history

NOTE

- ◆ Regardless of software communication settings, an i-αppli DX may automatically establish a connection to check the validity of software. The frequency and timing of connections differs depending on the software.

● What is mail-connected i-αpli?

Mail-connected i-αpli is a type of i-αpli DX that uses i-mode mails to exchange information and provide essential information such as share prices and real time updates on the progress of games, etc., allowing you to make your FOMA terminal even easier and more fun to use.

i-αpli mails used for mail-connected i-αpli programs may not be displayed correctly.

● What is Osaifu-Keitai i-αpli?

Osaifu-Keitai i-αpli that reads and writes data in an IC card enables you to use useful functions such as downloading electronic money or ticket, etc. and browsing the balance or records in your mobile phone.

- “What is Osaifu-Keitai?” → p.298

NOTE

◆ Using Osaifu-Keitai i-αpli sends the information stored in your IC card to an information service provider (IP) of the subscribing service. (Contract with DoCoMo is not forwarded.)

● What is GPS i-αpli?

GPS i-αpli using the GPS function enables you to use your FOMA terminal more conveniently. For example, you can search for the information of your present location easily, or have the FOMA terminal to show the current location on a map and guide you to the destination.

NOTE

◆ If you use a GPS i-αpli, your location information is sent to the information provider of the i-αpli.

◆ To use the GPS function with a GPS i-αpli, set Location usage setting for the i-αpli to “Yes”.

● Other useful features

■ i-αpli standby screen

An i-αpli can be set to the standby screen, and you can receive a message or make a call on the screen. The standby screen can be more useful; e.g. news or weather information can be displayed, or your preferred character notifies you of an incoming message or alarm. → p.294

- This function is available for software programs that support i-αpli standby screens.

■ i-αpli auto start

This feature allows you to automatically launch an i-αpli by specifying a time, date or day of the week. Some i-αpli programs can be launched automatically at the intervals specified in the programs beforehand. → p.292

■ Using the camera

Some i-αpli programs allow you to take pictures using the camera built in an i-mode terminal. → p.178

- This function is available for software programs that support the camera function.

■ Infrared data exchange

This feature allows an i-αpli running on a FOMA terminal to communicate with other devices equipped with the Infrared data exchange function. This further expands the use of your FOMA terminal by allowing link-ups with other infrared-capable devices.

→ p.365

- This function is available for software programs that support the Infrared data exchange function.
- A FOMA terminal may be unable to communicate with some devices even if they are equipped with the Infrared data exchange function.

■ Infrared remote control

This allows i-αpli programs to control devices such as household appliances that support infrared remote control. → p.371

For example, the pre-installed “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G-GUIDE® EPG Remote Control) enables you to use your terminal as an AV remote control device that works with a TV time table. → p.292

- This function is available for software programs that support the infrared remote control function. The programs must be compatible with the controlled devices.

Downloading an i-αpli from a Site

You can download an i-αpli from an i-mode site and run it on your FOMA terminal.

- A FOMA terminal can hold up to 200 downloaded programs (up to 5 mail-connected i-αpli programs). Depending on the size of programs, the actual number of downloadable i-αpli programs varies between 15 and 200. The number includes partly downloaded i-αpli programs.
- When you download a mail-connected i-αpli, folders for the mail-connected i-αpli are automatically created in the Inbox and Outbox folder lists. The folder names are assigned by the downloaded mail-connected i-αpli and cannot be changed. If Original lock is set for the i-αpli, the folder names are “i-αpli”.
- If there are already 5 folders for mail-connected i-αpli, delete one or more of the existing folders for mail-connected i-αpli to create available space for new programs.
- You cannot download a mail-connected i-αpli that will use the same Inbox and Outbox folders as those for an i-αpli that has already been stored in your FOMA terminal.
- You cannot download mail-connected i-αpli programs while Mail security is set. Cancel Mail security before download.

- Mails sent or received using a mail-connected i-αpli are automatically sorted into the folders created when that mail-connected i-αpli was downloaded. You can also sort received mails manually.
- If you delete a mail-connected i-αpli without deleting its folders and then download the i-αpli again, the undeleted folders can be reused. Alternatively, you can delete the undeleted folders and create new folders. If you neither use the undeleted folders nor create new folders, you cannot download the mail-connected i-αpli.

1 Select a program

When the message “Completed” appears after downloading, press . Programs that are immediately launched from sites (p.293) start up without the completion message.

■ To interrupt download while data are being received

▶During download▶ or

You can restart downloading if a message asking whether to do it appears.

Selecting “NO” displays a message that allows you to save the partly downloaded data.

■ If a software setting screen appears

▶Set the program▶ “YES”

Select “NO” to not launch the i-αpli program.

Software settings → p.287

2 “YES”

When you launch an i-αpli program, appears at the bottom of the screen. If an i-αpli DX program is launched, appears.

■ To not launch a program

▶“NO”

● Downloading remains of a partly downloaded i-αpli

If you select a partly downloaded i-αpli () on the Software list screen (p.287) or IC card content screen (p.299), a message asking whether to download the remaining data appears.

Downloading and saving all the data deletes the partly saved data.

- If remaining data are invalid, you cannot download the data. Attempting to download such data deletes the partly saved data.

● Downloading remains of an i-αpli that only has the management information

If you used “iC transfer service” (p.298) and have not downloaded the corresponding Osaifu-Keitai i-αpli, you cannot use data in the IC card. If this is the case, an i-αpli appears as the one that only has the management information () on the “Software list” screen (p.287) or “IC card content” screen (p.299).

- Selecting an i-αpli that only has the management information shows a message asking whether to download the rest of the i-αpli data. Select “YES”

to download the rest of the data. (For some i-αpli programs, the download site will open.)

NOTE

- ◆ You may not be able to download an i-αpli depending on the site or the size of the i-αpli.
- ◆ Some i-αpli programs may automatically perform communication after downloaded. You can set your terminal not to automatically communicate by using “Network set” in “Software setting”.
- ◆ If you download an i-αpli or i-αpli DX that uses the stored information or mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers, a message notifying that the i-αpli will use the stored information or mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers appears. When this happens, your mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers will be sent to the information service provider (IP) via the Internet and may be disclosed to a third party as a result.
- ◆ When you are downloading a software program or software information from an SSL site, “ ” appears. → p.211
- ◆ When you download an i-αpli that uses the FOMA terminal’s communication function or that can be set as a standby screen, the software setting screen appears. Perform settings according to the downloaded software and select whether to launch the i-αpli. (Press to cancel the settings.)
- ◆ Depending on the data storage capacity of the IC card, you may not be able to download a Osaifu-Keitai i-αpli even when there is space available in the program storage area. Follow the instructions on the confirmation screen to delete the displayed programs and then try downloading the Osaifu-Keitai i-αpli again. Depending on the i-αpli to be downloaded, some programs may not be deleted. Some programs may require you to launch the program to delete data on the IC card before deleting the program itself.
- ◆ If you try to download the same program as the one already taken using a different FOMA card (UIM), a message confirming that you will overwrite the program appears. Select “YES” to start download. After the download is completed, the program already downloaded is deleted.
- ◆ “i-αpli mail” refers to mails sent by mail-connected i-αpli programs or those sent to you so that they will be used in mail-connected i-αpli programs. i-αpli mails contain i-αpli data that enable the mails to be automatically saved in the i-αpli mail folder.

Viewing i-αpli information during

downloading <Display software info>

Default setting
Not display

This setting allows you to specify whether to show the program information when downloading a program.

- 1 ▶ “Settings” ▶ “i-αpli settings”
▶ “Disp. Software info”

Select “Display” or “Not display”.

Launching an i-αppli

Launching an i-αppli

- 1 (MENU) ► “i-αppli” ► “Software list”

The “Software list” screen appears.

You can also open the “Software list” screen by pressing (M) (F) for 1 second or longer on the standby screen.



Function menu ► p.287

- 2 Select an i-αppli to launch

Quitting an i-αppli

- 1 (CLR) (1 second or longer) ► “YES”

Selecting (M) ► “YES” also ends an i-αppli.

■ For software developers

When a created i-αppli program does not run correctly, the trace information can be accessed for reference.

Select in order of (MENU) ► “i-αppli” ► “i-αppli action info” ► “Trace info”. The trace information appears in the order in which actions occurred. You can copy trace information by selecting “Copy info” from the function menu. To delete trace information, select “Delete info” from the function menu.

NOTE

- ◆ You can set an i-αppli to be launched automatically. → p.292
- ◆ You can enjoy rich-sound melodies with 3D sound compatible i-αppli programs. → p.126
- ◆ If you receive a voice, videophone or PushTalk call while a program is starting up, the program operation is paused. The program screen reappears when the call ends. If you receive a call during i-αppli communication, the FOMA terminal works according to the “V-phone while packet” setting. → p.89
- ◆ Some i-αppli programs allow you to use the Phone To (AV Phone To) or Web To function from the program. However, you cannot use the functions from the i-αppli standby screen (p.294) (except when running an i-αppli).
- ◆ i-αppli mails used for mail-connected i-αppli programs may not be displayed correctly.
- ◆ Do not remove the battery pack while running a program. Doing so may delete the data or information that has been entered.
- ◆ Some programs allow you to save the data you will use for the program (i-αppli data (microSD)) in the microSD memory card.
- ◆ If you attempt to copy data to the microSD memory card, etc. while using an i-αppli, a message notifying that the operation cannot be performed may appear.

◆ Images used in i-αppli programs* or data entered by a user may be automatically sent to the server via the Internet.

* : Images used in i-αppli programs mean those shot by the camera activated by a camera-linked i-αppli, those retrieved using an i-αppli Infrared data exchange function, those that an i-αppli downloaded from an i-mode site or website or those that an i-αppli retrieved from Data box.

- ◆ If the memory used to store trace information is full, the oldest entry is overwritten.
- ◆ Some i-αppli programs may not make sounds.
- ◆ If the camera was activated by an i-αppli, the shot images are saved and used as part of the i-αppli.
- ◆ If the camera is activated by an i-αppli, settings such as the image size, image quality and frame may be specified by the i-αppli.
- ◆ Some i-αppli programs enable you to activate the Bar code reader to scan JAN codes or QR codes. The scanned data are used by the i-αppli.
- ◆ Depending on the program, the information service provider (IP) may access the program stored on your FOMA terminal and directly disable use of the program. When this happens, you can no longer launch, upgrade or set the program as a standby screen. You can only delete the program or view the program information. To use the program again, you have to contact the IP and have them send an instruction to re-enable the program.
- ◆ Depending on the program, the IP may send data to the program stored on your FOMA terminal.
- ◆ When an IP sends disable or re-enable instructions or other data to a program stored on your FOMA terminal in this way, the FOMA terminal starts communication and the “(M)” icon flashes. No communication charges apply when this happens.

Function menu (Software list screen)

Set i-αppli To	“Enabling a program to launch with i-αppli To” → p.293
Auto start time	“Setting the launch date/time” → p.292
Software setting	Specifies the software settings.
• Stand-by display	“Setting the i-αppli Standby Screen” → p.294
• Network set	Sets whether to allow the network connection to be performed when launching an i-αppli. Setting to “Confirm every session” enables you to select online or offline communication every time you launch an i-αppli. ► (M) (Finish)
• Stand-by net	Sets whether to allow the network connection on the i-αppli set for the standby screen. ► (M) (Finish)
• Icon info	Specifies whether to permit the use of icon information of unread mails or messages when launching an i-αppli. ► (M) (Finish)

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Change mld/img. 	<p>Sets whether to allow an i-appli DX to change ring tones for calls, mails and messages, to change images such as those on the standby screen or used when mails are sent or received, or to change menu icons when launching the i-appli DX. When "ON" is set, the ring tones, images or menu icons will be automatically changed. When "Check every change" is set, you can specify whether to change those items every time the i-appli tries to change them.</p> <p>▶ (Finish)</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • See P.book/hist. 	<p>Sets whether to allow an i-appli DX to look up the phonebook, the latest Dialed and Received calls records and the latest unread mail when the i-appli DX is launched. When "ON" is set, the phonebook and records will be automatically looked up.</p> <p>▶ (Finish)</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Location usage 	<p>Sets whether to permit the acquisition of location information when an i-appli DX is launched. When "Yes" is set, the location information will be automatically acquired.</p> <p>▶ (Finish)</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Power saver 	<p>Sets whether to pause the i-appli operation when the FOMA terminal is folded.</p> <p>▶ (Finish)</p>
Software info	"Checking i-appli information" → p.288
Upgrade	"Upgrading an i-appli" → p.295
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.147
Memory info	Shows the i-appli memory status.
Delete	"Deleting an i-appli" → p.295

NOTE

<Software setting (Network set)>

◆ If specifying "OFF", note that you may not be able to receive timely information.

<Software setting (Icon info)>

◆ If you set this function to "ON" for a program set as the i-appli standby screen, as presence of unread mails and messages, appearance of the icons for in/out of service area and status of the battery level and Manner mode may be sent to the information service provider (IP) via the Internet in the same way as your mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers, there is a possibility that the information may be disclosed to a third party.

◆ If this function is set to "OFF", some programs that require icon information may not work.

<Software setting (Power saver)>

◆ If this function is set to "ON", note that you may not be able to receive timely information since the i-appli operation is paused when the FOMA terminal is folded.

Adjusting volume for i-appli programs <i-appli vol.>

You can adjust volume for i-appli programs.

- 1 MENU ▶ "Settings" ▶ "i-appli settings" ▶ "i-appli vol."

The "i-appli vol. setting" screen appears.

2 Set volume

NOTE

- ◆ You can set the i-appli volume to "Silent" or "Level 1 to 6" (default: Level 4).
- ◆ Some programs enable you to set volume separately. However, if "i-appli vol." is set to "Silent", they do not sound regardless of the volume set for the program.
- ◆ The volume level for i-appli programs while in Manner mode is specified according to the Manner mode settings. When Manner mode is set to Original, the i-appli volume is specified by "i-appli vol." under the Manner mode setting.

Checking i-appli information

- 1 Software list screen (p.287) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Software info" ▶ Check the information



NOTE

- ◆ Program names shown by this function cannot be changed.
- ◆ On the Software list screen, program types and settings can be checked by the following icons:

- : i-appli DX → p.284
- : Mail-connected i-appli → p.285
- : "Auto start time" has been set. → p.292
- : "Set i-appli stand-by" has been set.
- : "Auto start time" and "Set i-appli stand-by" have been set.
- : "i-appli To setting" can be set.
- : "Set i-appli stand-by" can be set.
- : "i-appli To setting" and "Set i-appli stand-by" can be set.
- : Downloaded from an SSL page
- : Osai-fu-Keitai i-appli → p.298
- : The data can be saved to the microSD memory card. → p.296
- : Partly downloaded i-appli
- : i-appli that has only the management information → p.286
- : GPS i-appli → p.285

Checking the security error history

When an i-appli or i-appli DX attempts to run a function that is not permitted, a security error occurs and the details of the error are recorded in the security error history.

① (MENU) ▶ “i-appli” ▶
 “i-appli action info” ▶
 “Security error history”
 The “Security error history” screen appears.



Security error history
 Function menu ▶ p.289

Function menu (Security error history screen)

Copy info	Copies the security error details.
Delete info	Deletes the security error information.

Launching another program from an active program

You can launch another program from a currently active program. Downloading a program that launches the specified program enables you to launch the program without having to return to the Software list screen.

- Specify a program to launch if it is not specified.
- If the specified program is not stored on your FOMA terminal, you must download the program beforehand.

① Select an item for selecting a program ▶ “YES”

NOTE

- ◆ If an item to launch a program includes the URL of the program, the active program ends automatically and the linked program starts. (If the linked program will use location information, a message asking whether to launch the program appears.)

Pre-installed programs

Your FOMA terminal comes with 9 pre-installed programs (“桃太郎電鉄JAPAN豪華版” (Momotaro Dentetsu JAPAN Goukaban), “ドラゴンクエスト不思議のダンジョンMOBILE” (Dragon Quest: Fushigi no Dungeon MOBILE), “ゼンリン 地図 + ナビN” (ZENRIN Maps + Navi N), “デコメを作ろう” (Decorate PI wo Tsukurou), “デコメ絵文字ポケット” (Decorate PI Pocket), “カメラでケンサク! ERサーチ” (Camera de kensaku! ER search), “ケータイクレジット「iD (アイディ)」” (iD credit payment service), “「DCMX」クレジットアプリ” (“DCMX” credit application) and “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G-GUIDE® EPG Remote Control)).

- Looking at the display for extended periods of time may cause eye strain.
- If you want to restore a pre-installed i-appli program that was deleted, download it from “みんなNらんど” in “ケータイ電話メーカー”. Accessing “みんなNらんど” → p.209
 If the FOMA card (UIM) you are using was not used for download, the FOMA card operational restriction function will apply. → p.40
- The “Software setting” items for pre-installed programs are set as follows at the time of purchase:



	桃太郎電鉄 JAPAN 豪華版 (Momotaro Dentetsu JAPAN Goukaban)	ドラゴンクエスト不思議のダンジョンMOBILE (Dragon Quest: Fushigi no Dungeon MOBILE)	ゼンリン 地図 + ナビN (ZENRIN Maps + Navi N)	デコメを作ろう (Decorate PI wo Tsukurou)	デコメ絵文字ポケット (Decorate PI Pocket)
Stand-by display	—	—	—	—	—
Network set	ON	ON	ON	—	ON
Stand-by net	—	—	—	—	—
Icon info	—	—	—	—	—
Change mld./img.	×	×	—	×	×
See Pbook/hist	×	×	ON	×	×
Location usage	×	×	ON	×	×
Power saver	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF

	カメラでケンサク! ERサーチ (Camera de kensaku! ER search)	ケータイクレジット「iD (アイディ)」 (iD credit payment service)	「DCMX」クレジットアプリ (“DCMX” credit application)	Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE® EPG Remote Control)
Stand-by display	—	—	—	—
Network set	ON	ON	ON	ON
Stand-by net	—	—	—	—
Icon info	—	—	—	—
Change mld./img.	×	—	—	—
See Pbook/hist	×	—	—	—
Location usage	×	—	—	—
Power saver	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF

● 桃太郎電鉄JAPAN豪華版 (Momotaro Dentetsu JAPAN Goukaban)

Enjoy the i-appli version of a popular game, 桃太郎電鉄 (Momotaro Dentetsu) series in which you buy properties all over Japan, aiming to become a millionaire.

① Software list screen (p.287) ▶ “桃鉄 JAPAN 豪華版” (Momotetsu JAPAN Goukaban)

■ To exit the game

▶ (⊗) (やめる (Exit)) ▶ “はい” (Yes) ▶ (●)

■ To mute BGM

▶ (🔇) (OFF)



2 ●▶“はじめから” (from the beginning)

The game starts.

- To start from where you stopped last time

▶“つづき” (from the last stop)

● Playing ドラゴンクエスト不思議のダンジョンMOBILE (Dragon Quest: Fushigi no Dungeon MOBILE)

Here is the latest volume of the “不思議のダンジョン” series that feature popular characters and monsters of Dragon Quest.

Collect various items and make your way through dungeons varying each time you play in the roll playing game.

1 Software list screen (p.287)▶“ドラクエダンジョン” (Dra-que Dungeon)

- To exit the game

▶☺ (終了(Exit))▶“はい” (Yes)

- To adjust the volume or message speed

▶Ⓜ (設定(Set))▶
Change the settings



2 “START”

The game starts.

- To display how to play in detail

▶On the game screen▶☺ (メニュー(Menu))▶“さくせん” (Strategy)▶“冒険の心得” (Adventure tips)

- To save and exit the game

▶On the game screen▶☺ (メニュー(Menu))▶“中断” (Quit)

The next time you select “START” on the title screen, the saved data is reloaded.

■ ドラゴンクエスト不思議のダンジョンMOBILE (Dragon Quest: Fushigi no Dungeon MOBILE) i-mode menu site version

Reload the saved data of “ドラゴンクエスト不思議のダンジョンMOBILE” (Dragon Quest: Fushigi no Dungeon MOBILE) preinstalled on your FOMA terminal onto the i-mode menu site version, and continue to enjoy the results of your play for the preinstalled version.

For more details, visit the “ドラゴンクエスト不思議のダンジョンMOBILE” (Dragon Quest: Fushigi no Dungeon MOBILE) i-mode menu site or special site.

(Information and packet communication charges will apply to download the i-mode menu site version.)

● Using ゼンリン地図+ナビN (ZENRIN Maps + Navi N)

For more information about “ゼンリン地図+ナビN” (ZENRIN Maps + Navi N), see p.308.

● デコメを作ろう (Decorate PI wo Tsukurou)

You can easily create Decorate PI that can be used as pictographs on i-mode mails starting from the 903i series. This program also enables you to create your original signature and save it as an image.

1 Software list screen (p.287)▶“デコメを作ろう” (Decorate PI wo Tsukurou)

- To exit the game

▶☺ (終了(Exit))



2 “デコメ絵文字” (Decorate PI)

Create a Decorate PI.

- To create an original signature

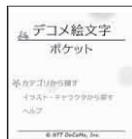
▶“ネームプレート” (Name plate)

- To display how to use in detail

▶“ヘルプ!” (Help!)

● デコメ絵文字ポケット (Decorate PI Pocket)

“デコメ絵文字ポケット” (Decorate PI Pocket) is an i-appli that enables you to easily search for and save Decorate PI that can be used as pictographs on i-mode mails starting from the 903i series.



You can search for Decorate PI offered by information service providers from themes such as “Category” and “Illustrations and characters”, and you can easily save them in your FOMA terminal.

Multiple Decorate PI can be saved at a time. You can also see the introduction of the site that provides your favorite Decorate PI and access the site.

- The monthly information charge of “デコメ絵文字ポケット” (Decorate PI Pocket) is free. For viewing a site of an IP (information service provider), the i-mode information charge may apply separately.
- A packet communication charge will be made for use.
- For more details, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

● Using カメラでケンサク！ ERサーチ (Camera de kensaku! ER search)

This program enables you to easily acquire information about shopping, campaigns, etc. by shooting items such as images of magazines, TV commercials, CD sleeves or logos and sending them.

1 Software list screen (p.287)▶ “カメラでケンサク！ ERサーチ” (Camera de kensaku! ER search)

■ To display how to use in detail

▶ (HELP)



2 Select “検索START!” (Start search)▶ Select a genre▶ “カメラ起動” (Activate camera)

3 Shoot an object▶ “OK”

The characteristics of the shot image* are sent, and the search result screen of the related information appears. If there are some candidates, the candidate list screen appears.

* : The characteristics stated above refer to the numerical values of the image characteristics.

4 Select an item on the search result screen▶ “YES”

A website appears.

● Using ケータイクレジット [iD (アイディ)] (iD credit payment service)

ケータイクレジット [iD (アイディ)] (iD credit payment service) allows you to pay or use a cashing service only by holding your Osaifu-Keitai over a reader/writer unit, without having to take a credit card from your wallet and leave your signature. This makes your shopping easier and more enjoyable.

- To use iD, make an application for a card supporting iD and acquire the iD i-appli and the card i-appli provided by the card company.

- To use the iD i-appli for the first time, agree with “ご利用上の注意 (Notes on using the application)”, make the necessary preparations and download the card application.

- The cost for using the iD credit service (e.g. annual fee) varies depending on the card company.

- A packet communication charge is applied for downloading the iD i-appli or the card i-appli released by the card company.



* The above is a screen image. The actual screen may look different.

- For information about iD, visit the iD website or i-mode site.

Website:

<http://id-credit.com> (Only in Japanese)

i-mode site:

iMenu▶メニュー／検索 (Menu/search)▶ケータイクレジット [iD] (iD credit payment service) (Only in Japanese)

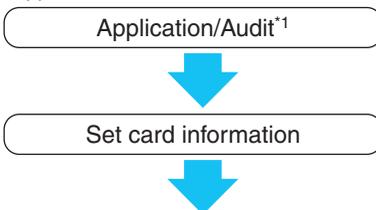


● Using 「DCMX」クレジットアプリ (“DCMX” credit application)

“DCMX” is a credit service that is compatible with “iD” and provided by the NTT DoCoMo group. DCMX is categorized into DCMX mini that will offer a monthly credit line of 10,000 yen, and DCMX and DCMX gold that will offer a cash or revolving credit line and issue a credit card.

Use this application to subscribe to DCMX mini easily and quickly, and use the mobile credit service immediately.

■ Application function



<p>Use</p> <p>No complicated charging! Hold your mobile phone over the reader/writer unit in a shop, and enjoy shopping without your signature.</p>	<p>Check**2</p> <p>Check the bill and balance of this month on your mobile phone!</p>
	<p>Change</p> <p>Use this application to update and re-issue your current card!</p>

*1: A simple audit will be performed online at the time of application. Applications for other than DCMX mini will be connected to the application page on i-mode.

*2: The check function is only available for DCMX mini.

- For details about the service and its application, visit the following:

Website:

<http://www.dcmx.jp> (Only in Japanese)

i-mode site:

iMenu▶メニュー／検索 (Menu/search)▶DCMX (ケータイクレジット) (DCMX mobile credit) (Only in Japanese)



- For more information about this service, contact “Inquiries” described on the back cover of this manual.

NOTE

- Agree to “ご利用上の注意” (License Agreement) the first time you launch this application.
- Packet communication charges will apply to use the i-mode communication and this application.
- After you apply for the service or make the settings, the service cannot be launched with this application. To check your usage or change the settings, launch iD i-oppli then select and launch DCMX simultaneously.

Notes on Osaifu-Keitai i-oppli

- NTT DoCoMo accepts no liability whatsoever regarding the information set on the IC card.

Using Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE® EPG Remote Control)

“Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G-GUIDE® EPG Remote Control) is a useful application equipped with the program guide and AV remote control function, which can be used free of charge.

Get information about analog or digital TV programs easily anytime and anywhere. You can find a program title, contents and time.

When you find a program you want to watch, set your DVD recorder to record the program via the Internet. (The DVD recorder must support the Remote Scheduling Function and you need to perform initial setting for this application before using this function.)

You can search for information by any keywords such as a genre or your favorite TV personality. You can control TV, video or DVD player remotely (some models do not support this).

- Agree to the license agreement and make the initial settings the first time you use “Gガイド番組表リモコン”.
- A packet communication charge will be made for use.
- To use this application overseas, set Japan time for “Set time” in your FOMA terminal.
- For more details, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.



* The screen is only an image and may look different from the actual one. The displayed TV guide corresponds to the area where you live.

Online timer recording

With a DVD recorder that supports online timer recording, you can set timer recording using the program guide of this application via the Internet while away from home. You need to perform initial setting for this application before setting online timer recording.

Initial setting

- ① Perform the Internet connection setting on your DVD recorder. (For more information, see the manual for the DVD recorder.)
- ② Launch this application, select “リモート録画予約” (Online timer recording) on メニュー (Menu) and perform the initial setting following the instructions.

Timer recording

After the initial setting, specify a program to record and select “リモート録画予約” (Online timer recording) on the menu. Then you connect to the DVD recorder set in this application via the Internet to set the timer recording.

* If another recording has been already set for the time you specified, a message appears on the program guide.

- A packet communication charge will be made for use.

NOTE

- ◆ Packet communication charges are applied for using i-mode communication such as “初期設定 (Initial setting)” and “主なメニュー (Main menu)” in the i-oppli programs.
- ◆ Note that if you set the i-oppli network setting to “OFF”, i-mode communication is not available and you cannot use the functions on “主なメニュー (Main menu)” in the i-oppli programs as well as “初期設定 (Initial setting)”.
- ◆ NTT DoCoMo accepts no liability whatsoever regarding the information set on a FOMA terminal.

Launching an i-oppli Automatically

Use this function to launch a program automatically at the specified date and time or any intervals.

Enabling automatic launching

<Auto start set>

Default setting
OFF

- You can set automatic startup times for up to 3 programs.

1 [MENU] ▶ “i-oppli” ▶ “Auto start set” ▶ “ON” or “OFF”

Setting the launch date/time

<Auto start time>

Default setting
All OFF

Use this setting to specify the date and time when a program is automatically launched.

- A program does not start up automatically in the following situations:
 - When a FOMA terminal is turned off
 - When another function is running
 - During a call
 - During communication
 - When an Alarm clock, Schedule, To Do list or Software Update alarm is set for the same time as automatic launching

1 Software list screen (p.287) ▶
(FUNC) ▶ “Auto start time” ▶ Use
to select a checkbox ()

■ **To enable the time interval set for a program**
 ▶ Check the “Time interval set” checkbox



■ **To set the launch date and time**
 ▶ Check the “Start time set” checkbox

2 (Finish) ▶ Set the launch date and time

■ **To set the launch date and time**
 ▶ Select a date and time ▶ Enter the launch date and time



■ **To set the automatic launch repetition**
 ▶ Select the repeat setting item ▶ “Daily” or “Weekly”
 If you have selected “Weekly”, use () to select a checkbox () and press (Finish).

3 (Finish)

NOTE

◆ If you set the “Time interval set” and “Start time set” for the same program and those automatic launch times are less than 10 minutes apart, the program will launch automatically for the first launch time but not for the second.

Checking whether an i-αppli launched automatically

Use this procedure to check whether an i-αppli automatically started up at the specified time. You can also check programs that failed to start up from the IC card function.

1 (MENU) ▶ “i-αppli” ▶ “i-αppli action info” ▶ “Auto start info”

The screen shows information such as the program name, automatic launch time and whether or not the program was launched. “Start ○” indicates that the program started up automatically, “Start ×” indicates that it did not start up automatically and “Start-” indicates that the time for automatic launch has not yet been reached.



NOTE

◆ If a program could not be launched automatically, the “” (Not run soft) desktop icon appears on the standby screen. Select the icon to view the Auto start info screen. Select the program to launch it. Desktop icons that give notice → p.149

- ◆ Information is also logged when a program could not be launched automatically because you are using i-mode or running another application.
- ◆ “Auto start info” may include the information for the program you did not realize its launch.

<i-αppli To function>

Launching an i-αppli from a Site or Mail

Use this function to launch an i-αppli from functions other than i-αppli, such as an i-mode site or mail.

Enabling a program to launch with i-αppli To <i-αppli To setting>

Default setting
 All activated

Use this setting to specify whether to launch an i-αppli from i-mode sites, mails, the Infrared data exchange function, Bar code reader, IC card function or ToruCa.

- This setting can be specified separately for each i-αppli program.

1 Software list screen (p.287) ▶
(FUNC) ▶ “Set i-αppli To” ▶ Use
to select a checkbox () of an item ▶ (Finish)

You can select any items from “Site “i-αppli To””, “Mail “i-αppli To””, “Ir “i-αppli To””, “Bar code “i-αppli To””, “IC card “i-αppli To”” or “ToruCa “i-αppli To””.

Launching an i-αppli from a site

When an i-αppli launch is specified on an i-mode site, you can launch the i-αppli from the site.

- This function is unavailable with some sites.

1 Sites screen (p.209) ▶ Select an item to launch a program ▶ “YES”

NOTE

<i-αppli that is launched immediately from a site>

◆ Unlike ordinary i-αppli programs, some i-αppli programs are immediately launched from i-mode sites.

- This type of program is not stored on a FOMA terminal even if you download it from an i-mode site. This program is not listed even on the Software list screen.
- A message asking whether to start communication may appear while a program is running.
- After a program quits, a message asking whether to store the program may appear.
- Some programs cannot be stored in a FOMA terminal.

Launching an i-αppli from a mail

When an i-αppli launch specification is pasted into a received i-mode mail, you can launch the i-αppli program from the i-mode mail.

- 1 Received mail detail screen (p.259)
▶ Select an item to launch a program ▶ “YES”

NOTE

- ◆ If multiple data are pasted into a mail, the pasted data themselves may not be displayed.
- ◆ When you reply with a quote or forward an i-mode mail, an i-αppli launch specification is not quoted. You cannot also quote a launch specification when forwarding a mail using DoCoMo keitai datalink, etc. or Infrared data exchange function.
- ◆ i-αppli programs cannot be launched from i-mode mails in Secret folders.

Launching an i-αppli using the Infrared data exchange function

This setting allows you to launch an i-αppli when receiving the i-αppli launch signal during Infrared data exchange.

- 1  ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “Receive Ir data” ▶ “Receive” ▶ Receive the i-αppli launch signal

Launching an i-αppli using the Bar code reader

This setting allows you to launch an i-αppli using the Bar code reader when a scanned bar code includes an i-αppli launch specification.

- 1  ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “Bar code reader” ▶ Scan a bar code
- 2 Select an item to launch a program ▶ “YES”

Launching an i-αppli using the IC card function

This setting allows you to launch an i-αppli using the IC card function by holding the FeliCa mark on a FOMA terminal over a reader/writer unit.

- A program does not start up in the following situations:
 - When another function is running
 - During a call
 - When the program to launch is not installed or partly downloaded

- When IC card lock is set, you cannot launch an i-αppli with the IC card function. When you launch an i-αppli with other function than IC card while IC card lock is set, you cannot use the IC card function with the i-αppli.

- 1 Hold the FeliCa mark “” on a FOMA terminal over a reader/writer unit

Launching an i-αppli from ToruCa

When an i-αppli launch specification is pasted into an acquired ToruCa, you can launch the i-αppli program from the ToruCa.

- 1 ToruCa display screen (p.301) ▶ Select an item to launch a program ▶ “YES”

<Set i-αppli stand-by>

Setting the i-αppli Standby Screen

Use this function to set a selected i-αppli program as the standby screen on your FOMA terminal. When the i-αppli standby screen appears, “” or “” appears at the bottom of the screen.

- Only one i-αppli program can be set as the i-αppli standby screen.
- Some programs cannot be set as the standby screen.

- 1 Software list screen (p.287) ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Software setting” ▶ “Stand-by display” ▶ “ON” ▶  (Finish)

NOTE

- ◆ “” appears for the program set as the standby screen.
- ◆ If a program that communicates is set as the i-αppli standby screen, it may not run correctly due to poor signal quality, etc.
- ◆ If you select “OFF” for “Stand-by net” in “Software setting”, you may not be able to receive timely information.
- ◆ When the i-αppli standby screen is set, the image set for “Stand-by display” in “Display setting” (p.133) does not appear.
- ◆ Even if the i-αppli standby screen is set, the screen set in “Stand-by display” in “Display setting” appears when you switch tasks to show the standby screen.
- ◆ If the power is cycled while the i-αppli standby screen is set, a message asking whether to launch the i-αppli standby screen appears.

- ◆ If “Dial lock” (p.157) or “Original lock” (p.162) is set while the i-αpli standby screen appears, the screen quits. To redisplay the i-αpli standby screen, release “Dial lock” or “Original lock”.

Running the i-αpli standby screen

Use this procedure to run the program set as the i-αpli standby screen.

1 On the i-αpli standby screen ▶ CLR

The i-αpli starts up and the “” or “” icon at the bottom of the screen changes to the flashing “” or “” icon.



Deactivating the i-αpli standby screen <Deactivate i-αpli standby screen>

● Deactivating the i-αpli standby screen while running an i-αpli

1 While running an i-αpli ▶

CLR (1 second or longer) or

Cancel	Cancels the i-αpli standby screen deactivation.
Ended	Quits the i-αpli standby screen without deactivating it and returns to the i-αpli standby screen.
Terminated	Deactivates the i-αpli standby screen.

● Deactivating the i-αpli standby screen while it appears

1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “i-αpli settings” ▶ “End stand-by display”

2 “Terminate” ▶ “YES”

■ To not deactivate the i-αpli standby screen

▶ “End”

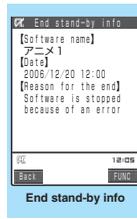
NOTE

- ◆ If you deactivate the i-αpli standby screen, the image set for “Stand-by display” in “Display setting” appears on the standby screen.

Checking the i-αpli standby screen exit information

If an error occurred and the i-αpli standby screen was deactivated, the name of the program which had the error, the time when the error occurred and the reason are logged so that you can check them.

- 1 (MENU) ▶ “i-αpli” ▶ “i-αpli action info” ▶ “End stand-by info”
The “End stand-by info” screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.295

Function menu (End stand-by info screen)

Copy info	Copies the i-αpli standby screen exit information data.
Delete info	Deletes the i-αpli standby screen exit information data.

NOTE

- ◆ No information is logged if the i-αpli standby screen ended normally.

Organizing an i-αpli

Upgrading an i-αpli <Upgrade>

Use this procedure to upgrade a downloaded i-αpli program when the new version is available on a site.

- 1 Software list screen (p.287) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Upgrade” ▶ “YES”

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot upgrade mail-connected i-αpli programs that change mail folder names when:
 - Mail security is set
 - Folder security is set
 - Inbox or Outbox folder for the mail-connected i-αpli to be upgraded is being used

Deleting an i-αpli <Delete i-αpli>

Use this procedure to delete programs individually or delete all programs.

- 1 Software list screen (p.287) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Delete” ▶ Select any item

Delete this	Deletes the highlighted i-αppli program.
Delete selected	▶ Use to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple i-αppli programs.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all the stored i-αppli programs.

NOTE

- ◆ If you try to delete the program set as the i-αppli standby screen (marked with) , the one set to launch automatically (marked with) or the one set as the i-αppli standby screen with the automatic launch function (marked with) , the status of the program and a message asking whether to delete the program appear.
- ◆ If you try to delete a mail-connected i-αppli, a message asking whether to delete the folders for the mail-connected i-αppli appears. Select “NO” to delete only the i-αppli, or “YES” to delete the i-αppli and folders. Even if selecting “YES”, you cannot delete the folders when the folders are being used, security is set for the folders or they contain a protected mail.
- ◆ When a mail-connected i-αppli is deleted, a new i-αppli mail received during the selection of an i-αppli to be deleted may also be deleted.
- ◆ Some Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli programs may require you to delete IC card data before deleting the program. If “Delete this” is selected for such programs, the FOMA terminal launches the program following the confirmation screen to delete the IC card data and program. Selecting “Delete selected” or “Delete all” does not launch a program, so delete the IC card data before deleting the program.
- ◆ Some Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli programs cannot be deleted.

Displaying the i-αppli data stored in the microSD memory card <microSD data>

Use this procedure to show the folder name list of the i-αppli data (microSD) stored in the microSD memory card.

- ▶ “i-αppli” ▶ “microSD data”
The “microSD data list” screen appears.

Function menu (microSD data list screen)

Display info	Shows the information about the i-αppli data (microSD) stored in the microSD memory card.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted i-αppli data file (microSD).

Delete selected	▶ Use to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple i-αppli data files (microSD).
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all the i-αppli data files (microSD) stored in the microSD memory card.

NOTE

- ◆ i-αppli data saved to the microSD memory card (i-αppli data (microSD)) may not be used in other FOMA terminals.
- ◆ Use “Software info” (p.288) to check that the i-αppli data (i-αppli data (microSD)) will be saved to the microSD memory card.

Data information

You can check the following:

Maker	Who created the i-αppli If there is no information, “None” appears.
Available Software	Name of the i-αppli that can use the microSD memory card If there is no information, “None” appears.
Use saved data	Whether there is a reason the i-αppli cannot use the microSD memory card If at least one reason is indicated under “Reason”, “None” appears. If not, “ON” appears.
Reason	
• Software restriction	There is no i-αppli available*
• UIM restriction	The FOMA card was not used when the i-αppli was run*
• Model restriction	The i-αppli (microSD) was run on other than FOMA N903i*
• Series restriction	The i-αppli (microSD) was run on other than the N903i series*

* : If there is no reason the i-αppli cannot use the microSD memory card, the option is grayed out.

● Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa

What is Osaifu-Keitai?	298
What is iC Transfer Service?	298
Launching Osaifu-Keitai i-appli	298
What is ToruCa?	ToruCa 299
Acquiring ToruCa	Acquire ToruCa 300
Viewing ToruCa	ToruCa viewer 301
Making the ToruCa Settings	ToruCa settings 303
Locking the IC Card Functions	IC card lock 303

What is Osaifu-Keitai?

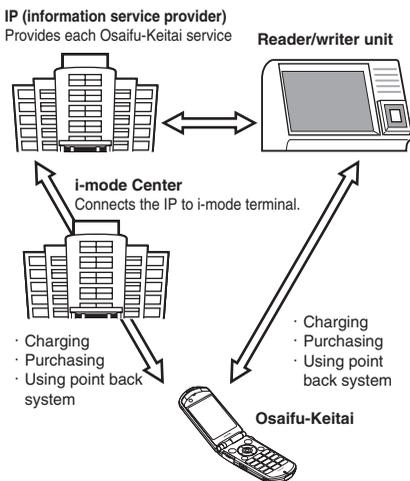
“Osaifu-Keitai” refers to a useful IC card function of an i-mode terminal (i-mode FeliCa) or to an i-mode terminal equipped with an IC card.

FeliCa is a type of contactless IC card technology that allows you to read/write data simply by holding the card over a reader/writer unit*.

Simply hold an Osaifu-Keitai over a reader/writer unit in a shop to use your phone as electronic cash to make payments, as an airline ticket or point card. Your FOMA terminal makes your life more convenient.

Osaifu-Keitai is more useful than the existing FeliCa-compatible contactless IC cards in that you can even transmit electronic cash into the IC card of your Osaifu-Keitai or check the account balance or transaction history.

*: A unit that reads data from and writes data to IC cards.



* To use the IC card functions, download Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli supporting the IC card function.

- The ways to subscribe to or use the Osaifu-Keitai services depend on your IP (information service provider). Check with them directly. For cautions on using the services, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.
- Take notes of the names or contact numbers of the Osaifu-Keitai services. Osaifu-Keitai malfunction, repair, model change, etc., may erase or alter data stored on the IC card. (In case of repair, you will be asked to erase data by yourself.) Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to data stored on the IC card. The way to erase data stored on the IC card and the warranty in the case of loss or alteration of the data depends

on the Osaifu-Keitai services. Check with your IP (information service provider) beforehand.

- Take great care not to lose your Osaifu-Keitai. If you have lost your Osaifu-Keitai, check with your IP (information service provider) for information on the Osaifu-Keitai services you have subscribed to. IC card functions can be restricted by Dial lock, Omakase Lock or IC card lock.
→pp.157, 303

What is iC Transfer Service?

iC transfer service*1 is a service that allows you to move all IC card data*3 to a new Osaifu-Keitai when replacing*2 your Osaifu-Keitai. Once you move IC card data, you can start using the Osaifu-Keitai services simply by downloading the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli compatible with your Osaifu-Keitai.

iC transfer service is available at a NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter.

*1 : Service charge is required for using iC transfer service (except for some of the services). Furthermore, packet communication charge will be applied for downloading an Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli or performing the related settings.

*2 : Only when the FOMA terminal you will replace supports iC transfer service (903i series)

*3 : Some of the Osaifu-Keitai services are not supported by iC transfer service. Data of the unsupported services will be deleted when using the iC transfer service. Use the backup service of the Osaifu-Keitai service or delete the service data beforehand.

Launching Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli

Launching Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli to read/write IC card data

Launch the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli from the software list screen. Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli allows you to read/write data on the IC card and use useful functions, e.g. charging electronic cash or transportation tickets, or viewing the account balance or transaction history on your mobile phone.

- Take care not to let others know your security codes and passwords for services.
- Data exchange between the software and the IC card is interrupted in the following cases. When this happens, data that has been exchanged is discarded. Operations to be performed after you finish talking depend on the services you have used:
 - There is an incoming call while an i-αppli is launched
 - The battery runs out

- When you download or launch an Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli for the first time, “Current UIM necessary to use IC card” appears. Subsequently you cannot use the IC card function unless you have inserted the FOMA card that matches the IC card.

1 (MENU) ▶ “i-αppli” ▶ “Software list”
The “Software list” screen appears.

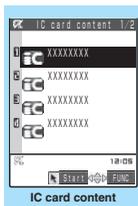
2 Select the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli
The Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli is launched.

Viewing Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli

You can view the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli.

1 (MENU) ▶ “LifeKit” ▶
“IC card content”
The “IC card content” screen appears.

- To launch an application
 - ▶ Select an application to launch



NOTE

- ◆ To run an i-αppli that only has the management information, download the corresponding Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli. → p.286

Function menu (IC card content screen)

See the “Software list” function menu as the options are the same. → p.287

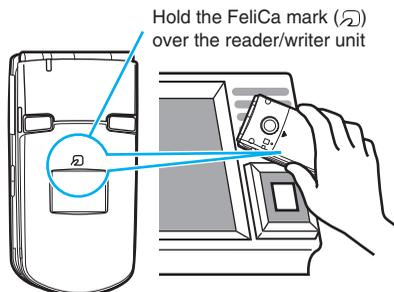
Using the Osaifu-Keitai

Holding the FeliCa mark “” on a FOMA terminal over a reader/writer unit allows you to use the FOMA terminal as electronic cash or as a train ticket. To use this function, there is no need to launch an application.

- While you are talking on the phone, you cannot launch the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli but can use the Osaifu-Keitai by holding the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer unit.

1 Hold the FeliCa mark “” over a reader/writer unit to use your desired service

The incoming call lamp and shooting indicator lamp light up when the Osaifu-Keitai is used.



NOTE

- ◆ Attach the battery pack when using the Osaifu-Keitai. Even when the power is turned off or the battery is low, you still can use IC card functions by holding the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer unit (cannot launch the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli). Not using the battery pack for a long period of time or failing to charge the battery when the battery alarm sounds may make the IC card functions unavailable for use when needed, so be sure to charge the battery pack.
- ◆ Do not subject a FOMA terminal to strong shocks when holding the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer unit. If a reader/writer unit does not recognize the FeliCa mark, get the FOMA terminal closer to the unit and move it a little in parallel to the surface of the unit.
- ◆ While the IC card lock is set, you may be unable to download, upgrade or uninstall the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli.
- ◆ Holding the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer unit may launch the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli.

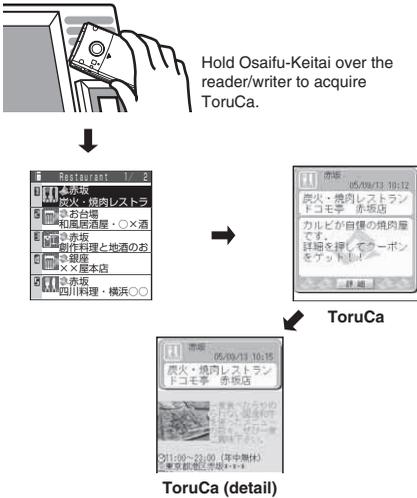
<ToruCa>

What is ToruCa?

ToruCa is an electronic card that can be acquired via Osaifu-Keitai, which can be used as an ad, restaurant card, coupon, etc. ToruCa can be acquired via a reader/writer unit or downloaded from a site, and can be easily exchanged via a mail, Infrared data exchange or the microSD memory card.

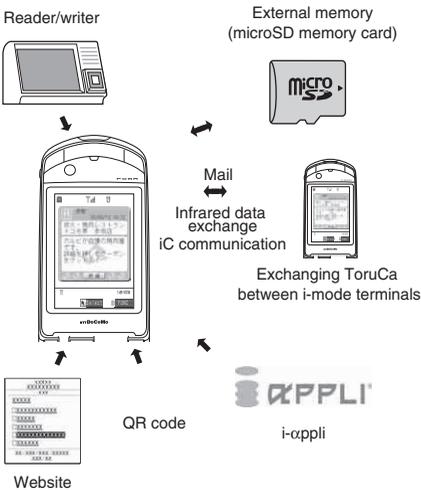
- Acquired ToruCa is saved to “ToruCa” under “LifeKit”.
- This function is available with a terminal that supports ToruCa. For more details, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

ToruCa usage flow



Select ToruCa from the list. Pressing the “詳細” (Detail) button displays the detailed information.

How ToruCa is acquired



NOTE

- ◆ A separate packet communication charge will be made for downloading ToruCa and ToruCa details from a site.

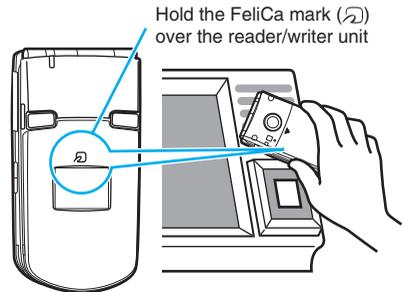
<Acquire ToruCa>

Acquiring ToruCa

Acquiring data via a reader/writer unit

- 1 Hold the FeliCa mark “” on a FOMA terminal over a reader/writer unit

The ToruCa acquisition tone sounds, the incoming call lamp and shooting indicator lamp light up and the acquired ToruCa and ToruCa (detail) are displayed for about 15 seconds.



NOTE

- ◆ Acquired ToruCa does not appear when another function is running.
- ◆ If the URL of detailed information is included in acquired ToruCa, a message asking whether to acquire the ToruCa (detail) appears.
- ◆ ToruCa acquired via a reader/writer unit is saved to the “ToruCa” folder.
- ◆ Up to 100* ToruCa can be stored. The maximum size of ToruCa that can be stored is 1K bytes each. The maximum size of ToruCa (detail) that can be stored is 100K bytes each.
- * : Up to 20 ToruCa can be stored in the “Used ToruCa” folder separately.
- ◆ You cannot change the ToruCa acquisition tone.
- ◆ The volume of the ToruCa acquisition tone is the same as that specified in “Phone” under “Ring volume”. If “Step” is set, the tone sounds at volume “Level 4”.
- ◆ The ToruCa acquisition tone does not sound in Manner mode.
- ◆ ToruCa can be acquired via a reader/writer unit while Original lock is set.
- ◆ You cannot acquire ToruCa via a reader/writer unit while IC card lock or Omakase Lock is set.
- ◆ Setting Dial lock sets IC card lock to “ON” to disable the IC card function. You cannot release IC card lock while Dial lock is set.

Viewing ToruCa

1 **MENU** ▶ “LifeKit” ▶
“ToruCa”

The ToruCa folder list screen appears.



ToruCa folder list
Function menu ▶ p.301

2 **Select a folder** ▶
Select ToruCa

The ToruCa display screen appears.

Guide to ToruCa list screen/ ToruCa display screen

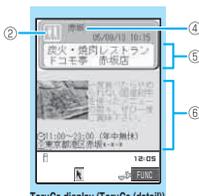
ToruCa appears as follows:



ToruCa list
Function menu ▶ p.302



ToruCa display (ToruCa)
Function menu ▶ p.302



ToruCa display (ToruCa detail)
Function menu ▶ p.302

- ① Folder title
- ② ToruCa category icon
- ③ ToruCa condition
 - ◆: Unread
 - ◆: Read
 - ◆: Expired
- ④ Place, etc. (index)
- ⑤ ToruCa title
- ⑥ ToruCa contents (You can use the Phone To, Mail To, Web To or i-appli To* function.)
 - *: Only available for ToruCa (detail)
- ⑦ Select here to display ToruCa (detail).

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot use the Mail To function if you already have 20 draft mails or no space is available in Draft.
- ◆ The Phone To, Mail To, Web To or i-appli To function may be unavailable for some ToruCa.
- ◆ The “詳細” (Detail) button may not appear for some ToruCa.
- ◆ You cannot display the ToruCa display screen for ToruCa stored in the “Used ToruCa” folder.

Function menu (ToruCa folder list screen)

Add folder	▶ Enter a folder name You can add up to 20 folders to the memory on a FOMA terminal. A folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters on a FOMA terminal. As for the microSD memory card, a folder name can contain up to 31 double-byte or 63 single-byte characters.
Edit folder name	▶ Enter a folder name A folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters on a FOMA terminal. As for the microSD memory card, a folder name can contain up to 31 double-byte or 63 single-byte characters.
Search all*	▶ “Index” or “Title” ▶ Enter text to search for ▶ SEARCH
Filter all*	Displays ToruCa meeting the specified criteria (“Unread”, “Read”, “Genre”). If you have selected “Genre”, specify a genre you prefer.
Display all*	Cancels displaying “Search all” and “Filter all”.
Touch to send all*	“Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time” → p.369
Send all Ir data*	
Delete folder	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES”
No. of ToruCa	Displays the number of ToruCa stored on the FOMA terminal.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Delete all ToruCa stored on the FOMA terminal.

*: Does not appear for a folder in the “microSD” folder.

NOTE

<Add folder>

- ◆ A newly created folder appears above the “microSD” folder.

<Edit folder name>

- ◆ You cannot change the names of “ToruCa”, “microSD” and “Used ToruCa”.

<Search all>

- ◆ Data stored on the “microSD” and “Used ToruCa” folders will not be displayed.

<Filter all>

- ◆ When you have selected “Genre”, press (Icon) to switch from the genre list to the category icon display. To return to the genre list, press (Exit) or (CLR).
- ◆ Data stored on the “microSD” and “Used ToruCa” folders will not be filtered.

<Display all>

- ◆ Data stored on the “microSD” and “Used ToruCa” folders will not be displayed.

<Touch to send all><Send all Ir data>

- ◆ Data stored on the “microSD” and “Used ToruCa” folders will not be sent.

<Delete folder>

- ◆ You cannot delete the “ToruCa”, “microSD” and “Used ToruCa” folders.

<No. of ToruCa>

- ◆ The number of data items stored on the “microSD” and “Used ToruCa” folders will not be displayed.

Function menu (ToruCa list screen)

Move ^{*1}	Moves ToruCa to another folder.
• Move this	▶Select a folder▶“YES” Moves the highlighted ToruCa.
• Move selected	▶Select a folder▶Use to select a checkbox (☐)▶ (Finish)▶“YES” Moves the selected ToruCa.
• Move all	▶Select a folder▶“YES” Moves all ToruCa in the folder.
Copy ^{*1}	
• Copy this	▶Select a folder Copies the highlighted ToruCa.
• Copy selected	▶Select a folder▶Use to select a checkbox (☐)▶ (Finish)▶“YES” Copies the selected ToruCa.
• Copy all	▶Select a folder Copies all ToruCa in the folder.
Search ^{*1*2}	▶“Index” or “Title”▶Enter text to search for▶
Disp all in folder ^{*1*2*3}	Cancels displaying “Search”, “Filter” and “Sort”.
Sort ^{*1*2}	Sorts ToruCa by the specified criteria.
Filter ^{*1*2}	Displays ToruCa meeting the specified criteria (“Unread”, “Read”, “Genre”). If you have selected “Genre”, specify a genre you prefer.
Compose message ^{*1}	Composes an i-mode mail with the highlighted ToruCa attached.
Touch to send data ^{*1*2}	“Transferring One Data at a Time” → p.368
Send Ir data ^{*1*2}	
Copy to microSD ^{*1*4}	
• Copy this	▶Select a folder Copies the highlighted ToruCa to the microSD memory card.
• Copy selected	▶Select a folder▶Use to select a checkbox (☐)▶ (Finish)▶“YES” Copies the selected ToruCa to the microSD memory card.
• Copy all	▶Enter your security code▶Select a folder▶“YES” Copies all ToruCa in the folder to the microSD memory card.
No. of ToruCa ^{*1}	Displays the number of ToruCa stored on the FOMA terminal.
ToruCa info ^{*1}	Displays the ToruCa information.

Delete	
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted ToruCa.
• Delete selected	▶Use to select a checkbox (☐)▶ (Finish)▶“YES” Deletes the selected ToruCa.
• Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶“YES” Deletes all ToruCa in the folder.

*1 : Does not appear for ToruCa in the “Used ToruCa” folder.

*2 : Does not appear for ToruCa in the “microSD” folder.

*3 : “Display all” appears instead when “Search all”, “Filter all” or “Display all” works on the ToruCa folder list screen.

*4 : “Copy to phone” appears for ToruCa stored on the microSD memory card. When “Copy to phone” appears, folders are not to be selected.

NOTE

<Move><Copy>

- ◆ ToruCa cannot be moved or copied to the “microSD” or “Used ToruCa” folder.

<Send Ir data>

- ◆ If ToruCa (detail) exists, a message asking whether to send the detailed information appears.

<No. of ToruCa>

- ◆ The number of data items stored on the “microSD” and “Used ToruCa” folders will not be displayed.

Function menu (ToruCa display screen)

Move	▶Select a folder Moves the displayed ToruCa to another folder.
Copy	▶Select a folder Copies the displayed ToruCa.
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail with the displayed ToruCa attached.
Touch to send data ^{*1}	“Transferring One Data at a Time” → p.368
Send Ir data ^{*1}	
Copy to microSD ^{*2}	▶Select a folder Copies the displayed ToruCa to the microSD memory card.
Update ^{*1*3}	Updates the displayed ToruCa (detail).
Save image ^{*1*3}	Saves the displayed ToruCa (detail). Select “Normal image” or “Background image”.
Add to phonebook ^{*1}	Adds a phone number or mail address contained in the displayed ToruCa to the phonebook. → p.107
Retry ^{*1*3}	Plays a Flash movie or animation in the displayed ToruCa (detail) from the beginning.
Delete	Deletes the displayed ToruCa.

*1 : Does not appear for ToruCa in the “microSD” folder.

*2 : “Copy to phone” appears for ToruCa stored on the microSD memory card. When “Copy to phone” appears, folders are not to be selected.

*3 : Can be selected when ToruCa (detail) appears.

NOTE

- ◆ You may not send mails with attachments, send data using iC communication or Infrared data exchange, copy data to the microSD memory card or update information for some ToruCa.

<Move><Copy>

- ◆ ToruCa cannot be moved or copied to the “microSD” or “Used ToruCa” folder.

<Send Ir data>

- ◆ If ToruCa (detail) exists, a message asking whether to send the detailed information appears.

<Save image>

- ◆ Some images cannot be saved.

<Retry>

- ◆ Selecting this option during playback restarts the playback from the beginning.

<ToruCa settings>

Making the ToruCa Settings

- 1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “ToruCa settings”
▶ Select any items

Receive from R/W (default: Accept)	Sets to acquire ToruCa (Accept) or not (Reject) when you hold the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer unit. If you have selected “Accept”, specify whether to check if the acquired ToruCa is duplicated with those stored in the FOMA terminal (Repetition check).
Auto reading setting (default: OFF)	Sets whether to automatically read an available ToruCa when holding the FOMA terminal over a reader/writer unit to use ToruCa. Set “ON” to automatically recognize an available ToruCa to move it to the “Used ToruCa” folder.
Scroll (default: 1 line)	Selects “1 line”, “3 lines” or “5 lines” for the number of scrolling lines on the ToruCa display screen.

NOTE

<Receive from R/W>

- ◆ If you have set “Yes” for Repetition check, you cannot acquire the same ToruCa. To acquire the same ToruCa, set “No”. “Yes” is set at the time of purchase.
- ◆ ToruCa stored in the “microSD” or “Used ToruCa” folder or expired ToruCa are not checked.

<Auto reading setting>

- ◆ You may not use ToruCa when this function is set to “OFF”.
- ◆ This function is invalid for ToruCa in the “microSD” or “Used ToruCa” folder or expired ToruCa.

<IC card lock>

Locking the IC Card Functions

Default setting
OFF

Lock the IC card functions in order to prevent other people from using the functions without your consent.

- Turning off the power does not unlock the IC card functions.

Setting/releasing IC card lock

- You can also set or release IC card lock simply by pressing [3] for 1 second or longer on the standby screen.

- 1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “IC card lock” ▶ Enter your security code ▶ “ON”

IC card lock is set and “” appears.



■ To release IC card lock

▶ “OFF”

IC card lock is released and “” disappears from the screen.

- Locking IC card functions when turning the power off

<IC lock (power-off)>

Default setting	Maintain
-----------------	----------

- This function allows you to lock IC card functions to disable your Osaifu-Keitai when the power is turned off.

- 1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “IC card lock” ▶ Enter your security code ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “IC lock (power-off)” ▶ Select any item

Maintain	Keeps the same IC card lock settings as before the power is turned off.
IC card lock ON	Locks IC card functions regardless of the IC card lock settings.

- Using Face authentication to release IC card lock

If you have registered an image for “Face authentication” and selected “IC card lock” for “Function to reset”, an authentication of read face data is performed to identify the user.

- If the face authentication fails, enter the image name registered as a keyword for “Face authentication” to release IC card lock.
- “Using Face Authentication” → p.169

1 On the standby screen▶

3 (1 second or longer)

The “Face scanning” screen appears.

2 Position your face so that the whole appears on the display

■ If the face authentication fails

▶ Enter the image name



3 Enter your security code

IC card lock is released and “” disappears from the screen.

NOTE

- ◆ Selecting ▶ “LifeKit”▶ “IC card lock” also enables you to access IC card lock.
- ◆ You cannot set or release IC card lock while on a videophone call.
- ◆ Removing the battery pack sets IC card lock automatically. In this case, attaching the battery pack releases the IC card lock automatically.
- ◆ Even if the battery runs out and the power is then turned off, the current IC card lock remains unreleased.

● GPS Function

What is GPS?		306
Checking Your Current Location	Position location	307
Setting Position Settings	Position settings	307
Using GPS i-appli	GPS i-appli	308
Providing Current Location Information on Request	Permit to send loc.	312
Notifying the Current Location Information	LCS client	315
Viewing Location History	Location history	317
Using the GPS Function		317

What is GPS?

GPS (Global Positioning System) is a system developed and operated by the U.S. Department of Defense. Using the positioning radio waves broadcast by the satellites moving around the earth, the system allows you to know your current location (latitude, longitude, etc.). Using the positioning radio waves broadcast by the GPS satellites, the location information on your FOMA terminal (latitude, longitude) is obtained. The obtained information can be used for various services.

GPS function available for various services

■ See or search for the peripheral map or information (Position location → p.307)

You can send the current location information and display a map, or search for peripheral information.

■ Use GPS i-appli (Using GSP i-appli → p.308)

You can use location information for useful i-appli. Using location information shows you the roads to the destination or train transfer guide. “ゼンリン[🏠]地図+ナビN” (ZENRIN Map + Navi N) stored at the time of purchase is also available to show you the roads.

■ Provide current location information on request (Permit to send loc. → p.312)

If you are the search object for the location request services (DoCoMo's imadoco-search, etc.), the current location information is provided on request. “imadoco-search” is a service whereby the requestors can find approximate locations of i-mode-compatible FOMA terminal users on a mobile phone's or PC's map. In addition, “Keitai-Osagashi Service” allows you to find the approximate location of your lost FOMA terminal on a PC's map. For details on “imadoco-search” or “Keitai-Osagashi Service”, see the DoCoMo website.

* : If Permit to send loc. (p.312) is set to “ON”, location information may be sent to the requestor even if you do not operate the FOMA terminal.

■ Notify the current location information (LCS client → p.315)

Show your current location information to other people (service providers supporting location notification).

■ Add location information to an image → p.186

You can add location information to an image. The added information can be used to view a map or use GPS i-appli programs.

■ Send information on your current location or favorite place via mail → p.241

You can encode location information into a URL and paste it into an i-mode message. The recipient can use the URL to view the peripheral map.

■ Add location information to the phonebook → p.108

You can add obtained location information to the phonebook and use it.

■ Set the notification tone or illumination → p.128

You can set notification tone and illumination separately for Position location, Location notification and request.

Using location information from each data

● You can add obtained location information to:

- An image in My picture
 - A phonebook entry
 - My Profile
- #### ● The added information can be pasted as URL into an i-mode message or used to access a GPS-compatible i-mode site to view the peripheral map.
- Read a Map
 - “Location info” - “Read a Map” on the image list and My picture function menus → pp.332, 333
 - “Read a Map” on the Phonebook detail function menu → p.115
 - “Read a Map” on the My Profile function menu → p.404
 - Run i-appli
 - “Location info” - “Run i-appli” on the image list and My picture function menus → pp.332, 333
 - “Run i-appli” on the Phonebook detail function menu → p.115
 - “Run i-appli” on the My Profile function menu → p.404
 - Paste to mail
 - “Location info” - “Paste to mail” on the image list and My picture function menus → pp.332, 333
 - “Paste to mail” on the Phonebook detail function menu → p.114
 - “Paste to mail” on the My Profile function menu → p.404

<Position location>

Checking Your Current Location

Determine your current location and obtain location information. The obtained location information can be used to view the current location on a map or use GPS i- α pli.

- Packet communications charges do not apply for positioning. However, separate packet communications charges apply e.g. if you open a map from location information.

1 (MENU) ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “GPS”

The “GPS menu” screen appears.



2 “Position location”

The “positioning result” screen appears.

■ To cancel positioning

▶ (Cancel) or (CLR)

■ To use location information retrieved during positioning

▶ Positioning ▶ (Use)



Accuracy ★★★: Almost accurate (error is less than 50m).

Accuracy ★★☆: Relatively accurate (error is less than 300m).

Accuracy ★☆☆: Rough (error is larger than 300m).

The Accuracy is only intended as an approximate guide. The actual may vary depending on the ambient radio environment, etc.

■ To retrieve location information

▶ (Retry)

Location information is retrieved in Quality mode.

3 Select any item

Read a Map*	Accesses the i-mode site and displays the peripheral map, etc. using the location information.
Run i-αpli	Displays a list of GPS-compatible i- α pli programs.
Paste to mail	Pastes the location information URL into an i-mode message to compose a new message.
Add to Phonebook	Adds location information to the phonebook.
Attach to image	▶ Select an image ▶ “YES” Adds location information to the image.

* : After viewing a map, you can use “i-area” to check information on the surroundings. For details on “i-area”, see the DoCoMo website.

NOTE

- Pressing () for 1 second or longer on the standby screen also obtains location information. In this case, the item set in “Making the GPS button setting” (p.307) is automatically selected.

<Position settings>

Setting Position Settings

Making the GPS button setting

Default setting
Read a Map

Specify a function to be run automatically when () is pressed for 1 second or longer on the standby screen.

1 GPS menu screen (p.307) ▶ “GPS settings”

The “GPS settings” screen appears.



2 “Position settings” ▶ “GPS button setting” ▶ Select any item

Read a Map*	Accesses the i-mode site and displays the peripheral map, etc. using the location information.
Run i-αpli	Displays a list of GPS-compatible i- α pli programs.
Paste to mail	Pastes the location information URL into an i-mode message to compose a new message.
Add to Phonebook	Adds location information to the phonebook.
Attach to image	Adds location information to the image.
Check every position	Performs the same as when launched from the GPS menu screen (p.307).

* : After viewing a map, you can use “i-area” to check information on the surroundings. For details on “i-area”, see the DoCoMo website.

Setting the Positioning mode

Default setting
Standard mode

1 GPS settings screen (p.307) ▶ “Position settings” ▶ “Positioning mode” ▶ Select any item

Standard mode	Gives priority to positioning fast.
Quality mode	Positions slowly. The result is more accurate than in Standard mode. The accuracy may not be high depending on the radio conditions, etc.

Using GPS i-αppli

Run a GPS-compatible i-αppli program. The obtained location information can be used.

- If you use a GPS-compatible i-αppli program, the location information is sent to the program's information provider.
- To use the GPS function with a GPS-compatible i-αppli program, set "Location usage setting" to "Yes" for the program.

1 GPS menu screen (p.307) ▶ "i-αppli"

A list of GPS-compatible i-αppli programs appears.

2 Select i-αppli

"Launching an i-αppli" → p.287

Using ゼンリン[🏠]地図+ナビN (ZENRIN Maps + Navi N)

If a mail message or site contains location information, ゼンリン[🏠]地図+ナビN (ZENRIN Maps + Navi N) (hereinafter referred to as this software) is available to view the map. In addition, the displayed map is available to check the peripheral information or find the route to the destination.

Even if there is no location information, you can use the GPS function to check the current location information or view a map using information such as address or phone number.

- This software is preinstalled at the time of purchase.
- To restore this software after deleting it, download it from "みんなNらんど" in "ケータイ電話メーカー".

Accessing "みんなNらんど" → p.209



If the FOMA card (UIM) you are using was not used for download, the FOMA card operational restriction function will apply. → p.40

● Functions available free of charge

The following functions other than 交通情報 (Traffic info) are available free of charge* for 90 days from the first launch of this software.

To use all the functions, a subscription is required (pay).

* : Packet communication charges will apply.

■ Guide to the table

- : All functions are available.
- △ : Some of the functions are available.
- × : To use the functions, a subscription is required (pay).

Menu	Description	Up to 90 days	After 90 days*1
現在地 (GPS)	Uses GPS to position the current location or find peripheral information.	○	△*2
周辺検索 (Search around here)	Checks the center and peripheral of the displayed map.	○	△*2*3*4
地図を探す (Find a map)	Finds a map in various methods such as address, phone number, building or category of facilities.	○	△*2*3
ナビ (Navi)	Finds and navigates the route to the destination by walk or public transportation.	○	△*2*3*5
ナビ (Navi)	Finds and navigates the roads if by car.	△*6	×
ココの (This place's)	Registers the information on the displayed location or displays weather information.	○	△*7
登録/履歴 (Register/History)	Displays the searched or registered location information or routes.	○	×
設定/ヘルプ (Settings/Help)	Checks the subscription, settings for map and navigation, and usage.	○	○
閉じる (Exit)	Exits the menu.	○	○

*1: A message appears indicating that the available functions are limited the first time this software is started after 90 days.

*2: The map zoom is limited.

*3: The register/history function is unavailable.

*4: A small-window map is not displayed when the peripheral is searched.

*5: The timetable is not displayed. It is not possible to search for a route taking time into account.

*6: VICS information is unavailable. VICS information is delivered real-time for car navigation by Vehicle Information and Communication System Center collecting traffic information nationwide such as traffic jam and regulations.

*7: Location information cannot be registered.

● Useful functions

You can call or send information on an area that was searched before or that you want someone to know.

■ Using logs/registered data

1 While running this software, press

 (メニュー (Menu)) ▶ “登録／履歴” (Register/History) ▶ Select any item

履歴地点 (Logged location)	Displays a logged location on the map.
登録地点 (Registered location)	Displays a registered location on the map.
履歴ルート (Logged route)	Searches for a logged route.
登録ルート (Registered route)	Searches for a registered route.

■ Using or checking location information

1 While running this software, press

 (メニュー (Menu)) ▶ “ココの”
 ▶ Select any item

地図へ戻る (Return to map)	Exits the menu.
ココに行く (Get here)	Sets the start to search for a route.
ココを登録 (Register here)	Registers a location on the cursor.
ココをメール (Mail here)	Pastes location information into an i-mode message.
週間天気 (Weekly weather)	Shows the weekly weather.
タクシーを呼ぶ (Taxi)	Selects a taxi company and makes a call.

● Key operations

■ When displaying a map

Control key	Operation
 (メニュー (Menu))	Displays the menu.
	Displays the quick access menu.
 (拡縮 (Zoom))	A zoom bar appears. Press  to display a wider range, or  to display the detailed map. Press  (閉じる (Exit)) to determine the zoom, and the bar disappears.
	Moves on the map in all directions. The Neuropointer is also available.
	Exits the menu or returns to the first search result location (★).
	Rotates the map counterclockwise.
	Sets the north of the map to the north.
	Rotates the map clockwise.

■ When displaying the quick access menu

Control key	Operation
 (現在地 (Current location))	Positions the current location.*
 (地図へ (Map))	Exits the quick access menu.
 (自宅へ (Home))	Searches for a route from your home to the current location on the map.*
 (周辺 (Peripheral))	Checks the center and peripheral of the displayed map.*
 (ここへ (Here))	Searches for a route from a specified starting location to the center of the displayed map.*
 (メニュー (Menu))	Displays the menu.
 (拡縮 (Zoom))	A zoom bar appears. Press  to display a wider range, or  to display the detailed map. Press  (閉じる (Exit)) to determine the zoom, and the bar disappears.
	Exits the quick access menu.

* : The option does not appear during navigation.

■ During navigation

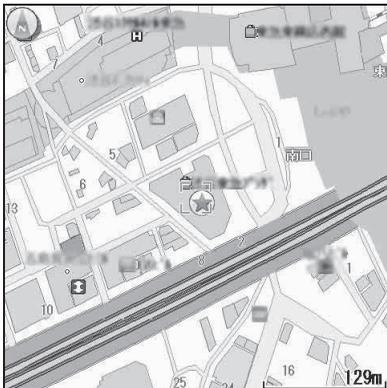
Control key	Operation
 (メニュー (Menu))	Displays the menu. → p.311
	Displays the quick access menu.
 (拡縮 (Zoom))	A zoom bar appears. Press  to display a wider range, or  to display the detailed map. Press  (閉じる (Exit)) to determine the zoom, and the bar disappears.
	Moves on the map in all directions. The Neuropointer is also available.
	Exits the menu or returns to the original cursor location.
	Changes to the crossing mode.
	Stops or starts navigation.
	Rotates the map counterclockwise.
	Sets the north of the map to the north.
	Rotates the map clockwise.

● Screens

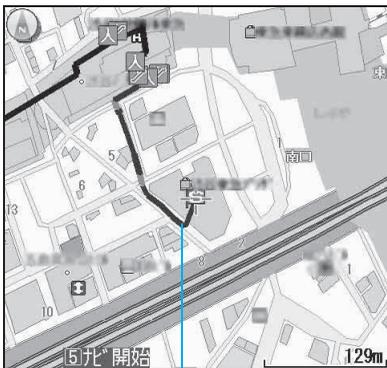
This software contains the normal map screen, route information screen, navigation and information screen, etc.

- The screens shown here are only intended as an approximate guide and may look different from the actual screens.

■ Map display



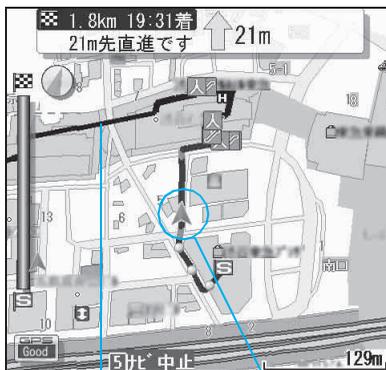
■ Route (walk) display



The route to the destination is displayed.

■ Navigation (walk) display

The guide along the route is displayed.



The route to the destination is displayed.

The current location and direction is displayed.

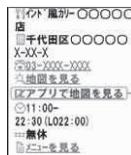
● Displaying a map from location information in a site or mail message

You can view a map from location information displayed in a webpage, mail message, etc.

<Example: To view a map from a site>

- 1 Select a location information item on a site screen ▶ “Run i-αpli” ▶ “ゼンリン 地図+ナビN” (ZENRIN Maps + Navi N) ▶ “YES”

This software is launched and a map appears. “ココ” (here) appears on the map.



● Searching for a route to guide (navigate) you to the destination with sound and screen

Set the start and destination to search for a route. “ +  ナビ” (Navi) shows a route by walk or public transportation, and “ ナビ” (Navi) a route by car. After the route is found, you will be guided (navigated) to the destination with sound and screen.

<Example: To use “ +  ナビ” (Navi)>

- 1 While running this software ▶

 (メニュー (Menu)) ▶  +  ナビ” (Navi)

2 “目的地” (Destination) ▶ Select any item

地図の中心 (Center)	Sets the center of the displayed map.
フリーワード検索 (By keyword)	Searches by keyword.
TEL / 〒検索 (By number/code)	Searches by phone number or postal code.
住所一覧から (From address list)	Selects an address.
カテゴリから (From category)	Selects a category.
履歴から (From history)	Selects from previously viewed maps.
登録地点から (From registered location)	Selects from location information registered on the FOMA terminal.
自宅 (Home)	Sets location information on your home.
目的地の確認 (Check destination)	Checks information on the destination.

3 “出発地” (Start) ▶ Select any item

Set the start as in Step 2.

■ To position and set the current location

▶ “現在地 (GPS)”

4 “時間指定” (Specify time) ▶ Select any item

現時刻で検索 (Current time)	Checks the route using the current time.
出発時間指定 (Start time)	Sets the start time (date and time) to check the route.
到着時間指定 (Arrival time)	Sets the arrival time (date and time) to check the route.
終電を利用 (Last train)	Checks the route with the last train of the day.

5 “条件設定” (Condition) ▶ Select any item ▶ “上記で設定” (Set above)

乗換条件 (Transfer)	Selects “早い” (Fast), “安い” (Cheap) or “楽々” (Easy) for transfer selection criteria.
徒歩ルート (Walking route)	Selects “おまかせ” (Recommended), “屋根多い” (Many roofs) or “階段少ない” (Less up-and-down) for route selection criteria.
特急利用 (Express)	Selects whether to use express.
高速優先 (Expressway)	Selects whether to use expressways/toll roads preferably.

6 “ルートを探す” (Find route)

Up to 5 routes are displayed.

If there is another transfer route, an icon indicates the characteristics of the route.

Icon	Meaning
早 (Fast)	Takes a short time
安 (Cheap)	Costs less
楽 (Easy)	Fewer transfers
オススメ (Recommended)	Meets the above three conditions

■ To register the route

▶ “ルートに登録” (Register route)

7 Select a route ▶ Select a starting location ▶ “ナビ” (Navi)

Navigation starts up to the destination.

Key operations during navigation → p.309

■ To check the route

▶ “ルート確認” (Check route)

■ To display the menu during navigation

▶  (メニュー (Menu)) ▶ Select any item

ルート変更 (Change route)	Sets the cursor location on the map as the destination or halfway point.
 モード切替 (Change mode)	Changes the list display of crossings (IC, JCT, etc.).
検索結果 (Search result)	Displays a list of route search results.
ナビ設定 (Navi settings)	Changes the settings for navigation such as guide, route display or speed.
ルート消去 (Delete route)	Cancel the navigation and returns to the map display.
地図メニュー (Map menu)	Cancel the navigation and returns to the menu display.
閉じる (Exit)	Exits the menu.

● Finding a map

You can view a map from keyword, address, phone number, postal code, etc. and search for information on the surroundings.

1 While running this software ▶ (メニュー (Menu)) ▶ “地図を探す” (Find a map) ▶ Select any item

フリーワード検索 (By keyword)	Displays a map searching by keyword.
TEL / 〒検索 (By number/code)	Displays a map searching by phone number or postal code.
住所一覧から (From address list)	Selects an address to display a map.
カテゴリから (From category)	Selects a category to display a map.
履歴から (From history)	Displays a previously-viewed map.
登録地点から (From registered location)	Displays a map of location information registered on the FOMA terminal.

OCR検索 (OCR search)	Scans text such as address with the camera, searches by keyword and displays the map.
-----------------------	---

2 Display a map, then press (メニュー (Menu)) ▶ “周辺検索” (Peripheral search)

You can select a category or enter a keyword to find a map. Not only can you find a map, but you can also the address, phone number, timetable, etc.

■ To check a timetable

▶ (メニュー (Menu)) ▶ “周辺検索” (Peripheral search) ▶ “駅” (Station) ▶ Select a station from the small-window map ▶ “詳細” (Details) ▶ Select a line ▶ Select a direction

NOTE

- ◆ In peripheral search, the cursor on the map works as the center, and up to 5 nearest items of point information are displayed within a radius of 10km.

● Using “設定／ヘルプ” (Settings/Help)

1 While running this software (メニュー (Menu)) ▶ “設定／ヘルプ” (Settings/Help) ▶ Select any item

利用状況確認 (Check usage status)	Checks if you have subscribed to “ゼンリン/地図+ナビN” (ZENRIN Maps + Navi N).
アプリ設定 (Application settings)	
• 地図／メニュー (Map/Menu)	Makes the general settings for the software such as the map display color or Neuropointer.
• ナビ設定 (Navi settings)	Makes the common settings for 地図+ナビ (Navi) and ナビ (Navi) such as the guide, route display or walking speed.
ご利用案内 (Guide & Help)	Displays the usage, FAQ and usage regulations.

<Permit to send loc.>

Providing Current Location Information on Request

Default setting
OFF

Set the location information to be provided when it is requested by a third party set for location request services such as DoCoMo's imadoco-search.

- To use a location request service, a subscription to the service provider may be required. The service charges may apply.
- To use a location request service, you need to set “Permit to send loc.” under “Request menu” (p.312) to “ON”. It may be required to make the setting for each service.
- To use a location request service, see the service provider's or DoCoMo's website.

Accepting/rejecting location request

Set whether to provide the current location information when it is requested by the other party.

- “Operations when you set the period to accept location request” → p.313

1 GPS settings screen (p.307) ▶ “Request menu” ▶ “Permit to send loc.” ▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select any item

ON	Provides location information on request.
OFF	Does not provide location information on request.
Permission schedule*	▶ Select any item ▶ (Finish)
• Start time	▶ Enter start time
• End time	▶ Enter end time
• Repeat	Selects “1 time”, “Daily” or “Select day”.
• Term of validity	Sets “Start date” and “End date” under “Repeat”.

* : Operations when you set the period to accept location request → p.313

NOTE

- ◆ If Permit to send loc. is set to “ON”, location information may be sent to the requestor even if you do not operate the FOMA terminal.

◆ If the same time is set to Start time and End time, the following will apply:

- When Term of validity and Repeat are not set:
Location request is accepted for 24 hours from the set time.
- When Term of validity is set:
Location request is accepted until the end time of the day after “End date”.
- When “Select day” is set under Repeat:
Location request is accepted until the end time of the day after the specified day.

Operations when you set the period to accept location request

<Example: Current time “2006/12/20 12:05”,
Start time 14:00, End time 21:00>

Repeat	Term of validity	Period for location request
1 time	—	2006/12/20 14:00 to 2006/12/20 21:00
Daily	Start date: 2006/12/25 End date: 2006/12/31	Every day from 2006/12/25 to 2006/12/31 14:00 to 21:00
	Start date: 2006/12/15 End date: 2006/12/31	Every day from 2006/12/20 to 2006/12/31 14:00 to 21:00
	1 time	Every day after 2006/12/19 14:00 to 21:00
Select day	Start date: 2006/12/25 End date: 2006/12/31	Specified day from 2006/12/25 to 2006/12/31 14:00 to 21:00
	Start date: 2006/12/15 End date: 2006/12/31	Specified day from 2006/12/20 to 2006/12/31 14:00 to 21:00
	1 time	Specified day after 2006/12/19 14:00 to 21:00

<Example: Current time “2006/12/20 12:05”,
Start time 10:00, End time 21:00>

Repeat	Term of validity	Period for location request
1 time	—	2006/12/20 12:05 to 2006/12/20 21:00
Daily	Start date: 2006/12/25 End date: 2006/12/31	Every day from 2006/12/25 to 2006/12/31 10:00 to 21:00
	Start date: 2006/12/15 End date: 2006/12/31	Every day from 2006/12/20 to 2006/12/31 10:00 to 21:00 (12:05 to 21:00 on 12/20)
	1 time	Every day after 2006/12/19 10:00 to 21:00 (12:05 to 21:00 on 12/20)
Select day	Start date: 2006/12/25 End date: 2006/12/31	Specified day from 2006/12/25 to 2006/12/31 10:00 to 21:00
	Start date: 2006/12/15 End date: 2006/12/31	2006/12/20 to 2006/12/31 10:00 to 21:00 (12:05 to 21:00 on 12/20)
	1 time	Specified day after 2006/12/19 10:00 to 21:00 (12:05 to 21:00 on 12/20)

<Example: Current time “2006/12/20 12:05”,
Start time 14:00, End time 10:00>

Repeat	Term of validity	Period for location request
1 time	—	2006/12/20 14:00 to 2006/12/21 10:00
Daily	Start date: 2006/12/25 End date: 2006/12/31	From 2006/12/25 to 2006/12/31 14:00 to next 10:00
	Start date: 2006/12/15 End date: 2006/12/31	From 2006/12/20 to 2006/12/31 14:00 to next 10:00
	1 time	After 2006/12/19 14:00 to next 10:00
Select day	Start date: 2006/12/25 End date: 2006/12/31	From 2006/12/25 to 2006/12/31 14:00 to next 10:00
	Start date: 2006/12/15 End date: 2006/12/31	From 2006/12/20 to 2006/12/31 14:00 to next 10:00
	1 time	Specified day after 2006/12/19 14:00 to next 10:00

Setting Positioning mode for Request menu

Default setting
Standard mode

- 1 GPS settings screen (p.307) ▶
“Request menu” ▶ “Positioning mode” ▶ Select any item

Standard mode	Gives priority to positioning fast.
Quality mode	Positions slowly. The result is more accurate than in Standard mode. The accuracy may not be high depending on the radio conditions, etc.

Setting the host

Set the host accessed for “Service settings”.

- There is normally no need to change this setting.

- 1 GPS settings screen (p.307) ▶
“Request menu” ▶ “Host selection”
▶ Select a host

■ To add a host

- ▶ Highlight “<Not recorded>” and press (Edit) ▶ Enter your security code ▶ Enter “Host name” and “Host address” ▶ (Finish)

■ To edit a host

- ▶ Highlight an item to edit, and press (Edit) ▶ Enter your security code ▶ Edit “Host name” and “Host address” ▶ (Finish)

■ To delete a host

- ▶ Highlight an item to delete, and press (FUNC) ▶ “Delete” ▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES”

Making Service settings

Access a host set in “Setting the host” (p.314) and make the settings for location request.

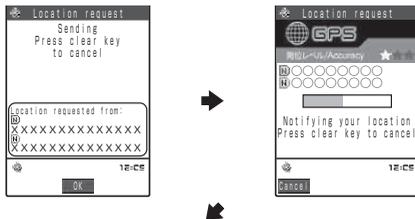
- 1 GPS settings screen (p.307) ▶
“Request menu” ▶ “Service settings” ▶ Make the settings

For how to make the settings, contact the service provider.

● If location information is requested

If location information is requested by the other party, the current location is positioned and the information is provided to the party.

- If the settings for each service are set to confirm every time before sending, a confirmation message appears.



NOTE

- ◆ (R) (recipient) and (H) (requestor) are displayed under “Location requested from”. However, if the requestor is not stored in the phonebook, the phone number or mail address (ID) (requestor ID) may be displayed.
- ◆ Sent location information may not reach the service provider depending on the radio’s strength.
- ◆ To cancel providing location information during positioning, press (Cancel). The location information may be sent depending on the timing.
- ◆ The recipient may not appear on the screen.
- ◆ In Public mode (Driving mode), the following will apply:
 - If the settings for each service are set to confirm every time before sending, location information is not provided on request.
 - If the settings for each service are set to accept location request, the ring tone, vibrator and illumination do not work but the screen appears and location information is provided.

<LCS client>

Notifying the Current Location Information

Show your current location information to service providers, etc. supporting location notification.

- Charges apply to use of the location notification function.
- To use a service supporting location notification, a subscription to the service provider may be required. The service charges may apply.
- To use the location notification function, see the service provider's or DoCoMo's website.

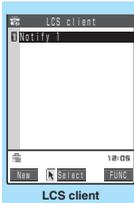
Registering a party to notify of location information

<Register LCS client>

- Up to 5 clients can be stored.
- No client is stored at the time of purchase.

- 1 GPS settings screen (p.307) ▶ “Notification menu” ▶ “Register LCS client” ▶ “LCS client”**

The “LCS client” screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.315

- 2 (New) ▶ Select any item ▶ (Finish)**

Service client name*1	▶ Enter a client name
Service client ID*2	▶ Enter a client ID
Phone number*1	▶ Enter a phone number
Notify at dialing	▶ Select “Yes”, “No” or “Confirm each calling” Sets whether to notify a registered client of location information when you make a voice/videophone call to the client. If your caller ID is not notified, location information is not notified.

*1: The item can be quoted from a phonebook entry.
▶ (FUNC) ▶ Refer to phonebook ▶ Select a phonebook entry

*2: Enter an ID specified by the service provider.

Function menu (LCS client screen)

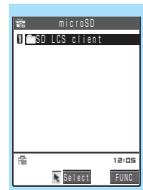
New	“Registering a party to notify of location information” → p.315
Edit	Edits the LCS client.
Add desktop icon	Pastes the LCS client as a desktop icon.
Copy to microSD	▶ Use () to select a checkbox () ▶ (Finish) Copies the selected LCS client to a microSD memory card.
Touch to send data	“Transferring One Data at a Time” → p.368
Send Ir data	
Touch to send all	“Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time” → p.369
Send all Ir data	
Add to phonebook	Adds the client name and phone number of the highlighted LCS client to the phonebook.
Delete	
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted LCS client.
• Delete selected	▶ Use () to select a checkbox () ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple LCS clients.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all the registered LCS clients.

Registering a client from a microSD memory card

- No client is stored at the time of purchase.

- 1 GPS settings screen (p.307) ▶ “Notification menu” ▶ “Register LCS client” ▶ “microSD”**

The “microSD client folder” screen appears.

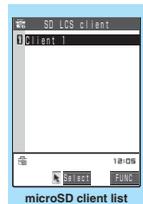


microSD client folder

Function menu ▶ p.316

- 2 Select a folder**

The “microSD client list” screen appears.



microSD client list

Function menu ▶ p.316

3 Select a client to add

The "microSD client detail" screen appears.



microSD client detail
Function menu ▶ p.316

4 (FUNC) ▶ "Copy to phone"

Function menu (microSD client folder screen)

Add folder	▶ Enter a folder name
Edit folder name	▶ Enter a folder name
Delete folder	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES"

Function menu (microSD client list screen)

Move	
• Move this	▶ Select a folder ▶ "YES" Moves the highlighted client to another folder.
• Move selected	▶ Select a folder ▶ Use (👉) to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES" Moves clients you select to another folder.
• Move all	▶ Select a folder ▶ "YES" Moves all clients from the folder to another folder.
Copy	
• Copy this	▶ Select a folder Copies the highlighted client.
• Copy selected	▶ Select a folder ▶ Use (👉) to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES" Copies clients you select.
• Copy all	▶ Select a folder Copies all clients in the folder.
Copy to phone	▶ Use (👉) to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES" Copies the selected client to the phone.
microSD info	Displays the amounts of available space and data stored on the microSD memory card.
Delete	
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted client.
• Delete selected	▶ Use (👉) to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes clients you select.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all clients in the folder.

Function menu (microSD client detail screen)

Move	▶ Select a folder ▶ "YES" Moves the displayed client to another folder.
Copy	
• Copy this	▶ Select a folder Copies the displayed client.
• Copy selected	▶ Select a folder ▶ Use (👉) to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES" Copies clients you select.
• Copy all	▶ Select a folder Copies all clients in the folder.
Copy to phone	Copies the displayed client to the phone.
Delete	
• Delete this	Deletes the displayed client.
• Delete selected	▶ Use (👉) to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes clients you select.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all clients in the folder.

Selecting a party to notify of location information <Location notification>

1 GPS menu screen (p.307) ▶ "Location notification" ▶ Select a client

The current location is positioned and the information is notified.

■ To enter a client directly

- ▶ "Enter client ID" ▶ Enter a client ID ▶ (Set)

NOTE

◆ Even if the latitude and longitude are stored in "Location history" (p.317), the information may not have reached the other party depending on the radio's strength.

Setting Positioning mode for Location notification

Default setting
Standard mode

1 GPS settings screen (p.307) ▶ "Notification menu" ▶ "Positioning mode" ▶ Select any item

Standard mode	Gives priority to positioning fast.
Quality mode	Positions slowly. The result is more accurate than in Standard mode. The accuracy may not be high depending on the radio conditions, etc.

Viewing Location History

You can use the history of location information to view a map (DoCoMo site), run compatible i-appli or add information to a still image.

- Up to 50 location logs can be recorded. If the number of logs exceeds the maximum, the logs are overwritten starting with the oldest one.

1 GPS menu screen (p.307)▶ “Location history”

The “Location history list” screen appears.

■ Guide to the Location history list screen

① The function name appears.

② The date and time appear.

Position : Position location
Notify : Location notification
Permission : Location request

Location history list
Function menu▶p.317

■ Guide to the Location history detail screen

- Select an item from the “Location history list” screen (p.317), and the “Location history detail” screen appears.

① The date and time appear.
② The function name appears.
③ The latitude (N) and longitude (E) of the location are described in degrees, minutes and seconds.
④ wgs84 (World Geodetic System datum) appears.
⑤ The positioning accuracy appears.
⑥ The client name of the notification or the recipient name of the request appears.
⑦ The client ID of the notification or the recipient ID of the request appears.
⑧ The requestor name of the request appears.
⑨ The requestor ID of the request appears.

Location history detail
Function menu▶p.317

- ① The date and time appear.
- ② The function name appears.
- ③ The latitude (N) and longitude (E) of the location are described in degrees, minutes and seconds.
- ④ wgs84 (World Geodetic System datum) appears.
- ⑤ The positioning accuracy appears.
- ⑥ The client name of the notification or the recipient name of the request appears.
- ⑦ The client ID of the notification or the recipient ID of the request appears.
- ⑧ The requestor name of the request appears.
- ⑨ The requestor ID of the request appears.

* : A reference point used for describing a point on the earth's surface, in latitude and longitude.

NOTE

- ◆The displayed accuracy is only an approximation, which may differ from the actual one.
- ◆If positioning fails, the log cannot be used for any functions other than “Mail to requestor”, “Dialing requestor” and “Delete”.

- ◆ Even if the latitude and longitude are displayed in a location history log, the information may not have reached the recipient or requestor depending on the radio's strength.

Function menu (Location history list/detail screen)

Read a Map	Accesses the i-mode site and displays the peripheral map, etc. using the location information.
Run i-appli	Displays a list of GPS-compatible i-appli programs.
Paste to mail	Pastes the location information URL into an i-mode message to compose a new message.
Dialing requestor	Makes a call if the requestor ID is a phone number. “Phone To function” → p.222
Mail to requestor	Displays the New mail screen with the mail address entered if the requestor ID is a mail address.
Add to Phonebook	Adds location information to the phonebook.
Attach to image	▶Select an image▶“YES” Adds location information to the image.
Delete	
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted log.
• Delete selected	▶Use to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish)▶“YES” Deletes multiple logs.
• Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶“YES” Deletes all the logs.

Using the GPS Function

- The GPS function continues to be performed even if a call or mail message is received.
- Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss or damage, due to loss of opportunity such as positioning (communicating) result check, resulting from external causes such as failure, malfunction or battery death of the FOMA terminal or blackout.
- The FOMA terminal cannot be used to navigate an aircraft, vehicle, person, etc. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss or damage resulting from use of location information.
- The FOMA terminal cannot be used as an accurate positioning GPS device. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss or damage arising from positioning error.

- Position location, Location request and Location notification are not available under the following conditions:

Function	Condition
Position location	When  appears, during a videophone call, in Self mode, in Keypad lock, in Dial lock, in Omakase lock, when the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted
Location notification	When  appears, in Self mode, in Keypad lock, in Dial lock, in Omakase lock, when the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted
Location request	When  appears, during positioning, in Self mode, when the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted

NOTE

- ◆ You may need to subscribe to i-mode.
- ◆ GPS is operated by the U.S. Department of Defense. Depending on the defense of the United States, the GPS radio waves may be controlled (accuracy deterioration, radio wave interference, etc.).
- ◆ GPS uses radio signals broadcast by satellites. The FOMA terminal cannot or hardly can receive the radio waves under the following conditions:
 - In or under a building
 - In a tunnel, under the ground or water
 - In a bag or box
 - Buildings or houses crowded
 - In a jungle
 - Near a high pressure line
 - In a car or train
 - Bad weather such as heavy rain or snow
 - Some interference (person, thing, etc.) around the mobile phone
 - A hand covering the display, control keys, microphone, speaker, etc. of the mobile phone
 In these cases, the error of the location information may be larger than 300m.
- ◆ The GPS satellites are always moving. Even in the same environment, the signal reception is always varying. A large error may occur, or location may not be positioned.

Using location information on a site, ToruCa, etc.

● Sending location information

Select a link on a site, ToruCa, etc. that can be used to send location information.

<Example: To send location information to a link destination>

- 1 Site screen (p.209) ▶ Select a link that can be used to send location information ▶ Select any item

Position location	Obtains and sends the current location information.
Location history	Sends location information from a log.
Phonebook	Searches for a phonebook entry and sends location information stored in the entry.

● Using location information

Select a link with location information added on a site, ToruCa, etc., and you can use the location information.

<Example: To use location information added to a link destination>

- 1 Site screen (p.209) ▶ Select a link with location information added ▶ Select any item

Read a Map	Accesses the i-mode site and displays the peripheral map, etc. using the location information.
Paste to mail	Pastes the location information URL into an i-mode message to compose a new message.
Run i-appli	Displays a list of GPS-compatible i-appli programs (that can use location information).

● Full Browser

Displaying Website Designed for PC	Full Browser	320
Setting Full Browser.....	Full Browser settings	325

Home URL, bookmark and other data registered in full browser are not available for i-mode.
Furthermore, the settings performed in full browser are invalid for i-mode.

1 "Internet (Full Browser)"

The "Full Browser menu" screen appears.

2 Select any item



Home	Shows a website with the URL registered as home URL. If no home URL is registered, the screen for registering the home URL appears.
Bookmark^{*1}	Shows a website registered as bookmark.
Last URL	Shows the website you visited last.
Enter URL^{*2}	Enters a URL to display the website.
Full Browser settings	"Setting Full Browser" → p.325

*1: For information on how to use bookmarks, see the pages describing the i-mode bookmark operation. → p.215

*2: For information on how to enter URLs, see the pages describing the URL entry in i-mode. → p.214

■ When the confirmation message asking whether to use full browser appears

The default setting of "Access setting" (setting whether to use full browser) is "OFF".

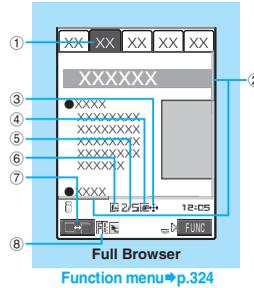
When "OFF" is set for "Access setting", the confirmation message asking whether to use full browser appears. Read the given notes carefully and perform the setting.

When you select "Yes" on the confirmation message, "ON" is set for "Access setting" (p.325) and the setting will be retained.

NOTE

- ◆ It may take time to display some websites.
- ◆ You cannot save a page displayed in full browser as a screen memo.
- ◆ Websites displayed in full browser cannot be viewed in i-mode.
- ◆ Full browser does not support Flash movie and PDF.
- ◆ The Phone To function is unavailable in full browser.
- ◆ Be sure to insert the FOMA card (UIM) before setting "Access setting".
- ◆ You cannot view the home URL site in full browser even when pressing  on the standby screen.
- ◆ When "Access setting" is set to "ON" and the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced, the "Access setting" changes to "OFF".

Full Browser screen



- ① **Tab**
Indicates the title of the displayed page (if there is no title, the URL is displayed). As many tabs as the number of pages displayed simultaneously appear.
- ② **Scroll bar**
Indicates the current location in the displayed page. → p.322
- ③  **Original layout**
Appears when Original layout mode is used. → p.322
- ④  **Selected frame display icon**
Indicates that the selected frame (p.323) appears.
- ⑤  **Number of activated multi windows**
Indicates the order and number of activated windows. → p.323
- ⑥  **"Flash" flashes when another frame is in communication while the selected frame is shown (p.323). "Flash" flashes when another frame is in communication while multiple windows are active (p.323).**
- ⑦  **Change window icon**
Pressing  () switches pages when multiple websites are open.
- ⑧ **FB**
Appears during connection to the Internet in full browser mode.

● Changing display mode

You can switch the display mode between Original layout and Mobile layout on the Full Browser screen.

- The default mode can be set in "Full Browser settings" (p.325).
- You can switch the current display mode between Original layout and Mobile layout by using the function menu.
- The display mode is retained when full browser is exit. The same display mode is applied the next time full browser is activated.

■ Original layout

Websites are displayed in the similar size to the display of 800 dots wide × 600 dots high on a PC. You can view websites by scrolling vertically and horizontally.

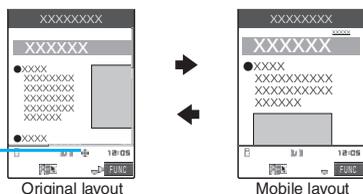
■ Mobile layout

Websites are displayed in the width of a FOMA terminal display. Only vertical scrolling is required for viewing websites (horizontal scrolling is not needed).

1 Full Browser screen (p.321) (FUNC) ▶ “Change disp. mode”

The display mode is switched between Original layout and Mobile layout.

When the display mode is switched, the top of the current page is shown in Mobile layout mode and the upper left area is shown in Original layout mode.



Original layout mode display
Indicates that you can scroll in 4 directions (up, down, left, right).

NOTE

- ◆ When you use “Display Mode setting” (p.325) under “Full Browser settings”, select the zoom factor of the display size or the font size after selecting the display mode.

● Using the landscape screen

You can use the landscape screen to display a page on the Full Browser screen in Original layout mode.

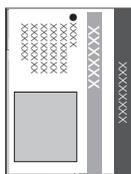
1 Full Browser screen (p.321) (FUNC) ▶ “Change side mode”

The page is displayed on the landscape screen.

■ To return to the portrait screen

▶ CLR

You can also return to the portrait screen by selecting “Release side mode” from the function menu.



NOTE

- ◆ You cannot change the zoom factor of the display size for the landscape screen. The zoom factor is always 100%.

● Scrolling

When the whole page is not displayed on the Full Browser screen, you can view the remaining part by scrolling the screen.

■ To scroll using

Press to scroll down, and to scroll up on the Full Browser screen (in Original layout and Mobile layout modes).

Press to scroll right, and to scroll left on the Full Browser screen (only in Original layout mode).

The screen is scrolled continuously in the direction you press and hold.

■ To scroll using (MEMO/CHECK) or (MEMO/CHECK)

Press (MEMO/CHECK) to scroll down one screen, or to scroll up one screen on the Full Browser screen. Furthermore, pressing (MEMO/CHECK) for 1 second or longer enables you to jump to the bottom of the page and for 1 second or longer to jump to the top of the page.

■ To scroll using the Neupointer

Slide to move the cursor to the direction you want to scroll. When the cursor reaches the edge of screen, the cursor changes to (depending on the scroll direction).

In Original layout mode, you can scroll a screen in 4 directions (up, down, left, right).

In Mobile layout mode, you can scroll a screen in 2 directions (up and down).

■ To switch to scroll mode

Select “Scroll mode” from “Browser settings” in the Full Browser function menu (p.324) to switch to scroll mode. In scroll mode, the screen is scrolled in the direction where is slid. Keep moving the cursor to scroll a screen continuously.

In Original layout mode, you can scroll 360 degrees (8 directions).

In Mobile layout mode, you can scroll in 2 directions (up and down).

Scroll mode can be set/released by pressing on the Full Browser screen.

● Returning to the previous page/ going to the next page

Press to return to the page previously displayed before the current page. To go back to the original page, press (only in Mobile layout mode).

Use the function menu to return to the previous page or go to the next page in Original layout mode. → p.325

● Using multi window

You can open up to five websites simultaneously in full browser.

- Switch the multi-opened websites one by one.

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot arrange the multi-opened websites side-by-side.

- 1 Full Browser screen (p.321) (FUNC) ▶ “Open new window” ▶ Select any item

Bookmark ^{*1}	Shows the website registered as bookmark.
Enter URL ^{*2}	Enters a URL to display the website.
Display home	Shows the website registered as home URL.
Link	Opens the link selected (highlighted) in a website.

*1: For information on how to use bookmarks, see the pages describing the i-mode bookmark operation. → p.215

*2: For information on how to enter URLs, see the pages describing the URL entry in i-mode. → p.214

The selected website opens with a new window.

■ To display other pages

Press () to change pages to display. If “Tab setting” is set to “ON”, you can also change pages by using the Neuropointer.

■ To close a page

- ▶ Display the page you want to close (FUNC) ▶ “Close window” ▶ “YES”

NOTE

- ◆ You can change websites to display from the function menu.

- ▶ Full Browser screen (p.321) (FUNC) ▶ “Change window” ▶ Select the title of the website

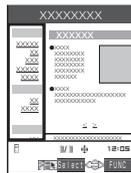
- ◆ Some websites contain a link set to open the websites using new windows. When you select such link, the website will open with a new window.

● Displaying a page composed of frames

You can view websites composed of frames that are designed for PC.

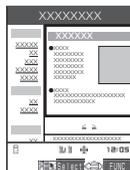
- You can select a frame to display.

- 1 Full Browser screen (p.321) ▶ Display a page composed of frames

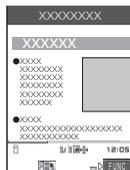


- 2 Use to select a frame

The selected frame appears. Neuropointer is also available to select frames.



All frames



Selected frame

■ To return to the all-frames screen

- ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “All frames”

Pressing (CLR) also returns to the all-frames screen.

NOTE

- ◆ For a website including several frames, all the frames may not be displayed (resulting in frames without characters or images).

● Displaying a desired portion of the entire page

You can view a desired portion of the entire page on the Full Browser screen in Original layout mode.

- 1 Full Browser screen (p.321) (FUNC) ▶ “Zoom” ▶ “Page size fitting”

The entire page is displayed with a zoom factor of 60%.

- 2 Use to select a desired portion to display

The selected portion appears in the same size as before “Page size fitting” was selected. Neuropointer is also available to select the desired portion.

● Uploading images

Upload JPEG or GIF images stored in your FOMA terminal to websites.

- Procedure for uploading images depends on websites. Follow the procedure described on the website you visit.

NOTE

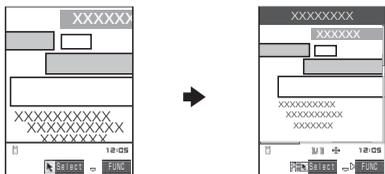
- ◆ You cannot upload multiple images that exceed 80K bytes in total or data in which the selected image and other data exceed 100K bytes in total.
- ◆ Some websites may not support uploading function.
- ◆ You cannot upload images that are not allowed to be output to a device other than the FOMA terminal.

● Switching from i-mode to full browser

Switch to full browser to display websites incompatible with i-mode.

1 Website screen displayed in i-mode

► (FUNC) ► “Switch to FB” ► “YES”



Switch to full browser to correctly display websites incompatible with i-mode (e.g. websites designed for PC). Some websites may not be displayed or be displayed incorrectly.

NOTE

- ◆ Websites displayed in full browser cannot be viewed in i-mode.
- ◆ If the display mode is changed to full browser during character entry, the entered characters are cleared.
- ◆ The packet communication fee for using full browser is charged separately from “Pake-Houdai”.

● Using keys to display a website

The functions assigned to the keys are listed below:

Key	Description
	“Scrolling” → p.322
[1]	Zooms out the display size of a site.*
[2]	“Displaying a desired portion of the entire page” → p.323
[3]	Zooms in the display size of a site.*
[4]	Goes back one page from the current page.
[5]	Displays the Bookmark folder list screen.
[6]	Returns to the screen that had been displayed before performing [4] (“History back”).
[7]	“Using multi window” → p.323
[8]	Closes the displayed window.
[9]	“Using the landscape screen” → p.322
[0]	Shows a description of an operation assigned to a key.

* : Changes the font size when the site is displayed in Mobile layout mode.

Function menu (Full Browser screen)

Add bookmark * ¹	Adds the site to the bookmark list.
Bookmark * ¹	Opens the Bookmark folder list screen.
Save image	► Use to select an image, then press (SET) ► “YES” ► Select a folder Saves the image in the displayed page. When selecting an image in Original layout mode, press to go down, or to go up.
Enter URL * ²	Enters a URL to display the website.
Change side mode, Release side mode	“Using the landscape screen” → p.322
Open new window	“Using multi window” → p.323
Close window	Closes the displayed window.
Zoom * ³	Selects the zoom factor of display size from “250%”, “200%”, “150%”, “100%”, “60%” or “Page size fitting”. For “Page size fitting”, see “Displaying a desired portion of the entire page”. → p.323
Change window	Switches windows when multiple websites are open.
All frames	Returns to the all frames screen.
Change disp. mode	“Changing display mode” → p.321
Reload	Refreshes the displayed page.
Compose message	Pastes the URL of the displayed page to compose an i-mode message.

Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.147
History back	Goes back one page from the current page.
History forward	Returns to the screen that had been displayed before performing "History back".
Change CHR code	Changes the character code to redisplay a page displayed incorrectly.
Home	
• Set as home URL	Registers the URL of the displayed page as the home URL. One URL can be stored.
• Display home	Displays the page of home URL.
Site info	
• Title	Displays the title of the displayed page.
• URL	Displays the URL of the displayed page.
• Certificate	Displays the TLS/SSL certificate details when the displayed page supports TLS/SSL.
Browser settings	
• Set image disp.	Sets whether to display images. When "OFF" is set, "🖼️" appears instead of images.
• Tab setting	Sets whether to display the tab. If the tab is displayed, the title of the displayed page is displayed. You can use the tab to switch the websites when multiple websites are open. → p.323
• Referer setting	"Setting Referer" → p.326
• Cookie settings	"Setting Cookie" → p.326
• Retry	Plays an animation in the displayed page from the beginning.
• Scroll mode	"To switch to scroll mode" → p.322
• Delete Cookies	"Deleting Cookie" → p.326
Help	Shows a description of an operation assigned to a key. You can select any items except those grayed out.

*1: For information on how to use bookmarks, see the pages describing the i-mode bookmark operation. → p.215

*2: For information on how to enter URLs, see the pages describing the URL entry in i-mode. → p.214

*3: In Mobile layout mode, "Change font size" menu appears instead. Select from "Standard", "Small" or "Large".

NOTE

<Save image>

◆ PNG and BMP images are automatically saved in an "OUDXXX" (XXX are numerals) folder under the "OTHER" folder of the microSD memory card. → p.354

<Scroll mode>

◆ Pressing  on a site screen also switches to/cancels Scroll mode.

<Full Browser settings>

Setting Full Browser

1 Full Browser menu screen (p.321) ▶ "Full Browser settings" ▶ Select any item

Access setting	Sets whether to use full browser. → p.321
Home URL	Sets the home URL.
Scroll	Sets the scroll speed and whether to display linked pages.
• Speed	Selects the speed for scrolling pages from "High speed" or "Low speed".
• During scroll in focus	Sets whether to highlight the pages (linked pages) when scrolling a website.
Set image disp.	Sets whether to display images. When "OFF" is set, "🖼️" appears instead of images.
Cookie settings	"Setting Cookie" → p.326
Delete Cookies	"Deleting Cookie" → p.326
Referer setting	"Setting Referer" → p.326
Display Mode setting	"Changing display mode" → p.321
Tab setting	Sets whether to display the tab. If the tab is displayed, the title of the displayed page is displayed. You can use the tab to switch the websites when multiple websites are open. → p.323
Script setting	▶ "Valid" or "Invalid" Sets whether to validate JavaScript [*] when a website is displayed. Some websites may be displayed incorrectly unless "Script setting" is set to "Valid".
Window Open Guard	▶ "Valid" or "Invalid" Sets whether to automatically open a new window by using JavaScript [*] . Setting to "Valid" does not open a window automatically.
Check settings	Enables you to check the contents of "Full Browser settings".
Reset last URL	Clears the stored last URL. No "last URL" remains after this operation is performed.
Reset	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Returns the full browser settings to default.

* : JavaScript is a programming language that can be included on web pages to make them more interactive.

Cookie

Default setting
Valid

Using Cookie* enables you to effectively access the websites that you have seen once.

- You can set or delete Cookie from the Full Browser settings or function menu on the Full Browser screen.

* : Cookie is the mechanism for temporarily saving the date you accessed the website, number of accesses and your other information. The information is sent from server, saved temporarily in your FOMA terminal and used for contents service.

If Cookie is sent, the information such as date you accessed the website and number of accesses is also sent to the site. Please note that NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any reveal of your information to third parties because of sending Cookie. However, some websites and contents services require you to validate the Cookie setting for their correct display and use.

● Setting Cookie

- 1 Full Browser menu screen (p.321)▶
“Full Browser settings”▶“Cookie settings”▶Select any item

Valid	Always validates Cookie. No confirmation is made when Cookie is sent or received.
Invalid	Always invalidates Cookie.
Notify (sending)	Enables you to choose whether to send Cookie every time you connect to a page. No confirmation is made when Cookie is received and the information is saved in your FOMA terminal.
Notify (receiving)	Enables you to choose whether to receive Cookie every time you connect to a page. No confirmation is made when Cookie is sent.
Notify (send/recv.)	Enables you to choose whether to send or receive Cookie every time you connect to a page.

NOTE

- ◆ Expired Cookies are deleted in the ascending order of no use when the number and size of Cookies exceed the maximum limit.
- ◆ The all Cookies stored in your FOMA terminal are deleted when “Reset” is performed.
- ◆ When “Notify” is set, some websites may continuously display message screens asking whether to send and receive (update) Cookie.

● Deleting Cookie

- 1 Full Browser menu screen (p.321)▶
“Full Browser settings”▶“Delete Cookies”▶Enter your security code▶“YES”

The all Cookies stored in your FOMA terminal are deleted. (You cannot delete them separately.)

Referer

Default setting
Send

You can set whether to send Referer*.

* : Referer is a source of link information. Sending Referer transfers information such as the page from which you access the site. Please note that NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any reveal of your information to third parties because of sending Referer. However, you may not access the linked pages in some websites unless Referer is sent.

● Setting Referer

- 1 Full Browser menu screen (p.321)▶
“Full Browser settings”▶“Referer setting”▶Select any item

Send	Sends Referer.
Unsend	Does not send Referer.
Notify	Confirms whether to send Referer.

NOTE

- ◆ When “Notify” is set, the message asking whether to send Referer appears continuously depending on the website.

● Display/Edit/Organization

■ Mastering still images

Data Box		328
Displaying Still Images.....	My picture	330
Editing Images	Edit image	336

■ Mastering movies

Playing Movies/i-motion	i-motion	338
Editing Movies	Edit movie	343
Moving Movies/i-motion to a microSD Memory Card.....	Movable contents	344

■ Mastering Chara-den

What is Chara-den?.....	Chara-den	345
-------------------------	-----------	-----

■ Mastering melodies

Playing Melodies.....	Melody	349
-----------------------	--------	-----

■ Mastering Kisekae Tool

Using Kisekae Tool	Kisekae Tool	351
--------------------------	--------------	-----

■ Mastering memory cards

microSD Memory Card		352
Data that can be Exchanged Between the FOMA Terminal and a microSD Memory Card		356
Using the microSD Memory Card.....	SD-PIM	356
Managing the microSD Memory Card		360
Using the FOMA Terminal as a microSD Reader/Writer		360

■ Mastering various data

Working with Folders and Files.....		362
Preventing Phonebook Image Forwarding.....	Forwarding image	365

■ Transferring data via Infrared data exchange/cable connection

Transferring Data via Infrared Data Exchange/ iC Communication/Cable Connection	Infrared data exchange/iC communication/OBEX	365
Transferring One Data at a Time		368
Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time		369
Using the Infrared Remote Control Function		371

■ Mastering PDF viewer

Viewing PDF Data	My document	371
------------------------	-------------	-----

■ Mastering Document viewer

Viewing Documents	Document viewer	376
-------------------------	-----------------	-----

■ Printing a still image

Printing Stored Images	PictBridge print	379
------------------------------	------------------	-----

Data Box

The following items and folders are prepared for Data box, and still images or movies shot with the built-in camera or data downloaded from messages or websites are categorized into the folders.

- The following are the maximum numbers of files that can be stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone):
 My picture: 720 including images you shoot
 Music: 100
 i-motion: 100 including movies you shoot
 Melody: 400
 My document: 400 PDF documents
 Chara-den: 10 including characters preinstalled at the time of purchase
 Kisekae Tool: 100 including packages preinstalled at the time of purchase
 Up to 100 data, up to 2M bytes can be stored in Secret under My picture, and up to 10 data, up to 2M bytes in Secret under i-motion.
- Up to 20 folders can be added to My picture, Music, i-motion, Melody and My document, respectively.
- Data stored in My picture, Music, i-motion, Melody and My document can be moved to another folder in the same item.

My picture

Folder	File format	Content
Inbox Camera	JPEG, GIF, SWF ¹	All images can be saved here. Images copied from a microSD memory card or transferred via Infrared data exchange are saved to the Inbox. Still images shot using Chara-den are saved to the Camera folder.
Decomail-picture		Deco-mail images preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored. Images can be saved here as well as to Inbox and Camera folders.
Decorate PI ²		Decorate PI that are downloaded, preinstalled at the time of purchase or attached to mail messages or copied to a microSD memory card are saved here.
Auto Decomail		Images downloaded for Auto Decomail are categorized into emotions.
Pre-installed		Preinstalled images and animations for the standby screen or wake-up are stored.
Secret ³		Stores images that you want to prevent others from viewing.

Folder	File format	Content
(User-created folders 1 to 20)	JPEG, GIF, SWF ¹	Images can be saved here as well as to Inbox and Camera folders.
Original animation	—	Animations created in Continuous mode or original animations are stored.
microSD Picture	JPEG, GIF	Still images you shot, JPEG images/GIF images copied from the FOMA terminal, JPEG images/GIF images and animations copied from a PC, etc. to a microSD memory card are stored.
microSD Decorate PI		Decorate PI that are copied from the FOMA terminal or saved from a PC into a microSD memory card are stored.
microSD Image Box		GIF animations that are copied from the FOMA terminal or JPEG images/GIF animations that are saved from a PC into a microSD memory card are stored. → p.354
Frame	IFM	Frames stored at the time of purchase are stored. Frames downloaded or acquired via ToruCa will be saved.
Stamp		Marker stamps preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored. Marker stamps downloaded or acquired via ToruCa will be saved.
Face stamp	FSD	Face stamps preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored. Downloaded face stamps will be saved.

Music

Folder	File format	Content
Playlist	—	Playlists created on the FOMA terminal are saved.
Inbox	3GP	Music data can be saved here.
Pre-installed		Music data preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored.
SD-Audio	SA1	Music data transferred from a PC, etc. to a microSD memory card are stored.
Movable contents	SB2	Music data moved between the FOMA terminal and a microSD memory card (data stored on a microSD memory card) are saved here.
(User-created folders 1 to 20)	3GP	Music data can be saved here.

i-motion

Folder	File format	Content
Inbox	MP4	All movies or i-motion can be saved here. Movies or i-motion copied/ moved from a microSD memory card or transferred via Infrared data exchange are saved to the Inbox. Movies shot using Chara-den are saved to the Camera folder.
Camera		
Pre-installed		
Secret ^{*3}		
(User-created folders 1 to 20)		Movies and i-motion can be saved here as well as to Inbox and Camera folders.
microSD SD Video ^{*4}	MP4, ASF ^{*5}	Movies you shot, movies or i-motion copied from the FOMA terminal, or movies transferred from a PC, etc. to a microSD memory card are stored.
microSD Multimedia ^{*6}		
Movable contents	SB1	Movies or i-motion moved between the FOMA terminal and a microSD memory card (data stored on a microSD memory card) are saved here.
Playlist ^{*7}	—	—

Melody

Folder	File format	Content
Inbox	SMF, MFi	All melodies can be saved here. Melodies copied from a microSD memory card or transferred via Infrared data exchange are saved to the Inbox.
Pre-installed	MFi	Melodies or sound effects preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored.
(User-created folders 1 to 20)	SMF, MFi	Melodies can be saved here as well as to Inbox.
Voice announce	—	Messages recorded using Voice announce are stored.
microSD	SMF, MFi	Melodies copied from the FOMA terminal or saved from a PC, etc. to a microSD memory card are stored.
Playlist ^{*7}	—	—

My document

Folder	File format	Content
Inbox	PDF	PDF documents preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored. All PDF documents can be saved here. PDF documents copied from a microSD memory card or transferred via Infrared data exchange are saved to the Inbox.
(User-created folders 1 to 20)		PDF documents can be saved here as well as to Inbox.
microSD		PDF documents copied from the FOMA terminal or transferred from a PC, etc. to a microSD memory card are stored.

Chara-den

Folder	File format	Content
—	AFD	Chara-den characters preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored. Downloaded Chara-den characters will be saved.

Kisekai Tool

Folder	File format	Content
—	UCM, UCP	Packages stored at the time of purchase are stored. Downloaded packages will be saved.

Document viewer

Folder	File format	Content
microSD	Word, Excel, PowerPoint	Documents attached to mail messages or saved from a PC, etc. to a microSD memory card are stored.

*1 : SWF is a file format for Flash movies.

*2 : Only Decorate PI (20 dots wide x 20 dots high, file unrestricted) can be saved.

*3 : The options appear only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. The folder cannot contain images/ i-motion stored at the time of purchase.

*4 : Movies or i-motion with video will be saved.

*5 : ASF format is play-only.

*6 : Voice-only movies or i-motion without video will be saved.

*7 : Playlist is a folder used for playlist playback. The folder cannot contain data and cannot be deleted.

Important

- It is recommended to copy data stored in the Data box to a microSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC by using a microSD memory card or by using the DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.430) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional). (Images, movies or melodies that are not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal cannot be stored on a microSD memory card or transferred to a PC.)
- Stored data may be lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility for data loss. Save the data to a microSD memory card, or use the DoCoMo keitai datalink to save the data to your PC just in case.

Displaying Still Images

Still images shot with the built-in camera, downloaded from websites or stored on a microSD memory card appear in My picture under the Data box.

- An image cannot be displayed if the width or height exceeds 2,304 dots, if the size exceeds 2,304 dots wide × 1,728 dots high or if the file size exceeds 2M bytes. Also, a progressive JPEG image larger than 690 dots wide × 480 dots high or whose width or height exceeds 690 dots cannot be displayed. Progressive JPEG images → p.218

1 "Data box" → "My picture"

The "Folder list" screen appears. The "Secret" folder appears in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. Content in My picture → p.328



Function menu → p.362

2 Select a folder

The "Image list (Picture list)" screen appears. Picture list screen → p.330



Function menu → p.332

3 Select an image

The "My picture" screen appears. Use ⏪ to view the previous or next image.



Function menu → p.333

To zoom in an image



The image is zoomed in.

⏪: Zooms in by one step each time you press the key.

⏩: Zooms out by one step each time you press the key.

To return to the original zoom, press ⏪ (Back).

If the image does not fit in the screen, use ⏪ or Neupointer to scroll the image.

NOTE

- ♦ If an image is displayed in the actual size, you cannot use ⏪ to view the previous or next image, or use the function menu.
- ♦ Original animation, animation GIF or Flash movie cannot be enlarged.
- ♦ It may take some time to display images if a lot of data are stored on the FOMA terminal or on a microSD memory card.

- ♦ Flash movies are played at the volume set in "Phone" under the "Ring volume" settings. If "Step" is set, Flash movies are played at volume "Level 2".

Displaying images stored on a microSD memory card

1 Folder list screen (p.330) → "microSD" → "Picture", "Decorate PI" or "Image Box"

The "microSD folder list" screen appears.



Function menu → p.362

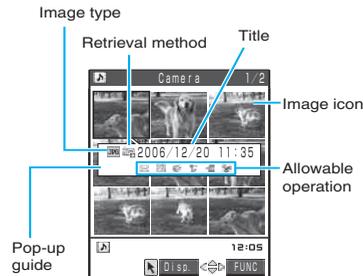
2 Select a folder → Select an image

Guide to the Picture list and Title list

Picture list

Nine images* stored on the FOMA terminal appear on the screen at a time, and the title of the selected image appears in a popup guide. Popup icons show the image type, the image retrieval method, and the settings that can be specified for the image.

* : Four images appear simultaneously as for the images stored on a microSD memory card (Picture).



Title list

Titles of nine images are listed on the screen. Popup icons show the image type, the image retrieval method, and the settings that can be specified for the image.

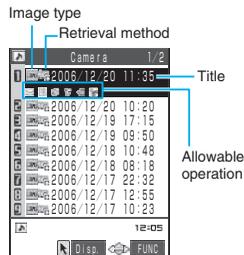


Image type icon

Icon	Description
	JPEG image* ¹
	GIF image* ¹
	GIF (IFM) frame, marker stamp* ¹
	FSD face stamp
	SWF Flash movie
	MP4 movie/i-motion* ¹
	MP4 i-motion with sound effects* ¹
	ASF i-motion
	MP4 i-motion with playback restrictions* ²
	MP4 i-motion with sound effects and playback restrictions* ²
	i-motion that can be moved to the FOMA terminal (Phone)* ⁵
	Sound-effected i-motion that can be moved to the FOMA terminal (Phone)* ⁵
	i-motion that is not allowed to be moved to the FOMA terminal (Phone)
	AFD Chara-den characters
	Image to which the FOMA card operational restriction applies

*1 : “ ” is added to icons for data that are file-restricted or not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal. The data cannot be transferred via mail, Infrared data exchange or iC communication, except if it was shot with the FOMA terminal and file restrictions are set.

*2 : “ ” turns to “ ” when the playback count reaches the limit or playback period expires.

*3 : i-motion can be moved only if the FOMA card being used was also used to save the i-motion.

*4 : i-motion can be moved only if the FOMA model and FOMA card being used were also used to save the i-motion.

*5 : “ ” appears for i-motion with playback count and playback period restrictions. “ ” turns to “ ” when the playback count reaches the limit or the playback period expires.

Retrieval method icon

Icon	Description
No icon	Data stored at the time of purchase
	Data downloaded from a site, message or ToruCa, or acquired from i-appli
	Data shot with the camera
	Data copied from a microSD memory card or PC, acquired via Infrared data exchange, iC communication or Bar code reader
	Chara-den shots
	Frame/Marker stamp/Facestamp
	Data clipped from a PDF document

Allowable operation icon

The icon does not appear if the data is stored on a microSD memory card (Image Box).

Icon	Description
	Movies/i-motion of QVGA (320 dots wide × 240 dots high). Appears only in folders under i-motion.
	Movies/i-motion of VGA (640 dots wide × 480 dots high). Appears only in folders under i-motion.
	Can be attached to an i-mode message (2M bytes or smaller)
	Can be inserted into a Deco-mail message
	Can be set for a screen
	Can be set as a ring tone
	Contains location information
	Can be transferred via Infrared data exchange or iC communication
	Can be copied to a microSD memory card
	Can be edited
	i-motion that can be moved to a microSD memory card
	Larger than 2M bytes. Appears only in the microSD folder.

*1 : i-motion can be moved only if the FOMA card being used was also used to save the i-motion.

*2 : i-motion can be moved only if the FOMA model and FOMA card being used were also used to save the i-motion.

Titles and file names

- Still images or movies shot with the built-in camera or recorded with Chara-den are automatically titled and named.

Title: yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm
(Year/Month/Day Time)

File name: yyyymmddhhmmxxx

_____ Date and time
(xxx is replaced with a 3-digit number for still image.)

- * Still image: the time when the data is saved; Movie: the time when the shooting is finished. If the “Auto save set” is set to “OFF”, the time when the movie is saved appears.
- Original titles are assigned to downloaded i-motion and Chara-den characters.
- The file names and titles are the same for downloaded images.
- The title appears on the Image list screen of the FOMA terminal.
- The file name appears when the data is transferred to a PC.
- The 3-digit number at the end of the file name is a serial number assigned to distinguish the file from other files.
- If a file name you attempted to create contains an inappropriate character, the file is automatically renamed to “imagexxx” or “moviexxx”.

● Setting the image list display mode <Viewer settings>

- Original animations and microSD memory cards (Image Box) are always listed by title.

1  “Settings” ▶ “Display” ▶ “Viewer settings” ▶ Select any item

Picture (default)	Changes to the picture list.
Title	Changes to the title list.

Function menu (Image list screen)

- The available functions vary depending on the folders, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Edit image	“Editing Images” → p.336
Edit title	▶ Edit a title Edits the title of the selected image. The title can contain up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters. As for microSD memory card (Picture), the title can contain up to 18 double-byte or 36 single-byte characters.
Display image	Displays the selected image (displays the My picture screen).
Set as display	★ appears for items to which the image is set. ■ To set as Stand-by display ▶ Select an item ▶ Select a display mode ■ To set to screens such as Dialing or Calling ▶ Select an item ■ To set to videophone-related screens (except V.phone dialing and V.phone calling) ▶ Select an item ▶ Check the image  ▶ “YES”
Image info	“Image information” → p.334
Location info	
• Read a Map	Accesses an i-mode site (location site) via location information contained in the selected image and displays the peripheral map, etc.
• Paste to mail	Pastes location information contained in the selected image into a mail message.
• Run i-appli	Displays a list of GPS-compatible i-appli programs.
• Add to Phonebook	Adds location information contained in the selected image to a phonebook entry.
• From position loc.	Obtains your current location information and adds it to the selected image.
• From loc. history	Adds location information picked up from the location history to the selected image.
• Loc. Info detail	Checks location information contained in the selected image.

• Delete loc. info	Deletes location information contained in the selected image.
Compose message	
• Attach image	“Composing a message with an image attached” → p.334
• Insert image	“Composing a Deco-mail message” → p.335
Touch to send data	“Transferring One Data at a Time” → p.368
Send Ir data	
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons” → p.147
Copy to microSD	“Copying data stored on the FOMA terminal to a microSD memory card” → p.363
Add image to PB	Saves the selected image to a phonebook entry. → p.107
Edit file name	▶ Edit a file name Edits the file name of the selected image. The file name can contain up to 36 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols (“,”, “_”). Symbols other than “-” or “_” cannot be used.
File restriction	Sets file restrictions on the selected image.
• File unrestricted	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• File restricted	Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Move	“Moving data to another folder” → p.363
Memory info	Displays the amounts of data stored and available space on the FOMA terminal and on a microSD memory card. The amount of Secret is not included in the amount on the FOMA terminal.
Sort	Sorts images by specified criteria.
Title name, Picture	Switches between Picture and Title name.
Composite image	“Making a composite image out of 4 images” → p.335
PictBridge print	“Printing Stored Images” → p.379
Store at DSC	“Saving images to the Data Security Center” → p.334
Delete	“Deleting data” → p.364
Keep in secret¹	“Hiding Various Data” → p.160
Facestamp demo²	Checks the facestamp follow. The image is displayed normally (not mirror). If a stamp can follow facial movements, “  ” appears. If not, “  ” appears.
Copy to phone³	“Copying data stored on a microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal” → p.363
DPOF setting³	“Setting how to print images stored on a microSD memory card” → p.380
Copy³	“Copying data to another folder on a microSD memory card” → p.364

¹ : The option appears in “Secret mode” or in “Secret data only mode”. If it is the Secret folder, “Put out” appears. → p.160

- *2 : The option appears only when the folder is Face stamp.
 *3 : The options appear only for images stored on a microSD memory card.

NOTE

<Edit title>

- ◆ You may be unable to edit a title if there is little space available on the microSD memory card.
- ◆ You cannot edit the titles of images stored at the time of purchase.

<Set as display>

- ◆ Images stored in the Inbox, Camera or user-created folders can be set to the following screens:
 - Stand-by display
 - Wake-up display
 - Dialing
 - Calling
 - V.phone dialing
 - V.phone calling
 - Mail sending
 - Mail receiving
 - Checking
 - On hold
 - Holding
 - Substitute image
 - Record VP message
 - Preparing VP msg
 - VP voice memo
- ◆ Images stored in the Pre-installed folder can be set for the Stand-by display or Wake-up display.
- ◆ You cannot set an image for the screens if:
 - The width is larger than 690 dots or the height is larger than 690 dots
 - The file size exceeds 100K bytes (except Stand-by display and Wake-up display)
- ◆ Some images may not appear in the actual sizes, depending on the sizes or where they are set.
- ◆ Some images cannot be set for screens.

<Add image to PB>

- ◆ You can add an image whose size is 100K bytes or smaller and not larger than 690 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 690 dots high.
- ◆ You cannot add images other than JPEG or GIF.

<Edit file name>

- ◆ You cannot edit the file name of an image if it is:
 - Stored at the time of purchase
 - A still image of Chara-den character with "Rec.File Restriction"
 - Not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal
- ◆ You cannot use single-byte spaces for file names.

<File restriction>

- ◆ You cannot restrict an image if it is:
 - Neither JPEG nor GIF
 - A still image of Chara-den character with "Rec.File Restriction"

<Memory info>

- ◆ The displayed size is only an approximation. The amount in the Secret folder appears only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode.

<Sort>

- ◆ "By source" sorts images in the following order:
 - ① Images stored at the time of purchase
 - ② Images downloaded or acquired via i-appli or ToruCa
 - ③ Images shot with the camera
 - ④ Images copied from a microSD memory card, etc. or acquired via Infrared data exchange or iC communication
 - ⑤ Chara-den shots
 - ⑥ Images clipped out of PDF documents
- * The order may vary depending on the folder.

Function menu (My picture screen)

- The available functions vary depending on the folders, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Edit image	"Editing Images" → p.336
Set as display	▶ Select an item Sets the selected image to the standby screen, etc.
Image info	"Image information" → p.334
Location info	
• Read a Map	Accesses an i-mode site (location site) via location information contained in the displayed image and displays the peripheral map, etc.
• Paste to mail	Pastes location information contained in the image into a mail message.
• Run i-appli	Displays a list of GPS-compatible i-appli programs.
• Add to Phonebook	Adds location information contained in the displayed image to a phonebook entry.
• From position loc.	Obtains your current location information and adds it to the image.
• From loc. history	Adds location information picked up from the location history to the image.
• Loc. Info detail	Checks location information contained in the displayed image.
• Delete loc. Info	Deletes location information contained in the displayed image.
Compose message	
• Attach image	"Composing a message with an image attached" → p.334
• Insert image	"Composing a Deco-mail message" → p.335
Touch to send data	"Transferring One Data at a Time" → p.368
Send Ir data	
Set image disp.	Sets the display mode of an image smaller than the image display area (240 dots wide × 345 dots high or 480 dots wide × 690 dots high).
• Normal (default)	Displays an image in the actual size.
• Fit in display	Enlarges an image to the display size.
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.147
Copy to microSD	▶ Select the destination folder Copies the displayed image.
Add image to PB	Saves the displayed image to a phonebook entry. → p.107
Retry	Replays the displayed animation from the beginning.
PictBridge print	"Printing Stored Images" → p.379
Delete this	Deletes the displayed image.

Facestamp demo ^{*1}	Checks the facestamp follow. The image is displayed normally (not mirror). If a stamp can follow facial movements, “  ” appears. If not, “  ” appears.
Copy to phone ^{*2}	Copies the displayed image.
DPOF setting ^{*2}	“Setting how to print images stored on a microSD memory card” → p.380

*1 : The option appears only when the folder is Face stamp.
*2 : The option appears only for images stored on a microSD memory card.

● Saving images to the Data Security Center <Data Security Service>

Save images stored in the Inbox, Camera, Decomail-picture, Decorate PI, Auto Decomail and user-created folders under “My picture” to DoCoMo’s Data Security Center.

- To use this service, you need to subscribe to “Data Security Service”.
- If you have not subscribed to “Data Security Service”, a message appears indicating that you have not subscribed to the service. Access the site from the screen to subscribe to the service.
Data Security Service → pp.121, 175

1 Image list screen (p.330) ▶

 (FUNC) ▶ “Store at DSC”

2 Use to select images ▶

 (Finish)

Up to 10 images can be selected.

3 Enter your security code ▶ “YES”

The FOMA terminal connects to the Data Security Center to start saving the images.

4 (Finish)

NOTE

◆ You cannot save an image if the size exceeds 100K bytes, if it is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal or if it is a Decomail-picture or Decorate PI stored at the time of purchase.

■ Retrieving images

Images stored at the Data Security Center can be retrieved to the FOMA terminal. To retrieve, connect to i-mode. For more details, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

● Image information

You can check the following:

File name	The file name
File classification	The file format The format of Flash movies does not appear.
File size	The file size in K bytes
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
File restriction	“File restricted”/“File unrestricted”
Display size	The file display size (wide x high in dots)
Source	From where the file was acquired
Move to microSD ^{*1}	“Yes”/“No” indicates whether the document can be copied to a microSD memory card.
Move to phone ^{*2}	“Yes”/“No” indicates whether the document can be copied to the FOMA terminal (Phone).
Set as display ^{*1}	Where the image is set When no image is set, “No set” appears.
DPOF setting ^{*3}	
• Prints	The specified number of prints When it is not set, “No set” appears. When 100 or higher is specified, “* *” appears.
• Date	Whether or not the date is specified

*1 : The option appears only for images stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).

*2 : The option appears only for images stored on a microSD memory card.

*3 : The option appears only for images stored on a microSD memory card (Picture).

● Composing a message with an image attached

- If an image cannot be attached, the image size or file size is reduced so that the image can be attached.

1 Image list screen (p.330) ▶ (FUNC)

▶ “Compose message” ▶ “Attach image”

■ If the JPEG image is larger than 240 dots wide x 320 dots high or 320 dots wide x 240 dots high

▶ Select any item ▶ Check the resized image

Attach mail	Attaches an image without changing the size.
QVGA scale down	Reduces the image size without changing the aspect ratio and attaches the resized image.

2 Compose an i-mode message

Creating and sending an i-mode message
→ p.239

NOTE

- ◆ Whether “Attach image” appears depends on the image size/file size.
- ◆ If the image contains location information, a message appears asking whether to paste the information into a message. Select “YES” to paste the URL of the information into the message.
- ◆ You cannot compose an i-mode message when:
 - There are already 20 draft messages stored or no space is available in Draft
 - A Flash movie is to be attached
 - The image is not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal

● Composing a Deco-mail message

- If an image cannot be inserted, the image size or file size is reduced so that the image can be inserted.

1 Image list screen (p.330) (FUNC) ▶ “Compose message” ▶ “Insert image”

- If the JPEG image is larger than 128 dots wide × 96 dots high or 96 dots wide × 128 dots high, or if the file size exceeds the limit when inserted to a Deco-mail message

▶ Select any item ▶ Check the resized image

Insert mail	Inserts an image without changing the size.*
SubQCIF scale down	Reduces the image size without changing the aspect ratio and inserts the resized image.*

* : If the file size exceeds the limit when inserted to a Deco-mail message, it is also reduced.

2 Compose a Deco-mail message

Composing and sending a Deco-mail message
→ p.243

NOTE

- ◆ Whether “Insert image” appears depends on the image size/file size.
- ◆ If the image contains location information, a message appears asking whether to paste the information into a message. Select “YES” to paste the URL of the information into the message.
- ◆ You cannot compose a Deco-mail message when:
 - There are already 20 draft messages stored or no space is available in Draft
 - The image is GIF whose size exceeds 90K bytes

● Making a composite image out of 4 images

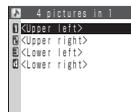
- You cannot set an image larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.

1 Image list screen (p.330) (FUNC) ▶ “Composite image”

2 Select a position ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image ▶ Repeat to select four images in total

■ To cancel a specified image

- ▶ Select an image to cancel ▶ Select “Release this” on the folder selection screen



3 (Finish) (Play)

■ To retry creating a composite image

- ▶ (Cancel)

NOTE

- ◆ The created composite image is saved to the folder used to create the image.
- ◆ Four images are synthesized without changing the aspect ratio. The original images are not resized.
- ◆ Pressing (Play) on the image selection screen allows you to check the selected image, which cannot be viewed in the actual size.

Creating animations <Original animation>

Use stored images to create an animated cartoon consisting of up to 20 frames.

- You can create up to 20 animations.

1 (MENU) ▶ “Data box” ▶ “My picture” ▶ “Original animation”

The “Original animation list” screen appears.



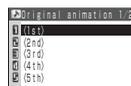
Function menu ▶ p.336

2 “<New>”

3 Select a frame ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image ▶ Repeat to select images

■ To cancel a specified image

- ▶ Select a frame to cancel
- ▶ Select “Release this” on the folder selection screen



4 (Finish)

NOTE

- ◆ Pressing  (Play) on the image selection screen allows you to check the selected image.
- ◆ Only frames with an image specified are played in order.
- ◆ You can specify a JPEG image whose size is 690 dots wide × 690 dots high or smaller.

Function menu (Original animation list screen)

Edit title	▶ Edit a title Edits the title of the highlighted original animation. The title can contain up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters.
Org. animation	Newly creates an original animation when "<New>" is highlighted. The created original animation is edited if it is highlighted.
Display image	Plays the highlighted original animation (Displays the original animation playback screen).
Set as display	▶ Select an item Sets the highlighted original animation for the standby screen, etc.
Image info	Checks the settings of the original animation set as display. When no animation is set, "No set" appears.
Release animation	Releases the highlighted original animation.

NOTE**<Set as display>**

- ◆ An animation can be set for the following screen:
 - Stand-by display
 - Wake-up display
 - Dialing
 - Calling
 - V.phone dialing
 - V.phone calling
 - Mail sending
 - Mail receiving
 - Checking

Playing an original animation

1 Original animation list screen (p.335)

▶ **Select an original animation**

The "Original animation playback" screen appears. If there are two or more original animations, use  to play the previous or next animation.



Original animation playback
Function menu → p.336

Function menu (Original animation playback screen)

Set as display	▶ Select an item Sets the animation being played for the standby screen, etc.
Set image disp.	Sets the display mode of an image smaller than the image display area (240 dots wide × 345 dots high).
• Normal (default)	Displays an animation in the actual size.
• Fit in display	Enlarges an animation to the display size.
Retry	Plays an animation from the beginning.

NOTE**<Set as display>**

- ◆ An animation can be set for the following screen:
 - Stand-by display
 - Wake-up display
 - Dialing
 - Calling
 - V.phone dialing
 - V.phone calling
 - Mail sending
 - Mail receiving
 - Checking

<Edit image>**Editing Images**

Edit still images you shot or images copied to the FOMA terminal (Phone).

- The following are the editing methods and image sizes:

Method	Size of editable file
Frame • Frames an image. → p.337	Up to 480 dots wide × 690 dots high ¹
Retouch • Applies special effects such as sepia tone to an image. → p.337	Up to 690 dots wide × 480 dots high Up to 480 dots wide × 690 dots high
Marker stamp • Pastes a marker stamp such as heart into an image. → p.338	2,304 dots wide × 1,728 dots high ² 1,728 dots wide × 2,304 dots high ²
Character stamp • Pastes a stamp of entered text into an image. → p.338	2,048 dots wide × 1,536 dots high ² 1,536 dots wide × 2,048 dots high ²
Trim away • Clips an image to the desired size. → p.338	1,616 dots wide × 1,212 dots high ² 1,212 dots wide × 1,616 dots high ²
Brightness • Adjusts the image brightness. → p.337	1,280 dots wide × 960 dots high ² (Continued on next column)

Method	Size of editable file
Rotate <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Rotates an image clockwise or counterclockwise by 90° or 180°. → p.337 	960 dots wide × 1,280 dots high* ² 690 dots wide × 480 dots high
Change size <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Resizes an image. → p.337 	480 dots wide × 690 dots high Up to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high* ³ Up to 480 dots wide × 640 dots high* ³
Correct backlight <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Makes the dark part clear, which is caused by the backlight. → p.337 	Up to 690 dots wide × 480 dots high Up to 480 dots wide × 690 dots high
Refresh skin tone <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Corrects the skin parts. → p.337 	

*1 : You can frame an image only if the size is 480 × 690, 480 × 640, 352 × 288, 288 × 352, 240 × 320, 320 × 240, 240 × 345, 345 × 240, 176 × 144, 144 × 176, 128 × 96 or 96 × 128 (dots wide × dots high).

*2 : An image will be editable after reduced to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.

*3 : Some editing methods may not function due to the image size.

- Editable images → p.331
- When “Edit image” is selected from the image checking function menu, only “Frame”, “Retouch”, “Correct backlight” and “Refresh skin tone” are available.

1 My picture screen (p.330) ▶

 (FUNC) ▶ “Edit image”

The Edit image function menu (p.337) appears.

2 Select an editing method

3 Check the edited image ▶

The “Edit image” screen appears. To edit further, press  (FUNC) to select a method.

4 “YES” or “NO”

Selecting “YES” overwrites the original image. Selecting “NO” saves a new image to the folder where the original is stored.



Function menu ▶ p.337

NOTE

- ◆ Editing an image repeatedly may impair the image quality or increase the file size.
- ◆ Some images may hardly reflect the editing effects.

Function menu (Edit image screen)

Frame	“Adding frames” → p.337
-------	-------------------------

Retouch	Applies effects to an image.
• Sharp	Sharpens the outline of an image.
• Blur	Softens the outline of an image.
• Sepia	Makes a sepia-tone image.
• Emboss	Impresses an image in relief.
• Negative	Makes a negative image.
• Horizontal flip	Reverses the left and right of an image (mirroring).
Marker stamp	“Pasting marker stamps” → p.338
Character stamp	“Pasting character stamps” → p.338
Trim away	“Trimming” → p.338
Brightness	▶ Use  to adjust the brightness Selects the brightness among 5 levels from “-2 to ±0 to +2”.
Rotate * ¹	Rotates an image. Select “90° to right”, “90° to left” or “180°”.
Change size	Resizes an image to the selected size, keeping the aspect ratio. Select “VGA(640 × 480)”, “CIF(352 × 288)”, “QVGA(320 × 240)”, “QCIF(176 × 144)”, “SubQCIF(128 × 96)”, “VGA+Vert. (480 × 690)”, “VGA Vert. (480 × 640)”, “Screen(240 × 345)”, “Stand-by(240 × 320)”, “CIF Vert. (288 × 352)”, “QCIF Vert. (144 × 176)” or “SubQCIF Vert. (96 × 128)”.* ²
Correct backlight	Makes the dark part clear, which is caused by the backlight.
Refresh skin tone	Corrects the skin parts.
Compose message	“Composing a message with an image attached” → p.334
Save	Saves the edited image.

*1 : Rotating may change the aspect ratio.

*2 : Dots wide × dots high enclosed in brackets show the image size.

● Adding frames

- You can use downloaded frames in addition to frames stored at the time of purchase (p.461).

1 My picture screen (p.330) ▶

 (FUNC) ▶ “Edit image” ▶ “Frame”

▶ **Select a frame**

The image appears in the selected frame. Use  to try another frame.

■ **To rotate a frame 180°**

▶  (Rotate)

■ **To cancel the selected frame**

▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Cancel”

NOTE

- ◆ The orientation of a downloaded frame is portrait or landscape. An image can be framed only if the size of the frame is the same as that of the image.
- ◆ If the size of an image that was clipped or resized is the same as that of the frame, the image can be framed. The quality of the resized and framed image may deteriorate.

Pasting marker stamps

- You can use downloaded marker stamps in addition to marker stamps stored at the time of purchase.
- You can rotate or resize marker stamps.

1 My picture screen (p.330)▶

④ (FUNC)▶“Edit image”▶“Marker stamp”▶Select a marker stamp

■ To edit a marker stamp

▶④ (FUNC)▶Select any item

90° to right	Rotates 90° clockwise.
90° to left	Rotates 90° counterclockwise.
180°	Rotates 180°.
Scale up	Doubles the size.
Scale down	Halves the size.

2 Position the marker stamp▶

Use or Neuropointer to position the marker stamp.

■ To use another marker stamp

▶ (Add)▶Repeat Steps 1 to 2



NOTE

- You can use downloaded stamps of 240 dots wide × 240 dots high or smaller. Stamps of other sizes are regarded as GIF images.
- You can repeatedly resize a marker stamp.
- A marker stamp cannot be larger than the image to edit. You cannot reduce the size of a marker stamp to less than 1 dot.

Pasting character stamps

Default setting

Character color: Black
Font: Gothic style
Font size: Standard size

- A character stamp can contain up to 3-15 double-byte or 6-30 single-byte characters. The number of characters that can be entered depends on the image size and font size.
- You can change the color, font and size of a character stamp.

1 My picture screen (p.330)▶

④ (FUNC)▶“Edit image”▶“Character stamp”▶Enter text

■ To edit a character stamp

▶④ (FUNC)▶Select any item

Character input	▶Enter text Reenters text.
-----------------	-------------------------------

Character color	▶Use to select a color Sets the color of a character stamp. To use another color palette, press (Change).
Font	Selects “Gothic style” or “Pop style” as the font setting.
Font size	Selects “Enlargement size”, “Standard size” or “Reduction size” as the character size.

2 Position the character stamp▶

Use or Neuropointer to position the character stamp.



NOTE

- The font thickness is specified in the “Font” setting.

Trimming

1 My picture screen (p.330)▶

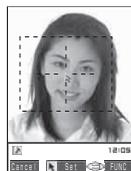
④ (FUNC)▶“Edit image”▶“Trim away”

Select “VGA(640 × 480)”, “CIF(352 × 288)”, “QVGA(320 × 240)”, “QCIF(176 × 144)”, “Sub-QCIF(128 × 96)”, “VGA Vert. (480 × 640)”, “Screen(240 × 345)”, “Stand-by(240 × 320)”, “CIF Vert. (288 × 352)”, “QCIF Vert. (144 × 176)”, “Sub-QCIF Vert. (96 × 128)”, “Menu icon(64 × 63)” or “Chat(80 × 80)”.

* : Dots wide × dots high enclosed in brackets show the image size.

2 Determine where to clip▶

Use or Neuropointer to position the clipping frame.



<i-motion>

Playing Movies/i-motion

Movies that you have shot or that are stored on a microSD memory card and i-motion downloaded from an i-mode site or website can be played in i-motion under Data box. Movies of VGA (640 × 480) or smaller can be rotated and played on the landscape screen.

- To download i-motion to the FOMA terminal →p.230
- Using “Set repeat play”, after starting to play a movie or i-motion, the sound can continue to be played with the FOMA terminal folded. → p.342

1 **“Data box”** “i-motion”

The “Folder list” screen appears.

The “Secret” folder appears in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode.

Content in the i-motion folder → p.329



Function menu → p.362

2 Select a folder

The “Movie list” screen (Preview) appears.

Movie list screen → p.339



Function menu → p.340

3 Select a movie

Press **OK** to play on the portrait screen, or **Wide** to play on the landscape screen.

The “i-motion” screen appears to play the movie.

Operation during playback → p.341

■ If the message “Play continue? YES/NO” appears

- Selecting “YES” plays the movie from the point where it was stopped last time.
- Selecting “NO” plays the movie from the beginning.



When playback ends, the “i-motion stopped” screen appears.



Function menu → p.342

NOTE

- ◆ Video or sound in a movie or i-motion may be interrupted if you receive a message, MessageR or MessageF during playback.
- ◆ A movie may not be properly played if it was not shot with FOMA N903i.
- ◆ A movie or i-motion can be played from the point where it was stopped last time in the following cases. It may not be played from the exact point.
 - You receive a voice call, etc. during playback
 - Playback is stopped by pressing **CLR** or **End**

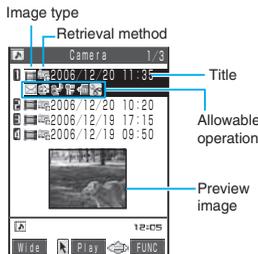
Guide to Preview and Title list

- Icons for image types, retrieval methods and allowable operation settings → p.331
- Titles and file names → p.331

■ Preview

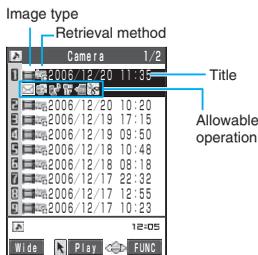
The screen shows four movies listed by title and the preview image of the selected movie appears below the titles. Popup icons show the image type, image retrieval method, and settings that can be specified for the movie.

A preview image does not appear for voice-only i-motion (without video, e.g. a singer's voice).



■ Title list

Titles of nine movies are listed on the screen. Popup icons show the movie type, movie retrieval method, and settings that can be specified for the movie.



Function menu (Movie list screen)

- The available functions vary depending on the folders, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Edit i-motion¹	"Editing Movies" → p.343
Edit title	<p>▶ Edit a title Edits the title of the highlighted movie.</p> <p>■ Inbox, Camera, User-created folders The title can contain up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters.</p> <p>■ microSD, Movable contents folders The title can contain up to 18 double-byte or 36 single-byte characters.</p>
Select ring tone²	Sets the highlighted movie as a ring tone. → p.124
Stand-by display²	Sets the highlighted movie to the standby screen. → p.135
i-motion info	"i-motion information" → p.341
Compose message³	Composes an i-mode message with the highlighted movie attached.
Touch to send data¹	"Transferring One Data at a Time" → p.368
Send Ir data¹	
Copy to microSD¹	"Copying data stored on the FOMA terminal to a microSD memory card" → p.363
Move to microSD¹	"Moving Movies/i-motion to a microSD Memory Card" → p.344
Move	"Moving data to another folder" → p.363
Add desktop icon¹	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.147
Edit file name¹	<p>▶ Edit a file name Edits the file name of the highlighted movie.</p> <p>The file name can contain up to 36 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols ("_", "_"). Symbols other than ".", " " or "-" cannot be used.</p>
File restriction¹	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> File unrestricted 	Allows the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> File restricted 	Does not allow the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Reset title	Restores the title to the original.
Memory info	Displays the amounts of data stored and available space on the FOMA terminal and on a microSD memory card. The amount of Secret is not included in the amount on the FOMA terminal.
Sort¹	Sorts movies by specified criteria.

List setting	Specifies how to list movies.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Title¹ 	Changes to the title list.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Title+image¹ (default) 	Changes to the preview display.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Name^{4*5} 	Changes to the title list (or file name list).
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Name+image^{4*5} (default) 	Changes to the preview display.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Title, File name⁴ 	Switches between File name and Title.
Delete	"Deleting data" → p.364
Keep in secret⁶	"Hiding Various Data" → p.160
Copy to phone⁴	"Copying data stored on a microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal" → p.363
Move to phone⁷	"Moving i-motion stored on a microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal" → p.344
Copy⁴	"Copying data to another folder on a microSD memory card" → p.364

*1 : The options only appear for movies stored in folders on the FOMA terminal (Phone).

*2 : The option only appears for movies or i-motion stored in the Movable contents folder or in folders on the FOMA terminal (Phone).

*3 : The option only appears for movies or i-motion stored in the microSD folder or in folders on the FOMA terminal (Phone).

*4 : The options only appear for movies or i-motion stored in the microSD folder.

*5 : The name is either file name or title.

*6 : The option appears in "Secret mode" or in "Secret data only mode". If it is the Secret folder, "Put out" appears.

*7 : The option only appears for movies or i-motion stored in the Movable contents folder.

NOTE

<Select ring tone>

◆ You cannot set a movie or i-motion as a ring tone when:

- The movie or i-motion contains no sound
- There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
- The movie or i-motion contains ticker

◆ A movie or i-motion can be set as a ring tone only if the Ring tone setting is "Available". Refer to the "i-motion info" to check whether it is "Available" or "Unavailable".

◆ If the size is larger than QVGA (320 × 240) and VGA (640 × 480) or smaller, it cannot be set as a ring tone.

◆ If a movie larger than VGA (640 × 480) is set as a ring tone, an i-motion image does not appear on the screen.

◆ A voice-only i-motion (without video, e.g. a singer's voice) can be set as a ring tone for PushTalk.

<Stand-by display>

◆ You cannot set a movie or i-motion for the standby screen when:

- The movie or i-motion is voice-only or text-only
- There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
- The size of the movie is larger than QVGA (320 × 240)

- ◆ Some movies may not be properly played on the standby screen.
- ◆ You cannot use the Web To, Mail To or Phone To/AV Phone To function from an i-motion set for the standby screen.

<Compose message>

- ◆ You cannot compose an i-mode message when:
 - There are already 20 draft messages stored or no space is available in Draft
 - There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
 - It is a movie of Chara-den character with "Rec. File Restriction"
 - The i-motion is not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal

<Sort>

- ◆ "By source" sorts movies in the following order. Movies or i-motion with the same source icon are sorted in the order in which they were shown before you selected "By source".

- ① i-motion downloaded or acquired via i-appli
- ② Movies shot with the built-in camera
- ③ Movies copied from a microSD memory card or acquired via Infrared data exchange or Touch to send data
- ④ Chara-den movies

● i-motion information

You can check the following:

File name	The file name
Format	The file format
Default title	The original title
Creator	Who created the file If there is no information, "Unknown" appears.
Copyright	Copyright information on the file If there is no information, "Unknown" appears.
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
File size	The file size in K bytes
Display size	The file display size (wide × high in dots)
Source	From where the file was acquired
Description	The file description If there is no information, "Unknown" appears.
File restriction	"File restricted"/"File unrestricted"
Replay restriction	
• If there are count restrictions	Remaining play count and total play count
• If there are period restrictions	Date of play period
• If there are span restrictions	"Playable date ~ Date of play span"
• If there are no play restrictions	"Not restricted"
Video	"Included"/"Not included"/"Unplayable" for video

Audio	Audio information "AMR"/"AAC"/"Not included"/"Playable"/"Unplayable (MP4)"/"Unplayable (ASF)"/Enhanced aacPlus/HE-AAC
Text	"Included"/"Not included"/"Unplayable" for text
Moved to microSD^{*1}	"Yes"/"No" indicates whether the i-motion can be moved/copied to a microSD memory card. ^{*2} "Yes (Same model only)" indicates that the i-motion can be exchanged only between the same models.
Moved to phone^{*3}	"Yes"/"No" indicates whether the i-motion can be moved/copied to the FOMA terminal (Phone). "Yes (Same model only)" indicates that the i-motion can be exchanged only between the same models.
Ring tone^{*4}	Whether a ring tone is "Available" or "Unavailable" When the i-motion is set as a ring tone, it is shown where the i-motion is set.
Receive display	Whether a receive display is "Available" or "Unavailable" When the i-motion is set to a receive display, it is shown where the i-motion is set.

*1 : The option only appears for movies or i-motion stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).

*2 : If the i-motion is launched from a running i-appli, the indicated information is only intended as an approximate guide.

*3 : The option only appears for movies or i-motion stored on a microSD memory card.

*4 : "Unavailable" always appears for movies or i-motion stored in the Moveable contents folder although it may be set as a ring tone.

Operation during i-motion playback

You can perform the following operations during i-motion playback:



During playback



When tickers are displayed



When adjusting the volume

Control key	Operation
⏸	Pauses/resumes playback
🔊 (⏪ ⏩), 🔊 (🔍)	Adjusts volume
📄 (MEMO/CHECK)	

Control key	Operation
	Plays the previous or next movie or i-motion*1*2
	Winds forward*2*3
	Mutes (disabled when there is no audio)*3
for 1 second or longer	Skips backward*4
for 1 second or longer	Skips forward*4
to pause playback, then	Advances frame (moves forward one frame each time it is pressed)*2*3
to pause playback, then "Slow" from the function menu	Plays slow*2*3
CLR	Ends

- *1 : You cannot operate these if you play it from the data acquisition screen (p.231).
- *2 : The operations are unavailable for a streaming-type i-motion or i-motion that is played during downloading.
- *3 : The operations are unavailable during playback on the wide (landscape) screen.
- *4 : The operations may be unavailable for some i-motion.

NOTE

- ◆ The volume for i-motion is set to "Level 10" at the time of purchase. The volume can be selected between "Level 0" and "Level 20", and the setting is retained next time an i-motion is played.
- ◆ The volume set for i-motion does not affect ring volumes set in "Ring volume".
- ◆ Seek (skip back/forward) can be operated while a movie is played (including slow playback and fast forward) or paused.
- ◆ Sound is muted during seeking (skip backward/forward).
- ◆ Seek (skip backward/forward) is unavailable when:
 - A streaming-type i-motion is played
 - The i-motion can be played during downloading
 - There are no seek points in the i-motion
 - The interval between seek points is too long
 - A seek point exists only at the beginning of the i-motion
 - The i-motion is a voice-only ASF file with no seek data
- ◆ Tickers are not shown during seeking (skip backward/forward) or during frame advance.

● Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions

- You can use the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To function (p.222) if:
 - An underlined phone number, mail address or URL appears on the screen after playback is ended or stopped
 - A phone number, mail address or URL appears on the running ticker then you select "Select link" from the function menu
- If you can use the Phone To/AV Phone To or Mail To function, the data can also be saved to the phonebook. When playback ends, select "Add to phonebook" from the function menu.

- Adding information to phonebook "Adding Information to the Phonebook" → p.107



Phone To function



Mail To function



Web To function

Function menu (i-motion stopped (pause) screen)

- The available functions vary depending on the displayed image or selected folder, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Normal play	When playback is paused, the i-motion is replayed from the paused point.
Slow	Plays slow. To return to normal playback, press (Play) or select "Normal play" from the function menu while it is paused.
Fast	Plays fast. To return to normal playback, press (Play) or select "Normal play" from the function menu while it is paused.
Stop	Exits i-motion and returns to the movie list screen.
Position to play	Select a point where playback is to start Starts playback from the specified point.
Select link	You can use the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To function (p.222) if a phone number, mail address or URL appears on the running ticker.
Edit i-motion	"Editing Movies" → p.343
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the current i-motion attached.
Select ring tone	Sets the current i-motion as a ring tone.
Stand-by display	Sets the i-motion being played for the standby screen.
Set repeat play (default: OFF)	Specifies whether to play i-motion programs continuously in file order in the folder (to play repeatedly on the FOMA terminal). After starting to play a movie or i-motion, the sound can continue to be played with the FOMA terminal folded. Select "ON" (play repeatedly) or "OFF".
i-motion info	"i-motion information" → p.341
Touch to send data	"Transferring One Data at a Time" → p.368
Send Ir data	

Copy to microSD	▶ Select the destination folder Copies the displayed i-motion.
Copy to phone*	Copies the displayed i-motion.
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.147
Set image disp.	
• Normal (default)	Plays the i-motion in the actual size.
• Fit in display	Enlarges the i-motion to the display size.
• Wide Play	Plays the i-motion on the landscape screen.

* : The option only appears for movies or i-motion stored on a microSD memory card.

NOTE

<Slow>

- ◆ An i-motion is muted during slow playback.
- ◆ You cannot play slow a streaming-type i-motion or i-motion that is being downloaded and played.

<Fast>

- ◆ An i-motion is muted during fast playback.
- ◆ You cannot play fast a streaming-type i-motion or i-motion that is being downloaded and played.

<Position to play>

- ◆ You may be unable to select a playback point for some movies or i-motion programs.

<Compose message>

- ◆ You cannot compose an i-mode message when:
 - There are already 20 draft messages stored or no space is available in Draft
 - There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
 - It is a movie of Chara-den character with "Rec. File Restriction"
 - The i-motion is not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal

<Select ring tone>

- ◆ You cannot set a movie or i-motion as a ring tone when:
 - The movie or i-motion contains no sound
 - There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
 - The movie or i-motion contains ticker
- ◆ A movie or i-motion can be set as a ring tone only if the Ring tone setting is "Available". Refer to the "i-motion info" to check whether it is "Available" or "Unavailable".
- ◆ A voice-only i-motion (without video, e.g. a singer's voice) can be set as a ring tone for PushTalk.

<Stand-by display>

- ◆ You cannot set a movie or i-motion for the standby screen when:
 - The movie or i-motion is voice-only or text-only
 - There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
 - The size of the movie is larger than QVGA (320 x 240)
- ◆ Some movies may not be properly played on the standby screen.
- ◆ You cannot use the Web To, Mail To or Phone To/AV Phone To function from an i-motion set to the standby screen.

<Set repeat play>

- ◆ The Set repeat play settings are retained after playing an i-motion.
- ◆ If Set repeat play is set to "ON", data that cannot be played are automatically skipped. Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To and Web To functions are unavailable from an i-motion.
- ◆ If you attempt to play an i-motion whose playback is restricted, a message may appear indicating the restriction, and the repeat play may be stopped.

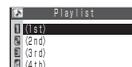
▶ Playing movies in your preferred order <Playlist playback>

Select and register up to 10 i-motion programs or movies, and play them consecutively.

- 1 **Folder list screen (p.339) ▶ Highlight "Playlist" and press (FUNC) ▶ "Edit playlist" ▶ Select No. for the movie or i-motion ▶ Select a movie or i-motion ▶ Repeat steps to add**

■ To release an added movie

- ▶ Select a movie to release
- ▶ Select "Release this" on the folder selection screen ▶ "YES"



- 2 (Finish)

The i-motion folder list screen appears. Selecting the Playlist folder starts playlist playback, and the registered movies are played repeatedly.

NOTE

- ◆ Deleting a movie or i-motion that has been added to a playlist removes the file from the playlist.

<Edit movie>

Editing Movies

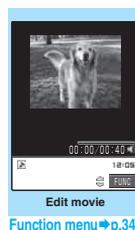
- You cannot use the Multitask function while editing a movie.
- Editable movies → p.331

<Example: Movie list screen for Inbox, Camera, user-created folders>

- 1 **Movie list screen (p.339) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Edit i-motion"**

The "Edit movie" screen appears.

- 2 (FUNC) ▶ **Select an editing method**
→ p.344



Function menu → p.344

NOTE

- ◆ Editing a movie may impair the movie quality.
- ◆ While checking an edited movie, if you receive a call, fold the FOMA terminal or the battery runs out, information currently fixed is saved. However, the information is not saved if the memory for movies is full.
- ◆ The file size displayed during movie editing is only intended as an approximate guide.

Function menu (Edit movie screen)

Trim i-motion	"Clipping a part of a movie" → p.344
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the edited movie attached.
File restriction	
• File unrestricted	Allows the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• File restricted	Does not allow the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.

NOTE

<Compose message>

- ◆ You cannot compose an i-mode message when there are already 20 draft messages stored or no space is available in Draft.

● Clipping a part of a movie

1 Edit movie screen (p.343) ▶

(FUNC) ▶ "Trim i-motion" ▶

(Start)

Clipping starts.

- To start clipping from your desired frame
▶ ▶ Press when you want to start clipping ▶ (Start)

2 Press when you want to finish clipping ▶ (End)

The clipped section of the movie is played. Playback stops automatically when it ends.

- To check the clipped section again
▶ (Play)

3 ▶ ▶ "YES"

NOTE

- ◆ The approximate size of the clipped file appears during movie clipping.
- ◆ A movie whose size is larger than QCIF (176 × 144) cannot be clipped.

<Movable contents>

Moving Movies/i-motion to a microSD Memory Card

- Do not remove the microSD memory card during move operation. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card to malfunction. In addition, data being moved may be deleted.

Moving i-motion stored on the FOMA terminal to a microSD memory card

Move movable i-motion programs with copyrights to a microSD memory card. Moved i-motion programs are saved to the "Movable contents" folder (p.329) under i-motion.

1 Movie list screen (p.339) ▶

(FUNC) ▶ "Move to microSD" ▶

Select any item

Move this	▶ Select the destination folder ▶ Moves the highlighted i-motion.
Move selected	▶ Select the destination folder ▶ ▶ Use to select a checkbox (<input type="checkbox"/>) ▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES" Moves multiple i-motion programs you select.
Move all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select the destination folder ▶ ▶ "YES" Moves all movable i-motion programs in the folder.

NOTE

- ◆ An i-motion whose Replay restriction has expired cannot be moved to a microSD memory card.
- ◆ See "Allowable operation icon" (p.331) to check whether the i-motion can be moved.
- ◆ If you press (Quit) during move to a microSD memory card, the operation may not be canceled depending on when (Quit) is pressed.

Moving i-motion stored on a microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal

Move i-motion programs stored in the "Movable contents" folder under i-motion (p.329) to the FOMA terminal.

- Moved i-motion programs are saved to the Inbox folder under i-motion.

1 Folder list screen (p.339) ▶ "Movable contents" ▶ Select a folder ▶

The "movie list" screen (p.339) appears.

2 (FUNC) ▶ "Move to phone" ▶ Select any item

Move this	Moves the highlighted i-motion.
Move selected	▶Use  to select a checkbox (□)▶  (Finish)▶“YES” Moves multiple i-motion programs you select.
Move all	▶Enter your security code▶“YES” Moves all movable i-motion programs in the folder.

NOTE

- ◆An i-motion whose Replay restriction has expired cannot be moved to the FOMA terminal.
- ◆See “Image type icon” (p.331) to check whether the i-motion can be moved.

<Chara-den>

What is Chara-den?

Chara-den is a function that allows you to send a cartoon character, instead of your image, to the other party's FOMA terminal during a video-phone call.

You can check actions available during a video-phone call, or use a still image or movie as a character.

Displaying Chara-den characters

Default setting	Set image disp.: Fit in display Substitute image: Dimo
-----------------	---

- Downloading Chara-den characters → p.221
- The following are Chara-den characters preinstalled at the time of purchase:



Dimo



ビーンズ (Beans)



サンデー (Sunday)

1 “Data box”▶ “Chara-den”

The “Chara-den list” screen appears.
Guide to the Chara-den list
→ p.345



Chara-den list
Function menu▶p.346

2 Select a Chara-den character

The “Chara-den player” screen appears.
Controlling a Chara-den character
→ p.345

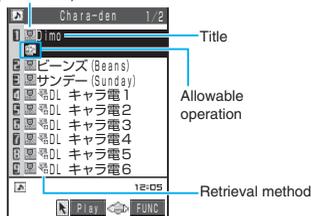


Chara-den player
Function menu▶p.346

Guide to the Chara-den list

- Icons for image types, retrieval methods and allowable operation settings → p.331
- Titles and file names → p.331

Image type (Chara-den)



Using Chara-den characters

You can control a Chara-den character by selecting preinstalled actions.

1 Chara-den player screen (p.345)▶ Control a Chara-den character

■ To check the action list



Actions shown in the list depend on the character type.
No. such as “1” or “#1” appearing on the right of the action indicates that pressing that key during Chara-den playback will perform the corresponding action.

Action list	No.
泣き	:1
ハルサイ	:2
泣き	:3
怒る	:4
驚く	:5
悩む	:6
首を傾げる	:7
寝る	:8
揺れる	:9
YES	:#1

■ To check the action details

▶ Highlight an action ▶ (Detail) ▶ Check the details ▶ (Exit)

■ To change the action mode

▶ (Parts) or (Whole)

The mode is Parts action when  appears and Whole action when  appears.

 (Whole):

The whole body of a Chara-den character moves to express feelings.

 (Parts):

The parts (head, hands, feet, etc.) of a Chara-den character move.

■ To use keys to select actions during Chara-den playback

Press the following keys to perform character actions:

“Whole”:

1-digit number on the right side of the action name ( to ) or   to  )

“Parts”:

2-digit number on the right side of the action name (  to  )

<Example: “怒る” (Angry) in Whole action mode>

* A Chara-den character is displayed normally (not mirror).

▶ (Whole) ▶



▶  ▶



<Example: “顔アップ” (Face close up) in Parts action mode>

▶ (Parts) ▶



▶   ▶



■ To have a character's mouth synchronize your voice

Some Chara-den characters can move the mouth synchronizing your voice as if it were talking. If you use the function menu or press one of the keys to make the character perform an action while speaking into the phone, the character performs the selected action rather than moving its mouth.



Function menu (Chara-den list screen)

Chara-den call	▶ Enter a phone number ▶  or  Makes a videophone call with the highlighted Chara-den character set as a substitute image. Use  to search for a phone number from Received calls, Redial or Search phonebook.
Substitute image	Sets the highlighted Chara-den character as a substitute image for videophone calls.
Rec. Chara-den	“Saving Chara-den character as image or movie” → p.347
Edit title	▶ Edit a title Edits the title of the highlighted Chara-den character. The title can contain up to 18 double-byte or 36 single-byte characters.
Chara-den info	“Chara-den information” → p.347
Memory info	Displays the amounts of Chara-den data stored and available space.
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons” → p.147
Set image disp.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Normal: Displays the character in the actual size. • Fit in display (default): Enlarges the character to the display size.
Reset title	Restores the title to the original.
Delete	“Deleting data” → p.364

NOTE

<Memory info>

◆ The displayed size is only an approximation.

Function menu (Chara-den player screen)

Chara-den call	▶ Enter a phone number ▶  or  Makes a videophone call with the displayed Chara-den character set as a substitute image. Use  to search for a phone number from Received calls, Redial or Search phonebook.
Substitute image	Sets the displayed Chara-den character as a substitute image for videophone calls.
Rec. Chara-den	“Saving Chara-den character as image or movie” → p.347
Switch Chara-den	▶ Select a Chara-den character Changes a Chara-den character to display.
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons” → p.147
Action List	Displays the action list.

Change Action	"To change the action mode" → p.346
Chara-den info	Displays information about the displayed Chara-den character.
Set image disp.	
• Normal	Displays the character in the actual size.
• Fit in display (default)	Enlarges the character to the display size.

● Chara-den information

You can check the following:

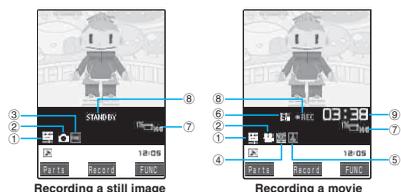
Default title	The original title
File name	The file name
File restriction	"File restricted"/"File unrestricted" An unrestricted Chara-den character becomes restricted after downloaded.
Rec.File Restriction	"File restricted"/"Not restricted"
Display size	The file display size (wide × high in dots)
File size	The file size in K bytes
Source	From where the file was acquired A blank appears here for a Chara-den character preinstalled at the time of purchase.
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
Moved to microSD	Always "No"
Substitute image	Where the substitute image is set When no image is set, "No setting" appears.

NOTE

◆ "Rec.File Restriction" indicates whether or not the restrictions apply when an image or movie shot using Chara-den is edited, copied to a microSD memory card or attached to a message.

Saving Chara-den character as image or movie <Rec. Chara-den>

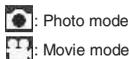
■ Guide to the Rec. Chara-den screen



① Shows the currently selected action mode.



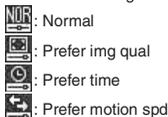
② Shows the shooting mode.



③ Shows the "Storage setting" (image).



④ Shows the "Storage setting" (movie).



⑤ Shows the "File size setting".



⑥ Shows the "Movie type set".



⑦ Shows the size selected in "Select size".



⑧ Shows the shooting status.



⑨ Shows the remaining shooting time in the "min:sec" format (not shown until shooting starts).

● Shooting still images

1 Chara-den player screen (p.345) ▶

Ⓜ (FUNC) ▶ "Rec. Chara-den"

The "Rec. Chara-den" (image) screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.348

2 Perform an action ▶ Ⓜ

Performing an action → p.345

■ To perform a Parts action

▶ Ⓜ (Parts)

■ To compose an i-mode message with a shot image attached/inserted

▶ Ⓜ (MAIL) ▶ Select "Attach image" or "Insert image"

■ To retake the shot

▶ CLR

3 Ⓜ

The shot image is saved to the Camera folder under My picture.

NOTE

- ◆ No shooting tone is sounded when:
 - “Phone” under Ring volume is set to “Silent”
 - The ring volume is set to “Silent” e.g. in Manner mode

Function menu (Rec. Chara-den screen)

Switch Chara-den	▶ Select a Chara-den character Changes a Chara-den character to shoot.
Substitute image	Sets the displayed Chara-den character as a substitute image for videophone calls.
Action List	Displays the action list.
Change Action	Changes the action mode. → p.346
Set image disp.	Sets the display mode for Chara-den characters. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Normal Displays the character in the actual size. • Fit in display (default) Enlarges the character to the display size.
Movie mode^{*1}	Switches between Photo mode and Movie mode.
Select size^{*2}	Sets the size of character to shoot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • QCIF (176 × 144) (default) Shoots a character in 176 dots wide × 144 dots high (QCIF). • Small (117 × 96) Shoots a character in 117 dots wide × 96 dots high.
Movie type set^{*3}	Sets the movie shooting mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Video + voice (default) Shoots a movie including sound. • Video Shoots a movie without any sound.
Storage setting^{*3}	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Normal (default) Shoots a movie with the typical quality and duration. • Prefer img qual Shoots a movie with higher quality. The available shooting time is shorter than for Normal. • Prefer time Shoots a long movie. The quality is not as high as for Normal. • Prefer motion spd Shoots a movie with smoother motion.
Storage setting^{*2}	Sets the quality for image shooting.
File size setting^{*3}	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 500KB You can shoot up to 500K bytes. • 2MB (default) You can shoot up to 2M bytes.

*1 : When you are using Movie mode, “Photo mode” appears here. Photo mode is selected at the time of purchase.

*2 : The options cannot be set in Movie mode.

*3 : The options cannot be set in Photo mode.

NOTE**<Switch Chara-den>**

- ◆ Changing a Chara-den character sets the action mode to Whole.

● Shooting movies
1 Rec. Chara-den (image) screen (p.347)
 ▶ **(FUNC)** ▶ “Movie mode”

The “Rec. Chara-den” (movie) screen appears.



Rec. Chara-den (movie)
Function menu ▶ p.348

2 (●) ▶ Perform an action ▶ (●)

Performing an action → p.345

■ To perform a Parts action

▶ (PARTS) (Parts)

■ To compose an i-mode message with the movie attached

▶ (MAIL) (i-mode MAIL)

■ To check the movie

▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Check w/ playing”

■ To retake the shot

▶ (CLR)

3 (●)

The movie is saved to the Camera folder under i-motion.

NOTE

- ◆ Only QCIF (176×144) can be selected for the size, which cannot be changed.
- ◆ No shooting tone is sounded when:
 - “Phone” under Ring volume is set to “Silent”
 - The ring volume is set to “Silent” e.g. in Manner mode
- ◆ When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is attached, a sound is recorded according to the “Select microphone” setting.
- ◆ Performing an action during shooting may record keypad sounds.

Playing Melodies

Preinstalled melodies, sound effects or melodies downloaded from sites can be played in the Melody folder under Data box.

1 "Data box" "Melody"

The "Folder list" screen appears.



Function menu → p.362

2 Select a folder

The "Melody list" screen appears. Melody list screen → p.349



Function menu → p.350

3 Select a melody

The "Melody" screen appears to play the melody. Operation during playback → p.349

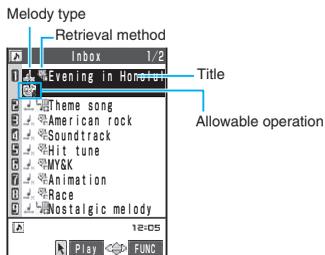


Function menu → p.350

NOTE

- ◆ Melodies are played at the volume set in "Phone" under the "Ring volume" settings. They are played at "Level 2" when "Silent" or "Step" is set.
- ◆ You can enjoy rich-sound melody with 3D sound compatible melody. → p.126

Guide to the melody list



Melody type icon

	MFI/SMF ^{*2}
--	-----------------------

*1 : "■■■■■" is added to icons for melodies that are file-restricted or not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal.

*2 : A melody may be restricted so that only a designated part of the melody will be played when it is set as a ring tone, etc. The entire melody can be played in "Melody" under Data box. You can also change the file names and titles of those melodies.

Retrieval method icon

No icon	Stored at the time of purchase
	Downloaded from site
	Copied from a microSD memory card or PC, acquired via Infrared data exchange, iC communication or Bar code reader

Allowable operation icon

	Can be attached to an i-mode message (2M bytes or smaller)
	Can be set as a ring tone
	Can be transferred via Infrared data exchange or iC communication
	Can be copied to a microSD memory card

Titles and file names

Original titles are assigned to downloaded melodies.

The title appears on the melody list screen of the FOMA terminal.

The file name appears when the data is transferred to a PC.

If a file name contains an inappropriate character, the file is automatically renamed to "melodyxxx" (xxx: 3-digit number).

The 3-digit number at the end of the file name is a serial number assigned to distinguish the file from other files.

Operation during melody playback

You can perform the following operations during melody playback:

Control key	Operation
	Plays the previous or next melody
	Adjusts volume ^{*1*}
	(MEMO/CHECK)
	Stops playback
	Ends

*1 : After you adjust the volume, if you press or wait for about 2 seconds, the screen turns to the melody screen.

*2 : Adjusting the volume during playback is only a temporary change. When playback ends, the volume is restored to the level specified in "Ring volume".

Function menu (Melody list screen)

The melody list function menu varies depending on the folder containing the melody.

- Melody list function menu for Inbox, microSD or user-created folders → p.350
- Melody list function menu for Pre-installed or Voice announcement → p.350

■ Melody list function menu for Inbox, microSD or user-created folders

Edit title	▶ Edit a title Edits the title of the highlighted melody. The title can contain up to 25 double-byte or 50 single-byte characters.
Edit file name^{*1}	▶ Edit a file name Edits the file name of the highlighted melody. The file name can contain up to 36 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols ("_", "_"). Symbols other than "-" or "." cannot be used.
Play melody	Plays the highlighted melody (Displays the melody screen).
Ring tone^{*1}	Sets the highlighted melody as a ring tone. → p.124
File restriction^{*1}	
• File unrestricted	Allows the melody to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• File restricted	Does not allow the melody to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Add desktop icon^{*1}	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.147
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the highlighted melody attached.
Touch to send data^{*1}	"Transferring One Data at a Time" → p.368
Send Ir data^{*1}	
Copy to microSD^{*1}	"Copying data stored on the FOMA terminal to a microSD memory card" → p.363
Copy to phone^{*2}	"Copying data stored on a microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal" → p.363
Melody info	"Melody information" → p.351
Memory info	Displays the amounts of melody data stored and available space.
Copy^{*2}	"Copying data to another folder on a microSD memory card" → p.364
Reset title	Restores the title to the original.
Sort^{*1}	Sorts melodies by the specified criteria.
Move	"Moving data to another folder" → p.363
Delete	"Deleting data" → p.364

*1 : The option appears only for melodies stored in the Inbox or user-created folder.

*2 : The option appears only for melodies stored on a microSD memory card.

NOTE

<Edit file name>

- ◆ You cannot edit the name of a file-restricted melody but can edit the one transferred via Infrared data exchange, iC communication or OBEX.

<Compose message>

- ◆ A melody stored on a microSD memory card that exceeds 2M bytes cannot be attached to an i-mode message.

<Melody info>

- ◆ You may be unable to attach a melody to a message even if the file is unrestricted.

<Memory info>

- ◆ The displayed size is only an approximation.

<Sort>

- ◆ If you exit a sorted melody list, sort is released.
- ◆ "By source" sorts melodies in the following order. Melodies with the same source icon are sorted in the order in which they were shown before you selected "By source".

- ① Melody downloaded or acquired via i-αappli
- ② Melody acquired via Infrared data exchange

■ Melody list function menu for Pre-installed or Voice announcement

Play melody	Plays the highlighted melody.
Ring tone	Sets the highlighted melody as a ring tone. → p.124

Function menu (Melody screen)

Ring tone^{*1}	Sets the currently played melody as a ring tone. → p.124
Set repeat play^{*2}	Plays melodies continuously in the folder.
Add desktop icon^{*3}	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.147
Compose message^{*4}	Composes an i-mode message with the currently played melody attached.
Copy to microSD^{*3}	▶ Select the destination folder Copies the melody to a microSD memory card.
Copy to phone^{*5}	Copies the melody to the Inbox folder on the FOMA terminal.
Melody info^{*4}	"Melody information" → p.351

*1 : The option only appears for melodies stored in folders on the FOMA terminal (Phone).

*2 : The option appears only for melodies stored in the Inbox, Pre-installed or user-created folder.

*3 : The options appear only for melodies stored in the Inbox or user-created folder.

*4 : The options appear only for melodies stored in the Inbox or user-created folder or on a microSD memory card.

*5 : The option appears only for melodies stored on a microSD memory card.

Melody information

You can check the following:

Default title	The original title
File name	The file name
File size	The file size in K bytes
File restriction	"File restricted"/"File unrestricted"
File classification	Melody file type "MFI" or "SMF"
Source	From where the file was acquired
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
Moved to microSD¹	"Yes"/"No" indicates whether the melody can be copied to a microSD memory card.
Moved to phone²	"Yes"/"No" indicates whether the melody can be copied to the FOMA terminal (Phone).
Vibrator linkage	"ON"/"OFF" of Vibrator linkage
Illumination linkage	"ON"/"OFF" of Illumination linkage
Ring tone¹	Where the ring tone is set When no melody is set, "No set" appears.

*1 : The option appears only for melodies stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).

*2 : The option appears only for melodies stored on a microSD memory card.

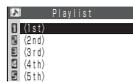
Playing melodies in your preferred order <Playlist playback>

Select and register up to 10 melodies, and play them consecutively.

- Folder list screen (p.349) ▶ Highlight "Playlist" and press (FUNC) ▶ "Edit playlist" ▶ Select No. for the melody ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a melody ▶ Repeat steps to add**

To release an added melody

- ▶ Select a melody to release ▶ Select "Release this" on the folder selection screen



- (Finish)**

The melody folder list screen appears. Selecting the Playlist folder starts playlist playback, and the registered melodies are played repeatedly.

NOTE

- ◆ The playlist is released once you change the title and file name of one of the registered melodies or delete data.

<Kisekae Tool>

Using Kisekae Tool

Check the packages of Kisekae Tool downloaded from sites. Packages stored at the time of purchase can also be checked.

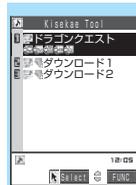
- Downloading from sites → p.221
- Kisekae Tool package settings → p.142

- "Data box" ▶**

"Kisekae Tool"

The "Package list" screen appears.

Package list screen → p.351



Package list

Function menu → p.352

- Select a package**

The "Package" screen appears.

To check the content of items that can be set

- ▶ Highlight an item to check and press



To set the packages

- ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Set all"

If a message appears asking whether to download all remaining data

You are attempting to open a package, only a part of which has been downloaded for some reason e.g. because the download was interrupted. The remaining pages must be downloaded. → p.221



Package

NOTE

- ◆ Sound-related items being checked, e.g. ring tones, are played at the volume set in "Ring volume". Sound is not heard when "Silent" is set.

Guide to the package list

Package type



■ Package type icon

Icon	Description
	All the data have been downloaded.
	Only a part has been downloaded for some reason e.g. because the download was interrupted. Download all the remaining data to set as Kisekae Tool.
	Subject to the FOMA card operational restriction function

■ Retrieval method icon

Icon	Description
No icon	Data stored at the time of purchase
	Downloaded from a site

■ Allowable operation icon

Icon	Description
	Can be set for the standby screen or Wake-up display
	Can be set for the Dialing, etc. other than standby screen or Wake-up display
	Can be set as a ring tone or clock alarm tone
	Can be set as a menu icon
	Can be set as a clock display
	Can be set as a color pattern
	Can be set as an icon e.g. battery icon
	Can be set as the Neuropointer icon

■ Titles and file names

Original titles are assigned to downloaded packages.
The titles appear on the package list screen.

Function menu (Package list screen)

Set all	"Setting Kisekae Tool Package" → p.142
Edit title	▶ Edit a title Edits the title of the highlighted package. The title can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Kisekae Tool info	"Package information" → p.352
Reset title	Restores the title to the original.
Memory Info	Displays the amounts of Kisekae Tool data stored and available space.
Sort	Sorts packages by the specified criteria.
Delete	"Deleting data" → p.364

● Package information

You can check the following:

Default title	The original title
File name	The file name
File restriction	Always "File restricted"
File size	The file size in K bytes
Source	From where the file was acquired A blank appears here for a package preinstalled at the time of purchase.
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
Moved to microSD	Always "No"

microSD Memory Card

A microSD memory card can be used as external memory on the FOMA terminal. In addition, you can insert the microSD memory card into the microSD memory card adapter and use it on a PC, etc. that supports an SD memory card.

A microSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a microSD memory card, purchase one at your local electronics store. N903i supports up to 2G-byte microSD memory cards (commercially available) (As of November, 2006).

- You can copy data such as phonebook entries, messages, bookmarks and still images or movies shot with the FOMA terminal to a microSD memory card, or copy data stored on a microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal. Still images and movies stored on a microSD memory card can be viewed on the FOMA terminal.
- Other files that are attached to an i-mode message and cannot be used on the FOMA terminal (Phone) can be used on a PC, etc.
- Downloaded movies/i-motion programs stored on the FOMA terminal can be copied to a microSD memory card if the data provider allows you to copy.
- Visit the following site for the latest microSD memory card:
i-mode:

"iMenu" - "メニュー／検索"
(Menu/search) - "ケータイ電
話メーカー" - "みんなNら
んど" (Only in Japanese)



PC, etc.:
<http://www.n-keitai.com/> (Only in Japanese)

Notes

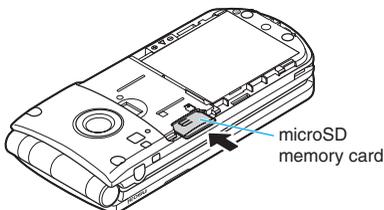
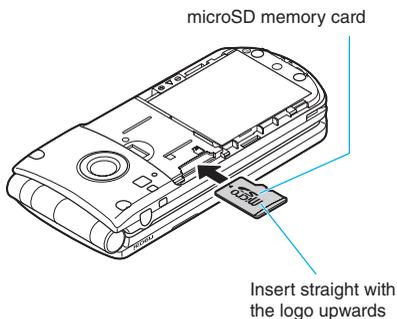
* Format a microSD memory card on the FOMA terminal. A microSD memory card formatted on other mobile phones or on a PC may be unusable on the FOMA terminal. → p.360

- Ensure that the FOMA terminal is turned off before inserting or removing a microSD memory card.
- Do not put a label or sticker on a microSD memory card.

Inserting/removing a microSD memory card

● Inserting

Ensure that the FOMA terminal is turned off before inserting a microSD memory card.



1 Remove the back cover

Removing the back cover → p.42

2 Insert the microSD memory card into the microSD memory card slot and push it in until it locks into place

Insert the microSD memory card straight and slowly with the printed side up. Fully inserting locks the card into place.

3 Attach the back cover

Attaching the back cover → p.42

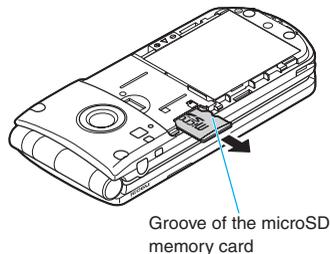
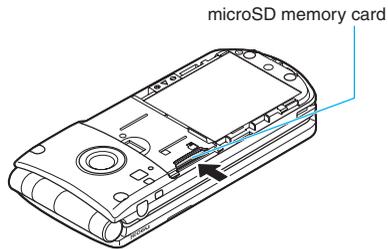
After you insert the microSD memory card then turn on the FOMA terminal, “SD” appears on the screen.

NOTE

- ◆ If an error occurs on the microSD memory card or if it is incorrectly formatted, “SD” appears on the screen.

● Removing

Ensure that the FOMA terminal is turned off before removing the microSD memory card.



1 Remove the back cover

Removing the back cover → p.42

2 Gently push the microSD memory card in

When you push the microSD memory card in then release it, the card pops out slightly. Note that the card may fly out of the slot.

3 Slowly pull the microSD memory card out of the slot

Grip the groove in the edge of the microSD memory card and slowly pull the card out.

4 Attach the back cover

Attaching the back cover → p.42

NOTE

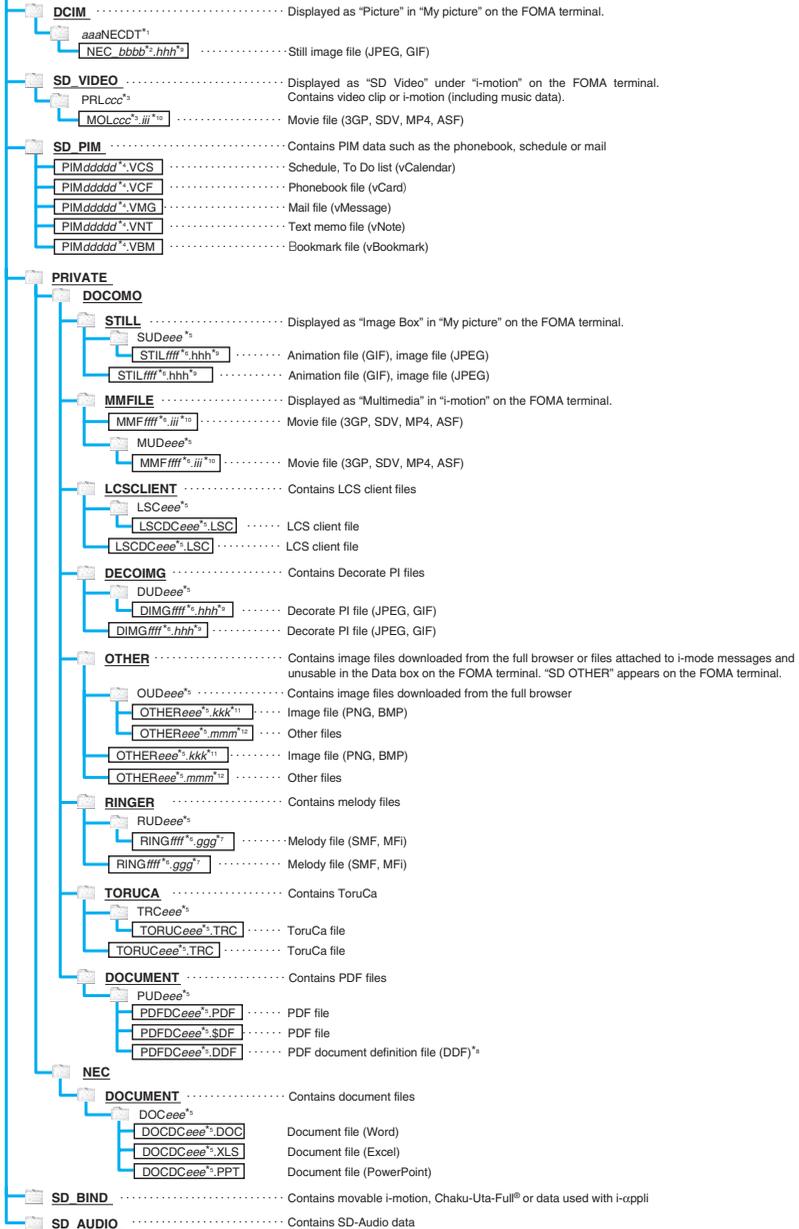
- ◆ Do not insert or remove a microSD memory card while the FOMA terminal is turned on. Doing so may damage the microSD memory card or destroy data on the card.
- ◆ The microSD memory card may spring out of the FOMA terminal during insertion or removal.
- ◆ After removing the microSD memory card from the FOMA terminal, keep the card in the protective case that came with the product. Storing the microSD memory card in another case may cause the microSD memory card to become unusable.
- ◆ Check that the microSD memory card is facing in the right direction, and hold it straight as you insert it into the FOMA terminal (Inserting the microSD memory card at an angle may damage the card).
- ◆ It may take long to read or write data for the first time after the microSD memory card is inserted.

Folder tree on a microSD memory card

If data are copied from the FOMA terminal to a microSD memory card, the folders shown below will be created and the data will be saved to the corresponding folder. Under the folders, files and subfolders are automatically named as shown below.

- When copying data from a PC or another device to a microSD memory card, create and name the folders and files as shown below:

microSD memory card



- *1: "aaa" is a 3-digit number between 100 and 999. "NECDT" can be changed to any alphanumeric characters.
- *2: "bbbb" is a 4-digit number between 0001 and 9999. "NEC_" can be changed to any alphanumeric characters.
- *3: "ccc" is a hexadecimal number between 001 and FFF, using 0 to 9 and A to F.
- *4: "dddd" is a 5-digit number between 00001 and 65535.
- *5: "eee" is a 3-digit number between 001 and 999.
- *6: "ffff" is a 4-digit number between 0001 and 9999.
- *7: "ggg" is a file extension, MLD or MID.
- *8: The folder appears only if it is viewed on a PC, etc.
- *9: "hhh" is a file extension, JPG or GIF.
- *10: "iii" is a file extension, 3GP, SDV, MP4 or ASF.
- *11: "kkk" is a file extension, PNG or BMP.
- *12: "mmm" is a file extension.

NOTE

- ◆ The SD_PIM folder does not appear until you copy PIM data such as the phonebook.
- ◆ If two or more data are copied to the SD_PIM folder, "yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm" (year/month/day hour:minute) is automatically added to the title names.
- ◆ Although a movie with video can be copied from a PC, etc. to the MMFILE folder, it cannot be played on the FOMA terminal.
- ◆ On some PCs, folder names and file names may appear in lower case.
- ◆ A file edited on a PC then saved to a microSD memory card may not be displayed or played correctly on FOMA N903i if you name the file using different characters from the folder/file names shown on p.354.
- ◆ If a microSD memory card is formatted and SDVIDEO.DAT, MMFILE.DAT or DCIM.DAT is deleted, the settings of the destination folder are canceled. To reset the settings, launch "Select to save" (pp.186, 193). Turning off the FOMA terminal or inserting/removing the microSD memory card does not cancel the settings.
- ◆ Do not use a PC to delete or move folders stored on a microSD memory card. Doing so may prevent FOMA N903i from reading the microSD memory card.
- ◆ FOMA N903i cannot recognize data that are stored on a microSD memory card but are unsupported by FOMA N903i.
- ◆ The FOMA terminal may be unable to display or play a data that was copied from another device to a microSD memory card. Also, another device may be unable to display or play a data that was copied from the FOMA terminal to a microSD memory card.
- ◆ Before purchasing the microSD memory card reader/writer or PC card adapter, ask the manufacturer of the microSD memory card if it is available for your FOMA terminal.
- ◆ A microSD memory card formatted on a device other than FOMA N903i may not function correctly.

● Number of files storable on a microSD memory card

The number of files storable on a microSD memory card varies depending on the memory capacity of the microSD memory card. The following table shows the maximum number of folders that can be created and the maximum number of files that can be saved to each folder. If a folder is added to change the copy destination, more files can be stored on the microSD memory card. Note that the maximum number of files storable may vary depending on the file size.

Folder	Max. number of folders	Max. number of files storable in each folder
DCIM	900	9,999
SD_VIDEO	4,095	4,095
SD_PIM	1	65,535
STILL	999	9,999
MMFILE	999	9,999
LCSCLIENT	999	999
DECOIMG	999	9,999
OTHER	999	999
RINGER	999	9,999
TORUCA	999	999
DOCUMENT	999	999

Use the "Categories function menu" (p.357) to check the memory capacity and available capacity of the microSD memory card. The displayed memory capacity will be lower than the one described on the microSD memory card.

- If there is insufficient space left on the microSD memory card and you attempt to copy phonebook entries, My Profile, schedule entries, To do list entries, text memos, messages or bookmarks, a message appears indicating that the data cannot be copied due to lack of space. In cases of images, movies and i-motion programs, "Copy to microSD" and "Move to microSD" on the function menu are grayed out. In this case, insert another microSD memory card or delete any unnecessary data from the card, then retry to copy the data.
- Music data cannot be copied from the FOMA terminal to a microSD memory card (SD_AUDIO folder).
- When the number of files in the folder to which a file is to be copied has already reached the limit then you attempt to copy:
 - Data to other than the SD_PIM folder, a new folder is automatically created and the file will be saved to the folder except if a still image shot with the built-in camera is directly saved to a microSD memory card.
 - Data to the SD_PIM folder, a message appears indicating that the folder is full of data, and the file cannot be copied to the microSD memory card.
- When the microSD memory card is full, you cannot add another folder for images, movies or i-motion programs, edit titles or copy/move files. Delete any unnecessary data and retry.

Data that can be Exchanged Between the FOMA Terminal and a microSD Memory Card

The following table shows data that can be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and a microSD memory card:

■ PIM data such as phonebook entries or mail messages

- Copying PIM data between the FOMA terminal and a microSD memory card → p.356

Data type	Details
Phonebook	Name, Reading, Phone number, Mail address, Memo, Address, Birthday, Image, Location info, Memory number*1, Secret store*2, Group number*3, Group name*3, PushTalk phone number, PushTalk group number*3, PushTalk group name*3
Schedule	Date(from), Date(to), Summary, Contents, Secret store*2, Category*4, Alarm, Repeat
To Do list	Contents, Category*5, Completion date, Period, Change status, Priority, Alarm
Text memo	Make date, Last modify date, Category, Contents
Received mail*6, Sent mail*6, Draft mail, SMS	Unread/Read, Message type, Saved in, Sender, Receiver, Title, Receive/Send date, Message, Attach
Bookmark*6*7	Title, URL

*1 : Data cannot be copied by "Copy & add this", when the same memory number has been saved, etc.

*2 : Secret store shows if it is stored as a secret data.

*3 : Data can be copied by "Copy all".

*4 : Category is the icon information setting that was set in Schedule.

*5 : Category is set in To Do list.

*6 : Folder names remain unchanged after you copy all of received messages, sent messages and bookmarks to a microSD memory card.

*7 : An i-mode bookmark copied from a microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal is saved to the "Bookmark" folder under "i-mode menu". A full browser bookmark is saved to the "Bookmark" folder under "Internet(Full Browser)".

■ Data stored in Data box

- Copying data between the FOMA terminal (Data box) and a microSD memory card → p.363

Data type	Details
Still image	JPEG and GIF data stored in Inbox, Camera, Decomail-picture, Decorate PI, Auto Decomail, microSD and user-created folders
Movie	MP4 data stored in Inbox, Camera, microSD and user-created folders
PDF data	PDF documents stored in Inbox, microSD and user-created folders
Melody	MFI/SMF melodies stored in Inbox, microSD and user-created folders

■ Other data

- Copying ToruCa between the FOMA terminal and a microSD memory card → p.302
- Copying LCS client data between the FOMA terminal and a microSD memory card → p.315

Data type	Details
ToruCa	ToruCa stored in ToruCa, microSD and user-created folders
LCS client	Service client name, Service client ID, Phone number, Notify at dialing

NOTE

- ◆ If a schedule with a user icon set is copied, the "Category" information is not transferred.
- ◆ A data cannot be copied if it is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal. However, a "File restricted" data on the FOMA terminal can be copied.

<SD-PIM>

Using the microSD Memory Card

Phonebook entries, Schedule, To Do list, Text memo, Mail messages and Bookmark stored on the FOMA terminal can be copied to a microSD memory card. The data can be viewed using "SD-PIM" or copied back to the FOMA terminal.

- A microSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a microSD memory card, purchase one at your local electronics store. → p.352

Previewing data stored on the microSD memory card

Display and check data stored on a microSD memory card.

1 (MENU) ▶ "LifeKit" ▶ "SD-PIM"

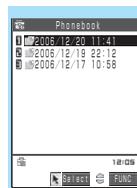
The "Categories" screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.357

2 Select any item

The "File list" screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.357

3 Select a file

The “Data list” screen appears.



Function menu → p.358

4 Select a data

The “Data detail” screen appears.



Function menu → p.358

NOTE

- ◆ While running SD-PIM or displaying the data details, you cannot launch another function.
- ◆ A Deco-mail message appears without decoration.
- ◆ “” appears for a bookmark added on the i-mode browser screen, and “” for the one added on the full browser screen.

Function menu (Categories screen)

microSD info	“Checking how a microSD memory card is used” → p.360
Copy from phone*	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Copies all data stored in the highlighted item to the microSD memory card.
microSD format	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Formats the microSD memory card.
Check microSD	Checks the microSD memory card. Checking the microSD memory card may fix problems.

* : If “Schedule” is selected, you can select “Schedule”, “To Do list” or “All”. If “Bookmark” is selected, you can select “i-mode brw.”, “Full brw.” or “All”.

NOTE

<Check microSD>

- ◆ Do not remove the microSD memory card during Check microSD. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card to malfunction.
- ◆ You cannot check unformatted or incompatible microSD memory cards.
- ◆ “” flashes during Check microSD.

- ◆ If you press (Quit) or (Power), the Check microSD is stopped and “” appears.
- ◆ If the Check microSD is interrupted, some data may remain to be recovered. Check microSD again.
- ◆ It may take long to check the microSD memory card depending on the amount of data.
- ◆ Some data may not be recovered depending on the microSD memory card.
- ◆ If Check microSD is performed, the titles of data stored on the microSD memory card are renamed to the file names.
Titles and file names → p.331

Function menu (File list screen)

- Copy & overwrite (Copy & OW this/Copy & OW select/Copy & OW all) overwrites data stored on the FOMA terminal with data stored on the microSD memory card.
Make sure that the data to be overwritten are not important to you.

Edit title	▶ Edit a title Edits the title of the highlighted file. The title can contain up to 15 double-byte or 31 single-byte characters.
Copy & add	Copies data to the FOMA terminal.
• Copy & add this	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Copies all data in the highlighted file.
• Copy & add selecte	▶ Use to select a checkbox (<input type="checkbox"/>) ▶ (Finish) ▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Copies all data in the selected files.
• Copy & add all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Copies all data in all files.
Copy & overwrite*1	Overwrites data on the FOMA terminal.
• Copy & OW this	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” ▶ “YES” ² Overwrites with all data in the highlighted file.
• Copy & OW selected	▶ Use to select a checkbox (<input type="checkbox"/>) ▶ (Finish) ▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” ▶ “YES” ² Overwrites with all data in the selected files.
• Copy & OW all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” ▶ “YES” ² Overwrites with all data in all files.
Copy from phone ³	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Copies all data stored in the selected item from the FOMA terminal.
microSD info	Displays the amounts of available space and data stored on the microSD memory card.

Delete	
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted file.
• Delete selected	▶ Use to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple files.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all files stored in the selected item.

- *1 : In case of Schedule, To Do list data are also to be overwritten (If only either data are stored, only the stored data are to be overwritten).
- *2 : In case of phonebook, if only one file is to be copied, a screen appears asking whether to set the first data as your own data.
- *3 : If “Schedule” is selected, you can select “Schedule”, “To Do list” or “All”. If “Bookmark” is selected, you can select “i-mode brw.”, “Full brw.” or “All”.

NOTE

<Delete>

- ◆ If a file to delete is read-only, a message appears asking whether to delete the file.

Function menu (Data list/detail screen)

- Copy & OW all overwrites data stored on the FOMA terminal with data stored on the microSD memory card.
Make sure that the data to be overwritten are not important to you.

Copy & add this	Copies the highlighted or displayed data to the FOMA terminal.
Copy & add all *1	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Copies all data stored in a file to the FOMA terminal.
Copy & OW all *1	■ Phonebook ▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” ▶ “YES” ▶ “YES” or “NO” ■ Schedule *2, Inbox, Outbox, Draft, Text memo, Bookmark ▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” ▶ “YES” Overwrites data on the FOMA terminal with all data stored in a file.
microSD info	Displays the amounts of available space and data stored on the microSD memory card.

- *1 : The option appears only for the Data list screen.
- *2 : To Do list data are also to be overwritten (If only either data are stored, only the stored data are to be overwritten).

Copying data stored on the FOMA terminal to a microSD memory card

Copy phonebook entries, schedule, To Do list, text memo, mail messages and bookmark stored on the FOMA terminal to a microSD memory card.

■ To copy one data stored on the FOMA terminal

Select “Copy to microSD” then “Copy this” from the function menu on the list screen of the data you want to copy, or “Copy to microSD” from the function menu on the detail screen of the data you want to copy.

■ To copy multiple data stored on the FOMA terminal

Select “Copy to microSD” then “Copy selected” from the function menu on the list screen of the data you want to copy.

■ To copy all data stored in a folder on the FOMA terminal (Inbox, Outbox, Bookmark)

Select “Copy to microSD” then “Copy all” from the function menu on the list screen of the data you want to copy.

■ To copy all data stored on the FOMA terminal

Select “Copy from phone” from the function

menu on the Categories screen. → p.357

You can also copy all data in the following methods:

- Phonebook, Schedule, To Do list, Draft, Text memo
Select “Copy to microSD” then “Copy all” from the function menu on the list or detail screen of the data you want to copy.
- Inbox, Outbox, Bookmark
Select “CopyAll to microSD” from the function menu on the folder list screen.

NOTE

- ◆ If you copy a message that includes the i-αappli launch settings, the settings are deleted from the message.
- ◆ If you copy a secret data (phonebook, schedule), the secret is released.
- ◆ If all data are copied to the microSD memory card, secret data (phonebook, schedule) are also copied, except data stored in the Secret folder.
- ◆ If all phonebook data are copied, “My Profile” contents are also copied. All PushTalk phonebook data are also copied.
- ◆ If one phonebook data is copied, PushTalk phonebook data are not copied.
- ◆ “Copy all” cannot be selected from the phonebook detail screen or message detail screen.
- ◆ Copying messages may delete some types of files attached.
- ◆ If you copy one entry in “My Profile” but do not “Display all data”, the name, reading, own number and the first stored mail address are saved as a phonebook entry. If you “Display all data” to copy one data, all the stored data are saved as a phonebook entry.

Copying data stored on a microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal

Copy & add or overwrite phonebook entries, schedule, To Do list, text memo, mail messages and bookmark stored on a microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal.

● Copying to the FOMA terminal

■ To add all data stored in a file

“Copy & add” - “Copy & add this” from the “File list function menu” → p.357

“Copy & add all” from the “Data list function menu” → p.358

■ To add all data stored in the selected files

“Copy & add” - “Copy & add selecte” from the “File list function menu” → p.357

■ To add all data stored in all files

“Copy & add” - “Copy & add all” from the “File list function menu” → p.357

■ To add one selected data

“Copy & add this” from the “Data list/detail function menu” → p.358

● Overwriting to the FOMA terminal

■ To overwrite all data stored in a file

“Copy & overwrite” - “Copy & OW this” from the “File list function menu” → p.357

“Copy & OW all” from the “Data list function menu” → p.358

■ To overwrite all data stored in the selected files

“Copy & overwrite” - “Copy & OW selected” from the “File list function menu” → p.357

■ To overwrite all data stored in all files

“Copy & overwrite” - “Copy & OW all” from the “File list function menu” → p.357

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot copy phonebook data while “Restrict dialing” is set.
- ◆ It may take long to read or write data on the microSD memory card if there are many files stored.
- ◆ If the memory of the FOMA terminal becomes full of data during the copy process, the copy is interrupted. Already copied data are saved.

<To use the file list function menu to copy>

- ◆ If Copy & add (Copy & add this/Copy & add selecte/ Copy & add all) or Copy & overwrite (Copy & OW this/ Copy & OW selecte/ Copy & OW all) is selected for phonebook data, PushTalk phonebook are also copied. However, the group list is not registered when “Copy & add” is selected.
- ◆ If Copy & add (Copy & add this/Copy & add selecte/ Copy & add all) is selected but group names on the microSD memory card and on the FOMA terminal are different, the data is saved to Group 00 in the phonebook.
- ◆ Copy & add (Copy & add this/Copy & add selecte/ Copy & add all) cannot copy:
 - A schedule data with the same date/time and repeat settings as those of the existing one
 - A bookmark with the same URL as that of the existing one

<To use the data list/detail function menu to copy>

- ◆ If Copy & add all or Copy & OW all is selected for phonebook data, PushTalk phonebook are also copied. However, the group list is not registered when “Copy & add all” is selected.
- ◆ If Copy & add all is selected but group names on the microSD memory card and on the FOMA terminal are different, the data is saved to Group 00 in the phonebook.
- ◆ Copy & add this and Copy & add all cannot copy:
 - A schedule data with the same date/time and repeat settings as those of the existing one
 - A bookmark with the same URL as that of the existing one
- ◆ When Outbox is full, copying one sent message overwrites the oldest unprotected message.
- ◆ When Inbox is full, copying one received message overwrites the oldest unprotected read message.

Managing the microSD Memory Card

Format a microSD memory card or check how data are used.

- A microSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a microSD memory card, purchase one at your local electronics store. → p.352

Formatting a microSD memory card

* Format a microSD memory card on the FOMA terminal. A microSD memory card formatted on other mobile phones or on a PC may be unusable on the FOMA terminal.

Format a microSD memory card so that it can be used on the FOMA terminal.

- Formatting a microSD memory card deletes all data stored on the card. Before formatting the card, make sure that the stored data are not important to you.

- 1 **Categories screen (p.356)**▶
① (FUNC)▶“microSD format”▶
Enter your security code▶“YES”

NOTE

- ◆ Do not remove the microSD memory card during the format process. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card to malfunction.
- ◆ Data saved to the microSD memory card are not guaranteed if the format was interrupted.
- ◆ The “” flashes during the format process.
- ◆ If you press  (Quit) or , the format is stopped and “” appears. Format the card again.
- ◆ “microSD format” is grayed out when the i-appli standby screen is activated using a microSD memory card.

Checking how a microSD memory card is used

Check the amounts of available space and data stored on a microSD memory card.

Number of files storable on a microSD memory card → p.355

- 1 **Categories screen (p.356)**▶
① (FUNC)▶“microSD info”

Using the FOMA Terminal as a microSD Reader/Writer

Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC with a microSD memory card inserted, and you can read/write data stored on the microSD memory card.

- A microSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a microSD memory card, purchase one at your local electronics store. → p.352
- To use the FOMA terminal as a microSD reader/writer, you need the following:

Item	Description
Cable	FOMA USB Cable (optional)
PC	PC with USB port (Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1 based) supporting FOMA USB Cable (optional)
Operating System	Windows 2000, Windows XP (Japanese edition)

- 1 **USB mode setting screen (p.361)**▶
“microSD mode”

If “microSD mode” is set, “” appears.

- 2 **Connect the FOMA terminal and a PC via the FOMA USB Cable**

“” will appear when microSD mode is set, a microSD memory card is inserted and the FOMA USB Cable is connected.

The microSD memory card appears in the My Computer window on a PC as storage memory (external storage device).

To remove the FOMA USB Cable, follow the Windows safe removal procedure.

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot change the USB mode setting or access the microSD memory card from the FOMA terminal while data is being transferred between a PC and the microSD memory card. You cannot access the microSD memory card from a PC while data is being transferred between the FOMA terminal and the microSD memory card.

Important

- Ensure that the FOMA terminal and a PC are properly connected. An improper connection may not only prevent data transfer but may also result in data loss.
- Attempting to transfer data with the FOMA terminal's battery low or empty may not only prevent data transfer but may also result in data loss. Make sure that the FOMA terminal's battery is fully charged. Also check the PC's power.
- Do not remove the FOMA USB Cable while the incoming call lamp is flashing to indicate that data is being exchanged between a PC and the FOMA terminal. Doing so may not only prevent data transfer but may also result in data loss.

Setting USB mode

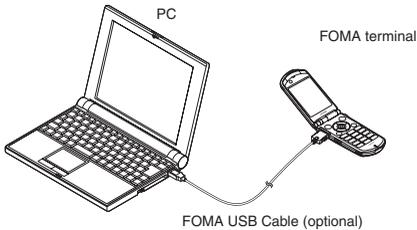
<USB mode setting>

Default setting
Communication mode

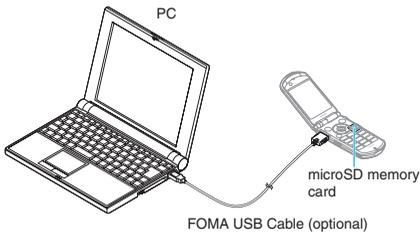
Set USB mode to use various functions by connecting the FOMA terminal to your PC or printer.

- USB mode is categorized into "Communication mode", "microSD mode" and "Print mode".

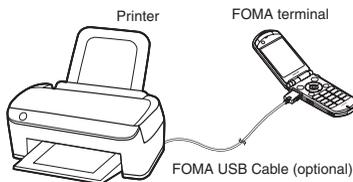
<Communication mode>



<microSD mode>



<Print mode>



1 [MENU] "Settings" ▶

"External connection"

▶ "USB mode setting"

The "USB mode setting" screen appears.



2 Select any item

Communication mode	Uses the external connector for packet communication, 64K data communication and data exchange via cable connection. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "📶": The FOMA USB Cable is not connected/The FOMA USB Cable is connected but data are not ready to be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and a PC• "📶": The FOMA USB Cable is connected and data are ready to be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and a PC
microSD mode	Uses the external connector as a microSD memory card reader/writer. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "📶": The FOMA USB Cable is not connected• "📶": The FOMA USB Cable is connected (You cannot transfer data between the FOMA terminal and the microSD memory card, display data in memory or format the microSD memory card)
Print mode	Uses the external connector for PictBridge print. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "📶": The FOMA USB Cable is not connected/The FOMA USB Cable is connected but data are not ready to be printed• "📶": The FOMA USB Cable is connected and data are ready to be printed

Working with Folders and Files

Add folders to the folder/microSD folder list screens of My picture, Music, i-motion, Melody, My document and Document viewer for organizing the files.

- If an i-cxpli program is saving data to a microSD memory card and attempting to access data stored on the microSD memory card, a message appears indicating that the access is denied.

Creating, editing and deleting folders

Function menu (folder list screen)

- The following function menu also appears on the list screen of the Movable contents folder under Music (p.328):

Add folder	▶ Enter a folder name Adds a folder. The folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Edit folder name	▶ Edit a folder name Edits the name of the added folder. The name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Delete folder	■ Music ▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select deletion mode ▶ “YES” ■ Other than Music ▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” You can delete a folder containing data.
Delete all^{*1*}	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all data you have stored. However, data stored in the Secret folder are not deleted.
Edit playlist^{*3}	Creates a playlist or edits the existing playlist. “Playing movies in your preferred order” → p.343 “Playing melodies in your preferred order” → p.351
Release playlist^{*3}	Releases a playlist.

*1 : “Delete all image” appears for My picture, and “Delete all” for i-motion and Melody.

*2 : The option does not appear for the Movable contents folder under Music.

*3 : The options only appear in folders under i-motion and Melody.

NOTE

<Edit folder name>

- ◆ You can rename only user-created folders.

<Delete folder> <Delete all image> <Delete all>

- ◆ You can delete only user-created folders.

- ◆ If you attempt to use “Delete folder”, “Delete all image” and “Delete all” to delete an image or movie that has been set for a screen, an original animation or a user icon for Schedule, or if you attempt to use “Delete folder” or “Delete all” to delete a melody that has been set as a ring tone or alarm or set to a playlist or random melody, a message appears asking whether to delete the item. If you select “YES” to delete the image, the corresponding feature (screen, etc.) changes as follows:

- The screens, ring tones or alarms restore to default.
- Original animation and playlist are released.
- The Schedule alarm notification screen is replaced with the one to which “” was set.

Function menu (microSD folder list screen)

For ToruCa, see “ToruCa folder list function menu” (p.301), and for Bookmark, see “Bookmark folder list function menu” (p.216).

- The following function menu also appears on the list screen (p.329) of Movable contents folder under i-motion:

Edit folder name^{*1}	▶ Edit a title Edits a folder title. The title can contain up to 31 double-byte or 63 single-byte characters. ^{*2}
Create folder^{*1}	▶ Enter a title Creates a folder. The folder title can contain up to 31 double-byte or 63 single-byte characters. ^{*2}
DPOF Print^{*1*}	“Printing Stored Images” → p.379
Delete folder	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes the highlighted folder.

*1 : The options do not appear for “Image Box” or “Decorate PI”.

*2 : The folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters for “Melody” and the Movable contents folder under “i-motion”.

*3 : The option does not appear for “i-motion”, “Melody”, “My document” or “Document viewer”.

NOTE

<Create folder>

- ◆ You cannot create a folder in the “Image Box” on the FOMA terminal but on your PC.
- ◆ The Movable contents folder can contain up to 65,535 folders, each of which can contain up to 65,535 files.

<Delete folder>

- ◆ A message appears asking whether to delete a folder if the folder:
 - Is read-only on a PC, etc.
 - Contains a file

Moving data to another folder

Move images, movies or other data to another folder.

- 1 Each data list screen (image list, etc.) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Move” ▶ Select any item

Move this	▶ Select the destination folder ▶ “YES” Moves the selected data.
Move selected	▶ Select the destination folder ▶ Select data to move ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Moves multiple data.
Move all	▶ Select the destination folder ▶ “YES” Moves all data from the folder.

Copying data stored on the FOMA terminal to a microSD memory card

Copy data stored in the Inbox folder, Camera folder, user-created folders, etc. to a microSD memory card.

- 1 Each data list screen (image list, etc.) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Copy to microSD” ▶ Select any item

Copy this	▶ Select the destination folder Copies the selected data.
Copy selected	▶ Select the destination folder ▶ Select data to copy ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Copies multiple data.
Copy all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select the destination folder ▶ “YES” Copies all data from the folder.

NOTE

- ◆ It may take long to copy a large amount of data.
- ◆ Do not remove the microSD memory card during the copy process. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card to malfunction.
- ◆ You cannot copy a data to a microSD memory card if:
 - It is stored at the time of purchase
 - It is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal
 - It is an image/movie of Chara-den character with “Rec.File Restriction”
 - There is little space available on the microSD memory card
 - The microSD memory card is not supported
 - An error occurs on the microSD memory card
 - The microSD memory card is being inserted

- ◆ Receiving a call, message or alarm notification cancels copying still images or movies to a microSD memory card.
- ◆ When the specified destination folder is full, a new folder is automatically created and data are saved to the new folder.

<Copy image>

- ◆ The following shows the file name after copied:
 - File name: NEC_mmmm (mmm = 0001 to 9999)
- ◆ You cannot copy an image to a microSD memory card if:
 - It is neither JPEG nor GIF
 - The file size exceeds 2M bytes after copied
- ◆ Copying an image to a microSD memory card may increase the file size.

<Copy movie>

- ◆ The following shows the file name after copied:
 - File name: MOLxxx (xxx = 001 to FFF: hexadecimal)

<Copy PDF data>

- ◆ PDF data, only a part of which has been downloaded by page (“”), cannot be copied to a microSD memory card.

Copying data stored on a microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal

Copy data stored on a microSD memory card to the Inbox folder on the FOMA terminal.

- 1 Each data list screen (image list, etc.) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Copy to phone” ▶ Select any item

Copy this	Copies the selected data.
Copy selected	▶ Select data to copy ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Copies multiple data.
Copy all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Copies all data from the folder.

NOTE

- ◆ It may take long to copy a large amount of data.
- ◆ Do not remove the microSD memory card during the copy process. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card to malfunction.
- ◆ If you receive a call, message or alarm notification while copying an image, the copy continues. If you receive a call, message or alarm notification while copying a movie, the copy is interrupted.
- ◆ Decorate PI are copied to the Decorate PI folder on the FOMA terminal.

<Copy image>

- ◆ You cannot copy Flash movies.
- ◆ You cannot copy an image whose file size exceeds 2M bytes.
- ◆ An image cannot be copied if the width or height exceeds 2,304 dots or if the size exceeds 2,304 dots wide × 1,728 dots high. Also, a progressive JPEG image larger than 690 dots wide × 480 dots high or whose width or height exceeds 690 dots cannot be copied.

Progressive JPEG images → p.218

- ◆ The name of the copied file is that of the one stored on the microSD memory card.

<Copy movie>

- ◆ You cannot copy a movie when:
 - It is not MP4
 - It is MP4 but unplayable
 - * You may be unable to copy some movies even when none of the above applies.
- ◆ Movies larger than 2M bytes are truncated to the first 2M bytes and then copied. However, a movie of larger than QCIF (176 × 144) whose file size exceeds 2M bytes cannot be truncated, which means that it cannot be copied.

<Copy PDF data>

- ◆ A PDF data cannot be copied if the file size exceeds 2M bytes.

Copying data to another folder on a microSD memory card

Copy data stored on a microSD memory card to another folder on a microSD memory card.

- Create a destination folder beforehand. → p.362

1 Each data list screen (image list, etc.) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Copy” ▶ Select any item

Copy this	▶ Select the destination folder Copies the selected data.
Copy selected	▶ Select the destination folder ▶ Select data to copy ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Copies multiple data.
Copy all	▶ Select the destination folder Copies all data from the folder.

Deleting data

Delete images, movies or other data.

1 Each data list screen (image list, etc.) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Delete” ▶ Select any item

Delete this	Deletes the selected data.
Delete selected	▶ Select data to delete ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple data.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all data from the folder.

NOTE

<Delete image>

- ◆ You cannot delete images stored at the time of purchase.
- ◆ If you attempt to delete an image that has been set for a screen or original animation or set as a user icon for Schedule, the set screen, etc. changes as follows:
 - The screens restore to default.
 - Original animation is released.
 - The Schedule alarm screen turns to the one to which “C” was set.
- ◆ Even if the original image is deleted, the same one attached to a message is not deleted.

<Delete movie>

- ◆ If a movie or i-motion that was set for the standby screen is deleted, the standby screen is restored to the one set at the time of purchase.

<Delete Chara-den>

- ◆ If a Chara-den character set as a videophone substitute image is deleted, the preinstalled Chara-den “Dimo” is set as a substitute image. If you have already deleted “Dimo”, a preinstalled still image is transmitted as a substitute image.
- ◆ If a Chara-den character set in a phonebook entry is deleted, the one stored in the phonebook is also deleted.

<Delete melody>

- ◆ If a melody set as a ring tone or alarm tone is deleted, the corresponding ring tone or alarm tone is restored to default.

<Delete Kisekae Tool>

- ◆ If a package set as Kisekae Tool is deleted, the set screen, etc. is restored to the one set at the time of purchase.

When there is insufficient memory or when there are too many items stored

When you attempt to save still images or movies or download an image, melody, i-motion or Chara-den character from a site, if there is insufficient memory capacity or if the space available for storing data is already full, a message appears asking whether to delete some unnecessary data to save new data.

1 Select “YES” on the message

- To cancel saving the data
▶ “NO”

2 Select a folder ▶ Select data to delete

- To delete Chaku-Uta-Full®, PDF data or Text memo
Chaku-Uta-Full®, PDF data and Screen memo co-use a storage area for storing data.
▶ Select a type of data to delete ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select data to delete (If “Text memo” is selected, the folder selection screen does not appear)

3 (Finish) ▶ “YES”

(Finish) does not appear until enough memory is allocated for data.

NOTE

◆ When you attempt to delete an image or movie that has been set for a screen or a melody that has been set as a ring tone, a message appears asking whether to delete the file. If “YES” is selected to delete the file, the corresponding screen or ring tone is restored to default.

<Forwarding image>

Preventing Phonebook Image Forwarding

Default setting
ON

Prevent still images stored in the phonebook from being sent when copying phonebook data to a microSD memory card or transferring phonebook data via Infrared data exchange, iC communication or data exchange (OBEX).

1 (MENU) ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “Forwarding image” ▶ “OFF”

■ To transfer
▶ “ON”

<Infrared data exchange/iC communication/OBEX>

Transferring Data via Infrared Data Exchange/ iC Communication/Cable Connection

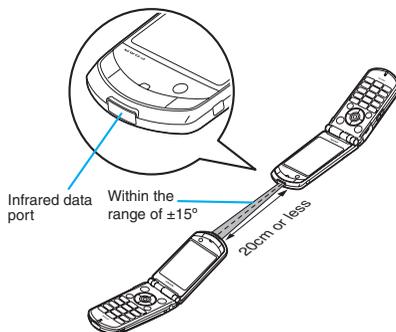
The Infrared data exchange, iC communication or cable connection allows the FOMA terminal to exchange data such as phonebook entries and received messages with another FOMA terminal or a PC.

- You can transfer the following:
 - Received mail, Sent mail, Draft mail
 - i-mode or Full Browser bookmarks
 - Phonebook
 - PDF data^{*1}
 - ToruCa, ToruCa (detail)
 - My Profile data
 - Text memo
 - To Do list
 - Holiday/Anniversary^{*2}
 - Schedule
 - Still image^{*1}
 - Movie (i-motion)^{*1}
 - Melody^{*1}
 - LCS client
 - Own dictionary
 - Common phrases

^{*1} : You cannot send all data via Infrared data exchange or iC communication.

^{*2} : Data can only be transferred via cable connection.

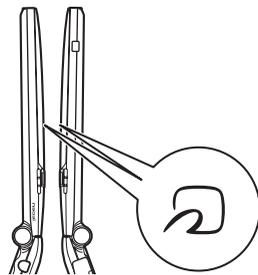
Transferring data via Infrared data exchange



- Set the receiving FOMA terminal to standby, and keep 20 cm or less between the FOMA terminals.
- Place the FOMA terminals on a stable surface, such as a table, so that the infrared data ports are aligned on the same level and facing each other.
- Do not move the FOMA terminals during data exchange.
- Do not place anything between the FOMA terminals or cover the infrared data ports.
- If data exchange is finished unsuccessfully, adjust the positions then retry the exchange.
- The FOMA terminals may not communicate successfully if they are placed under direct sunlight, directly under a fluorescent light, or close to other infrared equipment.

Transferring data via iC communication

Put the FeliCa mark “” of the sending FOMA terminal close to the FeliCa mark “” of the receiving FOMA terminal.



Transferring data via cable connection

- To transfer data, you need the software such as DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.430).
- Before transferring data, set “USB mode setting” to “Communication mode”. → p.361

Important

- Ensure that the FOMA terminal and a PC are properly connected. An improper connection may not only prevent data transfer but may also result in data loss. Install the N903i communication setting file (driver). → p.429
- Attempting to transfer data with the FOMA terminal's battery low or empty may not only prevent data transfer but may also result in data loss. Make sure that the FOMA terminal's battery is fully charged. Also check the PC's power.
- All data on the FOMA terminal may be deleted if an error occurs while transferring all from a PC to the FOMA terminal. Before transferring all, check the cable connection, the FOMA terminal's battery level and the PC's power.

Note on transferring data

Before data transfer

- You cannot transfer data while another function is running. Exit all other functions before transferring. You cannot run another function while transferring data.
- You cannot transfer data while making/receiving a voice call/videophone call/PushTalk call or using i-mode, packet communication or 64K data communication. → p.472
- You cannot transfer data while Dial lock, Self mode, Omakase Lock or Keypad lock is set. iC communication is unavailable while IC card lock is set.
- You cannot receive data stored in the phonebook while "Restrict dialing" is set. However, you can send data with "Restrict dialing" and data in "My Profile".
- Whether you can transfer data may depend on the status of the other party's FOMA terminal. If you transfer with a terminal whose model is different from yours, it may not reflect the settings of received messages or bookmark folder tree, or may not receive a Deco-mail message correctly.
- The data transfer function via Infrared data exchange, cable connection or iC communication conforms to the IrMC1.1 standard. You may be unable to exchange data with a terminal or PC that does not conform to IrMC1.1. Some data may not be transferred correctly even if the terminal or application of the other party conforms to IrMC1.1.
- When transferring a still image, melody, movie/i-motion, PDF document, PushTalk phonebook or ToruCa via cable connection, which does not comply with IrMC, you need the transferring software compatible with FOMA N903i.

During data transfer

- The FOMA terminal is out of range, which means that you cannot make/receive a voice call/video-phone call/PushTalk call or use i-mode, i-mode mail, packet communication or 64K data communication. However, the FOMA terminal may receive an incoming call or message immediately after starting data transfer. In this case, the transfer will be canceled. After the transfer is finished, the out of range status may continue for a while.
- Infrared data exchange or iC communication will be canceled and a message appears asking whether to continue the communication when:
 - The receiving device does not receive data within 30 seconds or so
 - The sending device cannot find the receiving deviceSelect "YES" to retry the communication. If you do not select "YES" or "NO" within 30 seconds or so, the communication will be automatically finished.
- It may take long to transfer a large amount of data. The receiving device may be unable to receive a large amount of data. It may take long to transfer the phonebook because stored images are also transferred. To shorten the sending time, you can set "Forwarding image" to "OFF", so that images stored in the phonebook are not transferred.

Data to be transferred

- Data received by the FOMA terminal are saved as follows:

Data	Destination/Order	
Still image/ image	The first in the Inbox folder	
Movie/ i-motion		
Melody		
PDF data		
ToruCa, ToruCa (detail) ¹	The first in the ToruCa folder	
Phone- book ²	The lowest memory number available between "010" and "699". If none of the numbers above is available, it is saved under the lowest memory number available between "000" and "009".	
My Profile		
Schedule	In date order of received schedules	
To Do list	The first in the To Do list	
Received mail ³	(Receive one)	The Inbox folder in date order of received messages
	(Receive all)	User-created folders or Trash box folder according to the folder tree on the sender
Sent mail ³	(Receive one)	The Outbox folder in date order of sent messages
	(Receive all)	User-created folders or Trash box folder according to the folder tree on the sender

Draft mail	The Draft folder in date order of draft messages	
Text memo	The first <Not recorded>	
Common phrases	(Receive one)	The first <Not recorded> ⁵
	(Receive all)	The same order and contents as on the sender
Own dictionary	(Receive one)	The first under the Own dictionary
	(Receive all)	The same order as on the sender
i-mode bookmark	(Receive one)	The first in the Bookmark folder under i-mode menu
	(Receive all)	The Bookmark folder under i-mode menu in the same order as on the sender ⁴
Full browser bookmark	(Receive one)	The first in the Bookmark folder under Internet(Full Browser)
	(Receive all)	The Bookmark folder under Internet(Full Browser) in the same order as on the sender ⁴
LCS client	(Receive one)	The lowest number in the LCS client list
	(Receive all)	In order from the lowest number in the LCS client list

*1 : When you transfer one data at a time via Infrared data exchange, a message appears asking whether to send ToruCa (detail) (Select "YES" to send ToruCa (detail)).

*2 : The order in the PushTalk phonebook cannot be transferred via Infrared data exchange, cable connection or iC communication. The entries are registered in received order, which means that the memory number order will apply.

*3 : A mail message larger than 2M bytes may not be sent correctly via Infrared data exchange.

*4 : The entries may not be registered in the same order, depending on the sender's model.

*5 : If original common phrases are already stored in all Folders 3 to 5 and fixed common phrases in Folders 1 and 2 have not been changed since the time of purchase, received common phrases will be stored in Folders 1 and 2, overwriting the fixed common phrases.

- Receiving all still images deletes all the images stored in the phonebook.
- Receiving the phonebook entries saves still images stored in the phonebook you received to the Inbox folder under "My picture". However if the amount of data exceeds the storage limit of "My picture", the exceeding images are deleted to create a phonebook entry, and a message appears indicating that some images could not be saved.
- Titles of still images, movies, i-motion programs or PDF documents can contain up to 9 double-byte characters or 18 single-byte characters. Titles of melodies can contain up to 25 double-byte or 50 single-byte characters. If the length of a title exceeds the maximum, the exceeding part will be truncated.
- The FOMA terminal may not properly receive some symbols or pictographs entered in a message or phonebook entry.

- You cannot send or receive:
 - UIM phonebook, SMS
 - Data stored in the Secret folder
 - Frame data (can be received only), Flash movie
 - Melody, still image, movie, i-motion, PDF document with FOMA card operational restriction
- You cannot receive:
 - Image other than JPEG or GIF
 - Movie other than MP4 or 3GP
 - Melody, still image, movie, i-motion, PDF document whose size is beyond the capacity of the FOMA terminal
- You cannot save if:
 - You receive a bookmark with the same URL as that of the existing one
 - You receive a schedule data with the same date/time and repeat settings as those of the existing one
 - You receive a schedule or To Do list data while the clock is not set
 - You receive an Own dictionary data with the same word and reading as that of the existing one
 - The number of data stored has already reached the limit or there is no memory available and you receive the same type of data
- Note the following when you transfer phonebook data:
 - The data to be transferred are name, reading, phone number, mail address, postal code, address, memo, birthday, still image, location info and icon info setting. When more than one phone numbers and addresses are stored on a phonebook entry, all the phone numbers and mail addresses are transferred.
 - The Secret code cannot be transferred.
 - If a phonebook entry stored as a secret data is transferred via Infrared data exchange or iC communication, the Secret is released before the transfer.
 - When all phonebook entries are transferred, they are sent in the memory number order.
 - The "My Profile" data is sent when all phonebook entries are transferred. The personal data of "My Profile" stored on the receiving device are overwritten (excluding the phone number).
 - Some pictographs or symbols in phonebook entries may not appear correctly on the receiving device if it does not support them.
 - When all data are transferred, PushTalk phonebook entries are also transferred. When one data is transferred at a time, only Phone or UIM phonebook entries are transferred. However, a message appears asking whether to save the entries to the PushTalk phonebook after transferred, which means that they can be saved to the PushTalk phonebook.
- Note the following when you transfer mail data:
 - i-appli launch information is deleted when you send a message. A file-restricted data is also deleted. Some still images are deleted depending on the format. However, even a file-restricted data can be sent if it is a sent message or draft message received via cable connection or copied from a microSD memory card.
 - If the attached file has not been completely retrieved, the file is deleted when sent.

- If there is no enough space in the Inbox folder, messages in the Trash box folder or older received messages are automatically deleted in order. The following messages are not deleted: unread messages, protected messages, i-mode messages and SMS in the Secret folder. It is recommended to protect important messages.
- If there is no space available in the Outbox folder, receiving one sent message overwrites the oldest unprotected sent message in the Outbox folder.
- Receiving all messages deletes all existing messages and user-created folders before reception.
- You cannot transfer the Inbox folder or Outbox folder for a mail-connected i-appli. All messages in the folder are saved to the Inbox or Outbox folder.
- Some pictographs or symbols in messages may not appear correctly on the receiving device if it does not support them.
- You cannot transfer information on a mail-connected i-appli inserted into an i-mode message.
- The “Color coding” setting set on the Inbox screen or Outbox screen cannot be transferred.

Transferring One Data at a Time

Exchange one data at a time between your FOMA terminal and a PC/another FOMA terminal.

- You cannot send a data at a time from the FOMA terminal to a PC via cable connection.
- The progress bar indicates the amount of data that has been sent. Transferring a PDF document may pop up the bar twice even if the data is properly transferred.

Sending one data at a time via Infrared data exchange <Send Ir data>

Select “Send Ir data” from the function menu on the list screen or detail screen of the data you want to send.

<Example: To send one phonebook data>

- 1 **Phonebook detail screen (p.111)** ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Send Ir data” ▶ Direct the infrared data port toward the other party ▶ “YES”

Make sure that the other party is set to standby. Data transfer starts. The message indicating that the transfer is completed appears after the transfer is finished.

- **To cancel the transfer** ▶ “NO”
- **To exit during transfer** ▶ (Quit)

Sending one data at a time via iC communication <Touch to send data>

Select “Touch to send data” from the function menu on the list screen or detail screen of the data you want to send.

<Example: To send one phonebook data>

- 1 **Phonebook detail screen (p.111)** ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Touch to send data”
- 2 **Put the FeliCa mark “” close to the FeliCa mark “” of the other party** ▶ “YES”

Data transfer starts.

A message appears indicating that the transfer is completed.

- **To cancel the transfer** ▶ “NO”
- **To exit during transfer** ▶ (Quit)

Receiving one data at a time via Infrared data exchange <Receive Ir data> MENU 79

- 1 **MENU** ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “Receive Ir data”

The “Receive Ir data” screen appears.

- 2 **“Receive”** ▶ Direct the infrared data port toward the other party ▶ Receive data from the other FOMA terminal



Data transfer starts.

The progress bar may not appear depending on the other party.

- 3 **“YES”**
A message appears indicating that the received data are completely stored. The received data will be discarded if the receiving FOMA terminal is not operated at all for 30 seconds or so after the data are received.

- **To cancel saving received data** ▶ “NO”

NOTE

- ◆ Even if you select “Receive”, you may receive all Ir data if the other party sends all. In this case, the FOMA terminal performs the Receive all operation.
- ◆ Selecting “Add desktop icon” from the Receive Ir data function menu allows you to launch the Receive Ir data function from the desktop icon.

Receiving one data at a time via iC communication <Touch to receive data>

- 1 Put the FeliCa mark “

Data transfer starts and the progress bar appears.**

- 2 “YES”**

A message appears indicating that the received data are completely stored.

The received data will be discarded if the receiving FOMA terminal is not operated at all for 30 seconds or so after the data are received.

■ To cancel saving received data

▶ “NO”

Receiving one data at a time via cable connection <Write one>

- The method to transfer data varies depending on the transferring software. For more details, follow the instructions to the software.

- 1 Use the transferring software on a PC to send one from the PC**

- 2 Send data from a PC**

A large amount of data may slow down the progress bar showing the communication speed.

- 3 “YES”**

A message appears indicating that the transfer is completed. The received data will be discarded if you do not operate your FOMA terminal at all for 30 seconds or so after you receive the data.

■ To cancel saving received data

▶ “NO”

Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time

Exchange all data between your FOMA terminal and a PC/another FOMA terminal.

- Transferring all data overwrites the data stored on the FOMA terminal. The stored data, including protected messages or secret data such as phonebook and schedule, are deleted. However, frames, Flash movies or secret data stored in the Secret folder are not deleted. Make sure that the data to be overwritten are not important to you.
- Transferring all requires the session number to authenticate the sender and recipient.
“Session number” → p.369
- The progress bar indicates the number of data that has been sent. A large amount of data may slow down the bar, or it may seem different between the parties even if the data are being transferred successfully.
- Transferring all may change the order of data on the recipient side.

Session number

- Transferring all requires the session number to authenticate the sender and recipient. Before sending or receiving all, the sender and recipient should agree on a 4-digit number as the session number then both enter the same number.

Sending all data via Infrared data exchange <Send all Ir data>

Select “Send all Ir data” from the function menu on the list screen or detail screen of the data you want to send.

<Example: To send all phonebook data>

- 1 Phonebook list screen (p.111) ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Send all Ir data”**

- 2 Enter your security code ▶ Enter the session number**

“Session number” → p.369

- 3 Direct the infrared data port toward the other party ▶ “YES”**

Make sure that the other party is set to standby.

Data transfer starts.

A message appears indicating that the transfer is completed.

■ To cancel the transfer

▶ “NO”

■ To exit during transfer

▶  (Quit)

Sending all data via iC communication <Touch to send all>

Select “Touch to send all” from the function menu on the list screen or detail screen of the data you want to send.

<Example: To send all phonebook data>

- 1 **Phonebook list screen (p.111)▶**
① (FUNC)▶ “Touch to send all”
- 2 **Enter your security code▶ Enter the session number**
“Session number”→p.369
- 3 **Put the FeliCa mark “” close to the FeliCa mark “” of the other party ▶ “YES”**
Data transfer starts.
A message appears indicating that the transfer is completed.
 - To cancel the transfer
▶ “NO”
 - To exit during transfer
▶  (Quit)

Receiving all data via Infrared data exchange

<Receive all Ir data>

- 1 **Receive Ir data screen (p.368)▶**
“Receive all”
- 2 **Enter your security code▶ Enter the session number**
“Session number”→p.369
- 3 **Direct the infrared data port toward the other party▶ “YES”**
 - To cancel the transfer
▶ “NO”
- 4 **Press “YES” on the Overwrite confirmation screen**
 - To cancel the transfer
▶ “NO”
- 5 **Receive all data from the other FOMA terminal**
Data transfer starts.
 - To exit during transfer
▶  (Quit)

NOTE

- ◆ Selecting “Add desktop icon” from the Receive Ir data function menu allows you to launch the Receive Ir data function from the desktop icon.

Receiving all data via iC communication <Touch to receive all>

- 1 **Put the FeliCa mark “” close to the FeliCa mark “” of the other party**
- 2 **Receive all data from the other FOMA terminal**
- 3 **Enter your security code▶ Enter the session number**
“Session number”→p.369
Data transfer starts and the progress bar appears.
 - To exit during transfer
▶  (Quit)
- 4 **Select “YES” on the overwrite confirmation screen**
A message appears indicating that the received data are completely stored.
The received data will be discarded if the receiving FOMA terminal is not operated at all for 25 seconds or so after the data are received.
 - To cancel saving received data
▶ “NO”

Transferring all data via cable connection <Write all/Read all>

- The method to transfer data varies depending on the transferring software. For more details, follow the instructions to the software.

<Example: To send all data from the FOMA terminal to a PC>

- 1 **Use the transferring software on a PC to send all data from the FOMA terminal**
It is also required to enter the session number on the PC.
Enter a 4-digit number as the session number.
- 2 **Enter your security code on the FOMA terminal▶ Enter the session number on the FOMA terminal**
Data are transferred. A message appears indicating that the transfer is completed.
“Session number”→p.369

Guide to the PDF list



- Allowable operation icon
- Document title
- Retrieval method icon
- PDF type icon

PDF type icon

Icon	Description
(Pale blue)/ (Pale blue)*1	All the pages have been downloaded. The file size of a document with a blue icon (, *1) displayed exceeds 2M bytes, which cannot be stored on the FOMA terminal.
(Pale blue)*1	Only a part has been downloaded by page. The remaining pages can be downloaded later on.*2 → p.220
(Pale blue)*3/ (Pale blue)*1	Only a part has been downloaded for some reason e.g. because the download was interrupted. To view the document, download all the remaining pages*2 (some documents may not be viewable even if the download is finished successfully). → p.220

*1 : An icon including "" indicates that the document is file-restricted, which cannot be transferred via Infrared data exchange, iC communication or cable connection, or copied to a microSD memory card.

*2 : If all the remaining pages are downloaded and saved, the pale blue icon "", "", or "" will change to "" or "".

*3 : A document cannot be transferred via Infrared data exchange, iC communication or cable connection.

Retrieval method icon

Icon	Description
No icon	Stored at the time of purchase
	Downloaded from a site, etc.
	Acquired from a microSD memory card, PC, etc.

Allowable operation icon

Icon	Description
	Can be attached to an i-mode message (2M bytes or smaller)
	Can be transferred via Infrared data exchange and iC communication
	Can be copied to a microSD memory card

NOTE

◆ A document stored on a microSD memory card, which appears with a blue icon "" or "", cannot be viewed on the FOMA terminal.

Operations on the PDF screen

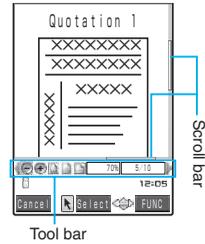
Use the scroll bar and tool bar to view a document.

Scroll bar

The scroll bar appears on the screen to indicate the location of the displayed page in the document.

Tool bar

Use icons on the tool bar to view a document. You can zoom in/out or rotate the pages.



To use icons on the tool bar

▶ (Tool)

To cancel using the icons, press (Cancel). Use to select an icon.

As for the tool bar itself, you can:

- Use to change the display.
- Use Neupointer to select an icon.

Icons on the tool bar

	Indicates the zoom factor. Specify a zoom percentage to display pages in the specified percentage. ▶ ▶ Enter a 4-digit number For example, enter "0070" to specify 70%.
	Indicates the current page number. Specify a page number to go to the page. ▶ ▶ Enter a 4-digit number For example, enter "0005" to jump to p.5.
	Zooms out.
	Zooms in.
	Displays the entire page.
	Displays a page at 100%.
	Adjusts the page width to the display.
	Displays the first page.
	Displays the previous page.
	Displays the next page.
	Displays the last page.
	Searches for text in the document.
	Rotates a page 90° clockwise.
	Rotates a page 90° counterclockwise.
	Copies text. "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → p.440 Copied text can be pasted into text memo, etc.
	Clips a part of the document as an image. → p.374

	Shows the description of an operation assigned to a key.
	Displays a single page on the screen.
	Displays pages continuously.
	Displays the document in double-page spread.
	Displays the Bookmark list screen.

● PDF documents stored at the time of purchase

The “鉄道路線図” (route map) PDF documents by “ゼンリン” (ZENRIN) are already stored on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.

- The Inbox folder under My document contains 札幌路線図 (Sapporo route map), 仙台路線図 (Sendai route map), 東京都心路線図 (Tokyo metropolitan route map), 中部路線図 (Chubu route map), 関西路線図 (Kansai route map) and 博多路線図 (Hakata route map).



東京都心路線図
(Tokyo metropolitan route map)

NOTE

- ◆ To restore a “鉄道路線図” (route map) PDF document after deleting it, download it from “みんなNらんど” in “ケータイ電話メーカー”.

Accessing “みんなNらんど”→p.209

If the FOMA card (UIM) you are using was not used for download, the FOMA card operational restriction function will apply.→p.40

● NEC Mobile PDF

NEC Mobile PDF automatically converts uploaded Microsoft® Word or Microsoft® Excel documents to PDF data, and notifies the specified FOMA terminal of the URL for viewing the PDF (Supported by N901iS, N902i, N902iS, N902iX HIGH-SPEED, N903i) (As of November, 2006).

- “NEC Mobile PDF”→p.474

Functions available on the PDF screen

You can zoom in/out and rotate a page and change page display mode. You can also set i-mode bookmarks and marks, or clip and save a page.

- The tool bar is useful to change display mode of the PDF screen.
- The keys are also available to change page display mode.→p.374
- Some bookmarks are already placed in a document. You can also use “i-mode bookmark” as if you put a sticky note to immediately jump to the page or location you want to view.

● Scrolling

■ Use to scroll

Use  in the direction you want to scroll on the PDF screen.

■ Use to scroll

Press  to scroll up and  to scroll down.

■ Use the Neuropointer to scroll

Press the Neuropointer in the direction you want to scroll on the PDF screen. You can scroll in eight directions. The cursor is fixed in the center of the document, and the eight scroll directions appear.

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot use the Neuropointer to operate the scroll bar.

● Showing/hiding tool bar and scroll bar

Press  to show/hide the tool bar and scroll bar.

● Changing page display mode

Use the tool bar to change the page display mode (e.g. zoom in/out).

1 PDF data screen (p.371)▶

(Tool)▶ Select an icon

Use  to select an icon.

2 Perform any operation

To finish operating the tool bar, press  (Cancel).
Icons on the tool bar→p.372
The PDF data screen reappears.

● Searching for text

1 PDF data screen (p.371) (Tool)

▶ Enter text to search for

You can enter up to 8 double-byte characters or 16 single-byte characters. However, some special characters may not be searched for.

2 Select the checkbox () of the condition (Search)

When the text is found, a page containing the text appears.

Press **[*]** to search from the current position to the beginning of the page under the same condition.

Press **[#]** to search from the current position to the end of the page under the same condition.



● Using a bookmark to view a document

■ To use a “bookmark” placed in a document

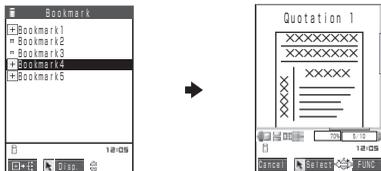
- If bookmarks are placed in a document, follow the steps below to jump to the location (page) where a bookmark is placed.

1 PDF data screen (p.371) (Tool)

▶ Select a bookmark for the location (page) you want to view

Selecting a bookmark displays the location (page) where the bookmark is placed.

If there are no bookmarks in the document, a message appears notifying that no bookmark was found.



Press **[*]** with **+** bookmark highlighted, and other bookmarks appear under the bookmark.

■ To use “i-mode bookmark”

- i-mode bookmark allows you to place a bookmark anywhere you like so that you can immediately jump to any page or location (up to 10 bookmarks available for one document).
- To jump to the location (page) where you placed a bookmark, follow the steps below:

1 PDF data screen (p.371) (FUNC)

▶ “i-mode bookmark” ▶ Select a bookmark for the location (page) you want to view

The location (page) appears in the same display mode (zoom, etc.) as the one when you placed the bookmark.

■ To add an i-mode bookmark

▶ (Add) ▶ “YES” ▶ Enter a title of the i-mode bookmark

The current display mode (page, zoom, etc.) is saved as an i-mode bookmark.

■ To edit the title of an i-mode bookmark

▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ “Edit title” ▶ Enter a title

■ To delete an i-mode bookmark

▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ “Delete” ▶ “YES”

■ To delete all i-mode bookmarks placed in a document

▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ “Delete all” ▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES”

● Clipping a page

You can clip a part of the document to save as a JPEG image.

1 Display a page to clip (Tool)

▶ Select the destination folder

The clipped page is saved.

NOTE

- ◆ An image clipped out of a PDF document that is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal cannot be output from the FOMA terminal, e.g. attached to a message or copied to a microSD memory card.
- ◆ You may be unable to clip an image if it is prohibited to copy the document.

● Using keys to change page display mode

The functions assigned to the keys are listed below:

Key	Description
1	Zooms out.
2	Displays the entire page.
3	Zooms in.
4	Displays the previous page.
5	—
6	Displays the next page.
7	Searches for text in the document.
8	Shows/hides the tool bar and scroll bar. → p.373
9	—
0	Shows the description of the tool bar or an operation assigned to a key.
#	Searches next. → p.374
*	Searches previous. → p.374

Function menu (PDF list screen)

- The available functions vary depending on the folders, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Edit title	Edits a document title.
Display document	
• From the last	Displays a page that was displayed last time.
• First page	Displays the first page of a document.
• i-mode bookmark	Displays a page where the selected i-mode bookmark is placed.
Document info	"Document information" → p.376
DL remaining data	"Downloading remaining PDF data after downloading partially" → p.220
Add desktop icon^{*1}	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.147
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the PDF document attached.
Touch to send data^{*1}	"Transferring One Data at a Time" → p.368
Send Ir data^{*1}	
Copy to microSD^{*1}	"Copying data stored on the FOMA terminal to a microSD memory card" → p.363
Move	"Moving data to another folder" → p.363
Memory Info	Displays the sizes of used and free spaces in memory.
Sort^{*1}	Sorts documents by the specified criteria.
Delete	"Deleting data" → p.364
Copy to phone^{*2}	"Copying data stored on a microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal" → p.363
Copy^{*2}	"Copying data to another folder on a microSD memory card" → p.364

*1 : The options do not appear for the PDF list screen of a microSD memory card.

*2 : The options do not appear for the PDF list screen of the FOMA terminal.

NOTE

<Compose message>

◆ You cannot compose an i-mode message when:

- There are already 20 draft messages stored or no space is available in Draft
- Only some data have been downloaded for the PDF document to attach
- The PDF document to attach is 2M bytes or larger
- "File restricted" is set for the PDF document to attach

<Sort>

◆ "By source" sorts documents in the following order:

- Downloaded from a site
- Acquired via Infrared data exchange or from a microSD memory card

Function menu (PDF data screen)

Zoom out	Zooms out a page.
Zoom in	Zooms in a page.
View types	
• Zoom to	Specifies a zoom factor to display a page.
• Fit page	Adjusts the page size to the display.
• Actual size	Displays a page at 100% (in the actual size).
• Fit width	Adjusts the page width to the display.
Go to	
• First page	Displays the first page.
• Previous page	Displays the previous page.
• Next page	Displays the next page.
• Last page	Displays the last page.
• Specified page	▶ Enter a page number you want to view Displays the specified page.
Search^{*1}	
• Search	▶ Enter text  (Search) "Searching for text" → p.374
• Previous result	Searches previous. → p.374
• Next result	Searches next. → p.374
Page layout	
• Single page	Displays a single page on the screen.
• Continuous	Displays pages continuously.
• Continuous-Facing	Displays the document in double-page spread.
Display link^{*1}	Selects a URL, phone number or mail address to access, make a call or compose an i-mode message. The scroll and tool bars do not appear when you display the link destination in the document. Press [CLR] to return to the normal PDF data screen.
Hide tool/scr.bars^{*2}	Shows/hides the tool bar and scroll bar.
Rotate view	
• Clockwise	Rotates a page 90° clockwise.
• Counter-clockwise	Rotates a page 90° counterclockwise.
Bookmark	"Using a bookmark to view a document" → p.374
Copy^{*1}	Copies text. Copied text can be pasted into text memo, etc.
i-mode bookmark	"To use "i-mode bookmark"" → p.374

Mark ^{*1*3}	Puts (up to 10) marks on your desired positions.
• Add	Adds a mark.
• Change	Edits a mark.
• Delete	Deletes a mark.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all marks.
Capture screen ^{*1}	“Clipping a page”→p.374
Compose message ^{*1*3*5}	Composes an i-mode message with the PDF document attached.
Add desktop icon ^{*1*3*4*5}	“Using Desktop Icons”→p.147
DL remaining data ^{*1*3*4}	“Downloading remaining PDF data after downloading partially”→p.220
Save ^{*1}	Saves a downloaded document.
Help	Shows the description of an operation assigned to a key.
Document property ^{*1}	Displays the document properties.
End	Closes the PDF data screen.
Document info ^{*1}	“Document information”→p.376
Delete this ^{*1*3*5}	Deletes the displayed document.

*1 : The options do not appear when you view an attached PDF document while composing a message.

*2 : If the tool bar and scroll bar are currently hidden, “Show tool/scr.bars” appears.

*3 : The options do not appear when a PDF document attached to a sent/received message is viewed. They appear when the attached PDF document has been saved.

*4 : The options do not appear for the PDF document stored on a microSD memory card.

*5 : The options do not appear while browsing a PDF document on a site. They appear when the PDF document has been saved.

NOTE

◆“i-mode bookmark” or “Mark” set on the FOMA terminal is unavailable on a PC, etc.

Document information

You can check the following:

File name	The file name
File classification	The file format
File restriction	“File restricted”/“File unrestricted”
File size	The file size in K bytes
Source	From where the file was acquired
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
Move to microSD ^{*1}	“Yes”/“No” indicates whether the document can be copied to a microSD memory card.
Moved to phone ^{*2}	“Yes”/“No” indicates whether the document can be copied to the FOMA terminal (Phone).

*1 : The option appears only for PDF documents stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).

*2 : The option appears only for PDF documents stored on a microSD memory card.

<Document viewer>

Viewing Documents

Document viewer is available to view a document attached to a mail message or stored on a microSD memory card.

Viewable document type

Type	Extension
Excel	xls
Word	doc
PowerPoint	ppt

1 “Data box”▶ “Document viewer”

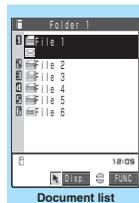
The “microSD folder list” screen appears.



microSD folder list (Document)
Function menu▶p.362

2 Select a folder

The “Document list” screen appears.



Document list
Function menu▶p.378

3 Select a document

The “Document view” screen appears.

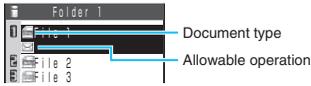


Document view
Function menu▶p.378

NOTE

- ◆It may take long to display a document.
- ◆A document may not be properly displayed if it contain formats unsupported by Document viewer or complicated designs.
- ◆To transfer a document from a PC, etc. to a microSD memory card, use the specified folder tree/name and file name.→p.354
A document cannot be displayed on the FOMA terminal if the folder tree/name or file name is different from the specified one.
- ◆While a document stored on a microSD memory card is being loaded, “” flashes.

Guide to the document list



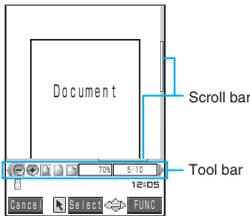
Document type icon

	Viewable document type
--	------------------------

Allowable operation icon

	Can be attached to a mail message
--	-----------------------------------

Operations on the document view screen



Scroll bar

The scroll bar appears on the screen to indicate the location of the displayed page in the document.

Tool bar

▶ (Tool)

Use icons on the tool bar to view a document. You can zoom in/out or rotate the pages.

To cancel using the icons, press (Cancel). Use to select an icon.

	<p>▶ ▶ Enter a 4-digit number Indicates the zoom factor. Specify a zoom percentage to display pages in the specified percentage. For example, enter "0070" to specify 70%.</p>
	<p>▶ ▶ Enter a 4-digit number Indicates the current page number. Specify a page number to go to the page. For example, enter "0005" to jump to p.5.</p>
	Zooms out.
	Zooms in.
	Displays the entire page.
	Displays a page at 100%.
	Adjusts the page width to the display.
	Displays the first page.
	Displays the previous page.

	Displays the next page.
	Displays the last page.
	Searches for text in the document.
	Rotates a page 90° clockwise.
	Rotates a page 90° counterclockwise.
	Shows the description of an operation assigned to a key or the tool bar.

NOTE

- ◆ Use to change the display of the tool bar.
- ◆ The Neopointer is also available to select an icon.

Functions available on the document view screen

You can zoom in/out and rotate a page and change page display mode.

- The tool bar is useful to change display mode of the document view screen. → p.377
- The keys are also available to change page display mode. → p.378

Scrolling

Use to scroll

Use in the direction you want to scroll on the document view screen.

Use to scroll

Press to scroll up and to scroll down.

To scroll using the Neopointer

Press the Neopointer in the direction you want to scroll on the document view screen. You can scroll in eight directions. The cursor is fixed in the center of the document, and the eight scroll directions appear.

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot use the Neopointer to operate the scroll bar.

To show/hide tool bar and scroll bar

Press to show/hide the tool bar and scroll bar.

Changing page display mode

Use the tool bar to change the page display mode (e.g. zoom in/out).

1 Document view screen (p.376) ▶

(Tool) ▶ Select an icon

Use to select an icon.

2 Perform any operation

To finish operating the tool bar, press (Cancel). Icons on the tool bar → p.377
The document view screen reappears.

● Searching for text

1 Document view screen (p.376) ▶ (Tool) ▶ ▶ ▶ Enter text to search for

You can enter up to 8 double-byte characters or 16 single-byte characters. However, some special characters may not be searched for.

2 Select the checkbox (☐) of the condition ▶ (Search)

When the text is found, a page containing the text appears.

Press  to search from the current position to the beginning of the page under the same condition.

Press  to search from the current position to the end of the page under the same condition.

■ To search in an Excel file

Select “Search in page” or “Search in file”. “Search in page” is available to search in the currently displayed sheet. “Search in file” is available to search in the whole Excel document.

● Using keys to change page display mode

The functions assigned to the keys are listed below:

Key	Description
	Zooms out.
	Displays the entire page.
	Zooms in.
	Displays the previous page.
	—
	Displays the next page.
	Searches for text in the document.
	Shows/hides the tool bar and scroll bar. → p.377
	—
	Shows the description of an operation assigned to a key or the tool bar.
	Searches next. → p.378
	Searches previous. → p.378

Function menu (Document list screen)

Edit title	Edits the title of the document.
Display document	Displays the first page of the document.
Document info	“Document information” → p.376
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the document attached.
Move	“Moving data to another folder” → p.363
Copy	“Copying data to another folder on a microSD memory card” → p.364

Memory Info	Displays the sizes of used and free spaces in memory.
Delete	“Deleting data” → p.364

Function menu (Document view screen)

Zoom out	Zooms out a page.
Zoom in	Zooms in a page.
View types	
• Zoom to	Specifies a zoom factor to display a page.
• Fit page	Adjusts the page size to the display.
• Actual size	Displays a page at 100% (in the actual size).
• Fit width	Adjusts the page width to the display.
Go to	
• First page	Displays the first page.
• Previous page	Displays the previous page.
• Next page	Displays the next page.
• Last page	Displays the last page.
• Specified page	▶ Enter a page number you want to view Displays the specified page.
Search	
• Search	▶ Enter text ▶  (Search) “Searching for text” → p.378
• Previous result	Searches previous. → p.378
• Next result	Searches next. → p.378
Hide tool/scr.bars^{*1}	Shows/hides the tool bar and scroll bar. → p.377
Rotate view	
• Clockwise	Rotates a page 90° clockwise.
• Counter-clockwise	Rotates a page 90° counterclockwise.
Compose message^{*2,4}	Composes an i-mode message with the document attached.
Save^{*3,4}	Saves the displayed document.
Help	Shows the description of an operation assigned to a key or the tool bar.
End	Closes the document view screen.
Document info	“Document information” → p.379
Delete this^{*2,4}	Deletes the displayed document.

*1 : If the tool bar and scroll bar are currently hidden, “Show tool/scr.bars” appears.

*2 : The options appear for documents stored on a microSD memory card. When viewing a document attached to a sent/received mail message, the options appear after saving the document.

*3 : The option appears only for documents attached to sent/received mail messages.

*4 : The options do not appear when you view an attached document while composing a mail.

NOTE

◆ You cannot go to or search for a page while a document is being loaded.

● Document information

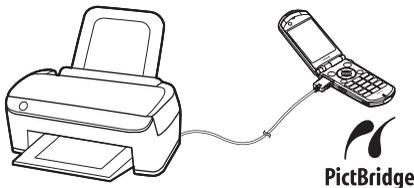
You can check the following:

File name	The file name
File classification	The file format
File size	The file size in K bytes
Source	From where the file was acquired
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)

<PictBridge print>

Printing Stored Images

Connect the FOMA terminal to a PictBridge-compatible printer via the FOMA USB Cable (optional), and you can directly print JPEG images without using a PC.



"Mobile Printing Ready" (PictBridge, microSD)

*This Mobile Printing Ready product is designed to provide easy printing from mobile phones.

This product follows Mobile Imaging and Printing Consortium (MIPC) guidelines version 1.0 for PictBridge, Memory Cards.

- Only JPEG images can be printed (Images shot with the built-in camera are JPEG-formatted).
- Some printers cannot properly print images if they were not shot with the built-in camera.
- Check that your printer supports the PictBridge print before connecting the printer and the terminal.
- You can set how to print images stored on the microSD memory card. → p.380
- You cannot print images that are not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal.
- Charge the battery fully for PictBridge print. You may be unable to print if the battery is low.
- Do not remove the FOMA USB Cable while communicating with the printer. "🖨️" appears during communication.
- The print mode (layout, sheets, etc.) specified on the FOMA terminal may be unavailable on some printers.

1 USB mode setting screen (p.361) ▶ "Print mode"

If "Print mode" is set, "🖨️" appears.
Set "Print mode" before connecting the FOMA USB Cable, or you may be unable to print.

2 Connect the FOMA terminal and a printer via the FOMA USB Cable

Turn on the printer before connecting.

3 Image list screen (p.330) or Title list screen (p.330) ▶ Select an image to print, and press **⏏** (FUNC) ▶ "PictBridge print"

DPOF Print is available from the "image list screen" or "title list screen" on a microSD memory card.

It is not required to highlight an image if you print multiple images or perform DPOF print.

■ To print from the "My picture" screen

One image is printed if you select from the "My picture" (p.330) function menu. Go on to Step 5.

▶ **⏏** (FUNC) ▶ "PictBridge print"

4 Select the print type

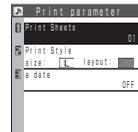
Selecting "DPOF Print" prints an image by following the print settings specified in "DPOF setting" and the paper size and layout specified for the printer (Step 5 and subsequent steps are not required).

Print this	Prints the selected image.
Print Choice	▶ Use ⬅ to select images ▶ ⏏ (Finish) If it is the title list, use ⬅ to select a checkbox (<input type="checkbox"/>) , and press ⏏ (Finish). Prints images you select.
DPOF Print	Prints images stored on a microSD memory card by following the "DPOF setting".

5 Set the print settings

■ Print settings

Set the following:



Print Sheets*	▶ Enter the number of sheets (01 to 99)	
Print Style	• Paper size Sets the paper size. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • L size • 2L size • 8"×10" • Postcard • A4 • Card • Default 	
	• Layout	
	• 1-up (borderless)	Prints one image on one sheet without a frame.
	• 1-up	Prints one image on one sheet with a frame.
• 2-up	Prints two images on one sheet. When only one image is selected, the same two images are printed.	
• 4-up	Prints four images on one sheet. When only one image is selected, the same four images are printed.	

Print Style	• 8-up	Prints eight images on one sheet. When only one image is selected, the same eight images are printed.
	• 16-up	Prints 16 images on one sheet. When only one image is selected, the same 16 images are printed.
	• Default	Prints in default layout.
a date	Sets whether to stamp the date.	

* : "Print Sheets" can be set only when "Print this" is selected in Step 4.

6 (Finish)

The image is printed.

When an error occurs on the printer

- If the "Error" message appears, an error may have occurred on the printer.
- Remove the FOMA USB Cable from the printer then fix the error.
- After the error is fixed, make sure that "Error" appears at the top of the FOMA terminal display, then connect the FOMA USB Cable to the printer.

NOTE

- ◆ For information on how to recover from the error, see the printer users guide.
- ◆ Up to 100 copies can be selected at a time in Print Choice.
- ◆ Selectable paper size and layout for Print this or Print Choice vary depending on the printer. DPOF Print prints an image using the paper size and layout set on the printer.
- ◆ When you set to add the date, the shooting date and time are stamped if there is the information. If the image does not contain the date/time information, the "Saved at" information shown on the Image info screen will be stamped. However, even if you set to add the date, it may not be stamped in some layout settings.
- ◆ An image cannot be printed if the width or height exceeds 2,304 dots, if the size exceeds 2,304 dots wide × 1,728 dots high or if the file size exceeds 2M bytes. Also, a progressive JPEG image larger than 690 dots wide × 480 dots high or whose width or height exceeds 690 dots cannot be printed. Progressive JPEG images → p.218
- ◆ The Multitask function is unavailable for PictBridge print.
- ◆ While printing, the FOMA terminal is effectively out of range. You cannot make/receive a call or use i-mode.

Setting how to print images stored on a microSD memory card <DPOF setting>

Set Digital Print Order Format (DPOF) for printing images stored on a microSD memory card.

- DPOF is a format for setting the print mode for images shot with a digital camera.
- Save still images shot with the FOMA terminal to a microSD memory card, and specify still images to print, the number of sheets, etc. The images can be printed on a DPOF-compatible printer or in a print service shop.
- Printing DPOF-set still images on a PictBridge-compatible printer → p.379

- 1 Folder list screen (p.330) ▶
"microSD" ▶ "Picture" ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image ▶
 (FUNC) ▶ "DPOF setting" ▶
Select any item

DPOF set One	Sets the print settings for the selected image.
DPOF set Choice	▶ Select an image Sets the print settings for images you select.

- 2 "Print" ▶ Specify "Print Sheets" (2-digit number from 01 to 99) and "a date" (whether to stamp the date) ▶  (Finish)

- To cancel print settings for the displayed image
▶ "Print OFF"
- To cancel print settings for all stored images
▶ "All print OFF"

NOTE

- ◆ You can set the DPOF setting for up to 999 images. However, the specified copies may not be printed on some printers.
- ◆ DPOF cannot be set if the width or height exceeds 2,304 dots, if the size exceeds 2,304 dots wide × 1,728 dots high or if the file size exceeds 2M bytes.
- ◆ You may be unable to set the DPOF setting if there is little space available on the microSD memory card.
- ◆ You cannot set DPOF for images stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).
- ◆ The specified number of sheets can be checked in "Image info".

● Music Playback

■ Listening to music

Using Music Player.....	Music player	382
Downloading Chaku-Uta-Full® from a Site		382
Moving Chaku-Uta-Full® to the microSD Memory Card.....	Movable contents	388
Saving SD-Audio Data to the microSD Memory Card		388
Using Assist Key to Operate Music Player.....		390

Using Music Player

Using the music player, you can play Chaku-Uta-Full® and music stored in the microSD memory card.

- You can play music you prefer in order of your choice by registering the music on a playlist. → p.386
- Besides the pre-installed Chaku-Uta-Full®, you can play Chaku-Uta-Full® downloaded from i-mode sites and music data transferred from music CDs.
Downloading Chaku-Uta-Full® → p.382
Saving SD-Audio Data to the microSD Memory Card → p.388
- Use “i-motion” (p.338) to play music data downloaded from i-mode sites (i-motion without video, e.g. a singer’s voice).
- Enjoy stereo sound coming out of the built-in stereo speaker or flat-plug stereo earphone set (optional).
- When an earphone is connected, sound only comes out of the earphone regardless of the “Earphone” setting.

■ Important

- Saved data such as Chaku-Uta-Full® may be lost through damage or repair on your FOMA terminal. Please note that NTT DoCoMo takes no responsibility for such loss.

Downloading Chaku-Uta-Full® from a Site

Downloading Chaku-Uta-Full® from a site to play it

1 Sites screen (p.209) ▶ Select Chaku-Uta-Full®

The “Data acquisition” screen appears when the data download is completed.

■ To cancel downloading

▶ (Quit) or CLR

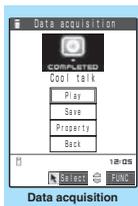
When a message asking whether to resume downloading appears, select “YES” to resume downloading or “NO” to cancel downloading. Then if the data acquisition screen appears, you can save the Chaku-Uta-Full®.

2 “Play”

Play the downloaded Chaku-Uta-Full®. → p.385

■ To display the Chaku-Uta-Full® information

▶ “Property”



NOTE

- ◆ Some Chaku-Uta-Full® have playback restrictions. “(L)” appears at the beginning of the title of the Chaku-Uta-Full® with restrictions on the playback count, playback period or time limit. Chaku-Uta-Full® restricted on the playback period cannot be played before or after the period.
“Music information” → p.384
- ◆ You cannot download Chaku-Uta-Full® with unknown size or that exceeds 5M bytes.
- ◆ To play Chaku-Uta-Full® from a screen memo, select “Add screen memo” from the data acquisition (p.382) function menu to save the Chaku-Uta-Full® as a “screen memo” (p.217).
However, you cannot save the data acquisition screen of the following types of Chaku-Uta-Full® as “screen memo”:
 - Chaku-Uta-Full® with playback restrictions
 - Incomplete Chaku-Uta-Full®
- ◆ Chaku-Uta-Full® saved in screen memos are not listed in the Music folder of Data box. Therefore, you cannot add them to playlists or set them for ring tones.

Saving Chaku-Uta-Full®

- You can save up to 100 Chaku-Uta-Full® songs (the number of songs that can be saved may be less depending on the data size of saved Chaku-Uta-Full®, etc.).

1 Data acquisition screen (p.382) ▶

“Save” ▶ “YES”

■ To cancel saving

▶ “NO”

Returns to the data acquisition screen without saving the Chaku-Uta-Full®.

2 Select the destination folder

You receive a message that the Chaku-Uta-Full® was saved.

■ Chaku-Uta-Full® that can be set as a ring tone

After the Chaku-Uta-Full® is saved, a message asking whether to set it as a ring tone appears. Setting ring tones → p.124

● Downloading remains of a partly downloaded Chaku-Uta-Full®

When you select a partly downloaded Chaku-Uta-Full® from Music in Data box, a message asking whether to download the rest of the data appears. Select “YES” to connect to the site and download the rest of the data.

Downloading and saving all the data deletes the partly saved data.

- Icons on the “music list” screen enable you to distinguish the conditions of downloaded data. → p.383
- If the playback period or time limit of a partly downloaded Chaku-Uta-Full® has expired, the rest of the data cannot be downloaded. Furthermore, you can delete partly saved data before downloading.

Playing music

1 "Data box" ▶ "Music"

The "Folder list" screen appears.
The last played music may be replayed without displaying the "Folder list" screen (pressing [CLR] will stop playback and the "Music list" screen will reappear).
Operation during playback → p.385



Function menu → p.362

2 Select a folder

The "Music list" screen appears.
Guide to music list → p.383



Function menu → p.384

3 Select a music file

The "Music player" screen appears to play the music file.
Operation during playback → p.385

Partly downloaded Chaku-Uta-Full®

A message asking whether to download the rest of the data appears. Select "YES" to download the rest of the data.
Downloading Chaku-Uta-Full® → p.382



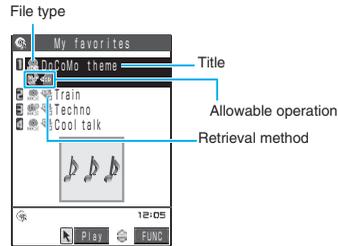
Function menu → p.386

NOTE

- ◆ When an earphone is connected, sound comes out of the earphone even in Manner mode. If the earphone is removed in Manner mode, playback is paused.
- ◆ When a hands-free device is connected, sound only comes out of the hands-free device.
- ◆ Folding a FOMA terminal does not interrupt playback. The image display shows information on music being played. → p.390
- ◆ When you make/receive a voice call, videophone call, PushTalk call, 64K data communication or packet communication, playback is paused.
- ◆ If "Receiving display" is set to "Alarm preferred", receiving a message, MessageR or MessageF pauses playback.
- ◆ If "Alarm setting" is set to "Alarm preferred" and you receive an alarm for "Schedule", "Alarm clock" or "To Do list", playback is paused.
- ◆ A file that cannot be played with the music player is skipped during playback.
- ◆ Some music files have playback restrictions. "🔒" appears at the beginning of the title of the music with restrictions on the playback count, playback period or time limit. Music files restricted on the playback period cannot be played before or after the period.

● Guide to music list

Titles of music are listed on the screen. Icons show the music type, retrieval method and settings that can be specified for the music.



■ File type icon

Icon	Description
	Music stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone)*1
	Music stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) with playback restrictions*1*2
	Music stored on the microSD memory card and movable to the FOMA terminal (Phone)*1
	Music stored on the microSD memory card with playback restrictions and movable to the FOMA terminal (Phone)*1*2
	Music stored on the microSD memory card and not allowed to be moved to the FOMA terminal (Phone) These icons also appear on the playlist music list screen of the FOMA terminal (Phone) if the microSD memory card storing music listed in the playlist is not inserted.
	SD-Audio music
	Partly downloaded music
	Partly-downloaded with playback restrictions (count, period, time)
	Partly-downloaded and its playback restrictions (period, time) have expired
	Music to which the FOMA card operational restriction applies

*1 : "🔒" is added to icons for music that have file restrictions or not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal.

*2 : "🔒" turns to "🕒" when the playback count reaches the limit or the playback period or time limit expires.

*3 : Can be played only when the same model and the same FOMA card (UIM) are used as the music is stored.

*4 : Can be played only when the same FOMA card (UIM) is used as the music is stored.

■ Retrieval method icon

Icon	Description
	Music stored at the time of purchase
	Music downloaded from a site
	Music copied from the microSD memory card or a PC

■ Allowable operation icon

Icon	Description
	Can be set as a ring tone.
	Can be moved to the microSD memory card.
	Can use the Web To function.

Function menu (Music list screen)

- The available functions vary depending on the folders, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Edit information	▶ Select an item ▶ Edit information Edits the title, artist name, album name, genre, track number, year and comment.
Create playlist	"Creating a playlist" → p.387
Add playlist	▶ Select a playlist Adds the highlighted music to the end of the playlist.
Select ring tone	Sets the highlighted music as a ring tone. → p.124
• Fullsong ring tone	Sets the entire song as a ring tone.
• Point ring tone	▶ Use  to select a part to set as a ring tone ▶ Select an item Sets the selected part of the song as a ring tone.
Move	
• Move this	▶ Select the destination folder Moves the highlighted music to another folder.
• Move selected	▶ Select the destination folder ▶ Use  to select a checkbox (<input type="checkbox"/>)▶ Use  (Finish) ▶ "YES" Moves the selected music to another folder.
• Move all	▶ Select the destination folder ▶ "YES" Moves all the music in the folder to another folder.
Move to microSD¹	"Moving Chaku-Uta-Full® to the microSD Memory Card" → p.388
File property	Displays information about the highlighted music. "Music information" → p.384
Memory info	Displays the amounts of music data stored and available space on the FOMA terminal and the microSD memory card.
Reset info	Restores the music information to the original.
Search	Searches music by the specified criteria.
Sort¹	Sorts music by the specified criteria.
Lyric	Displays the lyrics of the highlighted music. If the lyrics cannot be displayed on a single page, use  to switch pages.

Jacket image	Displays the jacket image of the highlighted music. If there are two or more images, use  to switch images.
Connect to URL	Accesses the site using the Web To function (p.223) if the URL is included in the music.
List setting	Selects a music-list format from "Title" or "Title+image".
Delete	
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted music.
• Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (<input type="checkbox"/>)▶ Use  (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes the selected music.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all music from the folder.
Move to phone²	"Moving Chaku-Uta-Full® stored on the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal" → p.388

*1 : Not available on the music list screen of the SD-Audio folder or Movable contents folder

*2 : Only available for the Movable contents folder

NOTE

<Move to microSD>

- To check whether a Chaku-Uta-Full® can be moved, select "File property" to see the music information. Some Chaku-Uta-Full® can be moved only between the same models.

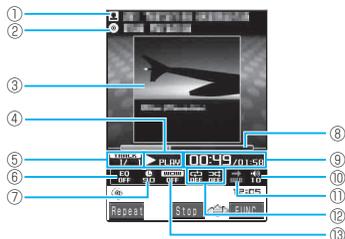
● Music information

File name	The file name
File classification	The music file type → p.383
File restriction	Always "File restricted"
Replay restriction	
• If there are count restrictions	Remaining play count and total play count
• If there are period restrictions	"Up to date of play period"
• If there are span restrictions	"Playable date ~ Date of play span"
• If there are no play restrictions	"Not restricted"
Fullsong ring tone^{*1}	Displays whether Fullsong ring tone is "Available"/"Unavailable".
Point ring tone^{*1}	Displays whether Point ring tone is "Available"/"Unavailable".
Savable Jacket image	"File restricted"/"File unrestricted"/"File of the jacket image which can be stored in My picture under Data box.
Savable Image	"File restricted"/"File unrestricted" of the image which can be stored in My picture under Data box.
Savable Lyric	"File restricted"/"File unrestricted" of the lyrics information which can be stored in My picture under Data box.

Title, Artist, Album, Year, Genre, Comment, Track number, Composer, Lyricist, Rights holder, Selling agency, Rights information and Label	Shows music information and copyright information.
Connect to URL	URL for the Web To function or the title of the page linked to the URL
Audio	Audio information "AAC/Enhanced aacPlus/HE-AAC/SD-Audio/Unplayable"
Bit rate	Bit rate in kbps
Play time	Playback time (minutes:seconds)
File size	The file size in K bytes
Source	From where the music was acquired (i-mode/Data exchange)
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
Move to microSD²	"Yes"/"Yes(Same model only)"/"No" indicates whether the music can be moved to the microSD memory card.
Move to phone³	"Yes"/"Yes(Same model only)"/"No" indicates whether the music can be moved to the FOMA terminal (Phone).

- *1 : "Unavailable" always appears for Chaku-Uta-Full[®] stored in the Movable contents folder although it may be set as a ring tone.
- *2 : Appears only for music stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).
- *3 : Appears only for music stored on the microSD memory card.

Guide to music player screen



- ① Artist
- ② Track name
- ③ Jacket image
- ④ Playback status
▶ PLAY : Playing || PAUSE : Pausing
▶ FF : Skipping forward ◀◀ REW : Skipping backward
- ⑤ Track number being played/Total number of tracks
- ⑥ Sound quality
Sound quality set in "Equalizer set." (p.386)
EQ OFF : OFF
Bass: Bass Treble: Treble Treble Reducer: Treble Reducer
Pop / Jazz / Rock / Techno / Classic: Each genre
Speed: Speech
- ⑦ Off timer
Time set in "Off timer" (p.386)

- ⑧ Playback position display
<While playing/pausing>

A gray marker indicates the current playback position.
If you move the marker using ◀ during pause and then press ●, the track can be played from the position.
<When "Position to play" selected>

When selecting "Position to play" (p.386) from the function menu, use ◀ to change the position to playback (displayed in yellow).
- ⑨ Time elapsed/Playback time (Minute:Second)
- ⑩ Volume
Volume level from 1 to 20. appears during mute.
- ⑪ Web To function
Accesses the URL included in the music data.
- ⑫ Playback mode
 : Playing at shuffle
 : Playing at shuffle OFF
 : Playing at repeat OFF
 : Playing all repeatedly
 : Playing one repeatedly
- ⑬ Sound effects (SRS_WOW)
Sound effects level from OFF, 1 to 20.

Operations on the music player screen

Control keys	Operation
●	Pauses/Resumes playback.
⏮ (A (←)), ⏭ (M) (MEMO/ CHECK))	Adjusts volume.
⏮ (or ⏮ (←) for 1 second or longer)	Plays from the beginning of the music. Plays the previous music in the folder or playlist when pressed within 1 second from the beginning of the music ¹ . During shuffle playback, the previous music is played regardless of the order in the folder or playlist.
⏭ (or ⏭ (MEMO/ CHECK) for 1 second or longer)	Plays the next music in the folder or playlist ² . During shuffle playback, the next music is played regardless of the order in the folder or playlist.
⏮ for 1 second or longer	Skips backward.
⏭ for 1 second or longer	Skips forward.
◀ during pause	Move the marker of the playback position display (p.385) and press ● to play the music from the position.
# / *	Switches images when two or more jacket images are registered.
CLR	Ends playback.

- *1 : Press and hold ⏮ (←) to skip to the previous music consecutively.

*2 : Press and hold  (MEMO/CHECK) to skip to the next music consecutively.

NOTE

◆ The volume set on the music player screen does not affect ring volumes set in "Ring volume".

● If a flat-plug stereo earphone set (optional) is connected

The following operations are available with the switch:

Operation	Switch operation
Playing/Pausing	Press the switch to select between play/pause.
Playing the next music during playback	Press the switch twice in a row during playback.
Playing the previous music during playback*	Press the switch three times in a row during playback. If the music has been played for more than three seconds, it goes back to the beginning.

* : The previous music cannot be played while playing at shuffle or shuffle repeatedly.

Function menu (Music player screen)

● The settings can be changed during playback.

Change music*1	▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a track Plays the selected track.
Lyric	Displays the lyrics of the music being played. If the lyrics cannot be displayed on a single page, use  to switch pages.
Jacket image	▶ Use  to switch the jacket image ▶  Switches the jacket image of the music being played.
Equalizer set.	Selects the sound quality for playing music.
• OFF (default)	Disables the equalizer setting.
• Bass	Emphasizes bass.
• Treble	Emphasizes treble.
• Treble Reducer	Reduces sound leaking out of the earphone.
• Pop	Sets the equalizer for each genre.
• Jazz	
• Rock	
• Techno	
• Classical	
• Speech		Sets the equalizer for speech.
Off timer (default: 90 minutes)	Stops playback when a given time has elapsed since the start of the playback.
SRS_WOW (default: OFF)	Sets sound effects from OFF or level 1 to 20.

Repeat setting	Sets whether to repeat the music.
• OFF (default)	Does not repeat the currently played (paused) music.
• Repeat	Repeats all music in the folder.
• Repeat 1	Repeats the currently played (paused) music.
Shuffle (default: OFF)	Sets shuffle playback to ON or OFF.
Position to play*2	▶ Use  to select a playback point ▶  Plays a part of music from the selected point.
Select ring tone	Sets the music being played as a ring tone. → p.124
• Fullsong ring tone	Sets the entire song as a ring tone.
• Point ring tone	▶ Use  to select a part to set as a ring tone ▶ Select any item Sets the selected part of the music as a ring tone.
File property	Displays the information of the music being played. "Music information" → p.384
Connect to URL	Accesses the site using the Web To function (p.223) if the URL is included in the music being played.

*1 : You can only select music stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) when changing music.

*2 : Position to play is not available for some music.

NOTE

- ◆ Select "Save image" from the function menu while displaying the lyrics or jacket image to save it. Select "Image info" from the function menu to display the information about the lyrics or jacket image.
- ◆ "SRS_WOW" set on the music player screen does not affect "SRS_WOW" (p.126) for i-motion playback.
- ◆ "SRS_WOW" for music set as a ring tone is set according to "SRS_WOW" in Sound effect. The "Equalizer set." setting is invalid for such music.

Using a playlist

Enjoy your favorite music in the order you prefer by adding the music to a playlist on your FOMA terminal (Phone).

● The numbers of tracks and playlists that can be stored on a FOMA terminal (Phone) are:

Tracks	Up to 100
Playlists*	Up to 21 (including a list of all tracks)

* : Up to 99 tracks can be added to each playlist (except a list of all tracks).

● Music stored on a FOMA terminal (Phone) (Chaku-Uta-Full®), music on the microSD memory card (Chaku-Uta-Full®) and SD-Audio data can be added to the same playlist.

● Creating a playlist

- 1 Folder list screen (p.383) ▶ Select a folder ▶ Highlight music and press  (FUNC) ▶ “Create playlist” ▶ Select any item**

Set this	Adds the highlighted music to a playlist.
Set select	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐) ▶  (Finish) Adds the selected multiple music to a playlist.
Set all	Adds all the music in the folder to a playlist.

2 Enter a playlist name

The playlist is created and the “Playlist music list” screen appears.

- To play the playlist
▶  (Play)

● Playing a playlist

1 Folder list screen (p.383) ▶ “Playlist”

The “Playlist” screen appears.

- To play a playlist immediately
▶  (Play)

The highlighted playlist is played.



Function menu ▶ p.387

2 Select a playlist

The “Playlist music list” screen appears.

- If “All tracks (phone)” is selected

The playlist containing all (playable) music stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) is displayed.



Function menu ▶ p.387

3 (Play)

The playlist playback starts and music are played in the order you added them.

NOTE

- ◆ All tracks (phone) does not contain music in the pre-installed folder.
- ◆ Deleting all music saved in a playlist also deletes the playlist itself.

Function menu (Playlist screen)

Edit playlist name	▶ Edit a playlist name Edits the highlighted playlist name. The name can contain up to 128 double-byte or 256 single-byte characters.
Copy to playlist	Create a copy of the highlighted playlist in the playlist list.
Search	Searches music in the playlist by the specified criteria.
Playlist Info	Displays the playlist name, number of tracks in the playlist and playback time of the playlist.
Delete playlist	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delete this Deletes the highlighted playlist. • Delete selected ▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐) ▶  (Finish) Deletes the selected playlists. • Delete all Deletes all playlists.

Function menu (Playlist music list screen)

Create playlist	“Creating a playlist” → p.387
Edit playlist	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sort playlist ▶ Use  to select a position and press  Rearranges the highlighted music in the playlist. • Add music ▶ Select a folder ▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐) ▶  (Finish) ▶ “YES” Adds the selected multiple music to the last of the playlist. • Release settings <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Release this Excludes the highlighted music from the playlist. • Release selected ▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐) ▶  (Finish) ▶ “YES” Excludes the selected multiple music from the playlist. • Release all ▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Excludes all music from the playlist and deletes the playlist.
File property	Displays information about the highlighted music. “Music information” → p.384
Search	Searches music in the playlist by the specified criteria.
Sort	Sorts music in the playlist by the specified criteria.
Lyric	Displays the lyrics of the highlighted music. If the lyrics cannot be displayed on a single page, use  to switch pages.
Jacket image	Displays the jacket image of the highlighted music. If there are two or more images, use  to switch images.

Connect to URL	Accesses the site using the Web To function (p.223) if the URL is included in the music.
List setting	Select the format of the playlist music list screen from "Title" or "Title+image".

NOTE

- ◆ Even if music is excluded from a playlist, the original data is not deleted.

<Movable contents>

Moving Chaku-Uta-Full® to the microSD Memory Card

Moving Chaku-Uta-Full® stored on the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card

You can move movable Chaku-Uta-Full® to the microSD memory card. Moved Chaku-Uta-Full® are saved to the "Movable contents" folder (p.328) under Music.

- 1 **Music list screen (p.383)** ▶ **(FUNC)** ▶ "Move to microSD" ▶ **Select any item**

Move this	▶ Select the destination folder ▶ (FUNC) Moves the highlighted Chaku-Uta-Full®.
Move selected	▶ Select the destination folder ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Use to select a checkbox (□) ▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES" Moves the selected multiple Chaku-Uta-Full®.
Move all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select the destination folder ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "YES" Moves all Chaku-Uta-Full® (except immovable ones) in the folder displayed as a list.

NOTE

- ◆ Do not remove the microSD memory card during move operation. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card to malfunction.
- ◆ Partly downloaded Chaku-Uta-Full® or Chaku-Uta-Full® with playback restrictions that have expired cannot be moved to the microSD memory card.
- ◆ See "Allowable operation icon" (p.384) to check whether Chaku-Uta-Full® can be moved.

Moving Chaku-Uta-Full® stored on the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal

You can move Chaku-Uta-Full® stored in the "Movable contents" folder under Music (p.328) to the FOMA terminal.

- Moved Chaku-Uta-Full® are saved to Inbox under Music.

- 1 **Folder list screen (p.383)** ▶ "Movable contents" ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **(FUNC)**
The "Music list" screen (p.383) appears.
- 2 **(FUNC)** ▶ "Move to phone" ▶ **Select any item**

Move this	Moves the highlighted Chaku-Uta-Full®.
Move selected	▶ Use to select a checkbox (□) ▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES" Moves the selected multiple Chaku-Uta-Full®.
Move all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Moves all Chaku-Uta-Full® (except immovable ones) in the folder displayed as a list.

NOTE

- ◆ Do not remove the microSD memory card during move operation. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card to malfunction.
- ◆ Chaku-Uta-Full® with playback restrictions that have expired cannot be moved to the FOMA terminal.
- ◆ See "File type icon" (p.383) to check whether Chaku-Uta-Full® can be moved.

Saving SD-Audio Data to the microSD Memory Card

Use "SD-Jukebox" stored in the bundled "N903i CD-ROM" to convert music data acquired from a CD or via music delivery service to SD-Audio data and save them to the microSD memory card.

- The following are data format, number of playlists and number of tracks that are available on the FOMA terminal:

File format	MPEG2-AAC(LC)/ADTS Stream
Bit rate	16 to 128kbps
Number of tracks	Up to 999
Number of playlists*	Up to 100 (including a list of all tracks)

* : Up to 99 tracks can be added to each playlist (except a list of all tracks).

- If you do not have a microSD memory card, purchase one at your local electronics store.
- * You can enjoy music stored on the microSD memory card within personal use. Take great care not to infringe the third party's intellectual property right such as copyright and other rights.

1 Prepare the following

- PC that complies with the operating environment for "SD-Jukebox" (p.389)
- microSD memory card reader/writer compatible with copyright protection function*
- microSD memory card
- * : This is required to copy data from a PC to the microSD memory card. The FOMA USB Cable (optional) is also available to use a FOMA terminal as a microSD reader/writer.
→ p.360

2 Install the data transfer software "SD-Jukebox" on your PC

Installing → p.389

3 Launch "SD-Jukebox" on the PC and convert music data stored on a CD, etc. to AAC format

For how to use "SD-Jukebox", see the "SD-Jukebox" help.

If the data are already converted, go on to Step 4.

4 Use "SD-Jukebox" to save SD-Audio data to the microSD memory card

NOTE

- ◆ SD-Audio data saved using "SD-Jukebox" can be played on a FOMA terminal or added to a playlist stored on a FOMA terminal. However, a playlist stored in the "SD-Audio" folder cannot be edited on a FOMA terminal.

Data transfer software (SD-Jukebox)

SD-Jukebox can be used to copy music data from a CD to a PC or record copied music data on an SD memory card or microSD memory card then play them with an SD-Audio-compatible player.

- Use SD-Jukebox to record music data on the microSD memory card, so that you can play them on your FOMA terminal.
- For more information about the operating environment, installation and uninstallation of SD-Jukebox, see "sd-jukeboxV6.pdf" stored under "SD-Jukebox" - "SD-JukeboxV6" - "External" - "JP" in the bundled "FOMA N903i CD-ROM". To see "sd-jukeboxV6.pdf" and the SD-Jukebox help (user guide), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. If the software is not installed on your PC, you can install it from the same CD-ROM. See the Adobe Reader Help for details.

● Installing SD-Jukebox

- Use a user account with administrator permissions to install the software. If a non-administrative account is used to install, an error occurs. For the administrative settings, check with your PC manufacturer or Microsoft.

1 Start Windows and insert "FOMA N903i CD-ROM" into a PC

The CD-ROM runs automatically, and the menu screen appears.

Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 or later is recommended.

If your PC does not have the recommended version of the software or the menu does not appear after the CD-ROM is inserted, follow the steps below:

- ① Select "スタート" (Start) then "マイコンピュータ" (My Computer)
- ② Right-click the CD-ROM icon and select "開く" (Open)
- ③ Double-click "index.html"

2 Click "エンターテインメントツール" (Entertainment Tool)

3 Click "インストール" (Install) in "SD-Jukebox"

4 Click "実行" (Execute)

If the Security Warning screen appears, click "実行する" (Execute).

Follow the on-screen instructions.

NOTE

- ◆ When installing SD-Jukebox, it is required to enter the serial number described on the CD-ROM sleeve. Keep the serial number in a safe place.

For this software, contact

Panasonic Software Help Desk (In Japanese only)
Everyday/Open: 9:00 - 20:00

From ordinary phones: ☎ 0120-853-334

From mobile phones: ☎ 0570-087-555 (Charged)

※ Cannot be called from PHSs.

- Make sure that you dial the correct number.
- You can also refer to the web page.
<http://panasonic.jp/support/software/sdjib/>

Using Assist Key to Operate Music Player

The “assist key” is available for operating the music player.

Starting music player	▶ Assist key (1 second or longer) Starts the music player to play music.
While playing music	▶ Assist key Pauses. ▶ Assist key (1 second or longer) Ends playback and exits the music player.
While pausing	▶ Assist key Resumes playback. ■ To resume playback while another function is being displayed ▶ Assist key (1 second or longer)
On the music list screen	▶ Assist key Starts playback. ▶ Assist key (1 second or longer) Starts playback with the last played track.
On the playlist screen	▶ Assist key (1 second or longer) Starts playback with the last played track.

● Pressing the assist key for 1 second or longer to start playback

Playback starts with the last played track. However, if the last playback went through the end of the playlist, the first track is to be played. If the tracks were played at shuffle last time, shuffle playback will go on.

- Even pressing the assist key for 1 second or longer does not start the music player while in Manner mode. However, it starts when an earphone is connected.

● Image display during playback

You can check the status of playback on the image display when the FOMA terminal is folded.



- ① Track name, artist (ticker)
- ② Playback status
▶: Playing ||: Pausing
- ③ Off timer
Time set in “Off timer” (p.386)
- ④ Track number being played/Total number of tracks
- ⑤ Volume
Volume level from 1 to 20. **MUTE** appears during mute.
- ⑥ Playback mode
: Playing all repeatedly
: Playing one repeatedly
: Playing at shuffle

● Other Useful Functions

Multi Access.....	Multi access	392
Multitask.....	Multitask	393
Using the Assist Key to Read out Messages or Alarms	Assist key	394
Setting Alarm Mode.....	Alarm setting	395
Using a FOMA Terminal as an Alarm Clock.....	Alarm clock	398
Adding Schedule Events, Holidays and Anniversaries	Schedule	399
Adding To Do List Items.....	To Do list	402
Storing Your Name and Image.....	My Profile	404
Recording Your Voice or the Other Party's Voice	Voice memo (in-call)/Voice memo	406
Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones	Voice announce	406
Checking Call Times and Charges.....	Call data	407
Setting the Upper Limit of Charge to Show the Alarm	Notice designate calls	408
Using a FOMA Terminal as a Calculator.....	Calculator	409
Composing Text Memos.....	Text memo	409
Using Dictionaries.....	Dictionary	410
Using an Earphone/Microphone with Switch	Earphone/microphone with switch	412
Selecting a Callee for Calls Made with an Earphone Connected.....	Auto dial setting	413
Automatically Receiving Calls with an Earphone Attached	Automatic answer	413
Selecting a Microphone to be Activated When Using an Earphone/Microphone.....	Select microphone	414
Resetting Function Settings.....	Reset settings	414
Resetting FOMA Terminal Functions to Default.....	Initialize	415

<Multi access>

Multi Access

Multi access is a function that enables you to make voice calls, use packet communication and SMS at the same time. This allows you to receive mails during a voice call or make a voice call while using the i-mode services.

“Multi Access Combination Patterns” → p.471

Communication lines that can be used concurrently

By using the multi access function, a FOMA terminal can concurrently use the three communication lines listed below.

Communication type	Line to use
Voice call	1 line
i-mode, i-appli or i-mode mail	1 line for any of the communications
Packet communication via PC	
SMS	1 line

NOTE

- ◆ Communication charges apply for each of the lines used during multi access communication.
- ◆ Multi access is not available during a videophone call. However, only SMS can be received simultaneously.
- ◆ Multi access is not available during a PushTalk call or 64K data communication. However, only SMS can be sent and received simultaneously.

When you receive a call or mail during communication

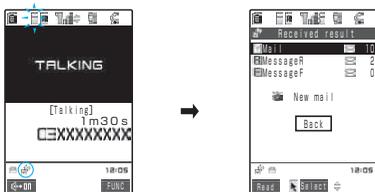
● Receiving an i-mode mail during a voice call

When you receive an i-mode mail during a voice call, the in-call screen remains shown. You can then read the i-mode mail without interrupting your call.

- 1 **ch (MULTI) ▶ Use ch (MULTI) or to select “Transmission” and press .**

The reception results screen for the i-mode mail appears.

Switching tasks → p.394



2 Checking the i-mode mail

Reading i-mode mail → p.257

- 3 **ch (MULTI) ▶ Use ch (MULTI) or to select “Talking” and press .**

The voice in-call screen reappears.

NOTE

- ◆ If you receive an i-mode mail or MessageF/MessageF during a voice call, the “Mail”, “MessageR” or “MessageF” icon flashes and then lights up without a ring tone to notify you of the received message.
- ◆ If no operations are performed on the reception results screen, the in-call screen reappears.

● Receiving a voice call during i-mode or packet communication

If you receive a voice call while you are using i-mode, receiving or sending an i-mode mail or using packet communication with a FOMA terminal and PC connected, the voice call reception screen appears and you can answer the call without ending i-mode or packet communication.

- 1

The voice in-call screen appears and you can answer the call.

■ To return to the i-mode screen without answering a voice call

- ▶ **ch (MULTI) ▶ Use ch (MULTI) or to select the i-mode group task icon () and press .**

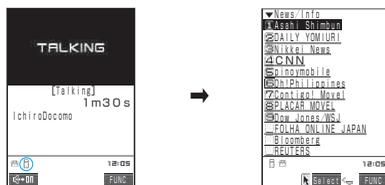
The caller hears ringing without a message.

- 2 To end the call, press .

The call ends and the i-mode screen reappears.

■ To return to the i-mode screen without ending a voice call

- ▶ **ch (MULTI) ▶ Use ch (MULTI) or to select the i-mode group task icon () and press .**



Using two types of communication simultaneously

Another type of communication is available without interrupting the current communication.

- To switch screens during multi access, select the desired function on the task icon display area. → p.394

● Connecting to i-mode during a voice call

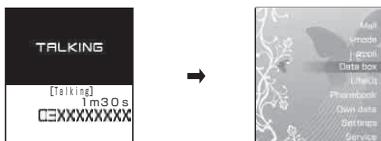
During a voice call, press **(MENU)** and select the i-mode menu in the main menu to connect to i-mode. → p.208

● Sending an i-mode mail during a voice call

During a voice call, press **(MENU)** and select the Mail menu in the main menu to compose and send an i-mode mail.

1 During a voice call **(MENU)** Select the Mail menu

Using menus → p.34



2 Compose an i-mode mail **(MENU)** Send it

Creating and Sending i-mode Mail → p.239

3 **(ch) (MULTI)** Use **(ch) (MULTI)** or **(ch)** to select “Talking” and press **(OK)**

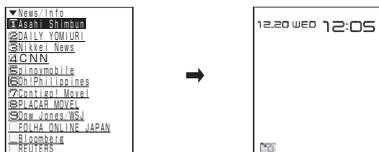
The voice in-call screen reappears.

● Making a voice call during i-mode

While connecting to i-mode or receiving/sending a mail, you can make a voice call without ending i-mode.

1 During i-mode **(MENU)** (1 second or longer)

The standby screen appears.



2 Make a voice call

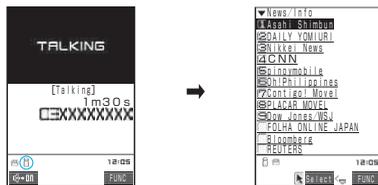
Making voice calls → p.53

3 To end the call, press **(END CALL)**

The call ends and the i-mode screen reappears.

■ To return to the i-mode screen without ending a voice call

▶ **(ch) (MULTI)** Use **(ch) (MULTI)** or **(ch)** to select the i-mode group task icon (**(i-mode icon)**) and press **(OK)**



NOTE

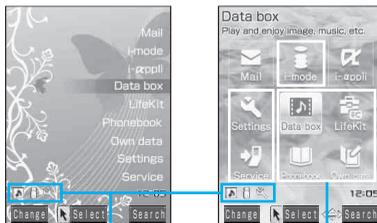
- ◆ If you attempt to make a videophone call during i-mode, the “Disconnecting” message appears and then a FOMA terminal dials the videophone call. When the videophone call ends, the i-mode screen reappears.
- ◆ When you attempt to make a PushTalk call during i-mode, a message asking whether to disconnect i-mode appears. Select “YES” to disconnect i-mode and make the call. When the PushTalk call ends, the i-mode screen reappears.

<Multitask>

Multitask

Multitask enables you to use multiple functions at the same time. Up to 3 functions can be performed at once, one from each of the Main menu groups shown below.

“Multitask Combination Patterns” → p.472



The running tasks are expressed by icons.

The running groups are enclosed by frames.

Group	Main menu item (task)
Mail	Mail
i-mode	i-mode
i-appli	i-appli
Settings	Settings and Service
Tools	Data box, LifeKit, Phonebook and Own data

- The voice call charge continues to increase while you are concurrently using another function during a voice call.

Activating tasks (functions)

1 While using a task (1 second or longer)

The standby screen appears. It may not appear depending on the active task.

2 Select a task from a group of which tasks are not currently running

■ To activate a task from the main menu

 Select a task → p.34

■ To activate a task using the menu number

 Enter the menu number of the task you want to activate → p.454

■ To activate a task from the Mail menu

 () → p.238

■ To activate a task from the i-mode menu

 () → p.208

NOTE

- ◆ When you try to activate another task from the group in which you are currently editing data, the message “XXX Cancel editing and switch?” (XXX is a task name such as Mail or i-mode or group name) appears. Select “YES” to end the editing and switch tasks. Select “NO” to return to the previous screen. If having no edited data, you can directly activate the selected task.
- ◆ In the following cases, one task is added to compose a mail while viewing another mail. If three tasks are already running and you try to perform one of the operations below, a message notifying that the task cannot run appears. End a task not belonging to the Mail group and then perform the operation. “Ending a Task” → p.394
 - Accessing the Mail menu to compose a mail
 - Accessing the Mail menu to compose SMS
 - Using a template to create a Deco-mail
 - Using Reply/Reply with quote/Forward for a received mail
 - Editing a sent mail
 - Editing a draft mail

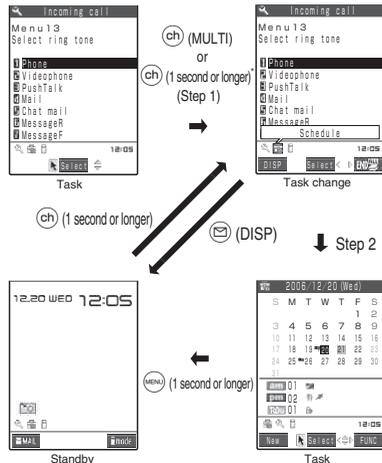
Switching tasks

When you are running multiple tasks, you can switch them to change an active task.

1 While activating multiple tasks (MULTI) or (1 second or longer) *

The “Task change” screen appears.

2 Use (MULTI) or to select a task icon you want to switch and press



* : To switch tasks on the standby screen, the phonebook list screen (tabs) or the member/group member list in the PushTalk phonebook, press  (MULTI) for 1 second or longer to show the task change screen. On the standby screen, you can also switch tasks by selecting a task icon on the task icon display area with the Neuropointer.

Ending tasks

■ To end a task

- Open the task screen you want to end 
- On the task change screen, select a task icon you want to end and press  “YES”

■ To end all tasks

- On the task change screen  ()  “YES”

<Assist key>

Using the Assist Key to Read out Messages or Alarms

When receiving a message or alarm, press the Assist key, so that the FOMA terminal reads out the contents.

- The assist key is also available to operate the music player. → p.390

NOTE

- ◆ Voice reading out text may be heard around you, so move to an area where it will not disturb other people before starting reading out.
- ◆ A FOMA terminal reads out mails at the volume level set in “Phone” in “Ring volume”. When “Silent” or “Step” is set, mails are read out at the “Level 2” volume.

Reading out mail messages

- Set “Read out received mail” under “Read out setting” to “ON” beforehand. You can select a voice under “Select voice”. → p.270
- Messages are read out only when “Select language” is set to “日本語” (Japanese).

● Reading out a new message when the FOMA terminal is folded

When “” appears on the image display, the message can be read out with the FOMA terminal folded.

- To have the folded FOMA terminal read out the data, set “External keys guard” to “OFF” beforehand. → p.169

1 Press the Assist key with the FOMA terminal folded ▶ Press the Assist key again within 10 seconds

The FOMA terminal starts to read out the mail or chat mail message.

■ If “Info notice setting” is set to “OFF”

Readout starts when the Assist key is pressed with the FOMA terminal folded.

● Reading out a message when the FOMA terminal is opened

Message can be read out when:

- You receive a mail/chat mail message with the FOMA terminal opened and the reception screen appears
- You perform “Check new messages” and the checking screen appears
- The received mail detail screen appears

<Example: To run Check new messages>

1 Press the Assist key while the checking result screen appears

A FOMA terminal starts to read out the received mail or chat mail messages.

■ When multiple new mails or chat mails are received

A FOMA terminal reads out mails in REVERSE chronological order of reception date. Pressing the Assist key or  during reading out enables the terminal to read out the next mail. After completing the reading out, the terminal automatically starts reading out the next mail.

NOTE

- ◆ When you press the Assist key or  during reading out, a FOMA terminal emits the bleep sound before reading out the next mail. If the terminal has no more mail to read out, it emits the “pipipi” tone and ends the reading out.
- ◆ After the reception or checking results screen ends and the other screen such as the standby screen appears, message cannot be read out even if the Assist key is pressed.
- ◆ Opening or folding the FOMA terminal does not interrupt the readout operation.
- ◆ MessageR/MessageF cannot be read out.

- ◆ A new mail/chat mail message is not read out:
 - When a mail-connected i-appli mail message or SMS report is received
 - During a call or communication (except packet communication)
 - In manner mode if no equipment such as a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected
 - While the music player is running
- ◆ If the sender’s name and e-mail address are stored in the phonebook, the message is read out after the voice notification “○○さんからのメール” (This is from XXX). However, the voice notification is not given on the received mail detail screen.

Reading out the alarm message during the alarm

When the FOMA terminal is folded and you receive an alarm notification, pressing the Assist key during the alarm notification stops the alarm and reads out the alarm message.

- Only when setting “Info notice setting” to “ON”, it reads out.

1 Press the Assist key during the alarm

Readout starts.

The following table shows the contents to be read out:

Alarm type	Contents
Alarm clock	Current time
Schedule	Up to 20 characters of the schedule summary or contents → p.400
To Do list	Up to 20 characters of the event contents → p.402

NOTE

- ◆ If you press the Assist key during readout, the readout stops.
- ◆ Scheduled events stored as secret data are not read out (except in “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”).
- ◆ The voice reading out an alarm message cannot be changed.
- ◆ An alarm message is not read out when the FOMA terminal is opened.

<Alarm setting>

Setting Alarm Mode

Default setting
Alarm preferred

You can select either “Operation preferred” or “Alarm preferred” as the alarm setting for “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “To Do list”.

1 “Settings” ▶ “Clock” ▶ “Alarm setting” ▶ “Operation preferred” or “Alarm preferred”

■ When Operation preferred is selected

The alarm sounds only when a screen is standby.

■ When Alarm preferred is selected

The alarm sounds even when you are operating or talking on a FOMA terminal.

Alarm actions

When you set an alarm for the “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “To Do list” function, the icon showing that the alarm has been set appears on the standby screen. When the specified time is reached, the alarm for the respective function is given.

● When you set an alarm

When you set an alarm for “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “To Do list”, an icon appears on the standby screen.



■ **For alarms set for today (excluding times that have already passed)**

“” appears.

■ **For alarms set for tomorrow or later**

“” appears.

NOTE

◆ If a schedule event or To Do list item is stored with “OFF” selected, neither “” nor “” appears.

● When the specified time is reached

An alarm is given as follows for each function.



Alarm clock*1



Schedule*1



To Do list*1

Status	Function	
	Alarm clock	Schedule, To Do list
Standby screen shown	If “Snooze OFF” is selected, the alarm tone sounds repeatedly for the specified time (01 to 10 minutes). If “Snooze ON” is selected, the alarm tone sounds repeatedly for one minute, and then repeats the operation up to 5 times at about 5 minute intervals. An animation or i-motion appears on the display and an animation appears on the Image display.	The alarm tone sounds repeatedly for about 5 minutes, and an animation or i-motion appears on the display and an animation appears on the Image display.

Status	Function	
	Alarm clock	Schedule, To Do list
FOMA terminal turned off	If “Auto power ON” is selected for the “Auto power ON” setting, a FOMA terminal automatically turns on and an alarm is given. If the setting is set to “Auto power OFF”, the terminal does not turn on and no alarm is given. The “” (Missed alarm) desktop icon does not appear on the screen even after the terminal turns on.	No alarm is given when the specified time is reached. The setting remains effective.
A voice, videophone or PushTalk call in progress*2	The clock alarm tone (pip-pipipi...) sounds 3 times through the FOMA terminal's earpiece. An animation appears on the display.	
Receiving or dialing a voice, videophone or PushTalk call*2	Whether the alarm is given depends on the condition. When an alarm is given, the alarm tone sounds and an animation appears on the display and Image display. When an alarm is not given at the setting time, the alarm tone sounds after becoming the condition of giving.	
i-mode or sending/receiving a mail*2	An alarm is given the same way as for “Standby screen displayed”.	
Infrared data exchange or data exchange in OBEX in progress	No alarm is given when the specified time is reached. When data communication ends, the “” (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby screen. → p.397	
Earphone/microphone connected	An alarm is given the same way as for “Standby screen displayed”. The alarm sounds both through the earphone and speaker according to the setting of “Earphone”.	
PIN1 code entry set is set to “ON” and the PIN1 code entry screen is shown after a FOMA terminal is turned on.*2	An alarm is given the same way as for “Standby screen displayed”. When the alarm screen is closed, the PIN1 code entry screen reappears.	An alarm is given after the correct PIN1 code is entered.

Status	Function	
	Alarm clock	Schedule, To Do list
Dial lock/ Omakase Lock/ Original lock set	Regardless of the "Alarm setting" setting, no alarm is given when the specified time is reached. If a FOMA terminal is turned off, it is not automatically turned on even when the specified time is reached and the "Missed alarm" (Missed alarm) desktop icon does not appear after unlocking. When Original lock is set, the "Missed alarm" (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby screen, however, when Dial lock/Omakase Lock is set, this icon appears after unlocking. →p.397	Regardless of the "Alarm setting" setting, no alarm is given when the specified time is reached. When Original lock is set, the "Missed alarm" (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby screen, however, when Dial lock/Omakase Lock is set, this icon appears after unlocking. →p.397

*1: The animation shown for the "Schedule" or "To Do list" alarm varies depending on the selected icon or category. If an i-motion is set as the alarm tone for "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "To Do list", the image appears during the alarm.

*2: This operation is performed when "Alarm preferred" is set. When "Operation preferred" is set, the "Missed alarm" (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby screen. →p.397

NOTE

- ◆The alarm volume for "Schedule" and "To Do list" follows the "Phone" setting under "Ring volume".
- ◆The volume of the clock alarm tone sounded during a call is the same as that specified in "Volume".
- ◆Even if "Snooze ON" is set, the snooze function is not activated for the alarm of Alarm clock during a call.
- ◆Unless "Phone" under "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", both vibration and the alarm tone are given as an alarm.
- ◆Even if an i-motion is set in "Alarm tone", the i-motion is not played when it cannot be activated (e.g. during a call). Instead, the clock alarm tone, specified icon and animation corresponding to the category are used for an alarm.

<Alarm priority sequence>

- ◆When the "Alarm clock", "Schedule" and "To Do list" alarms are set to sound at the same time, alarm priority is assigned as follows.

- ① Alarm clock
- ② To Do list
- ③ Schedule

● To stop an alarm tone

■ Alarm clock

When "Snooze OFF" is set

Pressing any key stops the alarm tone, animation or i-motion. If you press any key again, the release tone ("pipip") sounds and the display is cleared.

When "Snooze ON" is set

Pressing any key stops the alarm tone, animation or i-motion and the alarm message "Snooze..." appears. After the "Snooze..." message appears for about 5 minutes, the alarm is given again. If you press  while the "Snooze..." message appears, the release tone ("pipip") sounds and the snooze setting is released.

■ Schedule and To Do list

Pressing any key stops the alarm tone, animation or i-motion and the alarm message remains shown. Pressing any key again clears the alarm message. However, pressing any external key with a FOMA terminal folded does not close the alarm screen.

■ If a call arrives during an alarm

The alarm stops and a FOMA terminal receives the call. The "Alarm clock" snooze setting is also canceled.

NOTE

- ◆ Snooze is canceled when:
 - A voice call, videophone call or PushTalk call is received
 - "Alarm preferred" is selected in "Alarm setting" and then the alarm for Alarm clock, Schedule or To Do list is given
- ◆ If "Keypad sound" is set to "OFF", the release tone does not sound.

Checking details of an alarm that could not be given

If a FOMA terminal was unable to give an alarm, the  (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby screen. You can check the details of the missed alarm (Missed alarm info) from the desktop icon.

1 On the standby screen ▶

The missed alarm information for "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "To Do list" appears.



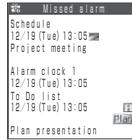
2 Check the details ▶



The standby screen reappears and the  (Missed alarm) desktop icon disappears.

NOTE

- ◆ If “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “To Do list” alarms are set to sound at the same time but a FOMA terminal was unable to give the alarms, the respective missed alarm information appears.
- ◆ To clear the desktop icon , press **[CLR]** for 1 second or longer on the standby screen. Once you clear this desktop icon, you can no longer check the missed alarm information.



<Alarm clock> MENU44

Using a FOMA Terminal as an Alarm Clock

Default setting All OFF

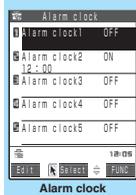
- You can store up to 5 alarm settings.

Setting the alarm clock

1  “LifeKit”

“Alarm clock”

The “Alarm clock” screen appears.
If you have set the alarm clock before, the previously specified settings appear.



Function menu → p.398

2 Highlight an item to set  (Edit)  Set the respective parameters  (Finish)

 Time setting	<p> Enter a time</p> <p>Enters a time when the alarm will sound.</p>
 Repeat	<p>Sets the alarm repetition.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1 time Sounds the alarm only once. • Daily () Sounds the alarm every day. • Select day ()  Use  to select a checkbox ()  (Finish) Sounds the alarm every week on the specified day (Sun to Sat).

 Alarm tone	<p>Selects an alarm tone.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clock Alarm Tone Sets the alarm tone selected at the “Clock Alarm Tone set”. • Melody  Select a folder Selects a ring tone or melody. • i-motion  Select a folder Selects an i-motion. • Music  Select a folder Selects a track. • Voice announce Selects “Voice announce 1” or “Voice announce 2” for an alarm tone. “Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones” → p.406 • Random melody  Select a folder Automatically selects a ring tone to set it as an alarm tone. • OFF Does not sound an alarm.
 Volume	<p> Use  to adjust the volume</p> <p>Sets the alarm tone volume.</p>
 Snooze setting	<p>Specifies whether to set the snooze (repeating) alarm.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ON Sounds the alarm tone repeatedly for 1 minute and then repeats the operation up to 5 times at about 5-minute intervals. • OFF  Enter the ring time (01-10 minutes) Sounds the alarm tone continuously for the specified ring time.
 Auto power ON	<p>Specifies whether to automatically turn on a FOMA terminal when the alarm time is reached.</p>

NOTE

- ◆ When “Auto power ON” is set to “ON” and a melody or i-motion downloaded from a site is set as the alarm tone, the “alarm tone” sounds due to the FOMA card operational restriction function.
- ◆ Before entering an area such as aircraft or hospital where there is electronic equipment that uses extremely precise control systems or very low signal level and it is prohibited to use a mobile phone, set the “Auto power ON” setting to “OFF” and then turn a FOMA terminal off.

Function menu (Alarm clock screen)

Edit	Edits the alarm clock settings.
Display detail	Changes the display from a list to details.
Finish(Set this)	Enables the highlighted alarm clock setting.
Release this	Disables the highlighted alarm clock setting.
Release all	Disables all the alarm clock settings.

Adding Schedule Events, Holidays and Anniversaries

Setting schedule events sounds the alarm tone at the specified dates and times and shows the alarm messages and animations to notify you of the events. You can also set holidays and anniversaries. Stored schedule and holiday events can be quickly checked on the FOMA terminal's calendar. You can switch the calendar display mode between 1-month and 1-week to view the number or details of scheduled or To Do list events for a given day. You can organize your schedule in a variety of ways, e.g. storing regularly scheduled events such as weekly meetings on a given day every week, setting alarm tones and animations that match the scheduled events, or storing multiple schedule events for the same day.

- You can view or store events from January 1, 2004 to December 31, 2037.
- You can store up to 100 schedule events, holidays and anniversaries, respectively. The national public holidays stored on a FOMA terminal at the time of purchase are not included in those holidays.
- You can store two or more schedule events for the same day, while you can only set one holiday and one anniversary per day.
- Schedule alarms → p.395

1 (MENU) ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “Schedule”

The “Schedule” screen appears.



Function menu → p.399

Function menu (Schedule screen)

New	“Adding schedule events” → p.400 “Adding holidays and anniversaries” → p.400
Weekly display, Monthly display	“Changing the schedule display mode” → p.399
Icon display	▶ Select an icon Shows scheduled events for each icon. Repeated scheduled events (D or W) appear as a single item.
User icon settg.	“Setting your preferred image as a user icon” → p.401
Switch To Do list	Switches to the To Do list screen (p.403)
No. of schedules	Shows the numbers of stored schedule events, holidays and anniversaries. In “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”, entries stored as secret events also appear.

Touch to send all	“Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time” → p.369
Send all Ir data	Same as above
Reset holiday	Resets the national public holidays to default.
Delete	
• Delete selected	▶ Use to select a checkbox <input type="checkbox"/> (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple schedule entries.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select any item ▶ “YES” Selects an item to delete. You can select “Schedule”, “Holiday”, “Anniversary” or “All” (deleting all the entries of Schedule, Holiday and Anniversary).
• Delete past*	Deletes all the schedule entries set to come before the highlighted day. You can select “Schedule”, “Holiday”, “Anniversary” or “All” (deleting all the entries of Schedule, Holiday and Anniversary).

* : Past means the period prior to the day on which the cursor is positioned on the Schedule screen.

NOTE

- ◆ Selecting “Holiday” or “All” in “Delete all” resets holidays to the default settings.
- ◆ Selecting “Delete past” or “Delete selected” does not delete the default public holidays stored at the time of purchase.

Changing the schedule display mode

The schedule display mode provides two types: “Monthly display” and “Weekly display”. Use to select a date so that you can check the number and icons of schedule and To Do list stored on the selected date.



Indicates icons and the numbers of schedule and To Do list events stored in the morning and afternoon of the highlighted date.



Indicates the date, day of the week, icon and event details.

- Blue date: Saturday
- Red date: Sunday, public holiday or holiday
- Pink date: Anniversary
- : Today
- : There is an event scheduled for the morning.
- : There is an event scheduled for the afternoon.
- T : There is a To Do list item.

Public holidays are based on “国民の祝日に関する法律（昭和23年法律第178号までのもの）およびその法改正（平成17年法律第43号までのもの）” (Public Holiday Law (Up to 1948 No. 178) and its amended version (Up to 2005 No. 43)). The official dates of vernal and autumnal equinoxes are gazetted on February 1 the previous year, and they may differ from ones preset on the FOMA terminal. (As of November, 2006)

Adding holidays and anniversaries

<Example: To store a holiday>

- 1 ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “Schedule” ▶ (New) ▶ “Holiday”
 - To store an anniversary
 - ▶ “Anniversary”
- 2 Set the respective parameters ▶ (Finish)

Date setting	▶ Enter the date Enters the date of the holiday or anniversary you want to add.
Repeat	Sets the repetition of holiday or anniversary.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1 time 	Sets the holiday or anniversary only for that year.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Annually 	Sets the holiday or anniversary for every year.
Contents	▶ Enter a message Enters the details of the holiday or anniversary. A message can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.

NOTE

- ◆ If there is already a holiday or anniversary stored for the specified date, a message asking whether to overwrite the existing entry appears.

Adding schedule events

Adding an event such as a trip or appointment to your schedule notifies you of the event using an alarm tone or animation when the specified date and time arrives.

- 1 **Schedule screen (p.399)** ▶ (New) ▶ “Schedule” ▶ Set the respective parameters ▶ (Finish)

Date(from)	▶ Enter “Start Year”, “Start Date” and “Start Time” Enters the start date and time for the schedule event.
Date(to)	▶ Enter “End Year”, “End Date” and “End Time” Enters the end date and time for the schedule event.

Repeat	Sets the repetition of the scheduled event.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1 time 	Sets the event only for the specified date and time.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Daily () 	Sets the event to repeat every day.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select day () 	▶ Use to select a checkbox () (Finish) Sets the event to repeat every week on the specified day (Sun. to Sat.).
Alarm	Specifies the alarm settings used when the start date and time is reached.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ON 	An alarm is given at the start date and time.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ON/Set time 	▶ Enter a prior alarm time (01-99 minutes) Sets how many minutes before the start date and time the alarm is given.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • OFF 	No alarm is given when the start time is reached.
Alarm tone	Selects an alarm tone.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clock Alarm Tone 	Sets the alarm tone selected at the “Clock Alarm Tone set”.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Melody 	▶ Select a folder Selects a ring tone or melody.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • i-motion 	▶ Select a folder Selects an i-motion.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Music 	▶ Select a folder Selects a track.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Voice announce 	Selects “Voice announce 1” or “Voice announce 2” for an alarm tone. “Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones” → p.406
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • OFF 	Does not sound an alarm.
Summary	▶ Enter a message Enters the summary of the schedule event. A summary can contain up to 20 double-byte or 40 single-byte characters. The entered summary appears on the screen during the alarm.
Plan	▶ Enter a message ▶ Select an icon Enters the scheduled event details. A plan can contain up to 256 double-byte or 512 single-byte characters. If no summary is entered, the plan appears on the screen during the alarm. If both summary and plan are entered, the summary appears first and the plan next.

* : Selecting this option shows the “Date setting” screen on which you can set both Date (from) and Date (to) of Date setting.

NOTE

- ◆ If "ON/Set time" is selected, an alarm is given only at the specified date and time before the scheduled event (01-99 minutes before the event). The alarm is not given at the date and time originally specified for the scheduled event.
- ◆ If you attempt to set an alarm for the same date and time as those for an already stored event during schedule registration, the message asking whether to overwrite the existing entry appears.
- ◆ Schedule events can be stored to give the alarms at the same date and time only when the Repeat setting for one is "Daily" or "Select day" and the Repeat setting for another is "1 time" (no repeats). In this case, the event with the "1 time" setting has priority.
- ◆ If the day of the week set as the starting time and the one set in the Repeat setting are different, the one set in the Repeat setting has priority and the schedule event is set to come on the first specified day of the week after the starting time.
- ◆ If you store a schedule event during a voice call, PushTalk call or 64K data communication, the alarm does not sound although it normally sounds when the alarm tone is selected.

Important

- It is recommended to back up the details of stored schedule events by taking notes or saving onto the microSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC by using DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.430) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- The trouble, repair, etc. of a FOMA terminal may erase the details of the schedule events. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility whatsoever for loss of data. Take notes of the schedule event details just in case.

Setting your preferred image as a user icon

This procedure enables you to set an image or animation stored in "My picture" as a user icon. The specified user icons are shown as "👤" to "👤" on the icon selection screen. If a user icon is set, the selected image or animation appears when an alarm is given. Also, "★" appears on the Image display.

- You can set up to 5 user icons.

1 Schedule screen (p.399)▶

👤 (FUNC)▶ "User icon settg."▶

"<Not recorded>"

- To change a user icon already set

▶ Choose an item you want to change

- To cancel all the user icon settings

▶ "Release all"▶ "YES"

This operation is only available when user icons have already been set.



2 Select a folder including images

Images can also be selected from user-created folders. Selecting images→p.330



- To cancel an icon set for schedule events

▶ "Release this"▶ "YES"

- To cancel an icon not set for any schedule events

▶ "Release this"

3 Select an image to set

The selected image is previewed. The screen returns to the user icon list after a while.

- To preview

▶ Select an image to preview▶ 🎮 (Play)

NOTE

- ◆ If you attempt to change or cancel a user icon that is being used for scheduled events, a message asking whether to cancel the icon appears. If you change or cancel a user icon or delete it from My picture, the alarm screen for the scheduled event where the icon was used changes to the one that appears when "👤" is set.

Checking schedule details

Open the detail screen to check the details of a scheduled event.

1 Schedule screen (p.399)▶ Select the date for which the scheduled event to check is stored

The "Schedule list" screen appears.

The following icons appear on the list screen:



Function menu▶p.402

👤 : Specified schedule icon indicating that a schedule event is stored.

🏠 : A holiday is stored.

👤 : An anniversary is stored.

📅 : There is a To Do list item.

🔔 : An alarm is set.

🔄 : Repeated daily

🔄 : Repeated weekly

🔄 : Repeated annually

2 Select an item to check in detail



Scheduled event detail



Holiday detail



Anniversary detail

Function menu (Schedule list screen)

New	"Adding schedule events" → p.400 "Adding holidays and anniversaries" → p.400
Edit	Edits schedule entries.
Copy	Copies Schedule, Holiday or Anniversary entry to store it in other dates. If an entry to be copied contains the repeat setting, it is canceled when the entry is copied.
Icon display	▶ Select an icon Shows scheduled events for each icon. Repeated scheduled events ( or ) appear as a single item.
User icon settg.	"Setting your preferred image as a user icon" → p.401
Switch To Do list	Switches to the To Do list screen (p.403).
Release secret	"Changing secret data back to normal" → p.160
Compose message	"Creating and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.239
Attach to mail	Composes a message with a schedule entry attached. → p.248
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.147
Touch to send data	"Transferring One Data at a Time" → p.368
Send Ir data	
Touch to send all	"Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time" → p.369
Send all Ir data	
Copy to microSD	
• Copy this	Copies the highlighted schedule entry.
• Copy selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox () ▶  (Finish) ▶ "YES" Copies multiple schedule entries.
• Copy all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Copies all schedule entries.
Delete	
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted schedule entry.
• Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox () ▶  (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes multiple schedule entries.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select any item ▶ "YES" Selects an item to delete. You can select "Schedule", "Holiday", "Anniversary" or "All" (deleting all the entries of Schedule, Holiday and Anniversary).
• Delete past	Deletes all the schedule entries set to come before the selected day. You can select "Schedule", "Holiday", "Anniversary" or "All" (deleting all the entries of Schedule, Holiday and Anniversary).

NOTE

- ◆ Selecting "Holiday" or "All" in "Delete all" resets holidays to the default settings.
- ◆ Selecting "Delete past" or "Delete selected" does not delete the default public holidays stored at the time of purchase.
- ◆ If you attempt to use "Delete this" or "Delete selected" to delete scheduled events which repetition (daily or weekly) is set, a message asking whether to delete the repeat settings appears. Selecting "YES" deletes all the repeat settings of the scheduled events.
- ◆ When you perform Delete past, all the repeated scheduled events (daily or weekly) prior to the selected date are deleted, while the others from the selected day are left undeleted.

<To Do list>

MENU95

Adding To Do List Items

You can manage your schedule by adding items to the To Do list. Alarms can also be set for items.

- You can store up to 100 items in the To Do list.
- To Do list alarms → p.395

Adding and editing items

- Always enter "Contents". You cannot add To Do list items without "Contents".
- You can set from January 1, 2004 to December 31, 2037 on "Due date" or "Completion date".

1 ▶ "LifeKit" ▶ "To Do list" ▶

 (New)

■ **To add a new item when other items have been stored**

▶  (FUNC) ▶ "New"

■ **To edit an already stored item**

▶ Select an item to edit ▶  (Edit)

2 **Set the respective parameters** ▶

 (Finish)

 Contents	▶ Enter the details of an item Enters the details of an item. Contents can contain up to 100 double-byte or 200 single-byte characters.
 Due date	
• Enter date	▶ Enter the date and time Enters the date and time.
• Choose date	▶ Select a date from the calendar ▶ Enter a time Selects a date from the calendar.
• No date	Does not set a due date.
 Priority	
• 	Sets  (high) priority.
• 	Sets  (low) priority.
• None	Does not set priority.

Category	Selects a category of an item from "None", "Personal", "Holiday", "Travel", "Business" and "Meeting".
Alarm	Specifies the alarm settings used when the due date is reached.
• ON	An alarm is given on the due date.
• ON/Set time	▶ Enter a prior alarm time (01-99 minutes) Sets how many minutes before the due date the alarm is given.
• OFF	No alarm is given when the due date is reached.
Alarm tone	Selects an alarm tone.
• Clock Alarm Tone	Sets the alarm tone selected at the "Clock Alarm Tone set".
• Melody	▶ Select a folder Selects a ring tone or melody.
• i-motion	▶ Select a folder Selects an i-motion.
• Music	▶ Select a folder Selects a track.
• Voice announce	Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" for an alarm tone. "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" → p.406
• OFF	Does not sound an alarm.
Completion date*	
• Enter date	▶ Enter the date Enters the date.
• Choose date	▶ Select a date from the calendar Selects a date from the calendar.
• No date	Does not set a completion date.

* : Shown only when you edit an existing item whose "Status" is "Completion".

NOTE

- ◆ If "ON/Set time" is selected, an alarm is given only at the specified time before the To Do list item (01-99 minutes before the item). The alarm is not given at the date and time originally specified for the To Do list item.
- ◆ If you store an item during a voice call, PushTalk call or 64K data communication, the alarm does not sound although it normally sounds when the alarm tone is selected.

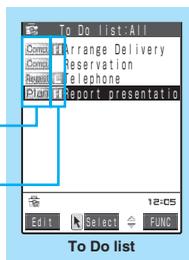
Important

- It is recommended to back up the details of stored To Do list items by taking notes or saving onto the microSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC by using DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.430) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- You may lose your data through the damage or repair of your FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility whatsoever for loss of data. Take notes of the To Do list items just in case.

Checking items

1 "LifeKit" ▶ "To Do list"

The "To Do list" screen appears.



Shows the entry status.
The blue icon turns into red when the specified day has elapsed.

Shows the priority.

Function menu ▶ p.403

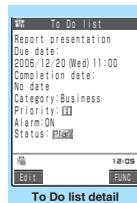
2 Select an item to check

■ To edit an item

▶ (Edit)

"Adding and editing items"

→ p.402



Function menu ▶ p.403

Function menu (To Do list screen/ To Do list detail screen)

New	"Adding and editing items" → p.402
Edit	
Switch Schedule	Switches to the Schedule screen (p.399)
Change status	Selects a status from "Plan", "Acceptance", "Request", "Provisional plan", "Confirmation", "Denial", "Completion" and "Substitution". If selecting "Completion", enter the completion date.
Category display*	Selects a category from "All", "None", "Personal", "Holiday", "Travel", "Business" and "Meeting", and shows items by category.
Sort/Filter*	Sorts items according to the specified criterion or shows items with specific status.
Add desktop icon*	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.147
Attach to mail	Composes a message with a To Do list item attached. → p.248
Touch to send data	"Transferring One Data at a Time" → p.368
Send 1r data	
Touch to send all*	"Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time" → p.369
Send all 1r data*	

Copy to microSD	
• Copy this	Copies the highlighted To Do list item.
• Copy selected	▶Use to select a checkbox ▶ (Finish)▶“YES” Copies multiple To Do list items.
• Copy all	▶Enter your security code▶“YES” Copies all the To Do list items.
Delete	
• Delete this	Deletes the selected item.
• Delete selected*	▶Use to select a checkbox ▶ (Finish)▶“YES” Deletes multiple items.
• Delete completed*	Deletes a finished item.
• Delete all*	▶Enter your security code▶“YES” Deletes all items.

* : Available only on the To Do list screen.

<My Profile>
MENU 0

Storing Your Name and Image

Default setting
Own number only

You can store your personal information including your name, home phone number and e-mail address. Storing personal information allows you to identify your FOMA terminal or to quote the stored data on the Text entry (edit) screen.

- You cannot change or delete your Own number.
- Items other than Own number are stored on a FOMA terminal. Even if a different FOMA card (UIM) is inserted, the items stored on your FOMA terminal appear except for Own number.

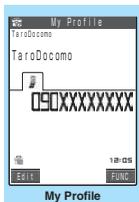
Showing My Profile

This function only shows your name, Own number and the first e-mail address listed.

1 ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “My Profile”

The “My Profile” screen appears.

If you have stored your personal data such as your home phone number or address, you can view all the data by selecting “Display all data” from the function menu and entering your security code.



Function menu → p.404

Function menu (My Profile screen)

Edit	“Storing My Profile” → p.405
Display all data	▶Enter your security code▶Use to check the details
Copy name	Copies a name stored in My Profile. The copied name can be pasted into the entry screen, etc.

Copy phone number ¹	Copies the phone number currently shown. The copied phone number can be pasted into the entry screen, etc.
Attach to mail ²	Composes a message with My Profile data attached.
Read a map ³	Uses the location information stored in My profile to connect to the location site.
Paste to mail ³	Composing a message with a location information URL pasted.
Run i-appli ³	Displays an i-appli list screen.
Touch to send data	“Transferring One Data at a Time” → p.368
Send Ir data	
Copy to microSD	“Data that can be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and a microSD memory card” → p.356
Big font, Standard font	Changes the font size for the name displayed.
Reset	▶Enter your security code▶“YES” Resets (deletes) the My Profile other than your Own number and restores the default settings set at the time of purchase. When you have selected “Display all data” to show the My Profile, you do not need to enter your security code.
Delete phone No. ⁴	Deletes the phone number currently shown.

*1: Depending upon what you have selected, one of the following is applicable.

- If you have selected a mail address, “Copy mail add.” appears.
- If you have selected an address, “Copy address” appears.
- If you have selected location information, “Copy location information” appears.
- If you have selected a birthday, “Copy birthday” appears.
- If you have selected a memo, “Copy memorandums” appears.

*2: Available with “Display all data”.

*3: Available when selecting the location information with “Display all data”.

*4: Depending upon what you have selected, one of the following is applicable.

- If you have selected a mail address, “Delete mail add.” appears.
- If you have selected an address, “Delete address” appears.
- If you have selected location information, “Delete location information” appears.
- If you have selected a birthday, “Delete birthday” appears.
- If you have selected a memo, “Delete memorandums” appears.
- If you have selected an image, “Delete image” appears.

Storing My Profile

- 1 ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “My Profile” ▶
 (Edit) ▶ Enter your security code ▶ Set the respective parameters ▶ (Finish)

Last name	▶ Enter your last name Enters your last name. The last name can contain up to 16 double-byte or 32 single-byte characters including your “First name”, consisting of kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and pictographs.
Reading	▶ Enter the reading of your last name Enters the reading of your last name. Entering your last name sets the reading automatically. Change it if necessary. A reading can contain up to 32 single-byte characters including the “Reading of your “First name”, consisting of katakana, alphabets, numbers and symbols.
First name	▶ Enter your first name Enters your first name. Enterable characters are the same as entering your last name.
Reading	▶ Enter the reading of your first name Enters the reading of your first name. Entering your first name sets the reading automatically. Change it if necessary. Enterable characters are the same as entering the reading of your last name.
Phone number	▶ Enter a phone number ▶ Select an icon Adds a phone number other than your Own number and selects an icon. A phone number can be up to 26 digits. Storing a new phone number shows <Not stored>” on the personal data edit screen. Select this option to store an additional phone number.
Mail address	▶ “Direct Input” ▶ Enter an e-mail address ▶ Select an icon Enters an e-mail address and selects an icon. An e-mail address can contain up to 50 single-byte alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols. Select “Acquire Automatically” to automatically get the set e-mail address from i-mode Center. Storing the first e-mail address shows <Not stored>” on the personal data edit screen. Select this option to store an additional e-mail address. ■ To edit a stored e-mail address ▶ Enter an e-mail address ▶ Select an icon

Address	▶ Enter a ZIP code ▶ Enter a prefecture ▶ Enter a city ▶ Enter a street ▶ Enter an apartment name, etc. ▶ (Finish) Enters a ZIP code and street address. A ZIP code can consist of up to 7 single-byte numbers. A street address can contain up to 50 double-byte or 100 single-byte characters, consisting of kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and pictographs.*
Location information	▶ Select a method of storing location information Stores the present location by GPS or from Location history.
Birthday	▶ Enter a birthday Enters a birthday (year, month and day). Any year from 1800 to 2099 can be set.
Memorandums	▶ Enter a memo Enters a memo (short note). A memo can contain up to 100 double-byte or 200 single-byte characters long and can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, and pictographs.
Image	Sets an image to be shown for your personal data. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Photo mode Activates the camera to shoot an image. The shot image can be set for your personal data. • Select image ▶ Select a folder Selects an image. • Release this Cancels the image set for your personal data.

* : An address except the ZIP code can contain up to 50 double-byte or 100 single-byte characters as the total of prefecture, city, town, street, apartment, etc.

NOTE

- ◆ Changing your mail address or setting the secret code does not automatically change the mail address stored here until you change it manually.

Quoting personal data (My Profile)

Storing personal information allows you to identify your FOMA terminal and quote the stored data on the Text entry (edit) screen or i-mode.

<Example: To quote personal data on the i-mode site>

The items to select are different according to the site.

- 1 Display a site to quote the personal data

2 Select “Quote My Profile” ▶ Enter your security code

Quotable items are listed.

■ To select items to quote

- ▶ Use to clear checkboxes of items that you will not quote

3 (Finish)

The items to be quoted are automatically entered.

Registration

Name

Email Address

Address

Phone Number

NOTE

- ◆ When you quote a street address on the Text entry or i-mode site, a space may be entered between items.
- ◆ When you quote the My Profile, the data except the items entered automatically are not quoted.

<Voice memo (in-call)/Voice memo>

Recording Your Voice or the Other Party's Voice

Voice memo is divided into two types. “Voice memo” (during a call) enables you to record the other party's voice during a voice call or videophone call. “Voice memo” (in standby) enables you to record your own voice while the screen is standby.

- You can record either one voice memo (in standby) or one voice memo (during a call), which overwrites the existing memo.
- You can record a memo for approximately 20 seconds.
- Playing and erasing recorded voice memos → p.83

Recording the other party's voice during a call

1 During a call ▶ (MEMO/CHECK) (1 second or longer)

A FOMA terminal beeps and recording begins. The terminal beeps 5 seconds before the recording time (about 20 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the terminal gives a short double-beep and the “Recording” screen changes back to the in-call screen.



■ To stop recording

- ▶ , , or (MEMO/CHECK) (1 second or longer)

Pressing ends the call as well as recording.

Pressing does not stop recording during a videophone call.

NOTE

- ◆ If you receive a call, use another function or a FOMA terminal gives you “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “To Do list” alarm, recording stops.
- ◆ You cannot record voice while a videophone call is on hold or you are using a function menu option.
- ◆ While you are holding a voice call, you can activate Voice memo (during a call) to record voice by following the steps below:

- ▶ ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “Voice memo”

* : “Voice memo (in-call)” may appear as the menu item depending on the menu theme.

Recording your voice in standby mode

MENU 43

1 ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “Voice memo” ▶ “YES” ▶ Record a voice memo

When a FOMA terminal beeps, begin speaking into the mouthpiece. The terminal beeps 5 seconds before the recording time (about 20 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the terminal gives a short double-beep and the “Recording” screen changes back to the “LifeKit” list screen.

■ To stop recording

- ▶ , , or

Pressing returns to the standby screen and saves the recorded voice.

Important

- It is recommended to take notes of the contents of voice memos.
- The trouble, repair, etc. of the FOMA terminal may erase the contents of voice memos. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages and memos as a precautionary measure.

<Voice announce>

MENU91

Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones

This function enables you to record your voice and set it as an original ring tone or answer message.

- You can make two voice recordings: “Voice announce 1” and “Voice announce 2”.
- You can record a memo for approximately 15 seconds.
- Voice recorded here can be set to the following functions:
 - Ring tone
 - Ring tone for Call setting w/o ID
 - Ring tone for Multi Number
 - On hold tone
 - Holding tone
 - Answer message for Record message
 - Alarm tone for Alarm clock
 - Alarm tone for Schedule
 - Alarm tone for To Do list
 - Alarm tone for Notice designate calls

Recording voice

- 1 (MENU) ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “Voice announce” ▶ Select an item to record voice ▶ “YES”



Function menu ▶ p.407

2 Record voice

Speak into the mouthpiece. The terminal beeps 5 seconds before the recording time (about 15 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the terminal gives a short double-beep and the “Recording” screen changes back to the in-call screen.

■ To stop recording

▶ (END), (CLR) or (CALL)

Pressing (CALL) during recording returns to the standby screen and saves the recorded voice.

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot record new voice for an option that has already recorded voice. Erase recorded voice to record new voice.
- ◆ If you receive a voice, videophone or PushTalk call, use another function or a FOMA terminal gives you “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “To Do list” alarm, recording stops.

Playing recorded voice

- 1 (MENU) ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “Voice announce” ▶ Select an item to play

■ To stop playback

▶ (END), (CLR) or (CALL)

Function menu (Voice announce screen)

Record	Records voice.
Play	Plays recorded voice.
Erase	Erases recorded voice.

<Call data> MENU61

Checking Call Times and Charges

You can check the previous or total call time/charge for voice/videophone calls, etc.

- If you switch between voice call and videophone call, the total call time of voice call and videophone call appears in the last call duration area, and the charges of voice call and videophone call appear separately in the last call cost area. The shown charge may differ from the actual charge.
- The call time is a total of dialed and received call times, and indicated respectively for voice calls and digital communication (videophone calls and 64K data communication).

- Charges are only indicated for dialed calls. If you call a toll free number or directory assistance (104), “¥0” or “¥*”*” appears.
- Charge data are accumulated on a FOMA card (UIM). If you insert another FOMA card (UIM), the charge data (starting from December 2004) accumulated on the inserted FOMA card (UIM) are indicated on the Total calls cost line.
 - * FOMA terminals released before the 901i series stores charge data on their FOMA cards (UIM) but cannot show the data.
- You can reset call times and charges shown on a FOMA terminal.
- Call times and Total calls cost shown on a FOMA terminal may differ from the actual figures. Consumption tax is not included in charges.

- 1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Call time/Charge” ▶ “Call data”

You can check the following:

Last call duration	Shows the approximate duration of the last call. The duration is shown no matter whether you made or received the call.
Last call cost	Shows the approximate charge for the last call. “Talk” shows the charge for voice calls and “Digital” for videophone calls and 64K data communication.
Total calls duration	Shows the total duration of all the calls made since the last reset (when the total was reset to “0”). “Talk” shows the total duration of voice calls and “Digital” does the total duration of videophone calls and 64K data communication.
Total calls cost	Shows the approximate total charges for all the calls made since the last reset. The approximate total charges are for the total of voice calls and digital communication (videophone calls and 64K data communication).
Total duration reset	Shows the time and date of the last call reset.
Total cost reset	Shows the time and date of the last charge reset.

NOTE

- ◆ If the last and accumulated voice or digital call time exceeds “199 hours, 59 minutes, 59 seconds”, the call time count returns to 0 second.
- ◆ Call time and charge are not counted during PushTalk calls, i-mode or packet communication or Chaku-moji calls. To check i-mode communication charges, see the “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]” you received at the time of contract.
- ◆ The time during receiving or making a call and switching between a voice and videophone call is not counted.

- ◆ Turning off a FOMA terminal resets the duration and charge for the last call to “0 second” and “¥ * *” respectively.
- ◆ The total duration or charge information will remain if a FOMA terminal is turned off.

Resetting the total calls time and cost <Reset total>

MENU60

- 1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Call time/Charge” ▶ “Reset total” ▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select any item

Reset total duration	Resets the accumulated duration.
Reset total cost	▶ “YES” ▶ Enter the PIN2 code Resets the accumulated charge.

Resetting charges automatically

<Auto reset total cost>

Default setting
OFF

You can set the accumulated charge shown in “Call data” to automatically return to zero at 0:00 AM on the 1st day every month.

- 1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Call time/Charge” ▶ “Auto reset total cost” ▶ Enter your security code

- 2 “Auto reset” ▶ Select any items

ON	▶ Enter the PIN2 code Sets Auto reset. PIN2 code → p.154
OFF	Does not set Auto reset.

NOTE

- ◆ The charge is automatically reset even during packet communication.
- ◆ If it becomes time to reset charge automatically during a call, Auto reset is performed after the call ends.
- ◆ If it becomes time to reset charge automatically while a FOMA terminal is turned off, turn on the terminal again and enter the PIN2 code to reset the charge.
- ◆ Setting Auto reset total cost to “ON” and changing the month in “Set time” reset the total call charges automatically.
- ◆ When Auto reset total cost is set to “ON”, the PIN2 code entry screen appears when a FOMA terminal is turned on.
- ◆ Auto reset total cost is set to “OFF” if:
 - You turn on a FOMA terminal without the FOMA card (UIM) inserted.
 - You press [CLR] on the PIN2 code entry screen displayed when a FOMA terminal is turned on.
 - The PIN2 code is locked. → p.155
 - The FOMA card (UIM) is failed.

<Notice designate calls>

Setting the Upper Limit of Charge to Show the Alarm

Default setting

Cost limit setting: Not set
Notify cost limit: OFF

The standby screen or alarm notifies you when the accumulated charge indicated in “Call data” exceeds the specified cost limit.

- The alarm is given only once when the accumulated charge exceeds the limit set in advance.
- Exceeding the limit does not prevent you from making calls.

- 1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Call time/Charge” ▶ “Notice designate calls” ▶ Enter your security code ▶ Set the respective parameters ▶ (Finish)

Cost limit setting	Sets the cost limit between 10 and 100,000 by 10.
Notify setting	
• Notify cost limit	Specifies whether to give an alarm when the cost limit is exceeded. Setting “OFF” does not given an alarm. Setting “ON” gives an alarm following the settings of “Alarm tone” and “Volume”.
• Alarm tone	Selects an alarm tone. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option. “Alarm Tone” can be selected from the “Pre-installed” folder.
• Inbox	Selects a melody downloaded from an i-mode site or website as a ring tone.
• Pre-installed	Selects an alarm tone from the pre-installed ring tones and melodies.
• Voice announce	Selects “Voice announce 1” or “Voice announce 2” for an alarm tone. “Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones” → p.406
• OFF	Does not sound an alarm.
• Volume	Use  to set the alarm tone volume.

NOTE

- ◆ The alarm volume applied while in original manner mode is the same as that specified in “Phone vol. ” under “Original”.
- ◆ The charges for PushTalk calls, i-mode and packet communication and Chaku-moji transmission are not supported by this function. To check i-mode communication charges, see the “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]” you received at the time of contract.

Alarm actions

When the accumulated charge exceeds the cost limit after a call, you are notified as follows:

When Notify cost limit is set to "ON" and Alarm tone is set to other than "OFF"

When the accumulated call charge exceeds the preset cost limit, the alarm sounds for about five minutes after three seconds after calling with the screen which notifies that. To stop the alarm, press any key. After the alarm, pressing [CLR] or  shows the "MXX" (Notice designate calls) desktop icon on the standby screen.



When Notify cost limit is set to "ON" and Alarm tone is set to "OFF"

When the accumulated charge exceeds the preset cost limit, the "MXX" (Notice designate calls) desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

Checking the details of "MXX" (Notice designate calls)

Selecting the "MXX" (Notice designate calls) desktop icon on the standby screen shows the details of Notice designate calls.

1 On the standby screen Enter your security code

The alarm information on "Notice designate calls" is shown.



2 Check the details

The standby screen reappears and the "MXX" (Notice designate calls) desktop icon disappears.

NOTE

- ◆ The "MXX" (Notice designate calls) desktop icon disappears if the cost limit is changed to the one exceeding the current total calls charge in "Cost limit setting".
- ◆ If you set the cost limit for the first time to a value lower than the total calls cost and make or receive a call, the alarm of Notice designate calls sounds when you end the call.
- ◆ You can choose the alarm mode between "Operation preferred" or "Alarm preferred" in "Alarm setting".

Using a FOMA Terminal as a Calculator

A FOMA terminal performs four basic arithmetic operations (+ (addition), - (subtraction), × (multiplication), ÷ (division)).

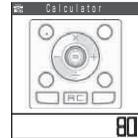
- Up to 10-digit number and up to nine decimal places can be shown.
- A result number consisting of more than 10 figures appears with "E".

1 "LifeKit" "Calculator"

Calculate

The entered numbers and calculation result appear.

To calculate "23 + 57"



To use negative numbers in calculation

To calculate using negative numbers, simply insert "-" before the first digit.



NOTE

- ◆ [CLR] ([F/C] or [C]) is available as follows:
 - Pressing +, -, ×, ÷ or = shows [F/C]. Pressing [CLR] allows you to recalculate from scratch.
 - When [C] appears during a number or decimal point entry, pressing [CLR] allows you to clear a number or decimal point entered wrongly.

Composing Text Memos

The text memo function is available for composing and saving short messages, etc. Composed text memos can be pasted into your schedule or mail.

- You can store up to 10 text memos.
- A text memo can contain up to 256 double-byte or 512 single-byte characters.

Storing a text memo

1 (MENU) ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “Text memo”

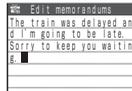
The “Text memo” screen appears.



2 Highlight “<Not recorded>” and press (Edit)

■ To edit a stored text memo
▶ Select an item to edit ▶ (Edit)

3 Compose a memo



NOTE

- ◆ Highlighting “<Not recorded>” on the “Text memo” screen and pressing (Edit) also enables you to compose a text memo.

Important

- It is recommended to back up the text memos by taking notes or saving onto the microSD memory card. You can also save data to your PC by using DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.430) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- The trouble, repair, etc. of the FOMA terminal may erase the contents of text memos. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility whatsoever for loss of data. Take notes of text memos just in case.

Checking the details of text memos

1 (MENU) ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “Text memo” ▶ Select an item to check in detail ▶ Check the details



Function menu (Text memo screen)

Edit	Edits a text memo.
Compose message	“Creating and Sending i-mode Mail” → p.239
Edit schedule	“Adding schedule events” → p.400
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons” → p.147
Touch to send data	“Transferring One Data at a Time” → p.368
Send 1r data	
Touch to send all	“Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time” → p.369
Send all 1r data	

Copy to microSD	
• Copy this	Copies the highlighted text memo.
• Copy selected	▶ Use (Select) to select a checkbox () ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Copies multiple text memos.
• Copy all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Copies all text memos.
Text memo info	Shows the category or when it was created.
Category	Categorizes a highlighted text memo into “None”, “Personal”, “Holiday”, “Travel”, “Business” or “Meeting”.
Delete	
• Delete this	Deletes the selected text memo.
• Delete selected	▶ Use (Select) to select a checkbox () ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple text memos.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all text memos.

<Dictionary>

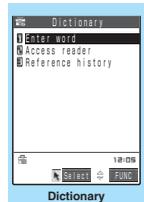
Using Dictionaries

- Using dictionaries from other functions → p.411

Activating a dictionary

1 (MENU) ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “Dictionary”

The “Dictionary” screen appears.



Function menu → p.411

2 Select any item

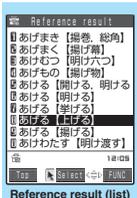
Enter word	▶ Enter a word A word can contain up to 32 double-byte or 64 single-byte characters.
Access reader	▶ “Dic. (Japanese)” or “Dic. (English)” ▶ Scan text Enters a word from the access reader. “Scanning Text” → p.201
Reference history	Searches a word from the list of previously retrieved words. “Using reference history” → p.411

3 Select the dictionary type

The "Reference result (list)" screen appears. If there is no word candidate, a cursor is placed on the closest word from the entered character.

■ To open the previous or next list

▶ Reference result (list) screen ▶ 



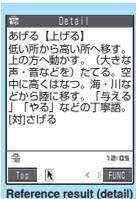
Function menu ▶ p.411

4 Select a word from the reference result list

The "Reference result (detail)" screen appears.

■ To view the previous or next word

▶ Reference result (detail) screen ▶ 



Function menu ▶ p.411

Function menu (Dictionary screen)

Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.147
------------------	-------------------------------

Using reference history

1 Dictionary screen (p.410) ▶ "Reference history"

The "Reference history" screen appears.

2 Select a word



Function menu ▶ p.411

Function menu (Reference history screen)

Delete this	Deletes the selected reference history item.
Delete all	Deletes all the reference history items.

Function menu (Reference result (list) screen)

Copy	For Japanese-English and Japanese dictionary, characters in brackets ([]) in search results are copied. For English-Japanese dictionary, words in search results are copied. The copied word can be pasted into the entry screen, etc.
Refer dic.	Searches the retrieved word in another dictionary.

Function menu (Reference result (detail) screen)

Change window ^{*1}	Switches the screen between Reference result and Edit.
Copy	Copies the text selected on the Reference result (detail) screen. The copied text can be pasted into the entry screen, etc.
Re-reference	"Searching from the Reference result (detail) screen" → p.411
Refer dic.	Searches the retrieved word in another dictionary.
Refer edit ^{*2}	Edits text referring to the searched word. "Changing the active window" → p.433

*1: Shown only when switching the window is available.

*2: Shown only when Refer edit is available.

Searching from the Reference result (detail) screen

- 1 Reference result (detail) screen (p.411) ▶  (FUNC) ▶ "Re-reference"
- 2  ▶ Press  on the first character of the string to search for
- 3  ▶ Move the cursor to the end of the string to search for, then press 
- 4 Select the dictionary type ▶ Select a word from the reference result list

Using dictionaries from other functions

Select "Refer dic." from each function menu on:

- The text edit screen
- The sent mail/received mail detail screen or message entry screen for composing a new message
- A webpage or screen memo

■ When activating a dictionary from the text edit screen

You can select “Enter word”, “Select area” or “Reference history”.

Selecting “Select area” allows you to select the word(s) you want to look up from the text edit screen.

■ When activating a dictionary from the sent mail/received mail detail screen or message entry screen for composing a new message

You can select “Enter word”, “Select area” or “Reference history”.

Selecting “Select area” allows you to select the word(s) you want to look up from the sent mail/received mail message or a mail being composed.

■ When activating a dictionary from a webpage or screen memo

You can select “Enter word”, “Site refer(enter)” or “Reference history”.

Selecting “Site refer(enter)” allows you to enter the word you want to look up referring to a webpage or screen memo.

● Guide to the dictionary reference screen



Selecting “Refer edit” or “Site refer(enter)” splits the screen into the upper and lower.

Selecting “Change window” from the function menu switches the active window between ① and ②.

Moving the Neuropointer onto a window to activate also enables you to switch the active window.

■ When you select Refer edit from the Reference result (detail) screen

① shows the dictionary detail screen.

② shows the text edit screen.

③ draws a border line.

To exit the dictionary, select “Quit dic.” from the function menu or switch to the window ① and press (End).

■ When you select Site refer(enter) from a webpage or screen memo

① shows the webpage or screen memo.

② shows the word entry screen.

③ draws a border line.

Enter a word and then press (Enter). The dictionary selection screen appears with the word entered.

<Earphone/microphone with switch>

Using an Earphone/Microphone with Switch

You can make or receive calls using the switch of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional).

- To connect a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch to a FOMA terminal, open the earphone/microphone terminal cover and insert the earphone/microphone with switch into the socket. → p.26
- The call connection tone or end call tone always sounds when the switch is pressed regardless of the “Keypad sound” setting.
- Note that connecting a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch while a ring tone sounds may accept a voice call or PushTalk call.
- Do not wrap the cord of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch around a FOMA terminal. Doing so may lower the signal strength. Furthermore, bringing the cord of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch close to a FOMA terminal during a call may generate noise.

● Using the switch to make calls

- You can make calls by pressing the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone.

1 Press the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone for 1 second or longer when a screen is standby

A FOMA terminal makes a call to the phone number set in “Auto dial setting” (p.413).

Pressing the switch for 1 second or longer with a FOMA terminal folded also makes a voice call to the phone number set in “Auto dial setting”.

■ To make calls from the phonebook list screen

▶ Phonebook list screen (p.111) ▶ Select a phonebook entry ▶ Press the switch for 1 second or longer

A FOMA terminal emits a short beep and makes a call to the first phone number listed in the phonebook entry.

You can also make calls from the “Redial/Dialed calls (list)” screen or “Received calls (list)” screen.

■ To make calls from the phonebook detail screen

▶ Phonebook detail screen (p.111) ▶ Select a phone number ▶ Press the switch for 1 second or longer

A FOMA terminal emits a short beep and makes a call to the selected phone number.

You can also make calls from the “Redial/Dialed calls (detail)” screen (p.62) or “Received calls (detail)” screen (p.64).

Pressing the switch for 1 second or longer on the phone number entry screen also allows you to make calls.

2 Press the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone for 1 second or longer when finishing talking

The FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep and ends the call.

Using the switch to accept calls

1 When a call arrives, press the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone

Pressing the switch with a FOMA terminal folded also enables you to answer calls.

■ To receive voice calls

A FOMA terminal emits a short beep and answers a voice call.

■ To receive videophone calls

A FOMA terminal emits a short beep and answers a call with the substitute image when the terminal is folded, or with the camera image when the terminal is opened. Selecting "Substitute image" from the function menu switches the camera image to the substitute image.

■ To answer PushTalk calls

A FOMA terminal emits the confirmation tone and answers a PushTalk call.

2 Press the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone for 1 second or longer when finishing talking

The FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep and ends the call.

NOTE

- ◆ You can set "Earphone" to make a FOMA terminal emit sound such as a ring tone through the earphone and speaker when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is connected.
- ◆ A ring tone does not sound if "Phone", "Videophone" or "PushTalk" under "Ring volume" is set to "Silent" or while in manner mode. However, the beeps sound when "Manner mode set" is set to "Original" in which "Phone vol." is not "Silent".
- ◆ If you subscribe to "Call Waiting", you can answer a call that comes in during another call by pressing the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone. You can also switch call mode by pressing the switch for 1 second or longer. However, pressing the switch does not end a call.
- ◆ Do not repeatedly press and release the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone. Doing so may cause a FOMA terminal to automatically answer a call.

<Auto dial setting>

Selecting a Callee for Calls Made with an Earphone Connected

Default setting
OFF

Selecting the other party to call allows you to make voice calls simply by pressing the switch for 1 second or longer when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is connected to the earphone/microphone terminal.

- You can specify a phone number stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook.
- Even when a FOMA terminal is folded, you can make voice calls by pressing the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch for 1 second or longer.

1 (MENU) ▶ "Settings" ▶ "Dialing" ▶ "Auto dial setting" ▶ "ON"

- To not dial automatically
▶ "OFF"

2 Phonebook detail screen (p.111)

▶ Show a phone number to set ▶ ●

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.112

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot set a phonebook entry containing no phone number, UIM phonebook entry or PushTalk phonebook entry.
- ◆ Deleting the phonebook entry set here disallows you to dial using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch even if you set this function to "ON".

<Automatic answer>

MENU94

Automatically Receiving Calls with an Earphone Attached

Default setting

Automatic answer: OFF
Ring time (seconds): 6 sec.

You can set a FOMA terminal to automatically accept incoming voice calls, videophone calls or PushTalk calls without having to press the switch when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the earphone/microphone terminal.

- You cannot automatically accept calls during a voice call, videophone call, PushTalk call or 64K data communication.
- You can automatically accept calls with a FOMA terminal folded.

1 (MENU) ▶ "Settings" ▶ "External connection" ▶ "Automatic answer" ▶ Select any item

ON	▶ Enter the ring time (001-120 seconds) Enables the Automatic answer function. A FOMA terminal automatically answers a call after ringing for the specified ring time.
OFF	Disables the Automatic answer function.

NOTE

- ◆ When a FOMA terminal automatically answers a videophone call, the caller sees the substitute image. Selecting “My side” from the function menu during a videophone call enables you to switch the substitute image to the camera image.
- ◆ The ring time for Automatic answer needs to be different from the one for “Record message” or “Remote monitoring”.
- ◆ To give priority to this function when “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” is set at the same time, set a ring time shorter than the one set for Voice Mail or Call Forwarding.
- ◆ If the mute time set in “Ring time(sec.)” is longer than the ring time set for Automatic answer, a FOMA terminal automatically answers calls without ringing. To have the FOMA terminal ring before automatically answering calls, set a longer ring time for Automatic answer than the mute time.
- ◆ The shorter of the ring times set in “Ring time setting” and “Automatic answer” is applied for Automatic answer performed when a PushTalk call arrives.
- ◆ Connecting an earphone/microphone with switch while a FOMA terminal is ringing does not answer a call automatically. Removing it while a terminal is ringing answers a call automatically.

<Select microphone>

Selecting a Microphone to be Activated When Using an Earphone/Microphone

Default setting	External microphone
-----------------	---------------------

You can select which microphone you want to use when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the earphone/microphone terminal on a FOMA terminal.

- 1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “External connection” ▶ “Select microphone” ▶ Select any item

Internal microphone	Enables the microphone on a FOMA terminal when an earphone/microphone with switch is connected. Be sure to select this option when connecting an earphone without a microphone.
External microphone	Enables the microphone on the earphone when an earphone/microphone with switch is connected.

NOTE

- ◆ When “Select microphone” is set to “Internal microphone”, the microphone sensitivity is set at the same level as when the hands-free operation is set to ON. You need not put the mouthpiece to your mouth when talking on a FOMA terminal with the earphone/microphone connected.

<Reset settings>

MENU23

Resetting Function Settings

This function allows you to reset function settings to default set at the time of purchase.

Do not mistake “Initialize” for “Reset settings”. Selecting “Initialize” will delete all data you have stored. → p.415

- If a FOMA terminal is connected to an external device such as a PC, “USB mode setting” is not reset to default.
- To reset the i-mode functions to default, perform “Reset” in “i-mode settings”. → p.223
- To reset the mail functions to default, perform “Reset” in “Mail settings”. → p.274
- To reset the full browser functions to default, run “Reset” in “Full Browser settings”. → p.325

- 1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Reset settings” ▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES”
- To cancel the reset ▶ “NO”

● Functions that will be reset

For more information on the functions to be reset, see “Menu Function List” (p.454). In addition to the functions listed in “Menu Function List”, the following functions will be reset:

Function	Default setting
My picture	
Image list function menu	
• Sort	Chronological
My picture function menu	
• Set image disp.	Normal
i-motion	
i-motion	
• Volume	Level 10
Movie list function menu	
• List setting	Title+image (FOMA terminal (Phone)), Name+image (microSD)
• Sort	Chronological
i-motion stopped (pause) function menu	
• Set repeat play	OFF
• Set image disp.	Normal
Melody	
Melody function menu	
• Set repeat play	OFF

Function	Default setting
Chara-den	
Chara-den list/Chara-den player/Rec. Chara-den function menu	
• Substitute image	Dimo
• Set image disp.	Fit in display
Chara-den list/Chara-den player function menu	
• Rec. Chara-den	Photo mode
Rec. Chara-den function menu	
• Select size	QCIF (176 × 144)
• Movie type set	Video + voice
• Storage setting	Normal
• Storage setting	Fine
• File size setting	Smaller than 2MB
My document	
PDF list function menu	
• Sort	Chronological
Music	
Music player	
• Volume	Level 10
Music list function menu	
• List setting	Title+image
Music player function menu	
• Equalizer set.	OFF
• Off timer	90 minutes
• SRS_WOW	OFF
• Repeat setting	OFF
• Shuffle	OFF
Camera	
Movie mode	
• Select size	QCIF (176 × 144)
• File size	Smaller than 2MB
• Quality setting	Normal
• Image quality	Photo mode: Portrait White balance: Auto Image tuning: Auto
• Shutter sound	Sound 1
• Select to save	Phone (Camera folder)
Photo mode	
• Select size	Front camera: Screen (240 × 345) Rear camera: VGA+V. (480 × 690)
• Quality setting	Fine
• Image quality	Photo mode: Auto White balance: Auto Image tuning: Auto
• Shutter sound	Sound 1
• Select to save	Phone (Camera folder)
Movie mode/Photo mode	
• Camera	Rear camera
• Auto timer	OFF (Seconds: 10 sec.)
• Auto save set	OFF
• File restriction	File unrestricted
• Display size	Actual size
• Shake correction	Auto
Setting Continuous mode → p.189	

Function	Default setting
Schedule function menu	
• Display	Monthly display
• User icon settg.	Not stored
Phonebook function menu	
• Discern connect	All OFF
• Restrictions	All OFF
• Big font, Standard font	Standard font
PushTalk phonebook function menu	
PushTalk setting	
• Auto answer setting	OFF
• Ring time setting	30 seconds
• Setting when folded	Speaker talk
• Caller ID setting	OFF
• PushTalk arrival act	Answer
• Hands-free setting	ON
My Profile function menu	
• Big font, Standard font	Standard font
Videophone in-call function menu	
• V.phone settings	Brightness: 0
• Display light	All time ON
Last one function*	
• Main menu	Data box
• Search phonebook	Search reading
Volume	Level 4
Manner mode	Release
Public mode	Release

* : "Last one function" allows the latest selected function to be pre-selected at the next same operation.

<Initialize>

Resetting FOMA Terminal Functions to Default

Performing this function deletes stored data and returns the function settings to default set at the time of purchase.

Performing "Initialize" deletes all of your important data including phonebook, mail, downloaded images and melodies, i-appli, PDF data, still images and movies shot with the built-in camera (even protected data).

- If you have deleted the pre-installed Chara-den characters or PDF data, initializing a FOMA terminal restores them.
- Performing Initialize does not delete data that have already been stored at the time of purchase.
- For more information on the default settings to restore, see "Reset settings" (p.414).

- Performing “Initialize” returns the functions and data that are listed below and that can be reset by the “Reset settings” function to default set at the time of purchase:

- | | |
|---|---|
| • Mail data | • Screen memo |
| • Mail folders | • Last URL |
| • Template | • Go to location |
| • Color palette history | • Dictionary |
| • Chat member for chat mail | • Chaku-moji Sent messages record |
| • i-mode settings | • Additional service |
| • Home | • Multi Number (Number Setting) |
| • Full Browser settings | • Phonebook |
| • Channel list | • PushTalk phonebook |
| • Software list | • Group setting |
| • i-αppli Auto start set | • Received calls |
| • i-αppli action info ¹ | • Redial/Dialed calls |
| • Call data | • Redial address |
| • Set time (date/time) | • Location history (GPS function) |
| • Kisekae Tool | • Sent address |
| • Pause dial | • Mail member |
| • Security code | • Chat group |
| • Clear learned under Character input set | • Own dictionary |
| • To Do list | • Download dictionary |
| • Schedule | • Location history (GPS function) |
| • Text memo | • Register LCS client data (GPS function) |
| • Play/Eraser msg. | • External IC card information (IC card authentic.) |
| • Play/Eraser VP msg. | • Image data saved for Face authentication |
| • Voice memo | • Voice announcement |
| • Voice announcement | • Mail settings |
| • Mail settings | • Message |
| • Message | • Access reader |
| • Access reader | • Bar code reader |
| • Bar code reader | • Bookmark |
| • Bookmark | • Data added by user ² |

*1: The launch information on an i-αppli that had been preinstalled at the time of purchase is not restored to default (except if it is upgraded or it is deleted once and then downloaded).

*2: Saved data, downloaded data, i-αppli programs, still images or movies shot with the built-in camera, etc.

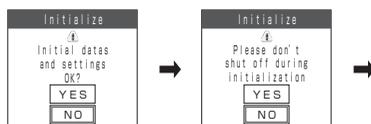
- The group names, folder names, etc. that you have edited revert to their default names.
- Secret data and data stored in Secret folder are also deleted.
- Ensure that the battery is fully charged before initializing a FOMA terminal. It may not be possible to initialize a FOMA terminal if the battery is low.
- Do not turn a FOMA terminal off while it is being initialized.
- You cannot use any other functions while a FOMA terminal is being initialized. Also, you cannot receive voice calls, videophone calls, PushTalk calls or mails.

- Performing “Initialize” restores a FOMA terminal to default.

It is recommended to back up your data stored on your FOMA terminal by taking notes or using DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.430) or a microSD memory card (p.352).

1 **“Settings” ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Initialize” ▶ Enter your security code**

2 **“YES” ▶ “YES”**



Initialization begins. Initialization may take several minutes. When initialization ends, a FOMA terminal is automatically restarted.

■ If initialization is failed

- ▶ Press “OK” after turning a FOMA terminal on. Initialization is performed again.

NOTE

- ◆ Performing initialization deletes i-αppli programs if they:
 - Had been preinstalled at the time of purchase and were upgraded
 - Had been preinstalled at the time of purchase and were deleted once and then downloaded
 - Were downloaded after purchase
 You can download the i-αppli programs that had been pre-installed at the time of purchase from the “みんなNらんど” page in the “ケータイ電話メーカー” site. A packet communication charge is applied for download. →p.209
- ◆ After the FOMA terminal functions are reset, i-channel ticker does not appear. When information is automatically updated or you receive the latest information by pressing (ch), the ticker appears automatically.
- ◆ Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli and data on the IC card are not deleted.
- ◆ You cannot initialize a FOMA terminal while another function is running.
- ◆ Data saved, stored or set on the FOMA card (UIM) or microSD memory card are not deleted.
- ◆ Data communication settings specified by connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC are not deleted.
- ◆ If there are large amounts of data to be deleted, initialization may take some time.

● Network Services

Available Network Services	418
Voice Mail Service	418
Call Waiting Service.....	419
Call Forwarding Service.....	421
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	421
Caller ID Request Service	422
Dual Network Service	422
English Guidance.....	423
Service Numbers	423
Handling Calls Received While Talking on Another Call.....	423
Setting up Remote Control	Remote Control 424
Multi Number	424
OFFICEED.....	426
Adding and Using Services	Additional service 426

This section explains the overview of the network services using the menus on the FOMA terminal. For more details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services]".

Available Network Services

Your FOMA terminal provides you with access to a range of following DoCoMo network services. The table below outlines the available services.

- When you are out of the service area or in a place where the reception is poor, you cannot use the services.
- For more details, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [Network services]”.
- For subscription and inquiries, contact the number listed in “For inquiries” on the back cover of this manual.

Service	Sub- scription	Monthly charge	Refer to
Voice Mail	Required	Pay	p.418
Call Waiting	Required	Pay	p.419
Call Forwarding	Required	Free	p.421
Nuisance Call Blocking	Required	Free	p.421
Caller ID Notification	Not required	Free	p.50
Caller ID Request	Not required	Free	p.422
Public mode (Driving mode)	Not required	Free	p.78
Public mode (power off)			p.79
Dual Network	Required	Pay	p.422
English Guidance	Not required	Free	p.423
Multi Number	Required	Pay	p.424
OFFICEED	Required	Pay	p.426
SMS (Short Message)	Not required	Free	p.278

NOTE

- ◆ This section explains the overview of the network services using the menus on the FOMA terminal.
- ◆ “OFFICEED” is a pay service to which you need to subscribe. For more details, see the DoCoMo corporate website (<http://www.docomo.biz/d/212/>) (in Japanese only).
- ◆ When DoCoMo makes a new network service available, you can add the new service to the menu (Additional service). → p.426

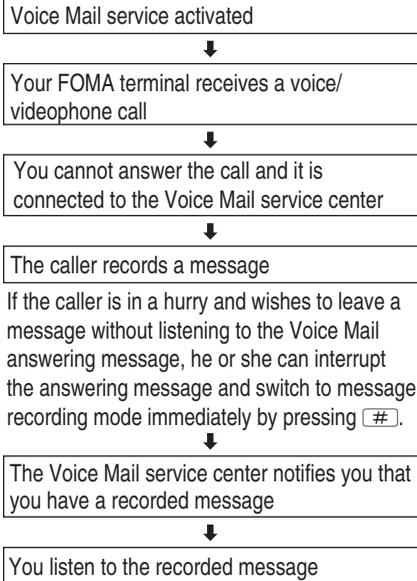
Voice Mail Service

Subscription
Required

When you are out of the service area, turning the FOMA terminal off or cannot answer the phone, the Voice Mail service announces to a caller and keeps a message for you.

- To place priority on the Voice Mail service when setting “Record message” (p.81) at the same time, set shorter the ring time of Voice Mail service than the record message.
- If the Voice Mail service does not answer the incoming voice or videophone calls when it is “activate”, the calls are logged in the “Received calls” as “Missed calls” and the “Missed calls” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

Basic flow of Voice Mail service



NOTE

- ◆ 20 messages of up to three minutes each can be recorded for each of voice call and videophone call. Messages are stored for up to 72 hours.
- ◆ If you receive a call while the Voice Mail service is activated, the ring tone specified in “Select ring tone” sounds. You can answer the call while the FOMA terminal is ringing. If you do not answer the call within the specified period of time, it is transferred to the Voice Mail service center.
- ◆ Voice mail cannot be connected via videophone by “32K” communication speed.
- ◆ When connecting to the voice mail via Chara-den, you cannot perform DTMF operation. Switch to the DTMF transmission mode using the function menu. → p.56

Using the Voice Mail service

- 1  ► “Service” ► “Voice Mail” ►
Select any item

Play messages	When you select “YES”, the FOMA terminal calls the Voice Mail service center. Then play your recorded messages by following the audio instructions.
Activate	► “YES” ► “YES” ► Enter the ring time (000-120 seconds) If you set the ring time for 0 (zero) second, received calls are not logged in the “Received calls” record.
Deactivate	Deactivates the Voice Mail service.

Set ring time	▶ Enter the ring time (000-120 seconds) Changes the ring time only.
Check setting	Displays the current service settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Function menu (Check setting screen) displayed when you select "Check setting" → p.419
Setting	When you select "YES", follows the voice instructions to change the settings. The FOMA terminal calls the Voice Mail service center. From here on, follow the voice instructions.
Check messages	Checks for voice messages. Afterwards, you receive a message that checking is completed.
Message notification	Sounds the exclusive notification tone when the Voice Mail service center receives another voice message. The volume is fixed to "Level 2".
Erase icon	Deletes the icon  (Voice Mail) on the standby screen.
Activate notice call	When you receive a call while the FOMA terminal is out of service area or is turned off, this service sends you an SMS (p.280) notifying you of the information about the call (the date and time, caller ID) once you turn the FOMA terminal back on or move back into the service area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> All calls Notifies you of all calls. Calls with Caller ID Notifies you of only calls with caller ID.
Deactivate notice call	Deactivates call notification.
Notice call status	Displays the current call notification settings.

* : The option is available only for voice call messages.

NOTE

<Play messages><Setting>

- ◆ If you press keys  to , ,  following the voice instructions, a call may not end even if  is pressed. In this case, press  again.
- ◆ To change the settings for the videophone on the voice mail, make a voice call to "1412".

<Activate>

- ◆ If the mute time set under "Ring time(sec.)" (p.174) is longer than the ring time of the Voice Mail service, the ring time does not sound and the Voice Mail service launches. To make the ring time sound before the Voice Mail service launches, set the ring time of the Voice Mail service longer than the mute time.

<Check messages>

- ◆ If you have recorded messages stored at the Voice Mail service center, the  (Voice Mail icon) and  ("Voice Mail" desktop icon) appear on the standby screen. However, if the videophone messages are stored, an SMS will notify, not the icon.
- ◆ The number in the Voice Mail icon changes according to the number of stored messages (, ,  ...  (10 messages or more)). The number of messages shown indicates the number of newly stored messages and does not include saved messages.
- ◆ The number of messages that arrive at the Voice Mail service center after you check for messages may not be included in the number shown in the Voice Mail icon.

<Erase icon>

- ◆ Clearing the icon does not delete the corresponding recorded messages. The Voice Mail icon appears again when you check for messages.

<Activate notice call>

- ◆ Call logs are notified even with "Reject all" set for SMS.
- ◆ One SMS notifies up to five call logs.
- ◆ The charge of setting and notification (SMS reception) is free.

Function menu (Check setting screen)

Activate	Activates the Voice Mail service.
Deactivate	Deactivates the Voice Mail service.
Set ring time	Changes the ring time.

Call Waiting Service Subscription Required

When you received another call while you are talking on a phone, the Call Waiting service notifies you with a ring tone during the call and enables you to answer the new call putting the current call on hold. Or you can also make another call putting the current call on hold with the service.

- To use Call Waiting, select "Answer" in "In-call arrival act" (p.423) beforehand. If other item is set, you will not be able to answer a voice call received during another voice call even with Call Waiting activated.

NOTE

- ◆ Call charge is applied to a caller while waiting.
- ◆ If the Call Waiting is activated and "In-call arrival act" is set to "Answer", you can answer another incoming call when receiving a videophone call during a voice call or when receiving a voice call or videophone call during a videophone call. However, you need to end the current voice call or videophone call (you cannot hold the current call). → p.423

Using the Call Waiting service

- 1 ► “Service” ► “Call Waiting” ►
Select any item

Activate	Activates the Call Waiting service.
Deactivate	Deactivates the Call Waiting service.
Check setting	Displays the current service settings.

NOTE

<Activate>

◆ If you receive a voice call while another voice call is on hold, the hold is released and you return to the first call. If you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps), pressing or automatically puts the first call on hold and connects to the second caller.

Putting the current voice call on hold to answer a newly received voice call

- 1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call, press or



Your initial call is automatically put on hold and the FOMA terminal answers the new voice call.

- 2 Switch back to the first call

■ To end the call with the second caller

► ► or

This ends the call with the second caller and returns you to the first call.

■ To put the second call on hold

►

This puts the second call on hold and returns you to the first call.

You can switch between the 2 calls by pressing .

You can also switch the calls by selecting “Change held call” from the function menu.

■ To end a voice call on hold

► (FUNC) ► “End held call”

NOTE

◆ If you receive another voice call while the “Multi calling” is shown, a message appears notifying that you can answer the new call by ending either the voice call you are on or held voice call. To end the held voice call and answer an incoming call, press , select “End held call” from the function menu and then press or . To end the voice call you are on and answer an incoming call, press then , after that press or .

Ending the current voice call to answer a newly received voice call

- 1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call, press

The first call ends and the ring tone sounds.

- 2 or

The FOMA terminal answers the new voice call.

Putting the current voice call on hold to make a new voice call to someone else

You can put your current voice call on hold and make a new voice call to someone else.

- 1 Dial another phone number during a call ►



The initial call is automatically put on hold and the FOMA terminal switches to the new call.

You can also make a call by searching the phonebook.

Searching the phonebook → p.111

- 2 Switch back to the first call

■ To end the new call

► ► or

This ends the new call and returns you to the first call.

■ To put the new call on hold

►

This puts the new call on hold and returns you to the first call.

You can switch between the 2 calls by pressing .

You can also switch the calls by selecting “Change held call” from the function menu.

■ To end a voice call on hold

► (FUNC) ► “End held call”

NOTE

◆ If you receive another voice call while the “Multi calling” is shown, a message appears notifying that you can answer the new call by ending either the voice call you are on or held voice call. To end the held voice call and answer an incoming call, press , select “End held call” from the function menu and then press or . To end the voice call you are on and answer an incoming call, press then , after that press or .

Call Forwarding Service Subscription Required

The Call Forwarding service forwards the voice or videophone call when you are in a place where the reception is poor, turning the FOMA terminal off or does not answer the phone in the setting ring time.

- To place priority on the Call Forwarding service when setting "Record message" (p.81) at the same time, set shorter the ring time of Call Forwarding service than the record message.
- If the Call Forwarding service does not answer the incoming voice or videophone calls when it is "activate", the calls are logged in the "Received calls" as "Missed calls" and the "Missed calls" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

Basic flow of Call Forwarding service

Call Forwarding number registered



Call Forwarding service activated

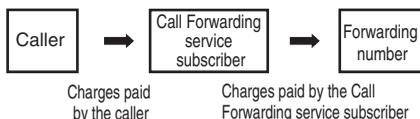


Your FOMA terminal receives a voice or videophone call



If you do not answer the voice or videophone call, it is automatically forwarded to the specified number

Call Forwarding service call charges



NOTE

- ◆ You can answer the ringing phone even if the Call Forwarding service is activated.

Using the Call Forwarding service

- 1 (MENU) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Call Forwarding" ▶ Select any item

Activate	Register a forwarding number and set the ring time, and then select "Activate".
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Register fwd number 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Enter a forwarding number Use to enter the number from the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.112 Once you set the number, a star "★" appears next to "Register fwd number".

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Set ring time 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Enter the ring time (000-120 seconds) Once you set the number, a star "★" appears next to "Set ring time". If you set the ring time for 0 (zero) second, received calls are not logged in the "Received calls" record.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Activate 	Activates the Call Forwarding service.
Deactivate	Deactivates the Call Forwarding service.
Change forwarding No	Changes the forwarding number only. Enter the new forwarding number, select "Change forwarding No" if the Call Forwarding service is already activated, or select "Change No.+Activate" if the service is deactivated.
Fwd number busy*	When the forwarding number is busy, a received voice call can be transferred to the Voice Mail service center.
Check setting	Displays the current service settings.

* : It is required to subscribe to the "Voice Mail service".

NOTE

- ◆ If you have already set a forwarding number, you can omit the steps for "Register fwd number" and "Set ring time".
- ◆ To give priority to the Call Forwarding service over "Remote monitoring", set the ring time of the Call Forwarding service shorter than that of "Remote monitoring".
- ◆ If the mute time set under "Ring time(sec.)" is longer than the ring time of the Call Forwarding service, the ring time does not sound and the Call Forwarding service launches. To make the ring time sound before the Call Forwarding service launches, set the ring time of the Call Forwarding service longer than the mute time.

Setting or canceling the Call Forwarding guidance message

- 1 On the standby screen ▶



Follow the voice instructions.

For more details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services]".

Nuisance Call Blocking Service Subscription Required

The Nuisance Call Blocking service rejects an incoming "nuisance call". Once you have registered a phone number, the calls from the number are automatically rejected and a message is sent to the caller.

- Even if you receive a call of the number registered, the ring tone does not ring and the call is not recorded in the "Received calls".

NOTE

- ◆ When you receive a PushTalk call from a caller registered in the Nuisance Call Blocking service, the call rejection message is not sent to the caller, and the call is disconnected.

Using the Nuisance Call Blocking service

- 1 (MENU) ▶ “Service” ▶ “Nuisance Call Blk” ▶ Select any item

Register Caller	▶ “YES” ▶ “OK” Adds the last caller to your list of barred callers.
Register number	▶ Enter or quote a phone number ▶ “YES” ▶ “OK” Directly enters the number or quote it from the phonebook, Redial or Received calls record. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enter a part of the number then use (🔍), and you can enter the number by searching the phonebook. Use (📞) to enter the number from the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.112 Press (📞) to search the Received calls record, (📞) to search the Redial calls record to enter the number.
Delete last entry	▶ “YES” ▶ “OK” Deletes the barred number that was registered last time.
Delete all entries	▶ “YES” ▶ “OK” Deletes all the barred numbers in the list.
The number of entries	Checks the number of barred callers.

NOTE

<Register number>

- You cannot register a rejected phone number searched from the Received calls or Redial record of PushTalk.

Caller ID Request Service Subscription Not required

When you receive a voice or videophone call from a caller who does not show his or her phone number (caller ID), the Caller ID Request service sends a message which requests the caller to show the phone number and then automatically ends the call.

- Calls rejected by the Caller ID Request service are not logged in the “Received calls” record and no “Missed calls” desktop icon appears.

Using the Caller ID Request service

- 1 (MENU) ▶ “Service” ▶ Caller ID Request” ▶ Select any item

Activate	▶ “YES” ▶ “OK” Activates the Caller ID Request service.
-----------------	--

Deactivate	▶ “YES” ▶ “OK” Deactivates the Caller ID Request service.
Check setting	Displays the current service settings.

NOTE

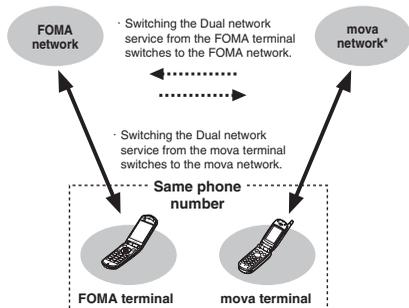
- If a PushTalk call without the caller ID arrives, the call ends without sending the message.

Dual Network Service Subscription Required

A mova terminal is available with the phone number of your FOMA terminal. You can choose which terminal you will use depending on the area you are in.

- You cannot use FOMA and mova terminals at the same time.
- Use a deactivated terminal to switch the Dual Network service mode.

Overview of the Dual Network service



* Some services are not available.

NOTE

- For accessing from a mova terminal and other details, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [Network services]”.

Using the Dual Network service

- 1 (MENU) ▶ “Service” ▶ “Dual Network” ▶ Select any item

Dual Network switching	▶ “YES” ▶ Enter your network security code Switches from mova terminal to FOMA terminal.
Check setting	Checks whether the FOMA terminal can access the services.

NOTE

- If you use the Dual Network service in a mova terminal after using a FOMA terminal overseas and returning to Japan, turn on the FOMA terminal before use.

<Dual Network switching>

- End communication in the terminal that can access the services before switching networks.

English Guidance

Subscription
Not required

This function enables you to set English as the language for audio messages given when settings for a network service (e.g. Voice Mail) are performed or your FOMA terminal is out of the service area.

Item	Setting	Guidance language
Outgoing call (including guidance messages for network service settings)	Japanese	Japanese
	English	English
Incoming call (guidance messages played for callers)	Japanese	Japanese
	Japanese+ English	Plays in Japanese first and then in English.
	English+ Japanese	Plays in English first and then in Japanese.

NOTE

◆ For the guidance message given during a call for the guidance message given during a call between DoCoMo mobile phones, the caller's setting for outgoing calls takes priority over the receiver's setting for incoming calls.

Using the English Guidance

1 ► “Service” ► “English Guidance” ► Select any item

Guidance setting	Sets the guidance language.
• Outgoing+ Incoming	Sets the language used for outgoing and incoming calls.
• Outgoing call	Sets the language of guidance used for outgoing calls.
• Incoming call	Sets the language of guidance used for incoming calls.
Check setting	Check the current guidance settings.

Service Numbers

This function enables you to call the DoCoMo general inquiries or technical inquiries.

• The options below may not appear or different options may appear depending on the FOMA card you are using.

1 ► “Service” ► “Service Numbers” ► Select any item

ドコモ故障問合せ	Calls the DoCoMo technical inquiries.
ドコモ総合案内・受付	Calls the DoCoMo general inquiries.

NOTE

◆ If inquiries are not displayed, it is recommended that you store the contact numbers described on the back cover of this manual in the phonebook.

Handling Calls Received While Talking on Another Call

You can specify how you handle a voice, videophone or 64K data communication call that arrives during another call if you have subscribed to “Voice Mail”, “Call Forwarding” or “Call Waiting” service.

- If you have not subscribed to “Voice Mail”, “Call Forwarding” or “Call Waiting” service, you cannot answer a call that arrives during another call.
- To use “Incoming Call Mng”, set “Set in-call arrival” to “Activate”.

Specifying how to handle incoming calls while on another call <Incoming Call Mng>

Default setting
Answer

1 ► “Service” ► “Incoming Call Mng” ► Select any item

Voice Mail	Transfers a voice call and a videophone call received while on another call to the Voice Mail service center regardless of the “Call Waiting” and “Voice Mail” service settings.
Call Forwarding	Transfers a voice or videophone call received while on another call to the forwarding number regardless of the “Call Waiting” and “Call Forwarding” service settings.
Call Rejection	Rejects a voice call, videophone call and 64K data communication call received while on another call.
Answer	If you activate “Call Waiting” and receive a voice call while on another voice call, the “Call Waiting” is available. If you are on a voice call with Call Waiting deactivated, or on a videophone call or 64K data communication call, you can handle an incoming call in one of the following ways: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ending the voice, videophone or 64K data communication call in progress and answering the new voice, videophone or 64K data communication call • Manually handling a voice, videophone or 64K data communication call received while on another call using the function menu → p.424 • If “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is activated, calls are handled according to those service settings.

Activating/Deactivating “Incoming Call Mng” <Set in-call arrival>

- 1  ▶ “Service” ▶ “Set in-call arrival”
▶ Select any item

Activate	Activates the “Incoming Call Mng” setting.
Deactivate	Deactivates the “Incoming Call Mng” setting.
Check setting	Shows the current setting.

Ending a call or 64K data communication in progress to answer a new call

- When a call in progress and incoming call are the same type

<Example: To end a voice call in progress to answer a new voice call>

- 1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call, press 

This ends the call in progress and the FOMA terminal starts ringing.

- For videophone or 64K data communication call
An incoming call screen displays.
▶ 

- 2  or 

This accepts the incoming voice call.

- For 64K data communication call
▶ Take the call on a PC

- When a call in progress and incoming call are different types

If you receive a videophone or 64K data communication call while on a voice call, if you receive a voice or 64K data communication call while on a videophone call, or if you receive a voice or videophone call during 64K data communication, use the procedure below to end the call or 64K data communication in progress so that you can answer the incoming call.

<Example: To end a videophone call in progress to answer an incoming voice call>

- 1 You hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call and the incoming voice call screen appears

When you receive a 64K data communication call, you do not hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps).

- 2  or 

Manually rejecting calls or transferring calls to Call Forwarding or Voice Mail service

<Example: When “Set in-call arrival” is set to “Active” and “Incoming Call Mng” is set to “Answer”>

- 1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call, press 

- When you receive a call other than voice call while on a voice call
▶  (FUNC)

- 2 Select how to handle the received call

- To reject an incoming call
▶ “Call Rejection”
- To forward an incoming call to the forwarding number
▶ “Call Forwarding”
- To transfer an incoming call to the Voice Mail service center
▶ “Voice Mail”

With any of the above procedures, you can return to your initial call.

<Remote Control>

Setting up Remote Control

This function enables you to use “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service, etc. from a touch-tone general subscriber phone, pay phone or DoCoMo mobile phone.

- To use “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service overseas, set Remote Control beforehand.

- 1  ▶ “Service” ▶ “Remote Control”
▶ Select any item

Activate	Activates the remote control.
Deactivate	Deactivates the remote control.
Check setting	Displays the current remote control settings.

NOTE

- ◆ For how to operate a network service from a payphone, etc., see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [Network services]”.

Multi Number

Subscription Required

Besides Basic Number, you can add up to two numbers (Additional Number 1 and 2) as your FOMA terminal phone number.

- If you remove or replace a FOMA card, the Multi Number settings (e.g. name, phone number) stored in the FOMA terminal may be erased. If this happens, register them again.

- The name corresponding to Multi Number (Basic Number, Additional Number 1 or 2) appears on the dialing or receiving screen.
- When you dial using the Redial/Dialed calls or Received calls record, the Multi Number logged in the record appears on the screen and will be used for dialing.

NOTE

- ◆ Additional numbers are notified at the time of application for Multi Number.
- ◆ For details on Multi Number, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [Network services]”.
- ◆ Selecting a number in Set Multi Number enables you to use the specified phone number for all calls you will make.
- ◆ You can also switch phone number each time making a call. → p.425
- ◆ You can receive voice calls, videophone calls or 64K data communication calls that are made to Additional Number 1 or 2. You can also set a ring tone for each number. → p.425
- ◆ Selecting “Multi Number” from the function menu to make a call will display the item selected when making a call (“Basic Number” or register name of Additional Number1 or Additional Number2) on the Redial (detail) screen or Dialed calls record (detail) screen even if you have not subscribed to “Multi Number”.
If you make a call without using the function menu, only the dialing phone number is displayed in the Redial/Dialed calls.
- ◆ When you search a phone number from the Redial/Dialed calls record to make a call, the call is made from the number (Basic Number, Additional Number 1 or 2) displayed in the record. If only the dialing phone number is displayed in the record, the call is made from the number set in “Set Multi Number” (p.425).
- ◆ When you make a call using Received calls record, the call is made from the number logged in the record regardless of the “Set Multi Number” (p.425) setting.
- ◆ When a call is received by Additional Number 1 or 2, the registered name of the number is displayed on the receiving screen or on the received calls detail screen.
- ◆ In Public mode (Driving mode), if an incoming call is dialed to Additional Number 1 or 2, the operation performed is the same as that of Basic Number. → p.78

Using the Multi Number

- 1 “Service” ▶ “Multi Number” ▶
Select any item

Set Multi Number	Sets a phone number to be used for making a call normally.
• Basic Number	Sets your contracted number (Basic Number) to be used for making a call.
• Additional Number1*	Sets the additional number to be used for making a call.
• Additional Number2*	
Check setting	Checks the “Set Multi Number” setting.

Number Setting	▶ Highlight an item to register (or change) an additional number and press (Edit) ▶ Enter a name ▶ Enter an additional number Registers the additional number you were notified when you applied for Multi Number to the FOMA terminal. A name can contain up to 8 double-byte or 16 single-byte characters. An additional number can contain up to 26 digits. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Multi Number setting function menu displayed when you select “Number Setting” → p.425
Select ring tone	Sets the ring tones for Additional Number 1 and 2. “Changing Ring Tones” → p.124

* : The respective registered names are displayed if they are set.

NOTE

<Number Setting>

- ◆ The name is displayed when you specify the Multi Number settings and select a phone number used for a call.

<Select ring tone>

- ◆ When the ring tone settings are duplicated, the priority applies. → p.126

Function menu (Multi Number setting screen)

Edit	Sets an additional number.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted additional number.
Delete all	Deletes all the registered additional numbers.

Switching phone number each time making a call

When making a call, you can select a phone number to be used for the call.

- 1 **Phone number entry screen**
(p.53) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Multi Number”
▶ Select any item

Basic Number	Sets your contracted number (Basic Number) to be used for making a call.
Additional Number1*	Sets the additional number to be used for making a call.
Additional Number2*	
Cancel number	Cancels the setting to restore the “Set Multi Number” setting.

* : The respective registered names are displayed if they are set.

NOTE

- ◆ You can also switch phone number using the procedures above from the function menu of Phonebook detail, Redial/Dialed/Received calls details screen.

- ◆When the detail screen of Redial, Dialed calls and Received calls shows the Multi Number registered name ("Basic Number" or registered name of Additional Number1 or Additional Number2) and you would like to make a call using the different number from the displayed Multi Number registered name, select any item to be called from "Multi Number" on the function menu.

OFFICEED Subscription Required

"OFFICEED" is a flat-rate group service provided by the specified IMCS (indoor mobile communication system). You need to separately subscribe to the services. For more details, see the DoCoMo corporate website (<http://www.docomo.biz/d/212/>) (in Japanese only).

<Additional service> Adding and Using Services

When DoCoMo offers new and additional network services, this function allows you to add the services to a menu.

Adding additional service and response message

- 1  "Service" ► "Additional service" ► Select any item

Additional service	<p>► Highlight "<Not stored>" and press  (FUNC) ► "Add new service" ►</p> <p>Enter a service name Adds a new service. A service name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Additional service function menu displayed when you select "Additional service" → p.426
• Enter number	<p>► Enter a number ► "YES"</p> <p>Uses the special number to connect. The number can contain up to 20 digits.</p>
• Enter USSD number	<p>► Enter a number ► "YES"</p> <p>Uses the service code to connect. The number can contain up to 40 digits.</p>

Additional guidance	<p>► Highlight "<Not stored>" and press  (FUNC) ► "Add new guidance" ► Enter a command ► Enter a response message ► "YES"</p> <p>Stores response messages for commands posted from the network when using "service code (USSD)" to access an added service. A command can contain up to 20 digits. A message can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Additional guidance function menu displayed when you select "Additional guidance" → p.426
---------------------	---

NOTE

- ◆When a new network service is provided, you will be notified of the "special number" or "service code" that you need in order to use the new service. You should register the "special number" or "service code" on your FOMA terminal along with the service name.
- ◆You can add up to 10 new network services.
- ◆Enter a "service code" in the "Enter USSD number" field on the screen for adding new services.

<Additional service>

- ◆To add a service, enter the "special number" or "service code" provided by DoCoMo. The "special number" is the number used to connect to the service center. The "service code (USSD)" is the code to notify the service center.

Function menu (Additional service screen/Additional guidance screen)

Add new service, Add new guidance	Adds a setting.
Edit	Changes the setting.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted service or message.
Delete all	Deletes all services or messages.

Using the newly added service

- 1  "Service" ► "Additional service" ► "Additional service"
- 2 Select a service ► 

● Data Communication

Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal.....	428
Before Using	429
Checking the Procedure	429
AT Commands	430
CD-ROM	430
DoCoMo Keitai Datalink.....	430

For details on data communication, see “Manual for Data Communication” (PDF) on the bundled CD-ROM.

To view the “Manual for Data Communication” (PDF), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. If the software is not installed on your PC, you can install it from the CD-ROM. See the Adobe Reader Help for details.

Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal

Packet communication and 64K data communication

Data communication that can be used between the FOMA terminal and a PC is classified in 2 categories: packet communication and 64K data communication.

- Packet communication

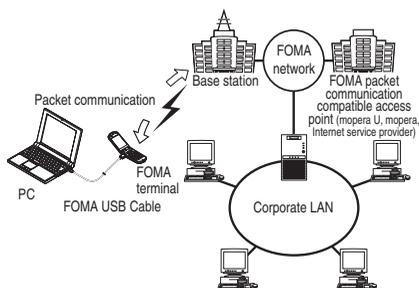
Data is received at 384kbps max and sent at 64kbps max. Packet communication is charged according to the amount of data sent and received, regardless of the time it takes or the distance. The communication charge can become very expensive when large files are sent and received. It is possible to access a corporate LAN connected to a FOMA network and exchange data.

- 64K data communication

Data can be sent and received at the stable speed of 64kbps. You are charged for how long the line is maintained regardless of the amount of data.

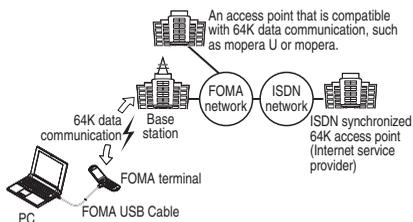
■ For packet communication

Packet communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) connected to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA. Use an access point that supports FOMA packet communication such as DoCoMo Internet connection service, “mopera U” or “mopera”.



■ For 64K data communication

64K data communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) connected to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA. Use an access point that supports FOMA 64K data communication such as DoCoMo Internet connection service, “mopera U” or “mopera”.



Notice before using

Internet service provider fees

In addition to FOMA service charges, you may need to pay user fees to an Internet service provider to use the Internet. These fees must be paid directly to the service provider in addition to service fees of FOMA service. Contact your Internet service provider for details.

DoCoMo Internet service “mopera U” or “mopera” is available. “mopera U” is a pay service to which you need to subscribe. “mopera” is a free service to which you do not need to subscribe.

Setting an access point (e.g. Internet service provider)

Packet communication and 64K data communication use different access points. If you are using packet communication, use an applicable access point for it; if 64K data communication, use an access point for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronous 64K.

- You cannot use DoPa access points.
- You cannot use access points for PHS 64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS.

User authorization when accessing network

Some access points may require your user authorization (ID and password) when connecting. In that case, use communication software (Dial-up network) to enter your ID and password. ID and password will be provided by your Internet service provider or the network administrator. Contact the provider or administrator for details.

Access authorization when using the browser

When using FirstPass compliant websites on your browser, you need FirstPass (user certification) for access authorization. In this case, install the FirstPass PC software on the bundled CD-ROM and make the settings. For more information, refer to the “FirstPassManual” (PDF) contained in the “FirstPassPCSoft” folder on the CD-ROM. (The “FirstPassManual” is available only in Japanese.) To view the “FirstPassManual” (PDF), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. If the software is not installed on your PC, you can install it from the CD-ROM. See the Adobe Reader Help for details.

● Data communication glossary

Administrator privilege

If you do not have this privilege on Windows 2000 or Windows XP, access is limited and you are unable to install/uninstall drivers or applications.

APN (Access Point Name)

A string to identify the Internet service provider, a corporate LAN, etc. on packet communication. For example, the mopera U APN is "mopera.net".

cid (Context Identifier)

A registration number used to register a packet communication APN to the FOMA terminal. It is similar to a memory number in a phonebook. Up to 10 numbers from 1 to 10 can be registered.

DNS (Domain Name System)

Service that translates a domain name such as "nttdocomo.co.jp" into an IP address (a complicated string of numbers), so that a computer can easily manage it.

OBEX (Object Exchange)

An international standard protocol of data communication developed by IrDA. Use OBEX-enabled devices or applications to transfer data between various devices such as mobile phones, PCs, digital cameras and printers.

QoS (Quality of Service)

Service quality about network communication speed. Set the QoS settings on the FOMA terminal to connect at any speed or only at the highest speed.

W-TCP

TCP parameter used to make the most of the TCP/IP transmission capability during packet communication on the FOMA network. This setting is required to make the most of the FOMA terminal's communication capability.

Before Using

Operating environment

The following table shows the operating environment to use data communication:

PC	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• PC/AT compatible model with CD-ROM drive• USB port (compliant to Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1)• Display resolution of 800 dots wide x 600 dots high, High Color (65,536 colors) recommended
Operating System ^{*1}	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Windows 2000, Windows XP (Japanese edition)
Memory	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Windows 2000: 64M bytes or higher^{*2}• Windows XP: 128M bytes or higher^{*2}
Hard disk space	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• 5M bytes or higher^{*2}

*1: The performance of the upgraded operating system is not included in the warranty.

*2: The required memory size and hard disk space may vary depending on the system configuration.

NOTE

- ◆ To transmit data with the FOMA terminal connected to the DoCoMo PDA "musea" or "sigmarion II", update "musea" or "sigmarion II". For information on how to update it and other details, visit the DoCoMo website.
- ◆ The FOMA terminal is not compatible with Remote Wakeup.
- ◆ The FOMA terminal is not compatible with FAX communication.

Required devices

In addition to the FOMA terminal and a PC, the following hardware and software are required:

- FOMA USB Cable (optional)
- "FOMA N903i CD-ROM"

NOTE

- ◆ Purchase the dedicated "FOMA USB Cable". A USB cable for a PC is not available because the shape of the connector is different.

Checking the Procedure

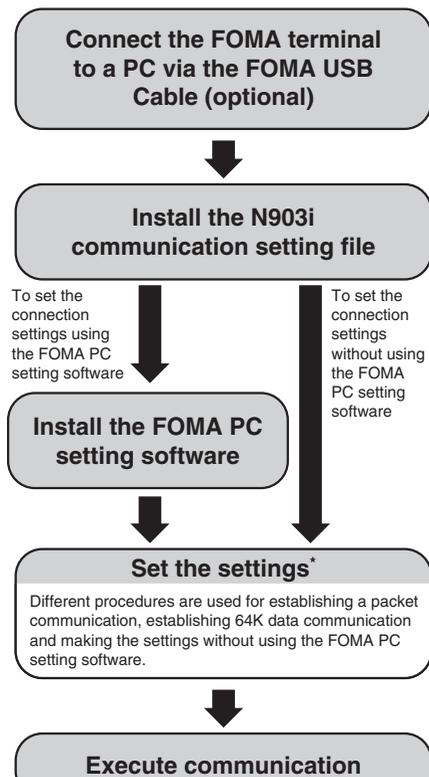
In data communication, the connection is made through a dial-up connection with Internet service providers or LANs that support FOMA data communication.

■ Bundled "FOMA N903i CD-ROM"

- The CD-ROM contains the N903i communication setting file (driver), FOMA PC setting software and FirstPass PC software.
- The N903i communication setting file is the software (driver) required to perform packet communication, 64K data communication and data transfer (OBEX) by connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC via the FOMA USB Cable (optional). Installing the N903i communication setting file embeds each driver into Windows. Use the FOMA PC setting software to easily set up packet communication and 64K data communication, and establish a dial-up connection.

Flow chart for completing the data communication setup

This section describes the preparation to use packet communication and 64K data communication.



* : To use the Internet with the FOMA terminal and a PC connected, "mopera U" (subscription required) is useful, which supports broadband connection, etc. Consider the plan in which you are only charged for a month when you use the service. "mopera" (no subscription required) allows you to access the Internet immediately.

AT Commands

AT commands are used to control the modem, etc. This FOMA terminal is compatible with AT commands. In addition, this FOMA terminal supports some extended commands and its own AT commands.

To use AT commands to set up the FOMA terminal's functions on a PC, see "Manual for Data Communication" (PDF) on the bundled CD-ROM.

CD-ROM

The bundled CD-ROM contains applications to perform data communication with the FOMA terminal, "Manual for Data Communication" and "Kuten Code List" (PDF). For details, see the bundled CD-ROM.

Contained applications/PDF documents

The bundled CD-ROM contains the following applications/PDF documents.

- N903i通信設定ファイル (N903i communication setting file)
- FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setting software)
- FirstPass PCソフト (FirstPass PC software)
- SD-Jukebox
- Adobe® Reader® 7.0
- "Manual for Data Communication" (PDF)
- "Kuten Code List" (PDF)
- DoCoMo keitai datalink (Guide)
- moperaU (Guide)

DoCoMo Keitai Datalink

"DoCoMo keitai datalink" is software that allows you to back up your "phonebook" entries, "mail" messages, etc. and edit the data on your PC. For more details and the download, visit the following DoCoMo website. You can also access the website from the bundled CD-ROM:

<http://datalink.nttdocomo.co.jp>

The above software and website are only available in Japanese.

For details such as how to download/install/operate the software, transferable data, operating environment and restrictions, see the website above. For how to operate the software after it is installed, see the help. To use "DoCoMo keitai datalink", you need to purchase the "FOMA USB Cable (optional)".

Operating System

- Windows 2000 Professional (SP4) Japanese edition
- Windows XP Home Edition (SP1/SP2) Japanese edition
- Windows XP Professional (SP1/SP2) Japanese edition

● Entering Text

Entering Text.....		432
Entering Kana.....	Mode 1 (5-touch)	433
Editing and Storing Common Phrases.....	Common phrases	439
Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text.....		440
Using Kuten Codes.....	Kuten code	440
Storing Frequently Used Words.....	Own dictionary	441
Resetting the Learning Record.....	Clear learned	441
Using Downloaded Dictionaries.....	Download dictionary	442
Entering Text in 2-touch Mode.....	Mode 2 (2-touch)	442
Entering Text in T9 Input Mode.....	Mode 3 (T9 input)	442

For “Kuten Code List”, see the PDF “Kuten Code List” in the bundled CD-ROM.
To view the “Kuten Code List”, Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. If this software is not installed on your PC, install it from the CD-ROM. For details on the usage, etc., see the Adobe Reader help.

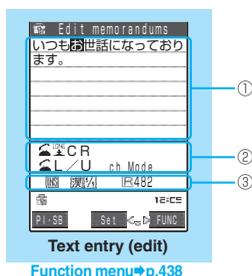
Entering Text

“Kana mode”, “2-touch mode” and “T9 input mode” are the three methods of entering text. This section mainly explains how to enter text in “Kana mode”.

- For text entry settings, entry mode characteristics and entry methods, see the following:
 - “Selecting the text entry method” → p.433
 - “Entering Kana” → p.433
 - “Entering Text in 2-touch Mode” → p.442
 - “Entering Text in T9 Input Mode” → p.442

Text entry (edit) screen

The text entry (edit) screen consists of the following areas: text entry, operation guidance and information display. The text entry area shows text being entered, the cursor and the end mark. The operation guidance area shows operations that can be currently performed, such as conversion, search and highlight. The information display area shows information such as text entry mode, input mode and remaining character count.



① Text entry area

Icon	Description
■	Cursor (Text entry position)
◀	End mark (Text's end position)

② Operation guidance area

Icon	Description
▲▼ CHG	Can be converted using → p.434
▲▼ All	can be used for phonebook search → p.112
▲▼ Search	
⊗ Fix mode	can be used to start/end the Fix mode → p.444
⊗ Fix END	
◀▶▲▼ Area	Appears to specify a range to be copied (cut) → p.440
LONC CR	can be pressed for 1 second or longer to start a new line → p.436

Icon	Description
L/U	can be used to switch between upper case and lower case → p.436
AA → aa	can be used to release the CapsLock mode → p.443
aa → Aa	can be used to set the Shift mode → p.443
Aa → AA	can be used to set the CapsLock mode → p.443
Back	is available to return to the previous reading when you press more times than appropriate in Kana input mode (Example: え → う)
ch Mode	Character modes () can be changed by pressing → p.435

③ Information display area

Icon	Description
	Character input mode (2-touch/T9 input) (An icon does not appear in Kana input mode) → p.442
	Fix mode → p.444
	Insert/Overwrite mode → p.436
	Character mode
	Kuten code mode → p.440
	Single-byte/Double-byte mode → p.435, 442
	Lower case mode → p.436
	“Shift mode”/“CapsLock mode” → p.443
	Remaining number of characters that can be entered (Single-byte: 1, Double-byte: 2)
	Number of characters that have been entered when you are adding entries to the UIM phonebook or composing an SMS

NOTE

- When you compose an i-mode message, pressing the keypads displays the Text entry (edit) screen and allows you to use functions such as kuten code input and word prediction.
- In addition to the keys, Access reader and Bar code reader are available to enter text.

Displaying guidance MENU35 Default setting ON

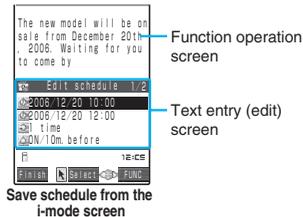
Use this procedure to specify whether to display guidance (p.432) on the text entry (edit) screen.

- “Settings”** ▶ **“Other settings”** ▶ **“Character input set”** ▶ **“Guidance”** ▶ **“ON”**

- **To hide the guidance**
 - ▶ **“OFF”**

Changing the active window

Some screens, such as saving schedule entries, are split into 2 windows showing the function operation screen and the text entry (edit) screen.



- The function operation screen and text entry (edit) screen are shown at the same time in the following situations:
 - Saving schedule entries from the i-mode screen
 - Entering a word to search by activating dictionaries from the i-mode screen
 - Chat screen for chat mail
 - Editing text while viewing dictionary search results

Changing the active window

When the operating window of each function and the text entry (edit) window are displayed at the same time, you can change between the windows. Use either of the following 2 methods to switch between the windows:

Using the function menu

Select “Change window” from the function menu to change the active window.

Using the Neuropointer

Slide your finger over the Neuropointer key to display the pointer and then use it to select the active window.

NOTE

- ◆ When you switch to the other screen, the entered text and cursor location on the current screen remain unchanged.
- ◆ You cannot switch screens when entering readings. However, if you press **[X]** in alphabetic input mode to enter “http://”, etc., you can switch screens. Characters being entered are automatically fixed.
- ◆ If you change from the text edit screen to the i-mode screen, only scrolling can be performed.
- ◆ You cannot switch screens in the Chat screen for chat mail.

Selecting the text entry method MENU35

Default setting Input mode: Mode 1(5-touch)

There are three methods to enter text:

- Mode 1 (5-touch) → p.433
Several characters are assigned to a key, and a character being entered changes each time you press the key.
- Mode 2 (2-touch) → p.442
Characters are entered using a combination of two number keys.

- Mode 3 (T9 input) → p.442

Candidates assigned to a key appear each time you press the key, and you can select any of the candidates.

- 1 **[MENU]** ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Character input set” ▶ “Input mode” ▶ Select any item

Changing the text entry method while entering text

When the text entry (edit) screen appears, your preferred text entry method is selected. There are 2 ways to change to another method.

- Switching the text entry method is only a temporary change. Once you end the text entry then display the text entry (edit) screen, your preferred text entry method is reselected.
- The text entry method may not be switched for some specific text entry such as postal code.

Using the function menu

“CHG input method” under the text entry (edit) function menu → p.438

Pressing **[PI · SB]** for 1 second or longer

The text entry method changes in “Mode 1 (5-touch)” → “Mode 2 (2-touch)” → “Mode 3 (T9 input)” order each time you press and hold **[PI · SB]** for 1 second or longer.

Selecting the font size MENU35

Default setting CHG input size: Standard

- Select “Small”, “Standard”, “Large 1” or “Large 2” for the font size used on the text entry (edit) screen.

- 1 **[MENU]** ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Character input set” ▶ “CHG input size” ▶ Select any item

<Mode 1 (5-touch)>

Entering Kana

- Selecting the text entry method → p.433
- Key Assignment (5-touch input) → p.465

<Example: To enter “携帯二郎”>

- 1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.432) ▶

Enter hiragana

[2] 4 times, **[1]** 2 times, **[4]** 1 time, **[1]** 2 times
け た い
[3] 2 times, **[#]** 1 time, **[9]** 5 times, **[1]** 3 times
し (dakuten) り

■ If you press the wrong key

▶ Press [CLR] to delete the character ▶ Press the key again

■ If you press more times than appropriate

▶ [↩] (↔)

Returns to the previous character assigned to the same key.

■ To continuously enter a character assigned to the same key

▶ Press [↻] or the key again for 1 second or longer

The cursor moves and the following character can be entered now.

■ To confirm the hiragana

▶ [○]

■ To display the conversion candidates for English and kana in Mode 1 (5-touch)

▶ [ABC123]

The conversion candidates are displayed for alphanumeric characters or katakana. The numeric conversion candidates are also displayed depending on how many times you press the key; e.g. pressing the same key continuously converts “き” to “22”.



2 Use [CHG] or press [○]

(CHG) to convert to kanji

The kanji candidate for the first phrase is highlighted, and the kanji candidates for the remaining phrases are underlined ().

■ If the kanji candidate is the desired kanji

▶ [○]

The kanji are confirmed and the next phrase is highlighted.

■ To change the conversion range

▶ Use [↻] to change the conversion range
The kanji candidate changes as the conversion range changes. If there are no kanji to be converted for the selected range, the hiragana are displayed.



3 Use [○] to display the conversion candidates

A list of conversion candidates for the highlighted phrase appears. Hiragana and katakana are included in the conversion candidates.

■ If all the characters in the conversion range belong to “あ” column

Numbers are also included in the conversion candidates.



4 Select the kanji you want to enter

NOTE

- ◆ You can convert up to 20 hiragana characters to kanji, up to 6 phrases at once.
- ◆ If the text is not converted to the desired kanji, changing the reading to the “on” or “kun” reading may make the desired kanji appear.
- ◆ When 2 or more kanji characters cannot be converted at the same time, convert one character at a time.
- ◆ If a character still cannot be converted, use Kuten codes. → p.440
- ◆ Some complicated kanji characters may be partly modified or abbreviated.
- ◆ If the number of converted characters exceeds the limit, a message appears asking whether to confirm the number of characters that does not exceed the limit.

Character count and scrolling

■ The numbers of characters remaining and entered

Characters shown on the text entry (edit) screen are counted according to the rules listed below. On the text entry (edit) screen, the end mark “◀” appears as an approximate guide indicating that you can enter characters up to the location in the current function.

● A single-byte character is counted as 1 byte and a double-byte character is counted as 2 bytes.

● A double-byte character is equal to two single-byte characters.

Double-byte: A B C D E

5 characters (counted as 10 bytes)

Single-byte: A B C D E F G H I J

10 characters (counted as 10 bytes)

■ Character combinations

Take care with character combinations when entering text.

<Example> Entered “ト コモ” in single-byte kana input mode and “の携帯電話” in Kanji/Hiragana input mode

ト コモ の 携 帯 電 話 (9 characters when shown on the screen)

1 1 1 1 2 2 2 2 2 (count as 14 bytes, equivalent to 14 single-byte characters)

● Single-byte dakuten “” and han-dakuten “” are each counted as 1 character.

■ Scrolling

On the conversion candidate list screen, use [○] to scroll by line, or [MEMO/CHECK] or [↩] (↔) to scroll by page.

On the conversion candidate list screen, use [○] to scroll by line, or [MEMO/CHECK] or [↩] (↔) to scroll by page.

Data protection during text entry and edit

When you are entering text on the text entry (edit) screen and the battery runs out or you receive a voice call, the entered text is saved and not cleared from the screen.

If the battery runs out

If the low-voltage alarm sounds during text entry, the text entry (edit) screen changes to the "Recharge battery" message screen. When this happens, the entered text is automatically confirmed and saved, so that you can continue entering text when you turn the FOMA terminal back on and retrieve the function. However, in some functions the entered data is not saved. Also, text that is unconfirmed or being converted is not saved.

Re-editing phonebook entries → p.109

If you press

If you press  during text entry, a message appears asking whether to finish text entry. However, this message does not appear if no text is entered.



<To exit without saving text>

Select "YES". The previous screen or standby screen reappears without saving the entered text.

Pressing  is also available to exit the entry screen without saving the entered text.

<To continue entering text>

Select "NO". The text entry (edit) screen reappears with the entered text still displayed.  is also available to redisplay the text entry (edit) screen.

When you receive a voice call

If you receive a voice call during text entry, you can answer the call leaving the text. When the call ends, the text entry (edit) screen reappears. If you press  (MULTI) during a voice call to display the task switch screen, you can redisplay the text entry (edit) screen and continue talking. → p.394

Using word prediction

MENU35 Default setting ON

The FOMA terminal's word prediction function works by automatically storing character strings that you enter so that the stored character string is included in your list of candidates as well as common phrases the next time you enter the same character string.

- Candidates for word prediction is stored at the time of purchase.

1 "Settings" ▶ "Other settings" ▶ "Character input set" ▶ "Prediction"

▶ "ON"

■ To deactivate the word prediction

▶ "OFF"

Using word prediction to enter text

1 Enter the reading

The predicted candidates are listed in the guidance area. In Mode 3 (T9 input), entering a character displays the candidates in gray, which can be selected.



2

The cursor appears in the guidance area, and you can choose from the predicted candidates.



■ To return to reading entry

▶ 

■ If no predicted candidates appear or if you do not want to enter any of the candidates

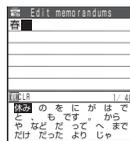
▶ Enter the reading unchanged

■ To delete predicted candidates

▶  (for 1 second or longer) ▶ "YES"

3 Select a predicted candidate

Once you confirm the text, candidates to follow the text will appear.



4 Select a candidate

■ If no candidates appear or if you do not want to enter any of the candidates

Enter the next section of text unchanged

Other entry functions

Changing the input mode

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.432) ▶

In kana or T9 input mode, the input mode changes in "Alphabetic (single-byte)" → "Numeric (single-byte)" → "Kanji/Hiragana (double-byte)" → "Kana (single-byte)" order each time you press  (Selecting "Full pitch" from the function menu allows you to use double-byte when changing the input mode).

Switching between double-byte and single-byte

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.432) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Full pitch"/"Half pitch"

In the information display area, "" appears for double-byte and "" for single-byte.

You cannot switch between double-byte and single-byte in "Kanji/Hiragana input mode".

● Switching between upper case and lower case

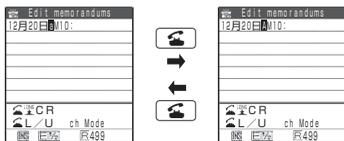
Use either of the following 2 methods to switch between upper case and lower case.

■ Pressing to change the case of a character

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.432)▶

Press  with the cursor placed on a character you want to change

The character switches between upper case and lower case each time you press the key. This method can only be used when “ L / U” is displayed in the operation guidance.



■ Using the function menu before entering

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.432)▶

 (FUNC)▶“Lower case”/“Upper case”

When you change to “Lower case”, “ Sm” appears in the information display area. No icon appears when “Upper case” is selected.

● Switching between Insert mode and Overwrite mode

When you enter text in “Insert” mode, the new text is inserted into the existing text. In “Overwrite” mode, the new text replaces the existing entered text.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.432)▶ (FUNC)▶“Overwrite”/“Insert”

In “Insert” mode, “ INS” appears, and “ OVR” in “Overwrite” mode.

When the text entry (edit) screen first appears, Insert mode is always set.

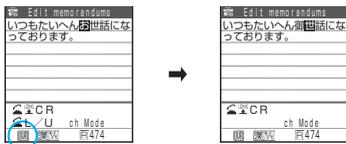
● Inserting text

In “Insert” mode, use  to move the cursor to the right character next to the location where you want to enter text. When you enter text, it is inserted to the cursor position.



● Overwriting text

In “Overwrite” mode, use  to move the cursor to the character you want to overwrite. When you enter a character, it replaces the character in the cursor position.



● Inserting a space (blank)

● Move the cursor to the right character next to the location where you want to enter a space (blank). A double-byte space is entered in double-byte input mode and a single-byte space in single-byte input mode. A space is counted as a character.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.432)▶

 (FUNC)▶“Space”

● Inserting a line feed

You can begin a new line by entering a line feed symbol “”. There are the following methods to insert a line feed “”.

■ Pressing at the end of a sentence

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.432)▶

Press  with the cursor placed at the end of a sentence

The line feed symbol “” is entered and the cursor moves down to a new line.

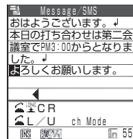
■ Pressing for 1 second or longer

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.432)▶

Press  (for 1 second or longer) with the cursor placed on the position where you want to break a line

This method can only be used when “ CR” is displayed in the operation guidance area.

The line feed symbol “” is entered and the cursor moves down to a new line.



■ Using the function menu

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.432)▶

 (FUNC)▶“Line feed”

The line feed symbol “” is entered and the cursor moves down to a new line.

NOTE

- ◆ The line feed symbol “↵” can be deleted or overwritten like a character.
- ◆ The line feed symbol “↵” is counted as 1 double-byte character. However, the counting method is different for the SMS message entry. →p.278
- ◆ You may not be able to insert a line feed “↵” in an i-mode text box.

● Inserting symbols

Use this procedure to enter symbols such as brackets, Greek characters and units. You cannot enter double-byte symbols on the e-mail address entry screen, i-mode mail address entry screen or URL entry screen.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.432) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Symbols” ▶ Select a symbol to enter

“Symbols and Special Characters” →p.468

NOTE

- ◆ Single-byte symbols are displayed when you can only enter single-byte characters.

● Entering face symbols

You can select face symbols to enter from the list.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.432) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Face Mark”

The “face mark list” screen appears. The meaning appears under the face mark.



2 Select a face symbol to enter “Smiley Face Symbols” →p.470

NOTE

- ◆ If you select a download face symbol dictionary in “Download dictionary”, the face symbols stored in the download dictionary are also displayed.
- ◆ The selected face symbol is displayed first next time the face symbol list is displayed.

● Entering pictographs

You can enter pictographs such as a face, weather or animal on the text entry (edit) screens such as i-mode mail messages, text memos and common phrases.

- Pictograph 1, Pictograph 2 and Decorate PI (Pictograph D) can respectively store up to 15 (12 for Decorate PI (Pictograph D)) previously entered pictographs. The stored pictographs are displayed on the first line of each screen. Pictographs entered using (PI·SB) are also stored.
- You can use Decorate PI (Pictograph D) data stored in the Decorate PI folder under My picture only on the i-mode mail message entry screen.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.432) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Pictograph” ▶ Select a pictograph

“Pictographs” →p.469

The list changes in “Pictograph 1” → “Pictograph 2” → “Pictograph D” → “Full pitch 1” → “Full pitch 2” → “Half pitch” order each time you press (M).

* : Only i-mode mail message entry screen

■ To set PI·SB input mode

▶ (PI·SB)

● Entering symbols and pictographs continuously

Display symbol and pictograph candidates so that symbols and pictographs can be entered until the candidates display is cleared.

- Entering symbols →p.468
- Pictographs →p.469

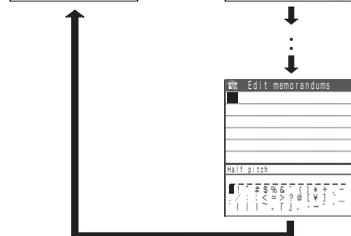
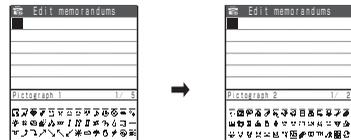
1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.432) ▶ (PI·SB)

The Pictograph 1 candidates appear in the guidance area. The “current page/total pages” figures are displayed in the top-right corner of the guidance area.

2 Press (M) (PI·SB) to change the candidate screen

The list changes in “Pictograph 1” → “Pictograph 2” → “Pictograph D” → “Full pitch 1” → “Full pitch 2” → “Half pitch” order each time you press (M).

* : Only i-mode mail message entry screen



■ To set the full screen mode

▶ (Full)

3 Select a symbol or pictograph

The selected symbol or pictograph is entered. You can then continue on directly to enter other symbols or pictographs. Symbols and pictographs are displayed on the first line of the symbols and pictographs list.



4 Press **CLR** to finish entering

Continuous pictograph/symbol entry is finished.

Using character conversion to enter symbols, face symbols and pictographs

In “Kanji/Hiragana input mode”, you can enter symbols, face symbols and pictographs by entering and converting the corresponding readings.

Entering symbols

Entering and converting “きこう” in “Kanji/Hiragana input mode” displays symbol candidates. You can also enter a symbol by entering and converting a symbol name such as “かっこ” or “さんかく”.

“Symbols in Japanese conversion” → p.468

Entering face symbols

Entering and converting “かお” or “かおもじ” in “Kanji/Hiragana input mode” displays face symbol candidates. You can also enter a face symbol by entering and converting a face symbol name such as “ありがとう” or “さよなら”.

“Smiley Face Symbols” → p.470

Entering pictographs

Entering and converting a meaning of a pictograph such as “はーと” or “おんぶ” in “Kanji/Hiragana input mode” displays pictograph candidates.

“Pictographs” → p.469

Function menu (Text entry (edit) screen)

Face Mark	“Entering face symbols” → p.437
Lower case, Upper case	“Switching between upper case and lower case” → p.436
Half pitch, Full pitch	“Switching between double-byte and single-byte” → p.435, 442
Copy	“Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text”
Cut	→ p.440
Paste	
Common phrases	“Entering common phrases” → p.439
Space	“Inserting a space (blank)” → p.436
Line feed	“Inserting a line feed” → p.436
Symbols	“Inserting symbols” → p.437
Pictograph	“Entering pictographs” → p.437
Kuten code	“Kuten code” → p.440
Overwrite, Insert	“Switching between Insert mode and Overwrite mode” → p.436

Quote data	
• Quote phonebook	“Entering text by quoting from phonebook or My Profile” → p.439
• Quote My Profile	
• Access reader	“Scanning Text” → p.201
• Bar code reader	“Scanning codes” → p.199
Refer dic.	“Using Dictionaries” → p.410
Prediction OFF, Prediction ON	Specifies whether to turn on/off the word prediction function (displays previously entered words with similar spelling).
CHG input method	Changes the text entry mode to “Mode 1 (5-touch)”, “Mode 2 (2-touch)” or “Mode 3 (T9 input)”.
T9 Kana CHG mode, T9 Kanji CHG mode	When you enter characters using the T9 input method, you can specify whether to convert entered characters to Kanji or to Kana. Switching the text entry method is only a temporary change. Once text entry exits and the text entry (edit) screen reappears, it returns to the setting specified in “T9 change mode” under “Character input set”.
Jump	Moves the cursor quickly to the beginning or end of a sentence.
Undo	Restores the status of an entered character to previous.
Change window	“Changing the active window” → p.433

Deleting text

Use  to move the cursor to a character to delete, and press **CLR** shortly (for less than 1 second). The character in the cursor position is deleted.



When there is no character in the cursor position

The character left to the cursor is deleted.

If you press **CLR** for 1 second or longer

The character in the cursor position and all the characters right to the cursor are deleted.

If there is no character right to the cursor and you press **CLR** for 1 second or longer

All the text is deleted.

Entering common phrases

- 1 **Text entry (edit) screen (p.432)** ▶
 (FUNC) ▶ “Common phrases” ▶
Select a folder
 “Common Phrases” → p.470

- 2 **Select a common phrase** ▶ 

NOTE

- ◆ Common phrases can be used on the following text entry (edit) screens:
 - Text memo
 - Common phrases
 - Common phrases folder name
 - Schedule
 - To Do list
 - Wake-up message
 - Edit in i-mode text box
 - i-mode mail subject
 - i-mode mail message
 - i-mode mail header
 - i-mode mail signature
 - i-mode mail quotation mark
 - Auto-sort subject
 - Search mail subject
 - Text edit with i-appli box
 - Dictionary
- ◆ Fixed common phrases are displayed differently depending on the input mode, as shown below. Original common phrases and fixed common phrases that have been edited are displayed as stored regardless of the input mode.
 - Mode 1 (5-touch) and Mode 3 (T9 input):
 Displayed as kanji/hiragana in Kanji/Hiragana input mode.
 Displayed as single-byte katakana in other input modes.
 - Mode 2 (2-touch):
 Displayed as kanji/hiragana in double-byte input mode.
 Displayed as single-byte katakana in single-byte input mode. (In English mode, the fixed common phrases are the same regardless of the input mode.)

Entering text by quoting from phonebook or My Profile

On the text entry (edit) screen such as e-mail message or “Text memo”, you can use quote the name, reading, phone number, e-mail address, street address, location, birthday or memo from the “Phonebook” or “My Profile”. You can activate camera to scan and quote text or code.

- Data cannot be quoted into some text entry (edit) screens.

- 1 **Text entry (edit) screen (p.432)** ▶
 (FUNC) ▶ “Quote data” ▶ **Select any item**

Quote phonebook	▶ Select “Search group”, “Search column” or “Search all” ▶ Search for a phonebook entry to quote from ▶ Select an item to quote ▶  (Finish)
Quote My Profile	▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select an item to quote ▶  (Finish)
Access reader	“Scanning Text” → p.201
Bar code reader	“Scanning codes” → p.199

NOTE

- ◆ When you quote a street address, the postal code “〒” symbol and “-” are not quoted.
- <Quote My Profile>
 - ◆ When you quote a street address, a space may be entered between the items.
 - ◆ Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for problems arising from wrongly entered owner information.

<Common phrases>

MENU38

Editing and Storing Common Phrases

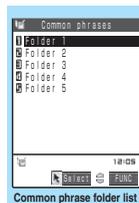
This function allows you to store common phrases in advance so that they can be retrieved during text entry. Common phrases stored at the time of purchase can be edited (changed).

- Common phrases are categorized into 5 folders. Folders 1 and 2 each contain 10 preset fixed common phrases. You can modify preset common phrases. Folders 3 to 5 can each contain up to 10 original common phrases. You can also rename the folders to suit the uses of the common phrases they contain.
- Common Phrases → p.470

Composing a new common phrase

- 1  ▶ “Own data” ▶
Common phrases

The “Common phrases folder list” screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.440

- 2 **Select a folder**
 The “common phrase list” screen appears.

- 3 **Highlight “<Not stored>” and press**
 (Edit) ▶ **Enter a common phrase**



Function menu ▶ p.440

NOTE

- ◆ Common phrases can contain up to 64 double-byte or 128 single-byte characters.
- ◆ When you create an original common phrase to be used for mail subjects, messages, headers, signatures or quotation marks, do not use “single-byte katakana” or “pictographs” as these may not be displayed correctly (pictographs can be used for i-mode mail).

- ◆ Fixed common phrases are retrieved as kanji/ hiragana when the text entry method is “Kanji/ Hiragana input mode” in Mode 1 (5-touch) or Mode 3 (T9 input) or “double-byte character input” in Mode 2 (2-touch), and as “single-byte katakana” when another text entry method is used. (In English mode, the fixed common phrases are the same regardless of the input mode.)

Function menu (Common phrases folder list screen)

Edit folder name	▶ Edit a folder name Renames a highlighted folder. The folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Reset name	Restores a folder name to default.
Touch to send all	“Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time” → p.369
Send all Ir data	

NOTE

- ◆ If there are no characters entered in the folder name to be changed, it returns to the default folder name.

Function menu (Common phrase list screen)

Edit	▶ Edit a common phrase Edits a highlighted common phrase.
Touch to send data	“Transferring One Data at a Time” → p.368
Send Ir data	
Delete this	Deletes a highlighted common phrase.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all common phrases.

NOTE

- ◆ If you delete a fixed common phrase that has been edited, it is restored to default. Unedited fixed common phrases cannot be deleted.

Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text

- Only one item of copied or cut data can be retained. Copying or cutting a new item overwrites the previously retained text.

Copying (or cutting) text

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.432) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Copy” or “Cut”

You can also copy text using the PDF data function menu (p.375).

2 Highlight the beginning of the text to be copied or cut ▶ (FUNC)

3 Move the cursor to the end of the text to be copied or cut ▶ (FUNC)



The selected range of the text is stored. You can store up to 5,000 double-byte characters or 10,000 single-byte characters.

■ If the text was cut

The selected range of the text is deleted although it is stored in the FOMA terminal.

■ If you select the blank spaces including no characters

Two single-byte spaces are inserted in double-byte input mode and one single-byte space is inserted in single-byte input mode.

Pasting text

Once you have cut or copied text, you can paste that text as many times as you like until you cut or copy other text or turn the FOMA terminal off.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.432) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Paste”

■ If the text to be pasted includes a character that cannot be entered on the text entry (edit) screen

A message appears notifying you that the character will be replaced with a space when the text is pasted.

<Kuten code>

Using Kuten Codes

This function allows you to enter kanji, hiragana, katakana, symbols and alphanumeric characters using 4-digit kuten codes.

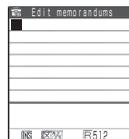
- Actual characters or symbols on the screen may look different from the ones in the Kuten Code list.
- For “Kuten Code List”, see the PDF “Kuten Code List” in the bundled CD-ROM.

<Example: To enter “慶” (kuten code 2336)>

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.432) ▶



The input mode changes to “Kuten code” mode and “*” appears in the information display area.

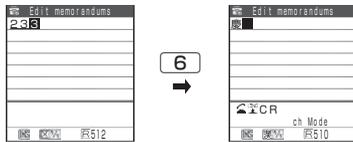


■ When the text entry mode is “Mode 3 (T9 input)”

▶ Text entry (edit) screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Kuten code”

2 Enter kuten code 2 3 3 6

The character (“慶” in this example) corresponding to the entered code appears, and the input mode is restored to default.



■ **If no character corresponds to the entered kuten code**

A space is entered.

NOTE

- ◆ Even if the text entry mode is “Mode 1 (5-touch)” or “Mode 2 (2-touch)”, you can set the kuten code mode by selecting “Kuten code” from the function menu.

<Own dictionary>

MENU82

Storing Frequently Used Words

Default setting
Not stored

Save a frequently used word with your preferred reading to your own dictionary. You can recall the word by entering and converting the reading on the text entry (edit) screen.

- Up to 100 words can be stored in the Own dictionary.
- A word can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters. A reading can contain up to 10 double-byte hiragana characters.

Adding a new word

1 MENU ▶ “Own data” ▶ “Own dictionary”

The “Own dictionary” screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.441

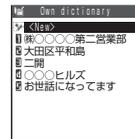
2 “<New>” ▶ Enter a word ▶ Enter the reading

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot enter a line feed or common phrase as a word or its reading.
- ◆ Symbols (、。・！?) other than dakuten or handakuten cannot be stored in a reading.
- ◆ A space entered in a reading is automatically deleted.

Checking words

1 MENU ▶ “Own data” ▶ “Own dictionary”



2 Select a word to check

■ **To edit a word**

▶ Select a word to edit ▶ Ⓜ (Edit)

Function menu (Own dictionary screen)

Edit	Edits a stored word.
Touch to send data	“Transferring One Data at a Time” → p.368
Send Ir data	
Touch to send all	“Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time” → p.369
Send all Ir data	
Delete	
• Delete this	Deletes a highlighted word.
• Delete selected	▶ Use Ⓜ to select a checkbox (□) Ⓜ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple words.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all words.

<Clear learned>

MENU35

Resetting the Learning Record

The learned strings that were entered and automatically stored as conversion candidates are cleared and restored to default.

1 MENU ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Character input set” ▶ “Clear learned” ▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select any item

T9/Expect words/ Pic.	Clears the learning records stored for “Mode 3 (T9 input)”, “Prediction”, “pictographs” and “symbols”.
Kana/Kanji change/face	Clears the learning records stored for kana-kanji conversion and the sorting order of the face mark screen.

Using Downloaded Dictionaries

Default setting
Not stored

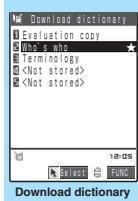
This function allows you to download dictionaries from i-mode sites, etc. and set them for use in conversion.

- You can store and activate up to 5 downloaded dictionaries.
- Downloading dictionaries → p.221

1 (MENU) ▶ “Own data” ▶

“DL dictionary”

The “Download dictionary” screen appears.



Function menu → p.442

2 Select a dictionary to set

“★” appears next to the selected dictionary.

■ To deselect the selected dictionary

- ▶ Select the dictionary with “★”
- The dictionary is deselected and “★” disappears.

NOTE

- ◆ If pictographs are registered in a downloaded dictionary, the pictographs can be entered by converting kana-kanji.
- ◆ If you set a downloaded dictionary for face marks, up to 600 face marks (including the preinstalled 100 face marks) can be displayed on the face mark screen when you select “Face Mark” from the function menu during text entry.
- ◆ If you add two downloaded dictionaries for face marks and activate both, the face marks stored in the first-activated downloaded dictionary will be listed.

Function menu (Download dictionary screen)

Edit title	▶ Edit a title Edits the title of a highlighted download dictionary. A title can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Set dictionary	Selects or deselects a downloaded dictionary. A dictionary is set when it is downloaded.
Dictionary info	Displays information on a highlighted download dictionary.
Delete this	Deletes a highlighted download dictionary.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all download dictionaries.

NOTE

- ◆ If you attempt to rename a dictionary and confirm the name without entering any characters, it is restored to default.

Entering Text in 2-touch Mode

- Selecting the text entry method → p.433
- Key Assignment (2-touch input) → p.466

● Switching the input mode (double-byte/single-byte)

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.432) ▶ (ch)

“Single-byte” and “Double-byte” are switched each time (ch) is pressed (“Half pitch” and “Full pitch” are also available from the function menu). In the information display area, “” appears for double-byte and “” for single-byte.

● Entering text

<Example: To enter “携帯二郎”>

1 (ch) ▶ “Double-byte” ▶ Enter characters to be converted



In Mode 2 (2-touch), entering a single digit and then confirming the entry deletes the character. Always enter 2 digits.

2 Edit the entered characters

The characters are to be edited in the same method as in kana mode. → p.433

Entering Text in T9 Input Mode

This mode allows easy text entry with few key operations.

For example, to enter a reading “あした”, you need to press once, twice and once in Mode 1 (5-touch). In Mode 3 (T9 input), you only need to press corresponding to the keys of columns to which the characters belong.

Column characters are assigned to one key. Every time you press a key, a list of candidates appears from which you select and enter desired readings.

Mode 3 (T9 input) also features 2 helper functions: “Yomi edit” and “Fix mode”.

“Yomi edit” allows you to edit reading candidates that have been entered. “Fix mode” allows you to enter a reading directly. Linking Mode 3 (T9 input) to the Prediction function (p.435) allows faster and easier text entry.

- Selecting the text entry method → p.433
- Key Assignment (T9 input) → p.467

● Changing the input mode

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.432) ▶ (Ch)

The input mode changes in “Alphabetic (single-byte)” → “Numeric (single-byte)” → “Kanji/Hiragana (double-byte)” → “Kana (single-byte)” order each time you press (Ch) (Selecting “Full pitch” from the function menu allows you to use double-byte when changing the input mode).

Mode 3 (T9 input) works in “Kanji/Hiragana (double-byte)”, “Kana (double-byte)”, “Kana (single-byte)”, “Alphabetic (double-byte)” and “Alphabetic (single-byte)”.

- In “Numeric (double-byte)” and “Numeric (single-byte)”, Mode 1 (kana) is automatically selected.
- Immediately after “Alphabetic (double-byte)” or “Alphabetic (single-byte)” is set, CapsLock mode is activated. The mode changes in “CapsLock” → “Mode released” → “Shift” each time you press (Shift).
- Entered characters are always upper case in “CapsLock mode”. In “Shift mode”, only the first character is entered in upper case, and subsequent characters will be in lower case. Entered characters are always lower case when neither mode is selected.
- After a character is confirmed in “Shift mode”, the mode is released.

● Entering text

<Example: To enter “春” in T9 Kanji change mode>

1 (Ch) ▶ “Kanji/Hiragana input mode” ▶ Enter characters to be converted



[6] (は column), [9] (ら column)

Candidates, which are predicted from a combination of “column” and “column”, appear.

■ If you press the wrong key

▶ Press (CLR) to delete the character ▶ Press the key again

■ If there are no recognized candidates for the entered characters

▶ Characters that cannot be recognized are displayed in gray ▶ Use (C) to change the range for candidates

■ To change the conversion candidate display mode (Kanji/Kana/Alphabetic)

▶ (Mode)

2 (C) ▶ Use (C) to select a conversion candidate

The selected conversion candidate appears in the text entry area.



■ To return to entering characters to be converted

▶ (CLR)

- To convert directly to characters other than the displayed conversion candidates ▶ (CHG) ▶ Use (C) to select a candidate

● Editing conversion candidates

<Example: To enter “らわらわた” and convert it to “爛々と”>

1 Enter characters to be converted



[9] (ら column), [0] (わ column),

[9] (ら column), [0] (わ column),

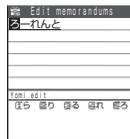
[4] (た column)

The conversion candidates predicted from “らわらわた” are displayed. In this case, “らんらんと” does not appear.

2 (Yomi) or (X)

Yomi edit mode is set, and the cursor moves to the first character. The “column” characters are listed in the conversion candidate display area.

3 Press a corresponding keypad to the number for the character to enter



In this case, press [1] (ら).

After you change the character, the cursor moves to the next character. Repeat the step to edit the conversion candidate.

■ If you do not want to edit a conversion candidate

▶ Use (C) to move the cursor to the next character to be edited

■ To quit editing in mid-operation

▶ (Return)

The already edited text appears as a conversion candidate.

4 Use (C) to select “爛々と”

“らわらわた” will appear as the first conversion candidate when “爛々と” is entered from the next time.

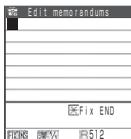


● Using fix mode to enter conversion candidates

<Example: To enter a reading “はためく”>

1 (Fix mode)

The Fix mode is set, and  in the information display area changes to .



2 Press the key for the column that includes the character to enter

In this case, press . The “は” column” characters are listed in the conversion candidate display area.

3 Press a corresponding keypad to the number for the character to enter

In this case, press  (は). Repeat steps 2-3 to enter the rest of the reading.



4 (Fix END)

When you press  (Fix END), the conversion candidates appear and you can convert them to kanji, hiragana, etc. by using  then pressing  (CHG).



Setting T9 change mode MENU35

Specify whether to convert entered characters to kanji or to kana when you enter text using the T9 input method.

1 “Settings” ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Character input set” ▶ “T9 change mode” ▶ Select any item

T9 Kanji change mode (default)	Converts entered characters to kanji.
T9 Kana change mode	Converts entered characters to kana.

● Traveling with N903i

Overview of International Roaming (WORLD WING)	446
Available Services.....	446
Before Using Overseas.....	447
Making a Call Abroad	449
Receiving a Call Abroad	450
Setting the Search Mode of the Operator.....	NW search mode 450
Displaying the Roaming Operator's Name	Operator name display 451
Commencing Roaming Guidance.....	Roam. Guidance 451
Setting to Bar Incoming Calls During Roaming	Bar incoming when roam 451
Network Services During Roaming.....	Service(Int.) 452

Overview of International Roaming (WORLD WING)

International roaming (WORLD WING) is a service provided by DoCoMo to FOMA users that allows you to make/receive calls or use i-mode through the network of roaming service operator in your travel destinations.

- You can use your usual mobile phone number and mail address overseas as you do in Japan. You can make/receive voice/videophone calls, use i-mode and SMS. Moreover, Voice Mail, Call Forwarding and other convenient network services are available.
- If you started to use FOMA services on or after September 1, 2005, you do not need to apply for "WORLD WING". However, if you did not wish to use it at the time of subscription to FOMA services, you need to make an application at your nearest DoCoMo Shop etc.
- If you started to use FOMA services on or before August 31, 2005 and have not applied for "WORLD WING" yet, you need to apply for the services separately.
- This service cannot be used with some billing plans.
- In order to use the international roaming service, it is required to insert a WORLD WING-compatible FOMA card (except blue) into this FOMA terminal.
- This FOMA terminal can be used only in the overseas DoCoMo roaming areas^{*1}. For the service area and charges, see the DoCoMo "International Services website".
- DoCoMo's roaming area is a 3rd generation mobile network that is compliant with the 3GPP^{*2} global standard.

*1 : This terminal cannot be used in the GSM/GPRS service area.

*2 : 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project) is an organization that produces globally applicable technical specifications for a 3rd generation mobile system (IMT-2000).

Country codes of major countries

Enter the following numbers to make international calls (p.58) or for "Int'l dial assistance" (p.60) (as of October, 2006):

Area	Country Code	Area	Country Code
United States of America	1	Germany	49
United Kingdom	44	Turkey	90
Italy	39	Japan	81
India	91	New Caledonia	687
Indonesia	62	New Zealand	64
Egypt	20	Norway	47
Australia	61	Hungary	36
Austria	43	Fiji	679
Holland	31	Philippines	63
Canada	1	Finland	358
Korea	82	France	33
Greece	30	Brazil	55
Singapore	65	Vietnam	84
Switzerland	41	Peru	51

Area	Country Code	Area	Country Code
Sweden	46	Belgium	32
Spain	34	Hong Kong	852
Thailand	66	Macao	853
Taiwan	886	Malaysia	60
Tahiti (French Polynesia)	689	Maldives	960
Czech	420	Russia	7
China	86		

* For other country codes and the details, see the DoCoMo "International Services website".

Available Services

Communication services and functions available on this FOMA terminal vary depending on where it is used (in Japan or overseas) or which roaming operator is used overseas.

- For details on communications services available during international roaming, see the international service guides such as "Mobile Phone User's Guide [WORLD SERVICE]".

Communications services overseas

The following communications services are available overseas:^{*1}

- Voice call
- Videophone call^{*2}
- i-mode mail
- i-mode (including full browser)
- SMS (Short Message Service)
- i-channel^{*1*3*4}

*1: The service may not be usable depending on the operator or area.

*2: International videophone calls are available with users of specific roaming operators or FOMA terminals in Japan.

*3: The automatic update will be automatically paused when a roaming operator is connected. To resume the i-channel automatic update, it is required to reset the i-channel setting. The monthly charge does not include packet communications charges.

*4: When you automatically update information on "Basic Channel", packet communication charges for international roaming services will apply separately.

NOTE

◆ During international roaming, you cannot receive MessageF, send/receive Chaku-moji, make/receive PushTalk calls, run "Update" and "Set auto-update" of the scanning function, update software, or use packet communication or 64K data communication via a PC. However, you can delete data or cancel running an application that may cause failure.

◆ Depending on the network condition of the country, talk (or communications) and standby times may drop to as low as half the normal times.

Skillful use of battery → p.43

◆ The GPS function is not available overseas.

■ Sending and receiving SMS

- This service allows you to exchange text messages with subscribers to roaming operators other than DoCoMo. See the DoCoMo “International Services website” for countries and roaming operators available.
- To send an SMS to a user of a roaming operator, follow the steps described in the table below. Moreover, if a character contained in the message is not supported by the mobile phone of the recipient, the character may not be properly displayed. See international service guides such as “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [WORLD SERVICE]” for details.

Recipient	To specify the recipient
DoCoMo (FOMA terminal)	As in Japan, simply enter the phone number of the recipient.
Another roaming operator*	Enter “+”, “Country code” and the mobile phone number of the recipient. You can also send an SMS by entering in order of “010” - “Country code” - “Mobile phone number of the recipient” (To reply to an SMS received from overseas, enter “010” to send overseas).

When the other party’s mobile phone number begins with “0”, omit the “0” when dialing.

■ Network services settings

- When using network services overseas, even if Activate/Deactivate, etc. are available, the services may be restricted or unavailable. See the international service guides such as “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [Network services]” or “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [WORLD SERVICE]” for details.

Service	Description
Chaku-moji	Can be set but the service is not available.
Voice Mail → p.418	May be unavailable depending upon the service area.
Call Waiting → p.419	
Call Forwarding → p.421	
Nuisance Call Blocking → p.421	
Caller ID Notification → p.50	May be unavailable depending upon the service area. The caller ID may not be properly displayed.
Caller ID Request → p.422	May be unavailable depending upon the service area.
Public mode (Driving mode)	Can be set but the service is not available. Release the setting overseas.
Dual Network	Cannot be set.
English Guidance → p.423	May be unavailable depending upon the service area.

Service	Description
Multi Number → p.424	May be unavailable depending upon the service area. The additional number cannot be used to dial. A call with an additional number can be received although you may not be able to check to which number the call was made.
Roam. Guidance → p.451	May be unavailable depending upon the service area.
Bar incoming when roam → p.451	
Voice Mail (Int.) → p.452	Can be set and the service is available.
Call Forwarding (Int.) → p.452	
Caller ID req. (Int.) → p.452	
Roam. Guidance (Int.) → p.452	
Remote access (Int.) → p.452	

* With the FOMA network, settings can be made for all the above services.

Before Using Overseas

- When using overseas, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [Network services]” and “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [WORLD SERVICE]”.
- Usage charges for the services are included in your monthly bill of FOMA services. Communication charges may be included in subsequent monthly bills due to conditions of your travel destination’s roaming operator.
- When using overseas, call charges in “Call data” (p.407) include both incoming and outgoing calls. However, the displayed call charges may be different from the actual charges.
- By default, when the FOMA terminal is turned on overseas, the network will be automatically searched and set as a local roaming operator. When the user moves outside the service area of the operator, another available operator will be automatically searched and reset. An operator to be connected can be manually set. → p.450

● Inquiries overseas

For inquiries overseas such as lost, stolen, charge accumulation or malfunction, dial “Universal Number International ID Code” or “International Access Code” before a contact number described in “Lost, Stolen, Charge Accumulation, etc. Overseas” or “Malfunction Overseas” on the back cover of this manual.

■ Universal Number International ID Code (Table 1)

Dial the Universal Number International ID Code and corresponding number to make various inquiries overseas.

The following are Universal Number International ID Codes (as of October, 2006):

Area	Country Code	Area	Country Code
Ireland	00	Spain	00
United States of America	011	Thailand	001
Argentina	00	Taiwan	00
United Kingdom	00	China	00
Israel	014	Denmark	00
Italy	00	Germany	00
Australia	0011	New Zealand	00
Austria	00	Norway	00
Holland	00	Philippines	00
Canada	011	France	00
Korea	001	Brazil	0021
Colombia	009	Belgium	00
Singapore	001	Hong Kong	001
Switzerland	00	Malaysia	00
Sweden	00	Luxemburg	00

* The universal numbers may not be available from mobile phones, public phones or hotels.

* The universal numbers are only available in the above countries.

* If you make a call from a hotel, the fees may be charged by the hotel. Check with the hotel before using.

■ International Access Codes of major countries (Table 2)

If the above Universal Number International ID Code is not available to make inquiries overseas, use the International Access Code. The following are International Access Codes of major countries (as of October, 2006):

Area	Country Code	Area	Country Code
Ireland	00	Denmark	00
United States of America	011	Germany	00
United Arab Emirates	00	Turkey	00
United Kingdom	00	New Zealand	00
Italy	00	Norway	00
India	00	Hungary	00
Indonesia	001	Philippines	00
Australia	0011	Finland	00/990
Holland	00	France	00
Canada	011	Brazil	00410021/0023
Korea	001	Vietnam	00
Greece	00	Belgium	00
Singapore	001	Poland	00
Switzerland	00	Portugal	00
Sweden	00	Hong Kong	001
Spain	00	Macao	00
Thailand	001	Malaysia	00
Taiwan	002	Monaco	00
Czech	00	Luxemburg	00
China	00	Russia	810

Preparation before traveling

- WORLD WING-compatible FOMA card (except blue)
- FOMA AC adapter 01 for Global Use (optional)

NOTE

- ◆ "FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use" supports voltage from 100V AC to 240V AC, but the plug shape of the bundled AC power cord is for 100V AC (domestic). For overseas use, the compatible conversion plug adapter is required. You can purchase the conversion plug adapter at your local electronics stores or travel goods stores.
- ◆ Do not use a transformer for overseas travel to charge the battery.

Before leaving

- To view i-mode sites while using international roaming service, first make the "International Settings" from the "iMenu".
- To use network services overseas, set "Remote Control" to "Activate" in advance. To use the Voice Mail or Call Forwarding service overseas, subscribe to "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding".
- Depending on the roaming operator, network services may not be set or checked. See "Mobile Phone User's Guide [WORLD SERVICE]" and "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services]" before leaving Japan.

NOTE

- ◆ For the preparation and settings, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]", "Mobile Phone User's Guide [WORLD SERVICE]" and "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services]".

Use in the local area

This FOMA terminal is available in 3G roaming service areas. When the FOMA terminal is turned on after you arrive overseas, a local roaming operator will be automatically set.

● Display, date and time

While using overseas, the name of the operator connected appears on the standby screen.

- The display mode for an operator being used can be set under "Operator name display" (p.451).
- To display the local time on the standby screen, select the city under "World watch" (p.49) and "World watch ON" from "Display type" under "Clock display" (p.146).
- In overseas as well as in Japan, i-mode messages stored in Redial, Dialed calls, Received calls, Missed calls and Outbox list are timestamped as the date and time set under "Set time" on the FOMA terminal. Regardless of this "Set time" setting, SMS messages stored in the Outbox list are timestamped as the date and time at local time, while SMS messages stored in the Inbox list are timestamped as the date and time in Japan standard time.

- If “Set time” is set to “Auto time set ON” overseas, Japan Standard Time will be retrieved (data and time at local time will not be retrieved).

● Troubleshooting

- “” does not disappear from the screen
 - Set “NW search mode” to “Auto”.
 - Since this FOMA terminal is compatible with international roaming, it may take long to detect radio waves immediately after the power is turned on, and “” may appear on the screen.
- The other party’s caller ID is not notified
 - Even if the caller attempts to notify you of the caller ID, if the caller ID is not sent via the roaming operator you use, it will not appear on the FOMA terminal.

● After returning to Japan

When you return to Japan and turn on the FOMA terminal, the network will be automatically searched and set as the FOMA network (JP DoCoMo). If “NW search mode” (p.450) is set to “Manual”, reset it to “Auto”.

Making a Call Abroad

Use your FOMA terminal and the international roaming service to make voice or videophone calls from outside Japan.

- Make sure that the battery is fully charged and the reception is good.

Videophone

Enter an international phone number then press  () to use “International Videophone” if you and the other party are using an operator compatible with FOMA videophone.

- For available countries and operators, see the DoCoMo “International Services website”.
- There may be cases where the image of the other person is distorted on your FOMA mobile phone, or the call cannot be connected to the international videophone model used by the other party.

Making a call to outside your destination country (including Japan)

- To make a call to Italy, etc., “0” may be required at the beginning of the area code (long distance code).

- 1 On the standby screen, dial + () for 1 second or longer) → Country code → Area code (long distance code) → Phone number

Dial the other party’s phone number excluding “0” at the beginning of the area code (long distance code). To make a call to Italy, etc., “0” may be required.

If the other party is an overseas user of “WORLD WING”, dial “81” (Japan) as the country code.

- 2  or  ()

● Making a call to a country registered in “Int’l dial assistance”

Register the country name and code of a party you often call to “Int’l dial assistance”, which simplifies the dialing operation.

- An international call can be made from the phonebook, Redial, Dialed calls, etc.

1 Enter a phone number

To call a landline phone, dial the area code (long distance code) and phone number of the other party. To call a mobile phone or PHS in Japan, dial the phone number as is.

- 2  (FUNC)▶ “Int’l call”▶ Select a country▶  or  ()

“+” and “Country code” are prefixed and an international call is made.

If the other party is an overseas user of “WORLD WING”, select “日本” (Japan) as the country name.

■ Making a call to a country set in “Auto convert setting” under “Int’l dial assistance”

- ▶ Phonebook detail screen (p.111)/Redial (detail) screen (p.62), Dialed calls (detail) screen (p.64), etc. (the phonebook used)
 - ▶  or  ()▶ “Dial”

NOTE

- ◆ When you select a country other than “イタリア” (Italy) from “Int’l call”, and the other party’s phone number begins with “0”, “0” is deleted.
- ◆ To make a call to outside your destination country (including Japan) using “Phone To function” from the i-mode site or mail detail screen, select “International call” on the “Dialing” screen (p.222), a country name then “Dial”. “+” and “Country code” are prefixed to the original phone number. If the country code of the country is not registered in “Int’l dial assistance”, “Phone To function” is not available to make an international call.

Making a local call abroad

You can make a call simply by dialing the other party’s landline or mobile phone number as you do in Japan.

1 Enter a phone number

To call a landline phone, dial the area code (long distance code) and phone number of the other party.

- 2  or  ()

Calling a WORLD WING user overseas

If the other party is an overseas user of "WORLD WING", even if the other party is in the same country, make a call as an international call to Japan by making a call to a country registered in "Int'l dial assistance" (p.60), making a call from the phonebook or "Making a call to outside your destination country (including Japan)" (p.449).

Receiving a Call Abroad

You can use the international roaming service to receive a call overseas without having to change the phone number.

1 Press or when a call is received

"Receiving a voice call" → p.71

■ Videophone

To answer a call as videophone, press  or



To answer with an alternative image, press 

"Receiving a videophone call" → p.72

The other party making a call

■ To have the other party make a call from Japan to your destination country

To have the other party make a call from Japan to your FOMA terminal in your destination country, the other party only needs to dial the phone number as he/she does in Japan.

090 (or 080) - XXXX - XXXX

■ To have the other party make a call from outside Japan to your destination country

No matter whether you are in Japan or overseas, have the other party dial the international access code + "81" (country code of Japan).

International access code - 81- 90 (or 80) - XXXX- XXXX

NOTE

◆ When you receive a call while using international roaming services, the call is sent to your usual mobile phone number in Japan and then forwarded to your travel destination no matter from which country the call originates. The caller must bear charges for calls to Japan, and you must bear incoming call charges including international forwarding charges.

<NW search mode>

Setting the Search Mode of the Operator

When you move from in range to out of range of the network of an operator being used, the FOMA terminal is reconnected to another operator.

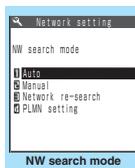
- This function may not be set due to conditions of radio waves or the network.
- As of November 2006, no operator other than NTT DoCoMo can be selected in Japan.
- After you return to Japan, if  appears, check that "NW search mode" is set to "Auto".

Changing the operator manually

Default setting
Auto (DoCoMo)

1 "Settings" ► "Network setting" ► "NW search mode"

The NW search mode screen appears.



2 "Manual" ► Select an operator

■ To change the operator automatically ► "Auto"

You can set an operator to be preferably connected when searching automatically. → p.450

Re-searching for the network <Network re-search>

- Re-search for a network then connect to the network if "NW search mode" is set to "Auto" and an operator could not be searched for, or if "NW search mode" is set to "Manual" and you want to change operators.

1 NW search mode screen (p.450) ► "Network re-search" ► Select an operator

■ If "NW search mode" is set to "Auto"

► "Network re-search"

A network is searched then automatically accessed.

● Setting an operator to be preferably connected

You can set an operator to be preferably connected when a network is automatically searched or re-searched.

- Up to 20 operators can be registered to the PLMN network list.
- Operators designated by DoCoMo are registered to the PLMN network list.

1 NW search mode screen (p.450)▶

“PLMN setting”

The PLMN setting screen appears. Operators are listed in priority order.

2 Highlight an operator whose priority is to be changed▶

 (FUNC)▶ “Change priority”

3 Highlight a position to move to▶

Move to the highlighted position. Select “last” to move to the end.

4 (Finish)▶ “YES”

Function menu (PLMN setting screen)

PLMN manual select	▶Enter the country code and network number▶“YES” Enters and registers the country code and network number manually.
PLMN select	▶Select an item to be registered▶  ▶“YES” Selects and registers an operator from the list.
Set VPLMN to PLMN	Registers the operator being connected.
Change priority	“Setting an operator to be preferably connected”→p.450
Delete	
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted operator.
• Delete selected	▶Use  to select a checkbox (□) of an operator▶  (Finish)▶“YES” Deletes selected operators.
• Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶“YES” Deletes all the operators.

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot register an operator to the PLMN network list if the operator is already registered.
- ◆ The priority may not apply due to conditions of radio waves or the network.

<Operator name display>

Displaying the Roaming Operator’s Name

Default setting
Display ON

Set whether to display the name of an operator currently connected in the task icon area (p.31) during international roaming.

1 ▶ “Settings”▶ “Network setting”▶ “Operator name display”

2 “Display ON”

The operator’s name appears.

- To hide the operator’s name▶ “Display OFF”

NOTE

- ◆ Even if it is set to “Display ON”, when you are in the domestic area (FOMA network), the operator’s name is not displayed.
- ◆ While “NW search mode” is set to “Manual” and  appears or you move from in range to out of range, “select net” appears regardless of the setting of this function.

<Roam. Guidance>

Commencing Roaming Guidance

Set to notify the other party that you are roaming internationally when you receive a voice call or videophone call during international roaming.

1 ▶ “Service”▶ “Roam. Guidance”▶ Select any item

Activate	Activates/Deactivates the roaming guidance.
Deactivate	Deactivates the roaming guidance.
Check setting	Displays the roaming guidance setting.

NOTE

- ◆ The service may not be set in some service areas.
- ◆ Even if the guidance is not set, the ringback tone provided by your travel destination’s roaming operator is played.
- ◆ Even if the guidance is set, foreign-language announcements may be played due to conditions of the roaming operator.

<Bar incoming when roam>

Setting to Bar Incoming Calls During Roaming

- You can select whether to bar videophone calls only or all incoming calls.

1 ▶ “Service”▶ “Bar incoming when roam”▶ Select any item

Activate	Sets reception during international roaming.
• Bar All incoming	▶“YES”▶Enter your network security code Bars all incoming calls.
• Data calls Barring	▶“YES”▶Enter your network security code Bars incoming videophone calls and 64K data communications.*
Deactivate	▶“YES”▶Enter your network security code Deactivates incoming call barring during roaming.
Check setting	Displays the settings for Bar incoming when roam.

* : 64K data communication is not available on this FOMA terminal during international roaming.

<Service(Int.)>

Network Services During Roaming

- Use some network services overseas such as “Voice Mail” and “Call Forwarding”. The roaming guidance can also be set.
- To use “Voice Mail (Int.)” or “Call Forwarding (Int.)”, apply for “Voice Mail” and “Call Forwarding” beforehand. In addition, set “Remote Control” beforehand. For more details, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [Network services]”.
- You cannot perform the international services when “

Operating the Voice Mail service in your destination country <Voice Mail (Int.)>

1  ▶ “Service” ▶ “Service(Int.)” ▶ “Voice Mail (Int.)” ▶ Select any item

Activate	▶ “YES”
Deactivate	From here on, follow the voice instructions.
Play messages	
Set ring time*	
Setting	

* : As of October 2006, this function is not available.

NOTE

- ◆ For details on the Voice Mail service, see “Voice Mail” (p.418).

Operating the Call Forwarding service in your destination country <Call Forwarding(Int.)>

1  ▶ “Service” ▶ “Service(Int.)” ▶ “Call Forwarding(Int.)” ▶ Select any item

Activate	▶ “YES”
Deactivate	From here on, follow the voice instructions.
Setting*	

* : As of October 2006, this function is not available.

NOTE

- ◆ For details on the Call Forwarding service, see “Call Forwarding Service” (p.421).

Operating the roaming guidance in your destination country <Roam.Guidance(Int.)>

1  ▶ “Service” ▶ “Service(Int.)” ▶ “Roam.Guidance(Int.)” ▶ “YES”
From here on, follow the voice instructions.

Setting remote control in your destination country <Remote access(Int.)*>

1  ▶ “Service” ▶ “Service(Int.)” ▶ “Remote access(Int.)” ▶ “YES”
From here on, follow the voice instructions.

* : As of October 2006, this function is not available.

NOTE

- ◆ For details on Remote Access, see “Setting up Remote Control” (p.424).

Operating the Caller ID Request service in your destination country <Caller ID req.(Int.)*>

1  ▶ “Service” ▶ “Service(Int.)” ▶ “Caller ID req.(Int.)” ▶ “YES”
From here on, follow the voice instructions.

* : As of October 2006, this function is not available.

NOTE

- ◆ For details on the Caller ID Request service, see “Caller ID Request Service” (p.422).

● Appendix/ External Devices/ Troubleshooting

Menu Function List	454
Data Stored at the Time of Purchase	461
Key Assignment (5-touch input).....	465
Key Assignment (2-touch input).....	466
Key Assignment (T9 input).....	467
Symbols and Special Characters.....	468
Pictographs.....	469
Smiley Face Symbols	470
Common Phrases	470
Multi Access Combination Patterns.....	471
Multitask Combination Patterns	472
Services Available for the FOMA Terminal	473
Options and Accessories.....	473
NEC Mobile PDF	474
Movie Playing Software	475
■ Troubleshooting	
Malfunction Checklist.....	475
If Any Error Message Appears.....	479
Warranty and After-Sales Service	486
Updating Software	Software Update 487
Protecting the FOMA Terminal from Harmful Data	Scanning function 492
Specifications.....	494
Number of Items that can be Stored, Registered and Protected on the FOMA Terminal	495
Specific Absorption Rate of Mobile Phones	496
Export Administration Regulations	496

Menu Function List

Settings with are restored to default by “Reset settings” (p.414).

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting	Refer to	
Mail	Inbox		—	—	p.257	
	Outbox		—	—	p.257	
	Draft		—	—	p.249	
	Compose message		—	—	p.239	
	Chat mail		—	—	p.275	
	Compose SMS		—	—	p.278	
	Check new messages		 (1 second or longer)	—	p.226	
	Receive option		—	—	p.252	
	Check new SMS		—	—	p.281	
	Template		—	—	p.246	
Mail settings		—	—	p.270		
i-mode	iMenu		—	—	p.209	
	Bookmark		—	—	p.215	
	Screen memo		—	—	p.217	
	Last URL		—	—	p.211	
	Go to location		—	—	p.214	
	i-Channel			—	p.232	
	MessageR/F		—	—	p.227	
	Check new messages		 (1 second or longer)	—	p.226	
	Client certificate		—	—	p.228	
	i-mode settings		—	—	p.223	
Internet (Full Browser)		—	—	p.320		
i-αppli	Software list		  (1 second or longer)	—	p.287	
	microSD data		—	—	p.296	
	Auto start set		—	—	p.292	
	i-αppli action info		—	—	p.293	
Data box	My picture		MENU46	—	p.330	
	Music		—	—	p.383	
	i-motion		—	—	p.338	
	Melody		MENU16	—	p.349	
	My document		—	—	p.371	
	Chara-den		—	—	p.345	
	Kisekae Tool		—	—	p.351	
	Document viewer		—	—	p.376	
LifeKit	Bar code reader		—	—	p.199	
	Receive Ir data		MENU79	—	pp.368, 370	
	ToruCa		—	—	p.299	
	IC card content		—	—	p.299	
	IC card lock		—	OFF (IC lock (power-off): Maintain)	p.303	
	SD-PIM		—	—	p.356	
	Camera		—	—	pp.185, 192	
	GPS		Position location	—	—	p.307
			Location notification	Not recorded	—	p.316
			Location history	No location history	—	p.317
i-αppli			ゼンリン  地図 + ナビ N (ZENRIN Maps + Navi N)	—	p.308	

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to
LifeKit	GPS		—	GPS settings	Position settings GPS button setting: Read a Map Positioning mode: Standard mode	p.307
					Notification menu Register LCS client: Not stored Positioning mode: Standard mode	p.315
					Request menu Permit to send loc.: OFF Positioning mode: Standard mode Host selection: Initial address Service settings: —	p.312
					Tone/Vibrator Ring volume: Level 4 Select ring tone: Alarm 8 Vibrator: Pattern 1 Ring time Position location: OFF Loc. notification, Loc. request/permit, Loc. request/check: ON (5 seconds) Illumination: Color 5	p.128
					Data Sec. Service	—	PH-book img. Sending	OFF	p.175
	Schedule		MENU45		—	p.399
	Alarm clock		MENU44		All OFF	p.398
	To Do list		MENU95		—	p.402
	Text memo		MENU42		—	p.409
	Calculator		MENU85		—	p.409
	Play/Erase msg.		□(MEMO/ CHECK)		—	p.83
	Play/Erase VP msg.		—		—	p.84
	Voice memo		MENU43		—	p.406
	Voice announce		MENU91		—	p.406
	UIIM operation		—		—	p.116
	My Profile		MENU0		—	pp.50, 404
	Forwarding image		—		ON	p.365
	Access reader		—		—	p.201
	Dictionary		—		—	p.410
Phonebook	Phonebook		—		—	pp.107, 111
	PushTalk		—		—	pp.98, 101
Own data	Received calls		MENU24		—	p.64
	Dialed calls		—		—	p.62
	Mail member		MENU97		—	p.249
	Chat group		—		—	p.277
	Common phrases		MENU38		Default common phrases (Folder name: Folder 1, 2)	p.439
	Own dictionary		MENU82		—	p.441
	DL dictionary		—		—	p.442
Settings	Kisekae Tool setting			—	—	p.142
	Incoming call	Ring volume	MENU50		All Level 4	p.76
		Select ring tone	MENU13	Phone	Pattern1 (Phone color: Jet black, Surf blue, Vermilion orange), Pattern2 (Phone color: Sparkle white)	p.124

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to	
Settings	Incoming call	Select ring tone	MENU13	Videophone	Pattern3 (Phone color: Jet black, Surf blue, Vermilion orange), Pattern2 (Phone color: Sparkle white)	p.124	
				PushTalk	Pattern4 (Phone color: Jet black, Surf blue, Vermilion orange), Pattern2 (Phone color: Sparkle white)		
				Mail	Alarm 2 (Phone color: Jet black, Vermilion orange), Alarm 1 (Phone color: Surf blue), Melody 2 (Phone color: Sparkle white)		
				Chat mail	Alarm 1 (Phone color: Jet black, Vermilion orange), Alarm 2 (Phone color: Surf blue), Melody 2 (Phone color: Sparkle white)		
				MessageR	Alarm 1 (Phone color: Jet black, Vermilion orange), Alarm 2 (Phone color: Surf blue), Melody 2 (Phone color: Sparkle white)		
				MessageF	Alarm 1 (Phone color: Jet black, Vermilion orange), Alarm 2 (Phone color: Surf blue), Melody 2 (Phone color: Sparkle white)		
		Sound effect	MENU64	Surround	OFF	p.126	
				3Dsound	ON		
				SRS_WOW	OFF		
			Vibrator	MENU54		All OFF	p.127
			Illumination	MENU89	Set color	Phone: Color 5 Videophone: Color 5 PushTalk: Color 5 Mail: Color 1 Chat mail: Color 3 MessageR: Color 1 MessageF: Color 1	p.145
		Set pattern				Standard	
		Adjust color				Edit color name: Color 1 to 12 Adjust color tone: Default	
			Manner mode set	MENU20		Manner mode (Original settings: Default → p.131)	p.131
			Disp. PH-book image	—		ON	p.136
		Answer setting	MENU58		Any key answer	p.74	
		Mail/Msg. ring time	MENU68		All ON (Ring time: 5 seconds)	p.130	
		Ring time(sec.)	MENU90	Set mute seconds	OFF Mute seconds: 1 second (When Set mute seconds is set to "ON")	p.174	
				Missed calls display	Display		
		Info notice setting	MENU65		Japanese display: ON English display: ON	p.80	
		Record message	MENU55		OFF Answer message: Japanese 1 (When Record message is set to "ON") Ringing time: 13 seconds (When Record message is set to "ON")	p.81	
		Talk	Noise reduction	MENU76		ON	p.70
			Quality alarm	MENU75		High tone	p.129
			Reconnect signal	MENU77		High tone	p.70
			Illumination in talk	—		OFF	p.145
			Set hold tone	—	On hold tone	Tone 1	p.77
					Holding tone	Melody 1	
		Setting when folded	MENU18		End the call	p.75	
		Dialing	Pause dial	MENU84		—	p.68
			Sub-address setting	—		ON	p.70
	Prefix setting		—		"WORLD CALL" (009130010) User setting: Not recorded	p.69	

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to
Settings	Dialing	Auto dial setting	—		OFF	p.413
		Int'l dial assistance	—	Auto convert setting	ON (automatically added)	p.60
				Country Code setting	“日本” (Country Code: +81) User setting: 日本: 81, アメリカ: 1, 中国: 86, タイ: 66, フィリピン: 63, 台湾: 886, 韓国: 82, フランス: 33, 香港: 852, イギリス: 44, ドイツ: 49, シンガポール: 65, カナダ: 1, インドネシア: 62, イタリア: 39, オーストラリア: 61, マレーシア: 60, ベトナム: 84, インド: 91, オランダ: 31, スペイン: 34, ブラジル: 55	
				IDD Prefix setting	“WORLD CALL” (009130010) User setting: Not recorded	
	Videophone	Visual preference	—		Normal		p.86
	Videophone	Select image	—	On hold	Pre-installed	p.86
				Holding	Pre-installed	
				Substitute image	Chara-den (Dimo)	
				Record message	Pre-installed	
				Preparing	Pre-installed	
				Voice memo	Pre-installed	
		Auto redial as voice	—		OFF	p.86
		Remote monitoring	—	Other ID	Not recorded	p.91
				Ringing time	5 seconds	
				Set	OFF	
	Display setting	—	Main display	Other side	p.88	
			Front camera Reverse	ON		
	Ntfy switch-mode	—		Indication ON	p.89	
	Hands-free switch	—		ON	p.88	
	V-phone while packet	—		V-phone priority	p.89	
Display	Display setting	MENU56	Stand-by display	Reflection (Phone color: Jet black), Blue fragrance (Phone color: Surf blue), Disney (Phone color: Sparkle white), Dramatic City (Phone color: Vermilion orange)	p.133	
			Wake-up display	Wavelet (Phone color: Jet black, Surf blue, Vermilion orange), Disney (Phone color: Sparkle white) Wake-up message: Not stored		
			Dialing	Black (Phone color: Jet black, Vermilion orange), White (Phone color: Surf blue), Disney (Phone color: Sparkle white)		
			Calling			
			V.phone Dialing			
			V.phone Calling			
			Mail sending			
			Mail receiving			
			Check new messages			
			Backlight			MENU70	Lighting	ON (lighting) + Saver (Light time: 3 minutes)	p.138
	Charging	Standard				
	Area	LCD+Keys				
	Brightness	Level 2				
	Display design	MENU86	Color pattern	Pattern 5 (Phone color: Jet black, Vermilion orange), Pattern 1 (Phone color: Surf blue, Sparkle white)	p.139	
Background			OFF			

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting			Refer to	
Settings	Display	Display design	MENU86	Icon pattern	Battery icon	Standard (Phone color: Jet black, Surf blue, Vermilion orange), Disney (Phone color: Sparkle white)	p.139	
					Antenna icon			
				Soft key	Pattern 1			
		Image display		MENU93		ON Stand-by: OFF Clock type: Digital2 (Phone color: Jet black), Digital1 (Phone color: Surf blue), Digital4 (Phone color: Sparkle white), Digital3 (Phone color: Vermilion orange), Pict: ON Image set: Pre-installed (Black (Phone color: Jet black, Vermilion orange), Blue (Phone color: Surf blue), Disney (Phone color: Sparkle white)) Called: ON(Image + Missed call) Mail: OFF Connection: OFF Background i-appli: OFF	p.137	
		Font		MENU66	Type	Font 1	p.146	
	Thickness				Bold			
	Character size				Standard			
		Desktop icon		MENU63	Theme 1 to 3	Photo mode	p.147	
		3D display setting		—		ON	p.150	
		Select language		MENU15		Japanese	p.47	
		Original menu		MENU52		My Profile Check new messages Ring volume Vibrator Alarm clock Change security code	p.142	
		Menu display set		MENU57	Menu display	List	p.139	
	Theme				Mirror (Phone color: Jet black), Blue fragrance (Phone color: Surf blue), Disney (Phone color: Sparkle white), Dramatic City (Phone color: Vermilion orange)			
	Memory focus				ON			
		Viewer settings		—		Picture	p.332	
		Automatic display		MENU47		OFF	p.120	
		Icons		MENU36		—	p.30	
		Icons setting		—		ON	p.151	
		Call time/ Charge	Call data	MENU61		—	p.407	
			Notice designate calls			Cost limit setting	Not set	p.408
						Notify cost limit	OFF	
						Alarm tone	Alarm Tone	
						Volume	Level 4	
			Reset total	MENU60			—	p.408
		Auto reset total cost		—		OFF	p.408	
		Call time display		MENU48		ON	p.146	
		Clock	Set time	MENU31		Auto time set ON	p.49	
			Clock display	MENU39	Display	Japanese display: ON English display: ON	p.146	
					Size	Big		

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to
Settings	Clock	Clock display	MENU39	Color	White (Phone color: Jet black, Vermilion orange), Black (Phone color: Surf blue, Sparkle white)	p.146
				Display type	World watch OFF	
		World watch	Time zone	GMT+00 (City: London)	p.49	
			Summer time	OFF		
		Alarm setting	—	Alarm preferred	p.395	
		Clock Alarm Tone set	—	Alarm Tone	p.129	
	Lock/ Security	Lock	Dial lock	—	Reset	p.157
			Original lock	—	OFF	p.162
					Group and item settings Data disp. Edit del., GPS: All selected Dial/sending mail, Incoming/ Mail disp.: All deselected	
		IC card lock	—	OFF (IC lock (power-off): Maintain)	p.303	
		Keypad lock	—	After folded: OFF Timer: OFF	p.167	
		Face authentication	—	OFF	p.169	
			—	New image: Not stored		
			—	Function to reset: Select only IC card lock		
		Self mode	—	OFF	p.175	
		Secret mode	MENU40	OFF	p.158	
		Secret data only mode	MENU41	OFF	p.159	
		Reject unknown	—	Accept	p.174	
		Call setting w/o ID	MENU10	All Accept Select ring tone: Same as ring tone Select calling disp.: Same as display	p.173	
		Change security code	MENU29	0000 (4 zeros)	p.155	
		IC card authentic.	—	OFF	p.168	
			—	External IC card: Not set		
	PIN setting	—	—	p.155		
	Scanning function	—	Set scan	Scan: ON	p.492	
		—	—	Message scan: ON		
	Connection setting	Set connection timeout	—	60 seconds	p.224	
		Set check new messages	—	All checked	p.271	
		Host selection	MENU81	i-mode User defined host: Not recorded	p.224	
		SMS center selection	—	DoCoMo User setting: Not set	p.281	
		Certificate	—	All Valid	p.228	
		Certificate host	—	DoCoMo User defined host: Not recorded	p.230	
	i-appli settings	Disp. Software info	—	Not display	p.286	
		End stand-by display	—	—	p.295	
		i-appli vol.	—	Level 4	p.288	
	ToruCa settings	Receive from R/W	—	Accept (Repetition check: Yes)	p.303	
		Auto reading setting	—	OFF	p.303	
		Scroll	—	1 line	p.303	
	External connection	USB mode setting	—	Communication mode	p.361	
		Earphone	MENU51	Earphone(only)	p.130	
		Select microphone	—	External microphone	p.414	
		Automatic answer	MENU94	OFF Ring time: 6 seconds (When Automatic answer is set to "ON")	p.413	

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to		
Settings	Network setting	NW search mode	—		Auto	p.450		
		Operator name display	—		Display ON	p.451		
	Other settings	Keypad sound	MENU30			ON	p.127	
		Charge sound	—			ON	p.129	
		IC card Illumination	—			ON	p.145	
		Battery level	MENU71			—	p.46	
		External keys guard	MENU X (1 second or longer)			OFF	p.169	
		Character input set	MENU35	Input mode		Input mode	Mode 1(5-touch)	p.433
				Prediction		Prediction	ON	p.435
				Guidance		Guidance	ON	p.432
				T9 change mode		T9 change mode	T9 Kanji change mode	p.444
				Clear learned		Clear learned	—	p.441
				CHG input size		CHG input size	Standard	p.433
		Neuropointer	—	Pointer		Pointer	ON	p.144
	Speed				Speed	Simple: Normal		
	Pointer icon setting				Pointer icon setting	Simple Shape (Phone color: Jet black, Surf blue, Vermilion orange), Disney (Phone color: Sparkle white)		
	Reset settings	MENU23			—	p.414		
	Initialize	—			—	p.415		
	Software Update	—			—	p.487		
Service	Chaku-moji	—	—	Create message	5 messages pre-installed	p.65		
				MSG display settings	Calls with Caller ID			
				3D message display	ON			
	Caller ID Notification	MENU17			—	p.50		
	Voice Mail	—			—	p.418		
	Call Waiting	—			—	p.419		
	Call Forwarding	—			—	p.421		
	Nuisance Call Blk	—			—	p.421		
	Caller ID Request	—			—	p.422		
	Incoming Call Mng	—			Answer	p.423		
	Set in-call arrival	—			—	p.424		
	Remote Control	—			—	p.424		
	Dual Network	—			—	p.422		
	English Guidance	—			—	p.423		
	Additional service	—			—	p.426		
	Service Numbers	—			—	p.423		
	Multi Number	—		Select ring tone	Same as ring tone	p.424		
	Roam. Guidance	—			—	p.451		
	Bar incoming when roam	—			—	p.451		
	Service(Int.)	—			—	p.452		

Data Stored at the Time of Purchase

● Stand-by display



Reflection



Blue fragrance



Sky-high



Dramatic City



Wavelet



Strelitzia



Disney



DRAGON QUEST



Sunset gradation

NOTE

- ◆ The image of "Dramatic City" varies every hour.

● Frame



Disney



DRAGON QUEST



Black&Orange



White&Blue



Heart

● Deco-mail picture



Disney 1



Disney 2



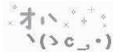
Disney 3



Disney 4



Disney 5



おはよう



こんにちは



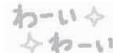
おやすみ



さようなら



ありがとう



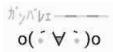
うれしい



おめでとう



ごめんね



ファイト



ショック



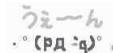
すき



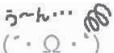
きらい



怒る



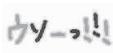
泣く



悩む



疲れた



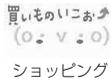
驚き



食事



飲み会



ショッピング



ドライブ



桃太郎電鉄

©HUDSON



ドラゴンクエスト



ドラゴンクエスト



ドラゴンクエスト



笑顔



お詫び



怒り



眠る



驚き



ドキドキ



ショック



ハイバイ



チツ、チツ、チツ



パチン



冷や汗



ガーン



がっかり



やったー



ごめんなさい



雪だるま



しょんぼり



おやすみ



トナカイ



クラッカー



音符



キラキラ



雪



星



ハート



ケーキ



金魚



ゾウ



のりもの



きかんしゃ

NOTE

◆ The Deco-mail pictures shown here may look different from what actually appear on screens.

Pointer



Simple Shape



Geometric



KiraKira



Drop



Arrow



DRAGON QUEST



Disney

Battery icon



Standard



DRAGON QUEST



Disney

Antenna icon



Standard



DRAGON QUEST



Disney

● Template



Disney 1



Disney 2



Disney 3



Disney 4



Disney 5



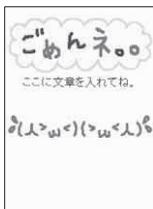
Good Morning



Good Night



Thank You



Sorry



Glad



Love



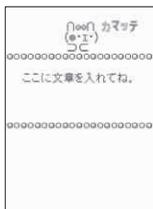
Shock



Meal



Party



Bored



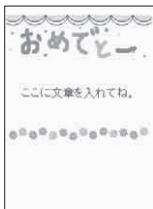
Let's play



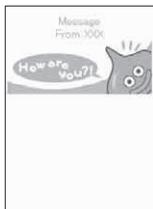
Fight



Good Job



Congratulations



DRAGON QUEST

NOTE

- ◆ The templates shown here may look different from what actually appear on screens.

● Stamp

Cross	+	Heart1	♥	Heart2	♥	Kiss	💋	Tear	💧	Flame	🔥
Lightning	⚡	Sorry	🙇	Note	🎵	Flower	🌸	Love	LOVE LOVE	Anger	😡
Right	➡	Below	⬇️	Left	⬅️	Above	⬆️	Here	ココ	No. 1	🏆
No. 2	②	No. 3	③	Party	🍻	OK	◯	NG	✗	Person	🚶
Car	🚗	Asleep	💤	Question	?	Surprise	!	Shine	☀️	Whirlpool	🌀
Punch	👊	Nose	👃								

Key Assignment (5-touch input)

Key	Kanji/Hiragana input mode	Kana input mode
[1]	あいうえおあいうえお	アイウエオアイウエオ
[2]	かきくけこ	カキクケコ
[3]	さしすせそ	サシスセソ
[4]	たちつとと	タチツツトツ
[5]	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ
[6]	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ
[7]	まみむめも	マミムメモ
[8]	やゆよやゆよ	ヤユヨヤユヨ
[9]	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ
[0]	わをんー	ワワンー
[*]	_____*	_____*
[#]	* ° . ° ? ! . * ³	* ° . ° ? ! . * ³

Key	Alphabetic input mode	Numeric input mode
[1]	? ! - / # & * () # ' ' ♥ ☎ ⁴	1
[2]	A B C a b c	2
[3]	D E F d e f	3
[4]	G H I g h i	4
[5]	J K L j k l	5
[6]	M N O m n o	6
[7]	P Q R S p q r s	7
[8]	T U V t u v	8
[9]	W X Y Z w x y z	9
[0]	_____	0+ ⁵
[*]	.ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp www. .com .html http:// https:// @docomo.ne.jp ⁶	* .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp www. .com .html http:// https:// @docomo.ne.jp ⁶
[#]	. @ / ? ! () , - _ : ' ~ * & ¥	# @ / ? ! () , - _ : ' ~ * & ¥

*1 : Lower case “ワ” can be entered in double-byte input mode.

2 : Pressing [] switches “Kanji/Hiragana input mode” to “Kuten code”.

*3 : In “Kanji/Hiragana input mode” and double-byte “Kana input mode”, “°” and “.” appear only when they can be attached to the previous character. “°”, “.”, “?”, “!” and “-” cannot be entered when you enter a reading into the own dictionary or UIM phonebook.

*4 : Valid only when composing SMS messages. You cannot enter “Pictograph” but “♥” and “☎”. Although symbols appear as single-byte characters, “♥” and “☎” always appear as double-byte characters.

*5 : “+” can be entered when you enter an SMS address by holding down the key for 1 second or longer.

6 : These characters do not appear in double-byte mode (except “” in numeric input mode).

*7 : This symbol appears as “” in double-byte input mode.

■ : Lower case characters can be entered in the following two methods:

- Enter an upper case character then press [⇩] to convert it to lower case.
- Select “Lower case” from the function menu then enter a character.

Key Assignment (2-touch input)

■ Double-byte input mode

Key	2nd key										
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	
1st key	1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E
		ぁ	ぃ	ぅ	ぇ	ぉ	a	b	c	d	e
	2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J
							f	g	h	i	j
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O
							k	l	m	n	o
	4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T
				っ			p	q	r	s	t
	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y
							u	v	w	x	y
	6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	—	/
						z					
7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&				
8	や	(	ゆ	)	よ	*	#			^{*2}	
	ゃ		ゅ		ょ						
9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5	
0	わ	を	ん	^{*3}	^{*3}	6	7	8	9	0	
	わ			,	。						

■ Single-byte input mode

Key	2nd key										
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	
1st key	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	A	B	C	D	E
		ァ	ィ	ゥ	ェ	ォ	a	b	c	d	e
	2	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	F	G	H	I	J
							f	g	h	i	j
	3	サ	シ	ス	セ	ソ	K	L	M	N	O
							k	l	m	n	o
	4	タ	チ	ツ	テ	ト	P	Q	R	S	T
				ッ			p	q	r	s	t
	5	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	U	V	W	X	Y
							u	v	w	x	y
	6	ハ	ヒ	フ	ヘ	ホ	Z	?	!	-	/
						z					
7	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	¥	&				
8	ヤ	(	ユ	)	ヨ	*	#			^{*2}	
	ャ		ュ		ョ						
9	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	1	2	3	4	5	
	@	/	-	-	:	.ne.jp	.co.jp	.ac.jp	@docomo.ne.jp		
0	ワ	ヲ	ン	、	。	6	7	8	9	0	
	-	.		.	.	www.	.com	.html	http://	https://	

• A reading entered for a UIM phonebook entry is katakana even in double-byte input mode.

^{*1} : Valid only when "Pictograph" is available, e.g. when you enter "Text memo" or "Common phrases". These are always double-byte characters. You cannot enter "Pictograph" but and when composing SMS messages.

^{*2} : Upper case input mode (upper) and lower case input mode (lower) are switched each time **[B O]** is pressed. You can enter an upper case character then press to convert it to lower case.

^{*3} : In double-byte input mode, "ゝ" and "ゞ" appear only when they can be attached to the previous character. In other cases, "ゝ" and "ゞ" are replaced with spaces.

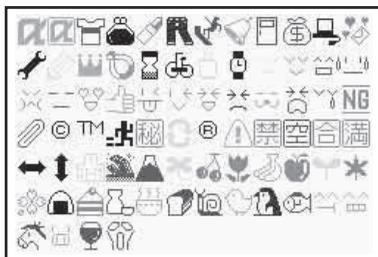
: A space is entered.

Pictographs

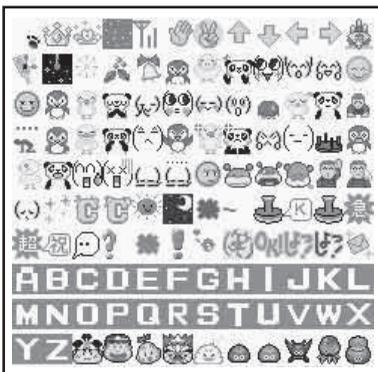
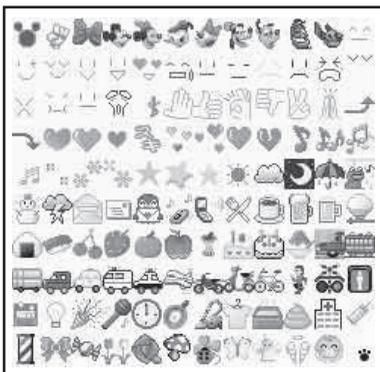
■ Pictograph 1



■ Pictograph 2



■ Decorate PI (Pictograph D)



NOTE

- ◆ Some pictographs in a message may not appear correctly on the receiving device if it does not support them. Even if the receiving phone is an i-mode terminal, Pictograph 2 may not be displayed properly if it is not compatible with Pictograph 2.

Smiley Face Symbols

Smiley Face

Reading	Face symbol	Reading	Face symbol	Reading	Face symbol
あかてあかとう (Thanks)	m(◡)m	はてな (Wait a minute)	(. * ?)	ねむい (I'm sleepy)	(p _)
ほんざい (Hurrah!)	\(◡)◡/	ちろん (Twinkle, twinkle)	(☆.☆)	めも (Memo)	φ(。)
わーい (Wow!)	(◡)	しくしく (Sob, sob)	(T T)	うん (Yeah)	(◡) (。)
わーい (Wow!)	(◡)	さよなら (Good-bye!)	(T T) /	かんばい (Cheer up!)	(◡) (◡) (☆) (◡) (◡)
わーい (Wow!)	(*◡*)	いたた (Ouch!)	◡ <	ども (Well, well)	\(◡)◡/
わーい (Wow!)	◡(◡)◡(◡)◡(◡)◡	いたた (Ouch!)	> ◡	がまん (Patient)	(; ◡)
わーい (Wow!)	(≥ ◡ ≤)	えーん (Crying)	(; ;)	こんにちは (Hello!)	◡ (= ◡ =)
おーい (Hey!)	(◡)	えーん (Crying)	(◡)	こんにちは (Hello!)	(◡) (◡)
ぶい (Vvvv!)	(◡) v	えーん (Crying)	Ω Å Ω;	こんにちは (Hello!)	(◡) (◡) (◡) (◡)
ぎゃはは (Ha-ha!)	(◡) /	えーん (Crying)	◡ ◡ ◡ ◡	いいな (You lucky!)	(◡) ◡ <
あは (Ah ha!)	(◡) ◡ (◡)	えーん (Crying)	◡ (p) ◡ < q) ◡ ◡	いいな (You lucky!)	(◡) ◡ <
あは (Ah ha!)	◡ ;	えーん (Crying)	(T ◡)	いいな (You lucky!)	(m' ◡ m)
にこ (Smile)	(? ;)	なぜ (Why?)	(? ?)	うーん (Hmm)	(◡ ? ;)
にこ (Smile! smile)	(*◡*)	がーん (Shocked!)	(◡) ; !!	てる (Embarrassed)	(◡) ;
にこ (Smile!)	(◡ ◡ ◡)	がーん (Shocked!)	(◡) ;	てる (Embarrassed)	(* / ◡ *)
にこ (Smile!)	(◡ ◡ ◡)	がーん (Shocked!)	Σ (◡) ;	てる (Embarrassed)	(// ◡ //)
にこ (Smile!)	(◡ ◡ ◡)	えーん (Ahem!)	(◡)	てる (Embarrassed)	(≥ ◡ ≤)
にこ (Smile!)	(◡ ◡ ◡)	む (Sullen)	(- -)	しあわせ (Happy!)	+ ◡ (* ◡) ◡ +
にこ (Smile!)	(◡ ◡ ◡)	む (Sullen)	◡ (◡) ◡	しあわせ (Happy!)	\(◡)◡/
ちゅ (Kiss!)	(◡)	いかり (Angry)	(◡)	しあわせ (Happy!)	(* ◡ *)
ちゅ (Kiss! Kiss!)	(◡) /	むか (Offended)	(- - +)	なかよし (Pat)	◡) ◡ (◡)
わくわく (I'm excited!)	◡ (◡) ◡	むか (Offended)	(◡)	ごめん (Sorry)	(* ◡ *)
ういんく (Wink)	(◡)	むか (Offended)	(◡)	いじいじ (Mopey)	φ(。)
さよなら (Good-bye!)	(◡) /	むか (Offended)	(◡)	いじわる (Wicked)	ψ (◡) #
さよなら (Good-bye!)	(◡) /	ごそそ (Whisper)	(. .)	よろしく (Thank you)	☆ ◡ (◡) *
がんば (Cheer up!)	p(◡)q	じーつ (Gaze)	(- -)	ごまった (Good god!)	> <
ね (Isn't it?)	(◡) b	きこえない (Can't hear)	| (- -)	やだ (No!)	(◡) >
ほりほり (Scratch, scratch)	(◡)	ごまった (My goodness!)	(◡) ;	へこむ (Feel down)	(◡)
ひやあせ (Cold Sweats)	(◡) ;	ぶたー (Pig)	) ◡ (	へこむ (Feel down)	(◡)
あせあせ (Sweat! Sweat!)	G ◡ A	こあら (Koala)	(- ◡ -)	びっくり (Ack!)	(◡) ◡ (◡)
びくっ (Twitch!)	(* *)	いっぴく (Taka a break)	(◡) y	びっくり (Ack!)	w(◡) ◡ w
どき (Shocked!)	(◡) (◡)	いっぴく (Taka a break)	(◡) y -	だっしゅ (Dash)	ε = ◡ (◡) ◡
え (What?)	(◡) (◡)	ほし (Star)	☆		
めてん (WHA?)	(. . ;)	ねてる (Zzzz...)	(- -) zz		
		ねむい (I'm sleepy)	\(◡)◡/		

NOTE

◆ Face symbols can be entered from "Face Mark" under the Text entry (edit) function menu. → p.437

Common Phrases

Folder 1 (fixed common phrases)

No.	Message
1	Sorry
2	Thank you
3	Congratulations!
4	It's time
5	Wait a minute
6	Just arrived
7	Schedule change
8	Where are you?
9	Do your best
0	What are you doing?

Folder 2 (fixed common phrases)

No.	Message
1	All right
2	I hope you are well
3	Well done
4	Emergency
5	How do you think?
6	Please call
7	I will be late
8	Leave a message on voice mail
9	E-mail me via i-mode
0	Thank you for your help

Multi Access Combination Patterns

Newly established communication / Current communication	Voice call		Videophone call		i-mode ^{*7}	i-αppli	i-mode mail	
	Making	Receiving	Making	Receiving			Sending	Receiving
During a voice call	△ ^{*1}	△ ^{*2}	×	△ ^{*3}	○	×	○	○
During a videophone call	×	△ ^{*3}	—	△ ^{*3}	×	×	×	× ^{*4}
During i-mode ^{*7}	○	○	△ ^{*5}	△ ^{*11}	—	○	○	○
During packet communication with a PC	○	○	×	×	×	△ ^{*6}	×	× ^{*4}
During 64K data communication	×	△ ^{*3}	×	△ ^{*3}	×	×	×	× ^{*4}
During a PushTalk call	×	△ ^{*10}	×	×	×	×	×	× ^{*4}

Newly established communication / Current communication	SMS		Packet communication		64K data communication		PushTalk	
	Sending	Receiving	Outgoing	Incoming	Outgoing	Incoming	Making	Receiving
During a voice call	○	○	○	○	×	△ ^{*3}	×	× ^{*12}
During a videophone call	×	○	×	× ^{*12}	×	△ ^{*3}	×	×
During i-mode ^{*7}	○	○	×	×	×	×	△ ^{*8}	△ ^{*9}
During packet communication with a PC	○	○	—	—	×	×	×	×
During 64K data communication	○	○	×	×	×	△ ^{*3}	×	×
During a PushTalk call	○	○	×	×	×	×	× ^{*13}	×

○: Can be activated. ×: Cannot be activated. △: Can be activated depending on situation. —: Functionally incompatible.

*1 : If you have subscribed to "Call Waiting", you can hold the current voice call to make another call.

*2 : If you have subscribed to "Call Waiting", you can hold the current voice call to answer an incoming call. If you have subscribed to "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding", you can end the current communication and then answer a new incoming communication. → p.423

*3 : If you have subscribed to "Call Waiting", "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding", you can end the current communication and then answer a new incoming communication. → p.423

*4 : An i-mode message, MessageR or MessageF is not received, but is stored in the i-mode Center. You can receive a stored i-mode message, MessageR or MessageF by performing "Check new messages" after the current communication ends.

*5 : Make a videophone call after disconnecting the current i-mode.

*6 : You cannot communicate via i-αppli software.

*7 : Includes i-channel site view and communication via Full Browser or ToruCa.

*8 : Make a PushTalk call after disconnecting the current i-mode.

*9 : When "Set i-mode arrival act" under "i-mode settings" (p.223) is set to "PushTalk preferred", receiving a PushTalk call disconnects i-mode communication.

*10 : If "PushTalk arrival act" is set to "Answer", answering an incoming voice call ends PushTalk communication. → p.104

*11 : If "V-phone while packet" is set to "V-phone priority", answering an incoming videophone call disconnects i-mode communication.

*12 : It is logged as a missed call.

*13 : Only when you are a caller, you can make a call to add members.

Multitask Combination Patterns

Function Currently	Mail	i-mode menu/ i-channel list	i-αppli	Settings	Data box	LifeKit	Service	Phone book	Own data	Original menu
Launching Mail group	○*1	○	○	○*3	○	○*5	○*15	○*10	○	○
Launching i-mode group	○	×	○	○*3	○	○*5	○*15	○*10	○	○
Launching i-αppli group	○	○	×	○*3	○	○*5	○*15	○*10	○	○
Launching Settings group	○	○	○	×	○	○*5	×	○*10	○	○
Launching Tools group ¹⁴	○	○	○*13	○*3	×*17 *18	×*19	○*15	×	×	○
During a voice call	○*2	○*2	×	×*4	×	×*7 *19	○*2*9 *15*16	○*2*10	○*2*11	○*2
During a videophone call	×	×	×	×	×	×*6 *20	×	×	×	×
During a PushTalk call	○	○	×	○*4	×	○*8	○*9*15 *16	○*10	○*11	○
During packet communication with a PC	○	○	○	○*3	○	○*5	○*15	○*10	○	○
During 64K data communication	○	○	×	×*4*12	×	×*8 *19	○*9*15 *16	○*10	○*11	○

○ : Can be activated. × : Cannot be activated.

*1 : "Compose message" and "Compose SMS" cannot be used simultaneously.

*2 : It is not available while switching between a voice call and a videophone call.

*3 : Some functions are unavailable.

*4 : Only "Pause dial" and "Keypad sound" are available.

*5 : "Received Ir data", "SD-PIM", "Voice announce" and "UIM operation" are unavailable.

*6 : "Voice memo(in-call)" is available only when you press and hold  (MEMO/CHECK) for 1 second or longer. However, it is not available while switching between a voice call and a videophone call.

*7 : Only "Bar code reader", "ToruCa", "Camera", "GPS", "Data Sec. Service", "Schedule", "To Do list", "Text memo", "Calculator", "My Profile", "Voice memo(in-call)", "Access reader" and "Dictionary" are available. However, only "Photo mode" and "Continuous mode" are available in "Camera".

*8 : Only "Bar code reader", "ToruCa", "Camera", "GPS", "Data Sec. Service", "Schedule", "To Do list", "Text memo", "Calculator", "My Profile", "Access reader", and "Dictionary" are available. However, only "Photo mode" and "Continuous mode" are available in "Camera".

*9 : "Voice Mail" messages cannot be played. The special number (p.426) cannot be dialed (but can be dialed using USSD).

*10 : "Restrictions" is unavailable.

*11 : "Common phrases", "Own dictionary" and "Download dictionary" are unavailable.

*12 : Only "Nifty switch-mode" is available.

*13 : i-αppli cannot be used while a track is played on the music player.

*14 : The function is unavailable when "Receive Ir data", "SD-PIM" or "UIM operation" is selected.

*15 : "Chaku-moji" is unavailable.

*16 : "Caller ID Notification" is unavailable.

*17 : Only "Music player" is available.

*18 : If you perform infrared data exchange or iC communication during positioning with the GPS function, you will be out of the service area and the positioning will be canceled.

*19 : The Position location, Location notification and request of the GPS function are available.

*20 : The Location notification and request of the GPS function are available.

Services Available for the FOMA Terminal

Available service		Phone number
Collect call (the receiving party is asked to pay for)		(No area code) 106
Directory assistance for general phones and DoCoMo mobile phones (pay) (A phone number that is not listed in the directory cannot be provided)		(No area code) 104
Telegram (pay)	8:00 am to 10:00 pm	(No area code) 115
Time (pay)		(No area code) 117
Weather (pay)		Area code for weather forecast you want + 177
Police emergency		(No area code) 110
Fire brigade/ambulance emergency		(No area code) 119
Maritime distress call		(No area code) 118
Emergency Message Recording System (pay)		(No area code) 171

NOTE

- ◆ When you use the Collect Call Service (106), the receiver will be billed for the call charge plus an additional service charge for each call (90 yen (94.5 yen tax included)). (As of November, 2006)
- ◆ When you use the Directory Assistance Service (104), you will be billed for the call charge plus an additional service charge of 100 yen (105 yen tax included). A free service is available for persons with impaired vision or disability or the arms or hands. For further details call NTT inquiries on 116 from general subscriber phones. (As of November, 2006)
- ◆ When calling 110, 119 or 118 from the FOMA terminal, the location from which the call is sent cannot be established. Therefore, first say you are calling from a mobile phone, give your number, and state your location clearly so that the police or fire department can call you back. Also, do not move around when making the call, so that you are not disconnected. Do not turn off the FOMA terminal immediately after ending the call, but leave it turned on for more ten minutes or so, so that you can receive a call.
- ◆ Depending on the area you are calling from, you may not be connected with the nearest police or fire department. If you cannot reach the police or fire department from your mobile phone, dial from a public or general subscriber phone.
- ◆ If you are using a "Call Forwarding" service from a general phone and if a mobile phone is set as the forwarding number, depending on the settings of the general phone or mobile phone, the caller may simply hear the ring tone even when the mobile phone is busy with another call, out of range or turned off.
- ◆ Other services such as 116 (NTT inquiries), Dial Q2, message (Dengon) Dial, and Credit Call Service are not available (However, Credit Call Service calls can be made from public or general subscriber phones to the FOMA terminals).

Options and Accessories

By combining various options and accessories sold separately, the FOMA terminal can support a wide range of applications to meet your personal and professional needs. Note that some products may not be available in some areas. For more information, contact the DoCoMo service counter. For details on options and accessories, see each User Guide.

- Earphone/Microphone with Switch P001^{*1}/P002^{*1}
- Stereo Earphone Set P001^{*1}
- Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch P01/P02
- Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01
- Bone Conduction Microphone/Receiver 01
- FOMA USB Cable
- FOMA AC Adapter 01
- FOMA DC Adapter 01
- Desktop Holder N12
- Battery Pack N14
- Back Cover N15
- In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01^{*2}
- FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01
- Data Communications Adapter N01
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna
- In-Car Holder 01
- FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use 01^{*3}
- FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01
- Carrying Case S 01

*1 : To connect to FOMA N903i, the Earphone Plug Adapter P001 is required.

*2 : To connect to FOMA N903i, the FOMA In-car Hands-free Cable 01 is required.

*3 : For overseas use, the compatible conversion plug adapter is required.

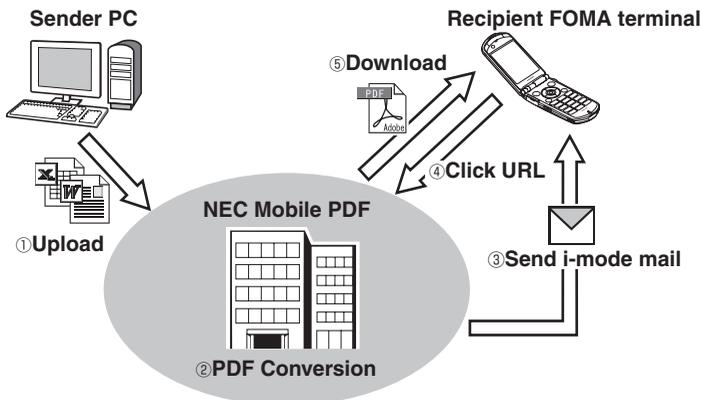
NEC Mobile PDF

NEC Mobile PDF automatically converts uploaded Microsoft® Word or Microsoft® Excel documents to PDF data, and notifies the specified FOMA terminal of the URL for viewing the PDF.

(N901iS, N902i, N902iS, N902iX HIGH-SPEED, N903i supported as of November, 2006)

- Some files cannot be converted to PDF data, depending on the format or content.
- This service may terminate without notice.

NEC Mobile PDF flow



Visit the following site for the service details:
<http://www.n-keitai.com/> (in Japanese only)

Inquiries about NEC Mobile PDF

NEC (NEC NTT DoCoMo Terminals Marketing and Sales Division)

 **0120-102-001** (in Japanese only)

Business hours: Weekdays 9:00 am to 12 noon and 1:00 pm to 5:00 pm

(Excludes weekends, public holidays and NEC holidays)

* Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

Movie Playing Software

- To play a movie (MP4-formatted file) on a PC, install QuickTime Player (free) ver. 6.4 or above (or ver. 6.3 + 3GPP) by Apple Computer, Inc.
- Download QuickTime from the following webpage:
<http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/>
 - To download, you need a PC to access the Internet. A communication charge is made for downloading.
 - See the webpage above for more details on the environment, how to download or how to operate.

Malfunction Checklist

- Check first whether the software update is required. If it is required, update the software.
 "Updating Software" → p.487

Problem	Points to check	Refer to
The FOMA terminal does not turn on (The FOMA terminal cannot be used)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is the battery pack properly attached? ● Has the battery run out? 	p.42 p.46
The animation shown on the right appears and an alarm tone sounds	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The battery has run out. Charge the battery. 	p.44 p.46
The "📶" icon appears and I hear a busy tone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Are you out of range or is the reception poor? 	p.47
I cannot make a call by pressing the dial keys	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is Original lock for "Keypad dial" under "Dial/sending mail" set? ● Is Keypad lock set? ● Is Restrict dialing set? 	p.163 p.167 p.171
I dialed a number and initiated a call, but all I hear is a busy tone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Did you start dialing before hearing the dial tone? ● Did you forget to dial the area code? ● Is "📶" displayed? ● Is "Please wait" displayed? 	p.53 p.53 p.47 —
I cannot receive calls or I cannot hear the ring tone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is any of the following functions set? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Restrictions <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Call rejection · Call forwarding · Ring time(sec.) · Set mute seconds Reject unknown Call setting w/o ID <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Unknown: Reject · User unset: Reject · Payphone: Reject ● Is the FOMA terminal in manner mode? ● Is the FOMA terminal in Public mode (Driving mode)? ● Is Original lock for "Incoming call" under "Incoming/Mail disp." set? ● Is Self mode set? ● Is the start time of Voice Mail or Call Forwarding service set to "0 second"? ● Is Caller ID Request set to Activate? ● Is mova valid with the Dual Network service? ● Is the ring volume set to "Silent"? 	p.171 p.174 p.174 p.173 p.130 p.78 p.163 p.175 p.418 p.421 p.422 p.422 p.76
Mail ring tones and alarm tones sound but no ring tone sounds when receiving a call	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is "Set mute seconds" under "Ring time(sec.)" set to longer time (e.g. 99 seconds)? Set "Set mute seconds" to shorter time. 	p.174

Problem	Points to check	Refer to
The records of Dialed calls/ Redial, Sent address disappear automatically	● Is "Restrict dialing" under "Restrictions" set?	p.171
The neuropointer does not move quickly	● Adjust the slide setting.	p.144
The ring tone sounding when receiving a voice call or videophone call is different from what I selected	● When the ring tone settings are duplicated, the priority applies.	p.126
The image appearing when receiving a voice call or videophone call is different from what I selected	● When the image settings are duplicated, the priority applies.	p.136
When receiving a voice call or videophone call, the color or pattern of the incoming call lamp flashing is different from what I set up	● When the illumination settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned.	p.145
It takes long to display or play a movie/i-motion or a Chaku-Uta full [®]	● Is the movie/i-motion or the Chaku-Uta full [®] saved in "Movable contents" folder? It may take long to display or play the data saved in the "Movable contents" folder.	—
Cannot copy or move a movie/ i-motion or a Chaku-Uta full [®] to microSD memory card	● Is the Chaku-Uta full [®] saved partly? ● Is the replay restriction (number of times, period, time limit) of the movie/i-motion or the Chaku-Uta full [®] invalid?	p.382 p.383
A PDF document is not properly displayed	● A document may not be properly displayed if it contains formats unsupported by PDF viewer or complicated designs.	—
It takes long to display a PDF document	● It may take long to display a large-sized PDF document.	—
Cannot copy a PDF document to the FOMA terminal	● Does the file size exceed 2M bytes?	p.372
Cannot copy a PDF document to the microSD memory card	● Was the document downloaded by page?	p.372
A document is not properly displayed	● A document may not be properly displayed if it contains formats unsupported by Document viewer or complicated designs.	—
It takes time to display a document	● It may take time to display a large-sized document.	—
The screen or ring tone for an incoming call or message is the default setting	● Depending on the combination of receiving screen and ring tone or the priority sequence, either the receiving screen or ring tone may be restored to default.	—
The ring tone sounding when receiving a message is different from what I selected for the mail address	● When the ring tone settings are duplicated, the priority applies. ● If you have received two or more messages, the tone set for the last received mail address sounds. ● If you have received two or more messages including a chat message, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set for the chat message. ● If the format of the sender's mail address is "(phone number)@docomo.ne.jp", save only that phone number as a mail address and set a distinctive ring tone for that mail address in Select ring tone under Mail (recv.). ● Is the sender's mail address (a mail address shown on the received mail details screen) stored in the phonebook correctly and did you set a distinctive ring tone for that mail address in Select ring tone under Mail (recv.)? ● If you receive an SMS, a distinctive ring tone set in Mail (recv.) for the phone number in the phonebook sounds.	p.126 p.119 p.119 p.119 p.118 p.119
A string appears instead of image or i-motion	● The following indicate that the image or i-motion cannot be selected for the function. Select an image or i-motion that will not display the following: "Not available", "Expired file", "No preview data"	p.330 p.338

Problem	Points to check	Refer to
The color of the illumination flashing when receiving a message is different from what I selected for the mail address	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When the incoming lamp settings are duplicated, the priority applies. ● If you receive two or more messages, the incoming call lamp flashes following the settings of the illumination under Mail (recv.) that is set to the last received mail address. ● If the format of the sender's mail address is "(phone number)@docomo.ne.jp", save only that phone number as a mail address and set distinctive illumination for that mail address in Illumination under Mail (recv.). ● Is the sender's mail address (a mail address shown on the received mail details screen) stored in the phonebook correctly and did you set illumination for that mail address in Illumination under Mail (recv.)? ● If you receive an SMS, distinctive illumination set in Illumination under Mail (recv.) for the phone number in the phonebook flashes. 	<p>p.145 p.119</p> <p>p.119</p> <p>p.118</p> <p>p.119</p>
Cannot charge the FOMA terminal (the charge lamp of the FOMA terminal does not light)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is the battery pack properly attached to the FOMA terminal? ● Is the adapter firmly plugged into the electrical socket or cigarette lighter socket? ● Are the adapter and the FOMA terminal correctly connected (is the AC adapter firmly connected to the FOMA terminal or the desktop holder)? 	<p>p.42 p.44</p> <p>p.45</p>
The key does not sound when I press it	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is "Keypad sound" set to "OFF"? ● Is the FOMA terminal in manner mode? 	<p>p.127 p.130</p>
I cannot use Any key answer to answer a voice call/videophone call/PushTalk call	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is "Answer setting" set to "Quick silent" or "OFF"? ● You cannot use Any key answer to answer a videophone call. 	<p>p.74 —</p>
The other party's voice is difficult to hear during a call	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is the earpiece speaker properly placed against your ear? ● Is anything e.g. a sticker obstructing the earpiece speaker? ● Is anything obstructing the speaker in hands-free mode? ● Did you change the "Volume" setting? Change the setting so that you can hear the other party clearly. 	<p>p.26 — — p.75</p>
The other party's voice is too loud during a call	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Did you change the "Volume" setting? Change the setting so that you can hear the other party clearly. 	<p>p.75</p>
Pressing the external keys does not operate the folded FOMA terminal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is Keypad lock set? ● Is "External keys guard" set to "ON"? 	<p>p.167 p.169</p>
Pressing the Assist key does not check missed calls, etc. when the FOMA terminal is folded Pressing the Assist key for 1 second or longer does not start the music player	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is "Info notice setting" set to "OFF"? ● Is Keypad lock set? ● Is "External keys guard" set to "ON"? 	<p>p.80 p.167 p.169</p>
The date is displayed in Japanese	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is "Japanese" selected as the language? 	<p>p.47</p>
The display is dim	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is Brightness under Backlight set to "Level 1"? 	<p>p.138</p>
The display light of the display or keypad does not turn on	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is Lighting under Backlight set to "OFF"? ● Press and hold [5] for 1 second or longer to turn the backlight on or off. Note that pressing and holding [5] for 1 second or longer will turn off the backlight e.g. while composing a message. 	<p>p.138 —</p>
Receiving an incoming call immediately after turning on the power displays the phone number but does not display the name stored in the phonebook	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The FOMA terminal may be reading the FOMA card (UIM) immediately after turning on the power. The phonebook function may not be available then. 	<p>—</p>
It takes some time for the power to turn on after pressing and holding [5] for 1 second or longer	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Data checking may take time e.g. if the phonebook is full of data. 	<p>p.118</p>
Nothing appears on the display, but [5] and [5] are flashing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The FOMA terminal is in power saver mode. Press any key to release the power saver mode. 	<p>p.138</p>
Nothing appears on the image display	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is "Image display" set to "OFF"? 	<p>p.137</p>
The FOMA terminal does not perform incoming call operations (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing) when receiving a call	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The FOMA terminal does not perform incoming call operations (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing) until the set time is reached, when receiving a call from a phone number not stored in the phonebook or from a caller who does not notify his/her caller ID and if "Set mute seconds" under "Ring time(sec.)" is set to "ON". 	<p>p.174</p>

Problem	Points to check	Refer to
The figure of the accumulated charge does not increase	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The figure does not increase if it has already reached the limit. Perform "Reset total". 	p.408
Receiving an SMS does not display the sender's name stored in the phonebook	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Did you correctly store the sender's phone number on the phone number line () of the phonebook? 	p.107
A message is not automatically filtered	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the sender's mail address is "(Phone number)@docomo.ne.jp", save only the phone number in the Auto-sort settings. If the sender's mail address is not "(Phone number)@docomo.ne.jp", save the entire address including the domain in the Auto-sort settings. 	p.262 p.262
A message is not automatically received	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you have set "Receive option setting" to "ON", set it to "OFF". 	p.252 p.270
Cannot install the N903i communication setting file (driver) or make data communication	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you have set USB mode setting to "microSD mode" or "Print mode", set it to "Communication mode". 	p.361
i-mode, i-mode mail, i-αplli and i-channel cannot be connected	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is "Host selection" set to "i-mode"? If you had started using the FOMA terminal before you subscribed to i-mode, turn the FOMA terminal off and then turn it back on. 	p.224 —
The FOMA terminal does not perform receiving message operations (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing) when receiving a message	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is "Mail/Msg. ring time" set to "OFF"? Is Original lock for "Disp. recv. mail/msg." under "Incoming/Mail disp." set? Is "Receiving display" set to "Operation preferred"? 	p.130 p.163 p.270
A sent message is not saved to the Outbox	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is "Sort all" set to the folder of mail-connected i-αplli? Highlight the folder of mail-connected i-αplli then select "Open folder" from the function menu to confirm the setting. 	p.257 p.262
A received message is not saved to the Inbox, and "  (white)" does not disappear	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Does "  " appear on the folder of mail-connected i-αplli in the Inbox? Or is "Sort all" set to the folder of mail-connected i-αplli? Highlight the folder of mail-connected i-αplli then select "Open folder" from the function menu to confirm the setting. 	p.257 p.262 p.285
I was disconnected while sending a message, then received an SMS. A message appears when I retry	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> SMS interrupts communication and notifies you that a large amount of data is being transferred within a given time. Follow the contents of SMS and the displayed message. 	—
Images taken with the rear camera are flickered	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When you take pictures indoors, flickering may appear due to the effect of fluorescent lighting, etc. Changing the "Image tuning" setting may suppress flickering. 	p.195
Still images or movies shot with the rear camera look too bright	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> You may shoot them outside or in a bright place with "Image tuning" set to "Mode 1(50Hz)" or "Mode 2(60Hz)". Restore the tuning to "Auto" if it is not. 	p.195
Still images or movies look blurred	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set a mode suited to the scene being shot. 	p.194
Attempting to display an image displays "  " or Attempting to play for demonstration or see a preview displays "  "	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> "  " may appear when the image data is corrupted. 	—
The terminal operates slowly when any keypads are pressed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> It may occur if a large amount of data is stored on the FOMA terminal or if you exchange large data by using the microSD reader/writer function. 	—
Chance capture shooting shortens the shooting time	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Chance capture shooting saves control data together with movie data, which may shorten the shooting time. 	—

■ For overseas use

Problem	Points to check	Refer to
"  or "select net" does not disappear from the screen, and international roaming service cannot be used	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Are you out of international roaming service area or is the reception poor? ● See the international service guide such as "Mobile Phone User's Guide [WORLD SERVICE]" to check if the area or operator is available. ● Turn off the FOMA terminal then turn it back on the first time you use the service after you move from Japan to overseas. ● Launch "NW search mode" to search for a compatible operator. 	— — — p.450
A voice call or videophone call cannot be received	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is "Bar incoming when roam" set to "Activate"? ● Is "V-phone while packet" set to "V-phone priority"? 	p.451 p.89
The other party's caller ID is not notified The notified caller ID is not the other party's The FOMA terminal does not perform operations using phonebook data or Caller ID Notification	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● If the used network or operator does not notify caller ID, even notified caller IDs do not appear on the FOMA display. Depending on the used network or operator, the notified caller ID may be different from the other party's. 	—

If Any Error Message Appears

- Numbers enclosed in parentheses contained in i-mode error messages are codes used to distinguish errors sent from the i-mode Center.

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
"Activating mail security Cannot download"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● You cannot download or upgrade the mail-connected i-appli because the Inbox/Outbox or a folder used for the mail-connected i-appli is protected. To download or upgrade the mail-connected i-appli, release the mail security. 	p.171
"Activating mail security Unable to delete"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● You cannot delete mail-connected i-appli or its folder because the Inbox/Outbox or a folder used for the mail-connected i-appli is protected. To delete both the mail-connected i-appli and its folder, release the mail security. To delete a mail-connected i-appli only, select "NO" when you receive a message asking whether to delete a folder used for the mail-connected i-appli. 	p.171
"Activating restrict dialing"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● This message appears when you attempt to perform a prohibited operation when the restrict dialing is set. 	p.171
"Attached file is deleted"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● This message appears when an i-mode message received that you attempt to quote to send a reply has any file attached. It also appears if it is prohibited to attach the file to a message or output the file from the FOMA terminal when you attempt to forward an i-mode message. Press  to delete the attached file. 	—
"Authentication canceled (401)"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● This message appears when you press "Cancel" on the authentication screen. 	—
"Authentication type is not supported (401)"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● This message appears when the authentication did not go through. Press  to return to the previous page. 	—
"Cannot reset by this Ext. IC card"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● This message appears when you put the FeliCa mark close to an unregistered contactless IC card during user authentication with the IC card authentication function. 	p.168
"Cannot save attached file"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● This message appears when you receive a mail attached a file which cannot be stored via infrared data communication, OBEX communication or copy from the microSD memory card. 	—
"Cannot set this schedule"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● This message appears when you execute "Copy & add this" for a schedule with the same data and time as an existing schedule entry or when you receive it via infrared data exchange, iC communication or cable connection. 	—

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
"Caution! This SMS includes Phone Nos. or URLs. Be careful if you do not recognize the sender."	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when "Message scan" under "Scanning function" is set to "ON" and try to display a SMS contained phone number or URL in the message. Press ⓘ if you want to display a SMS message after checking its source. 	p.492
"Certificate is rejected (tampered)"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when an altered SSL certificate has been received. An SSL communication cannot be established with this site. This message appears when an altered TLS/SSL certificate has been received. A TLS/SSL communication cannot be established with this site. 	—
"Check new messages is set all OFF"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> New messages cannot be checked because none of the items is selected in "Set check new messages". Select items to check in "Set check new messages". 	p.271
"Connection failed (403)"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The attempt to access a site has failed for some reason. Retry connection. 	—
"Connection failed"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set "Caller ID Notification" to "ON" and retry. 	p.50
"Connection failed"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when the host setting is not correct. Set the host correctly in "Host selection" under Connection setting. The attempt to connect to i-mode has failed for some reason. Retry connection. 	p.224 —
"Connection interrupted"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> i-mode connection was interrupted due to poor reception. Move to a location where the reception is good before using the i-mode service. If this message appears even when the reception is good and "📶" appears, the site you are accessing is busy. Retry later. 	p.208 —
"Continue using i-αppli and transmit data?"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you select "NO" or "Terminate i-αppli" in response to the message "Data transmission is frequent Continue transmission?". Select "YES" to continue i-αppli communication. To quit using an i-αppli program, select "Terminate i-αppli". 	—
"Could not read"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The data cannot be copied due to some error. Exchange with a new microSD memory card then retry to copy. 	—
"Data in IC-card is full Unable to download Delete service?" "Data in IC-card is full Unable to run Delete service?" "Data in IC-card is full Unable to upgrade Delete service?"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you attempt to download Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli but the space is not enough on the IC card. Select "YES" to display already registered Osaifu-Keitai services, space (bytes) allocated by removing the service, and necessary area size. Select a service to remove, follow the message and launch i-αppli to remove the service. 	—
"Data is too long A part is deleted"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The size of address, subject or text or more than one data exceeds the maximum, and the Compose message screen appears with the excess part deleted. 	—
"Data is too long Please delete message"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The total length of the message text and quotation mark characters in the i-mode message to be quoted in a reply exceeds 5,000 double-byte characters. Delete some of the text to reduce the character count to 5,000 double-byte characters or fewer. 	—
"Data transmission is frequent Continue transmission?"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when the number of communications that are using i-αppli and have been established in a given time is extremely large. Select "YES" to continue to make i-αppli communication, or "NO" to quit the communication. To quit using an i-αppli program, select "Terminate i-αppli". 	—
"Data transmission is frequent Press CLR and confirm data transmission"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when the number of communications established from the i-αppli standby screen in a given time is extremely large. Press CLR to select whether to permit communication from the i-αppli standby screen or whether to exit the i-αppli standby screen. 	p.294
"Dial/Receive calls activating Original lock"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you attempt to perform a prohibited operation in Original lock set to "Dial/sending mail" or "Incoming/Mail disp". 	p.163

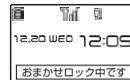
Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
"Download failed"	● This message appears if a communication error occurs or a data contains an error when you attempt to download data such as a melody, Chara-den character or download dictionary.	—
"Editing now Cannot delete"	● This message appears when you attempt to delete a mail message that is stored in the Draft and being edited.	—
"Enter correct Network Security Code"	● This message appears when you need to enter the network security code for a function but a wrong number was entered. Enter the correct network security code.	p.154
"Error in image Does not work correctly"	● This message appears when a Flash movie cannot be played due to an error found in the data.	—
"Error Register forwarding number"	● This message appears when you have subscribed to the Call Forwarding service and attempt to forward an incoming call by selecting "Call Forwarding" from the function menu without setting the forwarding number.	p.421
"Exceeds max number of simultaneous calls"	● You can make a PushTalk call to a maximum of four people at the same time.	—
"Failed to Copy all"	● The data cannot be copied due to some error. Exchange with a new microSD memory card then retry to copy.	—
"Failed to Copy this"	● The data cannot be copied due to some error. Exchange with a new microSD memory card then retry to copy.	—
"Format microSD for your phone"	● There is an error e.g. the microSD memory card is not formatted. Reformat the microSD memory card.	p.360
"Frame number of this page is not supported"	● The webpage cannot be displayed because the frame count exceeds the maximum that can be displayed on Full Browser.	—
"Function cannot operate any more"	● Exit another function before operating.	—
"i-appli To" function is not set"	● When you attempt to launch software from a site, message, the infrared data exchange function, the Bar code reader, IC card or ToruCa, it does not launch because the specified software is not permitted to be linked.	p.293
"i-appli stand-by display terminated due to security error" "Software terminated due to security error"	● This message appears when the i-appli or the i-appli standby screen (including the i-appli DX) terminated because you attempted to perform an unauthorized operation.	p.289 p.295
"Input error (205)"	● This message appears after you enter data on a website and send the data. Press  to reset the entered text (The set or entered contents are sent. This operation does not cancel sending).	—
"Insert microSD"	● This message appears when the microSD memory card is not inserted correctly or may be damaged. Check that the microSD memory card is properly inserted into the FOMA terminal.	p.353
"Insert UIM"	● This message appears when the FOMA card (UIM) is not correctly inserted or may be damaged. Make sure that the FOMA card (UIM) is correctly inserted.	p.39
"Invalid address"	● The address contains a ";" and is invalid. Delete any ";". ● The address of the received message contains more than 50 single-byte characters, and you cannot reply to it. ● SMS cannot be sent because the address contains a space or character other than numbers, "#", and "X". Delete any characters or spaces other than numbers, "#", and "X".	— — —
"Invalid content. Change i-motion type for replay"	● This message appears when you attempt to obtain a streaming-type i-motion while "i-motion type" is set to "Standard type".	p.232
"Invalid UIM Auto start not possible"	● This message appears when you attempt to automatically launch i-appli restricted by the FOMA card operational restriction function.	p.40
"Invalid UIM download not possible" "Invalid UIM start not possible" "Invalid UIM Unable to delete" "Invalid UIM Unable to save"	● This message appears when the inserted FOMA card (UIM) is not registered in FelICA.	—

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
"Invalid UIM Requested service not available"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you select a desktop icon for data protected by the FOMA card operational restriction function. This message appears when you select a screen memo, MessageR or MessageF protected by the FOMA card operational restriction function. 	p.40 p.40
"Invalid UIM Requested software failed to start"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you attempt to select and launch i-appli restricted by the FOMA card operational restriction function. 	p.40
"Invalid URL"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you select "OK" without entering a URL, or after you enter a URL incorrectly (a URL that does not start with "http:/" or "https:/" when setting the Home URL on the "Home URL" screen or entering a URL on the "Enter URL" screen. Enter a URL correctly. 	p.214 p.223 p.321
"Is the ToruCa automatic reading function in a mobile phone used through the reader/writer?"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you hold the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer unit with "Auto reading setting" set to "OFF". Select "YES" to use the auto reading function. 	p.303
"Memory full Cannot move"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you transfer data to or from the Secret folder and the destination folder is full of data. Delete unnecessary data stored in the destination folder and retry transfer. 	p.160
"Memory No. XXX Cannot overwrite"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you attempt to add an entry to the same number as a memory number for the entry added as secret data while the mode is not secret mode or secret data only mode. This message appears when you attempt to add an entry to the same number as a memory number for the entry set to Automatic display. Press ⏪ to return to the Edit phonebook screen. Select "No", and enter an available memory number or use ↺ to select Auto to add it. 	p.158 p.115
"Memory shortage"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when the software cannot be launched due to memory shortage. 	—
"Memory shortage Quit"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The process was interrupted due to memory shortage. When composing an i-mode message, you may be unable to enter up to 5,000 double-byte characters depending on the condition such as the number of tasks running or the combination of character types. 	—
"Memory shortage Return to Full Browser menu"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The process was interrupted due to memory shortage. Press ⏪ to return to the Full Browser menu. 	—
"Memory shortage Return to i-mode menu"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The process was interrupted due to memory shortage. Press ⏪ to return to the i-mode menu. 	—
"Message too long to add header & signature"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears if the header/signature cannot be automatically added when you forward an i-mode message because the character count exceeds 5,000 double-byte with the header/signature added. 	—
"Message too long to add header"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when the character count of the text and header in total exceeds 5,000 double-byte and the header cannot be added. 	—
"Message too long to add signature"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when the character count of the text and signature in total exceeds 5,000 double-byte and the signature cannot be added. 	—
"No data"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when there is no phonebook entry that matches the search conditions when you perform Phonebook search. 	—
"No requested software"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you select a desktop icon for already deleted i-appli. This message appears if there is no corresponding software when the i-appli is launched from a mail message, the infrared data exchange function, the bar code reader or IC card. 	— —
"No response"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when the user authentication fails due to its timeout restriction with the IC card authentication function. 	p.168
"No response (408)"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No response has been received from the site and the communication is interrupted. Retry connection. 	—
(During infrared data exchange/ iC communication) "No response Retry?"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The receiving terminal cannot be found/detected. For infrared data exchange, place the terminals so that their infrared data ports face each other. For iC communication, check the FeliCa mark and retry. Select "YES" and press ⏪ to try again. 	p.365

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
"No Switch"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you cannot switch to a videophone call during a voice call because the other party is establishing a packet communication (including i-mode). Check the other party's status and retry. 	p.57
"Not correspond contents"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Information read by the Bar code reader cannot be recognized because there are some contents unsupported by the FOMA terminal. 	—
"Other function active Cannot start" "Other function active Cannot operate"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you attempt to perform an unavailable operation but another function is running. 	—
"Out of service area"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you attempt to use an i-mode service out of range or in a location where radio waves do not reach you. Move until "📶" appears, then use the i-mode service. 	p.208
"Page is not found (404)"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The site is not found. It may not exist. 	—
"Password is not correct (401)"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when the authentication did not go through on the "Authentication" or "Re-authentication" screen. To re-authenticate, select "YES". 	—
"PIN1 code blocked"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when the power is turned on during PIN1 code lock. Press ⏻ to display the PUK code entry screen, then enter the PUK code correctly to release the lock. 	p.156
"Please wait"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The voice line or packet communication device may be malfunctioning. Otherwise, the voice line/packet communication network may be congested. Attempt to use a voice call, videophone call or i-mode later. You can still make an emergency call (110, 119 and 118). However, you may not be connected depending on the condition. 	—
"Please wait for a while (packet)"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The packet communication device may be malfunctioning. Otherwise, the packet communication network may be congested. Retry later. 	—
"PUK blocked"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you attempt to power on or perform operations related to the FOMA card (UIM) when the PUK code is blocked. Contact the DoCoMo service counter. 	p.155
"Reading UIM Cannot start"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you attempt to perform an operation related to the FOMA card (UIM) while the FOMA card (UIM) is being read. Retry later. 	—
"Receiving failed Channel information cannot display"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you display the channel list screen for the first time after purchase or when you attempt to display the channel list screen after resetting the i-channel, changing the i-channel host URL, initializing the FOMA terminal or exchanging the FOMA card (UIM), and then if i-channel information cannot be obtained. Move until "📶" appears, then retry to display the channel list screen. 	p.234
"Replace with a new one or check the disk"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the microSD memory card. 	p.357
"Replay period has expired Delete?"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you attempt to play i-motion whose playback period has expired. Select "YES" to delete the Chaku-Uta-Full[®]. 	—
"Replay period has expired"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you select a desktop icon for i-motion whose playback period has expired. 	—
"Root certificate has expired Do you connect?"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when an SSL server certificate out of the validity period has been received. To connect, select "YES". Otherwise, select "NO". This message appears when you are asked to send a client certificate while accessing an SSL website. 	p.211
"Root certificate is not valid"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you receive a TLS/SSL certificate with the "Certificate" set to "Invalid". Check the contents of the certificate, set the certificate to valid and reconnect. 	p.228
"Service is not registered"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The i-mode service is not available because you have not subscribed to the service. A separate subscription is required to use the service. If you had started using the FOMA terminal before you subscribed to i-mode, turn the FOMA terminal off and then turn it back on. 	—

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
"Service is used by the previous software Unable to download Delete a service?" "Service is used by the previous software Unable to update Delete a service?"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the same service has been already downloaded, you cannot download, upgrade or start a new service unless you delete the existing service. The service to be deleted will be displayed if you select "YES", and delete the existing service. 	—
"Size of this page is not supported"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The size of the data downloaded from a website (via i-mode or full browser) or Internet webpage exceeds the maximum of one page. The download is interrupted, and only the downloaded data is displayed. This message appears when the limit is exceeded while downloading a melody, download dictionary or Chara-den character. 	—
"Software for this folder deleted Refer to Open folder"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The software cannot be launched because the mail-connected i-appli corresponding to the selected mail folder is deleted. Select a message contained in the folder from the function menu. 	p.257 p.262
"Software is stopped because of error"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you are running a program and an error occurs preventing further operation. 	—
"Some addresses is invalid"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you attempt to reply to two or more addresses but not all addresses are valid. 	—
"Some attached file will be deleted"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> It is prohibited to attach to a message or output from the FOMA terminal the file attached to an i-mode message that you attempt to forward. Press  to delete the file that cannot be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal. 	—
"SSL session cannot be established"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when a connection to an SSL site or website was not established. Retry connection. 	—
"SSL session failed"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when an SSL communication is interrupted due to an error occurring during authentication for an SSL connection. 	—
"Syntax error" "Syntax error (XXX)"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The received data contains an error and cannot be displayed. The data is discarded. A number indicating the contents of an error may appear in "XXX". 	—
"Talking now Cannot start" "Talking now Cannot operate"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you attempt to perform an operation that cannot be performed during a call. 	p.393 p.471 p.472
"Terminal and UIM ID will be sent"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message may appear while you are viewing a site or website. Select "YES" to send your mobile phone manufacturer number. Otherwise, select "NO". 	p.211
"The data may not be replayed"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when the format of the acquired i-motion is not MP4 (Mobile MP4). 	—
"This certificate has expired Do you connect?"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when an SSL server certificate out of the validity period has been received. To connect, select "YES". Otherwise, select "NO". This message appears when you attempt to access an SSL website but the "Set time" setting is not made. Make the "Set time" setting. 	— p.49
"This certificate is not valid for this URL Do you connect?"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when the CN (name) of an SSL certificate does not match. To connect, select "YES". Otherwise, select "NO". 	—
"This data can no longer be replayed Delete?"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you attempt to play i-motion with no playback count remaining. Select "YES" to delete the Chaku-Uta-Full[®]. 	—
"This data can no longer be replayed"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you select a desktop icon for i-motion with no playback count remaining. 	—
"This data is not supported by this phone"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you attempt to acquire unsupported i-motion or data other than i-motion. 	—
"This site is not certified Do you connect?"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you receive an unsupported SSL certificate. To connect, select "YES". Otherwise, select "NO". 	—
"This software contains an error" "This software contains an error Unable to download"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when the software data contains an error and you cannot download or upgrade the software. 	—
"This software is not supported by this phone"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when the software you attempt to download is incompatible with the FOMA terminal and cannot be downloaded. 	—

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
"This UIM cannot be recognized"	● This message appears when the inserted FOMA card cannot be used on the FOMA terminal. Make sure that the correct FOMA card (UIM) is inserted.	p.39
"Time out"	● Accessing a site or sending a message was interrupted because the time, which is set in "Set connection timeout", has elapsed. Retry later.	p.224
"TLS/SSL session failed"	● This message appears when an SSL communication is interrupted due to an error occurring during authentication for a TLS/SSL connection.	—
"Too much data was entered"	● Too many characters are entered, and the data cannot be sent. Reduce the number of characters before trying to resend.	p.212
"Unable to download Data exceeds maximum size (452)"	● This message appears when the size of the data to be downloaded exceeds the maximum and cannot be downloaded.	—
"Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error"	● The playback period or time limit of the partly-downloaded Chaku-Uta-Full® has expired. The remaining data cannot be downloaded. The partly-saved data will be deleted.	—
"Unable to receive"	● This message appears when you attempt to obtain data and a data error or communication error occurs.	—
"Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504)"	● The attempt to access a site has failed for some reason. Retry connection.	—
"Unable to support this card"	● The FOMA terminal does not support this microSD memory card. Use a compatible microSD memory card.	p.352
"Upper limit has been exceeded Connection failed"	● The upper limit set for a Limit billing plan (Type Limit and Family Wide Limit) is exceeded.	—
"URL address changed (301)"	● The site has been moved and the URL has been changed. Reregister if it is bookmarked or registered as a desktop icon or Home URL.	p.147 p.215 p.223 p.321
"URL is too long to register"	● The URL exceeds 256 single-byte characters and cannot be bookmarked or stored as the Home URL.	—
"Usage is currently restricted Try again later"	● This message appears when you have subscribed to i-mode Pake-Houdai flat-rate service and then a large amount of data is exchanged in a given time. You may not be able to access for a while. Use i-mode later.	—
"Wrong password"	● This message appears when you enter a wrong password on the password entry screen in viewing or downloading a PDF document.	p.219 p.371
"Wrong security code"	● This message appears when you need to enter the security code for a function but a wrong number was entered. Enter the correct security code.	p.154
"You have no certificate Do you connect?"	● The user certificate has not been downloaded. Select "YES" to view the site. Some sites cannot be viewed without the certificate.	p.228
"Your certificate has expired Do you connect?"	● The site requests the user certificate, but the validity period has expired. Select "YES", and you may be able to continue. It is recommended to download a new certificate.	p.228
"Your certificate is requested Send your certificate?"	● The site requests the user certificate. Select "YES" to send the certificate, otherwise "NO".	—
"おまかせロック中です"	● Omakase Lock is set. While Omakase Lock is set, all key operations are locked except receiving a voice call/video phone call and turning the power on/off.	p.158



NOTE

- ◆ Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are used by the IP (information service provider) to identify you and provide you with customized services and to confirm that you can use content provided by the IP.
- ◆ Your Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are sent to the IP (information service provider) via the Internet and may be disclosed to a third party. However, your phone number, address, age and sex are not disclosed to the IP (information service provider), etc.

Warranty and After-Sales Service

Warranty

- Make sure that a warranty is included when you purchase a mobile phone. Check the contents, the information about “the shop or date of purchase”, etc. and keep the card in a safe place. If the card does not contain necessary information, immediately contact the shop and request them to fill in the card. The warranty is valid for one year from the date of purchase written on the warranty.
- The whole or part of the product, including its accessories, is subject to improvement without notice.
- Stored data such as phonebook entries may be altered or lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. It is recommended to take notes of the stored data just in case. In the course of repairs on your FOMA terminal, data downloaded via i-mode or i-appli are not transferred to a repaired mobile phone due to copyright law.
 - * You can store data such as phonebook on the microSD memory card on your FOMA terminal.
 - * You can move movie or i-motion to the microSD memory card and store data for i-appli on your FOMA terminal.
 - * Using the Data Security Service (a pay service requiring subscription) allows you to store data such as phonebook on your FOMA terminal in the Data Security Center.
 - * If you have a PC (Windows 2000, Windows XP), you can transfer the data to your PC by using the dedicated DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.430) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional), then back up the data on the PC.

After-sales service

● If you have problems with your FOMA terminal

Before requesting repairs, see the “Malfunction Checklist” in this manual.

If you still have problems, call at the technical inquiries number described on the back of the manual.

● If, after contacting DoCoMo, you are informed that your FOMA terminal is in need of repairs

Take your FOMA terminal to a designated repair shop. The repair shop is only open during business hours. Take your warranty card with you.

■ During the warranty period

- Repairs will be made free of charge based on the provisions of the warranty.
- Take the warranty card with you when requesting repairs. Charges will apply even when the mobile phone is still under warranty if the warranty card is not submitted, or if malfunction or damage is the result of mishandling by the subscriber.
- Charges will apply even within the warranty period for repairs resulting from use of devices and accessories not specified by DoCoMo.

■ The FOMA terminal may not be able to be repaired

Mobile phones cannot be repaired in the following cases: the water exposure detection sticker shows water exposure; tests determine that corrosion has occurred due to water exposure, condensation, or perspiration; or the circuit board has been damaged or altered. These cases are not covered by the warranty, and any repairs that may be possible will be carried out at the subscriber's expense.

■ After the warranty period has expired

Repairs can be carried out upon request but at the subscriber's expense.

■ Stock period of parts

Replacement parts (required for maintaining the functionality of the FOMA terminal) will be kept in stock for a minimum of six years following the termination of production. However, note that depending on the failure part repairs may not be able to perform owing to lack of repair parts. Repairs may still be able to be performed even after the stock period has expired. Call at the technical inquiries number described on the back of the manual.

Important

- Do not attempt to modify phones or accessories.
 - Modification may result in fire, injury, or malfunction.
 - Technical standards have been established by law in order to prevent radio wave interference and network disruption. Mobile phones or cards that do not meet these technical standards cannot be used.
 - Repairs to mobile phones that have been modified (disassembled, altered, painted, etc.) will only be carried out if the user agrees to have the mobile phone restored to its original state in line with DoCoMo standards. Requests for repair of modified mobile phones may be rejected.
 - If malfunction or damage occurs as a result of modification, charges will apply even if the mobile phone is still under warranty.
- Do not peel off the manufacturer's specification sticker put on the FOMA terminal.
The manufacturer's specification sticker certifies that the mobile phone meets technical standards. It may not be possible to carry out repairs if the specifications cannot be confirmed because the sticker has been removed, altered, etc.
- The function settings or information about total call time may be cleared (reset) due to malfunction or repair of the FOMA terminal. In this case, make the settings again.
- Magnetic components are used for the following parts of the FOMA terminal. A cash card (ATM card, bank card), etc, which is easily affected by magnetism, may become unusable if it is kept close to the components:
Neuropointer key, speaker, earpiece speaker
- If your FOMA terminal gets wet or moist, immediately turn it off, remove the battery pack, and take the FOMA terminal to a repair shop as soon as possible. However, the FOMA terminal may not be able to be repaired depending on the condition.

Memory dial (phonebook function) and downloaded information

- It is your responsibility to back up all data stored on your FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any deletion, alteration, or loss of data.
- Upgrading the model or repairing your FOMA terminal may alter or erase data that you have created, copied or downloaded. NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any deletion, alteration, or loss of data. As a matter of convenience, NTT DoCoMo may replace your FOMA terminal with the substitute instead of repairing.
Data including downloaded images/ring tones and user-created data will be transferred only in the course of repairs. (Some data cannot be transferred. In addition, there may be cases where data cannot be transferred depending on the malfunction.)
* It may take time or be unable to transfer depending on the amount of data stored on the FOMA terminal.

<Software Update>

Updating Software

Check if your phone needs an update, and if necessary, download and update the required software via packet communications.

The latest information regarding software updates can be viewed on the DoCoMo website or in “お知らせ” (News) under iMenu.

- Packet communications charges do not apply to perform software updates.
- Software may be updated in the following two methods: Immediate update and Timer update
Immediate update: The software update is performed at once.
Timer update: A time and date can be designated to perform the software update automatically.
- You can update software if the i-mode host is set to the user defined host.
- Software updates (downloading and rewriting) may take time.
- Software updates are performed via SSL communications with the server at DoCoMo. It is therefore necessary to have a valid certificate. (Default setting: Valid. Setting procedure→p.228).
- Make sure that the mobile phone battery is fully charged when performing software updates.
- It is recommended that you perform software updates when the handset is stationary and in a location with good signal quality (three bars for the antenna icon).
* If the reception becomes poor and then the download is interrupted, attempt to update again in a location with good signal quality.
- Updating software with the “PIN1 code entry set” set to “ON” displays the PIN1 code entry screen in the automatic restart after installing the software. You cannot make/receive calls or perform communication until you enter the correct PIN1 code.

- You cannot update software:
 - When the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted
 - When the FOMA card (UIM) is used incorrectly
 - While PIN lock is set
 - When the PUK code is locked
 - When the date and time are not set
 - When you receive a call
 - When you receive a message or SMS
 - During a voice call
 - During a videophone call
 - During a PushTalk call
 - During i-mode communication
 - During 64K data communication
 - During packet communication
 - While Dial lock is set
 - While Omakase Lock is set
 - While Keypad lock is set
 - While Self mode is set
 - While Original lock is set
 - When you are out of range
 - When packet dialing is restricted
 - During international roaming
 - When you are using mova terminal for the Dual Network service
 - When you are using a microSD reader/writer
 - While another function is running
- Calls, communications and other functions are not available while software is being updated, though voice calls can be answered while downloading.
- If the software has already been updated, the message “No update is needed Please continue to use as before” appears when you check for new software updates.
- After updating software, the i-mode Center storage status icon disappears. In addition, if the receive option is set to “ON” and a message is received while updating software, the message notification screen may not appear after the software has been updated.
- When you update software, the FOMA terminal-specific information (model, product number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for software updates managed by DoCoMo). The information sent to DoCoMo is used only for updating software.
- It is possible to perform software updates while keeping your Phonebook entries, camera images, downloaded data and other data saved on the phone intact. However, note that in some cases data cannot be protected depending on the condition of your mobile phone (malfunction, damage, water exposure, etc.).
- It is recommended that you back up necessary data. (Note that it may not be possible to back up some data such as downloaded data.)
- If the update fails, the message “Rewrite failed” will appear and all operations will become unavailable. In this case, please seek advice at a repair counter designated by DoCoMo.

NOTE

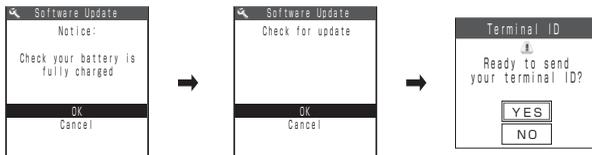
- ◆ Do not remove the battery pack while updating software. Doing so may cause the update to fail.
- ◆ When the software update is completed but you do not confirm it, the desktop icon “” (Update complete) appears on the standby screen. Select “” and enter the security code to see the detailed results of the update.

Checking whether software update is required

1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Software Update” ▶ Enter your security code

2 Check the notes ▶ Check whether software update is required

Now it is required to send mobile phone-specific information to the server.



3 The check result appears

■ When “Update is needed” appears

- ▶ Select “Now update” or “Reserve”

Select “Now update” to update the software immediately. → p.489

Select “Reserve” to update on the set time. → p.490



■ When “No update is needed” appears

- ▶ 

Continue using the FOMA terminal as there is no need to update the software.

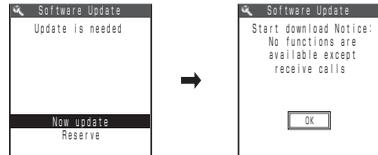


Updating software immediately <Now update>

1 Check result screen (p.489) ▶ “Now update” ▶ Press when “Start download” appears

Download will start immediately.

Download will start after a while even if you do not press .



2 After download is finished and the message “Download is complete Rewrite software” appears, press

Software update will start.

Rewrite will start after a while even if you do not press . It may take long to start rewriting.



All keys are disabled during software rewriting. You cannot stop rewriting.

Completing the rewrite will automatically restart the FOMA terminal.

After reloading, the terminal will automatically connect to the server to check that the update has been completed. When the message “Software update is complete” appears, press . Now software update is completed.



NOTE

- ◆ If you interrupt the download, data that has been downloaded until then is deleted.
- ◆ Once you start downloading, the update starts automatically hereafter without having to select any menus.
- ◆ The screen on the right may appear if the server is busy.
In this case, select “Reserve” to perform the reserved update.



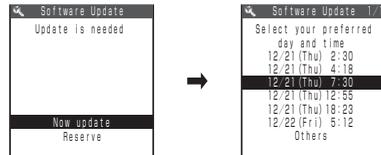
Selecting the date and time to update software <Reserved update>

If it takes a long time to download or when the server is busy, you can beforehand select the time to start software update by communicating with the server.

<Example: To reserve 7:30 on December 21 (Thursday)>

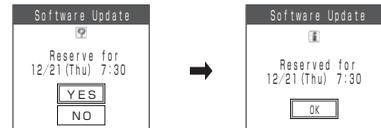
1 Check result screen (p.489) ▶ “Reserve” ▶ Select date and time

- If you do not want to reserve any of the times shown
▶ “Others” → p.491

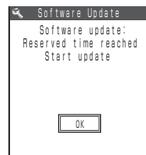


2 Check the selected date and time ▶ “YES”

- Software update is reserved.
- If you want to change the date and/or time
▶ “NO”



The screen on the right appears at the reserved time and the FOMA terminal starts updating software automatically. Charge the battery fully, put the FOMA terminal in a place where the reception is good, and set the FOMA terminal to standby before the reserved time. Hereafter, operate in the same steps as “Updating software immediately <Now update>” (p.489).



NOTE

- ◆ The reserved time for software update will be based on the server's time.
- ◆ When the reserved time for software update is the same as the alarm time, the software update is given priority.
- ◆ Software update may not launch at the scheduled time if another function is running.
- ◆ If the scheduled time is reached while you are on the phone or receiving a call or message, software update launches after you finish talking or receiving a message.
- ◆ If you perform “Initialize” (p.415) after the reservation procedure is completed, software update does not launch at the scheduled time. Reschedule the time for update.

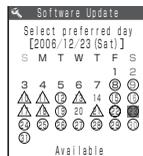
● If you select “Others”

You can select the desired date and time if you select “Others” in Step 1 on p.490.

1 Select a desired date

On the selection screen, it is shown as below how the hours are reserved for each day:

- : Available
- △: Almost full
- None: Full

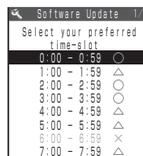


2 Select an hour

On the selection screen, it is shown as below if each hour is available:

- : Available
- △: Almost full
- ×: Full

Selecting an hour communicates with the server again to display the candidates.



3 Confirm the software update time

Checking the selected time and selecting “YES” will communicate with the server again. Software update is reserved.



● Checking the reservation

<Example: To cancel the reservation after checking it>

1 (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Software Update” ▶ Enter your security code

2 “Cancel”

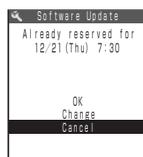
■ To accept the reserved date and time

▶ “OK”

■ To change the date and time

▶ “Change”

After sending mobile phone-specific information to the server, follow the steps taken in selecting “Others”. → p.491



3 When the message “Cancel this reservation?” appears, select “YES”

Now send mobile phone-specific information to the server.

NTT DoCoMo will never disclose or forward your mobile phone-specific information (model and product number) to a third party.

When the message “The reservation is canceled” appears, press . The reservation is canceled.



Protecting the FOMA Terminal from Harmful Data

Firstly update the pattern data.

When the FOMA terminal is downloading external files or programs from sites or i-mode messages, this function scans the data and deletes any data or cancels program launch where the data or program could cause a fault.

- Pattern data is used for the check. Update the pattern data when it is upgraded because a problem has been detected. → p.492
- The scanning function prevents data that causes some problems from invading your FOMA terminal when viewing a site or receiving a message. If the pattern data that fixes the error is not installed on your FOMA terminal or if the pattern data does not exist, the scanning function cannot prevent the error from occurring.
- The pattern data varies depending on the model of the FOMA terminal. As a matter of convenience, NTT DoCoMo may discontinue to distribute pattern data for the model if three years have passed since it was first released.
- Ensure that the correct date (year, month and day) is set on the FOMA terminal.
- When you set the auto-update or update the pattern data, the FOMA terminal-specific information (model, manufacturer number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for pattern data updates managed by DoCoMo). The information sent to DoCoMo is used only for the scanning function.
- The pattern data update will be suspended if a voice call is received or if the terminal moves out of range.

Setting the scanning function <Set scan>

Default setting

Scan: ON Message scan: ON

Setting the scanning function to "ON" will check data and programs automatically when they are executed.

Setting Message scan to "ON" will check SMS messages automatically.

1 (MENU) ▶ "Settings" ▶ "Lock/Security" ▶ "Scanning function"

The "Scanning function" screen appears.

2 "Set scan" ▶ "Scan" or "Message scan" ▶ "ON"

- If a message appears asking whether to change the settings ▶ "YES"

* If you enable the scanning function and it detects potentially harmful data, the event is displayed at one of the five warning levels. → p.493

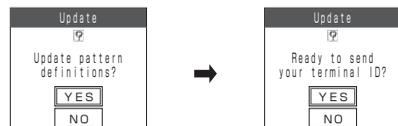


NOTE

- ◆ Even if "Message scan" is set to "ON", the voice mail notice call is not subject to check.

Updating pattern data <Update>

1 Scanning function screen (p.492) ▶ "Update" ▶ "YES" ▶ "YES"



*If no pattern data update is required, the message "Pattern definitions are up-to-date" appears. Continue using the current pattern data.

NOTE

- ◆ Even if the update is informed via the network, the pattern data cannot be automatically updated during i-mode, packet communication or international roaming, or while another function is running.

Automatically updating pattern data <Set auto-update>

- 1 Scanning function screen (p.492) ▶ “Set auto-update” ▶ “ON” ▶ “YES” ▶ “YES”

Viewing the scan results

■ Viewing scanned problems

```

Following problems
were detected
Problem element1
Problem element2
Problem element3
Problem element4
Problem element5
Other:xxxxx
[Return]
    
```

The scanning function detects up to five problems and displays a list of them, starting with the highest-level problem. If six or more problems were detected, the names of sixth and subsequent problems are omitted.

The rest of the problem elements (sixth and subsequent), whose names are omitted, appear as follows:

1 - 9998: The remaining count appears as it is.

9999 or more: “Other:9999” appears regardless of the count.

■ Viewing the scan results

Warning level 0	Warning level 1	Warning level 2	Warning level 3	Warning level 4
<pre> Operation may not run properly </pre>	<pre> Operation may not run properly Cancel operation? </pre>	<pre> Operation may not run properly Canceling operation </pre>	<pre> Operation may not run properly Delete data? </pre>	<pre> Operation may not run properly Deleting data </pre>
[Set] . . . Continues operation.	[Cancel] Cancels and ends operation. [Skip] Continues operation.	[Set] . . . Cancels and ends operation.	[Delete] Deletes data and ends operation. [Back] Cancels and ends operation.	[Set]. . . Deletes data and ends operation.

NOTE

- ◆ A message other than the above may appear depending on the condition.

Checking the Pattern Definitions Version <Version>

- 1 Scanning function screen (p.492) ▶ “Version”

Specifications

Items		FOMA N903i	
Size		Height 105mm x Width 49mm x Thickness 24mm (When folded)	
Weight		Approx. 112g (Battery pack attached)	
Color LCD	Type	Display (Internal): TFT LCD 262,144 colors Image Display (External): TFT LCD 65,536 colors	
	Size	Display (Internal): 2.5 inches Image Display (External): 1.0 inches	
	Pixels	Display (Internal): 480 x 690 dots Image Display (External): 120 x 90 dots	
Continuous Standby Time		Stationary: Approx. 680 hrs. In transit: Approx. 500 hrs.	
Continuous Talk Time		Voice Communications: Approx. 190 min. Videophone: Approx. 100 min.	
Maximum Output		0.25W	
Battery Type		Lithium-ion	
Battery Voltage		3.8V	
Battery Capacity		850mAh	
Charging Time		AC Adapter/DC Adapter: Approx. 120 min.	
Image Sensor	Type	Front Camera: CMOS Rear Camera: CMOS	
	Size	Front Camera: 1/8 inches Rear Camera: 1/3.2 inches	
Camera	Effective Pixels	Front Camera: Approx. 0.33 mill. pixels Rear Camera: Approx. 3.2 mill. pixels	
	Maximum Recorded Pixels	Front Camera: Approx. 0.31 mill. pixels Rear Camera: Approx. 3.2 mill. pixels	
	Digital Zoom	Front Camera: Up to approx. 2x (Up to approx. 2x on the videophone) Rear Camera: Up to approx. 9x (Up to approx. 9x on the videophone)	
Record	Still Image	Shooting Size	QXGA (2,048 dots wide x 1,536 dots high) UXGA (1,616 dots wide x 1,212 dots high) SXGA (1,280 dots wide x 960 dots high) VGA+High (480 dots wide x 690 dots high) VGA (640 dots wide x 480 dots high) VGA+High (480 dots wide x 640 dots high) JAVA (VGA) (480 dots wide x 480 dots high) CIF (352 dots wide x 288 dots high) Screen (240 dots wide x 345 dots high) Stand-by (240 dots wide x 320 dots high) JAVA (QVGA) (240 dots wide x 240 dots high) QCIF (176 dots wide x 144 dots high) SubQCIF (128 dots wide x 96 dots high)
		File Format	JPEG
	Movie	Movie Shooting Size	QVGA (320 dots wide x 240 dots high) QCIF (176 dots wide x 144 dots high) SubQCIF (128 dots wide x 96 dots high)
		Movie File Format	MP4
		Frame Rate	Up to 30 fps

- Continuous talk time is an estimate of the talk time when radio reception is normal.
- Continuous standby time is an estimate of the standby time when the FOMA terminal is folded and remains within an area where radio reception is normal. In certain circumstances, talk (or communications) and standby times may drop to as low as half the times shown due to the battery charge, function settings, temperature, or radio reception in the area (weak or no reception). Talk (or communications) and standby times will be less when you use i-mode. These times will also be less when you compose an i-mode mail, run downloaded i-αppli, launch the i-αppli standby display or play music even without making calls or using i-mode.
- Continuous standby time for stationary is an average estimate of the standby time when the FOMA terminal is folded and remains within an area where radio reception is normal.
- Continuous standby time in transit is an average estimate of the standby time in "Stationary", "In transit" and "Out of range" states when the FOMA terminal is folded and remains within an area where radio reception is normal.
- Talk (or communications) and standby times will be less when you insert the microSD memory card, run data communications or multi access, or use the camera or light.

Number of Items that can be Stored, Registered and Protected on the FOMA Terminal

Item		Store/Register	Protect
Phonebook		700 max. ^{*1}	—
Schedule	Schedule	100	—
	Holiday	100	—
	Anniversary	100	—
To Do list		100	—
Mail (SMS + i-mode)	Inbox	1,000 max. ^{*2*3*4}	1,000 max. ^{*2}
	Outbox	400 max. ^{*2*3*4}	200 max. ^{*2}
	Draft	20 max. ^{*2}	—
Deco-mail template		45 max. ^{*5}	—
Message	MessageR	100 max. ^{*2}	50 max. ^{*2}
	MessageF	100 max. ^{*2}	50 max. ^{*2}
Bookmark	i-mode	100 ^{*6}	—
	Full browser	100 ^{*6}	—
Screen memo		100 max. ^{*2}	50 max. ^{*2}
i-appli		200 max. ^{*2}	—
	mail-connected i-appli	5	—
ToruCa		100 max. ^{*2}	—
Still image		480 max. ^{*2*4}	—
Movie/i-motion		100 max. ^{*2*6}	—
Chara-den		10 ^{*5}	—
Melody		400 max. ^{*2}	—
Kisekai Tool		100 max. ^{*2*5}	—
PDF data		400 max. ^{*2}	—
Music data		100 max. ^{*2}	—

*1 : Up to 50 phonebooks can be stored on the FOMA card (UIM).

*2 : Actual storable or registrable counts may be decreased depending on the data size.

*3 : Up to 20 more received or sent SMS messages can be additionally stored on the FOMA card (UIM). →p.281

*4 : Up to 100 items can be additionally stored on the secret folder.

*5 : Pre-installed data are included.

*6 : Up to 10 items can be additionally stored or registered on the secret folder.

■ Important

- It is recommended to back up the stored data by taking notes or saving onto a microSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC by using DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.430) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- Stored data may be lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any data loss. Take notes, save data to a microSD memory card or use DoCoMo keitai datalink to save data to your PC just in case.

Specific Absorption Rate of Mobile Phones

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of mobile phones

This model phone FOMA N903i meets the MIC's* technical regulation for exposure to radio waves. The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)** averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP***.

All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this model phone is 1.15 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC), a Registered Certification Agency on the Radio Law. The test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please visit the following websites:

World Health Organization (WHO): <http://www.who.int/peh-emf/>

ICNIRP: <http://www.icnirp.de/>

MIC: <http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/index.htm>

TELEC: http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/Index_e.htm

NTT DoCoMo: <http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/product/>

NEC: <http://www.n-keitai.com/lineup/> (in Japanese only)

Association of Radio Industries and Businesses: <http://www.arib-emf.org/index.html> (in Japanese only)

* : Ministry of Internet Affairs and Communications

** : The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.

*** : International Commission on Non-ionizing Radiation Protection

Declaration of Conformity

The product "FOMA N903i" is declared to conform with the essential requirements of European Union Directive 1999/5/EC Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 3.1(a), 3.1 (b) and 3.2. The Declaration of Conformity can be found on <http://www.n-keitai.com/lineup/index.html> (in Japanese only).

This mobile phone complies with the EU requirements for exposure to radio waves.

Your mobile phone is a radio transceiver, designed and manufactured not to exceed the SAR* limits** for exposure to radio-frequency (RF) energy, which SAR* value, when tested for compliance against the standard was 1.118 W/kg. While there may be differences between the SAR* levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet*** the EU requirements for RF exposure.

* The exposure standard for mobile phones employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR.

** The SAR limit for mobile phones used by the public is 2.0 watts/kilogram (W/kg) averaged over ten grams of tissue, recommended by The Council of the European Union. The limit incorporates a substantial margin of safety to give additional protection for the public and to account for any variations in measurements.

*** Tests for SAR have been conducted using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the phone while operating can be well below the maximum value. This is because the phone is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a base station antenna, the lower the power output.

Export Administration Regulations

This product and its accessories are subject to the Japan Export Administration Regulations (the "Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Law" and its related regulations). When exporting this product and its accessories, take the required steps at your expense and under your responsibility. For more details, contact the Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry (METI).

● Index/Quick Manual

Index.....	498
Quick Manual.....	506

Index

Index search

- This Index functions as an alphabetical content list as well. This provides words and terms not only described in this manual, but also summarized for description. If you cannot find the item you are looking for, use another keyword to search.

<Example: To download Chara-den>

Chara-den	85, 345
action	345
control	345
delete	364
display	345
download	221
guide to the Chara-den list	345
Memory info	346
Rec. Chara-den	347

download (acquire)	
Chaku-Uta-Full®	382
Chara-den	221
data file	221
i-αpli	285
Image	218
i-motion	230
Kisekae Tool	221
melody	219

- "Function" index is included following "Alphabet/Numeric" section. This helps you to learn the function menu (p.37).

Alphabet/Numeric

A

AC adapter	44
Access reader	201
access site (program)	
view site	209
accessories	473
Activate notice call	419
Add	
Schedule	399
To Do list	402
add	
Bookmark	215
Original menu	142
PushTalk phonebook	98
adding items to the original menu	142
Additional service	426
address list	269
add, edit and delete folder	
Bookmark	216
Data box	328
mail	262
microSD	362
ToruCa	301
adjust volume	
GPS function (notification tone)	128
i-αpli vol.	288
Ring volume	76
Volume	75
after-sales service	486
alarm	395
actions	396
check	397
stop	397
Alarm clock	398
Alarm setting	395

Answer hold	76
Answer setting	74
Assist key	394
reading out alarm details	395
reading out mails	394
AT commands	430
Auto Deco-mail	245
Auto dial setting	413
auto focus	185
Auto reading setting (ToruCa)	303
Auto redial as voice (videophone)	86
Auto reset total cost	408
Auto start set (i-αpli)	292
Auto start time (i-αpli)	292
auto timer	198
Automatic answer	413
Automatic display	120

B

Backlight	138
Bar code reader	199
Bar incoming when roam	451
battery	42
charging	44
Getting the best out of battery pack	
.....	43
life	43
battery level	46
battery pack	42
Bookmark	215
add	215
delete	216
Edit title	216
folder	216
No. of bookmarks	216
view	215

C

cable connection (data transfer)	365
Calculator	409
Calendar	135
call	
making	53
receiving	71
Call acceptance	171
Call data	407
Call forwarding	171
Call Forwarding service	421
Call rejection	171
Call setting w/o ID	173
Call time display	146
Call Waiting service	419
Caller ID Notification	50
Caller ID Request service	422
camera	178
Access reader	201
auto timer	198
Bar code reader	199
Brightness	186
Color mode set	194
front camera	178
guide to the shooting screen	182
image size	179
Image tuning	195
light	198
movie shooting	192
number of images	179
number of movies	180
Photo mode	185, 194
rear camera	178
Shake correction	195
shooting menu	183
White balance	194
zoom	197

Marker stamp	338
Refresh skin tone	337
Retouch	337
Rotate	337
Trim away	338
Edit movie	343
Trim i-motion	344
Emotion-expressing mail	251
English Guidance	423
Erase	
Voice announce	407
error messages	479
exit standby screen (i-appli)	295
External keys guard	169
External microphone	412

F

Face authentication	169
Face Mark	437
FeliCa	298
FirstPass	228
Flash movies	213
flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional)	412
making a call	412
receiving a call	413
folder tree (list)	
Data box	328
mail	258
microSD memory card	354
FOMA card (UIM)	39
functional differences	41
insert/remove	39
manufacturer number	211
operational restriction function	40
PIN codes	40
settings after exchange	41
types	41
FOMA N903i CD-ROM	429
Font	146
Font size	146, 223, 270
Forwarding image	365
frame (Edit image)	337
frame (full browser)	323
frame (image shooting)	191
full browser	319
changing display mode	321
Cookie	326
displaying a desired portion of the entire page	323
frame	323
multi window	323
Referer	326
scrolling	322
setting	325
switching from i-mode to full browser	324
TLS/SSL	320
uploading images	324
using the landscape screen	322
function menu	37

G

GPS Function	305
i-appli	308

LCS client	315
Location history	317
Permit to send loc.	312
Position location	307
Position settings	307
Tone/Vibrator	128
ゼンリン [®] 地図+ナビN (ZENRIN Maps + Navi N)	308
Group setting	110
guide to the screen	30
Chara-den list	345
folder list screen (mail)	258
full browser screen	321
Mail detail screen	259
mail list screen	258
MessageR/MessageF screen	226
PDF list	372
PushTalk talking screen	94
shooting screen (camera)	182
text entry (edit) screen	432
videophone screen	52

H

hands-free	61
Hands-free switch (videophone)	88
Header/Signature	271
holding	77
holding (while ringing)	76
Home URL	223
Host selection	224

I

i-appli	283
auto start	292
Auto start info	293
Auto start set	292
Auto start time	292
Change mld./img.	288
Delete	295
download	285
Icon info	287
launch	287
launch (from another function)	293
mail-connected i-appli	285
microSD data	296
Network set	287
pre-installed programs	289
quit	287
security error history	289
See P.book/hist	288
Software info	288
Stand-by net	287
stored data	284
trace info	287
Upgrade	295
i-appli action info	293
i-appli DX	284
i-appli end stand-by info	295
i-appli standby screen	294
i-appli To function	293
i-appli To setting	293
i-appli vol.	288
IC card	298
IC card authentic.	168
IC card content	299

IC card illumination	145
IC card lock	303
Face authentication	169
set/release	303
IC communication	365
data to be transferred	366
Send all/Receive all	369
Send one/Receive one	368
iC transfer service	298
i-channel	232
access	234
set	234
icon	30
desktop icon	147
Discern connect	119
display	30
Document viewer	377
Emotion-expressing mail	251
full browser	321
i-appli	288
icons on the standby screen	151
image display	30
image type	331
Kisekai Tool	351
mail	258, 259
Melody	349
MessageR/MessageF	226
music	383
PDF data	372
Received calls	65
Rec. Chara-den screen	347
Redial/Dialed calls	63
shooting screen	182
videophone call	52
icons on displays	30
Icons setting	151
Illumination	145
Illumination in talk	145
Image	
Guide to the Picture list	330
Guide to the Title list	330
view	330
Display	212
image	
Add folder	362
delete	364
Delete folder	362
Memory info	332
Move	332
Original animation	335
Store at DSC	334
Viewer settings	332
image display	32
icon	30
sample images	32
set	137
image shooting	
framed photography	191
image size	179
number of images	179
Image tuning	195
i-melody	219
iMenu	209
i-mode	208
Add to phonebook	213

microSD memory card	352	My picture	330	delete	364
Check microSD	357	Guide to the Picture list and		download	219
copyable data	356	Title list	330	Guide to the PDF list	372
data preview	356	My Profile	50, 404	i-mode bookmark	374
delete image	332, 333			Operation	372
delete movie	340	N		Scroll	373
display images	330	NEC Mobile PDF	474	text search	374
DPOF setting	380	Network security code	154	view	371
folder tree	354	Network service	418	Petit message	89
Format	360	Neuropointer	29, 144	Phone To function	222
insert	353	Noise reduction	70	Phonebook	106
microSD info	357, 358	notes	19	Add to phonebook (from another	
number of files	355	Notice designate calls	408	screen)	109
number of movies	180	Alarm	409	Add to phonebook (Phone)	107
number of still images	179	Check the details	409	Delete data	116
Playing movies	338	No. of memos		Edit phonebook	115
remove	353	Screen memo	217	Group setting	110
microSD reader/writer	360	No. of messages		Making a Call	111
Missed calls display	174	mail	249, 262, 264, 266	PushTalk phonebook	98
mobile phone manufacturer number	211	MessageR/MessageF	227	Save at DSC	121
Movable contents	344	Template	247	Search phonebook	111
move		No. of ToruCa		Search phonebook (Specifying a	
Movable contents	344	ToruCa	301	method)	112
SMS (to FOMA card (UIM))	282	Ntfy switch-mode	89	Secret code	115
SMS (to FOMA terminal (Phone))	282	Nuisance Call Blocking service	421	storage status	118
movie	338	NW search mode	450	Photo mode	185, 194
Add folder	362			AF lock	185
delete	364	O		auto focus	185
Delete folder	362	OBEX	365	auto timer	198
guide to the title list	339	OFF		Continuous mode	189
Memory info	340	Call acceptance	171	light	198
Move	340	Call Forwarding	171	shoot folded	188
operations during playback	341	Call rejection	171	shoot open	185
Playing movies	338	Protect	217, 218	shooting settings	197
playlist playback	343	protect MessageR/MessageF		zoom	197
preview guide	339	.....	227, 228	PictBridge print	379
Movie mode	192	Restrict dialing	171	Pictograph	437
shooting settings	193	Voice Mail	171	Pictographs	469
movie playing software	475	OFFICEED	426	Picture voice	196
movie shooting		Omakase Lock	157	PIN lock	156
auto timer	198	Operator name display	451	release	156
Chance capture	196	options	24, 473	set	155
image size	180	Original animation	335	PIN setting	155
light	198	Original lock	162	PIN1 code enter	156
number of movies	180	Original manner	131	PIN1/PIN2 codes	154
Picture voice	196	Original menu	37, 142	change	155
shooting settings	197	Osaifu-Keitai	298	PI · SB input mode	437
Voice mode	197	IC card lock	303	Play	
zoom	197	Osaifu-Keitai i-appli	298	i-motion	338
Multi access	392	read/write data	298	Melody	349
combination patterns	471	use Osaifu-Keitai	299	Record message	83
Multi Number	424	Outbox (mail)	238, 257	Voice announce	407
Multitask	393	overseas use	445	Voice memo	83
activate	394	making a call	449	VP message	84
combination patterns	472	receiving a call	450	playback	
end	394	Overwrite	436	track (music player)	382
switch	394	Own dictionary	441	Play/Erase msg.	83
music player	382			PLMN setting	450
guide to music list	383	P		portrait right	22
guide to player screen	385	Packet communication	428	Power saver mode	138
operations on the player screen	385	password (see code number)		Prediction	435
play	383	paste text	440	Prefer attachment	270
playlist	386	Pause dial	68	Prefix setting	69
My document	371	PDF data	219, 371	Pre-installed data	
My Menu	214	clip page	374	Auto Decomail-pictures	463

Function

This section shows the Function index corresponding to the following screens by indexes on the cover page.

Making/Receiving Phone Calls

Country Code set	60
Create message	66
Dialed calls (list/detail)	63
IDD Prefix setting	61
In-call	54
Other ID (Remote monitoring)	91
Pause dial	69
Phone number entry	53
Play/Erase VP msg. (Record message)	84
Prefix setting	70
Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls (list/detail)	63
Videophone in-call	55
Voice/Videophone ringing	71

PushTalk

PushTalk phonebook	102
--------------------------	-----

Phonebook

Group setting	110
Phonebook detail	114
Phonebook list	113
Sent/rec'd DataList (Data Security Service)	122
UIM operation (copy)	117
UIM operation (delete)	118

Tone/Display/Lighting Settings

Contents checking (Kisekæe Tool set)	144
Desktop icon/theme selection	148
Kisekæe Tool set list	143
Original menu (Menu display set)	142
Original theme (Menu display set)	141

Security Settings

Category list/Group list	166
Face authentication	170
Function list	166
IC card authentic.	168
Restrictions	173

Camera

Access reader	203
Continuous mode	186
Continuous shooting checking	190
Detail checking	191
Image checking	187
Movie checking	195
Movie mode	193
Photo mode	186
Reading data detail (Access reader)	204
Reading data detail (Bar code reader)	200
Reading data list (Access reader)	203
Reading data list (Bar code reader)	200
Recording start (Picture voice)	197

i-mode/i-motion/i-channel

Bookmark	216
----------------	-----

Bookmark folder list	216
Channel list	234
Enter URL (Internet connection)	215
Message detail	228
Message list	227
Screen memo detail	218
Screen memo list	217
Sites	210

Mail

Address/Subject	241
Chat	275
Chat group list	277
Chat member	274
Draft mail list	249
Emotion/Keyword notice	274
Group member list	277
Inbox folder list	262
Mail member detail	250
Mail member list	250
Message	241
New mail	240
New SMS	279
Outbox folder list	262
Received address list	269
Received mail detail	267
Received mail list	264
Sent address list	269
Sent mail detail	268
Sent mail list	266
Speed photo mail image	242
Template	247
Template preview	247

i-appli

End stand-by info	295
microSD data list	296
Security error history	289
Software list	287

Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa

IC card content	299
ToruCa display	302
ToruCa folder list	301
ToruCa list	302

GPS Function

Location history list/detail	317
microSD client detail	316
microSD client folder	316
microSD client list	316
Register LCS client	315

Full Browser

Full Browser	324
--------------------	-----

Display/Edit/Organization

Categories (SD-PIM)	357
Chara-den list	346
Chara-den player	346
Data detail (SD-PIM)	358
Data list (SD-PIM)	358
Document list	378
Document view	378
Edit image	337
Edit movie	344
File list (SD-PIM)	357
Folder list (i-motion)	362
Folder list (Melody)	362
Folder list (My document)	362
Folder list (My picture)	362

i-motion stopped (pause)	342
Image list	332
Melody	350
Melody list	350
microSD folder list (Picture)	362
Movie list	340
My picture	333
Original animation list	336
Original animation playback	336
Package list	352
PDF data	375
PDF list	375
Rec. Chara-den (image/movie)	348

Music Playback

Music list	384
Music player	386
Playlist	387
Playlist music list	387

Other Useful Functions

Alarm clock	398
Dictionary	411
My Profile	404
Reference history (dictionary)	411
Reference result (list/detail) (dictionary)	411
Schedule	399
Schedule list	402
Text memo	410
To Do list	403
To Do list detail	403
Voice announcement	407

Network Services

Additional service/ Additional guidance	426
Check setting	419
Multi Number setting	425

Entering Text

Common phrases folder list	440
Common phrase list	440
Download dictionary	442
Own dictionary	441
Text entry (edit)	438

Traveling with N903i

PLMN setting	451
--------------------	-----

Quick Manual

How to use the Quick Manual

The Quick Manual describes basic operations and displays of the FOMA terminal.

To use the Quick Manual bound in this manual, cut the pages along the cutting line and fold them as shown below. Take Quick Manual (For Overseas Use) when using international roaming (WORLD WING) abroad.

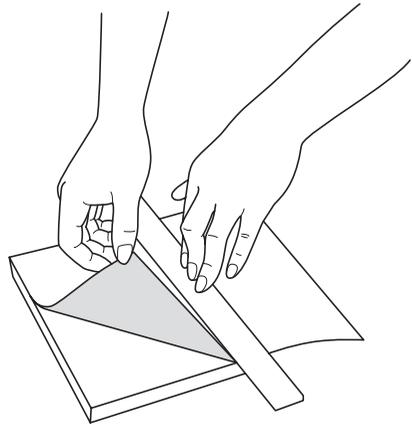
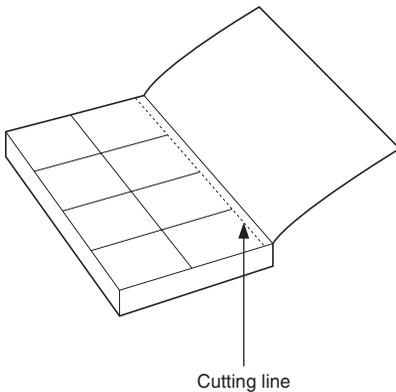
How to cut

Cut the Quick Manual pages along the cutting line.

Use a ruler to cut along the cutting line as shown below.

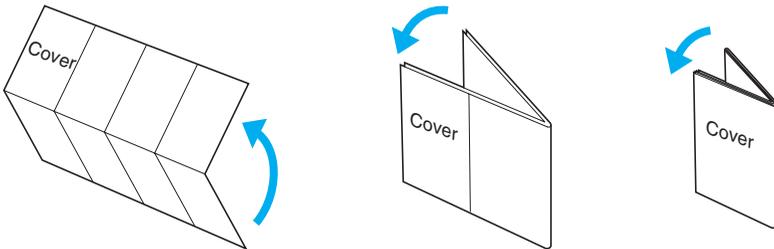
Detach one page at a time so that you do not tear other pages.

* Take care not to hurt yourself when cutting with scissors, etc.



How to fold

Fold along the fold line to see the cover page as shown below.



FOMA® N903i

Quick Manual

○ For Inquiries -DoCoMo Information Center>

For a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:

■ (No prefix) **151** (toll free) (only in Japanese)

※ You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

From an ordinary (landline) phone:

☎ **0120-005-250** (toll free) (in English)

● Do not be called from mobile phones and PHS.

● Do not be called from mobile phones and PHS.

○ For malfunctions

For a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:

■ (No prefix) **113** (toll free) (only in Japanese)

※ You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

From an ordinary (landline) phone:

☎ **0120-800-000** (toll free) (only in Japanese)

● Do not be called from mobile phones and PHS.

● Do not be called from mobile phones and PHS.

● For details, check the "Service status list" provided with a FOMA SIM card.

Edit/delete phonebook data

■ Edit the phonebook data

Open the phonebook detail screen → **[FUNC]** → Edit

phonebook → Edit the items if necessary → **[OK]** (Finish)

→ YES (for UIM phonebook) → Overwrite → YES

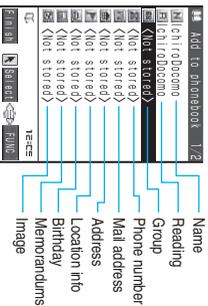
■ Delete phonebook data

Open the phonebook list screen → **[FUNC]** → Delete

data → Delete this → YES (Select another "YES"

depending on the phonebook)

Add to phonebook



1. Standby screen appears → **[OK]** (FUNC) → Add to phonebook*

● To add data from the received call record

Standby screen appears → **[OK]** → Highlight the

received call record → **[FUNC]** → Add to

phonebook*

● To add data from the redial

Standby screen appears → **[OK]** → Highlight the redial

record → **[FUNC]** → Add to phonebook*

1

Input method and mode

■ Text entry screen



Text entry area

Operation guidance area
Information display area

■ Input mode

漢 ... Kanji/Hiragana

カタ ... Katakana

英 ... Alphabet

数 ... Number

カ ... Kuten input mode

2. Select a phonebook → Enter name → Check the reading
3. Select items and enter them

■ Group (00 to 19)

■ <Not stored> → Select group

■ <Not stored> → Select group

■ Phone number (up to 4)

■ <Not stored> → Enter phone number →

■ Select icon

■ Mail address (up to 3)

■ <Not stored> → Enter mail address → Select icon

■ Address

■ <Not stored> → Enter zip code → Enter address

■ Location information

■ <Not stored> → Enter location information

■ Birth day

■ <Not stored> → Enter birthday

■ Memorandums

■ <Not stored> → Enter memorandums

■ Image

■ <Not stored> → Select photo mode or image

■ Chara-den

■ <Not stored> → Select Chara-den

■ Memory No. (000 to 699)

■ <Not stored> → Enter memory No.

■ Enter memory No.

■ <Not stored> → Enter memory No.

■ Memorandums

■ <Not stored> → Enter memorandums

■ Image

■ <Not stored> → Select photo mode or image

■ Chara-den

■ <Not stored> → Select Chara-den

■ Memory No. (000 to 699)

■ <Not stored> → Enter memory No.

4

5

6

7

Enter text

Enter "携帯" on text memo

Text entry (edit) screen

- ☞ Lifekit → Text memo → (Edit) →
- ☞ (Several times) → Kanyj/Hiragana input mode →

- け → [2] four times
- い → [1] two times
- た → [4] one time
- い → [1] two times

Conversion

- ☞ (CHG) → ☞ → Select "携帯" from the conversion candidates

Camera

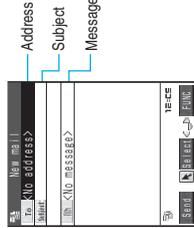
Shoot still image

- ☞ Lifekit → Camera → Photo mode → or

8

i-mode mail

Compose/send message



New mail screen

- ☞ Mail → Compose message

Address

- ☞ → Select how to enter mail address

12

Play movie

- ☞ Data box → I-motion → Select folder → Select movie

Play melody

- ☞ Data box → Melody → Select folder → Select melody

Using music player

Play music on music player

- ☞ Data box → Music → Select playlist → Select track

10

Attach My Profile

- New mail screen → (FUNC) → Attach file → My Profile → Enter security code →

Attach schedule

- New mail screen → (FUNC) → Attach file → Schedule → Select item → Select data →

Attach bookmark

- New mail screen → (FUNC) → Attach file → Bookmark → Select item → Select folder → Select data

Receive mail

- (White) "flashes" "Received results" screen appears → Select "Select"

14

Make/receive videophone call

Make a videophone call

- Enter phone number → () → Press after talking

Receive a videophone call

- The phone rings and the incoming call lamp flashes. (), (), or () → Press () after talking

- ☞ or ☞ : Send your shot to the caller
- ☞ : Send your substitute image to the caller

During a call

- ☞ : Switch (ON/OFF) hands-free
- ☞ : Switch camera (Front camera/Rear camera)

11

Other functions

Reply

- Display mail to reply → (Reply) → → Enter message → (Send) → Press () after sending

Forward

- Display mail to forward → (FUNC) → Forward → → Select how to enter mail address → (Send) → Press () after sending

Check new messages

- ☞ Mail → Check new messages

15

Cutting line

Menu list

Menu	Sub menu	Branch item
Main Item	Sub menu	
	Index	
	Outline	
	Direct	
	Compose message	
	Chat mail	
	Compose SMS	
	Check new messages (☑) (1+sec.)	
	Check new messages (☑) (1+sec.)	
	Check new SMS	
	Check new messages (☑) (1+sec.)	
Phone		
Main Item	Mail settings	
	Message	
	Menu	
	Bookmark	
	Screen memo	
	Last URL	
	Go to location	
	Message/F	
	Check new messages (☑) (1+sec.)	
	Chat certificate	
	-home settings	
-top	Inherent (in Browser)	
	Software list (☑) (1+sec.)	
	miOS2 data	
	Auto start info	

16

Menu	Sub menu	Branch item
Main Item	Sub menu	
	Videophone	
	Auto redial as voice	
	Remote monitoring	
	Display setting	
	NW switch-mode	
	Hands-free switch	
	Y-phones while parked	
	Display setting (MENU56)	
	Backup (MENU10)	
	Display design (MENU8)	
Display design (MENU9)		
Emergency call (MENU8)		
Device con. (MENU83)		
3D display setting		
Select language (MENU5)		
Original menu (MENU52)		
Menu display set (MENU57)		
Viewer settings		
Automatic display (MENU47)		
Icons (MENU95)		
Icons setting		
Call time/		
Change		
Notes display (MENU18)		
Reset total (MENU60)		
Auto reset total cost		
Call time display (MENU48)		
Set time (MENU31)		
Clock		

20

Menu	Sub menu	Branch item
Main Item	Sub menu	
	Mail box	
	My picture (MENU46)	
	Music	
	Function	
	Memory (MENU16)	
	My document	
	Opera-den	
	Keypad tool	
	Document viewer	
	Bar code reader	
Receive r-data (MENU79)		
PhoneCa		
IC card content		
IC card lock		
SD-FM		
Camera		
GPS		
Data Sec. Service		
Schedule (MENU4)		
Alarm clock (MENU44)		
ToDo list (MENU5)		
Text memo (MENU42)		
Calculator (MENU8)		
Play/erase ring (3) (MID/CHECK)		
Play/Erase V-Prng.		

17

Menu	Sub menu	Branch item
Main Item	Sub menu	
	Settings	
	Clock	
	World watch	
	Alarm setting	
	Clock Alarm Tone set	
	Lock/Security	
	Lock	
	Lock	
	Lock/Security	
	IC card lock	
IC card lock		
Secure authentication		
Secure authentication		
Secure auth. (MENU40)		
Secure data out. mode (MENU41)		
Repeat unknown		
Call setting w/o ID (MENU10)		
Change security code (MENU28)		
IC card authentic.		
PIN setting		
Scanning function		
Scanning function		
Set check new messages		
Host selection (MENU18)		
SMS center selection		
Certificate		
Certificate list		
Disp. Software info		
End standby display		

21

Menu	Sub menu	Branch item
Main Item	Sub menu	
	LinkIt	
	Voice memo (MENU43)	
	Voice announce (MENU91)	
	VIM operation	
	My Profile (MENU9)	
	Forwarding message	
	Forwarding message	
	Dictionary	
	Phonebook	
	PushTalk	
Own data		
Received calls (MENU24)		
Dialer calls		
Mail member (MENU97)		
Chatgroup		
Common phrases (MENU98)		
Own dictionary (MENU82)		
DL dictionary		

18

Menu	Sub menu	Branch item
Main Item	Sub menu	
	Settings	
	-top settings	
	PhoneCa settings	
	Auto reading setting	
	Scroll	
	External	
	USB mode setting	
	Emergency (MENU51)	
	Select microphone	
	Automatic answer (MENU94)	
NW search mode		
Operator name display		
Keypad sound (MENU38)		
Other settings		
Change sound		
IC card illumination		
Battery level (MENU71)		
External keys part. (MENU7 1+sec.)		
Character input set (MENU95)		
Neuropointer		
Reset settings (MENU23)		
Initialize		
Software Update		

22

Menu	Sub menu	Branch item
Main Item	Sub menu	
	Settings	
	Keese Tool setting	
	Incoming call	
	Ring volume (MENU50)	
	Speed tone (MENU13)	
	Sound effect (MENU4)	
	Vibrator (MENU54)	
	Illumination (MENU89)	
	Memory mode set (MENU20)	
	Disp. H-Book merge	
Answer setting (MENU58)		
MailMsg. ring tone (MENU68)		
Ring message (MENU90)		
Ring tone setting (MENU95)		
Record message (MENU55)		
Noise reduction (MENU76)		
Quality alarm (MENU75)		
Reconnect signal (MENU77)		
Illumination talk		
USB T-Tool tone		
Setting when talked (MENU10)		
Pause dial (MENU44)		
Sub-address setting		
Auto setting		
Int'l dial assistance		
Visual preference		
Speed merge		

19

Menu	Sub menu	Branch item
Main Item	Sub menu	
	Service	
	Chara-Long	
	Caller ID Notification (MENU17)	
	Voice Mail	
	Call IV-Waiting	
	Call Forwarding	
	Nuisance Call Bk	
	Caller ID Request	
	Incoming Call Mng	
	Set In-call and	
Remote Control		
Dial Network		
English-Chinese		
Add-on Service		
Service Numbers		
Multi Number		
From: Guidance		
From: Incoming when roam		
Bar incoming when roam		
Service (INV)		

23

- <Other features>
- Manner mode
 - P-Mode (press and hold) (Set/Release with each press)
 - P-Mode (press and hold) (Set/Release with each press)
 - Driving mode

Network services

Voice Mail service

Activate

☎️ → Service → Voice Mail → Activate → YES → YES → Enter ring time (seconds)

Deactivate

☎️ → Service → Voice Mail → Deactivate → YES → YES

Play messages

☎️ → Service → Voice Mail → Play messages → YES → Follow the voice prompts

24

Icon



Icon display area

- : Battery level
- : Dial lock is set
- : IC card lock is set
- (White): Unread message

28

Call Waiting

Activate

☎️ → Service → Call Waiting → Activate → YES → YES

Deactivate

☎️ → Service → Call Waiting → Deactivate → YES → YES

Receive another incoming call

Press or to answer incoming call
To switch the calls, press .

25

Message

(White): Unread Message F

(White): i-mode mail stored in i-mode Center

: Signal strength

: Using i-mode

: SSL page

: During Communication mode, USB cable unconnected, hands-free device unconnected

: Exchanging infrared data

: microSD memory card inserted

: During voice call

: GPS positioning activated

29

Call Forwarding service

Activate

☎️ → Service → Call Forwarding → Activate → Set a forwarding number or the ring time, and then select "Activate" → YES

Deactivate

☎️ → Service → Call Forwarding → Deactivate → YES

Caller ID Request service

Activate

☎️ → Service → Caller ID Request → Activate → YES → OK

Deactivate

☎️ → Service → Caller ID Request → Deactivate → YES → OK

26

Vibration

: Vibrator set

: Ring volume is set to "Silent"

: Manner mode set

: Public mode (Driving mode) set

: Alarm function set

: Voice Mail message

: Record message set

: Record VP message set

: Backlight is "OFF"

: Keypad lock set in wait mode

: External keys guard is "ON"

30

Cutting line

Service available on FOMA terminal

Collect call (the receiving party is asked (No area code) 106 to pay for)

Directory assistance for general phones (No area code) 104 and DoCoMo mobile phones (pay)¹

Telegram (pay) 8:00 am to 10:00 pm (No area code) 115

Time (pay) (No area code) 117

Weather forecast (pay) (No area code) 117

Police emergency² (No area code) 110

Fire brigade/ambulance emergency² (No area code) 119

Maritime distress call (No area code) 118

Emergency Message Recording System (No area code) 171

¹: The phone number cannot be provided if the number is not listed in the directory.

²: Depending on the area you are calling from, you may not be connected with the nearest police or fire department. If you cannot reach the police or fire department from your mobile phone, dial from a public or general subscriber phone.

27

<Contact for lost, etc.>

Omakase Lock

Self/Release Omakase Lock

0120-524-360

24 hours available (in Japanese only)

* Omakase Lock can be self/released from the My DoCoMo site on a PC, etc.

Other contacts

<Contact: >

<Contact: >

<Contact: >

* Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

31

FOMA® N903i

Quick Manual (For Overseas Use)

○ For lost stolen, account settlement clearing overseas
 -DoCoMo Information Center> (24 hours) (Only in Japanese)

■ Universal number

International phone codes for Universal number (Table 1) **-800-0120-0151**

* Local call charges apply in the country or region you stay.

● Not available for the Universal number

International access numbers for your staying country (Table 2) **-81-3-5366-3114***

* Long distance call to Japan will be charged.

* When calling from an N903i, dial +81-3-5366-3144 to contact the DoCoMo Information Center (24 hours) (Only in Japanese).
 * Refer to p.14 for the international phone codes for Universal number (Table 1) and p.15 for the international access numbers (Table 2).

■ Using the phonebook to make a call to the country set in "Intl dial assistance"

On the standby screen → → Select phonebook → (FUNC) → Intl call → Select country → or

■ Making a call from the country number

Enter "+" (1 second or longer) on the standby screen, and dial Country code, Area code and Phone number, then press or

Local calling

Dial the phone number → or

○ For malfunctions overseas
 -Network Operation Center> (24 hours)

● Network operation

International phone codes for Network operation (Table 1) **-800-5931-8600**

* Local call charges apply in the country or region you stay.

● Not available for the Universal number

International access numbers for your staying country (Table 2) **-81-3-6718-1414***

* Long distance call to Japan will be charged.

* When calling from an N903i, dial +81-3-5366-3144 to contact the Network Operation Center (24 hours) (Only in Japanese).
 * Refer to p.14 for the international phone codes for Universal number (Table 1) and p.15 for the international access numbers (Table 2).

Receiving a call

■ Receiving a voice call

Press or to answer incoming call

■ Receiving a videophone call

Press or to answer incoming call
 Pressing enables answer with a substitute image.

■ Calling from the other end

- From Japan
 (090) (or 080)-xxxx-xxxx
- From outside Japan
 International access code -81-90 (or 80)
 -xxx-xxxx

Before traveling

This FOMA terminal is available in 3G roaming areas.

■ Preparation

- WORLD WING compatible FOMA card (other than blue)
- FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use 01 (optional)

■ Setup

Setting in overseas is also available.

■ In-mode

→ "Home" → "Menu" → ENGLISH → "Options" → "International Settings" → "Yes" → Enter In-mode password → "Select"

■ Remote operation

→ "Service" → "Remote Control" → "Activate" → "YES"

2

Operator search mode setting

■ Switching operators to be connected automatically

→ "Settings" → "Network setting" → "NW search mode" → "Auto"

■ Switching operators to be connected manually

→ "Settings" → "Network setting" → "NW search mode" → "Manual" → Select an operator

■ Researching connectable operator

→ "Settings" → "Network setting" → "NW search mode" → "Network re-search" → Select an operator if "Manual" is set

■ World watch

→ "Settings" → Click → "World watch" → "Time zone" → Select the time zone

■ Displaying World watch

→ "Settings" → Click → Clock display → "Display type" → "World watch ON" → "YES"

■ Summer time

→ "Settings" → Clock → "World watch" → "Summer time" → "ON"

Making a call

■ Calling outside the country (including Japan)

Calling to the country set in "Intl dial assistance"
 Enter phone number → (FUNC) → Intl call → Select country → or

3

Setting preferred operator

→ "Settings" → "Network setting" → "NW search mode" → "LUN setting" → Highlight an operator to be changed on priority → (FUNC) → Change priority → Highlight the position to be moved to →

Setting operator name display

■ Displaying the operator name
 → "Settings" → "Network setting" → "Operator name display" → "Display ON"

■ Not displaying the operator name
 → "Settings" → "Network setting" → "Operator name display" → "Display OFF"

4

5

Cutting line

6

7

Setting roaming in progress

Setting the roaming guidance

Activate

☎️ → Service → Roam.Guidance → Activate → YES*

Deactivate

☎️ → Service → Roam.Guidance → Deactivate → YES*

Incoming call setup

Reject all incoming calls

☎️ → Service → Bar incoming when roam → Activate* → Bar All incoming → YES → Enter Network security code

Accept only a voice call

☎️ → Service → Bar incoming when roam → Activate* → Data calls Barring → YES → Enter Network security code

Accept all incoming calls

☎️ → Service → Bar incoming when roam → Deactivate* → YES → Enter Network security code

Network service for overseas

Voice Mail service

Activate

☎️ → Service → Service (Int.) → Voice Mail (Int.) → Activate* → YES → Follow voice guidance

Deactivate

☎️ → Service → Service (Int.) → Voice Mail (Int.) → Deactivate* → YES → Follow voice guidance

Play messages

☎️ → Service → Service (Int.) → Voice Mail (Int.) → Play messages → YES → Follow voice guidance

Setting time

☎️ → Service → Service (Int.) → Voice Mail (Int.) → Set ring time → YES → Follow voice guidance

* As of October 2006, this function is not available.

8

Roaming guidance

☎️ → Service → Service (Int.) → Roam. Guidance (Int.) → YES → Follow voice guidance

Remote control setup

☎️ → Service → Service (Int.) → Remote access (Int.) → YES → Follow voice guidance

* As of October 2006, this function is not available.

Caller ID Request

☎️ → Service → Service (Int.) → Caller ID req. (Int.) → YES → follow voice guidance

* As of October 2006, this function is not available.

9

Country Codes of Major Countries

(As of October, 2006)

Area	Country Code	Area	Country Code
United States of America	44	Germany	49
United Kingdom	39	Turkey	90
Italy	37	Japan	81
India	91	New Caledonia	687
Indonesia	62	New Zealand	64
Egypt	20	Norway	47
Australia	61	Hungary	36
Austria	43	Finland	358
Holland	31	Philippines	63
Canada	1	France	33
Korea	82	Spain	34
Greece	30	Brazil	55
Singapore	65	Vietnam	84
Switzerland	41	Peru	51
Sweden	46	Belgium	32
Spain	34	Hong Kong	852
Thailand	66	Malaysia	603
Taiwan (Republic of China)	886	Mexico	52
Czech	420	Madagascar	261
China	86	Russia	7

* For other country codes or details, check the WORLD WING website.

12

Setting

☎️ → Service → Service (Int.) → Voice Mail (Int.) → Setting → YES → Follow voice guidance

Call Forwarding service

Activate

☎️ → Service → Service (Int.) → Call Forwarding (Int.) → Activate* → YES → Follow voice guidance

Deactivate

☎️ → Service → Service (Int.) → Call Forwarding (Int.) → Deactivate* → YES → Follow voice guidance

Setting

☎️ → Service → Service (Int.) → Call Forwarding (Int.) → Setting → YES → Follow voice guidance

* As of October 2006, this function is not available.

11

International Access Numbers for Major Countries (Table 2)

(As of October, 2006)

Area	Code	Area	Code
Ireland	00	Denmark	00
United States of America	011	Germany	00
United Arab Emirates	00	Turkey	00
United Kingdom	00	New Zealand	00
Italy	00	Norway	00
India	00	Hungary	00
Indonesia	0011	Philippines	00
Australia	0011	Finland	00990
Holland	00	France	00
Canada	0011	Brazil	00410210028
Korea	0011	Vietnam	00
Greece	0011	Belgium	00
Singapore	0011	Poland	00
Switzerland	00	Portugal	00
Sweden	00	Hong Kong	001
Spain	00	Mexico	00
Thailand	0011	Malaysia	00
Taiwan	002	Morocco	00
Czech	00	Luxembourg	00
China	00	Russia	810

* The numbers listed in Table 1 and 2 are subject to change.

15

10

International Phone Codes for the Universal Number (Table 1)

(As of October, 2006)

Area	Code	Area	Code
Ireland	00	Spain	00
United States of America	011	Thailand	001
Argentina	00	Taiwan	00
United Kingdom	00	China	00
Israel	014	Denmark	00
Italy	00	Germany	00
Australia	0011	New Zealand	00
Austria	00	Norway	00
Holland	00	Philippines	00
Canada	011	France	00
Korea	0011	Brazil	0021
Colombia	009	Belgium	001
Singapore	0011	Hong Kong	001
Switzerland	00	Malaysia	00
Sweden	001	Luxembourg	00

* The universal numbers may not be available from mobile phones, public phones or hotels.

14

13

Using your FOMA Terminal Politely

When using your FOMA terminal in public, consider the feelings of others.

Turn off your FOMA terminal when you are:

- In a location where it is prohibited to use mobile phones
It is prohibited to use mobile phones in some places. Turn off your FOMA terminal in:
 - An airplane
 - A hospital
 - * Turn off your FOMA terminal in a lobby or waiting room as well as in a hospital ward in case that electronic medical equipment may be in use nearby.
- Driving
Using the FOMA terminal prevents you from driving safely.
 - * Stop the car in a safe place before using the phone, or set the Public mode (Driving mode).
- In a crowded place such as rush-hour train where somebody may be using an implantable cardiac pacemaker or cardioverter-defibrillator nearby
Radio waves may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemaker or cardioverter-defibrillator if used in close proximity.
- In a public place such as theater, cinema, or museum
Using the FOMA terminal in a public place where you need to be quiet, annoys people around you.

Mind where you use your FOMA terminal and how loud your voice or the ring tone is

- If you use your FOMA terminal in a quiet place such as a restaurant or hotel lobby, mind how loud your voice is, etc.
- Take care not to disturb other people when you use your FOMA terminal in a public place.

Respect privacy



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

These functions enable you to be well-mannered

Your FOMA terminal is equipped with useful functions not to answer an incoming call or to mute all the sounds of the FOMA terminal.

[Manner mode/Original manner mode] → p.130

Manner mode mutes sounds emitting from the FOMA terminal such as keypad sounds and ring tones. You can customize Manner mode by changing the settings of the Record message function, vibrator or ring tone (Original manner mode). However, neither Manner mode nor Original manner mode can mute the shutter sound of the camera.

[Public mode (Driving mode/Power off)] → p.78, 79

The caller hears an announcement that you cannot answer the call because you are driving or in a place where you need to refrain from talking or turn the power off.

[Vibrator] → p.127

The FOMA terminal vibrates to notify you of an incoming call.

[Record message function] → p.81

When you cannot answer a call, the caller leaves a message.

You can also use optional services such as the Voice Mail service (p.418) and Call Forwarding service (p.421).

DoCoMo e-site welcomes requests for brochures as well as various procedures such as change of your address or billing plan.

i-mode:

i Menu ⇒ 料金&お申込・設定 ⇒ ドコモeサイト

Packet communication free

PC:

My DoCoMo (<http://www.mydocomo.com/>) ⇒ 各種手続き(ドコモeサイト)

- ※ To access e-site via i-mode, your "Network security code" is required.
- ※ The packet communication fee is free when accessing e-site via i-mode. However, accessing from overseas will be charged.
- ※ To access e-site via PC, "DoCoMo ID" and "Password" are required.
- ※ If you have no "Network security code", "DoCoMo ID" and "Password" with you or unfortunately forgot them, please feel free to contact inquiries shown below.
- ※ Some contracts may not be available for accessing e-site.
- ※ You may not be able to access e-site due to system maintenance, etc.

For inquiries

< DoCoMo Information Center >

■ From a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:



(No prefix) **151** (toll free) (only in Japanese)

※ You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

■ From an ordinary (landline) phone:



0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)

※ Can be called from mobile phones or PHSs

● Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

For technical inquiries

■ From a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:



(No prefix) **113** (toll free) (only in Japanese)

※ You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

■ From an ordinary (landline) phone:



0120-800-000 (toll free) (only in Japanese)

※ Can be called from mobile phones or PHSs

● Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

● For details, check the "Service station list" provided with a FOMA terminal.

For lost, stolen, accumulated amount settlement overseas

<DoCoMo Information Center> (24 hours) (Only in Japanese)

● Universal number

International phone codes for Universal number (Table1)

-800-0120-0151

※ Local call charges apply in the country or region you stay when using the mobile phone.

● Not available for the above Universal number

International access numbers for your staying country (Table2)

-81-3-5366-3114※

※ Long distance call to Japan will be charged.

※ When calling from an N903i, dial +81-3-5366-3144 to contact the DoCoMo Information Center. (Press and hold the "0" key for 1 second or longer to enter "+".)

※ Refer to p.448 for the international phone codes for Universal number (Table1) and for the international access numbers of the major countries (Table2).

For malfunctions overseas

<Network Operation Center> (24 hours)

● Universal number

International phone codes for Universal number (Table1)

-800-5931-8600

※ Local call charges apply in the country or region you stay when using the mobile phone.

● Not available for the above Universal number

International access numbers for your staying country (Table2)

-81-3-6718-1414※

※ Long distance call to Japan will be charged.

※ The numbers are subject to change in Tables 1 and 2.

※ When calling from an N903i, dial +81-3-6718-1414 to contact the Network Operation Center. (Press and hold the "0" key for 1 second or longer to enter "+".)

※ Refer to p.448 for the international phone codes for Universal number (Table1) and for the international access numbers of the major countries (Table2).



Don't forget your cellular phone ... or your manners!

○ When using your mobile phone in public, don't forget to show common courtesy and consideration to others around you.

Sales: NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

Manufacturer: NEC Corporation



Li-ion

To protect the environment, return used battery packs to NTT DoCoMo, any NTT DoCoMo retailers, or a recycling agency.



This manual is made from 100% recycled paper.



This manual is printed with soy based ink.

'06.11 (1.1 Edition)
MDT-000067-EAA0

FOMA[®] N903i

Manual for

Data Communication

About Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal	1
Before Using	3
Checking the Procedure	4
Setting the PC	7
About the FOMA PC Setting Software	12
How to Set Various Settings	18
Executing Set Data Communication	24
W-TCP Settings	27
Access Point Name (APN) Settings	29
Setting up Dial-up Network	30
Setting up Dial-up	37
AT Command List	45

About Manual for Data Communication

This manual describes necessary information for data communication using the FOMA N903i and how to install “N903i communication setting file (drivers)” and “FOMA PC setting software” provided in the CD-ROM.

Operations on Windows XP

The contents of this manual are based on Windows XP with Service Pack 2. The procedures or screens may vary depending on your environment.

About Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal

Packet communication and 64K data communication

Data communication that can be used between the FOMA terminal and PCs is classified in 2 categories: packet communication and 64K data communication.

- Packet communication

The data is received at the maximum speed of 384kbps and sent at the maximum speed of 64kbps. Packet communication is charged according to the amount of data sent and received, regardless of the time it takes or the distance. Note that the communication charge can become expensive when large files are sent and received. It is also possible to access a corporate LAN connected to a FOMA network and exchange data.

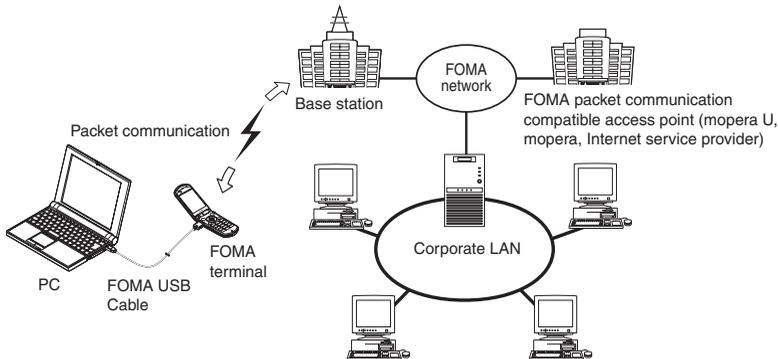
- 64K data communication

Data can be sent or received at the stable speed of 64kbps. This type of communication is charged according to the length of time the line is connected regardless of the amount of data. Note that the communication charge can become expensive when the line is connected for a long time.

■ For packet communication

Packet communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) connected to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA.

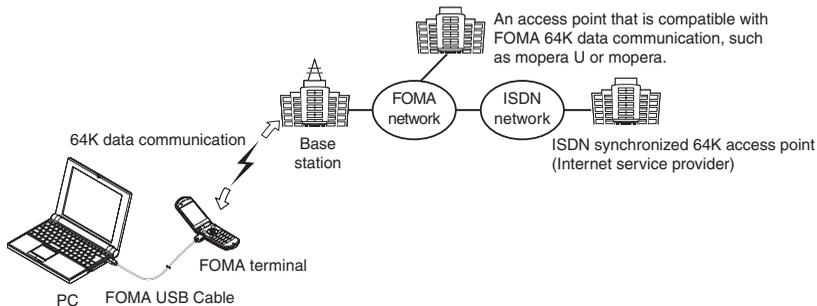
Use an access point that supports FOMA packet communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera”.



■ For 64K data communication

64K data communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) connected to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA.

Use an access point that supports FOMA 64K data communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera”.



NOTE

- Packet communication and 64K data communication are not available overseas.
- This FOMA terminal does not support IP connection.

Notice before using

Internet service provider fees

In addition to FOMA service charges, you may need to pay user fees to an Internet service provider to use the Internet. These fees must be paid directly to the Internet service provider in addition to service fees of FOMA service. Contact your Internet service provider for details.

DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera” is available. “mopera U” is a pay service for which you need to apply. “mopera” is a free service for which you do not need to apply.

Setting an access point (e.g. Internet service provider)

Packet communication and 64K data communication use different access points. If you are using packet communication, use an applicable access point for it; if 64K data communication, use an access point for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64K.

- You cannot use DoPa access points.
- You cannot use access points for PHS64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS.

User authorization when accessing network

Some access points may require your user authorization (ID and password) when connecting. Use communication software (Dial-up network) to enter your ID and password. ID and password will be provided by your Internet service provider or the network administrator. Contact the Internet service provider or network administrator for details.

Access authorization when using the browser

To view FirstPass compliant sites on your PC's browser, FirstPass (user certification) for access authorization is needed. Install the FirstPass PC software from the bundled CD-ROM and conduct the setting. For details, refer to “FirstPassManual” (PDF format) under the “FirstPassPCSoft” folder provided in the CD-ROM. (The “FirstPassManual” is only in Japanese.) To view the “FirstPassManual” (PDF format), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. Unless you install it on your PC, install the Adobe Reader from the CD-ROM to read the document. For how to use it, refer to the Adobe Reader help.

Required conditions for performing packet and 64K data communication

The following conditions are required to perform communication using the FOMA terminal:

- Your PC is compatible with the FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- You are in the FOMA service area.
- For packet communication, the access point supports FOMA packet communication.
- For 64K data communication, the access point supports FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64K.

However, depending on congestion of the base station or weaker signal strength, you cannot perform communication even when the above conditions are satisfied.

Before Using

Operational environment

The PC operation environment to use data communication is as shown below:

PC unit	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• PC/AT compatible model with CD-ROM drive• USB port (compliant to Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1)• Display resolution of 800 dots wide x 600 dots high, High Color (65,536 colors) is recommended
OS ^{*1}	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Windows 2000 (Japanese version)• Windows XP (Japanese version)
Required memory	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Windows 2000: 64M bytes or more^{*2}• Windows XP: 128M bytes or more^{*2}
Hard disk space	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• 5M bytes or more^{*2}

*1 : The proper operations on the upgraded OS are not guaranteed.

*2 : The required memory and necessary hard disk space may differ depending on the PC's system configuration.

NOTE

- When the CD-ROM is inserted to the PC, the warning screen as shown right may appear. This warning is displayed according to the security setting of the Internet Explorer. There is no matter with using the software. Click “はい” (Yes).

* This screen is an example when using Windows XP.

The warning screen may differ depending on the environments of your PC.



- To transmit data with the FOMA terminal connected to the DoCoMo PDA “musea” or “sigmarion II”, update “musea” or “sigmarion II”. For how to update it and other details, visit the DoCoMo website.
- This FOMA terminal is not compatible with Remote Wakeup function.
- This FOMA terminal is not compatible with the FAX communication.

Required devices

The following hardware and software, in addition to the FOMA terminal and a PC, are required.

- FOMA USB Cable (optional)
- CD- ROM “CD-ROM for FOMA N903”

NOTE

- Purchase the specified “FOMA USB Cable”. The USB cable for PC cannot be used because the shape of the connector is different.

Checking the Procedure

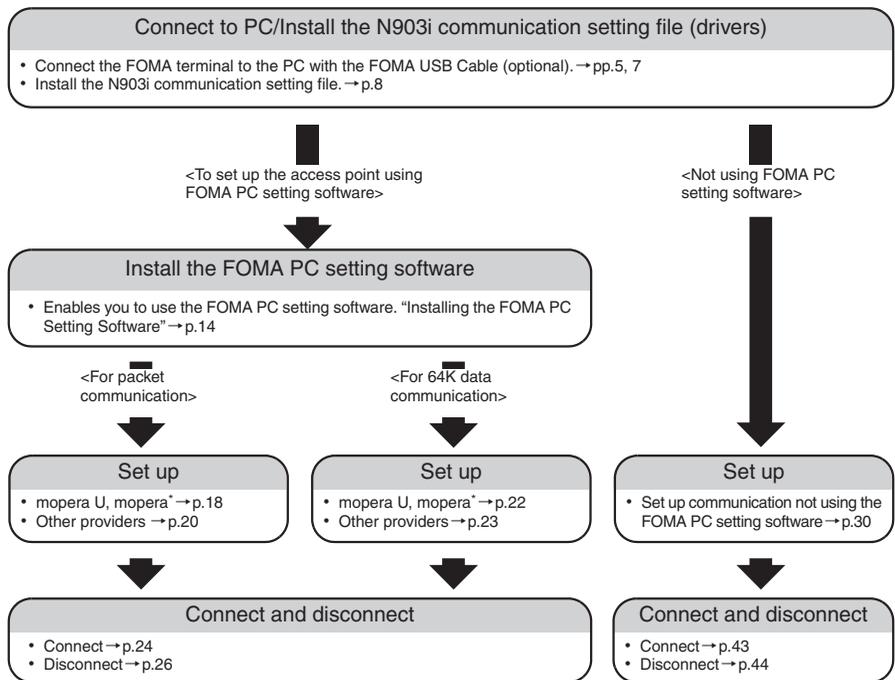
In data communication, the connection is made through a dial-up connection with Internet service providers or LANs that support FOMA data communication.

■ About the “CD-ROM for FOMA N903i”

- The CD-ROM contains the N903i communication setting file (drivers), FOMA PC setting software and FirstPass PC software.
- The N903i communication setting file is software (driver) needed for connecting the FOMA terminal with a PC via a FOMA USB Cable (optional) to carry out packet communication, 64K data communication and data transfer (OBEX). Installing the N903i communication setting file embeds each driver into Windows.
Using the FOMA PC setting software, you can easily set up packet communication and 64K data communication and create a dial-up connection.

Flow chart for completing the data communication setup

This section describes preparation to use packet communication and 64K data communication.



* : To use Internet with the FOMA terminal and PC connected, “mopera U” (you need to apply for) is useful, which supports broadband connection, etc. Consider the plan in which you are charged only in a month when you use the service. If you use “mopera” for which you do not need to apply, you can access Internet immediately. For more information, visit the DoCoMo website.

Setting the USB mode setting to “Communication mode”

Set the external connector to be used for the packet communication and 64K data communication.

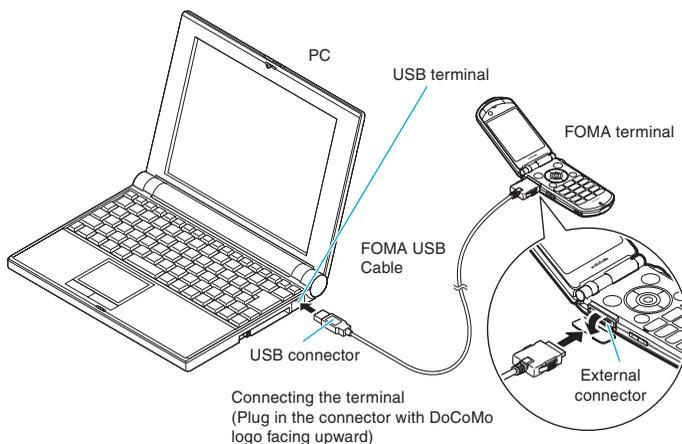
- Before connecting to PC, set “USB mode setting” to “Communication mode”.

1  “Settings” ▶ “External connection”

2 “USB mode setting” ▶ “Communication mode”

Connecting the devices

The following procedure explains how to connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional).



1 Open the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal

2 Check the orientation of the external connector of the FOMA terminal, then insert the external connector of the FOMA USB Cable horizontally until you hear a click

3 Connect the USB connector of the FOMA USB Cable to the USB terminal of your PC

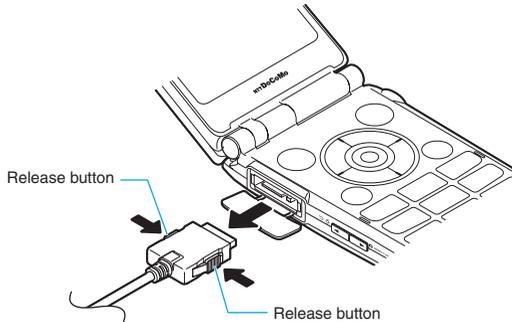
“” changes to “” on the FOMA terminal when the FOMA USB Cable is connected.

NOTE

- “” appears on the FOMA terminal display when the N903i communication setting file is installed and the connection with a PC is recognized. Before the N903i communication setting file is installed, the connection is not recognized and “” appears.

Disconnecting the devices

The following procedure explains how to disconnect the FOMA USB Cable (optional).



- 1** Remove the FOMA USB Cable from the USB terminal of the PC
- 2** Pull the FOMA USB Cable out horizontally while pressing the release buttons of the external connector of FOMA USB Cable
- 3** Close the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal

NOTE

- When you connect and disconnect the FOMA USB Cable repeatedly, wait for a while in each step because the FOMA terminal may not recognize the PC correctly.
- Do not disconnect the FOMA USB Cable during data communication because this may cause the disconnection of communication, malfunction or loss of data.
- Keep pressing the release buttons of the external connector of the FOMA USB Cable when pulling it out of the external connector of the FOMA terminal. Using excessive force to pull the cable may cause malfunction.

Setting the PC

The following procedure explains how to connect the FOMA terminal to PC and how to install the N903i communication setting file (drivers).

Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC

1 Start up Windows and insert the “CD-ROM for FOMA N903i” in the CD-ROM drive of your PC

2 Click “✕” to close the screen

This screen usually appears automatically when the “CD-ROM for FOMA N903i” is inserted in the drive. If it does not appear, simply proceed to Step 3. If this screen appears while you are installing the N903i communication setting file, click “✕” as well.



3 Turn on the FOMA terminal, then connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to your FOMA terminal

4 Connect the FOMA USB Cable to the USB terminal of the PC
“新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード” (Find new hardware wizard) screen appears.

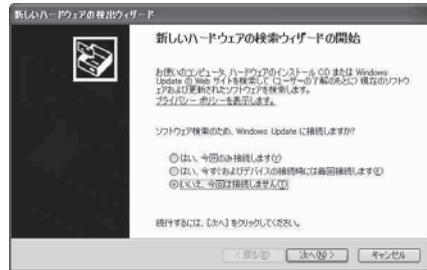
Installing the N903i communication setting file (drivers)

- When installing N903i communication setting file, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to install the file with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC's manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.
- The installation procedure for the N903i communication setting file differs depending on the OS. Refer to the description for the OS on your PC.
For Windows XP refer to the following.
For Windows 2000, proceed to p.9.

● For Windows XP

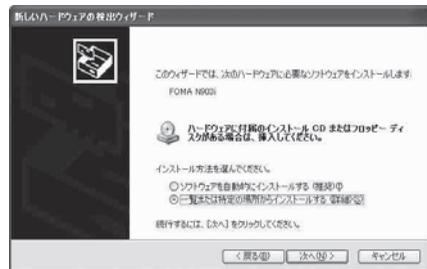
1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to the FOMA terminal

When the FOMA USB Cable has been connected to the PC in Step 4 of "Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC" (p.7), this screen is automatically displayed.



2 Select “いいえ、今回は接続しません” (No, I will access Windows Update later on) and click “次へ” (Next)

3 Select “一覧または特定の場所からインストールする (詳細)” (Install from the list or a certain location (Advanced)) and click “次へ” (Next)

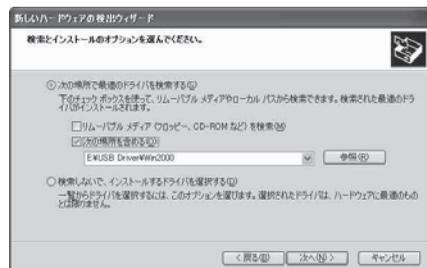


4 Select “次の場所で最適なドライバを検索する” (Search for the optimal driver in the next location), uncheck the “リムーバブルメディア (フロッピー、CD-ROMなど) を検索” (Search a removable media such as floppy disk or CD-ROM) box, check the “次の場所を含める” (include the next location) box to specify a folder to search, then click “次へ”(Next)

The folder name is "<CD-ROM drive>:\¥USB Driver¥Win2000".

The CD-ROM drive name differs depending on the PC. In this example, the CD-ROM drive name is "E".

The driver is common with Windows 2000.



5 When the message “新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザードの完了” (Complete the find new hardware wizard) appears, click “完了” (Finish)

6 Install other drivers

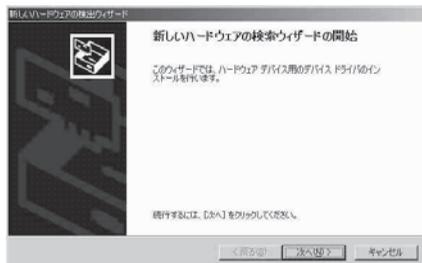
See Step 1 to 5 and install all other 3 drivers (p.10). If the “新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード” (Find new hardware wizard) screen does not appear after the completion of Step 5, installation of the drivers is completed.

When all the drivers have been installed, the task bar indicator displays the message “新しいハードウェアがインストールされ、使用準備ができました。” (New hardware is installed and ready for use) for several seconds. Proceed to “Checking the installed driver” (p.10).

For Windows 2000

1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to the FOMA terminal

When the FOMA USB Cable has been connected to the PC in Step 4 of “Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC” (p.7), this screen is automatically displayed.



2 Click “次へ” (Next)

3 Select “デバイスに最適なドライバを検索する（推奨）” (Search for the optimal driver for the device (Recommended)) and click “次へ” (Next)

4 Check the “場所を指定” (Specify the search location) box and click “次へ” (Next)

5 Specify the folder to search and click “OK”

The folder name is “<CD-ROM drive>:\¥USB Driver¥Win2000”.

The CD-ROM drive name differs depending on the PC.

6 Confirm the driver name and click “次へ” (Next)

In this case, the driver's name appears as “FOMA N903i”.

7 When the message “新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザードの完了” (Complete the find new hardware wizard) appears, click “完了” (Finish)

8 Install other drivers

See Step 1 to 7 and install all other 3 drivers (p.10). If the “新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード” (Find new hardware wizard) screen does not appear after the completion of Step 7, installation of the drivers is completed. Proceed to “Checking the installed driver” (p.10).

Checking the installed driver

Check that the N903i communication setting file (drivers) has been correctly installed.

1 Open the Control Panel of Windows

For Windows XP

Select “スタート” (Start) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel)

For Windows 2000

Select “スタート” (Start) → “設定” (Settings) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel)

2 Click the “システム” (System) icon in “パフォーマンスとメンテナンス” (Performance and maintenance)

For Windows 2000

Open “システム” (System) in the “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel)

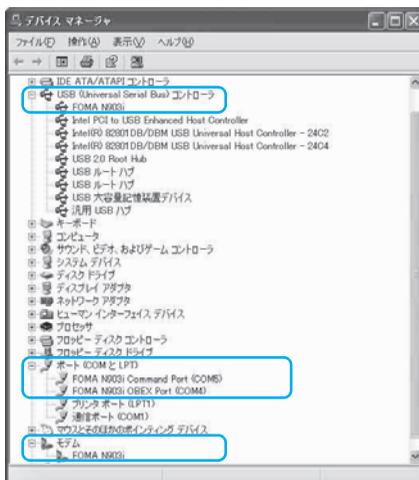
3 Open the device manager

Click the “ハードウェア” (Hardware) tab and click “デバイスマネージャ” (Device manager)

4 Click each device to check the installed driver name

Check that all the driver names are displayed under “USB (Universal Serial Bus) コントローラ” (USB (Universal Serial Bus) controller), “ポート (COMとLPT)” (Ports (COM& LPT)) and “モデム” (Modems).

Check the driver name and proceed to “About the FOMA PC Setting Software” (p.12).



Device name	Driver name
USB (Universal Serial Bus) コントローラ	• FOMA N903i
ポート (COMとLPT)	• FOMA N903i Command Port • FOMA N903i OBEX Port
モデム	• FOMA N903i

NOTE

- When you check the above, if not all the driver names appear, follow the uninstall instructions (p.11) to delete the N903i communication setting file and install the proper file.

Uninstalling the N903i communication setting file (drivers)

If necessary (when updating the drivers, etc.), uninstall the drivers as follows. The procedure for uninstalling from a Windows XP machine is described as an example.

- If you attempt to execute “プログラムの追加と削除” (Add and remove applications) while connecting to the FOMA terminal, the uninstall program does not run.
- When uninstalling N903i communication setting file, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to uninstall the file with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC's manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.

1 If the FOMA terminal and the PC are connected by the FOMA USB Cable (optional), remove the FOMA USB Cable

2 Start “プログラムの追加と削除” (Add and remove applications) on the Windows

Click “スタート” (Start) → “コントロールパネル” (Control panel) → “プログラムの追加と削除” (Add and remove applications)

3 Select “FOMA N903i USB” and click “変更と削除” (Change and delete)

4 Click “OK” to uninstall

To cancel uninstallation, click “キャンセル” (Cancel).

5 Click “はい” (Yes) to restart Windows

Now the uninstallation is completed.

If you click “いいえ” (No), restart Windows manually.

NOTE

- When “FOMA N903i USB” is not displayed in the “プログラムの追加と削除” (Add and remove applications) on the Windows, perform the following procedure:

- ① Insert the “CD-ROM for FOMA N903i” in the CD-ROM drive of your PC
- ② Open “スタート” (Start) → “マイコンピュータ” (My Computer)
- ③ Right-click the CD-ROM icon and select “開く” (Open)
- ④ Open “USB Driver” in the CD-ROM → “Win2000” folder
- ⑤ Double-click “n903i_un.exe” *

* : It is displayed as “n903i_un” depending on the setting of your PC.

About the FOMA PC Setting Software

By using the FOMA PC setting software, you can easily set up the followings:

- You can also set up packet communication and 64K data communication without using the FOMA PC setting software. →p.30



See p.5 for the connection between the FOMA terminal and PC.

かんたん設定 (Easy settings)

The guide walks you through the procedures for “FOMA データ通信ダイヤルアップの作成” (Making a new dial-up connection for FOMA data communication) and “W-TCP設定” (W-TCP settings) together.

W-TCP設定 (W-TCP settings)

This settings optimize the communication settings of a PC before using “FOMA packet communication”.

To get the most out of communication performance, it is necessary to optimize communication settings by making W-TCP settings.

接続先 (APN) の設定 (Access Point Name (APN) settings)

Sets the access point name (APN) required for packet communication.

Unlike 64K data communication, a normal phone number is not used for FOMA packet communication access point. Before you connect, register the APN (Access Point Name) of each access point in the FOMA terminal and assign its registration number (cid) to the connection point phone number field.

As the APN of mopera “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to cid1 and APN of mopera U “mopera.net” to cid3 by default, assign the APN to cid2 or between cid4 to cid10.

cid [Context Identifier] … a number used to manage the Access Point Name (APN) for the packet communication registered in the FOMA terminal. It is set when registering the APN in the FOMA terminal.

NOTE

- When the old version of FOMA PC setting software (version 3.0.0 or older, hereafter referred to Previous FOMA PC setting software) is installed, uninstall it in advance.

Procedures ranging from installation of the FOMA PC setting software to connection to the Internet

STEP 1 Installing software



STEP 2 Setting preparation



STEP 3 Various settings



STEP 4 Connecting

Install the "FOMA PC setting software"

See p.14 for installation details.

When the "Previous FOMA PC setting software" is installed, uninstall it before installing the "FOMA PC setting software Ver3.0.1".

When the "Previous FOMA PC setting software" is installed, you cannot install the "FOMA PC setting software Ver3.0.1".

If a screen appears indicating that "Previous W-TCP setting software" or "Previous APN setting software" is installed, see p.15.

Make preparations for making various settings

Before making various settings, ensure that the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC and has been properly recognized by the PC.

See p.5 for "How to connect the FOMA terminal to the PC".

See "Setting the PC" (p.7) for "How to make the PC recognize the FOMA terminal properly".

If the FOMA terminal is not properly recognized by the PC, you cannot make various settings nor perform communication.

In this case, see p.8 and install the communication setting file.

Set according to the communication method you use

Easy settings: "Settings for Packet communication using mopera U or mopera"
→ p.18

Easy settings: "Settings for Packet communication using other providers" → p.20

Easy settings: "Settings for 64K data communication using mopera U or mopera"
→ p.22

Easy settings: "Settings for 64K data communication using other providers" → p.23
For other settings, see p.27 or the following pages.

Connect to the Internet

See p.24 for the executing communication.

Installing the FOMA PC Setting Software

- Check the operating environment prior to the installation of the FOMA PC setting software. → p.3
- When installing the “FOMA PC setting software”, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to install the software with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC’s manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.

1 Insert the CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive of the PC

This screen will automatically appear. Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 or later is recommended to run the menu. If your PC does not meet the recommended operational environment, or the menu screen does not appear even when you insert the CD-ROM, use the following procedure:

- ① Open “スタート” (Start) → “マイコンピュータ” (My Computer)
- ② Right-click the CD-ROM icon and select “開く” (Open)
- ③ Double-click “index.html”



2 Click “データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト” (Data Link Software/ Various Settings Software)

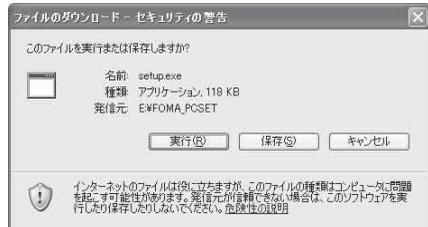
3 Click “インストール” (Install) of “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software)

When clicking “インストール” (Install), the warning screen as shown below may appear. This warning is displayed according to the security setting of the Internet Explorer. There is no matter with using the software.

* This screen is an example when using Windows XP. The warning screen may differ depending on the environments of your PC.

When “ファイルのダウンロード - セキュリティの警告” (Download file - Security warning) screen appears

Click “実行” (Execute).



When “Internet Explorer - セキュリティの警告” (Internet Explorer - Security warning) screen appears

Click “実行する” (Execute).



4 Click “次へ” (Next)

Before starting the setup process, make sure that no other program is currently running or resident. If there is any program running, click “キャンセル” (Cancel) to exit the program and resume installation. If a screen appears indicating that Previous W-TCP setting software or Previous APN setting software is installed, proceed to p.15.

5 Upon confirming the user agreement of “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software), click “はい” (Yes) to agree to it

If you click “いいえ” (No) and then click “はい” (Yes), the installation is canceled.

6 Click “次へ” (Next)

Select whether or not you want “W-TCP settings” to reside in the task-tray.

This is a function to set up / cancel the optimization of “W-TCP communication”, and we recommend you to let it reside in the task-tray.

If there is no problem in particular, click “次へ” (Next) with “タスクトレイに常駐する” (Let it reside in the task-tray) checked to continue with the installation. Even if you do not check “タスクトレイに常駐する” (Let it reside in the task-tray) here, you can change the settings by selecting “メニュー” (Menu), “W-TCP 設定をタスクトレイに常駐させる” (Let W-TCP settings reside in the task-tray) on the FOMA PC setting software.

(Note): This option is disabled when the “タスクトレイに常駐する” (Let it reside in the task-tray) setting is in effect.



The W-TCP settings icon appears in the task-tray located at the bottom-right of the desktop.

7 Select the installation location and click “次へ” (Next)

If you want to change the location, click “参照” (Reference), specify the location and click “次へ” (Next).

8 Check the name of program folder and click “次へ” (Next)

If you want to change it, enter a new folder name and click “次へ” (Next).



9 Click “完了” (Finish)

When the setup process is completed, the “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software) operation screen appears. You can specify various settings at this point.

Notes on installation of the FOMA PC setting software

<If the Previous W-TCP setting software is installed>



- Open “アプリケーション (プログラム) の追加と削除” (Add/Remove programs) and delete the old W-TCP setting software.

<If the Previous APN setting software is installed>



- When you click “OK”, the previous APN setting software is automatically uninstalled, and the FOMA PC setting software will be installed.

<If the FOMA PC setting software is already installed>



- Click “OK”, and the install is interrupted. Open “アプリケーション (プログラム) の追加と削除” (Add/Remove programs), uninstall the already installed “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software), and then reinstall the software.
- Perform the same procedure when an old version of “FOMA PC setting software” is installed.

<If the “キャンセル” (Cancel) button is clicked during installation>



- When you want to continue the installation, click “いいえ” (No). When you want to stop the procedure, click “はい” (Yes).

Confirming the version information of the FOMA PC setting software

- 1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All Programs) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software)

For Windows 2000

Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Program) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software)

- 2 Open “メニュー” (Menu) → “バージョン情報” (Version information) of the toolbar

The version information of the FOMA PC setting software is displayed.

Uninstalling the FOMA PC Setting Software

If necessary (when upgrading the FOMA PC setting software, etc.), uninstall the software as follows. The procedure for uninstalling from a Windows XP machine is described as an example.

- When uninstalling the “FOMA PC setting software”, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to uninstall the software with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC’s manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.

1 Before uninstalling

Before starting the uninstallation process of the “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software), the various changes made for FOMA may be returned to their default settings.

- (1) Disable the “W-TCP settings” in the task-tray

Right-click the “W-TCP icon” in the task-tray located at the bottom-right of the desktop and select “常駐させない” (Disable resident).



2) Exit any running program

If you try to begin uninstallation while the "FOMA PC setting software" or "W-TCP settings" is in operation, this screen appears. Cancel the uninstallation program and exit the respective programs.



2 Start uninstallation

For Windows XP

Open "スタート" (Start) → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel) → "プログラムの追加と削除" (Add and remove programs)

For Windows 2000

Open "スタート" (Start) → "設定" (Settings) → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel) → "アプリケーションの追加と削除" (Add and remove applications)

3 Select "NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト" (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC setting software) and click "削除" (Delete)

Select "NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト" (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC setting software)



Click "削除" (Delete)

4 Check the program name to be deleted and click "はい" (Yes)

Uninstallation starts.



5 Click "完了" (Finish)

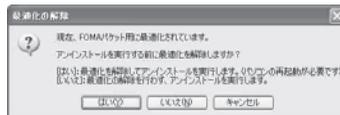
Uninstallation of the "FOMA PC setting software" is completed.



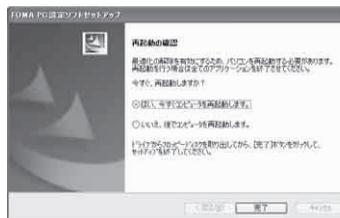
NOTE

● Cancelling "W-TCP 最適化" (Optimize W-TCP).

This screen appears when "W-TCP 最適化" (Optimize W-TCP) is performed. Usually, click "はい" (Yes) to uninstall and cancel the optimization.



The cancellation of W-TCP optimization is valid after the restart.



How to Set Various Settings

The FOMA terminal needs to be connected to your PC via FOMA USB Cable (optional), and the N903i communication setting file (drivers) needs to be properly recognized on the device of your PC to specify various settings.

- 1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All Programs) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software)

This operation screen appears when the FOMA PC setting software is started.

For Windows 2000

Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Program) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software)



Easy settings: “Settings for Packet communication using mopera U or mopera”

- This section explains how to make settings for a packet communication of 384kbps maximum. The DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera” will be used as a provider. Packet communication: Enables high-speed packet communication of up to 384kbps for receiving and up to 64kbps for sending (some models excluded). Since you will be charged according to the amount of data transferred, you can enjoy data communication without worrying about time.
- Note that the communication charge can become expensive if packet communication is used to communicate large volumes of data such as to view sites and websites containing images or to download files.

- 1 Click “かんたん設定” (Easy settings)
- 2 Select “パケット通信” (Packet communication) and click “次へ” (Next)
- 3 Select “『mopera U』への接続” (mopera U access) or “『mopera』への接続” (mopera access) and click “次へ” (Next)
See p.20 if you use a provider other than mopera U or mopera.
- 4 Click “OK”
The access point (APN) settings will be obtained from the FOMA terminal which is connected to the PC. Wait for a while.

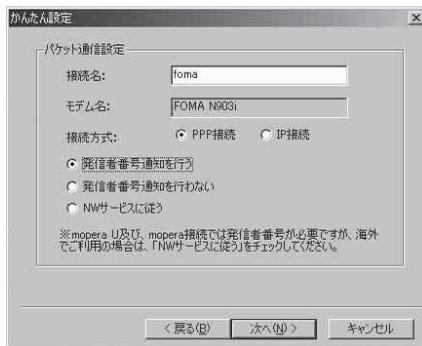
5 Enter the connection name, select the connection method (“PPP接続” (PPP connection)) and click “次へ” (Next)

You can specify the name of the connection. Enter a name easy to recognize in the “接続名” (Connection name) column.

You cannot use the following reserved characters: ¥: * ?!<> | ” (half-pitch only). Select the connection method in the “接続方式” (Connection method) column.

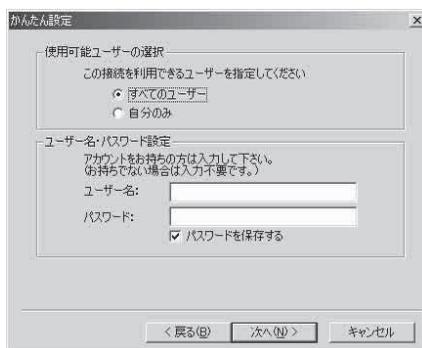
mopera U supports both “PPP接続” (PPP connection) and “IP接続” (IP connection). mopera supports “PPP接続” (PPP connection) only. Note that this FOMA terminal does not support IP connection.

Select “発信者番号通知を行う” (Notify caller ID) for the caller ID settings.



6 Specify a user name and password, select the accessible user and click “次へ” (Next)

You can leave user name and password blank for the mopera U or mopera connection. When “すべてのユーザー” (All users) is selected in the “使用可能ユーザーの選択” (Selecting accessible user) column, the connection setting is applied to all the users registered in Windows.



7 Check “最適化を行う” (Optimize the setting) and click “次へ” (Next)

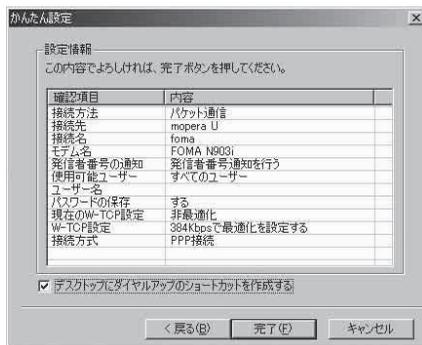
Optimize “W-TCP設定” (W-TCP settings) required for “Packet communication”. If they are already optimized, this screen does not appear.

8 Check the setting information and click “完了” (Finish)

The contents of the settings are listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.

Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.

To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).



9 Click “OK”

You need to restart the PC to enable the changes in the settings. If the restart selection screen appears, click “はい” (Yes).

Execute communication. → p.24

Easy settings: “Settings for Packet communication using other providers”

- 1 Click “かんたん設定” (Easy settings)
- 2 Select “パケット通信” (Packet communication) and click “次へ” (Next)
- 3 Select “その他” (Other) and click “次へ” (Next)

- 4 Click “OK”

The access point (APN) settings will be obtained from the FOMA terminal which is connected to the PC.
Wait for a while.

- 5 Specify the packet communication settings

After the terminal setting is completely acquired, the screen “パケット通信設定” (Packet communication setting) appears. Enter any name in “接続名” (Connection name). You cannot use the following reserved characters: ¥: * ? ! < > | ” (half-pitch only). Select whether to notify the caller ID for dial-up connection.

APN:mopera.net is specified for the mopera U connection and APN:mopera.ne.jp for the mopera connection by default in “接続先 (APN) の選択” (Select the access point (APN)).

For the caller ID settings, follow the instructions from the provider.



- 6 Click “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Specify the access point (APN))

As the APN of mopera “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to cid1 and APN of mopera U “mopera.net” to cid3 by default, assign the APN to cid2 or between cid4 to cid10.

Open the “接続先 (APN) の追加” (Add the access point (APN)) screen by clicking the “追加” (Add) button, select the connection method, specify an access point name that supports FOMA packet communication and click “OK”.

The “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Specify the access point (APN)) screen reappears. Half-pitch alphanumeric characters, hyphen (-) and dots (.) can only be entered for the access point.



- 7 Select the Access point (APN) and click “OK”

The screen of Step 5 reappears.

The access point (APN) entered in Step 6 is displayed on “接続先 (APN) の選択” (Select the access point (APN)).

8 Confirm the Access point (APN) on “接続先 (APN) の選択” (Select the access point (APN)) and click “次へ” (Next)

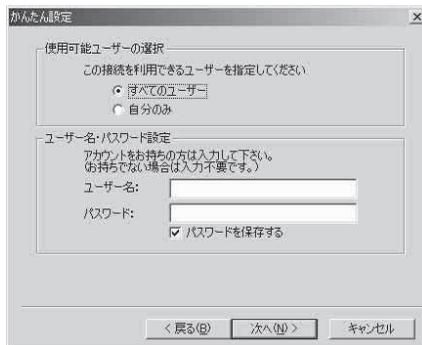
To specify advanced settings (TCP/IP settings)

Clicking “詳細情報の設定” (Detailed settings) displays the setup screen for “IP address” and “Name server”. If they must be input as the provider or corporate LAN information, follow the input information directions and enter the addresses.

9 Specify a user name and password, select the accessible user and click “次へ” (Next)

When “すべてのユーザー” (All users) is selected in the “使用可能ユーザーの選択” (Selecting accessible user) column, the connection setting is applied to all the users registered in Windows.

When setting the user name and password, input the correct, case-sensitive data provided by the service provider.



10 Check “最適化を行う” (Optimize the setting) and click “次へ” (Next)

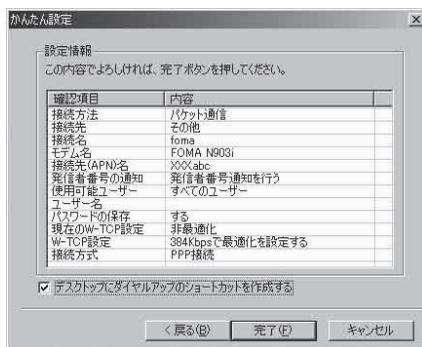
Optimize “W-TCP設定” (W-TCP settings) required for “Packet communication”. If they are already optimized, this screen does not appear. Proceed to Step 11.

11 Check the setting information and click “完了” (Finish)

The contents of the settings are listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.

Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.

To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).



12 Click “OK”

You need to restart the PC to enable the changes in the settings. If the restart selection screen appears, click “はい” (Yes).

Execute communication. → p.24

Easy settings: “Settings for 64K data communication using mopera U or mopera”

- This section explains how to specify settings for 64K data communication at 64kbps. The DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera” will be used as a provider.
- 64K Data Communication: The charges are based on the amount of time you connected. With stable 64kbps communication speed, comfortable Internet access can be realized.
- Note that the communication charge can become expensive if 64K data communication is used for a long time.

1 Click “かんたん設定” (Easy settings)

2 Select “64K データ通信” (64K data communication) and click “次へ” (Next)

3 Select “『mopera U』への接続” (mopera U access) or “『mopera』への接続” (mopera access) and click “次へ” (Next)

See p.23 if you use a provider other than mopera U or mopera.

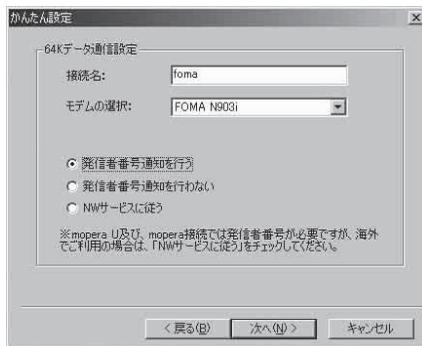
4 Enter the access point name and select the modem, and click “次へ” (Next)

The “64K データ通信設定” (64K data communication setting) screen appears. You can specify the name of the connection. Enter a name easy to recognize in the “接続名” (Connection name) column.

You cannot use the following reserved characters: ¥: * ?!<> | ” (half-pitch only).

When using the FOMA USB Cable (optional), confirm that modem name is set to “FOMA N903i”.

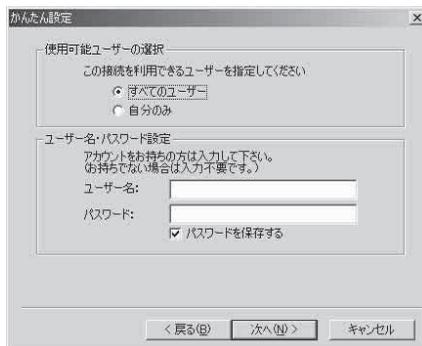
Select “発信者番号通知を行う” (Notify caller ID) for the caller ID settings.



5 Specify a user name and password, select the accessible user and click “次へ” (Next)

You can leave user name and password blank for the mopera U or mopera connection.

When “すべてのユーザー” (All users) is selected in the “使用可能ユーザーの選択” (Selecting accessible user) column, the connection setting is applied to all the users registered in Windows.

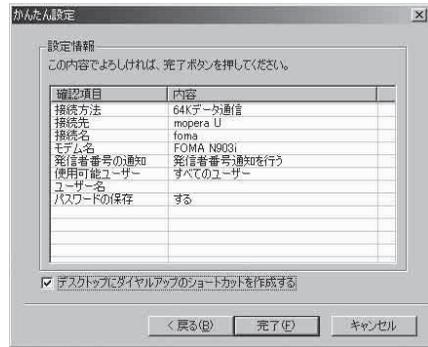


6 Check the setting information and click “完了” (Finish)

The contents of the settings are listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.

Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.

To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).



7 Click “OK”

Execute communication. → p.24

Easy settings: “Settings for 64K data communication using other providers”

1 Click “かんたん設定” (Easy settings)

2 Select “64K データ通信” (64K data communication) and click “次へ” (Next)

3 Select “その他” (Other) and click “次へ” (Next)

4 Enter the dial-up information and click “次へ” (Next)

Register the following items in order to connect to a service provider with ISDN synchronous 64K access points other than mopera U or mopera when creating a dial-up;

- “接続名” (Connection name) (optional)
- “モデムの選択” (Modem Selection) (FOMA N903i)
- “電話番号” (Phone number)
- Notifying or not notifying the caller ID for dial-up connection

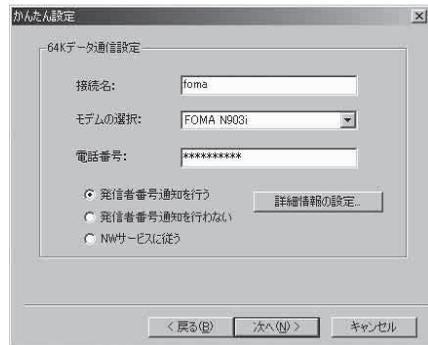
You cannot use the following reserved characters: ¥/: * ?!<> | ” (half-pitch only).

Enter the correct information according to the provider information. Enter the correct, case-sensitive phone number in half-pitch.

For the caller ID settings, follow the instructions from the provider.

To specify advanced settings (TCP/IP settings)

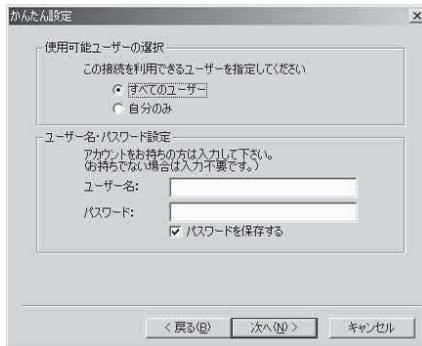
Clicking “詳細情報の設定” (Detailed settings) displays the setup screen for “IP address” and “Name server”. If they must be input as the provider or corporate LAN information, follow the input information directions and enter the addresses.



5 Specify a user name and password, select the accessible user and click “次へ” (Next)

When “すべてのユーザー” (All users) is selected in the “使用可能ユーザーの選択” (Selecting accessible user) column, the connection setting is applied to all the users registered in Windows.

When setting the user name and password, input the correct, case-sensitive data provided by the service provider.

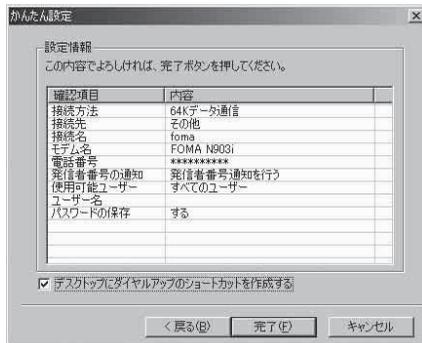


6 Check the setting information and click “完了” (Finish)

The contents of the settings are listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.

Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.

To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).



7 Click “OK”

Execute communication. → p.24

Executing Set Data Communication

1 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop



If the connection icon does not appear on the desktop, use the following procedure:

Windows XP

Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワーク接続” (Network connection) → Open the access point

Windows 2000

Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続” (Network and dialup connection) → Open the access point

2 Click “ダイヤル” (Dial) and execute access operation

You can leave user name and password blank for the mopera U or mopera connection. If you select an Internet service provider other than mopera U, mopera or you use dial-up connection, enter the “ユーザー名” (User name) and “パスワード” (Password) and click “ダイヤル” (Dial).

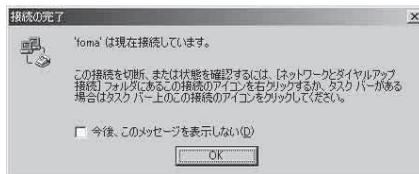
Check “パスワードを保存する” (Save the password) to skip entry of the password at subsequent connections.



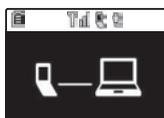
3 Check that the line is connected properly, and click “OK”

Normally, this screen appears when the dial-up connection is made.

This “接続” (Connection) message does not appear if it has been set to be disabled.

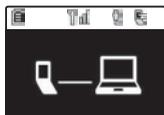


- During packet communication, a different icon appears on the FOMA terminal depending on the communication conditions.



- ☎ (Communicating, sending data)
- ☎ (Communicating, receiving data)
- ☎ (Communicating, no data transfer)
- ☎ (Sending, or disconnecting)
- ☎ (Receiving, or disconnecting)

- “☎” appears on the FOMA terminal during 64K data communication.



NOTE

- When executing data communication by using the FOMA USB Cable (optional), dialing from the dial-up icon is only valid for the FOMA terminal used when the icon is created. Therefore, to connect to another FOMA terminal, the communication setting file (drivers) must be installed again.

How to disconnect

Since just closing the browser on your PC may not disconnect, be sure to disconnect by the following procedure:

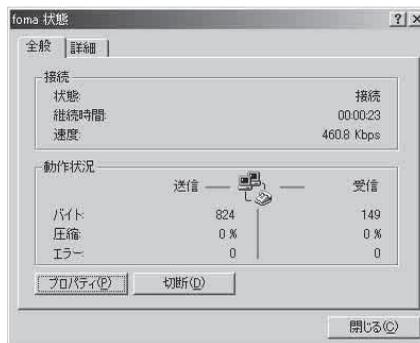
1 Double-click the dial-up icon in the task-tray

The connecting screen appears.



Dial-up icon

2 Click “切断” (Disconnect)



NOTE

- The communication speed displayed on the PC may be different from the actual communication speed.

When this happens

- Check the followings if you cannot connect to the network or dial-up successfully.

Problem	Points to check
"FOMA N903i" is not recognized by the PC.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">· Check if your PC satisfies the required operational environment (p.3).· Check if the N903i communication setting file (drivers) is installed.· Check if the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC and the power is turned on.· Check if the FOMA USB Cable (optional) is firmly connected.· Check if the USB mode setting (p.5) is set to "Communication mode".
Unable to connect with the access point.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">· Check if the settings for the ID (user name) and password are correct.· Check if the FOMA USB Cable (optional) is firmly connected.· If the access point requires the Caller ID, make sure that "184" is not added to the phone number.· Check if the box of "フロー制御を使う" (Use the flow control) of the modem property is checked.· Check if the APN is set correctly.· If you still cannot connect to the other end after checking the above, consult with the Internet service provider or network administrator about the setting method.

W-TCP Settings

“W-TCP settings” is a “TCP parameter setup tool” to optimize the transmission capability of TCP/IP when “Packet communication” is carried out on the FOMA network. The communication settings by this software are required to make the most of communication performance of the FOMA terminal.

Setting up and canceling optimization

<For Windows XP>

Optimization settings for each dial-up are possible for Windows XP.

1 Start the program

- (1) If you are operating from “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software) Click “W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP settings) of “マニュアル設定” (Manual setup) after starting the program.



- (2) If you are operating from the task-tray Click the “W-TCP icon” in the task-tray located at the bottom-right of the desktop to start the program.



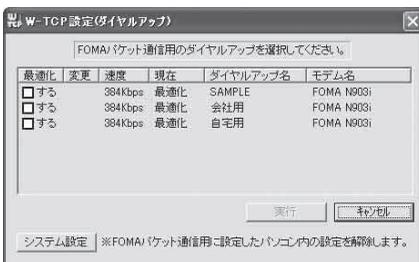
2 Proceed with the following

Close all the programs open and follow the screen instructions to restart the PC. The optimized system settings become valid after the restart.

- (1) If the system settings have not been optimized Select “384Kbps” and click “最適化を行う” (Optimize). “W-TCP 設定 (ダイヤルアップ)” (W-TCP settings (dial-up)) screen appears. If you select the dial-up to be optimized and click “実行” (Execute), system and dial-up settings will each be optimized.



- (2) If the system settings have been optimized “W-TCP 設定 (ダイヤルアップ)” (W-TCP settings (dial-up)) screen appears. Change the settings if necessary.



(3) To cancel optimization

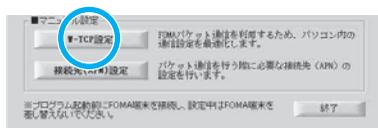
Uncheck the dial-up which you want to cancel optimization, and click “システム設定” (System settings).
Click “はい” (Yes) on the confirmation screen and click “OK”. “W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP settings) screen appears.
Click “最適化を解除する” (Cancel optimization).



<For Windows 2000>

1 Start the program

(1) **If you are operating from “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software)**
Click “W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP settings) of “マニュアル設定” (Manual setup) after starting the program.



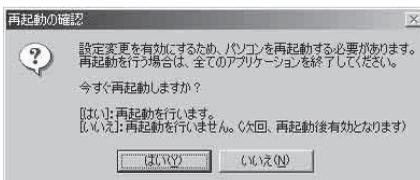
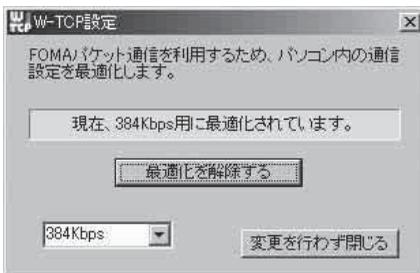
(2) **If you are operating from the task-tray**
Click the “W-TCP icon” in the task-tray located on the bottom-right of the desktop to start the program.



2 Proceed with the following

(1) **If the system settings have not been optimized**
Select “384Kbps” and click “最適化を行う” (Optimize) on the “W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP settings) screen. Close all the programs open and restart the PC to enable the optimized settings.

(2) **If the system settings have been optimized**
A message saying “現在、384Kbps用に最適化されています。” (Already optimized for 384Kbps) appears on the “W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP settings) screen.
When canceling the optimization settings to execute communication via a device other than a FOMA terminal, click “最適化を解除する” (Cancel optimization). Close all the programs open and restart the PC to enable the cancellation of the optimization.



Access Point Name (APN) Settings

Set up the access point (APN) for packet communication. You can set up to 10 destinations and administer them by registering them into cid (Registration Numbers) 1 through 10.

- As the APN of mopera “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to cid1 and APN of mopera U “mopera.net” to cid3 by default, assign the APN to cid2 or between cid4 to cid10.

- 1** After starting “FOMA PC setting software”, click “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN))



- 2** Click “OK” on the FOMA terminal settings acquisition screen

Automatically accesses the connected FOMA terminal and reads the registered Access point (APN) information.

It does not start if no FOMA terminal is connected.

- 3** Set up the access point (APN)



Adding/Editing/Deleting the Access point (APN)

• To add an access point (APN)

Click “追加” (Add) on the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.

• To edit a registered access point (APN)

Select the applicable access point (APN) from the list and click “編集” (Edit) on the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.

• To delete a registered access point (APN)

Select the applicable access point (APN) from the list and click “削除” (Delete) on the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.

You cannot delete the access point assigned to cid1 and cid3 (Even if you select cid3 and click “削除” (Delete), the access point is not deleted and remains “mopera.net”).

Saving in File

If you want to back up the access point (APN) settings registered on the FOMA terminal and/or save the access point (APN) settings being edited, you can save the access point (APN) settings by setting from the “ファイル” (File) menu of the toolbar.

Reading from File

If you want to edit the saved access point (APN) settings and/or write into the FOMA terminal, you can read the access point (APN) settings saved on the PC by operating from the “ファイル” (File) menu of the toolbar.

Writing Access point (APN) information into FOMA terminal

Clicking “FOMA端末へ設定を書き込む” (Write settings into FOMA terminal) on the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen allows you to write the displayed access point (APN) settings into the FOMA terminal.

Dial-up creating function

Select the added/edited access point (APN) on the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen and click “ダイヤルアップ作成” (Create dial-up).

When the screen for writing into the FOMA terminal appears, click “はい” (Yes). After finishing writing into the FOMA terminal, the “パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成” (Create dial-up for packet communication) appears.

Enter any connection name you want and click “アカウント・パスワードの設定” (Set up Account/Password). Enter the user name and password, select an accessible user, then click “OK”. You can leave the user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera.

If your provider has given you instructions for setting IP and DNS information, click “詳細情報の設定” (Detailed settings) on the “パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成” (Create dial-up for packet communication) screen, register necessary information and click “OK”.

After entering the settings, click “FOMA端末へ設定を書き込む” (Write settings into FOMA terminal), confirm overwriting and start writing.

NOTE

- The APN settings (the access point for FOMA packet communication) are stored in the FOMA terminal. Therefore, the APN must be registered again if you connect to another FOMA terminal.
- When continuously using the dial-up setting created on the PC, register the same APN setting (cid setting) number with the FOMA terminal.

Setting up Dial-up Network

This section describes how to set up a dial-up connection for packet communication / 64K data communication without using the FOMA PC setting software. The flow of operation is described below.

- It is unnecessary to set up the dial-up network for 64K data communication. Go on to “Setting up Dial-up” (p.37).

About AT commands

- AT commands are commands for modem control. The FOMA terminal complies AT commands and supports some enhanced commands and its own AT commands.
- Entering an AT command allows you to set or confirm (display) the detail settings and the contents of the settings for the “Data communication” and FOMA terminal.

Checking the COM port

- To set up the access point (APN), you need to specify the COM port number assigned to “FOMA N903i” (Modem) built in after installing the N903i communication setting file (drivers). This section describes how to confirm the COM port number. The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (p.33).

● Preparation

- 1** Connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to the FOMA terminal
- 2** Turn on the FOMA terminal, then connect the FOMA USB Cable connected to the FOMA terminal to your PC

1 Open “スタート”(Start)→“コントロールパネル”(Control Panel)



2 Open “電話とモデムのオプション”(Telephone and modem options) from “プリンタとその他のハードウェア”(Printers and other hardware) in Control Panel



3 If the “所在地情報”(Address information) screen is displayed, enter “市外局番／エリアコード”(Area code) and click “OK”

4 Click the “モデム”(Modem) tab to confirm the COM port of the “接続先”(Access point) column of “FOMA N903i” and click “OK”

The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (p.33).

The contents displayed on the screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC.



● To check the COM port on Windows 2000

1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “設定” (Settings) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel)

2 Open “電話とモデムのオプション” (Telephone and modem options) in Control Panel



3 If the “所在地情報” (Address information) screen appears, enter “市外局番” (Area Code) and click “OK”

4 Click the “モデム” (Modem) tab to confirm the COM port of the “接続先” (Access point) column of “FOMA N903i” and click “OK”

The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (p.33).

The contents displayed on the screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC.



Setting up the access point (APN)

Default setting	cid1 : mopera.ne.jp	cid3 : mopera.net	cid2, 4 to 10 : not set
-----------------	---------------------	-------------------	-------------------------

Communication software to enter AT commands is required for the settings. This section describes how to set it up using “Hyper terminal” that comes with Windows.

Access points <APN/cid>

- Normal telephone numbers are not used for access points for packet communication unlike 64K data communication. Set up APN instead of a telephone number for connection.
- The APN setting is just like registering a Phonebook for packet communication from a PC. Assign registration number (cid) 1 through 10 to register, which is used as a part of the access point number. As the APN of mopera “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to cid1 and APN of mopera U “mopera.net” to cid3 by default, assign the APN to cid2 or between cid4 to cid10.^{*1}
- APN is administered by “cid (administration numbers 1 through 10)”. Specifying “*99* * * <cid number> #” as the access point number enables the connection to the access point with the cid number.
- Specifying “*99* * * 1 #” as the access point number for the mopera connection or “*99* * * 3 #” for the mopera U connection enables you to use mopera or mopera U easily.^{*2}
- The APN setting registers the access point to the FOMA terminal just like registering other parties’ information (telephone number, etc.) on a mobile phone. The following are comparisons with the Phonebook of the mobile phone:

		APN setting	Phonebook of mobile phone
Data to be registered		APN	Phone number
		cid	Memory number of Phonebook
		—	Other party’s name
How to register	Register using PC	○ (FOMA PC setting software, etc.)	○ (Dedicated software required)
	Register using Mobile phone	× (Cannot even confirm)	○
How to use		Specify cid to connect	Look up Phonebook to call
		—	Enter the telephone number directly from the dial key on the FOMA terminal to call.

- Registered cid will be connection numbers in the dialup connection settings.
- Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for an access point (APN) other than mopera U or mopera.

*1 : Set up the APN setting for the access point (Internet service provider) on the FOMA terminal in advance instead of entering APN in the Telephone Number column of “ダイヤルアップネットワーク” (Dial-up Network) for connection.

*2 : To connect to other Internet service providers, set the APN and assign it to cid2 or cid4 to cid10.

<Example: For Windows XP>

- 1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to the FOMA terminal**
- 2 Turn on the FOMA terminal, then connect the FOMA USB Cable connected to the FOMA terminal to the PC**
- 3 Click “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ハイパーターミナル” (Hyper terminal) to start Hyper terminal**

For Windows 2000

Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ハイパーターミナル” (Hyper terminal).

4 Select the “今後、このメッセージを表示しない” (Do not display this message again) checkbox and then click “はい” (Yes)

5 Enter any name in the “名前” (Name) column and click “OK”
“sample” is entered here as an example.



6 Select “FOMA N903i” from “接続方法” (Connection method), and click “OK”

Click “キャンセル” (Cancel) after the connection screen appears.

If a COM port of “FOMA N903i” can be selected

When Properties of the COM port is displayed, click “OK”.

In this example, “COM3” is selected. See “Checking the COM port” (p.30) to confirm the actual COM port number of “FOMA N903i” to be selected in “接続方法” (Connection method).



If a COM port of “FOMA N903i” cannot be selected

Click “キャンセル” (Cancel) to close the “接続の設定” (Connection Settings) screen and then follow the steps below:

- (1) Select “ファイル” (File) menu → “プロパティ” (Properties)
- (2) Select “FOMA N903i” in the “接続方法” (Connection method) column of the “接続の設定” (Connection Settings) tab on the “sampleのプロパティ” (sample Properties) screen
- (3) Uncheck “国/地域番号と市外局番を使う” (Use the Country/Region Code and Area Code)
- (4) Click “OK”



7 Enter the access point (APN) and press

Enter in the format of AT+CGDCONT=<cid>,"PPP", "APN"
<cid> : Enter any number from 2 or between 4 and 10.

Please be cautious because if cid has been already set, the setting will be overwritten.
"PPP" : Enter "PPP" as it is.
"APN" : Put " " around the access point (APN) to enter.

If "OK" is displayed, the settings for the access point (APN) are completed.

Example: To enter APN named XXX.abc in cid Number2

Enter AT+CGDCONT=2,"PPP","XXX.abc" .



8 Confirm that "OK" appears and click "ハイパーターミナルの終了" (Close Hyper terminal) in the "ファイル" (File) menu

"sample"と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか？ (Are you going to save the connection "sample"?) appears, but it is not necessary to save.

NOTE

- The AT commands entered in "Hyper terminal" may not be displayed after Step 7 on p.35. In this case, if you enter ATE1 , AT commands you enter from then on are displayed.
- To reset the access point (APN) settings using the AT command
 - If reset, the access point (APN) setting with cid=1 will return to "mopera.ne.jp" (Default value) and cid=2, 4 through 10 will be unregistered.
 - <How to enter>
AT+CGDCONT=  (to reset all cid)
AT+CGDCONT= <cid>  (to reset a certain cid only)
- To confirm the access point (APN) settings using the AT command
 - Display the current settings.
 - <How to enter>
AT+CGDCONT? 

Notifying or Not notifying the Caller ID

- You can set whether to notify the other person of your caller ID when packet communication is carried out. Since the caller ID is important information, please take care when you send your caller ID.
- You can set up the Notify or not notify Caller ID setting using the AT command prior to a dial-up connection.
- Use the * DGPIR command (p.46) to notify or not notify the caller ID or change back to "Not set" (Default value).

1 Start "Hyper terminal"

2 Set up Notify (186) or Not notify (184) Caller ID for packet communication

Enter in the format of "AT * DGPIR=<n>".

To automatically attach 184 (Not notify) for dialing an outgoing call/answering an incoming call

Enter the following:

AT * DGPIR=1 

To automatically attach 186 (Notify) for dialing an outgoing call/answering an incoming call

Enter the following:

AT * DGPIR=2 



3 Confirm that “OK” appears and click “ハイパーターミナルの終了” (Close Hyper terminal) in the “ファイル” (File) menu



NOTE

- The Caller ID needs to be set to “Notify” to use DoCoMo’s internet connection service mopera U or mopera.

About 186 (Notify)/184 (Not notify) in Dial-up Network

You can attach 186/184 to the access point number in the Dial-up network settings as well.

The following table shows what happens if you set 186/184 both for the * DGP1R command and the Dial-up network setting.

Dial-up network setting (for cid=1)	Notify/Not notify setting by * DGP1R command	Notify/Not notify Caller ID
* 99 * * * 1#	Not set	Notify
	Not notify	Not notify
	Notify	Notify
184 * 99 * * * 1#	Not set	Not notify (Dial-up network notification 184 has the priority)
	Not notify	
	Notify	
186 * 99 * * * 1#	Not set	Notify (Dial-up network notification 186 has the priority)
	Not notify	
	Notify	

Setting up Dial-up

- This section takes accessing mopera U by packet communication for example.
- To connect using packet communication, enter “* 99 * * * 3#” as the number of access point for mopera U or “* 99 * * * 1#” for mopera. To connect using 64K data communication, enter “* 8701” as the number of access point for mopera U or “* 9601” for mopera.

Setting up dial-up on Windows XP

1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “新しい接続ウィザード” (New connection wizard)

2 When the “新しい接続ウィザード” (New Connection Wizard) screen appears, click “次へ” (Next)



3 Select “インターネットに接続する” (Connect to the Internet) and click “次へ” (Next)

4 Select “接続を手動でセットアップする” (Set up the connection manually) and click “次へ” (Next)

5 Select “ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する” (Connect using a dial-up modem) and click “次へ” (Next)

6 If the “デバイスの選択” (Select the device) screen appears, select only “モデム – FOMA N903i (COMx)” (Modem – FOMA N903i (COMx)), and click “次へ” (Next)

The “デバイスの選択” (Select the device) screen appears only if there are multiple modems.
(COMx) is a number of COM port displayed in “Checking the COM port” (p.30).



7 Enter any name you want in the “ISP名” (ISP Name) and click “次へ” (Next)



8 Enter the number of the access point in the “電話番号” (Telephone Number) column and click “次へ” (Next)

This screen is an example of accessing mopera U by packet communication.



9 Click “次へ” (Next)

You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection. To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the provider or network administrator in the “ユーザー名” (User Name), “パスワード” (Password) and “パスワードの確認入力” (Confirm Password) columns as this screen.



10 Click “完了” (Finish)

The newly created connection wizard appears.



11 Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワーク接続” (Network connections)

- 12** Select the icon created for the dial-up and open “プロパティ” (Properties) in the “ファイル” (File) menu



- 13** Confirm the settings on the “全般” (General) tab

If two or more modems are connected to the PC, confirm that only “モデム - FOMA N903i” (Modem - FOMA N903i) is checked in the “接続方法” (Connection method) column. If not, check it. Confirm that “ダイヤル情報を使う” (Use Dial Information) is unchecked. If it is checked, uncheck it.

This screen is an example of accessing operma U by packet communication.



- 14** Click the “ネットワーク” (Network) tab and set up each setting

Select “PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet” in the “呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類” (Type of the dial-up server to call).

Select “インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP)” (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)) in the “この接続は次の項目を使用します” (Use the following items for this connection). Since the setting of “QoS/パケットスケジューラ” (QoS Packet Scheduler) cannot be changed, leave it as it is.



- 15** Click “設定” (Settings)

- 16** Clear all the boxes and click “OK”



- 17** When the Step 14 screen reappears, click “OK”

Setting up dial-up on Windows 2000

1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続” (Network and Dial-up connections)

2 Double-click “新しい接続の作成” (Create a new connection) in Network and Dial-up Connections



3 If the “所在地情報” (Address information) screen appears, enter “市外局番” (Area Code) and click “OK”

The “所在地情報” (Address Information) screen appears only when “新しい接続の作成” (Create a new connection) is started for the first time in Step 2.

This screen does not appear from the second time on, but the “ネットワークの接続ウィザード” (Network Connection Wizard) screen does instead, proceed to Step 5.

4 When the “電話とモデムのオプション” (Telephone and Modem options) screen appears, click “OK”

5 When the “ネットワークの接続ウィザード” (Network Connection Wizard) screen appears, click “次へ” (Next)

6 Select “インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する” (Connect to the Internet via dial-up) and click “次へ” (Next)

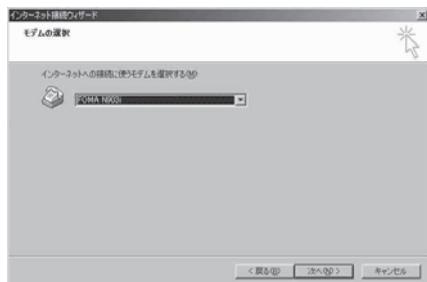
7 Select “インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク (LAN) を使って接続します” (Set up an internet connection manually or connect using Local Area Network (LAN)) and click “次へ” (Next)

8 Select “電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します” (Connect to the internet using a telephone line and a modem) and click “次へ” (Next)

9 Confirm that the “インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する” (Select the modem used to connect to the internet) has “FOMA N903i” and click “次へ” (Next)

If “FOMA N903i” is not selected, select “FOMA N903i”.

If no other modem than “FOMA N903i” has been installed, this screen does not appear.



10 Enter the number of the access point in the “電話番号” (Telephone number) column and click “詳細設定” (Advanced settings)

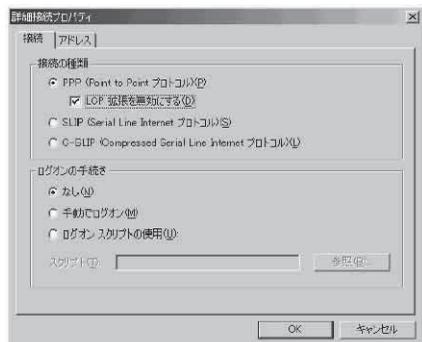
Uncheck “市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う” (Use Area Code and Dial information).

This screen is an example of accessing mopera U by packet communication.



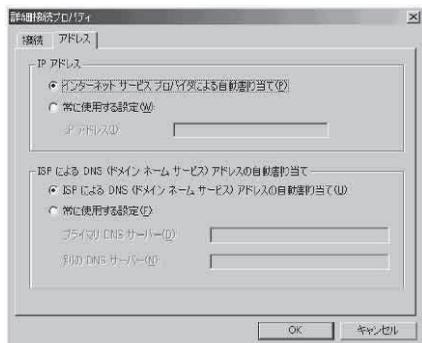
11 Set up the “接続” (Connection) tab as shown on the right and click the “アドレス” (Address) tab

To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator in “接続の種類” (Connection Type) and “ログオンの手続き” (Logon Procedure).



12 Set up the IP address and DNS (Domain Name Service) address on the “アドレス” (Address) tab as shown on the right and click “OK”

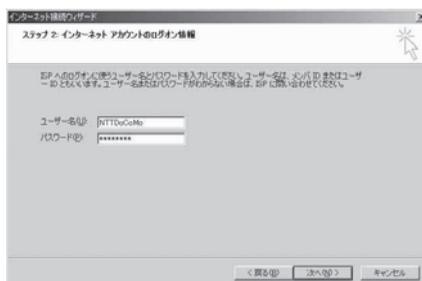
To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator in “IP アドレス” (IP address) and “ISP による DNS (ドメインネームサービス) アドレスの自動割り当て” (Automatically assign DNS (Domain Name Service) by ISP).



13 When the screen returns to Step 10, click “次へ” (Next)

14 Click “次へ” (Next)

You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection. To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator in “ユーザー名” (User Name) and “パスワード” (Password) columns as this screen.



- 15 Enter any name you want in the “接続名” (Connection name) and click “次へ” (Next)



- 16 Select “いいえ” (No) and click “次へ” (Next)

- 17 Click “完了” (Finish)

- 18 Select the icon created for the dial-up and open “プロパティ” (Properties) in the “ファイル” (File) menu



- 19 Confirm the settings on the “全般” (General) tab

If two or more modems are connected to the PC, confirm that only “モデム - FOMA N903i” (Modem - FOMA N903i) is checked in the “接続の方法” (Connection method) column. If not, check it.

Confirm that “ダイヤル情報を使う” (Use Dial Information) is unchecked. If not, uncheck it.

This screen is an example of accessing mopera U by packet communication.



20 Click the “ネットワーク” (Network) tab and set up each setting

Select “PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet” in the “呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類” (Type of the dial-up server to call).

Check only “インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP)” (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)) for components.



21 Click “設定” (Settings)

22 Clear all the boxes and click “OK”



23 When the Step 20 screen reappears, click “OK”

Running dial-up connection

This section describes how to make a dial-up connection for packet communication by using the dial-up setting.

<Example: For Windows XP>

1 Connect the FOMA terminal to the PC with the FOMA USB Cable (optional)

“Connecting the devices” → p.5

2 Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワーク接続” (Network connections)

3 Open Access point

Select the dial-up access point icon with the ISP name set in Step 7 on p.38 to select “ネットワークタスク” (Network task) → “この接続を開始する” (Start this connection) or double-click the icon of the access point.



4 Confirm the settings and click “ダイヤル” (Dial)

This screen is an example for mopera U connection. You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection.



<The Connecting screen appears>

While this screen appears, the log-on process such as confirmation of the user name and password is performed.



<Completion of the connection>

When the connection is complete, a message appears from the indicator of the taskbar located on the bottom-right of the desktop for a few seconds. You can start browser software to view sites and websites or to use e-mail. If this message does not appear, check “Setting up Dial-up Network” (p.30) and “Setting up Dial-up” (p.37). See p.25 for communication conditions.



How to disconnect

Just closing the Internet browser may not disconnect the communication line. Follow the instructions below to disconnect for sure. This section describes an example using Windows XP.

1 Click the dial-up icon in the task-tray

The connection condition screen for Internet will be displayed.



Dial-up icon

2 Click “切断” (Disconnect)

NOTE

- The communication speed displayed on the PC may be different from the actual communication speed.

AT Command List

AT commands available on FOMA terminal

- The following abbreviations are used in the AT command list;
 - [&F] : Command of which setting is initialized by AT&F command.
 - [&W] : Command of which setting is saved by AT&W command. The setting can be retrieved by ATZ command.

Modem port command list

The followings are the usable commands for "FOMA N903i (モデム)" (modem):

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
A/	Executes the last executed command again. No carriage return is necessary.	—	A/ OK
AT	—	The modem function of a FOMA terminal is controllable by adding the command of this table after this command. * OK is answered even when only AT is entered.	AT OK
AT%V	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT%V Ver1.00 OK
AT&C <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Selects the operating condition of the circuit CD signal to DTE.	<i>n</i> = 0 : CD is always ON. <i>n</i> = 1 : CD changes according to the carrier of the other party's modem (initial value).	AT&C1 OK
AT&D <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Selects the operation to take place when the circuit ER signal received from DTE transits between ON and OFF.	<i>n</i> = 0 : Ignores ER status (always assumed to be ON). <i>n</i> = 1 : When ER changes from ON to OFF, it becomes an on-line command status. <i>n</i> = 2 : If ER changes from ON to OFF, a connection is disconnected and it will be in an off-line command status (initial value).	AT&D1 OK
AT&E <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Selects how to display the connection speed.	<i>n</i> = 0 : Displays the wireless network transmission speed. <i>n</i> = 1 : Displays the DTE serial transmission speed (initial value).	AT&E0 OK
AT&F <i>n</i>	Restores all of registers to their defaults. If this command is input during communication, the line will be disconnected.	Only <i>n</i> = 0 can be specified (can be omitted).	(At the time of off-line mode) AT&F OK AT&F? ERROR AT&F = ? ERROR (At the time of on-line command mode) AT&F NO CARRIER (Change to off-line mode)
AT&S <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Sets the Data Set Ready signal to be output to DTE.	<i>n</i> = 0 : DR is always ON (initial value). <i>n</i> = 1 : DR signal is ON when the line is connected (when the communication call is established).	AT&S0 OK
AT&W <i>n</i>	Stores the current settings.	Only <i>n</i> = 0 can be specified (can be omitted).	AT&W0 OK AT&W OK AT&W? ERROR AT&W = ? ERROR

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT * DANTE	Displays the FOMA terminal signal reception level.	0 : FOMA terminal signal reception level is displayed as out of area. 1 : FOMA terminal signal reception level is 0 or 1 bar. 2 : FOMA terminal signal reception level is 2 bars. 3 : FOMA terminal signal reception level is 3 bars.	AT * DANTE * DANTE:3 OK AT * DANTE = ? * DANTE:(0-3) OK
AT * DGANSM= <i>n</i>	Sets the reject/permit mode setting for the packet incoming call. This command is effective for those incoming packet calls after the setting command is input.	<i>n</i> =0 : Disables the incoming call reject (AT * DGARL)/permit setting (AT * DGAPL) (initial value). <i>n</i> =1 : Enables the incoming call reject setting. <i>n</i> =2 : Enables the incoming call permit setting. AT * DGANSM? : Displays the current setting.	AT * DGANSM=0 OK AT * DGANSM? * DGANSM:0 OK
AT * DGAPL= <i>n</i> [, <i>cid</i>]	Sets APN, which permits incoming packet calls, by using < <i>cid</i> > parameter defined by +CGDCONT	<i>n</i> =0 : Adds the APN defined by < <i>cid</i> > to incoming call permission list. <i>n</i> =1 : Deletes the APN defined by < <i>cid</i> > from incoming call permission list. If < <i>cid</i> > is omitted, this will apply to all cid. AT * DGAPL? : Displays incoming call permission list.	AT * DGAPL =0,1 OK AT * DGAPL? * DGAPL:1 OK AT * DGAPL =1 OK AT * DGAPL? OK
AT * DGARL= <i>n</i> [, <i>cid</i>]	Sets APN, which rejects incoming packet calls, by using < <i>cid</i> > parameter defined by +CGDCONT	<i>n</i> =0 : Adds the APN defined by < <i>cid</i> > to incoming call rejection list. <i>n</i> =1 : Deletes the APN defined by < <i>cid</i> > from incoming call rejection list. If < <i>cid</i> > is omitted, this will apply to all cid. AT * DGARL? : Displays incoming call rejection list.	AT * DGARL =0,1 OK AT * DGARL? * DGARL:1 OK AT * DGARL =1 OK AT * DGARL? OK
AT * DGPiR= <i>n</i>	This command validates the setting for notifying Caller ID when sending/receiving packet communication. Even in the dial up network setting, you can also add 186 (notify) or 184 (not notify) to the access point number. (p.35)	<i>n</i> =0 : Uses APN as it is (initial value). <i>n</i> =1 : Uses APN by adding "184". (Caller ID is always not sent.) <i>n</i> =2 : Uses APN by adding "186". (Caller ID is always sent.) AT * DGPiR? : Displays the current setting.	AT * DGPiR=0 OK AT * DGPiR? * DGPiR:0 OK
AT * DRPW	Displays the indicator value of the receiving power of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT * DRPW * DRPW:0 OK AT * DRPW=? * DRPW:(0-75) OK
AT+CAOC	Inquires for the current charge.	—	AT+CAOC +CAOC:"000014" OK
AT+CBC	Displays the battery status of the FOMA terminal.	Result: +CBC:< <i>bcs</i> >,< <i>bcl</i> > <i>bcs</i> : 0 : FOMA terminal is powered by the battery. 1 : FOMA terminal is not powered by the battery. 2 : FOMA terminal is not connected to the battery. 3 : FOMA terminal is out of transmission due to the power-supply error. <i>bcl</i> : 0 : Battery has run out, or battery is not connected. 1-100 : Battery remained	AT+CBC +CBC:0,70 OK AT+CBC? ERROR AT+CBC=? +CBC:(0-3),(0-100) OK

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+CBST [&F] [&W]	Changes the bearer service type.	Format: AT+CBST=<n>,1,0 n=116 : 64,000bps (bit transparent) (initial value) n=131 : 32,000bps (multimedia) n=134 : 64,000bps (multimedia)	AT+CBST=134,1,0 OK AT+CBST? +CBST:134,1,0 OK AT+CBST=? +CBST:(116,131,134), (1),(0) OK
AT+CEER	Displays the reason for disconnection of the previous call.	Result: +CEER:<report> report: List of disconnection reasons (p.58).	AT+CEER +CEER:36 OK
AT+CGDCONT	Sets the access point name (APN) for packet origination.	p.54	p.54
AT+CGEQMIN	Registers a criterion to be used to decide whether or not to allow the QoS (quality of service) that is informed from the network side when PPP packet communication is established.	p.54	p.54
AT+CGEQREQ	Sets the QoS (quality of service) to be requested to network when originating a PPP packet communication.	p.55	p.55
AT+CGMR	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT+CGMR 12345xxxxxxxxxxx OK
AT+CGREG= <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether to notify the network registration condition. The returned notification displays whether you are inside or out of service.	n=0 : Not informed (initial value). n=1 : Informed. Informed when switching between "Inside the service area" and "Outside the service area" is completed. AT+CGREG? : Displays the current setting. +CGREG: <n>, <stat> n: Set value stat : 0: Out of packet area 1: Within packet area 4: Unknown 5: Within packet area	AT+CGREG=1 OK (Set to informed) AT+CGREG? +CGREG: 1,0 OK AT+CGREG=? +CGREG: (0,1) OK (Outside the service area) (When you move from "outside the service area" to "inside the service area".) +CGREG:1
AT+CGSN	Displays the product number of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT+CGSN 12345xxxxxxxxxxx OK
AT+CLIP= <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Displays the other party's Caller ID on a PC when a 64K data communication call is received.	n=0 : Not display the result (initial value) n=1 : Display the result AT+CLIP? : Displays the current setting. +CLIP: <i>n,m</i> m=0 : NW setting not notifying the other party of the Caller ID in outgoing call. m=1 : NW setting notifying the other party of the Caller ID in outgoing call. m=2 : Unknown	AT+CLIP=0 OK AT+CLIP=? +CLIP:(0,1) OK (A call is received when +CLIP=1 is set) RING +CLIP: "090XXXXXXXXX",177, "123",136

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+CLIR= <i>n</i>	Sets whether or not to notify the other party of the phone number when originating a 64K data communication call.	<p><i>n</i>=0 : Complies to the CLIR service contract.</p> <p><i>n</i>=1 : Not notify the other party of the caller's phone number.</p> <p><i>n</i>=2 : Notify the other party of the caller's phone number (initial value).</p> <p>AT+CLIR? : Displays the current setting.</p> <p>+CLIR:<i>n,m</i> <i>m</i>=0 : CLIR is not started (Caller ID is always sent) <i>m</i>=1 : CLIR is started (Caller ID is always not sent) <i>m</i>=2 : Unknown <i>m</i>=3 : CLIR temporary mode (default is not notify) <i>m</i>=4 : CLIR temporary mode (default is notify)</p>	<p>AT+CLIR=0 OK</p> <p>AT+CLIR? +CLIR:0,1 OK</p> <p>AT+CLIR=? +CLIR:(0-2) OK</p>
AT+CMEE= <i>n</i>	Sets whether the error report of the FOMA terminal is present.	<p><i>n</i>=0 : Use the ERROR result (initial value).</p> <p><i>n</i>=1 : +CME ERROR:<err> result code is used, and a numeral value is used for <err>.</p> <p><i>n</i>=2 : +CME ERROR:<err> result code is used, and characters are used for <err>.</p> <p>AT+CMEE? : Displays the current setting.</p> <p>The command displayed on the right is the execution example for cases when there is a FOMA terminal problem or a connection error.</p> <p>+CME ERROR result code is as follows. 1 : no connection to phone 10 : SIM not inserted 15 : SIM wrong 16 : incorrect password 100 : unknown</p>	<p>AT+CMEE=0 OK</p> <p>AT+CNUM ERROR AT+CMEE=1 OK</p> <p>AT+CNUM +CME ERROR:10 AT+CMEE=2 OK</p> <p>AT+CNUM +CME ERROR:SIM not inserted</p>
[&F] [&W]			
AT+CNUM	Displays the own number of the FOMA terminal.	<p>Result: +CNUM:;<number>,<type> number: phone number type : 129 or 145</p> <p>129 : International access code (+) is not included.</p> <p>145 : International access code (+) is included.</p>	<p>AT+CNUM +CNUM:,"+8190XXXX XXXX",145 OK</p>
AT+COPS	Selects the network operator to connect.	<p>Format : AT+COPS=<mode>,<oper></p> <p>mode=0 : automatic (searches the network and switches the network operator automatically)</p> <p>mode=1 : manual (connects to the network operator specified in <oper>)</p> <p>mode=2 : Disconnects the connection to the network operator</p> <p>mode=3 : Mapping is not performed.</p> <p>mode=4 : manual/automatic (if the connection to the network operator specified in <oper> fails, works as automatic mode.)</p> <p><oper> is a hexadecimal value which consists of Country code (MCC) and Network code (MNC). The format is as follows: Digit 1 of MCC ··· octet 1 bits 1 to 4 Digit 2 of MCC ··· octet 1 bits 5 to 8 Digit 3 of MCC ··· octet 2 bits 1 to 4 Digit 3 of MNC ··· octet 2 bits 5 to 8 Digit 2 of MNC ··· octet 3 bits 5 to 8</p>	<p>AT+COPS=0 OK</p> <p>AT+COPS? +COPS:0 OK</p> <p>AT+COPS=? +COPS:(2,,,"44F001"), (3,,,"44F002"),(0,1),(2) OK</p>

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+CPAS	Displays whether the control signal to the FOMA terminal is available or not.	Result: +CPAS: <pas> pas: 0 : FOMA terminal can send/receive control signal. 1 : FOMA terminal can not send/receive control signal. 2 : Unknown (control signal sending/receiving is not assured). 3 : FOMA terminal can send/receive control signal and it is currently receiving. 4 : FOMA terminal can send/receive control signal and it is currently communicating.	AT+CPAS +CPAS:0 OK AT+CPAS? ERROR AT+CPAS=? +CPAS:(0-4)
AT+CPIN	Enters the PIN code in the FOMA terminal.	Format: AT+CPIN=<pin>"<newpin>" This command is to enter the PIN1, PIN2, or PUK code - depending on the state of the result code returned when AT+CPIN? is entered - of the FOMA terminal. Even if PIN code entry or the PUK code is requested on the screen, depending on the state of the result code when AT+CPIN? is entered, you may not be able to use this command to enter the PIN. Do not use this command to change PIN code. Put <pin> and <newpin> in ". AT+CPIN? result +CPIN : READY : PIN1 code, PIN2 code Cannot enter the PUK1 or PUK2 code +CPIN : SIM PIN : PIN1 entry standby +CPIN : SIM PIN2 : PIN2 entry standby +CPIN : SIM PUK : PIN1 blocked (Can enter PUK1 code) +CPIN : SIM PUK2 : PIN2 blocked (Can enter PUK2 code) The command displayed on the right is an entry sample of PIN code "1234" and PUK code "12345678".	(The status in which +CPIN: READY is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="1234" ERROR (The status in which +CPIN: READY is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" ERROR (The status in which +CPIN: SIM PIN is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="1234" OK (The status in which +CPIN: SIM PUK is answered when +CPIN? is entered: PIN1 lock status) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" OK (The status in which +CPIN: SIM PUK2 is answered when +CPIN? is entered: PIN2 lock status) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" OK AT+CPIN? +CPIN:READY OK AT+CPIN=? OK
AT+CR= <i>n</i>	When the line is connected, displays the bearer service type before the CONNECT result code is displayed.	<i>n</i> = 0 : Not display (initial value). <i>n</i> = 1 : Display. <serv> : Displays only "GPRS", which means packet communication. (Displaying "SYNC", "AV32K" or "AV64K" depending on the line type.) AT+CR?: : Displays the current setting.	AT+CR = 1 OK ATD * 99 * * * 1 # +CR : GPRS CONNECT
[&F] [&W]			

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+CRC= <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Sets whether to use the extended result code for the incoming call.	<i>n</i> =0 : Not use +CRING (initial value). <i>n</i> =1 : Use +CRING.<type>. Format of +CRING: +CRING : SYNC +CRING : AV64K : GPRS "PPP" ,,, "<APN>" AT+CRC? : Displays the current setting.	AT+CRC=0 OK AT+CRC? +CRC : 0 OK (PPPOverUD received) +CRING : SYNC (AV64K received) +CRING : AV64K (PPP packet received) +CRING : GPRS "PPP" ,,, <APN>"
AT+CREG= <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether the result screen is present regarding the inside/outside the service area information display. ● This setting may not be available depending on the Operating System.	<i>n</i> =0 : Not informed (initial value). <i>n</i> =1 : Informed. Informed when switching between "Inside the service area" and "Outside the service area" is complete. AT+CREG? : Displays the current setting. +CREG : < <i>n</i> >,<stat> <i>n</i> : Set value stat: 0: Outside voice call area 1: Inside voice call area 4: Unknown 5: Inside voice call area	AT+CREG=1 OK (Set to informed) AT+CREG? +CREG : 1,0 OK (Outside the service area) (When you move from outside the service area to inside the service area.) +CREG : 1
AT+CUSD [&F] [&W]	Specifies or inquires for the network setting regarding the additional services.	Format: AT+CUSD=< <i>n</i> >,"<str>"[,<0>] <i>n</i> =0 : Does not send mid result < <i>m</i> >[<str>,<dcs>] (initial value) <i>n</i> =1 : Sends mid result < <i>m</i> >[<str>,<dcs>] Mid result: <i>m</i> =0 : The settings completed <i>m</i> =1 : The network requires the information. str : Only 0-9, #, * can be entered. Enclose <str> with "" (double quotation mark).	AT+CUSD=0, "xxxxxxxx" OK AT+CUSD=1, " * 148 * 1 * 0000#",0 +CUSD:0,"148 * 7#",0 OK AT+CUSD? +CUSD:0 OK AT+CUSD=? +CUSD:(0,1) OK
AT+FCLASS= <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Sets the communication class supported by the FOMA terminal.	<i>n</i> =0 : data is only supported. (initial value)	AT+FCLASS=0 OK
AT+GCAP [&F] [&W]	Displays the supported area for the AT commands available for the FOMA terminal.	Result: +GCAP:<area>,<area>,<area> area : +CGSM : Some or all GSM commands are supported. +FCLASS : +FCLASS command is supported. +W : +W command is supported.	AT+GCAP +GCAP:+CGSM,+FCLASS,+W OK
AT+GMI	Displays the manufacturer name (NEC).	—	AT+GMI NEC OK
AT+GMM	Displays the FOMA terminal product name (FOMA N903i).	—	AT+GMM FOMA N903i OK
AT+GMR	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT+GMR Ver1.00 OK

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+IFC= <i>n,m</i> [&F] [&W]	Selects the flow control method.	<i>n</i> : DCE by DTE <i>m</i> : DTE by DCE 0 : No flow control 1 : XON/XOFF flow control. 2 : RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control. initial value: <i>n,m</i> =2, 2 AT+IFC?: Displays the current setting.	AT+IFC=2,2 OK AT+IFC? +IFC : 2,2 OK AT+IFC=? +IFC : (0,1,2) ,(0,1,2) OK
AT+WS46= <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Displays the wireless communication network of the FOMA terminal.	<i>n</i> =22 : Only W-CDMA (Wideband CDMA) can be specified (initial value).	AT+WS46=22 OK
AT¥S	Displays the contents of commands and S registers currently set.	—	AT¥S E1 Q0 V1 X4 &C1 &D2 &S0 &E1 ¥V0 S000=000 S002=043 S003=013 S004=010 S005=008 S006=005 S007=060 S008=003 S010=001 S030=000 S103=001 S104=001 OK
AT¥V <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Selects the response code specification for connecting the line.	<i>n</i> =0 : Not use extended result code (initial value). <i>n</i> =1 : Use extended result code.	AT¥V0 OK
ATA	Handles the incoming call process according to the mode received by the FOMA terminal.	—	RING ATA CONNECT
ATD	Handles the automatic calling process for the FOMA terminal according to the specified parameters and dial parameters.	ATD *99 * * * <cid># : Packet communication <cid> 1 to 10: displays APN with +CGDCONT setting. AT+CBST=116,1,0 ATD<phone number> : 64K communication AT+CBST=131,1,0 ATD<phone number> : AV32K communication AT+CBST=134,1,0 ATD<phone number> : AV64K communication	<Packet communication> ATD *99 * * * 1# CONNECT <64K communication> AT+CBST=116,1,0 OK ATD090xxxxxxxx CONNECT <AV32K communication> AT+CBST=131,1,0 OK ATD090xxxxxxxx CONNECT <AV64K communication> AT+CBST=134,1,0 OK ATD090xxxxxxxx CONNECT
ATE <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Selects whether the echo back is present for DTE in the command mode.	<i>n</i> =0 : Echo back absent. <i>n</i> =1 : Echo back present (initial value).	ATE1 OK
ATH <i>n</i>	Performs on-hook operation for the FOMA terminal.	<i>n</i> =0 : Disconnect the line (can be omitted).	(During packet communication) +++ OK ATH NO CARRIER

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
ATI <i>n</i>	Displays the ID code.	<i>n</i> =0 : Displays "NTT DoCoMo". <i>n</i> =1 : Displays the product name (same with +GMM). <i>n</i> =2 : Displays the version of the FOMA terminal (same with +GMR). <i>n</i> =3 : Displays the each element of ACMP signal. <i>n</i> =4 : Displays the details of communication functions of the FOMA terminal.	ATI0 NTT DoCoMo OK ATI1 FOMAN903i OK
ATO <i>n</i>	Returns from the online command mode to the online data mode during communication.	<i>n</i> =0 : Returns from online command mode to online data mode (can be omitted).	ATO CONNECT
ATQ <i>n</i>	Specifies whether or not to display the result code for DTE.	<i>n</i> =0 : Displays the result code (initial value). <i>n</i> =1 : Not display the result code.	ATQ0 OK ATQ1 (At that time, OK is not returned.)
[&F] [&W]			
ATS0= <i>n</i>	Specifies how many times the FOMA terminal rings before it automatically receives a call.	<i>n</i> =0 : No automatic answer (initial value). <i>n</i> =1-255: A call is automatically answered after the specified number of rings.	ATS0=0 OK ATS0? 000 OK
[&F] [&W]		ATS0?: Displays the current setting.	
ATS2= <i>n</i>	Sets an escape character.	<i>n</i> =43 : Initial value. <i>n</i> =127 : Escapes processing is invalid.	ATS2=43 OK ATS2? 043 OK
[&F]		ATS2?: Displays the current setting.	
ATS3= <i>n</i>	Sets a carriage return (CR) character.	<i>n</i> =13 : Initial value (Only <i>n</i> =13 can be specified).	ATS3=13 OK ATS3? 013 OK
[&F]		ATS3?: Displays the current setting.	
ATS4= <i>n</i>	Sets a line feed (LF) character.	<i>n</i> =10 : Initial value (Only <i>n</i> =10 can be specified).	ATS4=10 OK ATS4? 010 OK
[&F]		ATS4?: Displays the current setting.	
ATS5= <i>n</i>	Sets a backspace (BS) character.	<i>n</i> =8 : Initial value (Only <i>n</i> =8 can be specified).	ATS5=8 OK ATS5? 008 OK
[&F]		ATS5?: Displays the current setting.	
ATS6= <i>n</i>	Sets the pause time (second) until a dial starting.	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS6=5 OK ATS6? 005 OK ATS6=? ERROR
[&F]			
ATS8= <i>n</i>	Sets the pause time (second) by using the comma dial.	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS8=3 OK ATS8? 003 OK ATS8=? ERROR
[&F]			

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
ATS10= <i>n</i> [&F][&W]	Automatic disconnection delay time setting. (1/10 second)	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS10=1 OK ATS10? 001 OK ATS10=? ERROR
ATS30= <i>n</i> [&F]	Disconnects the line when there is no user data exchange for the time set in this command.	<i>n</i> =0 : Inactive timer off (initial value) <i>n</i> =0 - 255 Where <i>n</i> is the number of minutes.	ATS30=0 OK ATS30? 000 OK ATS30=? ERROR
ATS103= <i>n</i> [&F]	Sets the called subaddress character.	<i>n</i> =0 : * <i>n</i> =1 : / (initial value) <i>n</i> =2 : ¥ (¥ mark or back slash)	ATS103=0 OK ATS103? 000 OK ATS103=? ERROR
ATS104= <i>n</i> [&F]	Sets the calling subaddress character.	<i>n</i> =0 : # <i>n</i> =1 : % (initial value) <i>n</i> =2 : &	ATS104=0 OK ATS104? 000 OK ATS104=? ERROR
ATV <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether the result code is returned in numerals or alphabets.	<i>n</i> =0 : Returns the result code in numeral value. <i>n</i> =1 : Returns the result code in characters (initial value).	ATV1 OK
ATX <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether the speed indication is present in the CONNECT display when connecting the line. Also detects a busy tone or a dial tone.	<i>n</i> =0 : Without dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; without speed display. <i>n</i> =1 : Without dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; with speed display. <i>n</i> =2 : With dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; with speed display. <i>n</i> =3 : Without dial tone detection; with busy tone detection; with speed display. <i>n</i> =4 : With dial tone detection; with busy tone detection; with speed display. (initial value)	ATX1 OK
ATZ	Resets the current setting to the contents of the non-volatile memory. If this command is input during communication, the line will be disconnected.	—	(Online command mode) ATZ NO CARRIER (Offline command mode) ATZ OK
+++	In response to the escape sequence, the online data mode changes to the online command mode while maintaining the line connection.	—	(Online data mode) +++ (No display) OK

● Supplementary explanation of AT command

■ Commands which do not function

The following commands do not generate errors but will not function as a command:

- ATT (Tone setting)
- ATP (Pulse setting)

■ Command name: +CGDCONT

• Outline

Sets the access point name (APN) for packet origination.

Though this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

• Format

+CGDCONT=[<cid>[,“PPP”[,“<APN>”]]]

• Explanation of the parameters

Sets the access point name (APN) for packet origination. See the following command execution example:

<cid>* : 1 ~ 10

<APN>* : Any value

* : <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10. As “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to <cid>=1 and “mopera.net” is assigned to <cid>=3 by default, assign to cid2 or cid4 to cid10. <APN> is an arbitrary character string indicating each access point name.

• Operation performed when the parameter is omitted

+CGDCONT= : Sets the initial value to all <cid>.

+CGDCONT=<cid> : Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.

+CGDCONT=? : Displays a list of values that can be set.

+CGDCONT? : Displays the current setting.

• Command execution example

Command for registering an APN name of abc (when cid is 2).

```
AT+CGDCONT=2,“PPP”,“abc”
```

```
OK
```

■ Command name: +CGEQMIN=[parameter]

• Outline

Registers a criterion to be used to decide whether or not to allow the QoS (quality of service) that is informed from the network side when PPP packet communication is established.

There are 4 setting patterns as described in the following command execution example.

Though this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

• Format

+CGEQMIN=[<cid>[,,<Maximum bitrate UL>[,<Maximum bitrate DL>]]]

• Explanation of the parameters

<cid>* : 1 ~ 10

<Maximum bitrate UL>* : None (initial value) or 64

<Maximum bitrate DL>* : None (initial value) or 384

* : <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10. As “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to <cid>=1 and “mopera.net” is assigned to <cid>=3 by default, assign to cid2 or cid4 to cid10. <Maximum bitrate UL> and <Maximum bitrate DL> set the minimum communication speed (kbps) of uplink and downlink between the FOMA terminal and base station. When it is set to “None” (initial value), all speeds will be permitted, but when set to 64 or 384, a connection at a speed of other values will not be permitted, and a packet communication may not be connected.

• Operation performed when the parameter is omitted

+CGEQMIN= : Sets the initial value to all <cid>.

+CGEQMIN=<cid> : Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.

+CGEQMIN=? : Displays a list of values that can be set.

+CGEQMIN? : Displays the current setting.

• **Command execution example**

Only the following 4 patterns can be set. (1) is set as an initial value to each cid.

- (1) Command for permitting all speeds of both uplink and downlink (when cid is 2)
AT+CGEQMIN=2
OK
- (2) Command for permitting only the speed of uplink 64kbps and downlink 384kbps (when cid is 4)
AT+CGEQMIN=4,,64,384
OK
- (3) Command for permitting uplink 64kbps and all speeds of downlink (when cid is 5).
AT+CGEQMIN=5,,64
OK
- (4) Command for permitting all speeds of uplink and only 384kbps of downlink (when cid is 6)
AT+CGEQMIN=6,,,384
OK

■ **Command name: +CGEQREQ=[parameter]**

• **Outline**

Sets the QoS (quality of service) to be requested to network when originating a PPP packet communication.

For setting, only the following pattern in the command execution example can be set, which is also set as an initial value.

Though this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

• **Format**

+CGEQREQ=[<cid>]

• **Explanation of the parameters**

<cid>* : 1 to 10

* : <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10. As "mopera.ne.jp" is assigned to <cid>=1 and "mopera.net" is assigned to <cid>=3 by default, assign to cid2 or cid4 to cid10.

• **Operation performed when the parameter is omitted**

+CGEQREQ= : Sets the initial value to all <cid>.

+CGEQREQ=<cid> : Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.

+CGEQREQ=? : Displays a list of values that can be set.

+CGEQREQ? : Displays the current setting.

• **Command execution example**

Only the following 1 pattern can be set. This is set to each cid as an initial value.

Command for requesting a connection at a speed of uplink 64kbps and downlink 384kbps (when cid is 2).

AT+CGEQREQ=2
OK

Saving modem port command setting value

The values set by AT commands are initialized every time the power of FOMA terminal is turned on or off, except the access point name (APN) set by AT+CGDCONT command (p.33), QoS setting by AT+CGEQMIN/AT+CGEQREQ command, permit or reject incoming call setting by AT * DGAPL/AT * DGARL/AT * DGANSM command and the setting for specifying sending/not sending caller ID of packet communication set by AT * DGPIR command. However, you can save the values set by commands with [&W] if you enter

AT&W 

after the setting. In this case, other set values with [&W] will also be saved. These values can be retrieved by entering

ATZ 

even after the power is turned on or off.

Result codes

■ Result codes related with data communication

Number indication	Character indication	Description
0	OK	Successfully executed.
1	CONNECT	Connected.
2	RING	Incoming call.
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected.
4	ERROR	Command not acceptable.
6	NO DIALTONE	Unable to detect dialing tone.
7	BUSY	Busy tone detected.
8	NO ANSWER	Time out in connection completing.
100	RESTRICTION	Network restricted.
101	DELAYED	Redialing restricted.

■ Extended result codes

• &E0

Number indication	Character indication	Description
121	CONNECT 32000	Connected between the FOMA terminal and base station at 32,000bps.
122	CONNECT 64000	Connected between the FOMA terminal and base station at 64,000bps.
125	CONNECT 384000	Connected between the FOMA terminal and base station at 384,000bps.

• &E1

Number indication	Character indication	Description
5	CONNECT 1200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 1,200bps.
10	CONNECT 2400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 2,400bps.
11	CONNECT 4800	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 4,800bps.
13	CONNECT 7200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 7,200bps.
12	CONNECT 9600	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 9,600bps.
15	CONNECT 14400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 14,400bps.
16	CONNECT 19200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 19,200bps.
17	CONNECT 38400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 38,400bps.
18	CONNECT 57600	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 57,600bps.
19	CONNECT 115200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 115,200bps.
20	CONNECT 230400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 230,400bps.
21	CONNECT 460800	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 460,800bps.

■ Communication protocol result codes

Number indication	Character indication	Description
1	PPPOverUD	Connected by PPPoverUD (BC=UDI, +CBST=116,1,0)
2	AV32K	Connected by AV (Videophone) [32K]
3	AV64K	Connected by AV (Videophone) [64K]
5	PACKET	Connected by Packet

NOTE

- The result code appears as character indication (default value) when ATVn command (p.53) is set to n=1, and as number indication when the command is set to n=0.
- Though the communication speed appears in order to maintain a compatibility with the modem connected by traditional RS-232C, it differs from the actual connection speed because the FOMA terminal and PC are connected via FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- "RESTRICTION" (Number indication: 100) indicates that the network is congested. If this is displayed, wait for a while and then try again.

Result code display example

■ When ATX0 is set

Regardless of the AT≠Vn command (p.51) setting, only CONNECT appears when the connection is completed.

Character indication example: ATD * 99 * * * 1#
CONNECT

Number indication example: ATD * 99 * * * 1#
1

■ When ATX1 is set

- ATX1, AT≠V0 are set (default)

Displayed in CONNECT <rate between the FOMA terminal and the PC> format when the connection is completed.

Character indication example: ATD * 99 * * * 1#
CONNECT 460800

Number indication example: ATD * 99 * * * 1#
1 21

- ATX1, AT≠V1 are set *

The following format appears when the connection is completed:

CONNECT <rate between the FOMA terminal and the PC> PACKET <Connecting party's APN>/ <Upstream (the FOMA terminal → Wireless base station) maximum rate>/<Downstream (the FOMA terminal ← Wireless base station) maximum rate >

The following sample indicates that a connection is made to mopera.ne.jp at maximum 64kbps for sending, and maximum 384kbps for receiving.

Character indication example: ATD * 99 * * * 1#
CONNECT 460800 PACKET mopera.ne.jp /64/384

Number indication example: ATD * 99 * * * 1#
1 21 5

* : If both ATX1 and AT≠V1 are set simultaneously, a dial-up connection may not be correctly made. The single setting of AT≠V0 is recommended.

List of disconnection reasons

■ Packet communication

Value	Reason
26 27	Missing or incorrect APN.
30	Activation rejected by the network.
33	Requested service option not subscribed.
36	Disconnected successfully.

■ 64K data communication

Value	Reason
1	The specified number does not exist.
16	Disconnected successfully.
17	Cannot communicate because the other party's line is busy.
18	Dialed, but no response within the specified time.
19	Cannot communicate because the other party is ringing.
21	The other party has rejected the communication.
63	The service or option of the network is not valid.
65	A transmission capacity not provided has been specified.
88	Sent to a terminal with different terminal attributes or received call.

FOMA[®] N903i

Kuten Code List

Kuten Code List

<Guide to the kuten code table>

First enter "digits 1-3 of the kuten code" then "digit 4".

● Some kuten codes in the table here may look different from what actually appear on screens.

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes								
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7		8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
010	!	(^{カタ})	~	?						075	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ё	З	И	Й	191	蟹	開	階	階	凱	凱	凱	凱	崖
011	!	(^{カタ})	~	?						076	К	Л	М	Н	О	П	Р	С	Т	192	街	概	階	階	階	階	階	崖	崖
012	!	(^{カタ})	~	?						077	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы	Э	193	街	概	階	階	階	階	階	崖	崖
013	!	(^{カタ})	~	?						078	Ю	Я								194	街	概	階	階	階	階	崖	崖	
014	!	(^{カタ})	~	?						080	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	195	街	概	階	階	階	階	崖	崖	
015	!	(^{カタ})	~	?						081	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	196	街	概	階	階	階	階	崖	崖	
016	!	(^{カタ})	~	?						082	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	197	街	概	階	階	階	階	崖	崖	
017	!	(^{カタ})	~	?						083	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	198	街	概	階	階	階	階	崖	崖	
018	!	(^{カタ})	~	?						083	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	199	街	概	階	階	階	階	崖	崖	
019	!	(^{カタ})	~	?						130	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	201	街	概	階	階	階	階	崖	崖	
020	!	(^{カタ})	~	?						131	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	202	街	概	階	階	階	階	崖	崖	
021	!	(^{カタ})	~	?						132	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	203	街	概	階	階	階	階	崖	崖	
022	!	(^{カタ})	~	?						133	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	204	街	概	階	階	階	階	崖	崖	
023	!	(^{カタ})	~	?						134	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	205	街	概	階	階	階	階	崖	崖	
024	!	(^{カタ})	~	?						135	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	206	街	概	階	階	階	階	崖	崖	
026	!	(^{カタ})	~	?						136	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	207	街	概	階	階	階	階	崖	崖	
027	!	(^{カタ})	~	?						137	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	208	街	概	階	階	階	階	崖	崖	
028	!	(^{カタ})	~	?						138	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	209	街	概	階	階	階	階	崖	崖	
029	!	(^{カタ})	~	?						139	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	210	街	概	階	階	階	階	崖	崖	
031					0	1	2	3		160	亜	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		211	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
032	4	5	6	7	8	9				161	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		212	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
033	4	5	6	7	8	9				162	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		213	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
034	H	I	J	K	L					163	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		214	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
035	R	S	T	U	V					164	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		215	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
036										164	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		215	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
037	f	g	h	i	j					164	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		216	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
038	f	g	h	i	j					165	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		217	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
039	p	z								166	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		218	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
040										166	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		219	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
041	あ	か	さ	た	な	に	ぶ	み	ら	168	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		220	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
042	あ	か	さ	た	な	に	ぶ	み	ら	169	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		221	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
043	あ	か	さ	た	な	に	ぶ	み	ら	170	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		222	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
044	あ	か	さ	た	な	に	ぶ	み	ら	171	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		223	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
045	あ	か	さ	た	な	に	ぶ	み	ら	172	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		224	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
046	あ	か	さ	た	な	に	ぶ	み	ら	171	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		225	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
047	あ	か	さ	た	な	に	ぶ	み	ら	172	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		226	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
048	あ	か	さ	た	な	に	ぶ	み	ら	173	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		227	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
050										173	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		226	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
051										174	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		227	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
052										175	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		228	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
053										176	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		230	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
054										177	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		231	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
055										178	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		232	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
056										178	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		232	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
057										178	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		232	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
058										179	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		233	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
060										181	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		233	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
061										182	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		234	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
062										182	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		236	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
063										182	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		238	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
064										184	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		240	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
065										184	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		241	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
070										186	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		242	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
071										187	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		242	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
072										187	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		243	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
073										189	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		243	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	
074										190	葦	哇	阿	哀	愛	挨	始	逢		244	基	奇	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	崎	

